XEROX

Xerox University Microfilms
Ann Arbor, Michigan 48106

WESTERN AMERICANA

Reproduced from the original in the collection of
THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN LIBRARIES

ETHNOLOGICAL RESEARCHES,

RESPECTING

THE RED MAN OF AMERICA.

INFORMATION

RESPECTING THE

HISTORY CONDITION AND PROSPECTS

OF THE

INDIAN TRIBES of the UNITED STATES;

Collected and prepared under the
direction of the **BUREAU OF INDIAN AFFAIRS** per act of Congress
of March 3rd 1847.

BY HENRY R. SCHOOLCRAFT L.L.D.

Illustrated by
S. EASTMAN, CAPT. U.S. ARMY.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICH.

Published by authority of Congress.

Part III.

PHILADELPHIA:
LIPPINCOTT, GRAMBO & CO.

INFORMATION

RESPECTING THE

HISTORY, CONDITION AND PROSPECTS

OF THE

INDIAN TRIBES OF THE UNITED STATES:

COLLECTED AND PREPARED UNDER THE DIRECTION

OF THE

BUREAU OF INDIAN AFFAIRS,

PER ACT OF CONGRESS OF MARCH 3D, 1847,

BY HENRY R. SCHOOLCRAFT, LL.D.

ILLUSTRATED BY S. EASTMAN, CAPT. U. S. A.

Published by Authority of Congress.

PART III.

PHILADELPHIA:
LIPPINCOTT, GRAMBO & COMPANY,
(SUCCESSORS TO GRIGG, ELLIOT & CO.)
1853.

Printed by T. K. & P. G. Collins.

THIRD REPORT.

WASHINGTON, *August* 30, 1852.

To the Hon. Commissioner of Indian Affairs,
Department of the Interior.

SIR:

I have the honor to report to you the Third Part of my investigations respecting the Indians — their history, numbers, condition, and prospects.

As a general fact, the American Indians, however they may differ in some of their unimportant tribal peculiarities, fulfil, in a striking manner, the philosophic requisites of being a distinctive homogeneous variety of the human race. Both physically and mentally, there is a general resemblance, if not always a close identity, in all the tribes of the continent. Cranial development, as shown by the late Dr. Samuel George Morton, (vide Part II.,) denotes a considerable range between the highest and lowest grades, and also a striking modification of the crania from artificial compression, in some of the tribes, as in the ancient Peruvians of Atacama, and the various flat-headed groups of North and South America. But these developments did not indicate the degree of civilization to which the tribes reached; nor did the compressions, in the opinion of that eminent observer, at all interfere with, or limit their powers of intellectualization.

By a re-examination of his large collection of crania in the Academy of Natural Sciences, at Philadelphia, which I caused to be made, the results of which are published in my last Report, (Part II., p. 335,) it is shown that, while, as we should, *à priori*, suppose, the Oregonian, Shoshonee, and other savage groups of the West, are generally inferior to the stocks of the Mississippi Valley and Atlantic borders; yet the cranial dimensions of some members of those groups exceed a little, by admeasurement, the more advanced and well-known tribes of our history. Thus the Dacotas, who, in the ethnological chain of these examinations, stand as the type of the great prairie group of tribes east of the Rocky Mountains and west of the Mississippi, reaching from the Arkansas to the Athabasca lake, disclose an average internal volume of brain somewhat exceeding the Algonquin and Apalachian groups respectively — two primary stocks, who formerly filled up nine-tenths of the whole geographical superficies of the original thirteen States, and who have, in all periods of our history, evinced a general character of superiority in their habits, manners, and policy.

In this result the average cranial admeasurements are expressed on the number of skulls actually examined. Individuals and whole tribes of the Algonquin and Apalachian groups compared, indicate a high intellectual capacity. Thus, two crania of the Chippewa and Sauk tribes, respectively, denote 91; being 7½ above the average of the group. Four crania of the Outagami, or Fox, and two of the Potawatomie, respectively, reach still higher, being 92. The Miamis, whose history is identified with the Wabash valley, stand at 89; the Natic, a tribe so long and successfully (in the seventeenth century) under the teaching of Mr. Eliot, at 85; and the Menomonees, decidedly the most erratic of the home tribes, at 84.

In the Apalachian group, which is not well represented in the collection, three Muscogee crania give an average of 90. An Utchee and Miccosaukie, respectively, indicated 84 and 74; and five Seminoles average 88½. But of all the stocks who have figured in our history, none have equalled, in their cranial capacity, the Iroquois; which includes the celebrated Five Nations and Six Nations of Indian history. They rise, in cranial volume, to an average of 3½ above the most advanced groups east of the Mississippi, and 5½ above the highest of the bold prairie-tribe west of it, and, in a single instance, 12½. Of these tribes, an Oneida and a Cayuga, respectively, measure 95. Two Hurons, or Wyandots, denote 81; three Mohawks 84, and the lowest in the collection, labelled "Mingo," 80. An intellectual pre-eminence is given in these indications to which this genera of tribes appear to be most fully entitled by their energy and superiority in war, oratory, civil policy, and a high thirst for military glory, which places them far above the oppressed and down-trodden nations of ancient Mexico and Peru.

The Indian tribes of this continent are manifestly of oriental origin. Their mental and psychological, and their physical traits, abundantly denote this. But it is worthy of remark, that, while other races, who have exercised great and controlling influence, and attained a high rank in Europe — as all the tribes speaking the Indo-Germanic type of languages, together with the Sclavonii, Magyars, and various Celts — are also of Oriental origin, the area of territory occupied by the American tribes should have been so immeasurably greater than that of the white-skinned races of all central Europe combined. The latter races, who, however variant, were all characterized in the scale of colors above brown, developed a high state of civilization in arts, letters, industry, and Christianity; while these red-skinned forest tribes, coming, as in all probability they did, in small parties, at successive eras, found a stimulus to their barbarism in this very immensity of area. They wandered over the entire continent, from one end to the other, from sea to sea, in the most profound state of moral degradation, and without having reached, by any monuments traceable to them, a state of much civilization in the highest instances noticed, or giving proofs of much apparent intellectuality.

The examinations made of their cranial volume by eminent physiologists, although these inquiries have not been carried as far as is desirable, denote no impediment to such rise in arts and improvements. Nor, since there is great evidence of antiquity, should the latent existence of such mental traits, it would seem, have led to the long-continued moral darkness which has marked their history and natural development. And this fact alone, setting aside all other evidence which is merely theoretical, and of little apparent value, presupposes a marked epoch, if not something like a national ostracism, in their history. But it at the same time gives full encouragement to the efforts making for their education and moral advancement. More than one-fourth of the geographical area of the globe was involved in the events of the discovery and settlement of America. The Indian population at the earliest known period is not given; but it probably never reached, in the most favorable state, five millions; of which the present area of the United States and of British America yielded not over seven hundred thousand, or one million, at farthest. They declined, and lost by death, in the scale of population, about the same numbers that they reproduced annually, the tendency being, for a long period before the discovery, to depopulation. If half a million be assumed to be the present aboriginal population of the Union, agreeably to its recently expanded limits—which is as large a proportion as the present state of the census returns appears at all to justify—it would assign an enormous area to each soul within the present acknowledged Indian territories and hunting-grounds; an area, indeed, which, in no probable or imaginable state of their affairs, could they till, improve, or profitably and permanently occupy, to the end of time.

This problem is merely thrown out as a theoretical question. However it may be decided, it cannot alter the class of duties we owe to the race. Whatever defects may, in the eyes of the most ardent philanthropist, have at any time marked our system of Indian policy, nothing should, for a moment, divert the government or people, in their appropriate spheres, from offering to these wandering and benighted branches of the human race, however often rejected by them, the gifts of education, agriculture, and the gospel. There is one boon, beside, which their ignorance and instability, and want of business and legal foresight, requires, in their present and future state — it is protection.

The actual existing population of the whole number of tribes will be given in revised and perfected tables at the close of these investigations. In the mean time, data will be placed on record, from which definitive results on the entire topic are to be drawn. To these attention is invited. The progress which has been made since my last report in collecting and preparing facts and materials, is shown in the accompanying papers.

I am, sir, very respectfully,

Your obedient servant,

HENRY R. SCHOOLCRAFT.

PART THIRD.

DIVISION OF THE SUBJECT.

I. GENERAL HISTORY . . . . C.
II. MANNERS AND CUSTOMS . . . . B.
III. ANTIQUITIES OF THE UNITED STATES . . . . . C.
IV. PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY OF THE INDIAN COUNTRY. C.
V. TRIBAL ORGANIZATION, HISTORY, AND GOVERNMENT . . . . C.
VI. INTELLECTUAL CAPACITY AND CHARACTER . . C.
VII. TOPICAL HISTORY . . . . B.
VIII. PHYSICAL TYPE OF THE INDIAN RACE . . . . . B.
IX. LANGUAGE . . . . B.
X. STATE OF INDIAN ART . . . . B.
XI. PRESENT CONDITION AND FUTURE PROSPECTS. . B.
XII. DÆMONOLOGY, WITCHCRAFT, AND MAGIC . . . A.
XIII. MEDICAL KNOWLEDGE . . . . A.
XIV. LITERATURE OF THE INDIAN LANGUAGES . . . A.
XV. POPULATION AND STATISTICS . . . . C.

CONTENTS.

I. GENERAL HISTORY.

SYNOPSIS.

Generic View of the Indian Race 21

II. MANNERS AND CUSTOMS.

A. Generic Traits of Mind .... Page 54
1. Dignity of Indian Thought 54
2. The Indian pronounced very low in the Scale by Philosophers 55
3. Testimony of the French Missionary Authors 55
4. American Testimony on this Topic 56
5. True State of the Hunter-man 57
6. Basis of Character. On what Founded 58
7. Imperturbability 58
8. Taciturnity 59

B. Traces of Foreign Origin. (1 Plate.) 59
9. Scarifications on the Loss of Friends. Scalping 59
10. Immortality in a Future State 60
11. Primary Duality of the Deity 60
12. A Persic Trait 60
13. Not Buddhists 61
14. Hebrew Customs 61

C. Distinctive Phases of the Hunter State. (3 Plates.) 62
15. Government Patriarchal 62
16. Gathering Wild Rice 62
17. Watching the Corn-fields 63
18. Woman in the Savage State 63
19. Striking the War Post 64

D. Costume. (7 Plates.) 65
20. General State of Indian Costume 65
21. Moccasin 65
22. Esquimaux Boot 66

23. Leggin — Male and Female 66
24. Characteristic Remarks 67
25. War Coat 67
26. Head Dress 67
27. Winter Caps 68
28. Agim, or Snow-shoe 68
29. Azian, or Breech-cloth 68
30. Necklace 68
31. Ornaments from Oregon and California 69

E. Accoutrements: (3 Plates.) 69

32. Quiver 69
33. Shield 69
34. War Flag 69
35. Tobacco Pouch 69
36. Navoho Wigwams: (1 Plate.) 70

III. ANTIQUITIES.

1. Antique Indian Pictographic Inscription on the Banks of the Hudson: (with 2 Plates.) By H. R. S. 73
2. Antique Pottery from the Minor Mounds occupied by the Indians in Feasts to the Dead, on the Sea-coasts of Florida and Georgia: (1 Plate.) By H. R. S. 75
3. Antique Colored Earthen-ware, from the Rio Gila, New Mexico: (1 Plate.) By H. R. S. .. 83
4. Erie Inscription in the Indian Character of the Kekeewin: (2 Plates.) By H. R. S. 85
5. Notices of some Metallic Plates exhibited in annual Dances among the Muscogees: (1 Cut.) By H. R. S. 87

IV. PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

1. Inquiries respecting the Character and Value of the Indian Country 93
2. Indian Territories of the United States: (2 Plates.) 94
3. Series of Saline Strata in the Onondaga Country 97
4. Journal of the Expedition of Colonel Redick M'Kee, United States Indian Agent, through North-western California. Performed in the Summer and Fall of 1851. By George Gibbs: (1 Plate.) 99

V. TRIBAL ORGANIZATION, HISTORY, AND GOVERNMENT.

1. History of the Iroquois Republic; its Government, Power, &c.: (1 Plate.) By H. R. S.... 181
2. Indian Tribes of Oregon and California. By G. F. Emmons, U. S. N. 200
3. Sioux, or Dacotah Proper. (Second Paper.) By P. Prescott, U. S. Indian Interpreter. 225
4. Origin of the Mandan Tribe, and its Stock of Affiliation. By H. R. S. 247
5. Migrations of the Iowas. (With a Map.) By H. R. S. 256
6. History of the Iowa and Sac Tribes. By Rev. S. M. Irvin, and Rev. William Hamilton 259

7. Hochungara Family of the Dacotah Group. By H. R. S. 277
8. Winnebagoes. By J. E. Fletcher, Esq., United States Indian Agent 284
9. Ancient Eries. By H. R. S. 288
10. Carolina Manuscript respecting the Origin of the Catawbas. Office of the Secretary of State of South Carolina 293
11. History, Language, and Archæology of the Pimos of the River Gila, New Mexico. By H. R. S. 296
12. Moqui Tribe of New Mexico. By H. R. S. 306

VI. INTELLECTUAL CAPACITY AND CHARACTER.

A. Oral Fictions 313

1. Hiawatha; an Iroquois Tradition. By Abraham Le Fort 314
2. The Little Monedo, or Boy-man; an Ojibwa Tale. By Ba-bahm-wa-wa-gezhig-equa 318
3. Trapping in Heaven; a Wyandot Tradition of 1637. By Paul Le Jeune 320
4. The Great Snake of Canandaigua Lake; an Iroquois Tradition. By John M. Bradford, Esq. 322
5. Shingebiss; a Chippewa Allegory 324

B. Poetic Development of The Indian Mind 326

6. Song of the Okogis. By Ba-bahm-wa-wa-gezhig-equa 329
7. Hawk Chant. By James Riley 329

VII. TOPICAL HISTORY.

1. Upper Posts of Canada in 1778. By James Madison 333
2. Western America beyond the Alleghanies, in 1785. Memoranda of a Journey in the Western Parts of the United States of America. By Lewis Brantz 335
3. Indian Life in the North-western Regions of the United States, in 1783; with an Introduction by H. R. S. Being the Relation of the Voyages and Adventures of a Merchant-Voyager, &c. By John Baptiste Perrault 351
4. Personal Narrative of a Journey in the Semi-Alpine Area of the Ozark Mountains of Missouri and Arkansas, which were first traversed by De Soto in 1541. By H. R. S. 369

VIII. PHYSICAL TYPE OF THE INDIAN RACE.

1. Unity of the Human Race 373
2. Examination and Description of the Hair of the Head of the North American Indians, and its Comparison with that of other Varieties of Men: with Diagrams of the Structure of the Hair. By P. A. Browne, LL.D. 375

IX. LANGUAGE.

A. Classification of the Indian Languages 397

1. A Letter enclosing a Table of Generic Indian Families of Languages. By the late Hon. Albert Gallatin 397

2. A Reply to some of the Historical and Philological Topics of Investigation brought forward in the foregoing Letter of Mr. Gallatin. By H. R. S. 403

B. PRINCIPLES OF THE INDIAN LANGUAGES 407

3. An Analysis of the Pronominal and Verbal Forms of the Indian Languages; proposed by a distinguished Foreigner. Anonymous 407
4. Grammatical Comments on the preceding Queries. By H. R. S. 417
5. Observations on some of the Indian Dialects of Northern California. By G. Gibbs .. 420
6. New Vocabularies of various Dialects and Languages 424

X. STATE OF INDIAN ART.

1. Making Fire by Percussion 465
2. Trituration of Maize 466
3. Preparation of Flints for Arrow and Spear Heads 467
4. Handicraft of the Oregon Indians 468

XI. PRESENT CONDITION AND FUTURE PROSPECTS.

Education, Christianity, and the Arts. By Rev. D. Lowry 471

XII. DÆMONOLOGY, WITCHCRAFT, AND MAGIC.

1. Introductory Remarks on Magic, Witchcraft, and Dæmonology of the American Indians. By H. R. S. 483
2. Gods of the Dacotahs. By Captain S. Eastman, United States Army 485
3. The Giant's Feast and Dance. By Captain S. Eastman, United States Army 487
4. Magical Dances of the Ontonagons. With an original Pictograph of Oskabaiwis. By H. R. S. 488
5. Invulnerability and Invisibility from Magic Influences: a Tradition. By H. R. S. 491
6. Genii Worship. By H. R. S. 492
7. Pictographs from the Rocky Mountains. Figures by Lieutenant Gunnison, United States Army 493

XIII. MEDICAL KNOWLEDGE OF THE INDIAN.

Practice of Medicine among the Winnebagoes 497

XIV. LITERATURE OF THE INDIAN LANGUAGES.

1. Plan of a System of Geographical Names for the United States, founded on the Aboriginal Languages. By H. R. S. 501
2. A Description of the Aboriginal American Nomenclature. By H. R. S. 509

XV. STATISTICS AND POPULATION.

A. A Comparison of the number of Fighting Men in the Northern and Western Tribes of Indians in the United States and Canada, as estimated at various Periods from 1736 to 1812 553
B. Estimate of Colonel Boquet. Indians in the English Colonies in 1764.......... 559
C. Indian Force on the breaking out of the American Revolution, in 1778. By James Madison 560
D. Indian Population of the Upper Mississippi in 1806. By Lieutenant Z. M. Pike, U. S. A. 562
E. Indian Population of the Columbia Valley in 1806. By Lewis and Clark.......... 570
F. Plan of Indian Colonization West of the Mississippi in 1825. By James Monroe. With a Statement of the different Tribes of Indians then within the limits of the United States, and the Quantity of Land claimed by them 573
G. Tabular Statement, exhibiting the Names and Situations of the Indian Tribes in 1829. Communicated by General Peter B. Porter, Secretary of War.......... 587
H. Statistical Tables, showing the Position and Population of the Indian Tribes on Lakes Huron and Superior, and the Upper Mississippi, in 1832 599
I. Tribes West of the Mississippi under Treaty Stipulations, and also those with whom the United States have no Relations. By General Lewis Cass 608
K. Official Estimates of the Indian Population of the United States in 1836 610
L. Sioux Population in 1836.......... 612
M. Indian Population of Michigan in 1840 615
N. Census and Statistics of the several Indian Tribes in 1846.......... 617
O. Estimate of the Indian Population of the Missouri Valley in 1850 629
P. Indian Population of Western Oregon in 1851. By Anson Dart.......... 632
Q. Population of the Pueblos of New Mexico. By Gov. J. S. Calhoun.......... 633
R. Indian Population of North-western California. By Redick M'Kee.......... 634
S. Indian Population of Texas in 1851. By Jesse Stem.......... 635

LIST OF PLATES.

1. Defeat of Vasquez D'Ayllon by the Chicoreans, 1518 .... Page 27
2. De Soto, Tampa Bay, Florida, 1539 35
3. Beggars' Dance 62
4. Gathering Wild Rice 63
5. Guarding the Corn-fields 63
6. Striking the Post 64
7. Costume 65
8. Costume 66
9. Costume 67
10. Costume 68
11. Costume 68
12. Snow-shoes 68
13. Costume 68
14. Ornaments worn by the Indians of California and Oregon 69
15. Quivers 69
16. Gushkepetágons, or Tobacco-sacks 69
17. Navaho Wigwams 70
18. Inscription on Rock at Esopus, New York 74
19. Esopus Landing, Hudson River 75
20. Antique Pottery from the Gila River 83
41. Inscription on Rock, south Side of Cunningham's Island 85
40. Inscription on Rock, north Side of Cunningham's Island 87
21. Map showing the Location of the Indian Tribes of the United States 96
22. Porcupine Mountains, Lake Superior .... Vol. IV.
23. Falls of Montreal River .... Vol. IV.
24. Chicago in 1820. Old Fort Dearborn .... Vol. IV.
25. Red-Jacket 198

26. Map of the Tribes in Oregon 200
27. Worship of the Sun 227
28. Modes of obtaining Fire from Percussion 228
29. Female Mode of Sitting 236
30. Map of the Country formerly occupied by the Iowas 256
31. Medicine Dance of the Winnebagoes 286
32. View of Pittsburg, 1790 336
33. Antiquities from Massachusetts 467
34. Bows and Arrows from Oregon 468
35. Indian Implements 468
36. Gods of the Dacotahs 485
37. Dance to the Giant 487
38. Dance to the Giant (Indian Sketch) 488
39. Magic Dances of the Ontonágons 489
42. Rock Inscription in Utah Territory 493
43. Humboldt Bay, California 131
44. Map of De Soto's Route in 1541–42 50
45. Ornamented Pottery from Florida 80

I. GENERAL HISTORY. C.

I. GENERAL HISTORY. C.

GENERIC VIEW OF THE INDIAN RACE.

The Indian empire of the bow and arrow, in America, was not disturbed by Europe till the close of the 15th century. How many centuries it had existed previously, the pen of history has not told us. To the mind that regards the moral development and progress of mankind, the event seems to have been slow. Why, it is asked with more boldness perhaps than wisdom, should fifteen centuries of dark barbarism have been allowed to pass over America after the opening of the Christian era, before the lights of civilization and knowledge began to reach its shores? The answer is, that time is estimated by a different standard in the councils of omnipotence, from that usually applied by human scales, and that God is more tolerant of man's idiosyncracies than man.

But however this be determined, the problem of the existence of a new continent had no sooner been solved, and the singular manners and condition of the aboriginal tribes been discovered, than the deepest interest was felt in their history. How the old world should regard them, and with what measure of fellowship they should be treated, puzzled ecclesiastics, it seems, as well as statesmen. Commercial men had less scruples about the matter, and merely considered them a new element of traffic, and put them on the credit side of the ledger. In an age of great commercial enterprise, they did not trouble themselves to think whether man had first received his charter to run wild, and set up the hunter era on the summit of mount Ararat, or dated the causes of his dispersion in the fruitful plains of the Euphrates, a century later. All that was left to researches in history and philosophy. But he would try to turn the Indian to some account. And as these Indian hunting-grounds embowelled shining treasures of the precious metals, it may be well conceived how the account was kept. In proportion as time advanced—as the hunter man was seen in geographical positions farther north, where no gold or silver appeared, beaver-skins were seized on, as the ready means of producing that treasure; and the intercourse with the tribes went on with as much avidity and sharpness of purpose, and with quite as effectual applications to kill, conquer, and destroy, as it did in the golden valley of Anahuac, or on the silver eminences of Potosi.

It is not proposed, in continuing these historical sketches, to narrate scenes of conquest, which lend such a charm to the Indian history of the South; a topic which is scarcely inferior, in the rapidity and splendor of its events, to the transforming power of the lamp of Aladdin. The scenes before us are far more commonplace and frigid in their character, spreading, as they do, from the northern shores of the Gulf of Mexico over colder latitudes, where the wants of life are harder to be supplied. And even here, it is only proposed to notice events as they brought to light new tribes, or new modes of policy and dealing, which served to show characteristic traits, or turning points, from which a coup d'œil of the Indian history may be seen. As a race, the Indian tribes of the United States appeal from the severe judgments of their conquerors. They do not admit that the acquisition of wealth and power was a good or wise reason for their overthrow and destruction, or to use their own figure, "that the light of their council-fires should have been put out." Of the great and momentous truths which hinge upon the introduction of civilization and Christianity, they have been utterly incompetent to judge. The voice of the few Indian sages who have at various periods of our history survived the shock of the conflict of races, and the triumph of civilization over barbarism, does not affirm the judgments which the warlike leaders of the mass have pronounced. An Occum, an Uncas, and a Skenandoah, have seen this matter in a higher light. And while history has shown them instances of severity and injustice in the settlement of the continent, these men have perceived the great causes of the decline of the race to exist in their inferiority of induction and forecast, want of industry, temperance, and arts; and above all, in the great principle of civilization and revealed truth. Few, solitary, and far apart, have been such voices in the land, it is true, while the popular and poetic views of a Garangula, a Logan, a Pontiac, and a Sagoyawátha, or Red Jacket, resound.

Would not the same means, it may be inquired, which have led these wise men to the expression of such opinions, have been as efficacious in bringing the entire mass of aboriginal America to these just conclusions? It is believed they would. The great error of the discoverers and conquerors has been, from the first, to regard the Indians as wild men, devoid of reason, and without the pale of international rights, as they were of civilization and Christianity. No terms, it was contended, need therefore be kept with them. The first mariners who anchored on the coasts considered the natives as little less than wild beasts. They enticed them on board vessels, and carried them off to work in the mines, or to be sold as slaves. They were abused and deceived in various ways by the commercial class, who supplied them with a deleterious liquor, in the shape of ardent spirits, which crazed their brains, paralysed their exertions, and led them to commit crimes. Yet a people so low in their moral attributes, and so gross in their conceptions, appear to have been dealt with as if they were of a much higher mental type, and held strictly accountable to the most stringent laws of ratiocination and induction, when they had, in fact, but little claim to either of these qualities. Worst of all, it was the mistaken policy of the times to attempt to *drive them*, instead of persuading them into the principles of Christianity.

§. Spain led the way in this blind and erroneous system of treating the natives. Las Casas, the eminent historian of a wrong-headed system of dealings with the Indians, may be appealed to, for the truth of these assertions. His denunciations were so unpalatable, that the largest part of his writings on the subject have never been permitted to see the light. He expatiates on the cruelty of the system of "repartimentos" by which they were conveyed as serfs, with the soil. He finally procured the abolition of this system by Charles V.; but it produced a rebellion in Peru, and that monarch was compelled to revoke the decree.[1] Whether *peonage* is of this era, or dates from a more ancient form of vassalage, is doubtful.

The national tone of Spain was high and chivalric. It gloried in a fixed belief of the irrefragable truth and excellence of the public state system of treating the Indians economically and ecclesiastically. And in this belief it had been recently confirmed and strengthened by the doctrines of Loyola, who, at the sound of Luther's voice, had started up as a new light in guiding nations in the conversion of barbarians. It never entered into the conceptions of Cortez and Pizarro, and their cotemporaries and successors in the conquest of the new world, that they were not pursuing the very highest and noblest policy that had ever been exhibited for the subjugation of a heathen people. But whatever merits it really possessed, we cannot read the events of those days, without admitting that it lacked kindness, patience, justice, and forgiveness — that it placed too much stress on the importance and value of a submission to certain external rites — that it denied the natural possessory right to the soil, and that it transferred their liberties with it. They remained dogged, stolid, reserved, perfidious. Their hearts were little touched by a Christianity which permitted these things. The Caribs were the first to experience the Spanish policy. They were a gentle race, living with little labor, in a tropical climate. A few years served to sweep them away. The cruelty and vices of Ovando, and the harsh and unjust execution of their Queen Anacoana,[2] revealed a system that was to prevail wherever the conquerors spread. The seizure of Montezuma, and the disgraceful execution of Guatemozin by Cortez — the horrid and foolish massacre ordered by Alvarado — the butchery by Pizarro of the attendants of the Inca Atahualpa, in violation of the hospitalities of a public visit — the solemn mockery of his subsequent trial and execution — such were the fruits of a conquest of which the end was constantly asserted to justify the means.

---

[1] Prescott's Conquest of Peru.

[2] Washington Irving's Columbus, quoted Vol. II., p. 309.

True, these things were done by invaders who were engaged in carrying the lights of religion, letters, and arts, to an idolatrous and bloody nation. They were carrying blessings under the Christian dispensation. But did they not confound eras of progress in the human race of a widely different kind? Had the principles of the dispensation, and the imperative mandate indeed which guided Joshua on marching into Canaan, still existed in A. D. 1500 to guide the march of civilization, such a course might have been commended. Happily it had been succeeded by a milder or less summary system. If the heathen were still "to be dashed to pieces as a potter's vessel," wherever found, it admits of critical comment, whether it was not the principles, errors, and vices of heathendom that were prophetically inveighed against by the psalmist, rather than their persons. History demonstrates that all forms of religion that have been propagated by the sword, of a date subsequent to the wars of Palestine, were false, and the Christian church itself became tainted with errors at the precise point where it laid down the word of God as the sole arbiter, and grasped the sword of the conqueror. At any rate, examples of kindness, justice, mercy, benevolence, and humanity, have ever been found the most efficacious handmaids of truth.

It is impossible to take the aboriginal view of the question, and to judge calmly of the conduct of the discoverers of America, without making these preliminary concessions. Ignorant and degraded as the Indian was, from the Straits of Magellan to the Arctic Ocean, he had his natural conceptions of justice and elevation of character, and was in a remarkable degree sensitive to kind acts and humane treatment; and whoever has found the secret of swaying his opinions and feelings, has been most observant of these traits of his mind. Were they respected by the early discoverers? Let history answer this inquiry.

§. We pass over, as foreign to these local investigations, the history of the transference of civilization to South America. The two most striking and complete instances of it, have been narrated in a manner that does not require the thrilling and instructive tale[1] to be repeated were it appropriate to the present plan.

The first attempt to found a government and plant a colony in North America, within the present territorial area of the United States, was in South Carolina. This was about six years before Cortez set sail for Mexico, some fifteen years prior to the descent of Narvaez on the Gulf coasts of Florida, and just a quarter of a century before the celebrated and well-known expedition of De Soto.

In 1512, Ponce de Leon, the governor of Porto Rico, sailed on a cruise among the northern group of the Caribbean islands. Robertson[2] informs us, that he was led by the tale of a miraculous spring, which the natives represented to have such wonderful virtues, that it would restore the youth of whoever bathed in the renovating fountain. Had we not such testimony, the incident might be doubted. In this voyage he fell in with the main land, on which he bestowed the name of Florida. In a second trip to this land of tropical plants and fancied wonders, he encountered the hostility of the natives. He roamed over the interior in search of the fabled spring, and lost his life in the attempt. Soon after, a Spanish sea-captain of St. Domingo, of the name of Miruelo, was driven on the Atlantic coasts of Florida, and in his traffic with the Indians received a small quantity of silver and gold, with which he returned to the then capital of the new world. The sight of this, and the reports brought with it, stimulated new adventure. A company of wealthy men was formed to traffic on that coast, and to obtain natives to work their mines in St. Domingo. Two vessels were dispatched on this errand, which steered for the same coasts. They made land at a point called St. Helena, and came to anchor at the mouth of a large river called Combahee.[1] The country was called Chicorea, and the inhabitants Chicoreans. The Indians are described as kind, gentle, and hospitable. They fled away affrighted, but were soon induced to return and engage in traffic. Among the articles bartered by them, were some small quantities of gold and silver. When the trade was finished, the Indians were invited on board to view the vessels, and to go down to see their interior: as soon as the holds were well crowded, the hatches were closed, and the vessel weighed anchor and sailed away. One of them foundered on the return passage, but the other safely reached her port.

---

[1] Prescott's Mexico, and Peru.

[2] History of America.

There was at this time living at St. Domingo a gentleman of some note and wealth, named Lucas Vasquez d'Ayllon, who exercised the functions of an auditor and judge. He was one of the company who had fitted out the vessels for kidnapping the Indians; and filled with the idea that the newly discovered province of Chicorea abounded in the precious metals, he visited the court of Spain, and solicited permission to conquer and govern it. Charles V. granted him the office of Adelantado, with the usual privileges and immunities pertaining to that office.

D'Ayllon, on reaching St. Domingo, fitted out three vessels, with men and supplies, going himself in the quality of governor, and placing Miruelo in command of one of the vessels. This person affected to be conversant with the coasts, and was intrusted with the post of pilot; but on reaching the land he was utterly at a loss for his true position, having in his prior voyage made no observations for latitude, which being thrown in his teeth, so mortified him that he became dispirited — sunk in deep despondency, and died.

The squadron, however, made St. Helena, and, entering the Sound of South Edisto Island, safely reached the mouth of the Combahee — the scene of the prior traffic and perfidy, where the largest of the three vessels was stranded. With the other two, and all the men, he proceeded to sail a little further, where, finding the aspect of the country delightful, easy of access, and a harbour defended from the sea, he determined to found the capitol of the government of Chicorea, and took possession of the country for his sovereign, with the usual formalities. The Chicorean Indians, who had been treated with such cruelty on the prior voyage, dissembled their resentment, and acted towards D'Ayllon with marked kindness. It is believed he was now near the present site of Beaufort. He was so completely lulled and flattered by the kind appearance of the Indians, that he permitted his men to accept an invitation to visit their village, about six miles distant. Two hundred men were permitted to go on this visit. The Indians feasted them for three days. On the night of the third day, when they were drowned in sleep, they secretly arose, and massacred them to a man. They then pushed for the main station near the ships, where D'Ayllon remained, which they reached at daylight. The credulous Adelantado, who had expected his men back in raptures, was suddenly alarmed with shrill yells; and before he was well aware of his position, the savage band was upon him. The strife was sanguinary. It is uncertain whether he fell on the spot, or succeeded with his wounds, in gaining his ships, with the rest of his men. But the discomfited squadron fled, and this terminated the first attempt to plant a colony in North America. The facts are well attested, but as they could not be heralded among the brilliant triumphs of the Spanish arms in the New World, they have not been prominently recorded, and rather dropt out of sight.[1]

---

[1] Both these names are still retained in the Geography of South Carolina.

The unjust and perfidious treatment of the Indians, on the seaboard of Carolina, was doubtless one cause of the determined hostility with which the Spaniards were afterwards received on the Florida coasts. Verbal information by their nimble runners, was communicated by the Indians with great celerity. And when people of the same nation reappeared at subsequent and separate periods, under the banners of Narvaez and De Soto, they encountered the most determined and unflinching hostility.

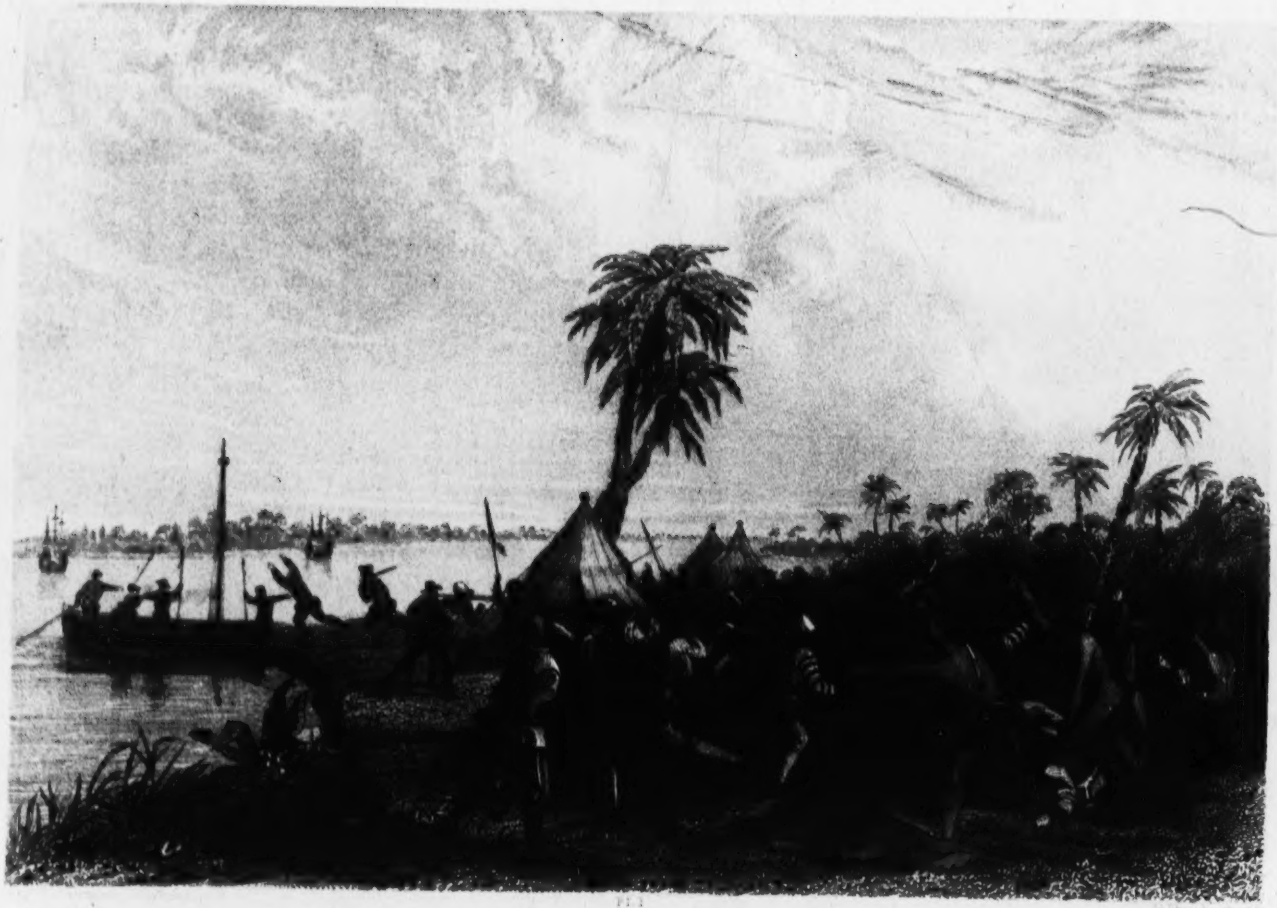
§. The Chicorean Indians, who thus defended their coasts from invasion, appear to have been the ancient Uchees, who are now merged as an inconsiderable element in the great Muscogee family; but who still preserve proud notions of their ancient courage, fame, and glory. This is the testimony of competent observers, and among them, the late Andrew Jackson, President of the United States, who was familiar with the Indian international affairs of the South, having in earlier life held public treaties with the tribes, and faced the most determined of them in battle.

We are informed by Col. Benjamin Hawkins,[2] Creek Agent, that the Uchees formerly dwelt at Ponpon, Saltketchers, and Silver Bluffs, in the belt of country which is now partly in Georgia and partly in South Carolina; and that they were

---

[1] Herrera.

[2] "Sketch of the Creek Country in 1798-1799."



Pl. 1

[illegible]

continually at war with the Muscogees, Cherokees, and Catawbas. By the former nation they were vanquished and nearly annihilated, and the remainder of them were carried away and incorporated with themselves, where the name and a few of the people still remain. When De Soto in 1539 reached Silver Bluff on the Savanna, the ancient Cofatchique, the Indians of that place exhibited to him pieces of armour and arms, which the Spaniards determined to have belonged to D'Ayllon.[1] That the Muscogees prevailed over the Uchees, is shown by the Muscogee words which are found in the names of the streams and places of the southern part of the seacoast of South Carolina.[2]

§. The defeat of Valasquez D'Ayllon (Plate 1) appears to have been about 1515 or 1516. It operated to discourage the Spanish from attempting further conquests in that quarter for many years, where, however, it appears from the map in the third volume of Navarette, that the limits of the discoveries of De Soto extended much further to the north than others have allowed him to have reached. Peter Martyr observes that the northern shores of the Gulf of Mexico had been run in the year 1516.[3] In 1521, the year of the final fall of Mexico, Francis Garay received a royal patent to colonize the region, which appears to have stretched north of the Panuco or Rio Grande on the Gulf.[4] But it was not till six years afterwards that anything of note was done in the conquest of Florida proper. It is evident from several sources, that the Gulf coasts of Mexico at this time had been pretty well ranged by mariners, and began to furnish adventurers with an intense theme of excitement. In 1517, Francisco Hernandez de Cordova had discovered Yucatan, and the next year Juan de Grizalba began the discovery of the great Indian-Mexican empire, which was continued by Cortez in 1519, and finished with such fame and glory to himself in 1521. The very spirit of chivalry seemed to have broken loose anew; led, not by the righting of wrongs which Cervantes has so happily satirized, or by the example of the crusaders wresting Palestine from the hands of the Infidels, but for the purpose of snatching the bow and sceptre from the idolatrous Indian tribes and filling the pockets of the conquerors with gold and jewels. In 1525 and 1526 Pizarro, fired by the successes of Cortez, began those discoveries which led to the conquest of Peru, which he with such perfidy and cruelty completed in 1535.[5]

This may serve to show the perfect furor of the glory of discovery, which filled the Spanish court and nation at this era, and will denote with what ideas the chivalric discoverers landed among the athletic Appalachian tribes of the northern coasts of Mexico. These tribes had no mines — no cities — no aqueducts — no palaces — no emperors — scarcely a road, or a path that could be traversed, without the cunning of a fox. But they were brave and proud. They were democrats, having a simple government of chiefs and councils. Each warrior had his voice in public affairs. They had a high sense of natural right and tribal independence. They deemed the lands not only their own, but affirmed and thought that they had been given to them by the Great Spirit — thus creating a right that could not, they deemed, be disputed. And when they were recklessly invaded and treated with the harshness and inhumanity which marks the course of De Leon and Vasquez D'Ayllon on their eastern borders, they stood manfully by their forest arms. That these atrocities were known, and the details circulated among them, prior to the respective descents of Narvaez and De Soto, cannot be doubted. For fifteen years before this event, the waters of the Gulf and Caribbean seas had been traversed by the vessels of Spain, and wherever they landed, they created the impression among the natives, whether falsely or not, rather of freebooters and pirates, than anything else.

---

[1] Garcilaso de la Vega.

[2] Such is *Coosahatchie*, from *Coosa*, the name of a band of Creeks, and *Hatchee*, a creek or river.

[3] Buckingham Smith's Cabaca de Vaca, p. 128.

[4] Navarette.

[5] D'Alcedo's Geographical Dictionary of America.

§. Pamphilio de Narvaez had been defeated by Cortez at Zempoala, in 1520.[1] He was a man of wealth, of a tall and muscular form, commanding appearance, a red beard, fine, full voice — a graceful horseman, and a brave man.[2] He went to Spain to complain of his rival in the conquest of Mexico, and after seven years spent at the court of Charles V., was appointed Adelantado of Florida, with full powers to conquer and govern the country. In the preparations for this, he invested, it seems, the greater part of his fortune. De Vaca affirms that he left Spain, on the 17th of July, 1527, with six hundred men, including cavaliers and gentlemen. But, owing to desertions of his men at St. Domingo — to incidental delays — and to storms and shipwreck, on the coasts of Cuba, his forces had been greatly reduced, and nine months had passed away.

It was not till the 13th of April, 1528, that he landed in Florida, with a force diminished to less than 400 men and 42 horses. The latter were lean and fatigued, and not fitted for a campaign. The Indians who had been descried from the ships' decks the day before, had fled, and left their wigwams in haste. As soon as his followers came ashore he raised the ensigns of Spain, and took possession of the country in the name of Charles V. His officers then presented him their commissions, and had them recognized, and thus offered a species of fealty to their civil and military governor. The next day the Indians who had fled came in, and made many signs, but as there was no interpreter, there could be but little exact information. This landing was made in a bay which they called La Cruz—being the west side of the modern Tampa Bay. The sea-coast of Florida was then, as it is at this day, a low alluvial tract, intersected with large indentations, bays, ponds, thickets, and streams, which offered the greatest impediments to the march of the troops. To avoid these, he kept inland, directing his naval forces to continue their explorations by water, and to meet him at a more westerly point. He was employed from the 1st of May to the 17th of June, in reaching the main channel of the Suwanee river, which he crossed high up.[1] He found its current very strong and deep, and lost a horse and horseman in crossing it, who were carried down the stream and drowned. Narvaez was now among the Appalachians — an important group of tribes, who spread from the present area of Georgia, Florida, and the southern part of South Carolina, to the banks of the Mississippi. Its chief members were the Muscogees or Creeks, Choctaws[2] or Alabamas, and Chickasaws.[3] It is clear from tradition[4] and philology,[4] that Florida, at that time, also contained a member of the Algonquin group, in the tribe of the Shawnees, who lived on friendly terms with the Creeks.[5]

---

[1] Prescott's Conquest of Mexico, Vol. II., p. 241.

[2] Bernal Diaz.

It would appear[6] that the Indians on the banks of Suwanee represented themselves as "enemies" of the Appalachians of "Apalachia," against whom Narvaez was marching; but if so, he soon found that the general enmity of races, as existing against Europeans, was such as to overcome local strifes among the Indian group; for they had no sooner crossed the Suwanee, than they found a determined foe before them and around them. These were all expert bow-men; and although they would not stand their ground in bodies, they kept up a harassing war of details, wounding and killing men and horses at every opportunity; a trait in which they strikingly resemble their descendants of modern times. The whole history of the Florida war of 1836 bears witness to this.

§. The great error of Narvaez was the want of competent interpreters, or any interpreters at all. In consequence, he could open no negotiations with the Indians, who fled before him, or turned aside to let him advance. He appears to have been a man deficient in a knowledge of the Indian character, and wholly underrated the effects of kindness and a sense of justice on their minds. His barbarous mutilation of the chief of Hirrihigua, and his shocking cruelty to his mother, soon after entering the country, produced a feeling of deep-rooted hostility, and was well calculated to make him and his nation abhorred, wherever the story spread. It is related[7] that Hirrihigua had offered a determined resistance to Narvaez, but afterwards formed a treaty of friendship with him. Becoming enraged for some subsequent conduct of the chief, which is unexplained, he directed his nose to be cut off, and caused his mother to be torn to pieces by dogs. Eleven years afterwards De Soto encountered the deepest hostility from this chief, whom he used every means, in vain, to conciliate.

---

[1] Suwanee is derived probably from San John, or Shawnee. The term "Mucoso," in the narrative of Garcilaso de la Vega (preserved in Theodore Irving's Translation, p. 60, &c.), is nearly the accusative of the phrase Little Bear, in the Chippewa dialect of the Algonquin.

[2] Called Mobilians by Du Pratz.

[3] The fierceness of their attacks — firing a village of which he had possessed himself, and then repeating the successful stratagem of Mauvila, may be said to have driven De Soto across the Mississippi.

[4] Archæologia Americæ, Vol. I., article Shawnee. See also, Sketch of the Creeks and Creek Country, in 1798 and 1799, by Col. Benjamin Hawkins.

[5] Hawkins.

[6] Narrative of Cabaca de Vaca, translated by Buckingham Smith, Washington, D. C., 1851.

[7] De la Vega.

The march of Narvaez from the scene of these atrocities was one series of unbroken hostilities from the Indians. Some captives whom he took west of the Suwanee, were compelled to act as guides: they led him through vast forests encumbered with fallen timber, which imposed the greatest toils. Through these his army struggled heroically. Not only were they wandering they knew not whither among solitudes and morasses, but they suffered for the want of food and forage. To such a degree was this pressure felt, that they were often, when a horse gave out, compelled to kill him and feast on his carcase. Narvaez was only provisioned, on leaving Cuba, to reach the coasts. He supposed he was about to enter a country ample in resources, and promised himself to quarter on the enemy, as Cortez had done. He had but two days' provision when he left the waters of Tampa. He and his followers had landed with their imaginations highly excited by the golden provinces they supposed they were about to enter. Cities and towns flitted before their minds sparkling with the wealth of those of Mexico and Peru, and they expected to conquer lords and caciques who would supply them food and auxiliaries. Disappointed as they were at every step, hope still led them on. Their horses were mere skeletons when they landed, and were jaded by long and harassing marches, during which they had no time to recruit. The men fared little better. They marched fifteen days at the start with "two pounds of biscuit and half a pound of bacon" to a man; and there was no regular commissariat afterwards. They eat the soft exfoliation or cabbage of the palmetto, and were relieved at several points by fields of corn, a grain which was mature about the middle of June. The magic word which led them on was "Apalache," the name of an Indian town. Here they expected to find a solace for all their toils, and a reward for all their losses, struggles, and afflictions. It was, to their heated imaginations, the town of "food and gold."[1]

§. In sight of Apalache at last they came, but it proved a damper to all their sanguine hopes. There were forty[2] small Indian abodes of humble dimensions in sheltered situations, covered with thatch. They were surrounded by dense woods, and groves of tall trees, with large bodies of fresh water, the country being without roads, bridges, or any other proofs of civilization. They found indeed fields of maize fit for plucking, also some dried or ripe maize and mortars of stone for pounding it. The houses contained also dressed deer-skins, and coarse "mantelets of thread." The men had all precipitately fled, but they soon returned in peace for their women and children. This request was granted, but Narvaez detained a cazique, intending to make use of his authority as another Montezuma for swaying the Indians; but this step had a contrary effect. They were a more spirited people than the Aztecs, and became much incensed by it, and returning the next day, attacked the Spaniards with great fury, and after firing the houses, fled to the lakes and corn-fields with the loss of but one man.

---

[1] Cabaca de Vaca, p. 24.

[2] Theodore Irving says "two hundred and forty." Conq. of Florida, p. 30.

Having beat them off, Narvaez and his army remained masters of the town twenty-five days, in order to recruit themselves. He was now evidently on the waters of the Appalachicola. The detained chief of the Apalaches, and the captives before made, were inquired of respecting the country and its resources. They replied that the surrounding country was full of great lakes and solitudes — that the land was little occupied — the people few and scattered — and that there was no place at all equal in population and resources to Apalache itself. But that south of them it was only nine days' journey to the sea; and that there was a town in that direction called Aute, and the Indians there had "much maize, beans, pumpkins, and fish."

For Aute, therefore, Narvaez directed his march. His course was obstructed by large bodies of water, through which they had to wade. Here the Indians attacked them, captured their guide, and shot at them with their arrows, from behind logs and trees, sorely wounding the men and horses. The Indians are spoken of as men of fine stature, great activity, very expert and determined bowmen, and most excellent and unerring marksmen, who could hit their mark at the distance of two hundred yards. One of these difficult defiles of water and woods followed another. For nine days the Indians hung around their skirts, and harassed them, killing some of their men, wounding many more, and losing but two themselves. At the end of this time, they reached Aute, from which all the inhabitants had fled; but they found an abundance of maize, pumpkins and beans, ready for picking. By this time, all hopes of gold and dominion had fled. To add to their distress, disease now attacked the men, and it became a struggle for existence.

§. Narvaez now determined to search for the sea, which was near at hand; and having discovered it, without finding his fleet or hearing any tidings of it, he resolved to build boats, and continue his explorations along the shore. He was now at the extremity of his affairs. Unwell himself, and his men and animals wounded and exhausted; in an impassable country, with fierce enemies all around him; deserted by his fleet, and finding a conspiracy forming among his men, he was called to exercise some strong decisive act. To build boats, and embark with his miserable followers, seemed the best choice. But he was wholly without means for such a work. He had neither mechanics, tools, iron, pitch, or rigging. The next day, while he pondered in perplexity, one of his men came and said he could make pipes out of wood, which could be converted into bellows, by means of deer-skins. This idea was at once caught at. Stirrups, spurs, crossbows, &c. were converted into nails, saws, axes, and other tools. Pitch was obtained from the pine; a kind of oakum was made from the bark or fibre of the palmetto; the tails and manes of the horses served for ropes, shirts for sails. They killed their horses for food. Such a heroic devotion, and adaptation of means to ends, should redeem the name of Narvaez and his misguided followers from all reproach. In sixteen days, by hard work, they had five boats ready, each of twenty cubits length. They were provisioned with oysters and maize, for which the men searched daily; and as the Indians laid in wait, ten of them lost their lives in this hazardous search. Water was provided by filling the skins of horses, flayed entire and partially tanned.

They had now marched about two hundred and eighty leagues.[1] They had lost on the march forty men, and all of their horses but one. With the 281 men, the remains of that army which had landed at La Cruz, he embarked on the bay of Cavallos, at the mouth of a large river, which he had called Magdalena, and which is believed to be the Appalachicola. When all the men and lading was on board the boats, the gunwales were but "a span" above the water. It seemed impossible that they should not have been drowned, in such a trim. For seven days the men conducted these fragile vessels; sometimes wading through sounds, and shallow bays, which protected them from the surf, before they put out in the open sea.

They captured five canoes from the Indians, which enabled them to lighten the boats. They made "waist-boards" to the boats, which raised the gunwales. Often they entered and traversed shallow bays. Provisions and water having failed, they suffered incredible hardships. For thirty days, they proceeded westward towards the Mississippi;[2] but their only safety was by creeping along the coast near the land. They encountered a double danger. The frailty and inadequacy of their boats would not permit them to hold out boldly. If they landed unwarily, they were in danger of being massacred by the Indians; who, with "bended bow," skirted all this coast, and manifested the most determined hostility. No intelligence was received by Narvaez of his fleet, nor any trace of it found. Some of the men became delirious from drinking sea-water, and four of them died from this cause. One night they were attacked in an Indian village, where they had been entertained on one of the islands, and Narvaez received a blow in the face from a stone. The Indians had but few arrows, and they beat them off. Their miseries were every day accumulating. Stormy weather succeeded, and they experienced hunger and thirst in their worst forms. They kept on in company till the 1st of November, when the boats parted company. One of them foundered, it is believed, at Pensacola. It appears to have been near the bay of Perdido that Narvaez was last seen. A storm was blowing off the land, and he told his officers and men that the time had arrived when each one must take care of himself. Many of the men were too weak to lift an oar. A storm was gathering. This appears to have been the announcement of the dispersion and destruction of the flotilla. The wind increased, blowing off shore,—night came on. He was not afterwards seen by any person who survived to tell the story. The boat of De Vaca was cast by the waves on an island, a little to the west of this bay, where, famished and nearly lifeless, they were kindly received by the Indians; for the latter were no longer hostile, when their enemies were overthrown, and their humanities were appealed to. Thus terminated the expedition of Narvaez.[1]

---

[1] Buckingham Smith, the translator of De Vaca, thinks only 280 *miles:* Page 32. This would give a fraction over four miles per day, from Tampa Bay.

[2] It has been stated by Mr. Gallatin, vide Am. Eth. Trans., Vol. II., p. —, that he discovered the mouth of the Mississippi; but this is not sustained by De Vaca, and there is no other authority.

One remark occurs on the fate of this twice unsuccessful commander. The geography of Florida fought against him.

Cortez, in the worst state of his affairs, after the "*noche triste*," without food, defeated, and with fierce enemies around him and before him, was marching over lands elevated seven thousand feet above the sea. Pizarro had the Andes beneath him; but Narvaez was never a hundred feet probably above tide-water, and was most of the time wading his way through swamps and morasses, beneath the level of the sea. This fact should be remembered, in estimating toils and sufferings of so striking and melancholy a character. We derive these details from the narrative of De Vaca —the treasurer and high sheriff of the contemplated government of Florida, and the only surviving officer of the expedition, who, after eight years of captivity among the Indians, with three companions, passed on from one tribe to another, crossing the Mississippi, and the Rio Grande del Norte, till he traversed the coterminous parts of the continent, and arrived at Compostella, on the Gulf of California, and finally returned to Spain.[2]

§. It was not till 1537, that De Vaca appeared at the court of Spain. He was hailed as one risen from the dead; for rumor had long consigned the whole expedition of Narvaez to destruction, and almost to oblivion. The tale of disastrous adventures De Vaca had to tell, one would have thought sufficient to deter any one from new expeditions into Florida. But it was far otherwise. The determined resistance of the Appalachians was but another incentive to Spanish chivalry. Their successes against the Indian race in America had been such, that nothing was deemed a task too hard or incredible to accomplish. The very extent and geographical magnificence of the regions De Vaca revealed, raised expectations of wealth and resources, which fired the imagination. Other Indian empires, doubtless, extended in the then unbounded precincts of Florida; at any rate, there were heathens and infidels to conquer and bring to the light of Christianity. Such were the anticipations which appeared to have brought Hernando de Soto to his resolution. He had been the right-hand man of Pizarro in the conquest of Peru. His share of the spoils of Atahualpa is stated to have been "a hundred and eighty thousand crowns of gold." He was one of the wealthiest men in Spain — a Hidalgo by birth, a man of pre-eminent courage and conduct, an elegant horseman, a soldier without his peer. He had passed several years in Spain, after the conquest of Peru, in inglorious ease and elegant hospitality and refinement; celebrated and envied, in court and out of court. There was none equal to him for his gallant reputation and achievements; for other heroes and conquerors in the new world had mostly risen from low stations; but De Soto, it was affirmed, was doubly entitled to his honors, by the claims of gentle birth. He little dreamed that he was going to invade a people who paid small respect to hereditary descent; who lived in frail wigwams of reeds or bark — who were exclusively hunters and warriors — who raised no cotton, had no large towns, no public roads, no mines whatever; but who, at the same time, cherished a high spirit of bravery and independence, which had been goaded to great activity by the reckless, cruel, and perfidious deeds of such men as Vasquez and Narvaez. These tribes, too, possessed great cunning, secrecy of purpose, and stoical command of nerve. It was their darling policy to carry on their wars by ambuscades and guerilla parties; to destroy their foes in detail, and by no means to concentrate into columns, and stand the brunt of an open battle. They were not the subjects and slaves of a despotic ruler, like the trembling and taxed vassals of Montezuma, whose power was backed by the dreadful and sanguine rights of a horrid religious tyranny which held them to a double obedience. But they were free, bold, and unconsolidated Indian democracies, where every warrior's voice was heard, and where every one set the highest possible value on tribal freedom. They were, in fact, too poor to conquer in the sense of that age. The true wealth of the territory which they possessed consisted in the inherent fertility of its soil, its crystal streams, its fine climate, and its adaptation to all the solid and growing purposes of an agriculture and commerce, such as, under the Anglo-Saxons, the world has probably never seen. All this could not enter into the views of De Soto. It was, in fact, of greater intrinsic value than if the Appalachian chain had been a lump of unbroken gold, and the channel of the Mississippi river, which was destined to serve as his resting-place, had poured down a flood of liquid silver. Such were the Appalachians whom De Soto, with his share of the wealth of Peru, purposed to overthrow. He offered to conquer the country at his own cost. The Emperor readily granted his request, and conferred on him the title of Adelantado, with the usual powers and immunities. His standard at Seville was flocked to by the brave and ambitious from all quarters. Portugal, as well as Spain, sent her volunteers. In little more than a twelve-month his forces amounted to nine hundred and fifty men, including some of the choicest cavaliers, with twelve priests, eight inferior clergymen, and four monks; who embarked in seven large, and three small vessels, at San Lucas de Barrameda, on the 6th of April, 1538; being a little less than eleven years after Narvaez had embarked on his ill-starred expedition, from the same port, against the same people.

---

[1] By the bones and cooking utensils found on Massacre Island, at the mouth of Mobile bay, by De Iberville, in 1699, a part of Narvaez's men appear to have met their fate at this spot.

[2] The Narrative of Alva Cabaca de Vaca, translated by Buckingham Smith, Washington D. C., 1851. 138 pages folio, with maps and notes.

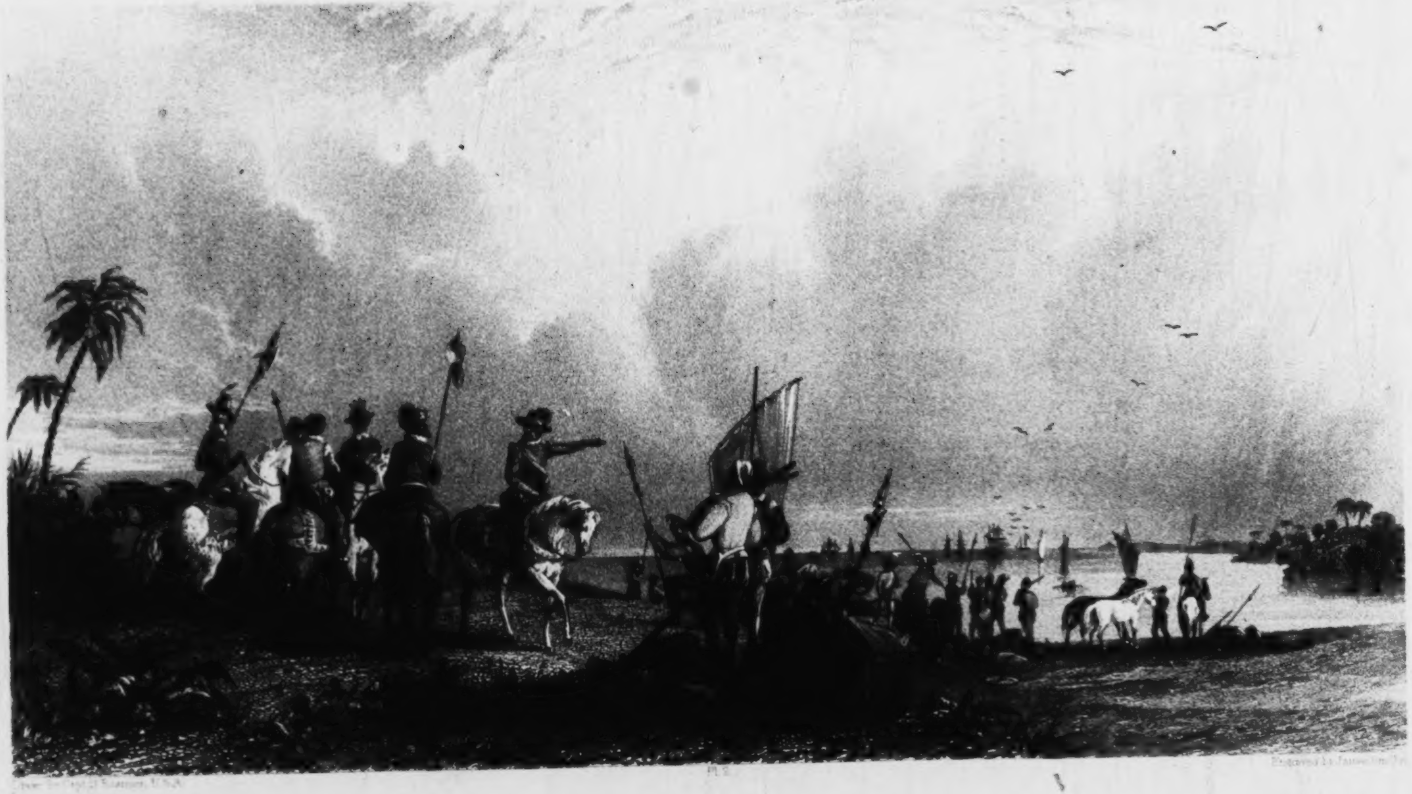
§. Everything favored his voyage to Cuba and his sojourn there, where he received a new accession of followers, and procured an ample recruit of the noblest horses. More than a year elapsed before he was ready to proceed hence on his conquest. In the meanwhile, he passed his time in entertainments, tournaments, and rejoicings, more befitting a conqueror before his entrance on some grand triumphal display than a descent among the hammocks and lagoons of Florida, where every thicket concealed vengeful bowmen, and the whole body of the irritated tribes were prepared to assail an invader with the direst hostility. Four Indians had been kidnapped on the coasts and brought to Cuba to serve as guides and interpreters prior to his embarkation; a point of great importance certainly, but the manner of obtaining which served further to irritate the Indians, and offend their natural sense of justice and fair dealing. He embarked all his forces about the middle of May, and after twelve or thirteen days spent on the transit, entered the waters of Tampa Bay—being the same body of water that Narvaez[1] had entered and named *La Cruz*, but which De Soto now called *Espiritu Santo*. He remained in his vessels six days. Everything betokened a hostile reception from the Indians. They had abandoned the coast, along which bale-fires were left burning and sending up their columns of smoke to advise the distant bands of the arrival of their old enemy. On the last day of May, three hundred men were landed on arid ground, to take possession of the country for the crown, in the customary form. (Plate 2.) Not an Indian was in sight. But they were not long in showing their hostility. During the night, near dawn of day, while the men were bivouacked, the Indians rushed upon them with horrid yells, armed with bows and clubs. Several of the Spaniards were wounded, notwithstanding their armor, and the whole body rushed to the shore under a panic in the utmost confusion, where they were reinforced from the ships. The enemy were then dispersed with the loss of a single horse, which was shot with an arrow that had been driven with such force as to pass through the saddle and housings and pierce one-third of its length into the body. The whole army now debarked; and during several days which they reposed here after their sea-voyage, nothing more was seen of the Indians.

There was now something to be done besides tournaments and boasting. An army of more splendid equipments and appointments had never before landed in America. It was led by the most brilliant and chivalrous cavaliers. It glittered in the splendor of fresh-burnished armor. Its trumpets and drums wakened new echoes in the solitudes of Florida. Its horses, of Arabic blood, decorated with gaudy housings, presented an object to the natives before which they fled. The spear was a new and dreaded weapon in the hands of the horsemen; and they quailed before the deadly aim of the matchlock. But they were inferior to the Indians in the use of the bow. The latter were relieved from the encumbrance of baggage. They were superior woodsmen, superior in minute geographical knowledge, and of the natural resources of the country. They were better enured to the fatigues and hardships of forest life. They imitated the sagacity of a fox in threading a forest, and the ferocity of a panther in pouncing on their prey. It was their policy not to meet their invaders in battle in concentrated bodies, but to fall on them unawares at night, or in difficult defiles. They sought to conquer by delay, and to enfeeble by a strict war of details. When consulted, they often gave vague answers. They were adepts at concealment. It is believed that they often led De Soto from place to place, to entangle him deeper in the forest. They perceived that he sought, above all other objects, gold and gold mines. Of these they had none; but ignorant themselves of metallic minerals, they might often deceive and mislead, when they did not intend it. To ignorant men, silvery and yellow mica, and pyrites of iron, have often appeared to be gold and silver. The Indians were deceived in the same way. Their attention was so perpetually called to these subjects, that they could not mistake the object of the invasion. Besides, it was never concealed by De Soto. He came as a conqueror. His monarch was boldly avowed as their monarch.

---

[1] Narvaez had landed on the west shore of the Bay, according to the map of Smith's De Vaca.

It is left to the narrators who described this expedition, to represent it, as they chose to proclaim it, with a very pardonable national vanity, as a conquest. It is not my purpose to follow the march, were that practicable, in all its minute details. Extraordinary as it was, and fruitful as it proved in scenes of high heroic daring and prowess, on the part of De Soto and his devoted followers, it is not without violence that it is pronounced "a conquest." A military reconnoissance, with battles, it certainly was. It was not possible, in so extended a line, to keep communications open with his initial point of landing; and although attempted, it was abandoned, and the Indians, with a sound policy and just judgment on their mode of warfare, parted before him, and immediately closed up behind him. The particular districts were no longer conquered, than during the time he actually remained on them. He made immense strides: at first towards the north-east, and north, and then the west, south-west, and south, and finally towards the north, till he reached the indomitable Chickasaws, and crossed the Mississippi. By marching so far inland from his starting point at Tampa Bay, and crossing the Withlacooche, and the lakes and lagoons at the sources of the St. John, where we must locate his Vitachucco, he avoided the difficulties that continually beset Narvaez on the Gulf coasts. The movements of his cavalry were irresistible; the Indians always quailed before it: but it appears evident that his infantry lacked drill, discipline, and order. He was a man as noted for his resource and policy, as for his bravery and personal presence in the field and council. He took great pains, on reaching the village of Hirrihigua, but two leagues from his point of debarkation, to appease the feelings of that chief, for the outrages perpetrated by Narvaez — most cruel and foolish act — which, if there was



Drawn by Capt. S. Eastman, U.S.A.

Pl. 2

Engraved by James Smillie

DE SOTO, TAMPA BAY, FLORIDA 1539

no other, shows Narvaez to have been unfit for command; for cruelty such as this was like sowing dragons' teeth, and must ever yield a bitter crop. How successful these efforts were, is doubtful. But while negotiating with this chief, he heard of a Spaniard who was held in captivity by a neighbouring chief called Mucoso. This was Juan Ortez, a man who had been furtively landed from one of the ships of Narvaez. Ortez, who had learned the language, was, in his influence on the tribes, another Marie Marina, and was of the greatest use to De Soto in all his future negotiations. These two steps were auspicious, and denoted capacity for command. His first line of march, from Tampa Bay to Cofatchique on the Savannah river, which is in the territory of South Carolina, is a military and exploratory achievement of a singular and unique character. He was now near to the northern limits of the Creeks or Muscogees, as the names sufficiently denote. While at Cofatchique, he identifies, as we have before intimated, a dagger and certain articles of armor, which were determined to have been captured about twenty-four or five years previously from the ill-fated Vasquez D'Ayllon. Struck with the obedience yielded to a female ruler of that place whom he is pleased to call "queen," he thought he would facilitate his march westward, by carrying her along in a sort of state captivity. The idea is a repetition of that of Cortez when he carried Montezuma a captive to his quarters, and of Pizarro when he seized Atahualpa. This device seemed to have answered very well till the queen found herself getting beyond her proper bounds, or territorial influence, when she managed to escape.

§. De Soto's observation and experience of the Indian character had been founded altogether on the south and central American tribes. He had, during the conquest of Peru, witnessed their implicit obedience to Incas, by whom they had been subjected, and to whom they yielded both a feudal and hieratic submission. It was impossible for him to conceive of the spirit of independence of the free chieftaindoms and republican councils of the bold Appalachian tribes, whose territories he now invaded. But if he mistook their true character on landing in Florida, he was not long permitted to mistake their determined hostility and intense hatred. Having, as the Indians supposed, received their lands from the Great Spirit, of whom the sun and moon were only symbols, they could not conceive how their title could be bettered by acknowledging the gift from Charles V. It was not only Hirrihigua, who was still smarting under the atrocities of Narvaez, who refused every overture of peace, but the same spirit, although often concealed under deep guises, animated every tribe from the Gulf to the Mississippi. Hear what Acuera, a Muscogee chief, said, in reply to the messengers of De Soto, who had invited him to a friendly interview. "Others of your accursed race have, in years past, poisoned our peaceful shores. They have taught me what you are. What is your employment? to wander about, like vagabonds, from land to land — to rob the poor — to betray the confiding — to murder, in cold blood, the defenceless. No! with such a people I want no peace — no friendship. War — never-ending war — exterminating war, is all the boon I ask.

"You boast yourselves valiant, and so you may be; but my faithful warriors are not less brave, and this too you shall one day prove — for I have sworn to maintain an unsparing conflict, while one white man remains in my borders. Not only in battle, though even thus we fear not to meet you, but by stratagem, ambush, and midnight surprisal.

"I am king[1] in my own land, and will never become the vassal of a mortal like myself. Vile and pusillanimous is he who will submit to the yoke of another, when he may be free. As for me and my people, we choose death — yes! a hundred deaths — before the loss of our liberty, and the subjugation of our country.

"Keep on, robbers and traitors—in Acuera and Apalachee we will treat you as you deserve. Every captive will we quarter and hang up to the highest tree along the road."[2]

This was the spirit in which De Soto was everywhere met, with the single exception of Mucoso, the protector of Juan Ortez. It was either suppressed for the moment, or openly manifested wherever the invaders could be attacked at disadvantage to his peculiar force. And consistently with savage warfare, it was carried out. During the twenty days that his army abode in Acuera to refresh themselves, fourteen Spaniards were picked off and slain, as they ventured from camp, and a great many wounded, without the possibility of the Spanish seeing or finding an enemy. Every close thicket and impenetrable hammock seemed armed with Indian vengeance, which it was impossible to retort. The bodies of the slain Spaniards, who were almost daily buried, were dug up the following night, cut to pieces, and hung upon trees. The Indians laid in wait in their canoes in every deep and winding stream, and let fly their deadly arrows whenever the invader attempted to cross.

Such determined resistance the Spaniards had not met in Mexico or Peru; and the noble sentiments uttered by Acuera should have taught them that there was a different class of Indians, hardy, athletic, and free, who had never yet been brought into subjection to any yoke, native or foreign.

De Soto was not insensible to the noble fire of these sentiments, but was not for a moment to be diverted from his task; unfortunately, as we think, he determined to strike terror into their hearts, by adopting the policy of "an eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth." Enraged by the peculiar kind of petty opposition he found at crossing the streams, and around his encampments, he let loose a noted blood-hound as the minister of his vengeance, who, in a few days, tore to pieces four of the offending Indians. This cruelty to the living exceeded all Indian notions of torture, and inflamed their rage to desperation. It was a similar cruelty that had rendered

---

[1] Micco means king, in Muscogee.

[2] Irving's Conquest of Florida, page 96–97.

Narvaez odious, and by repeating it, he made himself and his nation to be hated and abhorred.

What the twelve priests and four monks were doing at this time, we are not informed; but it was hard to teach the doctrines of Christianity, which are so full of promises and mercies, while its principles were daily contradicted by such inhuman practices. We adduce also what Vitachucco, another Creek Indian, at a more advanced point on his march, said to his two brothers who had been taken captive by De Soto, and who had sent messages to him advising submission. He was their elder brother, and the ruling chief.

"It is evident enough," he replies, "that you are young, and have neither judgment nor experience, or you would never have spoken as you have done, of these hated white men. You extol them greatly, as virtuous men, who injure no one. You say that they are valiant — that they are children of the sun, and merit all our reverence and service. The vile chains which they have hung upon you, and the mean and dastardly spirit which you have acquired during the short period you have been their slaves, have caused you to speak like women, lauding what you should censure and abhor.

"You remember not that these strangers can be no better than those who formerly committed so many cruelties in our country.[1] Are they not the same nation, and subject to the same laws? Do not their manners of life and actions prove them to be children of the Evil Spirit, and not of the sun and moon — our gods? Go they not from land to land, plundering and destroying — taking the wives and daughters of others instead of bringing their own with them, and like mere vagabonds, maintaining themselves by the labors of others? Were they virtuous as you represent, they would never have left their own country, since there they might have practised their virtues, instead of roving about the world committing robberies and murders, having neither the shame of men nor the fear of God before them.

"Warn them not to enter my lines; for I vow that, as valiant as they may be, if they dare to put foot upon my soil they shall never go out of my land alive; the whole race will I exterminate."[2]

"If you want to add to your favors," said four Muscogee captives taken south of the Suwanee, "take our lives: after surviving the defeat and capture of our chieftain, we are not worthy to appear before him, nor to live in the world."[3]

Such were the feelings and temper of the whole body of the Indian tribes, who, in 1540, occupied the wide area from the Atlantic shores of Florida and

---

[1] Namely, the men-stealers of the Carolina Coast, and the employers of blood-hounds and Coast-plunderers. These events all happened within twenty-five years of this time.

[2] Irving's Conquest of Florida. I omit some passages of this speech, in which Garcilaso de la Vega has mingled, it appears to me, European ideas.

[3] La Vega. Theodore Irving, p. 119.

Georgia, to the banks of the Mississippi. Separated as their tribes were into different communities, they sank all tribal differences, and united in a general opposition to the invaders. Fear of the common enemy drove them into a virtual union. They never omitted a good opportunity to strike; but they often concealed their hatred under the deepest secrecy and the profoundest motives of policy, which lulled the conqueror into partial security. The geographical terms which are employed, though obscured in false and imperfect forms of notation, show that there were seven different tongues spoken by the tribes in their circuitous line of march, from Tampa Bay to the banks of the Mississippi, at the lower Chickasaw bluffs, where the army crossed.

The ancient Creeks or Muscogees appear at that era to have occupied the entire territory of East Florida and Georgia, extending to the Appalachicola, and reaching eventually to the Coosahatchie river, in South Carolina.

§. De Soto passed his first winter in the vicinity of Tallahassee.[1] The next year, he reached Cofaqui, which is believed to have been near the present site of Macon. The Creeks, who found him pushing under false expectations towards the north-east, where they had bitter enemies, were glad to facilitate his movements; furnished him with provisions, and took advantage of his marching across the elevated war-grounds at the extreme sources of the Altamaha, Oconee, and Savannah rivers, to send the war-chief Patofa, with a large body of warriors, under the idea of escorting him, but really to fall upon their enemies. These enemies were the ancient, proud, and high-spirited Uchees,[2] who had defeated the Spaniards on the Georgia and South Carolina coasts. So soon as they reached the waters of the Savannah river, they secretly left De Soto's camp at night, and fell with the utmost cruelty on their unsuspecting enemies. This act was laid to the Spaniards. De Soto, finding himself compromitted and deceived by this perfidy, dismissed Patofa and his followers back to Cofaqui. They returned with their rich trophy of scalps. He then continued his march down the south banks of the river, and crossed over to the will-o'-the-wisp of his hopes ever since quitting Apalache, in the long-anticipated Cofatchique,[3] where he expected to find mines of gold and silver. This is a Creek name, which was mentioned to them the year before at their winter-quarters near Tallahassee, by an Indian boy named Pedro, who, the narrator reports, De Soto had "proved to be a most elaborate liar, on various occasions."[4] That the Creeks followed up the blow when De Soto had left the country, and finally conquered the Uchees, and brought off the remnant, whom they incorporated into their confederacy, is denoted by their traditions.[5]

§. Disappointed in his hopes of finding the precious metals at Cofatchique, and of opening a communication with the "Queen-mother" of the Uchee tribe,[6] he carried a young sachemess, who then ruled the village, captive with him on his march from this point towards the Appalachian mountains. But she managed to escape on the way towards the country of her enemies. The Spanish and Portuguese narrators of this expedition are constantly on stilts. The words "king, queen, prince, and province," are continually misapplied to bold and free hunter tribes, who were ruled by simple democratic councils of chiefs and warriors, who lived in bark wigwams more or less substantial, and had no exact boundaries to their territories, but generally left a strip of hunting and war ground undisturbed between the tribes, as at this day.

---

[1] Pickett.

[2] Hawkins.

[3] Silver Bluffs, Barnwell District, South Carolina.

[4] Theodore Irving, p. 206.

[5] Hawkins.

[6] The Muscogees had a Salic law.

Reports carried De Soto north and north-west towards the Appalachian mountains, where he passed through a part of the territory occupied by a tribe who are called "Achalaques," the modern Cherokees. This is the first notice we have of this tribe. While encamped among the barren eminences at Ichiaha, the Cherokees told him that about thirty miles north there was gold. He sent two men into the spurs of the mountain to search for this metal, who, after an absence of ten days, reported the discovery of a country of grain and pasturage; "the appearance of the soil indicated the probable presence of gold and silver in the neighborhood."[1]

§ It is remarkable that in this part of his march De Soto should have passed over the region of Dahlonega, where gold has been recently found in such quantities in the detritus of the mountains, that the United States Government has located a mint at that place. It proves that the reports of the Indians, if often vague, were sometimes reliable.

He now marched south and re-entered the country of the Creeks, following down the fertile and beautiful banks of the Coosa. The spirit of Hirrihigua, Acuera, and Vitachucco, appeared to have died away; and, notwithstanding some difficulties, they were received with general friendliness, being heralded from one Indian village to another, as far at least as Coosa, their principal town. De Soto now approached the borders of the Choctaws and Chickasaws. In his triumphal march down the banks of the Coosa, the Creeks accompanied him, with hidden motives. They carefully concealed the plot which was revealed at Mauvila. The practice of making the ruling chief captive, and taking him along to secure the obedience of his warriors, who were compelled to carry the baggage of the army, was always grating to the natural feeling of independence of the aborigines. Yet no outbreaking opposition was made. The Spaniards regarded the tribes as conquered. They certainly relaxed their military diligence and discipline. They marched along, spreading out over large spaces. Their encampments were loosely guarded. It is evident that they often neglected to post sentinels. The "camp-master" was very remiss — so much so, that he was finally displaced.

---

[1] Theodore Irving, p. 244.

There was, at that time, a noted chief living on the Coosa, of gigantic frame, and great courage and vigor of intellect, called Tuscaloosa, or the Black Warrior. He had been carried along by De Soto, a captive like the preceding chiefs, on their march down this magnificent valley. But he bore the indignity with a degree of impatience that nothing short of his Indian stoicism could control. As De Soto marched down the river towards the principal village, at Mauvila, he had some suspicions of his intentions, from the frequent Indian messengers he noticed; but there were no additional warriors to his train. The Spaniards entered the town in a straggling manner, and at intervals, which denoted that no direct hostility was anticipated: and certainly no additional guards were taken against such hostility. Tuscaloosa was brought a virtual captive to his own capital. But the hour foretold by Acuera had arrived. The day of Indian vengeance was near. Mauvila was a strongly fortified village, situated on a peninsula or plain, made by the windings of the Coosa. It was surrounded by stout palisades, with inner cross-ties and loop-holes for arrows, having an east and west gate. Eighty large and single-roomed houses, thatched in the Indian manner, stood around a square. Some of the trees about this enclosure retained their natural positions, and were covered with a dense foliage, which threw a pleasing shade over the square. It was an Indian stronghold. De la Vega's description is drawn in a manner to enhance our notions of its means of defence; and he certainly much overrates the number of its Indian defenders, all of which is done with the view of magnifying the glory of the hard struggle De Soto encountered here.

That one hundred foot and one hundred horse, not one of the latter of which could enter the town, should have sustained a conflict with "ten thousand" Indian warriors, would be sufficiently wonderful in itself, should we admit half the estimate of La Vega, which is as much as can be reasonably done. For it is perceived that even the small force with De Soto were, by the direction of Tuscaloosa, encamped "a bow-shot" outside of the walls, while his attendants and personal cortege were assigned quarters inside. Within the walls was also stowed all his baggage, provisions, and equipage, which had been brought in advance by the Indian burden-carriers. The rest of the army, consisting of some seven or eight hundred men, was left to come on by an easy, and it seems very careless march, under Moscoso, his camp-master.

§. It was now the 18th of October (1540), at an early hour in the morning, and while the troops were thus separated, and they were in the act of adjusting their encampment, that the war-cry of Tuscaloosa broke forth. In an instant hosts of Indians sallied from the houses, where they had been concealed. The place had previously been emptied of the matrons and children, and the ground about the town cleared as it were for battle. De Soto and his attendants were suddenly expelled from the fort, and its gates shut, leaving five dead. They were pressed so close that many of the horsemen could not get to their horses, which were unsaddled and tied to trees without, and forty noble animals were immediately pierced with arrows, and fell dead. The

Indians were divided in two columns, one of which attacked the horses, and the other the footmen. With the usual gallantry of himself and officers, De Soto led the remaining sixty horsemen and all his men to storm the fort. He was soon joined by some few of Moscoso's horse, and drove back the assailants. They found the gate closed, quite narrow, and well defended, and were dreadfully annoyed while before it, by the arrows which were shot from the walls and loop-holes with amazing force and accuracy. Some of his most gallant cavaliers were fatally pierced between the joints of their armor, and numbers of their horses killed. In the mean time the yells of the Indians were deafening; they beat their drums in loud defiance, and shook the spoils they had taken from the Spaniards in triumph at them, from the walls; and they were provided with stones to cast on such as came too near. De Soto could not maintain his position beneath the walls, and was compelled to retreat.

Seeing this, the courage of the Indians rose to the highest pitch of fury. Their yells and wild music were deafening; some of them sallied from the gates, others let themselves down from the walls, and rushed upon the Spaniards. The latter kept in close and compact bodies, and returned their charges. For three hours they fought in this manner; charging backward and forward, and over the plain; but the advantage, in point of numbers killed, was in favor of the Spaniards, who, although suffering severely, were cased in armor, while every blow was effective on their foes. At length the Indians withdrew from the plains, and shut themselves up in their fortress, and manned its walls.

De Soto now ordered his cavalry, being arrow-proof, to dismount, and taking battle-axes, to break open the gate. By this time the remaining horsemen had reached the field, and two hundred cavaliers dashed forward to his support. The gate was soon broken, though furiously defended by darts and stones, but was found too narrow to admit all. Some rushed in pell-mell, others battered the rude plastering from the walls and climbed over. The fight was furious. The Indians fought from the tops of their houses. They thronged the square. Lance, club, and missile, were wielded from every quarter. The struggle was so fierce, particularly from the roofs of the houses, that the Spanish soldiers, fearful lest the Indians should regain some houses that had been taken, set fire to them. This was a fatal act. As they were constructed of reeds and other combustible materials, fumes of smoke and flame soon spread through the place, and this added tenfold to the horrors of the scene. Those of the Indians whom the lance and battle-axe spared, were suffocated in the smoke, or leaped over the walls. The Indians fought with desperation; even their young women snatched up the swords of the slaughtered Spaniards, and mingled in the fight, showing more reckless desperation than even the men. The battle, in all its phases, lasted for nine hours. At length the Indians gave way. Those who left the fort fled in all directions, pursued by the cavalry. Those who were encountered within the walls, would neither give nor take quarter. They preferred to die on the spot, and to fight till the last gasp. Not a man surrendered. The slaughter was immense. The Spaniards acknowledge a loss of eighty-two men; eighteen of whom were shot by an arrow in the eye or mouth, so unerring was the aim. They lost forty-two horses. They claim to have killed twenty-five hundred natives. This battle appears to have been fought by the combined forces of the Creeks, Choctaws, and Chickasaws. Tuscaloosa fell, but his name has been perpetuated to the present day, though the traditions of his people do not reach back to the time of De Soto. Such a determined resistance De Soto had never met with. The feebler Peruvians had shown him no such instance of it. It was a victory dearly purchased, as in its practical effects it had all the evil consequences of a defeat. The worst thing that had befallen him was the loss of all his baggage and stores, and supplies. He had not even a scrap of lint left, to dress a wound. Clothing, extra equipage, goods which had been taken along as presents to Indians, or to repay their services, were all consumed. It made him moody and taciturn, and from this moment his whole plan of operation was changed. He had vested his ample fortune, acquired by the plunder of Atahualpa, in an adventure which had signally failed; hopes of golden empires appeared no longer to flit before his mind. He had been pushing on to reach the sea-coast, at the splendid harbor discovered by Moldenado, and now named Pensacola, or Perdido bay; where he supposed that commander to be awaiting his arrival, with new supplies from Spain. He had fixed on this as the capital of his projected settlement. He was now within less than a hundred miles of that point. But the battle of Mauvila had come like a dark cloud over his prospects. There were murmurs in his army; they had lost everything, even their clothes. He overheard some of his officers expressing the intention of embarking as soon as they reached the sea, and returning to Spain. He determined at once to balk this plan, and, as soon as the wounds of his men would permit, to change his course, and march towards the north. To the north he therefore wheeled, with all his forces, horse and foot. But an evil rumor went before him. The stand made by the Indians was heralded among them as a triumph. It had broken the charm of invincibility, and taught them the possibility of a victory even over the dreaded horse. And from this point, wherever he went, De Soto encountered nothing but hostility of the deepest kind. "War is what we want," said they; "a war of fire and blood."[1] Such was his reception, at the various points at which he encamped, before reaching the Mississippi. But from none of the tribes did he encounter such a determined resistance as from the Chickasaws. This tribe, who are closely allied to the Choctaws, have ever maintained a high character for bravery and independence, which probably has its origin in the times of De Soto, although their traditions, as I am assured by them (1852), do not reach those times.

His track laid across the Tuscaloosa and Tombigbee, leading north-westwardly till he came to the waters of the Yazoo. The village on the Tuscaloosa, at the site of the present capital of Alabama, was abandoned before him. But little opposition, indeed, was made till reaching the Tombigbee, where the Indians were found in force on its northern banks, to oppose his crossing. A messenger, who was despatched with offers of peace, was massacred in De Soto's sight; the Indians then fleeing, with loud shouts of triumph. Boats were constructed in two days, to cross the wide stream, after which the army marched on north-westwardly, which led them across the fertile uplands of Mississippi, till they reached a village called "Chicaza." This stood, apparently, on the banks of the Yazoo. It was now the 18th of December, an entire month after quitting the smoking ruins of Mauvila. The bleakness of autumn characterized the forest, and the season began to exhibit cold days and nights, before which the men shrunk. De Soto had not many days left the country of the Choctaws, and entered on that of the Chickasaws. The enemy vanished before him, and when pressed by the cavalry, retired into reedy thickets and positions, where they could not be followed. On entering the Chickasaw village, it was found completely deserted. There were some two hundred wigwams, occupying a gentle hill of oaks and walnuts, having a stream on either side. It was a favorable position for an encampment, and De Soto determined to occupy it for his winter quarters. For this purpose, he caused other and larger buildings to be erected with wood and straw, brought from neighboring hamlets. For two months he reposed in these quarters; sending out, however, almost daily, foraging and scouting parties into the adjacent forests.

---

[1] Theodore Irving, p. 288.

§. At length the thought to burn the encampment appears to have entered the minds of the Chicaksaws, and well did they conceal their plan till they could carry it into effect. For several nights previously, they had made feint night attacks on the camp, as if, by the frequency of these alarms, to throw the Spaniards off their guard; in the course of which time, however, the rapacity and lawlessness of the soldiers brought the commander into some serious difficulties. A dark and wild night was chosen by the Indians for the attack, when the wind was blowing strongly from the north. They proceeded in three parties, moving cautiously, and choosing the intervening spaces between the sentinels, to penetrate the camp. They carried live embers in covered clay jars, and in separate places set fire to the light combustible materials of which the wigwams and barracks were made. The wind soon blew it into a flame, which being fed by the dry straw mats, raged with the fierceness of a prairie on fire. It was at the most profound part of the night, and the soldiers, suddenly aroused from their slumbers by a terrible outcry, were half bewildered. Some of them at first took to the woods; but being recalled, joined in the fight, and as day broke the assailants were chased into the woods, and the army kept its ground.

De Soto, who always slept on his arms, at least "in doublet and hose," fought valiantly, and was finally sustained by his principal officers and men. But this midnight attack turned out to be more disastrous than even the terrible battle of

Mauvila. From the suddenness of the flames, some of the men barely leapt out with their lives, leaving a part of their arms and equipments. Swords and lances required to be re-tempered, for which purpose a forge was built. Many of the saddles were burnt, and much of the furniture of the houses consumed. Forty Spaniards had fallen in the combat. One woman, the only Spanish female in the army — a soldier's wife — was burned to death. Fifty horses had perished, either by the dart or by the fire, as it was impossible in the melée to untie them from the stakes; and many more were wounded. Another grievous loss was the swine, that had been driven so far as an element in the contemplated agricultural settlement. They had been penned, and nearly all of them perished in the fire.

§. This disastrous battle, following so soon after the conflict at Mauvila, was enough to appal the stoutest heart. Yet it was amazing with what energy the Spaniards set to work to repair their losses. In three days they established a new camp, within a league of the old site, to which De Soto gave the name of Chicacilla, or Little Chickasaw. Not only were their armorers put to work in repairing their arms, but while they remained in this position, which was during the rest of the winter, they made saddles, shields, and lances. Here they suffered greatly from cold and the want of suitable clothing and bedding — for the conflagration had left them nothing but what they had on their backs. It was the 1st of April (1541) before De Soto was ready to quit his encampment. But it was to encounter new opposition. The hostile spirit of the Indians seemed to be deeply and generally aroused in every direction. An easy march of four leagues, through open plains with deserted hamlets, brought them in sight of a strongly stockaded fort, called Alabama, (situated on the banks of a stream,) which was carried by assault, after a desperate resistance. In this contest the Spaniards had many men wounded, of whom fifteen died; and although they killed great numbers of the Indians, those who remained were in no wise humbled, and never omitted an opportunity to fall on their enemies, when they could do so to advantage. They appeared to be the most accurate and powerful marksmen with the arrow that can be imagined;—this deadly weapon being sometimes driven with such force as to pass through the entire body of a horse. After a halt of four days, to attend to their wounded and dead, they again set forward, still marching north, but through tangled and dense forests and waters, till they came to the banks of the Mississippi, which they appear to have struck at the lower Chickasaw bluffs. This discovery was indeed the grand and crowning point of his expedition, and is destined to carry his name to the latest times. Mines of gold and silver had indeed eluded his grasp, but by the discovery of this great artery of the North American continent, he had found the high golden way that was destined, in after years, to carry down the products of a valley of far greater value to the commerce of the world, than that of the proudest streams of antiquity. In comparison with this channel of wealth, the brilliant mines of Mexico and Potosi shine with diminished lustre. Already fifteen States of the American Union cluster on its mighty stream and innumerable branches, containing thrice the population of the dominions of old Spain, whose proud and chivalrous banners were first displayed to its breezes; and of the future population of this valley, this is hardly the centuple.

The village that was seated here was called Cheesca, ("Chisca.") Its chief had his lodgment on a high artificial mound, constructed for that purpose. The army, impatient of the continual attacks they had encountered, immediately rushed into it, and carried it by assault, making prisoners of the women and children, and taking whatever was found in it, and giving it up to the pillage of the soldiery. By this means the Spanish leader held in his hands hostages for good conduct; and he succeeded, on full negotiation, in concluding a peace. De Soto now desired peace. He had passed over the broad and magnificent area from Florida, verging far north, and traversing a very extensive line of country, to the banks of the Mississippi; and had learned, from hard experience, that his incessant conflicts with the Indians, though he might have killed double or treble his numbers, yet had the inevitable tendency to weaken his forces, exhaust his means, and dispirit his men. He had lost some of his best troops, nearly half of his noblest horses, and all his baggage; and, after his most chivalric battles, victory only gave him empty towns, or unbroken forests. The natural magnificence of the country kept up his hopes from encampment to encampment: but it was only the magnificence of woods, forests, and waters; occupied by a poor, brave, and hardy race, who were determined to sell their lives at the dearest rate, who had never submitted to the yoke of a conqueror. And he had found that every victory exhausted him, and that his army must at last melt away and be subdued by a continuation of such reverses.

But he determined, before coming to his final conclusion, to try one more excursion. It was to penetrate the undiscovered west, that separated him, he supposed, by no broad space, from the Pacific. The very boldness, width, and strength of the Mississippi, formed a barrier which invited his martial spirit to cross its channel. For this purpose he put his army in the best array, and, by slow marches, followed up the winding channel of the river for four days. To the joy of all his men, who had been threading dense forests, he deployed on a high open plain, on the immediate shores of the river, with high and steep banks. These were so abrupt, that he could neither ascend nor descend them. He was now evidently on the Chickasaw bluffs, opposite the first eligible grounds above the mouth of the St. Francis. Having determined to pass the river at this ancient crossing-place of the Indians, he halted for twenty days, and employed his men in constructing boats for this purpose. When they were completed, he launched them, and before daylight sent across a pioneer party, to gain the point of landing on the other side. The river was judged to be half a league in width, but deep and swift, carrying down on its surface uprooted trees and flood-wood. He effected his passage without molestation, and two hours before sunset, his whole force was safely across, and he thus turned his back on the fierce Appalachian tribes, who had so stoutly opposed him. Here then was the first expedition to penetrate that mighty and unconquerable west, which has for three centuries continued to be the theatre of geographical explorations, by the Spanish, French, and Americans. It was not, indeed, till 1806, under the conduct of Lewis and Clark, that De Soto's object was finally attained, the Cordilleras of the Rocky mountains scaled, and the Pacific shores reached.

§. De Soto was a man not to be daunted by slight or ordinary obstacles. He lifted his eyes to the western horizon with the contemplation of a hero. After five days' march, partly through lagoons, he reached the highlands of Missouri; and here he found himself surrounded by the Casque, who are supposed to have been the Kaskaskias of the Algonquin group; a people who, on the settlement of Illinois by the French, were found entirely east of the Mississippi. He here fell into a mistake, similar to that which he had made in his march to Cofatchique, in relation to the Uchees. The Kaskaskias received him with friendship; glad to find an ally who might sustain them in a war with a neighboring tribe. They accompanied him in great force against their enemies the Capaha (Quappas), under the plea of aiding in carrying the baggage and acting as scouts and pioneers; but they had no sooner reached the vicinity of their enemies, than they stealthily pushed ahead of the Spaniards and fell without mercy on the place, killing and scalping all they met with, and plundering the previously deserted village.

This subtle step cost De Soto a war. He attacked the tribe in a strong-hold in an island to which they fled, in the Mississippi, where he was deserted by his allies, who fled. His new enemies belonged to a large and different genera or group of the aborigines, who are known to us, ethnologically, as the Dacotas; the nomades of the western prairies. From this attack he withdrew with difficulty. He then returned to Casque, on the St. Francis, a large village with abundance of food, where he remained many days to recruit his army. He then marched south; but hearing reports of mineral wealth at the North, countermarched to the wild granitical regions on the sources of the St. Francis. This was the highest northern point west of the Mississippi river reached by him. He sent out runners to the salt country and to the buffalo country. He ranged through the Ozark mountains and the defiles of White river. He then crossed a rough elevated district to Tula in these broad highlands, and wintered in the country west of it. He came to a country after several days' march, which assumed a milder and more fruitful character. It afforded good pasturage for his horses, and the neighboring Indian villages gave him supplies of maize. He encountered severe weather, with snow storms; and organised parties to supply his camp with fuel from the contiguous forests. He was now on the north banks of the Arkansas at a high point, where he wintered, and he resolved, in the spring, to descend the river, with a view to carry into effect his long-meditated project of a colony. He selected a site on the eastern banks of the Mississippi for its capital, in the territory of a people who were sun-worshippers, and who were clearly by their language and religion the Natches. This tribe, which appears to have occupied a higher position on the Mississippi than they were found to possess at the period of the settlement of Louisiana, were called Quigualtangui. They manifested the deepest hostility, and ridiculed the idea of De Soto's being a child of the sun — an idea which he had thrown out in his message to them soliciting submission to his arms. "If you are a child of the sun," was the haughty reply, "return to him, dry up the Mississippi, and we will submit to you."

§. His affairs had now assumed a gloomy aspect; he regretted that he had not founded his contemplated settlement at Pensacola, or in Perdido bay. He determined to retrieve his position by building two vessels, to communicate with Cuba, and reinforce himself, and immediately began the work. In the midst of these activities, he was seized with a fever, and after a few days' confinement to his couch, sunk rapidly under its wasting fires, and yielded up his spirit.

He had previously appointed his successor in Moscoso, one of his chief officers. De Soto's death was carefully concealed from the Indians, from motives of policy. The Spaniards secretly buried him at midnight, and took every pains to conceal the spot of his interment, to prevent his body from being dug up and insulted by the Indians. It was finally determined to place it in a rude sarcophagus of wood, made from hewing out a heavy tree; and having done this, it was carefully rowed out into the centre of the channel of the Mississippi, and sunk.

Consternation was depicted on every brow. It was not immediately seen, that in the death of a man of his untiring energy, ready resource, and high heroic greatness of every kind, the expedition was in fact crushed. The maledictions of Acuero had been accomplished. Vitachucco and Tuscaloosa had not devoted their lives in vain, to defeat and destroy their proud conqueror. De Soto's death could not long be kept a secret from the Indians, and they gathered fresh courage in reflecting on his demise.

§. It had been a popular idea with the army, before De Soto's death, that they were within striking distance of the frontier settlements in Mexico; and Moscoso put the army once more in motion to realize this wild scheme. He persevered in the effort, marching towards the west. He everywhere encountered fierce and hostile tribes. These rude enemies had no property, no towns, no government; but were what they have remained to our days,—fierce nomades, living on game, and roving over immense spaces, as the seasons varied.

At length Moscoso became satisfied of the impracticability of reaching Mexico, and returned to the Mississippi, and resolved to build vessels and leave the country. This was accomplished by the greatest efforts of skill and labor. To take along their remaining horses, two wooden canoes, or boats, were lashed together. But the gathering Indians hung upon their rear, waylaid and attacked them in front, and never gave them rest, day or night, till they had killed every horse, destroyed some of the boats, and chased them to the very mouth of the river.

§. The track of De Soto has been a question of much discussion.

The march west of the Mississippi has been generally deemed to be very obscure in the Spanish narrative. Having, in early life, made my first exploratory trip,[1] in ranging among the semi-Alpine group of mountainous hills in Missouri and Arkansas, called Ozark, which were the scenes of De Soto's marches, the route has assumed, to me, a more definite character. This route was partly governed by the geological configuration of the country, and in some measure also by the ancient Indian trails and paths, which, later, gave direction to the routes of the earliest modern roads.

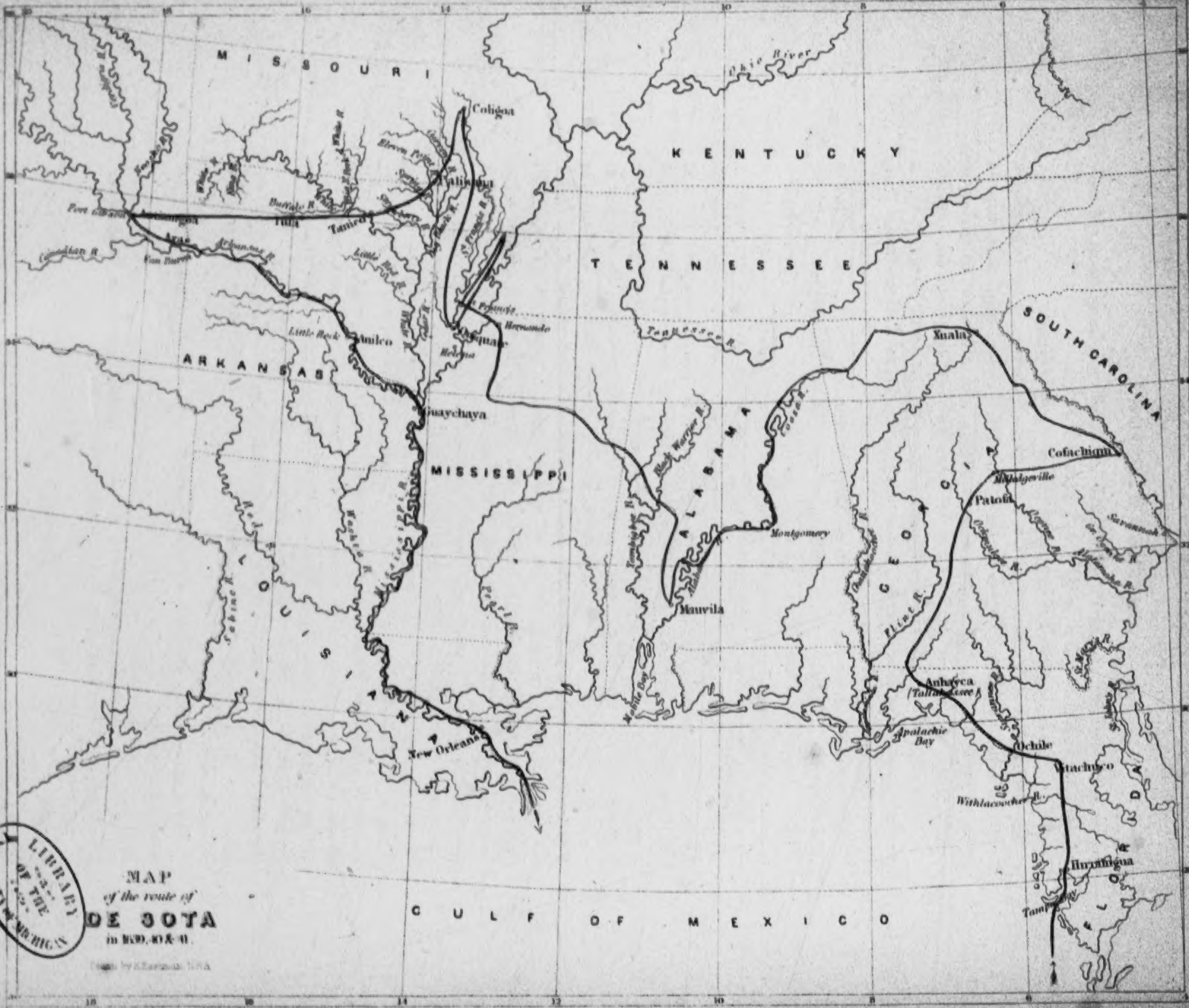
After crossing at the lower Chickasaw bluffs, he marched five days, on an Indian trail, over the alluvions of the Mississippi, west to the hill-country of the St. Francis, and reached the site of Casqui; probably a location of the Illinois Indians (Kaskaskias). He followed the wily chief of this village north-eastwardly, against his enemies the Capahas (Quappas), on a bayou of the Mississippi, difficult to approach from that quarter. This was, evidently, about seventy miles above his original landing point. He then returned south-west to the Casqui; then marched south to Quiguate, probably near Black river. Hearing fresh reports of mineral wealth, he now marched north-west to Coligoa, on the source of the St. Francis, to latitude about 35° 30′ or 36°. This was his utmost northern point. He was now at the foot of the high granitical peaks of St. Francis county, Missouri; celebrated, in modern days, for the Iron Mountains, and the lead and cobalt mines of La Motte. He now marched south, in search of a rich province called Cayas (Kanzas); and probably crossed the White river valley at Tanico. He thence crossed a hill country, to Tula, in the fine valley of Buffalo creek. The Indians here were ill-favored, tattooed, and ferocious. Recruiting at this place for twenty days, he passed an uninhabited region for five days, west, over the remaining elevations of the Ozark chain, and came to fertile prairies beyond, inhabited by Indians called Quipana, Pani, or Pawnee. A few days' further march brought him to the banks of the Arkansas, near the Neosho, which appears to have been about the present site of Fort Gibson. Here, in a fruitful country of meadows, he wintered. Next spring he marched down the north banks of the Arkansas, to a point opposite the present Fort Smith, where he crossed in a boat, previously prepared. He then descended the south bank of the river to Anilco (Little Rock), where the army crossed to the north bank, partly on rafts, and reached the mouth of the Arkansas, where he died.

These ancient lines of march will more distinctly appear in the diagram (Plate 44) herewith furnished.

---

[1] Adventures in the Ozark Mountains, recently revised, and published by Lippincott, Grambo & Co., Philadelphia; and forming an appropriate illustration of this portion of the text.

Plate [illegible]


MISSOURI
KENTUCKY
TENNESSEE
SOUTH CAROLINA
ARKANSAS
MISSISSIPPI
ALABAMA
GEORGIA
LOUISIANA
FLORIDA
GULF OF MEXICO
Ohio River
Tennessee R.
Coligua
Calisuta
Tanico
Tula
Autiamque
Ayas
Fort Gibson
Van Buren
Canadian R.
Arkansas R.
Buffalo R.
White R.
Little Red R.
Little Rock
Utianque
Eleven Points R.
St. Francis R.
Chisca
Casqui
Pacaha
Quiguate
St. Francis
Hernando
Chicaça
Quizquiz
Helena
Anilco
Guachoya
Red R.
Washita R.
Sabine R.
Mississippi R.
Pearl R.
New Orleans
Black Warrior R.
Tombigbee R.
Mobile Bay
Mauvila
Alabama R.
Coosa R.
Montgomery
Xualla
Cofachiqui
Milledgeville
Patofa
Ocmulgee R.
Oconee R.
Altamaha R.
Ogeechee R.
Savannah R.
Flint R.
Chattahoochee R.
Anhayca
(Tallahassee)
Apalachie Bay
Suwanee R.
Ochile
Vitachuco
Withlacoochee R.
St. Johns R.
St. Marys R.
Hurripiqua
Tampa Bay
10
12
14
16
18
30
32
34
36
6
8

MAP
of the route of
DE SOTA
in 1539, 40 & 41

Drawn by S. Eastman, U.S.A.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

II. MANNERS AND CUSTOMS. B.

MANNERS AND CUSTOMS. B.

SYNOPSIS.

A. GENERIC TRAITS OF MIND.

1. Dignity of Indian Thought.
2. The Indian pronounced very low in the Scale by Philosophers.
3. Testimony of the French Missionary Authors.
4. American Testimony on this Topic.
5. True State of the Hunter-man.
6. Basis of Character. On what Founded.
7. Imperturbability.
8. Taciturnity.

B. TRACES OF FOREIGN ORIGIN. (1 Plate.)

9. Scarifications on the Loss of Friends. Scalping.
10. Immortality in a Future State.
11. Primary Duality of the Deity.
12. A Persic Trait.
13. Not Buddhists.
14. Hebrew Customs.

C. DISTINCTIVE PHASES OF THE HUNTER STATE. (3 Plates.)

15. Government Patriarchal.
16. Gathering Wild Rice.
17. Watching the Corn-fields.
18. Woman in the Savage State.
19. Striking the War Post.

D. COSTUME. (7 PLATES.)

20. General State of Indian Costume.
21. Moccasin.
22. Esquimaux Boot.
23. Leggin—Male and Female.
24. Characteristic Remarks.
25. War Coat.
26. Head Dress.
27. Winter Caps.
28. Agimi, or Snow-Shoe.
29. Azian, or Breech-Cloth.
30. Necklace.
31. Ornaments from Oregon and California.

E. ACCOUTREMENTS. (3 PLATES.)

32. Quiver.
33. Shield.
34. War Flag.
35. Tobacco Pouch.
36. Navoho Wigwams. (1 Plate.)

A. GENERIC TRAITS OF MIND.

1. THE scope of thought of the Indian tribes, when they stand forth to utter their sentiments and opinions in public, is more elevated and high-minded, and evinces more readiness of expression, than is generally found among the lower uneducated classes of civilized nations. The talent for speaking is earnestly cherished. During a long intercourse with various tribes, I have often been surprised by the noble style of their thoughts, and their capacity to rise above selfishness, and assume a high heroic attitude. It is difficult sometimes for the interpreters to follow, or understand these veins of lofty thought, and to do justice to the aboriginal oratory. If these flights are not always sustained, it may be said that they are sometimes so; and we must judge the Indian as we do civilized nations, by their best examples. That a people who are often depressed, so as to be put to their wit's ends for means of subsistence, should rise to elevation of thought at all, is surprising.

The hunter mind is so deeply fascinated with its ideal of freedom, that it seeks occasion to burst through the fetters imposed by the irksome pressure of civilization; and, as a relief, it gives vent to these bold and free flashes of thought. Their forms of language would appear to be too narrow to permit this, were it not that the purposes of generalization are effected by bold and striking metaphors, which are often violent indeed, but sometimes surpassingly simple and appropriate. "I stand in the path,"[1] the exclamation of Pontiac to the commander of a British force marched into his country in 1763, is a metaphor denoting imperial sway in the West, worthy of Napoleon in the palmiest days of his wonderful career, of putting his feet on the necks of the kings and emperors of Europe.

2. This trait of intellectual vigor elicited early remark, on the settlement of America. But it is worthy of note that the best instances of it were not found in the elevated table-lands and heights of Anahuac, Caxamarca, and Cuzco, on the slope of the Andes, but among the free forest tribes who wielded the bow and arrow in North America. The absence of such traits in the Montezumas and Atahualpas, who were looked to as the earliest exponents of Indian sentiment, appears to be the most natural and tenable reason that can be assigned for such sentiments as were uttered by Buffon and De Pauw; who, on a survey of Mexican and Peruvian history, pronounced the human species in America, together with the whole animal creation on this continent, diminutive, despicable, and debased.

3. The opinions of French missionaries to New France were singularly in opposition to this dogma of the eminent philosophers named. Struck by the bold and manly bearing of the Indian sachems, and their ready powers of oratory, they sent back the most glowing accounts of the natural capacity of this people.

Pere le June, one of the earliest missionaries, remarks—"I think the savages, in point of intellect, may be placed in a high rank. Education and instruction alone are wanting. The powers of the mind operate with facility and effect. The Indians I can well compare to some of our own villagers who are left without instruction. Yet I have scarcely seen any person who has come from France to this country, who does not acknowledge that the savages have more intellect or capacity than most of our own peasantry."[2]

Lafitau says—"They are possessed of sound judgment, lively imagination, ready conception, and wonderful memory;" and that "they are high-minded and proud; possess a courage equal to every trial; an intrepid valor, and the most heroic constancy under torments; and an equanimity which neither misfortune nor reverses can shake."

---

[1] Major Rogers's Nar., Brit. Ann. Register.

[2] Relation.

Pere Jerome Lallemant writes—"Many are disposed to despair of the conversion of this people, from their being prejudiced against them as barbarians, believing them to be barely human, and incapable of becoming Christians. But it is very wrong to judge them thus, for I can truly say that, in point of intellect, they are not at all inferior to the natives of Europe; and had I remained in France, I could not have believed that, without instruction, nature could have produced such ready and vigorous eloquence, or such a sound judgment in their affairs, as that which I have so much admired among the Hurons."

La Potherie observes that, "when they talk in France of the Iroquois, they suppose them to be barbarians, always thirsting for human blood. This is a great error. The character which I have to give of that nation is very different from what these prejudices assign to it. The Iroquois are the proudest and most formidable people in North America, and at the same time, the most politic and sagacious."

Charlevoix remarks—"The beauty of their imagination equals its vivacity, which appears in all their discourse: they are very quick at repartee, and their harangues are full of shining passages, which would have been applauded at Rome or Athens. Their eloquence has a strength, nature, and pathos, which no art can give, and which the Greeks admired in the barbarians."

4. Similar testimony is expressed by numerous other foreign writers of early periods, all of whom, with the exception of Buffon and De Pauw, concur in the position, that the Indian mind possesses great vigor, and strong powers of perception, eloquence, and imagination. American writers have approached the subject with more soberness of apprehension, and with a perpetual recollection, it would seem, of the Indians' general defects of induction, forecast, and stability of character. The aborigines are perceived to possess an imagination of a peculiar, apparently a very ancient and oriental, cast. Their natural eloquence has commanded general admiration, as possessing some of the very highest elements. Thought has seldom been brought home to human actions more forcibly, than it is seen in some of their more celebrated harangues and oratorical efforts. Mr. Jefferson has given us a most remarkable instance of their oratorical powers, in his Notes on Virginia.[1] Mr. Cadwallader Colden had noticed this trait nearly forty years before, and expresses his opinion that the interpreters did injustice to the native speakers. "I must own," he says, "that I

---

[1] The facts connected with the speech of Logan are so fully and elaborately considered, in a discourse delivered before the Maryland Historical Society, 9th May, 1851, by Brantz Mayer, Esq., as to leave nothing more to be said on the subject. It is clearly shown, by the testimony of General G. R. Clarke, that Logan was mistaken in asserting that the murder of his family was perpetrated by Captain Michael Cresap. It was the act of one Daniel Greathouse, at a time when Captain Cresap was at another point on the Ohio: the latter, on hearing of this cruel and perfidious act, expressed his utter abhorrence of it. Cresap was truly a man whose name and fame had rendered him an object of fear and respect by the western Indians: but he was as humane as he was politic and brave; and his patriotism and military services were of the highest value to the cause of American independence.

suspect our interpreters may not have done justice to the Indian eloquence. For the Indians, having but few words and few complex ideas, use many metaphors in their discourses, which, interpreted by an unskilful tongue, may appear mean, and strike our imagination faintly, but under the pen of skilful representations, might strongly move our passions by their lively images."[1]

De Witt Clinton, in his discourse before the New York Historical Society, in 1811, pays a tribute to the Iroquois stock of the Indian family. "No part of America contains a people which furnish more interesting information, and more useful instruction; which will display the energies of the human character in a more conspicuous manner, whether in light or shade; in the exhibition of great virtues or talents, or of great defects."[2]

5. The Indian mind is not capable of strong powers of excogitation. It perceives quickly, and reasons very well on those topics which are familiar to the hunter state. Neither is it progressive at all. It rather reverts to what is past, than to what is to come; and it dwells on these reminiscences with a degree of satisfaction and approval, as if the age of hunting was the golden age of Indian history; and all that he sees around him tells him that that is past. There is but little disposition to pry into the future condition of human society, and none whatever to seek its improvement. Allusion is had, of course, to the most elevated minds. The common mass hardly think at all; and there is absolutely nothing, in any clan, of a progressive tendency. Its original conceptions are reproduced at intervals of one, two, and three centuries. It does not accumulate images and ideas, as happens in civilized and learned life, by the reading of books. The skies, the woods, and the waters, are the Indian's books. He reads them, and expresses himself poetically concerning them, as well, indeed, at the earliest points of his history, as he does at the present day. Acuera, Vitachucco, and Tuscaloosa, were as good interpreters of the Indian views and sentiments, as Powhatan, Tamanend, and Connassatego. The thought-work is, perhaps, improved a century later, if judged by the eloquent voices of Garragula, Myontonimo, and Pontiac. We get a sterner view of the effects of civilization on the Indian mind and institutions in our own day, by listening to the harangues of a Tecumseh, a Red Jacket,[3] or a Thyendanegea. If there be an intellectual declension in aboriginal character, it is in those tribes who have come more immediately in contact with civilization, and fallen under the misconceptions and temptations of mixed society. In these cases, the change is not a mental progress, but a letting-go, as it were, of the Indian beau ideal of original thought. It is a step downward. The wild and unsubdued tribes are ever the boldest and freest in their oratory. But their

---

[1] History of the Five Nations. London, 1747.

[2] Collections of the New York Historical Society, Vol. II., page 10. New York, Van Winkle and Wiley. 1814.

[3] See Plate (25).

powers of oratory cannot be taken as a measure of their capacity for meeting the practical questions of life. To think closely and consecutively, to plan well, and to execute with firmness and perseverance, are the characteristics of the human mind in a high state of civilization. If the Indian mind could be taken apart, as a piece of mechanism, it would be found to be an incongruous and unwieldy machine, which had many parts that did not match, and which, if likened to a watch, only ran by fits and starts, and never gave the true time. The materials of which it is constructed would be found most diverse,—as "wood, clay, stubble," mud, and dross; bright and foul things would be found in close proximity, and they could not be cemented or bound firmly together.

6. What are the facts that the Indian mind has had to guard against? Physical suffering of the intensest character! This has made him to exhibit the most hardened and stoical qualities. Sometimes deception of a deep dye! This has made him eminently suspicious of every one and everything, even things without life; for, being a believer in necromancy and witchcraft, he has had to suspect all forms of life and matter. It became a prime object, in all classes, to suppress the exhibition of the feeling of nervousness, susceptibility, and emotion. He was originally eminently a man of concealments. He always anticipated harm, never good. Fear and suspicion put double guards upon him. A look or a word might betray him, and he therefore often had not a look or a word to bestow. This severe mental discipline made him a stoic of the highest character to his enemies, and to all whom he had reason to fear or suspect. It is the aged, the sedate, the experienced, to whom these traits peculiarly apply. If such men are dignified and reserved before strangers and councils, it is the dignity of Indian philosophy. No wonder the French missionaries and officers of the crown admired such a man, and made strong efforts to convert him, and transmitted enthusiastic reports of him to the court of France.

7. Imperturbability, in all situations, is one of the most striking and general traits of the Indian character. To steel his muscles, to resist the expression of all emotion, seems to be the point of attainment; and this is to be particularly observed on public occasions. Neither fear nor joy are permitted to break this trained equanimity. The newest and most ingenious contrivance placed before him, is not allowed to produce the least expression of wonder; and, although his language has provided him with many exclamations of surprise, he cannot, when placed in the gaze of public observation, be induced to utter any, even the slightest of them, to mark emotion. The mind and nerves are schooled to this from the earliest hours; and it is deemed to be a mark of timidity or cowardice to permit his countenance to denote surprise. In this stern discipline of the mind and nerves, there is no appreciable difference in the whole Indian race situated between the tropic and arctic zones. Heat of climate has

not been found to have had the effect to relax the habit, nor cold to make him forget the unvarying severity of cautiousness, or of what is conceived to be its manly requirements. The Inca Atahualpa ordered some of his warriors to be immediately put to death, because they had evinced some emotion of surprise at the sight of Pizarro's cavalry, who had been directed to curvet before him;[1] although the *horse* was everywhere, on his first introduction, known to be the especial object of Indian wonder and fear.

8. Taciturnity is a habit of mind very consonant to the maxims and experiences of the hunter life. Where the punishment of hot or hasty words is often the knife or club, a man is compelled to deliberate well before he utters a sentiment. It is a maxim in Indian life, that a man who is sparing of his words is discreet. The habits of the forest tend to show this. Public speaking, and talking, are different acts. A speech or an oration is left for public councils and occasions; and is, therefore, thoughtfully prepared. There is always a private council to determine what shall be said, and a man appointed to speak, who is not always a chief. This preparation is often so carefully made, that it was customary in early times, on great occasions, to have a string of wampum, to serve as a memorial or symbol to every paragraph or topic.[2] I have, in the course of more than twenty years' official dealings with them, found their private councils to precede every important measure to be discussed; and a public answer was seldom given, without first assembling by themselves to deliberate. The requirements of the highest diplomatic circle could hardly, indeed, prescribe greater caution and concealment than is observed in their public treaties; and in these two qualities we may take a Talleyrand and Metternich, and a Pontiac and Tecumseh, as the two extremes where barbarism and civilization meet: it would be difficult to determine in which two classes of diplomatists profound concealment and deception most abound.

B. TRACES OF FOREIGN ORIGIN.

9. Nations between whom no intercourse or commingling of languages is supposed to have existed, may yet develope a similarity in certain manners and customs. The most that can be contended for, is that striking and general customs imply early intercommunication. Some shadowings of an Asiatic origin, it is thought, are to be seen in the existing customs and beliefs of the Indians. Such is the practice of cutting and scarifications of their arms and legs, to denote sorrow for the dead; a custom which is mentioned in the sacred writings, and also by Grecian and Roman writers, as

---

[1] Prescott's Conquest of Peru.

[2] Colden's Five Nations.

a characteristic of barbarians. The practice of scalping appears to have been a Hebrew custom.[1]

10. The doctrine of the immortality of the soul is distinctly taught by most of the North American Indians. No one can have been a witness to their funerals, and heard the address which it is customary to make to the corpse, while it is lying dressed out, ready for burial, in the best of habiliments, without being strongly impressed with this idea. And the customs and observances connected with its interment on elevated dry ground, with the implements and ornaments of life, and the lighting of the symbolical funeral fire, for several nights, on the grave, which is an Algonquin custom, appear to denote that the soul is believed to be observant of the respect paid to the body, and that a reunion of the two is believed in. A very ancient notion appears to reveal itself in the gift of food that is offered, for some time, to the dead—namely, the soul's *duality*.[2] It would seem that they believed in a sensual and local soul, as distinguished from an ambient and absent spirit. They act only what they believe. Why make an offering which there is no belief to justify? The human mind rejects this.

11. One of the strongest, and, at the same time, the most ancient point of Indian belief, is that of the DUALITY OF GOD. This was the leading doctrine in the Zendavesta of Zoroaster; and was a common oriental notion long before the son of Terah was called from the plains of Persia to cross the Euphrates. Everywhere our Indians have upheld this idea of a duality of gods; giving one *good*, and the other *evil* powers; with its ancient developments of subordinate polytheisms.

12. Equally general has been the notion on this continent, in all its latitudes, that the sun is the symbol of the beneficent Creator and upholder of their great cosmogonic frame, imparting light and warmth for the benefit of mankind. Very incongruous and horrid rites of offering and sacrifice have, it is true, as was especially seen among the Aztecs and Toltecs, been built up on this foundation, obscuring its simpler ancient forms. Yet this belief was at the foundation of all their religious schemes. While victims were sacrificed to Huitzil Opochtli, the sun was still regarded as the symbol of beneficence. The duality of God was to be observed by the Toltecs and Aztecs; but it was only the malignant attributes that claimed the chief worship. And upon these, deeply associated as they were with the continuance of the earth, as marked in their astronomical system, the native priesthood relied for their power.

The ancient nations "sacrificed to their drag," and made gods of war and battle. Yet they had their Astarte, their Osiris, their priests of On, and their Baals, in every grove. Even the temple service did not escape the contamination of the sun-worship, in the days of its gross declension.[3]

---

[1] Psalms.

[2] See Vol. I., p. 33.

[3] Ibid. p. 30.

13. There seems but little, in their manners and customs, to connect the American Indians with the Hindoo race, notwithstanding the resemblances in some of their physical traits. They did not burn their dead, even in the torrid zone. Widows never ascended the funeral pyre. Old men were not committed to the sacred waves of the Amazon, the Orinoco, or the Mississippi. There was no western Ganges. They did not swing on hooks of steel. They did not fall before the car of a western Juggernaut. There is no infanticide. There are no traits of *caste.* The extreme excess of the polytheism of Buddhism was not practised, though each element had its attributed god.

Yet, like the Hindostanese, they worship the spirits of their ancestors. They both place cakes on their graves and sepulchres, and pour out libations. Vide Vol. I., p. 38.

14. The strong trait in Hebrew compound words, of inserting the syllable el or a single letter in the names of children, derived from either the primary or secondary names of the deity, does not prevail in any Indian tribes known to me. Neither are circumstances attending their birth or parentage, which were so often used in the Hebrew children's names, ever mentioned in these compounds.[1] Indian children are generally named from some atmospheric phenomenon. There are no traces of the rites of circumcision, anointing, sprinkling, or washing, considered as consecrated symbols. Circumcision was reported as existing among the Sitkas, on the Missouri; but a strict examination proved it to be a mistake.

The practice of making a feast of the first animal killed at the opening of the hunting season, is well known to be quite general with the tribes. It is the remark of observers, that the animal devoted to this feast must be all eaten and nothing left. There is evidently some deep feeling or superstition, of luck to happen in the hunter's life after this feast; and its rites and ceremonies are regarded with the strictness of an old custom.

Whether the practice itself, or the custom of eating the entire carcase, would have been deemed a coincidence with the solemn Hebrew rite of eating the paschal lamb, had we not a pre-conceived theory of the Hebraic origin of the tribes (promulgated first, I think, by Grotius), may be questioned. What has been said of not breaking the bones, is not confirmed by any observation of mine; on the contrary, it is common to preserve the head-bones, and garnish them in some way, as memorials of hunter triumph.

---

[1] One of the most striking traits of resemblance in the sound, orthography, and definition of words of the aboriginal languages to the Hebrew, is that of the verb denoting existence; a fact mentioned in the grammatical remarks in Vol. II., § Language, where the conjugation of the Indian verb is given at length. It appears from Gesenius, that the Hebrew term for deity, יְהוָה, is made up from the root הָוָה—i. e., being or existence. The aspirate ה is not, perhaps, always as fully sounded in the Indian. The combination of the two long vowels I and A, as heard in I-au, more perfectly denotes it; but the aspirate is often distinctly heard from Indian lips. The particle au, so frequent a sound in the language, is a derivative from this word, and conveys the meaning of being or existence, through its complex lexicography. Thus I-au-dizzi is a living being: izzi being a personal generic particle. And Ogeem-au, a chief, from Ogeem, a grandfather, and au, the declarative particle for existence.

The most striking custom of apparently Hebraic origin, is the periodical separation of females, and the strong and universal idea of uncleanness connected therewith.

Some of the choruses of their religious dances are deemed by observers to excite the mysterious and awe-inspiring. But these choruses differ among the different stocks, and the sequence of syllables mentioned as being sacred, by Adair, is thought to be almost purely fanciful. They dance under any and every excitement, and there is nothing of moment concluded with them without a dance.

One of the most characteristic of their social dances, is what is vulgarly termed the Beggar's dance: (vide Plate 3.) This dance is got up in the native villages, whenever a specific contribution is required. At the towns and garrisons on the frontiers, the object is generally to solicit tobacco, food, or liquor.

C. DISTINCTIVE PHASES OF THE HUNTER STATE.

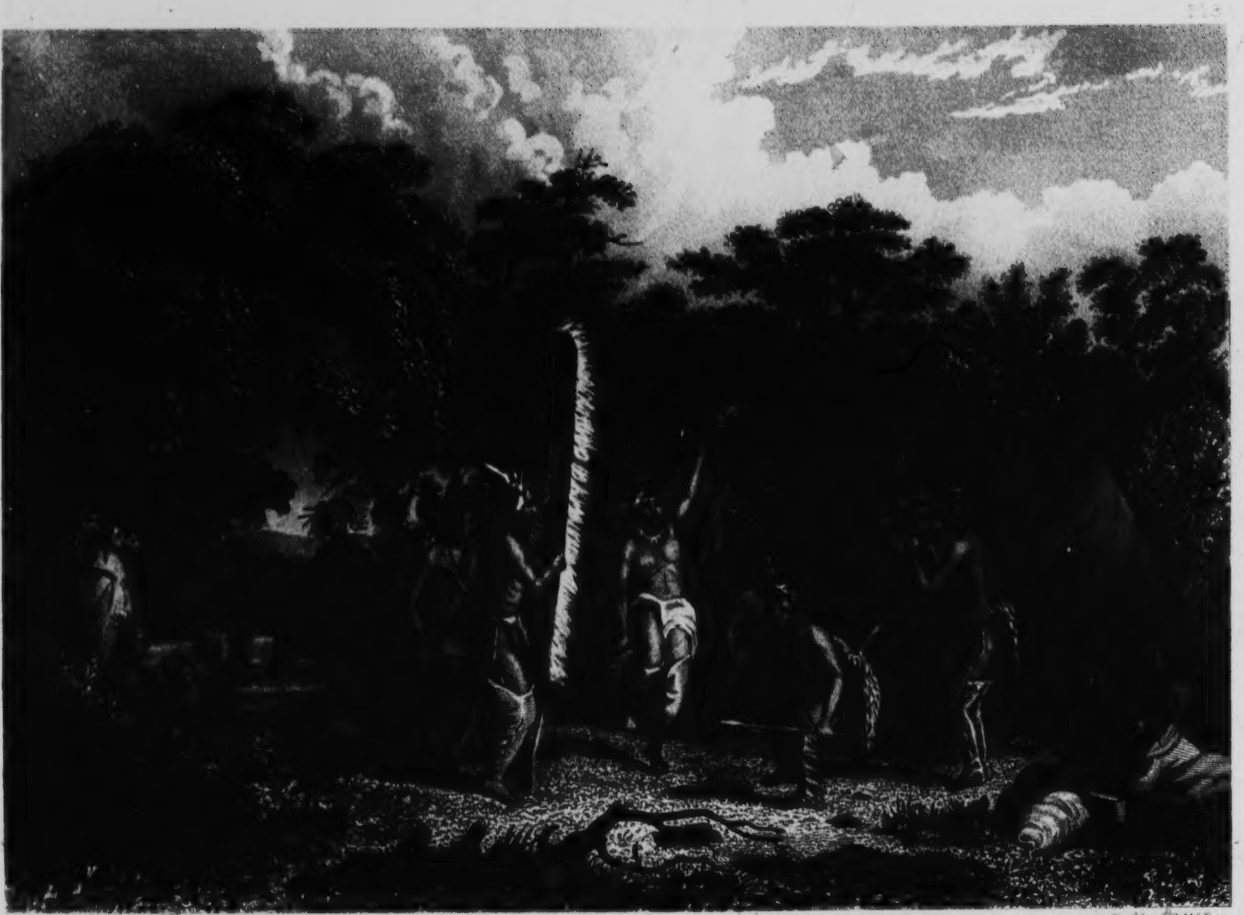
15. The extreme antiquity of Indian society appears to be attested by their adherence to the patriarchal state. The father of the family is the source of power and authority. He becomes in the various languages the Inca,[1] the Micco,[2] the Ogima,[3] Sachem,[4] Rakawana,[5] or whatever form of language or power the chieftainship assumes. These are the legitimate words to be interpreted king, lord, emperor, czar, or whatever forms aristocratic or despotic systems of government may require. The Iroquois used the term Atotarho for the presiding officer of their league; but as to power, he was a mere moderator, and in his costume a simple baldric and feather could make him. Tecarahoga, a word which has been exhibited by writers[6] on the Iroquois as an equivalent for generalissimo, was a mere term for a tribal war-captain, and did not denote an officer of the confederacy.

Mishinowa, in the Algonquin, signifies, a bringer; one who acts as an economical aid to the chief. The word is from the verb *meezh*, to bring. If he is to bring aid in war, he then takes the name of Ogimaus.

16. In the shallow waters of the rivers and lakes, extending north of the latitude 40°, the Zizania Palustris is found in such quantities as to furnish one of the principal means of Indian subsistence. It is thus still obtained in the principal shallow lakes and streams of Michigan, Wisconsin, Iowa, Minnesota, and in the valleys of the upper Mississippi and Missouri. It is ripe in September. The labor of gathering it is a care of the females. The places where each family is to gather it, are generally

---

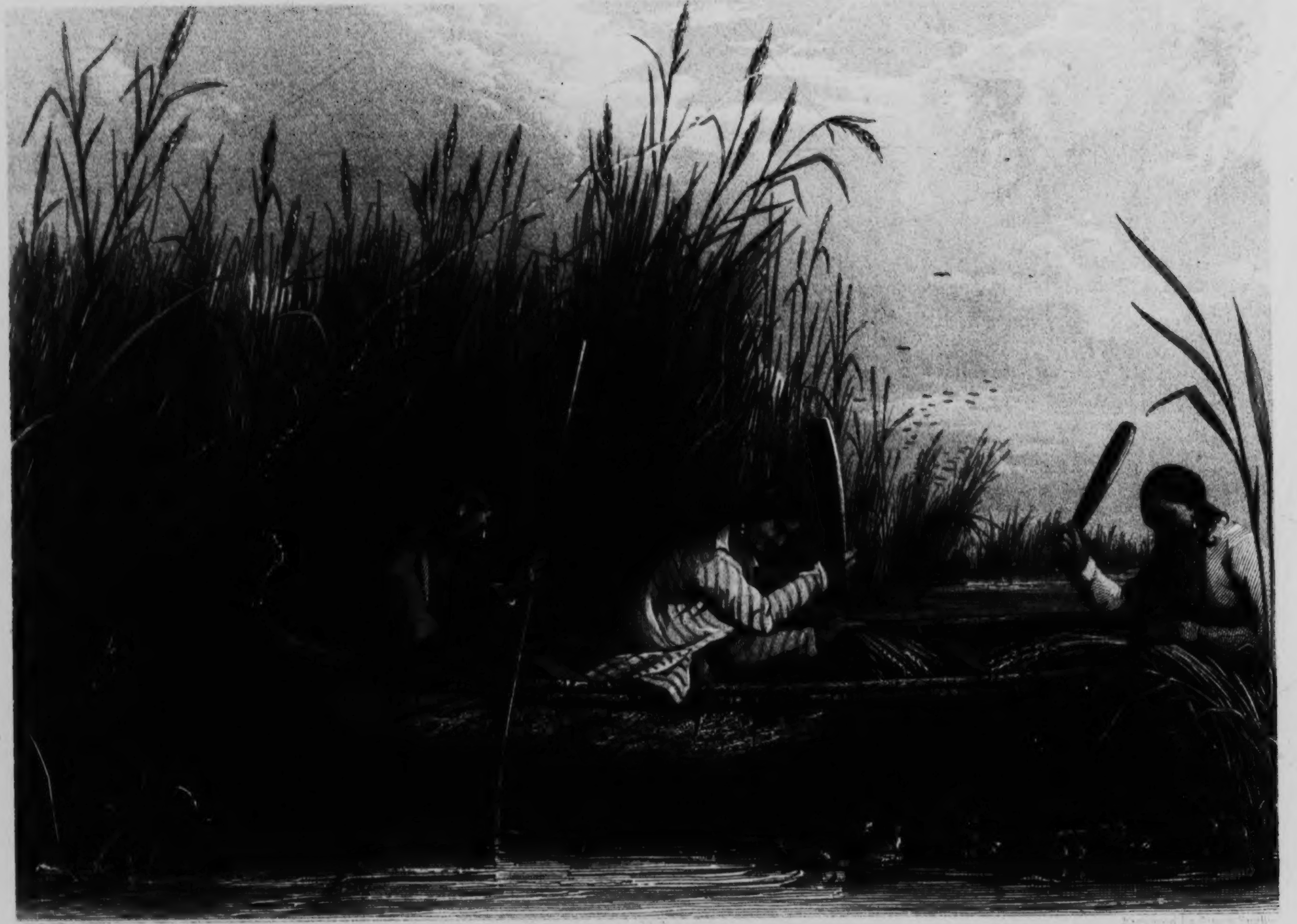
[1] Peruvian. [2] Creek. [3] Chippewa. [4] North-east Algonquin. [5] Mohawk. [6] Vide Stone's Life of Brant.



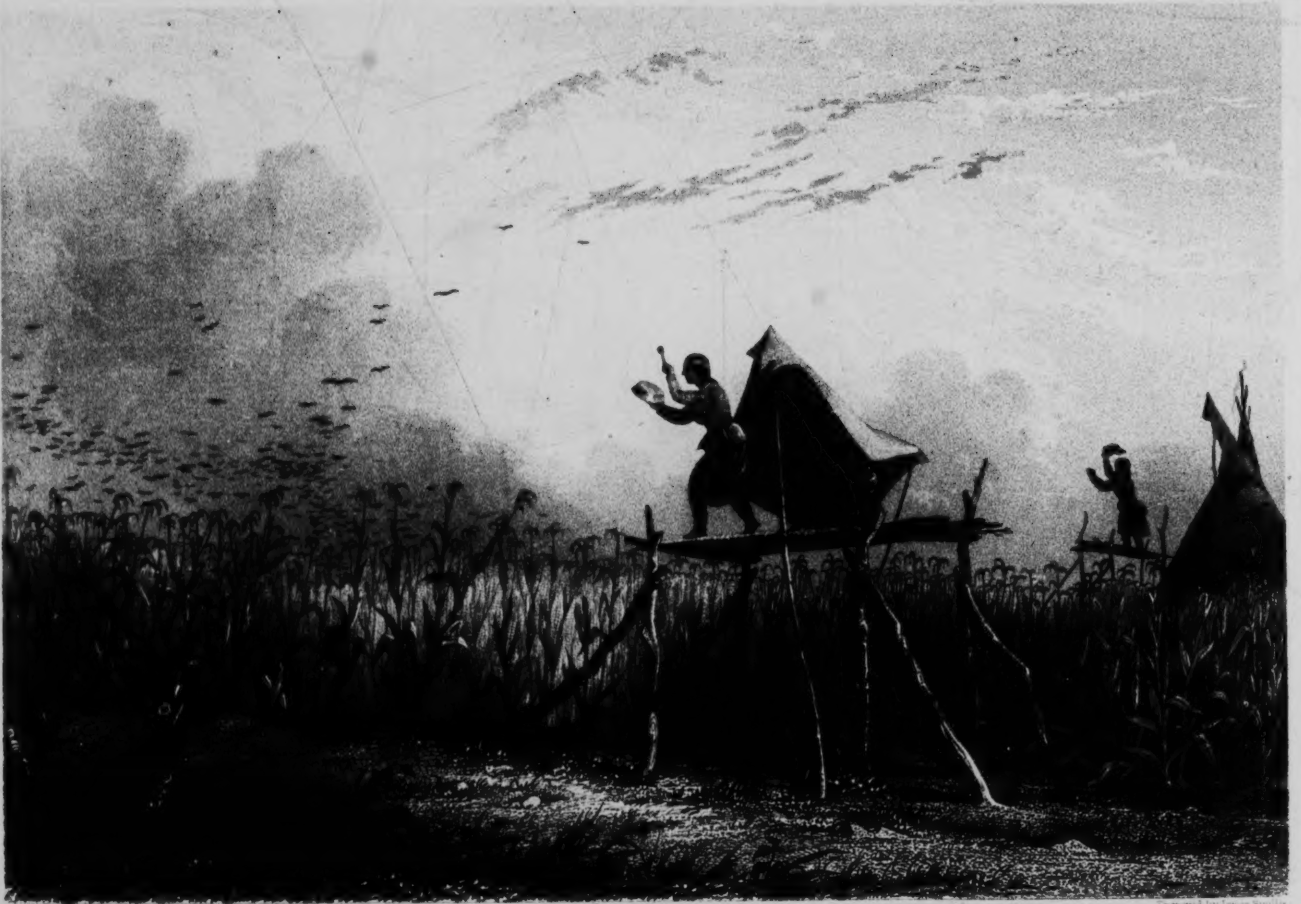
Drawn by Capt. S. Eastman U.S.A.

Engᵈ by J. C. McRae

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN



LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN



Drawn by Capt. S. Eastman U.S.A.

Engraved by James Smillie

GUARDING THE CORN FIELDS

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

selected and known beforehand. When the capsule is in a fit state to part with the grain, by agitation, the gathering is commenced. This is generally done by two or three females; one of whom takes the bow and the other the stern of a moderate-sized hunting-canoe, which has been previously cleansed and is perfectly water-tight and dry. They shove the canoe into the field of rice, and bending the stalks in handfulls over the sides of the canoe, beat out the grain with paddles. (Vide Plate 4, Vol. III.)

The Zizania Palustris is a small cylindrical grain, of about half an inch in length, covered by a very thin pellicle, of a dark color. This pellicle adheres tightly, and is left on the grain, and is consequently of a dark color when served up. It is boiled, in plain water, to the consistence of hominy, and is eaten with a spoon. It contains more gelatinous matter than the southern rice, and is very nutritious. It is also sometimes roasted and eaten dry. When taken from the bottom of the canoe, it is full of husks, and requires to be winnowed. It is then put into coarse Mushkemoots, a kind of bag, made of vegetable fibre or twine, with a woof of some similar material. Occasionally this filling material is composed of old cloth or blankets, pulled to pieces. These bags of rice are laid aside for winter use; and much of it is sold to the traders, to subsist their men, on their visits to the Indians.

17. It is found, among the bands who raise the zea maize, that, as the grain ripens, attention is required, in some seasons, to keep the rails, blackbirds, and other graminivorous species, from destroying the crop. This is a precautionary labor that also falls to the share of the matrons, girls, and boys. Such is the fierceness of these predatory attacks, that a particular kind of staging is sometimes erected in the field, on which the watchers sit, to frighten away the birds. (Vide Plate 5, Vol. III.)

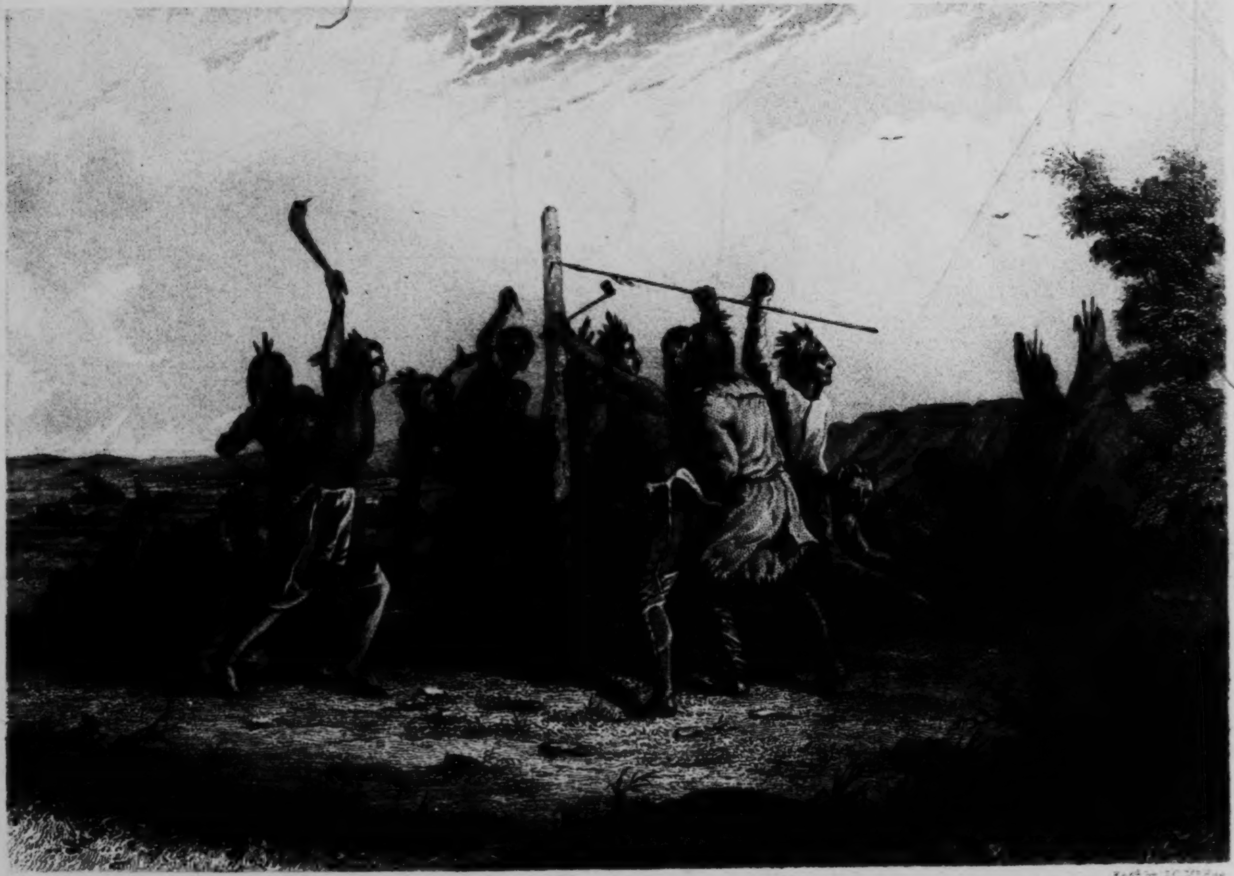
18. Woman, wherever she is, mitigates society. Without her, the savage state would be demoniacal. Entrusted by nature with certain instinctive principles of truth, education and refinement prepare her for the noblest ends; but, even in the savage state, her benign influence is not lost. The savage, when he returns from war or hunting, is fatigued by over-exertion. Tensity of nerves and stoicism of habit — rage and fury — the pursuit of vengeance and blood — all these exhaust the savage mind, and he comes back to his wigwam to find repose. The first object that greets his eye in the lodge, is his wife and children. This is pleasing to his heart; the very sight of babes, who are too feeble to walk or talk well, soothes his mind, and turns it away from ideas of cruelty and blood.

It is not customary to indulge in warm greetings. The pride and stoicism of the hunter and warrior forbid it. The pride of the wife, who has been made the creature of rough endurance, also forbids it. But though her lips are silent, she is busy. She hands him his smoking apparatus. She gives him clean and dry moccasins. She puts on her little pot, with its forest viands and his wild rice, and by the time he has fully recollected himself, according to Indian notions, and done justice to his philosophical sense of taciturnity and imperturbability, the bark onagon (dish) is set before him; and he is made to feel that there is at least one person whose hand is not against him. I once saw a Fox Indian on the banks of the Mississippi, near whose wigwam I had, unnoticed to him, wandered, take up his male infant in his arms and several times kiss it — a proof that Indians, if generally stoical, are sometimes in the melting mood.

19. Whoever has observed the varying phases of Indian society, as it exists both in the forest and prairies that stretch between the Alleghany and Rocky mountains, must have become sensible that the feature of military glory constitutes the prime object of attainment. It is not, we confess, such military glory as is gained among civilized nations at the cannon's mouth, or by charging on the enemy in well-drilled squadrons. There are no walled towns to batter down, or moats to scale. But the object of attainment is the same. It is to prove that one set of men are braver or stronger than another. The civilized warrior receives a badge of honor and a title from his monarch's hands. The Indian is content with an eagle's feather fastened in his hair. His step is as proud, his satisfaction for the honor as great and vivid.

One of the principal means of cultivating this spirit in the Indian, is a public assemblage for reciting the deeds of bravery in the tribe. For this purpose a post is erected on some eligible spot, where the whole tribe can conveniently witness the ceremonies. This post is painted red, the usual symbolic color of war. Music is provided by the Indian tawaiegon or drum, and rattles; and by having present a corps of singers, who are adepts in the Indian songs and choruses. After these preliminary flourishes, to excite the feeling of military ardor, a sharp yell gives them notice that one of the warriors present is about to recite his exploits. The music immediately stops, and gives place to the most profound attention. Dressed out in his highest "braveries" and war-marks, the warrior then steps forward, and with his club and lance strikes the painted post. No ancient hero, drawn by Homer, could exhibit more fire, in words and acts, while he details his exploits. He accompanies every gesture with the precise voice and unction proper to the narration; and when he finishes his recital, the whole assembly of warriors unite in yells of victory and defiance. The music and singing then re-commence, and are continued till another warrior signifies his readiness to recite his bravery. Hours on hours are thus employed, till all who wish have acted their parts. This ceremony is called striking the post. In this manner the war spirit is fanned. It is a forest school, in which the young boys learn their first lesson; and they become the prey of an ambition which is never gratified till they have torn the bloody scalp from an enemy's head. (Vide Plate 6, Vol. III.)

No. 6



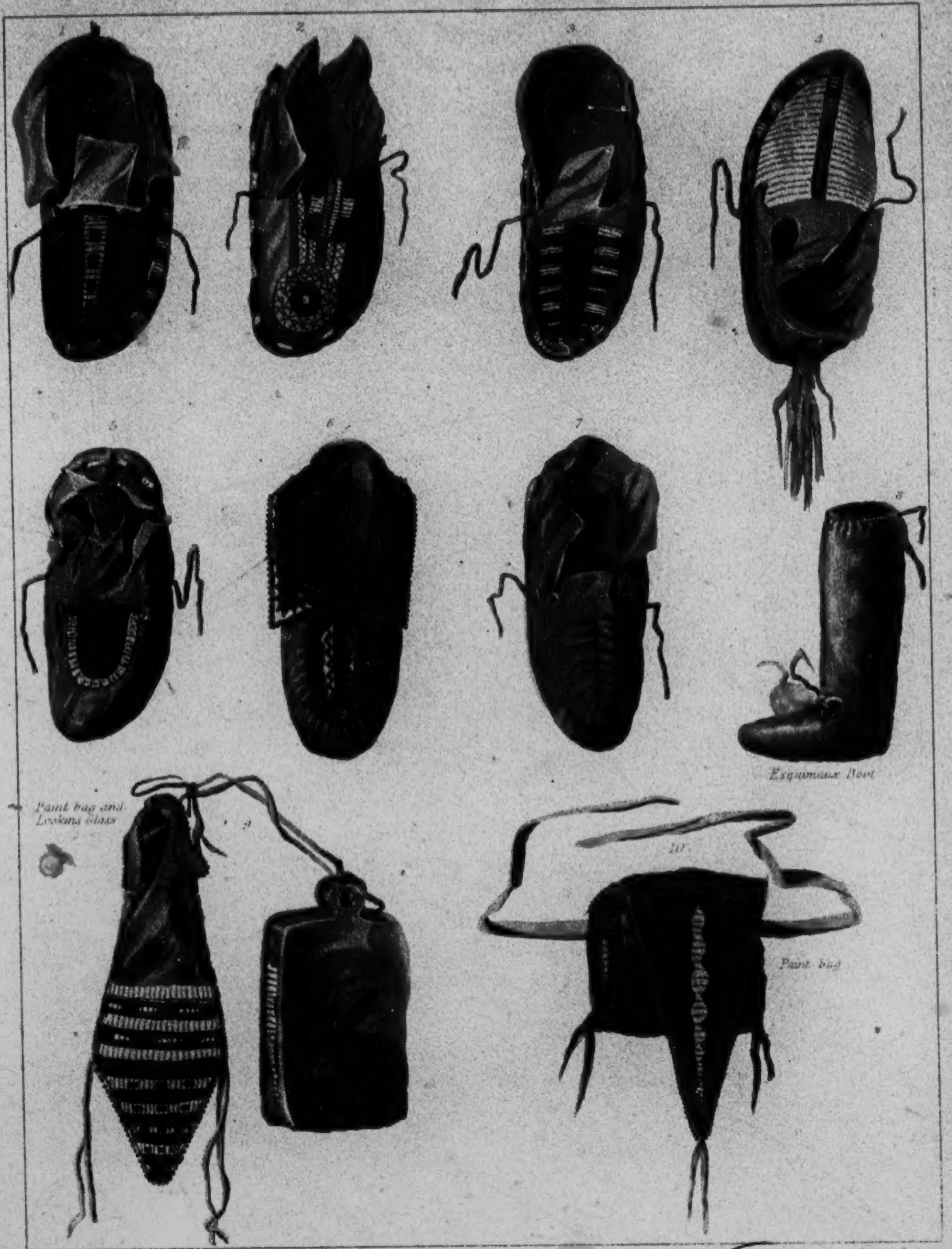
Drawn by Captn S. Eastman U.S.A.

Engd by J.C. McRae

STRIKING THE POST.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

Plate 7


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
Esquimaux Boot
Paint bag and Looking Glass
9
10
Paint bag

Drawn from the originals by Capt. S. Eastman, U.S.A.

COSTUMES

PUBLISHED BY LIPPINCOTT, GRAMBO & CO. PHILA.

LIBRARY OF THE

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

D. COSTUME.

20. Throughout the plains and level forests of the tropical and southern latitudes of North America, the Indian wears little or no clothing, during a large part of the year. But it is different on the eminences elevated thousands of feet above the sea; and also very different as the observer extends his views over the temperate zone.

Nudity, where it is asserted of tribes within the present area of the United States, as is done by De Bry, of the Virginia Indians, implied generally uncovered limbs and body. But it permitted the azian or loin-cloth, a necklace of shells, claws, or wampum; feathers on the head, and armlets, as well as ear and nose jewels. The Powhatanese woman had, if nothing else, a short fringed kirtle of buck-skin; the bust was nude,[1] but this was doubtless only the summer costume.

But even in summer, the northern Indians were less scantily clothed. The skins of beasts were adapted to every purpose of garment, and the severity of winter was warded against by the richest and warmest furs. Commerce immediately altered this, and taught the Indian the wastefulness of wearing skins and peltries, one tithe of the market price of which, would clothe him in woollen. It also urged him to throw by the bow and arrow, and his wooden traps; accepting instead, guns, gunpowder, and steel traps. With these he began an effective war on the whole race of quadrupeds, and soon rendered his hunting-grounds fit for nothing but the plough.

21. Moccasins have stood their ground as a part of the Indian costume, with more entire success, against European innovation, than perhaps any other part of the aboriginal dress. (See Plate 7.) They are made of buck-skin, or buffalo-skin, dressed and smoked after the Indian fashion. The different kinds of adz for removing rough hair from skins have been denoted in Figs. 6, 7, and 8, Plate 7, Vol. II. The skin is then macerated and dressed with the brains of the animal, till the harsher properties are well discharged, and it is brought to a soft, smooth, and pliant state. (See Plate 14, Vol. II.) If it is designed for a bride's moccasins, or to be worn by females on some ceremonial occasions, and to be ornamented with porcupine quills and ribbons, the dressing is continued till it is as soft and white as the finest white dressed doe-skin; but if intended for ordinary use, it is smoked, and brought by the pyroligneous properties of the smoke to a brown color and compact texture, in which state it is fitted the better to repel moisture. This smoking is effected by burning hard wood chips in a smouldering fire, in the bottom of an orifice dug in the ground, the skin being suspended by a light frame around and above the orifice. For the

---

[1] De Bry's Drawings.

various forms of this article, see Figs. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7. There is a fashion in the cut, closing and pucker of the shoe, which denotes the different tribes. As a general remark, the puckered toe is indicative of the Iroquois and the Dacota stocks, and the Missouri tribes generally. In the Algonquin, and particularly in the Chippewa shoe, the pucker is very finely drawn and covered with ornamental quill-work. No attempt has been observed in any of the United States or British-American tribes, to macerate their skins in decoctions of oak, chestnut or hemlock bark, with a view to thicken or solidify the fibre; or to do anything towards the important art of tanning. Yet they have known the stringent principle of these barks, as we observe, in some rude and harsh attempts to apply them medically. Indeed, the moccasin and the leggin of skins, constitute one of the most characteristic arts of the true hunter state. The Spaniards, who have never failed to state, if not to over estimate, the semi-civilization of the Toltecs and Aztecs, have left us in the dark on this point, and to conclude that these tribes never had the art of tanning.

Figs. 9 and 10 represent the Indian personal or toilet paint-bag, and looking-glass.

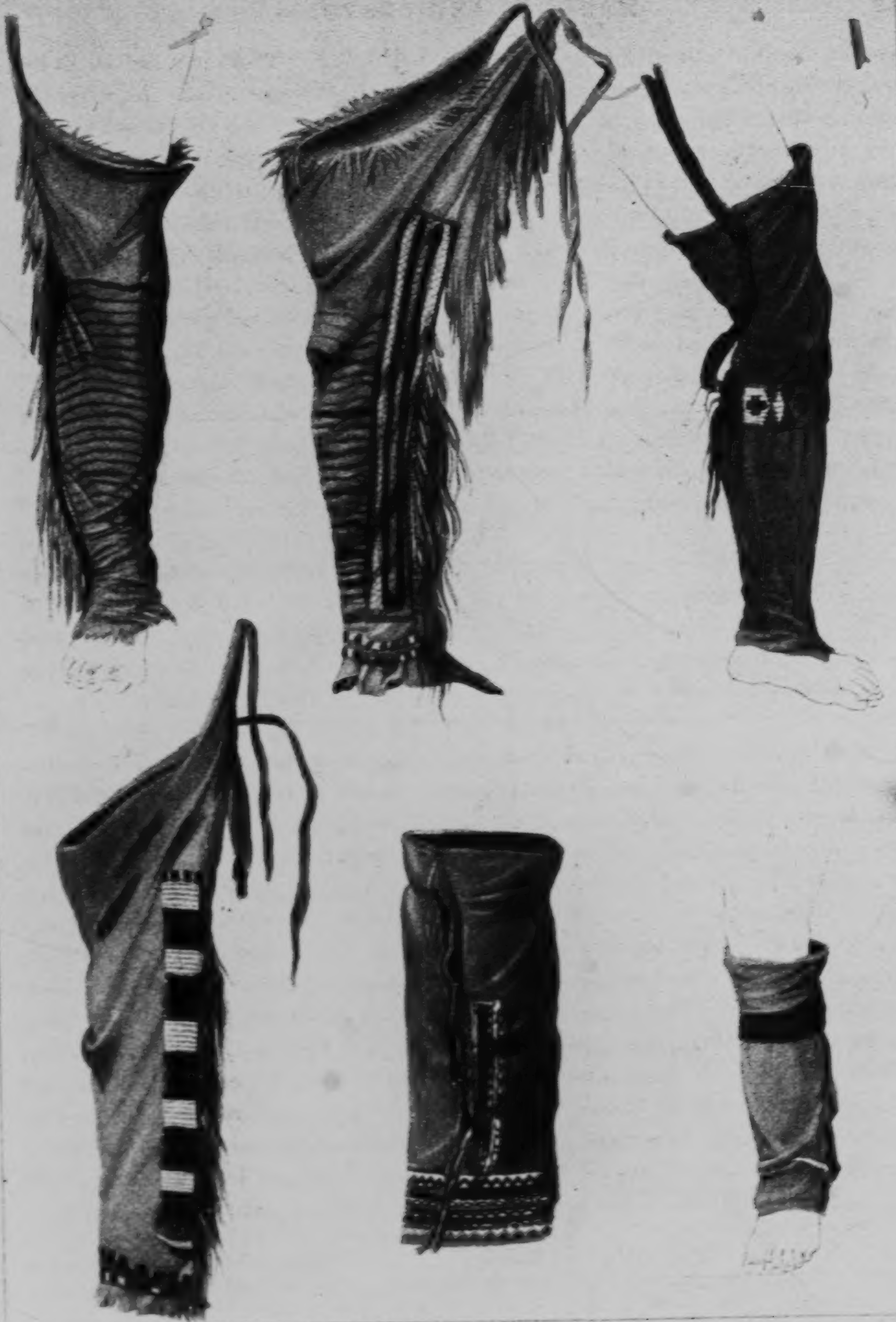
22. The preparation of the Esquimaux boot, Fig. 8, equally with that of the Indian buck-skin shoe, manifests the want of any knowledge of the solidifying properties of tannin. It consists merely of seal-skin, doubled in a peculiar way under the foot, hanging but loosely around the leg, like a buskin, except that it is drawn at the top, and has small orifices for strings to keep it on, which are tied on the instep.

23. The buck-skin leggin—the "leather-stocking" of popular American literature—prevailed over the continent at the respective periods of tribal discovery; and is in use, at the present period, among all our hunter tribes. It is by far the most durable and appropriate article for the purpose known; being as light as it is strong. It resists the rough wear and tear of the woodsman's and hunter's life better than any fabric which has been substituted for it. Those designed for males are made precisely the length of the leg; the outer seam being cut so as to embrace the hip. When thus drawn on, it is fastened, by strings of the same material, to a main cord, or abdominal tie. The female leggin has no such appendage. It reaches a little below the knee, where it is fastened by a garter.[1] See Figs. 1, 2, 3, 4, Plate 8, male; and 5 and 6, female. Both kinds reach down closely on the moccasin, where they are fastened at the ankle, so that the convex part of the leg is quite covered, and the rain and snow kept out. Ornaments and fringes are permitted, agreeably to the size. The female leggin is only ornamented at the bottom. The male leggin is fringed and ornamented nearly its entire length. There is generally what is designed as a

---

[1] In the painting of Pocahontas, in the Rotundo of the Capitol, the sister of the heroine is painted sitting on the floor, with a man's leggins reaching the entire length of her limbs, and tied, in the male fashion, around her body. Nothing could be more erroneous, in respect to Indian costume.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN



Nos. 1, 2, 3 and 4 Male. Nos. 5 and 6 Female

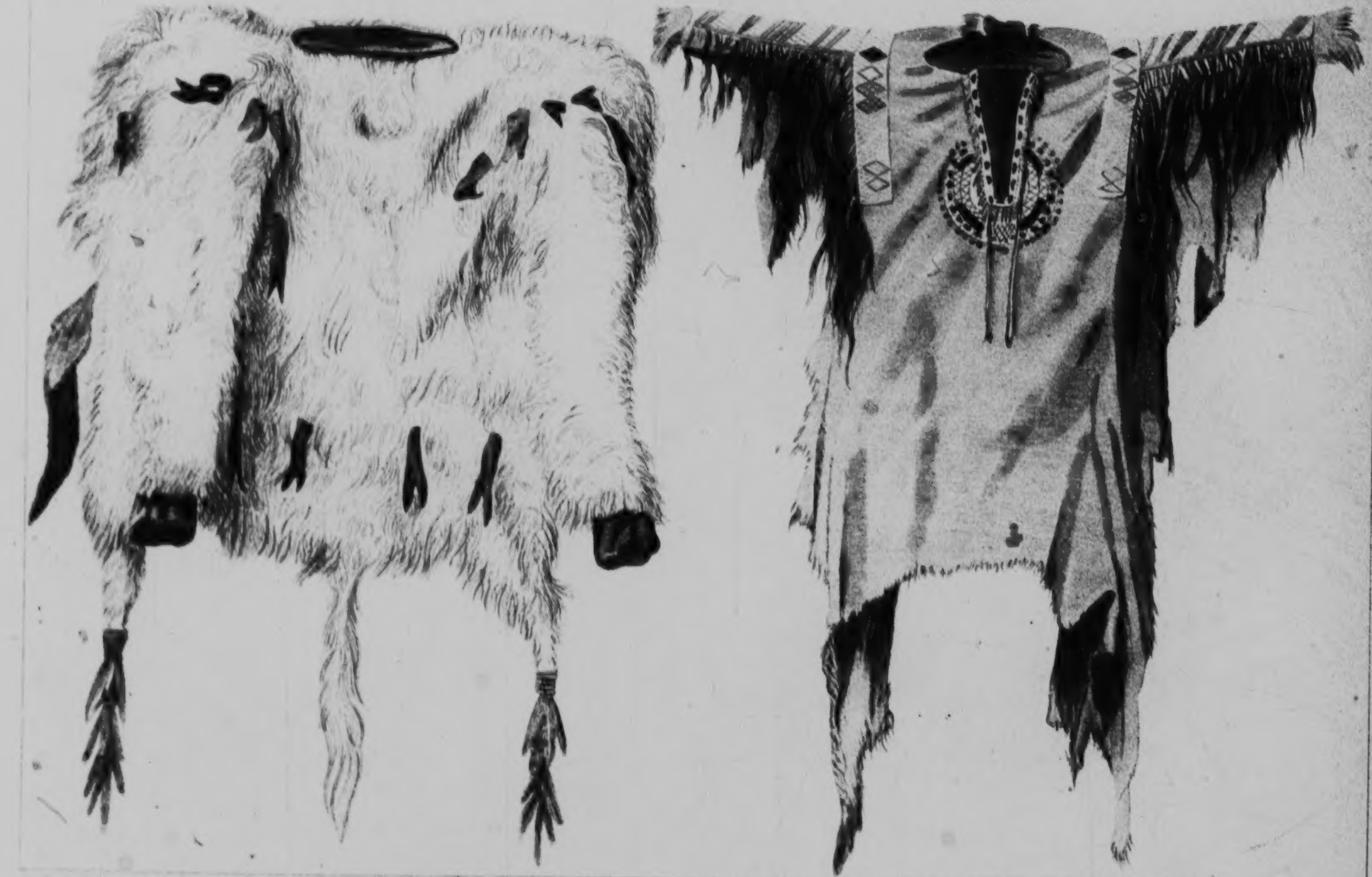
LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

Plate 9

[illegible]

Dacota shirt



PUBLISHED BY LIPPINCOTT, GRAMBO & CO. [illegible]

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

military stripe, of quill-work, reaching from the ankle to half thigh. To give firmness, and serve at the same time for ornament, a colored worsted tasselled garter is tied below the knee: (Fig. 3.) At this point hawks' bells are attached, which produce a tinkling sound in walking.

The article offered and worn as a substitute for buck-skin leggins, by the trade, is made of strouds; a coarse blue cloth, red or green, coarse quality; coarse broadcloth, or white or spotted moulton.

24. In female hybrids of the Indian blood, who have been educated and introduced to the refinements of drawing-room life, there is often found some recognition of, or lingering taste for, some particular features of the native costume. There is worn by them a species of pantelet, the substitute of the leggin, which is made of thin Italian black silk, drawn over the stocking and slipper, and tied in graceful folds, gathered below the knee.

25. War-shirts, war-coats, and mantles, for use on ceremonial occasions, are often made from the skins of the fiercest and most renowned animals captured in the chase. Deer-skin and dressed buffalo-skin constitute their ordinary materials. They are elaborately wrought and profusely ornamented. In this department, dyed porcupine quills, sweet grass, and colored hair, are chiefly employed. The favorite colors in the ornaments of their dresses, are bright red and blue. Drawings of these garments have been carefully made, and are exhibited in Figs. 1 and 2, Plate 9. At the treaty of Prairie-du-Chien, on the Upper Mississippi, in 1825, a great variety of these dresses were exhibited. None, however, exceeded, in its majestical style, the robe of a Yankton chief, from the Minnesota river, who was called Wanita. He was a remarkably tall man, with features that might have done honor to a Roman emperor of early periods, as we see them figured on coins. He was clothed in a war-robe of buff-colored buffalo-skin, ornamented with porcupine quills, brilliantly dyed. This garment reached to his feet. He had bunches of red horse-hair tied above his elbows. His moccasins had appendages of the skin of the hystrix, which dangled at his heels. He carried gracefully a highly ornamented Sioux pipe-handle of four feet in length.

26. Nothing however creates so much pride, or receives such elaborate attention, or is purchased at such a cost, as the head-gear in which a chief or warrior presents himself. Taking his ideas probably from the male species of the feathered creation which are decorated by nature with the brightest and most gaudy colors, he devotes the greatest attention to this point. And the result is almost as various as these species, so far as respects form and color.

The primary point aimed at, is to denote his prowess and standing in war. The scale by which this merit is measured has been mentioned at page 57, Vol. II., and is depicted in Plate 13, Vol. II. But this mode of denoting a specific honor does not interfere with or prevent persons from preparing a highly ornamented head-dress. The feathers of the eagle are generally chosen for the purpose. Sometimes there is a fillet of colored skins, with a feather of honor attached. Horns are often fastened to this. (Fig. 2, Plate 10.) Horns are symbolical of power. Where much pains have been bestowed in framing an elaborate head-dress of feathers which would be easily deranged, a case to contain and preserve it for ceremonial days, is constructed. (Vide Figs. 1, 2, 3, Plate 10; also Figs. 3, 4, Plate 11; also Fig. 4, Plate 13.)

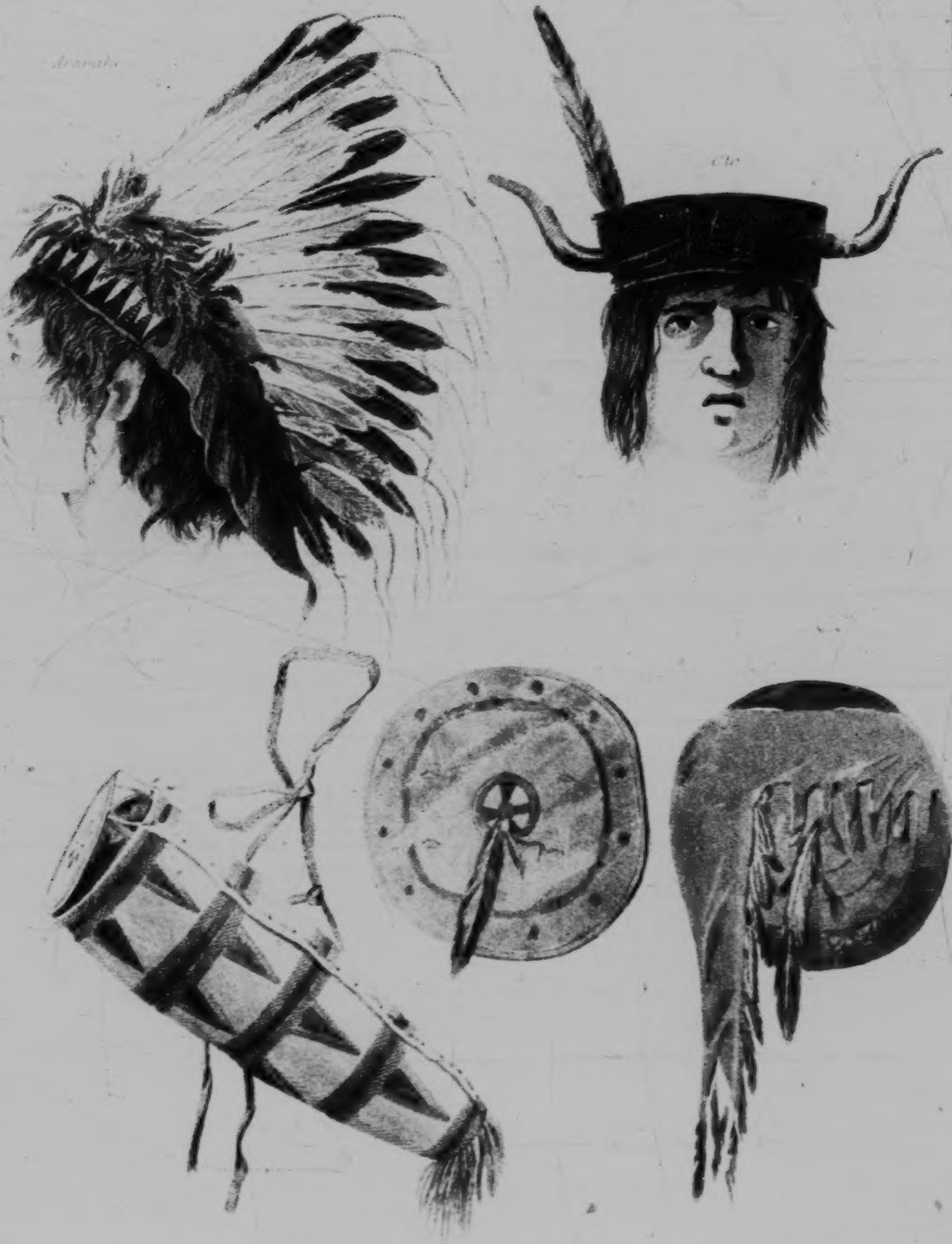
27. During the heats of summer, and the mild weather of spring and autumn, no covering is required for the head. But it is far otherwise with the northern tribes, in winter. A cap of cloth is made to fit closely to the head, and falls down the neck, being tied over the shirt or coat in a manner to prevent the snow from reaching the neck and throat. (Vide Figs. 1, 2, Plate 11.)

28. It is also during the prevalence of the rigors of winter that the very singular appendage to the moccasin, called snow-shoe, is worn. (Vide Figs. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, Plate 12.) It is simply a contrivance to keep the foot from sinking in soft snow. For this purpose two bows of hard wood are formed and bent elliptically; the two ends of the bows being brought together, and closed behind the foot, forming a projection. Two cross-pieces are put to the front part for the foot to rest on, and a third piece behind the heel to give firmness to the frame. The whole surface is then laced over with deer's sinews or strips of hide. A thong of leather confines the foot to the thwarts, permitting it to play freely, and the whole appendage hangs from the toes, resembling a vast sandal, allowing the muscles the freest scope. (Fig. 5.)

Various sizes and shapes of the snow-shoe are worn by the different tribes. There is also always a female snow-shoe, which is shorter, and has some peculiarities of shape. The cording of the latter is often painted in fanciful colors, and furnished with light tassels.

29. No tribe in the United States dispenses with the azian. This is generally made of a quarter of a yard of strouds, drawn closely about the person, before and behind, and held up by the abdominal string, which also supports the leggins. A flap of the cloth hangs down an equal length behind and before. This flap is usually ornamented by needle-work, elaborately done. (Fig. 2, Plate 13.)

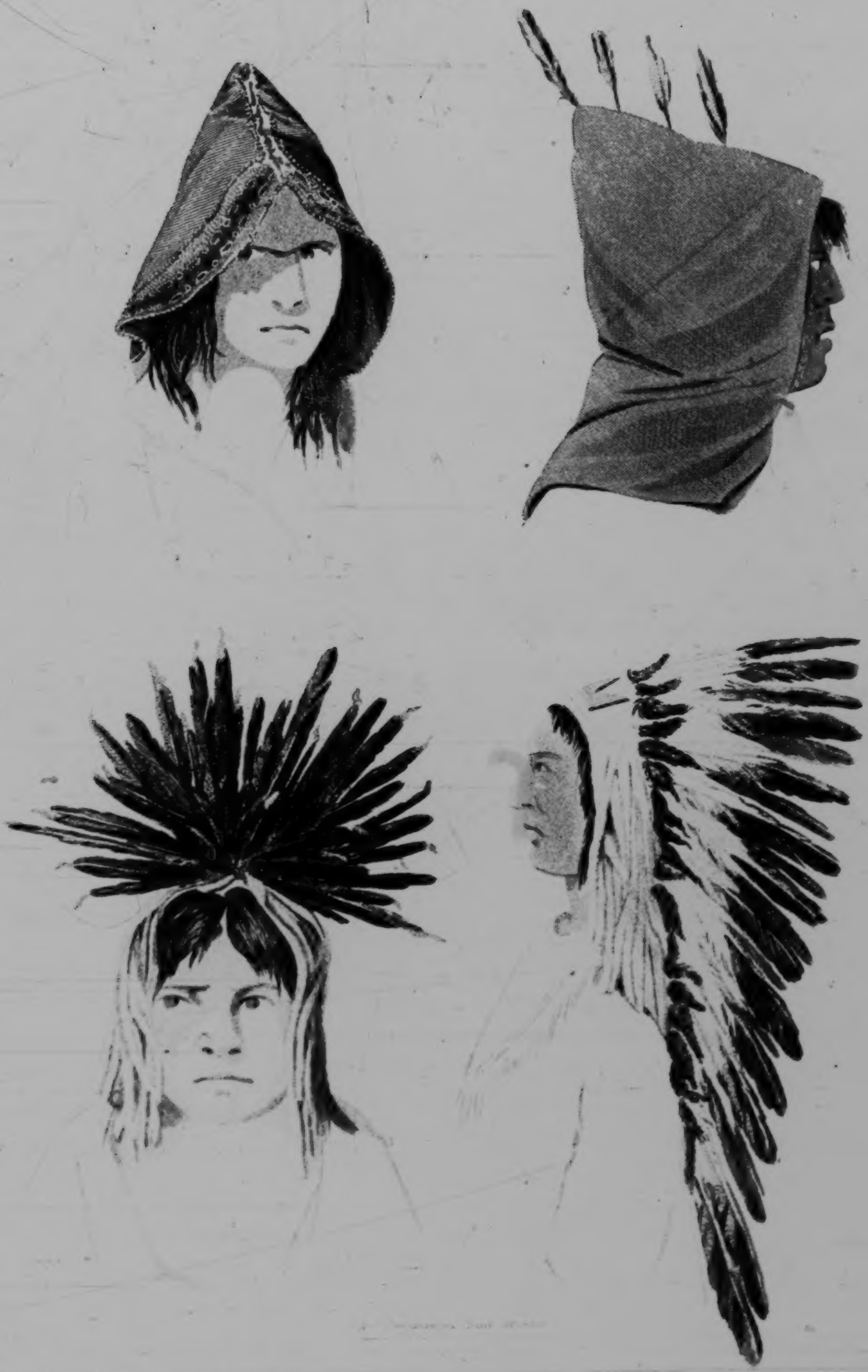
30. Over his shirt, or around his coat, if that garment be worn, the warrior winds his baldric or girdle, which is woven of worsted from beaded threads. The ends of these filaments depend as a tassel. (Vide Fig. 5, Plate 13.) The gaiter is generally constructed of similar materials. (Vide Fig. 5, Plate 13.) An ornament made of the


Arapaho
Ute

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

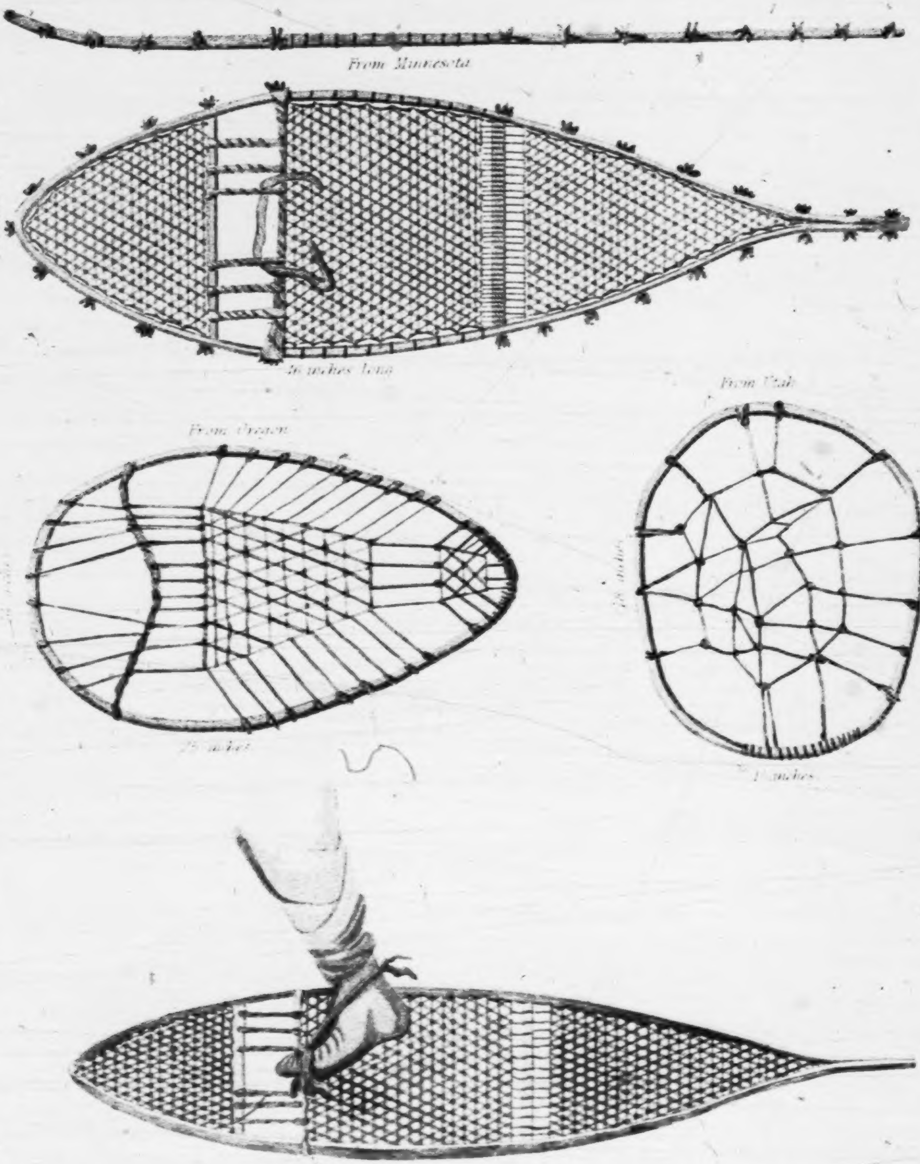
Plate [illegible]


[illegible] Hoods [illegible] winter cap
[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

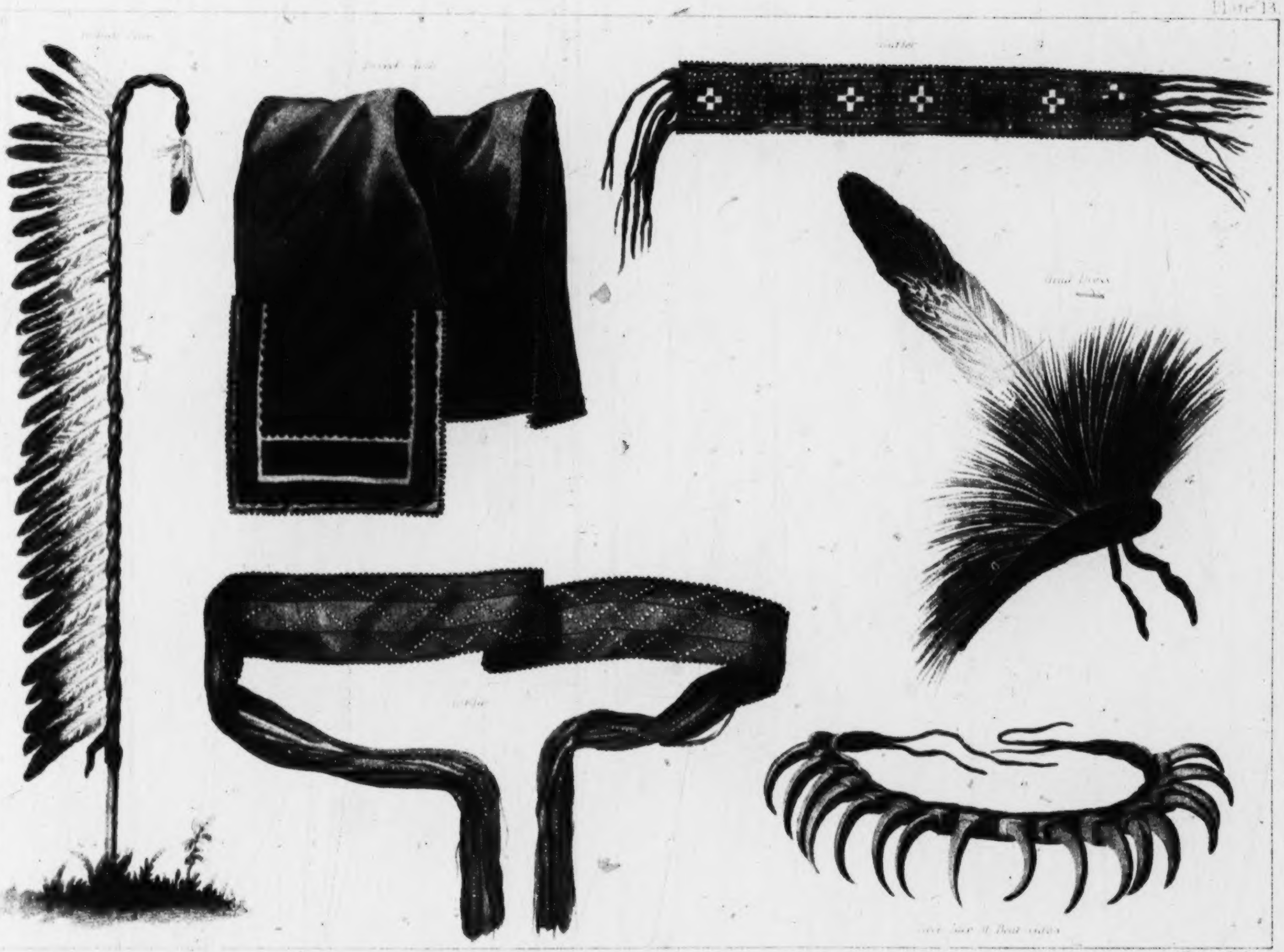
LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY


From Minnesota
14 inches
36 inches long
From Oregon
29 inches
From Utah
26 inches
17 inches

SNOW SHOES

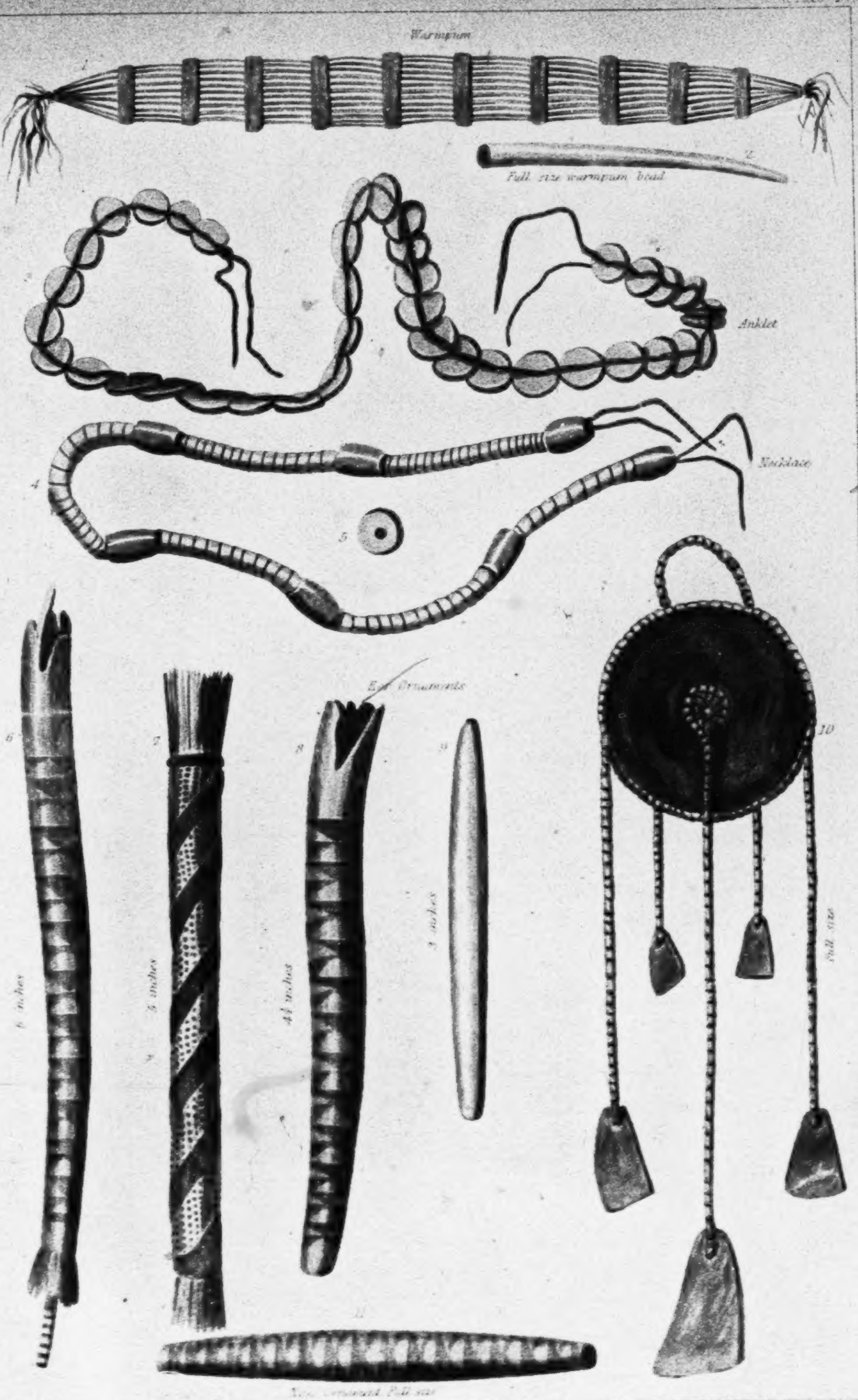
LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY of MICH

Plate 13.


1
Breech Cloth
Garter
2
Head Dress
Sash
Necklace of Bear claws

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

Plate 14


Wampum
1
2
Full size wampum bead
Anklet
4
Necklace
5
6
6 inches
7
5 inches
8
4½ inches
Ear Ornaments
9
3 inches
10
Full size
11
Nose Ornament Full size

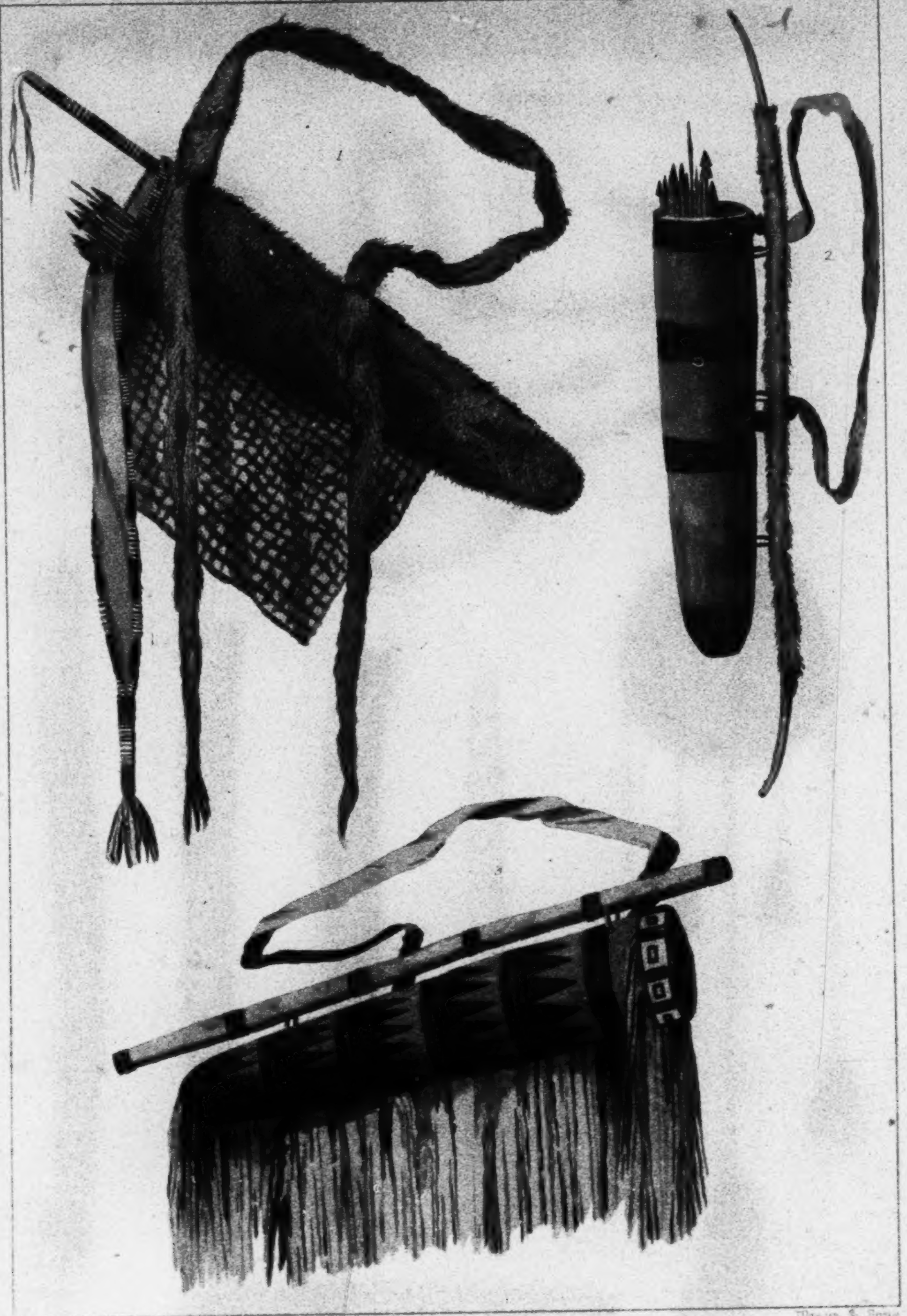
Drawn from the originals by Capt. S. Eastman U.S.A. [illegible]

ORNAMENTS WORN BY THE INDIANS OF CALIFORNIA AND OREGON

PUBLISHED BY LIPPINCOTT GRAMBO & CO. PHILADA

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

Plate 15.



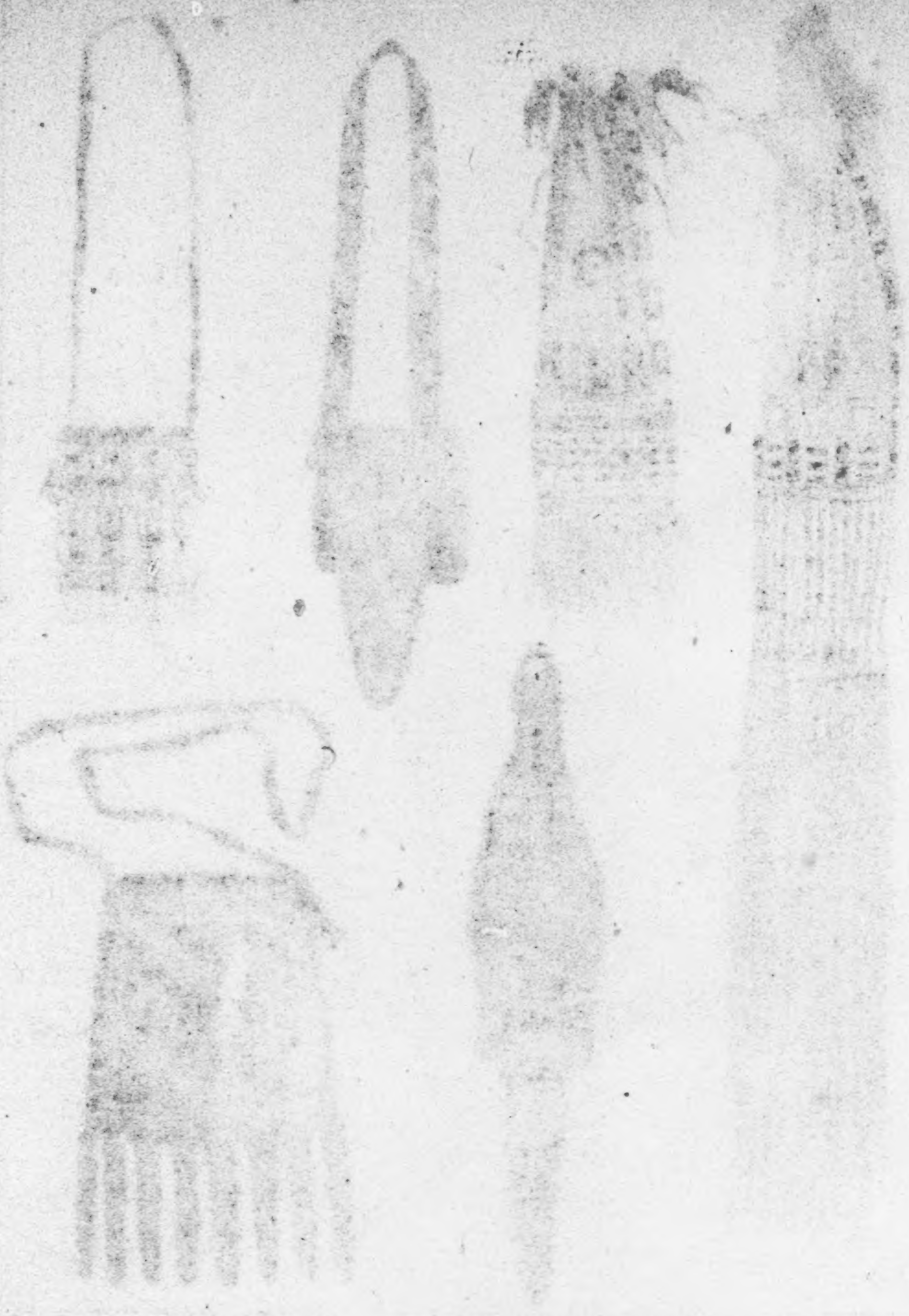
Drawn from the original by S. Eastman, U.S.A.

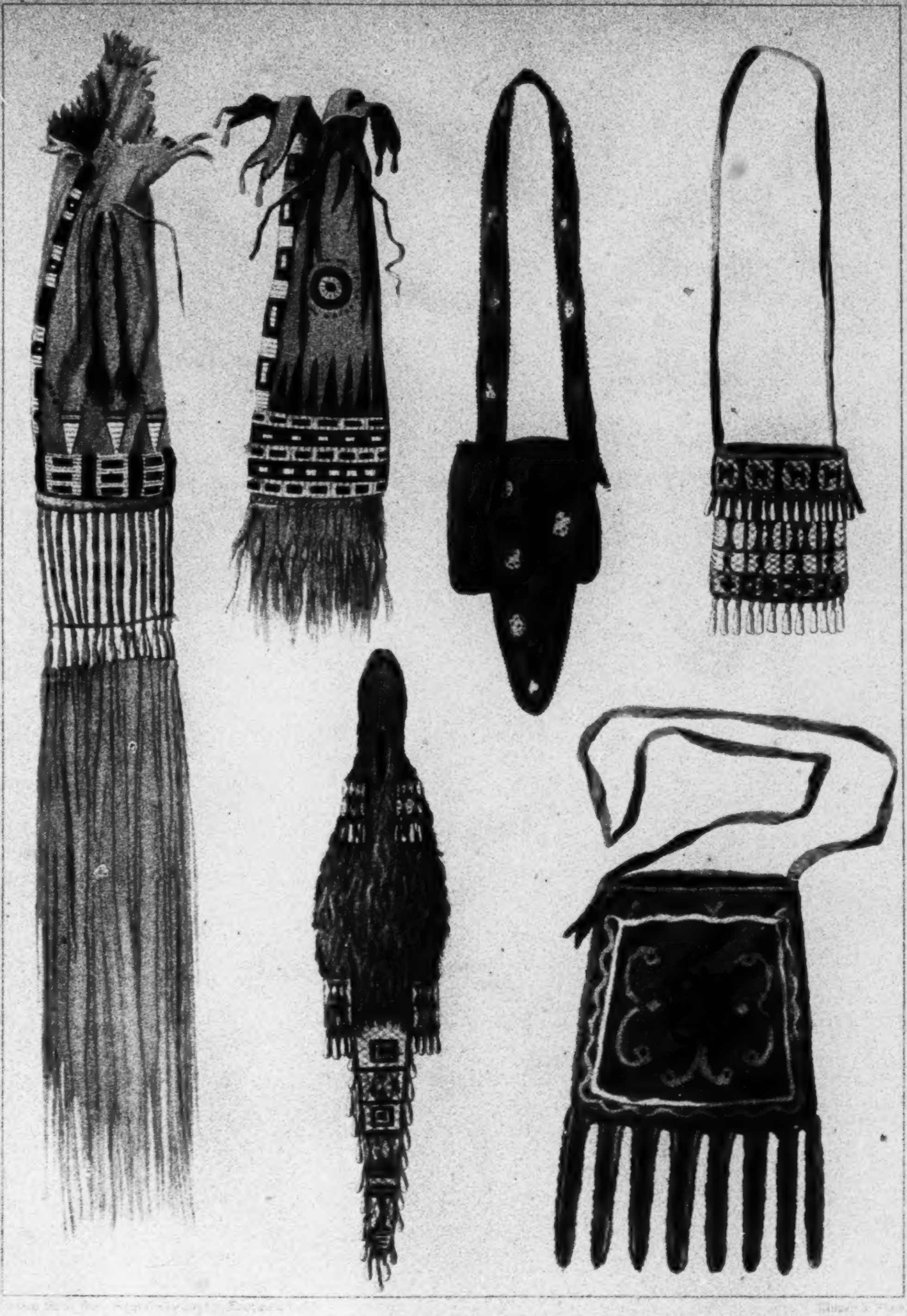
Illman & Sons.

QUIVERS.

BLISHED BY LIPPINCOTT, GRAMBO & CO. PHILADA

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICH.
LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MI.





[illegible]

[illegible]

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

claws of the grizzly bear (Fig. 6), the most ferocious beast of the West, is much coveted by warriors, who fancy themselves, when carrying such a symbol, as being endowed with that animal's courage and ferocity. It is in this sense an amulet as well as an ornament. Indeed, there are but few of the ornaments of the Indians that have not this two-fold character.

31. Much variety exists in the department of costume that embraces Indian ornament. A peculiar line of fancy of individuals for personal decoration is seen in the several objects described in Figs. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, Plate 14.

E. ACCOUTREMENTS.

32. The quiver is variously constructed and ornamented, but is generally of leather or bark. It is suspended from the shoulders by a strap around the breast. An Indian's riches and efficiency, in war and hunting, consist greatly in the number of his arrows. These are generally fabricated, not by himself, but by another person who has the requisite skill in the business, and is known as a professed arrow-maker. He is rewarded for his services, and thus is relieved, in a great measure, from the necessity of hunting on his own account. (Vide Figs. 1, 2, 3, Plate 15.)

33. The shield is the only protection which the Indian possesses against the arrow. The Aztec had guarded himself by a wadded cotton doublet. But there was no such defence against rifles or arms, north of the Gulf of Mexico. The prairie tribes who employ the shield, use the thickest pieces of the hide of the buffalo. It is an appendage which they paint and decorate with the greatest nicety. The appended ornaments of eagles' feathers are represented in Figs. 4, 5, Plate 10.

34. The Indian ensign is formed by attaching the feathers of the eagle to a pole of some six feet in length, the bearer of which is conceived to be intrusted with a high honor. These feathers are attached longitudinally, by puncturing the quill, and drawing a line through the orifice. (Vide Fig. 1, Plate 13.)

35. Wherever the Indian goes in peace and war, and whatever he does, his pipe is his constant companion. He draws consolation from it in hunger, want, and misfortune; and "when fair skies betide him"—his constant expression for good fortune—it is the pipe to which he appeals, as if every puff of the weed were an acceptable oblation to the Great Spirit. The various sacks in which he carries this cherished plant, are ornamented with great skill and patience. The drawings in Figs. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, Plate 16, are taken from specimens of the Gush-kip-e-tan-gun, a tobacco pouch in our possession.

36. NAVOHO WIGWAMS.

An officer of the U. S. Army, who is stationed at one of the frontier posts of New Mexico, transmits a description with a sketch of the wigwams of this tribe. It appears to relate to the dispersed and wandering portions of the tribe, and indicates little or no advance in the art of constructing lodges over our hunter tribes of the West. The wigwam is constructed of the tabular debris of rock, with dry earth laid on a circular frame of poles, which rest on a fulcrum, the ends of the poles flaring out, so as to describe a circle. A segment of the circle thus formed, makes the door. The fire for cooking is external. Captain Eastman has prepared the pencil-sketch of Lieutenant Long, transmitted by Major Backus, so as to embrace also the characteristic points.[1] (Vide Plate 17.)

The more fixed and permanently located and sheep-raising bands of this tribe, are believed to have abodes better deserving the name of houses.

---

[1] "The Navajoe lodge is an exceedingly rude structure, and is usually built of pinon or cedar sticks, which are covered on the exterior with flat stones and earth. It is in the form of a cone, seldom exceeding five feet in height, and has a triangular opening in front. The fire is made in the front of the lodge. The Navajoes are nomadic in their habits, often changing their residences, frequently sheltering themselves in caves or fissures of the rocks. They have no permanent residences. E. Backus."

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY of MICH.

III. ANTIQUITIES. C.

ANTIQUITIES.

SYNOPSIS.

1. Antique Indian Pictographic Inscription on the Banks of the Hudson: (with two Plates.) By H. R. S.
2. Antique Pottery from the minor Mounds occupied by the Indians in Feasts to the Dead, on the Sea-coasts of Florida and Georgia. By H. R. S.
3. Antique colored Earthen-ware, from the Rio Gila, New Mexico. By H. R. S.
4. Erie Inscription in the Indian Character of the Kekeewin: (two Plates.) By H. R. S.
5. Notices of some Metallic Plates exhibited in annual Dances among the Muscogees: (one Cut.) By H. R. S.

1. ANTIQUE INDIAN PICTOGRAPHIC INSCRIPTION ON THE BANKS OF THE HUDSON. (WITH TWO PLATES.)

THERE is a pictographic Indian inscription in the valley of the Hudson, above the Highlands, which from its antiquity and character appears to denote the era of the introduction of fire-arms and gunpowder among the aboriginal tribes of that valley. This era, from the well-known historical events of the contemporaneous settlement of New Netherlands and New France, may be with general accuracy placed between the years 1609, the date of Hudson's ascent of that stream above the Highlands, and the opening of the Indian trade with the Iroquois at the present site of Albany, by the erection of Fort Orange in 1614.

The first employment of fire-arms in a battle of aborigines against aborigines was undoubtedly that of the well-known conflict of the able and energetic Champlain, on the borders of the lake now bearing his name, in northern New York. It was the first successful blow struck with this new weapon in the long and sanguinary war waged between the two leading tribes of the Indian race; namely, the Algonquins and the Iroquois, who so long held the balance of aboriginal power in this part of North America. It established his reputation with the Indians, and may be regarded by historians as but one of a series of measures which prove him to have been the ablest of all the Governors-General, and from his policy and efficiency the true founder of Canada.

But the Iroquois were quick to improve the lesson, and having been supplied with arms by the Dutch, visited with long and fearful retribution this well-managed essay of the French commander, to supersede their ancient arms. It is not our object in this notice to follow up the details of these early historical events. It may suffice to affirm the position, that the first six years after the opening of the era of the trade at Albany, was sufficient to put the gun into the hands of both the Mohikinder, or River Indians, and the Iroquois.

The Mohikinder,[1] or children of the Mohigan sub-stock, were Algonquins of the Lenno Lenapi, or Delaware type. They had, prior to the discovery, been conquered by the Iroquois, and placed in the position of neutrals or allies. This is attested by all authorities; and were there no other evidence but that of the haughty speech of Canassatego, delivered in full council in their presence, at the treaty of July 12, 1742, nothing could be more conclusive of such ancient subjugation of the Delawares.[2] Not a word was said, or permitted by the Iroquois to be said, in reply; but they were commanded by the Indian speaker to quit the council, and as a punishment for their audacity in presuming to sell lands, ordered to quit the Delaware river and remove instantly to Shaumokin, on the Susquehanna.[3]

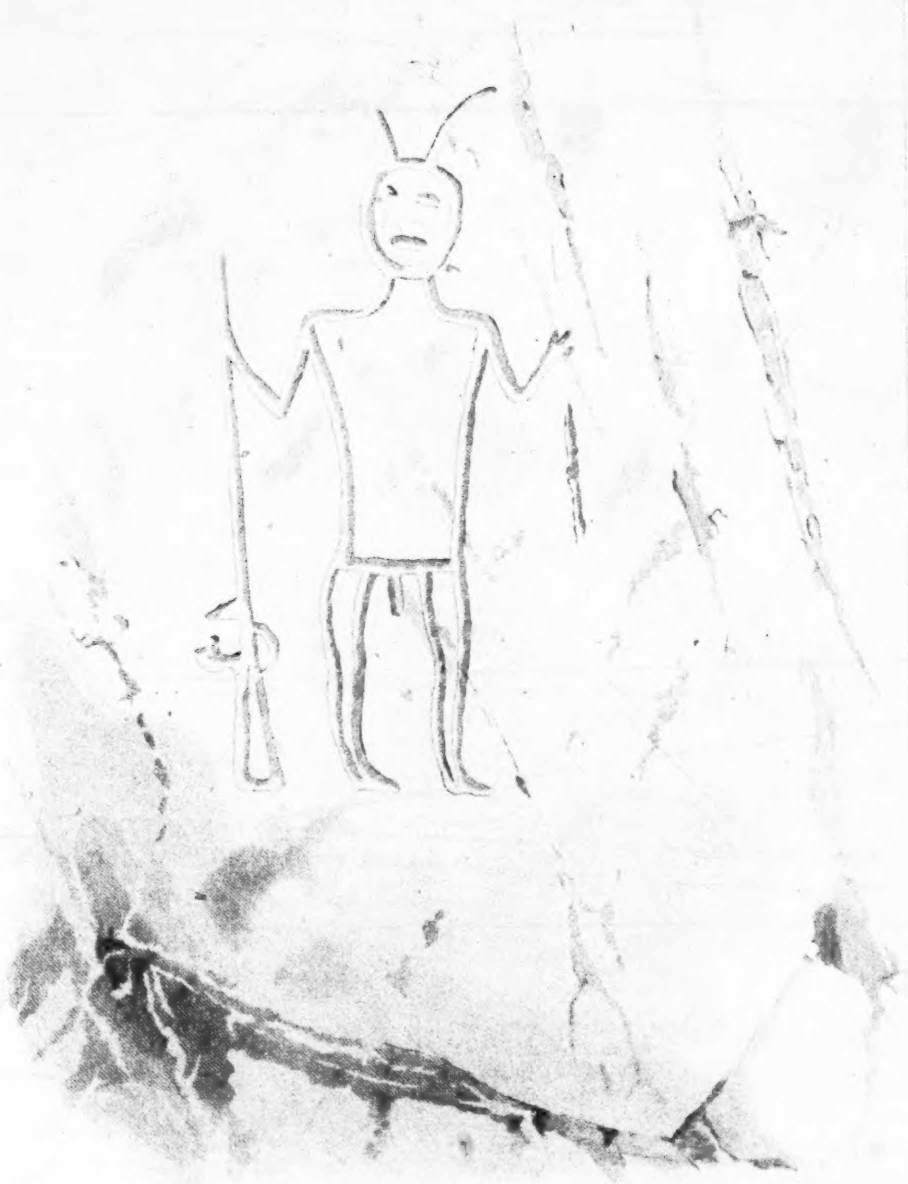
The location of the inscription (Plate 18) is on the western bank of the Hudson, at Esopus landing. My attention was first directed to it by Peter Force, Esq., of Washington, D. C., a gentleman who had passed his youth in the vicinity, and had frequently visited the declivity on which it is cut; being a convenient spot, as he told me, for undressing, as was the custom of the boys in the vicinity, to swim in the river. Other indications have been reported, at sundry times, of the skill of these ancient Indians in inscribing figures on rocks. Tracks of human feet are among these objects; but the progress of building in that vicinity, and the existence of but little curiosity on that head, appears to have destroyed these interesting traces of a people who once fancied themselves important, but who now live only in history. The traditions of

---

[1] In this compound of Hollandais and English, the first member of the word is taken from Mohigan; the inflection kinder (Kind n. plu. er. Adler), children, is improperly, it is thought, spelled "kaunder."

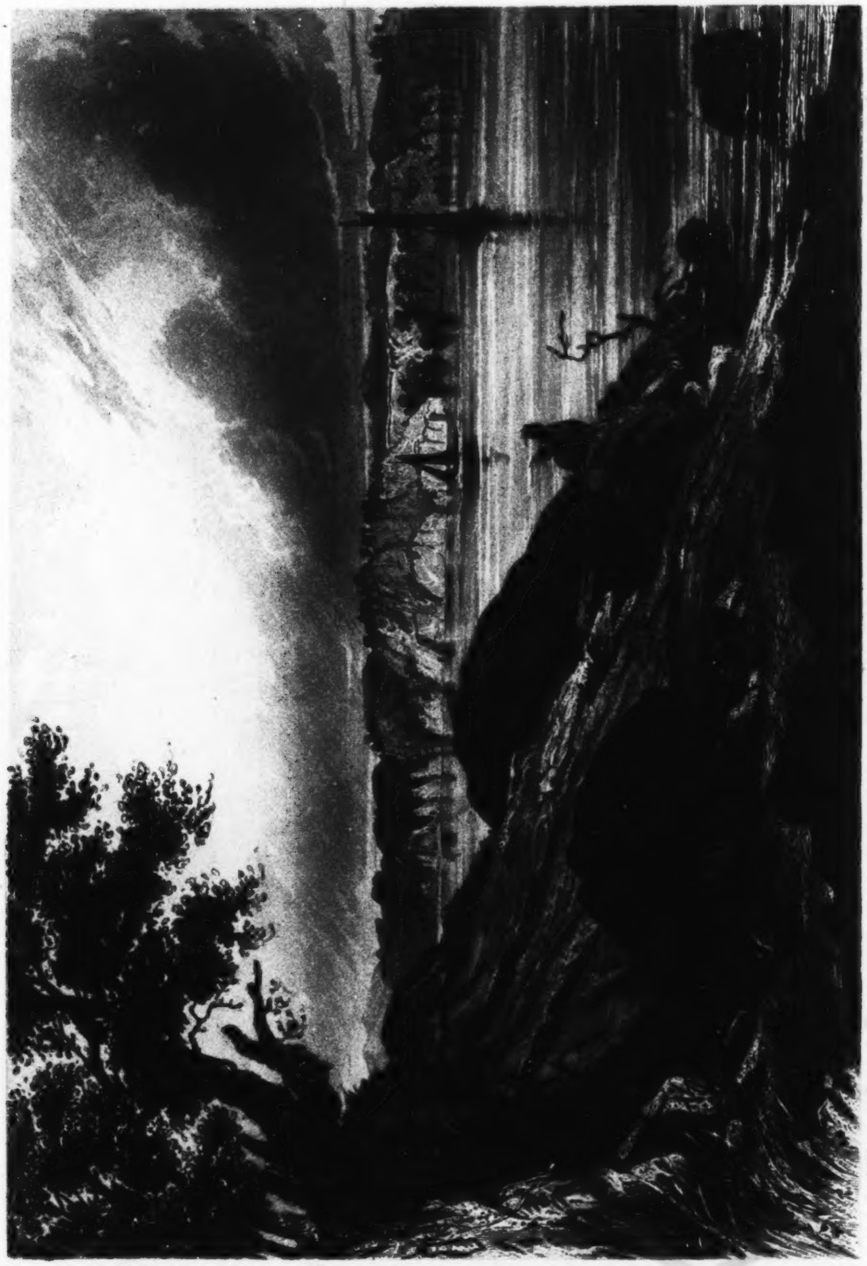
[2] Colden's Five Nations, p. 78, Lond. ed. 1747.

[3] A maudlin tone has been assumed by some writers who have bewailed the loss of the ancient supremacy of the Delawares and their conquest by the Iroquois, among whom is the excellent and pious John Heckewelder. We are indebted to him for preserving a valuable body of materials of Indian history; he is to be regarded as having had feelings of strong sympathy with the Delawares on this topic. Vide Trans. Hist. and Lit. Com. Am. Phil. Soc., Phil., 1819, 1 vol. 8vo, p. 464.



[illegible]

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICH.



LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

the residents of Ulster County do not refer to a period when this inscription was not there.

In a map published at Amsterdam, in Holland, in 1659, the country, for some distance both above and below Esopus creek, is delineated as inhabited by the Waranawankongs, who were a totemic division or enlarged family clan of the Mohikinder. They spoke a well-characterized dialect of the Mohigan; and have left numerous geographical names on the streams and physical peculiarities of that part of the river coast quite to and above Coxsackie.[1] The language is Algonquin.

Esopus itself appears to be a word derived from Seepu, the Minsi-Algonquin name for a river.[2]

In the Amsterdam map referred to, this river is made to connect itself with the Delaware—the country probably not having at that early date been carefully explored —the easy portage from one to the other being magnified to an actual inter-flowing of currents, which is not the case. The inscription may be supposed, if the era is properly conjectured, to have been made with metallic tools. The lines are deeply and plainly impressed. It is in double lines. The plumes from the head denote a chief, or man, skilled in the Indian medico-magical art. The gun is held at rest in the right hand; the left appears to support a wand. It is in the rampant Indian style. Such an inscription, recording the introduction of the gun, would not be made when that era had long past and lost its interest. Indians never resort to historical pictography when there is nothing new to tell. Thus the Indian pictography throws a little light on the most rude and unpromising scene; and if the sources of these gratifications are but small, we are indebted to them for this little. No attempt of rude nations to perpetuate an idea is ever wholly lost.

Plate 19 presents the landscape of the east shores of the Hudson, as seen from the locality of the inscription. Its fidelity will be recognized.

2. ANTIQUE POTTERY FROM THE MINOR MOUNDS OCCUPIED BY THE INDIANS IN FEASTS TO THE DEAD, ON THE SEA-COASTS OF FLORIDA AND GEORGIA.

It is known that, prior to 1492, the aborigines of this continent used vessels of clay in cooking such articles of their food as required boiling. There is no evidence whatever to prove that *metal*, of any kind, had been employed for this purpose, in either North or South America, at an earlier period. The Peruvians and Aztecs had a method of hardening native copper, in the form of chisels and other tools; but this metal had never been rolled into sheets, so as to form culinary vessels; nor had even this art of hardening copper extended to the Mississippians and the Atlantic or Lake tribes. Pottery, and pottery alone, appeared to be the article relied on. Wherever the sites of their ancient residences are examined, we find fragments of it. Entire vessels of this material are frequently discovered in their tombs, mounds, and teocalli. The highest form of this art, on the continent, existed, as is well known, among the semi-civilized nations of the south; who, at the same time, excelled the other tribes in agriculture, architecture, and their knowledge of astronomy. In proportion as we recede from those centres of incipient art, the character of the native pottery becomes coarse and rude; and this fact also renders it probable that the state of civilization at those ancient points was the development of a pre-existing ruder art, which the other tribes had also possessed; for it did not diffuse itself among those ruder tribes, as it would have done, had they derived the first knowledge of it from these more modern centres; but it left them, as they originally were, in the possession of the hunter or nomadic branch of it. They still made the simple earth-kettle out of coarsely tempered clay. In other words, the migration, at early periods and prior to the Aztec period, appears to have been *to* those centres of future semi-civilization, and not *from* them. Thus the species of ancient pottery of the Rio Gila, and of Sonora, which have attracted the attention of travellers, is of an era prior to that of the valley of Mexico, and is to be regarded as the first form of improvement on the hunter's earth-kettle. Afterwards, when the art had received the highest form, to which it was indebted to Toltec and Aztec skill, though yet retaining a barbaric character, it becomes a means of tracing migrations towards the south, east and north-east from the newly-founded Indian capital.

---

[1] Report of the Aboriginal Names and Geographical Terminology of the State of New York.—Part I. Valley of the Hudson: New York Historical Society. Printed for the Society, 1845: 43 pages 8vo.

[2] Report before quoted.

Some of the vessels from South America, as those of Peru, figured by C. T. Falbe, in the Memoirs of the Royal Society of Northern Antiquaries, 1843, evince much skill in their composition, and no little symmetry and beauty in their form and ornament. But there was *no* tribe in all the central latitudes of the continent, so destitute and degraded in point of art, as not to have some form of the article, however rude. They all made the globular akeek, or sand-bath kettle, and some of them, vases. This remark applies, certainly, in North America, to all the tribes on the Gulf of Mexico, and along the north Atlantic to the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and north-west from this point as far, at least, as the continental summit, which gives origin to the Mississippi river, and down its broad valley to the Gulf. Indeed, one of the surest tests of the existence of an ancient town or village, in the great era denoted, is the finding of vessels or broken pieces of pottery in the soil. To knead a lump of clay and temper it with sand, or some silicious or felds-pathique material, and to dry it in the sun, or bake it by heat, appears to have been one of the earliest and simplest arts among men. We may regard it as one of the primary arts of the *western*, as it confessedly was of the *eastern* continent; and its remains constitute at this day one of the peculiar branches of testimony, though not the strongest, by which the early races of the old and new world are to be compared.

In taking up for examination some articles and fragments of antique pottery, from the low mounds of the Gulf coasts of Florida, attention is called to a style of the art, which appears to hold a middle place between the more elaborate specimens of Mexican fabric, and the rude attempts of the hunter tribes of the north-western and north-eastern latitudes of the United States.

The principal articles were brought by Mr. Hitchcock, from Florida, who took them from the small antique mounds bordering on the Mexican Gulf, in that State.

They consist of pieces of broken jars, kettles, stewpans, and a kind of antique porringers; all designed, apparently, for use in the domestic or medical economy, and exhibiting a considerable degree of skill and art in their construction. Some of the vessels are nearly entire, and deficient only in having an orifice broken into the bottom of them. This orifice seems to have been broken in at the time of their deposit in the mound, manifestly to prevent their being taken out, and thus to insure their safety in the small circular mounds or barrows from which they were taken. Of others, the fragments enable us to determine their size and shapes. All are ornamented with figures of various kinds. Most of them were obtained in 1841, from the minor species of mounds on the Appalachicola bay. Such mounds are numerous in that vicinity, and apparently of great antiquity. They exist on the margins of streams, in the open pine-barrens, and also in the dense impenetrable hammocks; leading to the idea, that the country was generally inhabited by tribes who had fixed habitations and some of the arts of semi-civilization. Such were indeed the people represented by the narrators of De Soto's expedition, to be found here in 1538. They lived in villages, cultivated the zea maize, and yielded implicit obedience to chiefs and rulers.

The antiquity of these mounds is inferred from the growth of the live-oak on their summits; some of the trees of this species being two or three feet in diameter. The slow growth of this tree would hardly justify us in assigning for the largest of these species, a period of less than six hundred or seven hundred years from the time of the interments. This would indicate the 12th century as the period when this art of pottery flourished; agreeably to similar proofs, it may be observed, which correspond very well to the Mound Period of the Ohio Valley.

These Florida coast mounds are neither gigantic, like those of the Mississippi Valley, nor in the teocalli style, like those of Mexico.[1] They are generally from thirty to fifty feet in diameter, and from twelve to eighteen feet in height. They appear to have been, not places of worship, but of burial, as is everywhere proved by the human bones found along with the antique pottery. They are constructed of the rich black soil or sand of the river's bank or plains; and as many of these plains are subject to periodical inundation, they originated, perhaps, in the motive to preserve the localities of their burial-grounds dry, and a desire to prevent the bones of their relatives from being washed away and carried into the Gulf.

---

[1] The largest mounds of this general region of country appear, as we are informed by Mr. Pickett, to have been designed for the residences of the native rulers. Such are large tumuli on the Ocmulgee in Georgia, and at Florence and Carthage in Alabama.

Similar mounds exist on the St. John's and the Ochlawaha. In one of these, the skeleton of a very large person was found in a horizontal position, with a skull of great lateral expansion. Around it were the bones of others, all in a sitting posture. In another mound two layers of skeletons were found, with their heads inclined to the centre — the heads being raised, and the feet forming the extremities of radii. Crania were obtained from these barrows.

The cavities of the skulls excavated, were filled with sand, and the dead were all supposed to have been interred in a sitting posture. The bones were so completely saturated with moisture, that it required the utmost care to raise them. After exposure to the sun and light, they acquired the hardness that they now present. All the mounds examined were circular and orbicular, with trenches; but these trenches were too shallow to admit the supposition that they were ever designed as works of defence. They arose simply from the excavations of earth necessary to cover the bones. In one of the barrows on the Appalachicola river, a bit of metal was found, supposed to be brass, but without any orifice or inscriptive marks; a piece of galena, and a clay pipe, were likewise found in one of the mounds. Some charred tobacco adhered in the bowl of the pipe.

In some of the mounds mentioned, all vestiges of bones whatever had disappeared — even the pottery had gone to decay, except some small fragments. Others disclosed large quantities of the conch, oyster, and clam — the latter of a very large species, and such as is not now to be obtained on the coast. These are locally called FEASTING MOUNDS; from an impression that they were the favorite sites of the aboriginal feasts to the dead. They are not otherwise, than by these ditches, distinguishable from the barrows or SEPULCHRAL MOUNDS, since human bones and vessels of pottery are alike disclosed by both kinds of tumuli. As a general remark, the skeletons appear to have been arranged in radiating circles from top to bottom, with the feet outwards, and the heads a little elevated, and the vessels placed beside them. Man, in all ages, has been averse to placing his dead in positions where the body is in low or damp places, particularly where exposed to immersion in water. Hence the custom of first burying on hills, and afterwards, when men began to occupy low alluvial places, of erecting the sepulchral mounds. This idea, wherever the ancient inhabitants of America came from, is indelibly imprinted on the character of the burial mounds.

One of the strongest evidences in favor of a considerable degree of art among the ancient Floridians, is to be deduced from the discovery of a potter's wheel, and other vestiges of a pottery, mentioned by Mr. Hitchcock, as having been made near the banks of the Flint river, in Georgia, some years ago. This remarkable fact is stated by him in a letter, herewith submitted. These vessels were found in digging a well, several feet below the surface. There were present in the excavation, several vessels of pottery, in a perfect state. What is very remarkable, is the fact stated, that there was found in this Georgian excavation, an unfinished vessel on the wheel, as if the catastrophe, by which the labor was interrupted, had been sudden and instantaneous! It is doubtful, however, whether the discovery of this vestige of civilized arts is not due to the early attempts of the Spaniards to colonize Florida. In scanning the specimens of pottery from Florida, I have looked very carefully for the striæ of the potter's wheel, such as are produced by its centrifugal motion on the plastic clay, but without satisfying myself of *any such evidence.* The ware itself is a mixture of silex with alumina, colored incidentally by the peroxide of iron. It is quite superior to the akeeks, or clay pots and vessels in use by our northern tribes on the discovery of the country. Still it is a question of moment, whether the Florida pottery had been baked in a potter's oven prior to use. Its full red color, in many pieces of the ware actually examined, favors the idea of such a process; as it is known that the oxides of iron existing in common clay, do not require an intense or very considerable and continued heat, to impart their color. If such a heat was applied to this ware from the Appalachicola, it is certain that the process was badly done; as the burning was not carried, in any instance examined, quite to the centre of the ware, where a dark line denotes the defect. In some of the pieces the color is umber or brown. In a single piece it is black; denoting that no fire whatever has been applied to this specimen. It is made from a clay having fine particles of mica, tempered with a silicious material, in a state of considerable fineness. Some fragments are in the condition, nearly, of a baked black marl. Articles designed for coarser purposes, are made from an argillaceous earthy mixture, in which there are gross particles of common quartz. These, from their abraded look, are such as would probably be gathered on a sea-beach. There appears among the fragments, no vase proper.

One of the vessels exhibits the union of a kind of porringer and a funnel. The purpose of the funnel is effected by a hollow, forked handle, through which we may suppose the prepared liquor could be poured into small vessels without liability to spill it. This care in its construction suggests the idea that the vessel may have been used to prepare a precious drink at feasts, or a liquid supposed to impart courage to warriors — such as the noted *black drink* of the Muscogees. At any rate, the shape of this antique vessel is, so far as we know, peculiar.

Such are the articles from Florida, to the consideration of which this paper is particularly directed. They have one characteristic which may be particularly mentioned. It is the style of the ornaments upon their exterior, in the shape of fillets, circles, half circles, dots, parallels, slashed, upright, and waving lines, and other geometrical figures. These will be best understood by the accompanying drawings, numbered from one to twelve, which are taken from the fragments, and exhibit, it is believed, all that is characteristic in this respect.

Geometrical figures and ornaments must be confessed to supply a means of the comparison of the knowledge and ideas amongst nations, civilized or uncivilized.

Some of the curved figures cannot fail to recall similar combinations on ancient Etruscan and some other early forms of earthen-ware. This trait is plainly observable in the chain border, Fig. 1, which may be described as a combination of the letter S, elongated and arranged horizontally. The dots of the field containing this device, afford a good, although very simple relief. In Figs. 7 and 10, a waved fillet occupies the same species of ground. Fig. 2 is a plain border, slashed diagonally with a dotted stripe.

These devices may be regarded as derivative from architectural ornaments; an idea which is still more manifest, perhaps, in numbers four and six. Number four consists of five parallel lines, returned at fixed intervals, producing a half circle of five concentric lines. Number six consists of an exact semicircle of six concentric lines, separated at regular distances by five parallel lines. The relation, in the one case, of five parallels to five curves, and in the other, of five parallels to six curves, is the trait which, in each border, gives it completeness and demonstrates design.

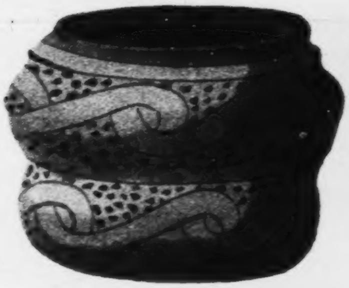
In number three, this resemblance to forms early developed in the other hemisphere ceases; or rather, while the system of right lines and curves is still apparent, the combination reminds one rather of the curious principles of native architecture, which form so striking a feature in the monumental ruins of Yucatan.[1] This border, if its character has been rightly apprehended, is a combination of the lines of rigid pillars, and semicircles, placed convex to convex, and ornamented in the dot-style of 1, 2, 7, 9, 10. This feature of the dot is, indeed, it may be said, the characteristic one of these borders, or at least that feature which denotes their identity of origin.

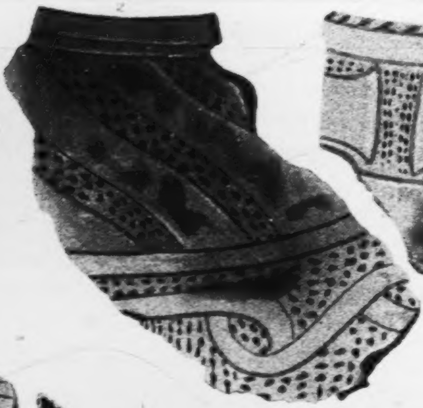
So far the devices appear to have been taken from artificial objects; but there are also a few traits derived from the natural history of the country. Such are, in most cases, in the fragments of the pottery examined, the ears of the cooking vessels, or those appendages on opposite sides of the rim, which are provided with orifices to insert a thong or bale by which these vessels might be suspended over a fire. In some of the fragments of separate vessels examined, the heads and beaks of a duck, a gull, and an owl, are respectively represented. It may, perhaps, also be thought that the ornamental devices in some of the fragments represent plumes of feathers.

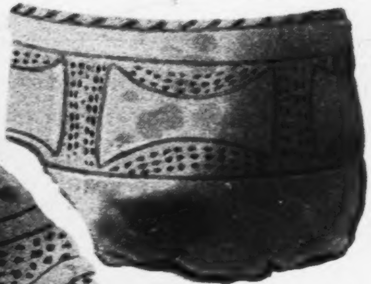
In Fig. 8, there is a combination of segments of circles with ellipses and right-angled lines, inaccurately drawn. It is a drawing which exhibits a fixed theory, without much manual art. It is the rudest figure observed. Yet there is in it a

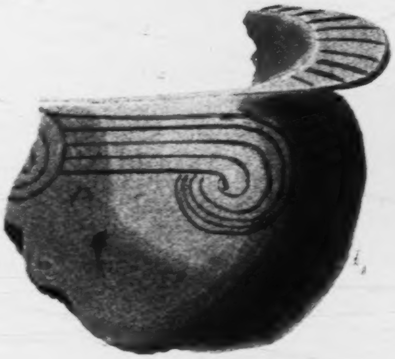
---

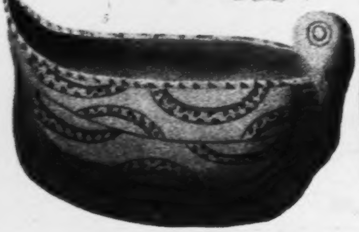
[1] See Stephens.

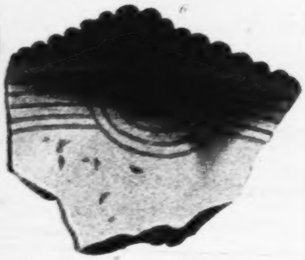
1


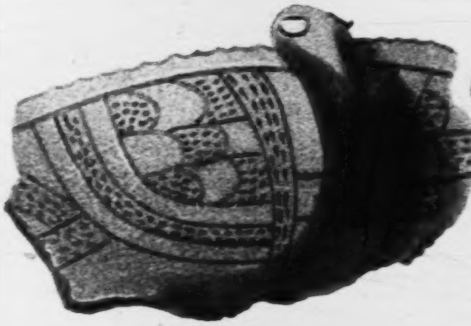
2


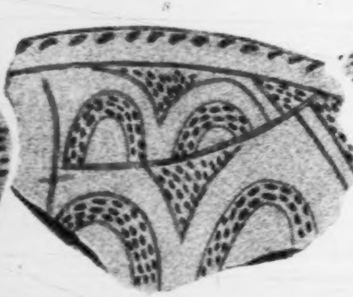
3


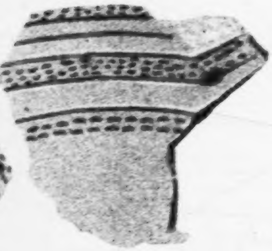
4


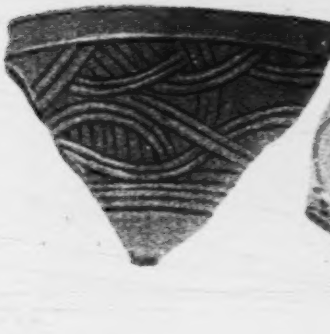
5


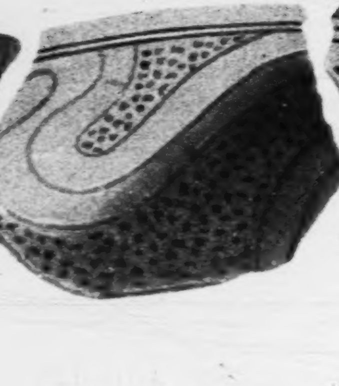
6


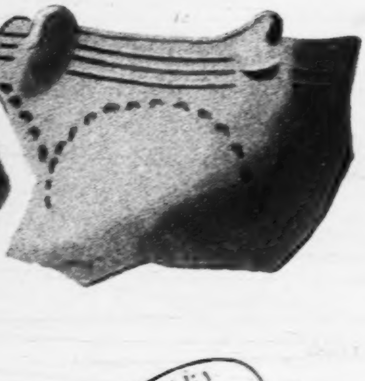
7


8


9


10


11


12


LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF [illegible]

character which denotes it to be *sui generis*. It is the homogeneous style of dotted ground-work.

The particular type of the design of number nine is simply parallels; in number ten and number five, of circles irregularly drawn; in eleven, the chain figure of number one modified. In number twelve there is a representation of dotted arches and parallel fillets.

So much evidence of art in the combination of figures to produce agreeable results, would appear to betoken some advance in the tribes or people who erected the barrows, feasting mounds, and sepulchral monuments, from which these antique vessels were taken. The art of adjusting proportions is one of the clearest tokens which a people can give of the laws of design. There is nothing, in truth, more characteristic of the low state of art amongst the North American tribes, including the highest efforts of the ancient Mexicans, than the want of this principle. It seems difficult, indeed, to suppose that the Aztec head could ever have had its exact prototype among the "sons of men;" and with every allowance for craniological peculiarities, it is more consonant to reason and observation, to account for its excessive acuteness, on the theory of cranial compressure or bad drawing.

That pottery was a fixed art, and the business of a particular class of society, amongst the ancient Floridian and other American tribes, is thought to be evident from the preceding facts. No mere hunter or warrior could drop his bow and arrow, or war-club, at any time, and set to work to fabricate such vessels. The art of adjusting the mixture of alumine and silex, so as to counteract excessive shrinkage, and enable the ware to sustain the application of sudden heating and cooling, is one that requires skill and practice. Still more is the manipulation or handicraft of the potter one that demands continued practice. A hunter and a warrior, it is true, expected to make his arms and implements; yet there was ONE BRANCH of the requirement which demanded too much skill and mechanical dexterity for the generality of our tribes to succeed in. It was the chipping of flint and hornstone for darts, and spear and arrow heads. There was, according to Chippewa tradition, a particular class of men among our northern tribes, before the introduction of fire-arms, who were called MAKERS OF ARROW HEADS.[1] They selected proper stones, and devoted themselves to this art, and took in exchange from the warriors for their flint-heads, the skins and flesh of animals. This is related by the Algonquins. The Iroquois affirm that pottery was the art of the women.[2]

With respect to the style of the drawings above alluded to, it is the theory of the designs that appears to be entitled to particular notice. The execution is such as resembles the efforts of clumsy artists to copy good designs. And we are at liberty, in examining them, to suppose that they denote ancient forms of taste and beauty lingering in the minds of a people, after they had partially retrograded to a condition of barbarism.

---

[1] Algic Researches.

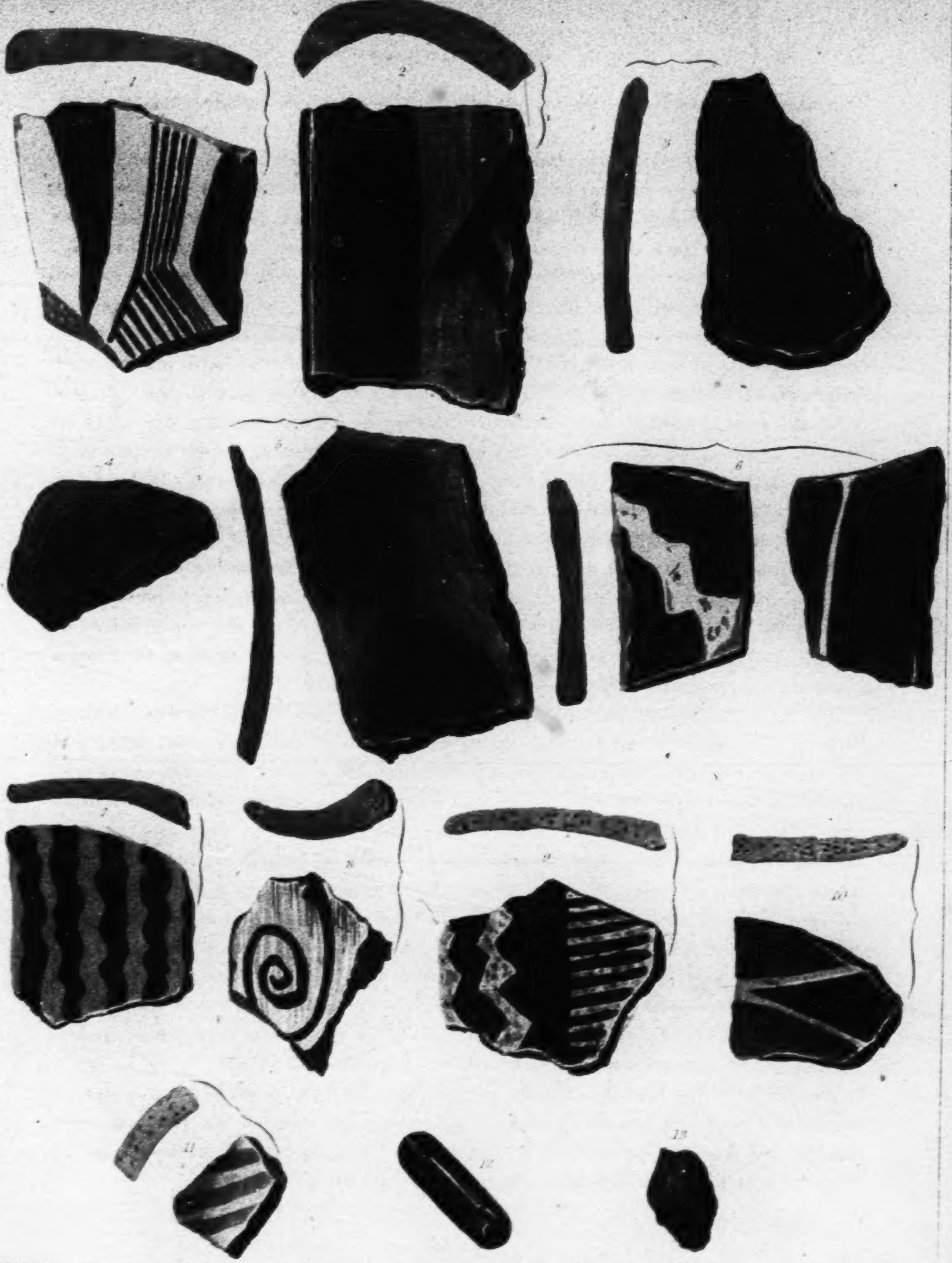
[2] Notes on the Iroquois.

That the quality of the Florida pottery itself is quite superior, both in *composition* and *manufacture*, as well as ornament, to the common AKEEK, or Indian pot, and ONAGUN, of the Atlantic and Lake tribes, is strikingly shown by a large and entire specimen of the black earth-kettle of the Algonquins, which is figured in Plate 22, Vol. I. This ancient relic of the earthen-ware of the HUNTER PERIOD, as it existed immediately *at* and *before* the discovery, was obtained, many years ago, from a cave in an island of the straits of St. Mary's, Michigan. Nothing can exhibit a ruder condition of the potter's art. It is a coarse compound of aluminous earth and pounded fragments of silicious stone and feldspar, without any baking prior to use. It was evidently used as a retort in a sand-bath. Having no legs, by which a fire could be kindled under it, the fire was evidently built around it, the kettle itself resting on a bed of earth or ashes. By inspecting the interior, the carbonaceous and hardened remains of liquid food, probably boiled maize, will be noticed. This vessel is supposed to be two hundred and fifty or three hundred years old.

We thus have, in juxtaposition, the pottery of Florida and of the outlet of lake Superior — positions separated by sixteen degrees of latitude. They present two conditions of the art, which are widely different. If both the specimens before us were executed by the red race, as is commonly supposed, those inhabiting the Florida coast were superior, as potters, to our northern hunters.

But a single remark will be added in reference to the general question of these vestiges of ancient art in Florida. It is the tradition of the Shawanoes, which was recorded twenty-five years ago, in the first volume of the Transactions of the American Antiquarian Society, p. 273, that Florida was anciently inhabited by white men, and that their ancestors found vestiges of arts, such as were not common to the red men. These ancient inhabitants appear to have had the use of iron tools. Stumps of trees cut off with such tools, they affirm, were found by them, covered with soil, together with other indications of civilization. It is but a few years since the gold-diggers in Davidson county, North Carolina, in excavating the gold debris of a valley, disinterred the remains of a rude house, in which was found a stone, excavated in its top, with a stone pestle lying therein, such as is used, at this day, by the native Mexicans, in making tortillas. Is this also to be regarded as part and parcel of this ancient supposed North American civilization?

Questions of this kind are readily propounded; but it is much safer and more in accordance with the sound deductions of history, to account for facts on more natural and common principles. It is far more probable that these vestiges of art may be due to earlier European attempts at settlement.


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13

ANTIQUE POTTERY FROM THE GILA RIVER

PUBLISHED BY LIPPINCOTT, GRAMBO & CO PHILADA

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICH

3. ANTIQUE COLORED EARTHEN-WARE, FROM THE RIO GILA, NEW MEXICO.

THE ancient Indian tribes who inhabited the banks of the river Gila have attested their residence in that valley very characteristically by fragments of pottery, which are profusely scattered in all parts of it. The remains of the ruins of buildings on the borders of that stream, are not more characteristic of the peculiar state of Indian art. The name of the river itself is stated to be derived from a tribe called Gilands,[1] whose descendants still dwell on its upper waters; but these descendants do not hold a very high rank among the tribes who now rove over the elevated and broken plains, and sally out stealthily through the precipitous cañons, and around the volcanic peaks, and often dry lateral valleys of the river. They are nicknamed Kiataws, or prairie-wolves, by the adventurous foresters and hardy emigrants, and by the United States military detachments who pass through that valley on their perilous route to Southern California. Whatever other characteristics they have at this time, they appear to be ignorant of the potter's art, and live a predatory, roving life, having the use of the horse; obtained from the Spanish, probably, about the time of Coronada's expedition.

For the specimens of antique pottery, figured in the annexed Plate 20, we are indebted to Lt.-Col. Emory, U. S. A. They were obtained by him (then a subaltern of Topographical Engineers) during the march of the army down that valley, pending the Mexican war, 1846–47. He has communicated the following description:

Nos.

1. The under, or convex side, is of a dingy dove color, and flattened in numberless small planes, conforming to the general curved surface; appears to have been *patted* with a flat instrument while plastic. The concave surface represented is smooth; a slight glaze on it.
2. Piece of the rim of a pot; seems to have been much used for cooking; blackened on upper corner with heat and smoke; outside represented; inside, red color of No. 9; hard coarse earthen-ware; no glaze.
3. Convex side exhibited; coarse imperfectly baked ware; full of white quartz granules and silver mica.
4. Still coarser, and very slightly baked; contains mica and grains of quartz (a granule shown, eighth in. long); convex side exhibited, very slight curve; both sides of 3 and 4 alike in appearance.
5. Concave side exhibited (curved slightly across also); very smooth; a sort of glaze; the other side is darker; of a purplish hue; coarse and porous.

---

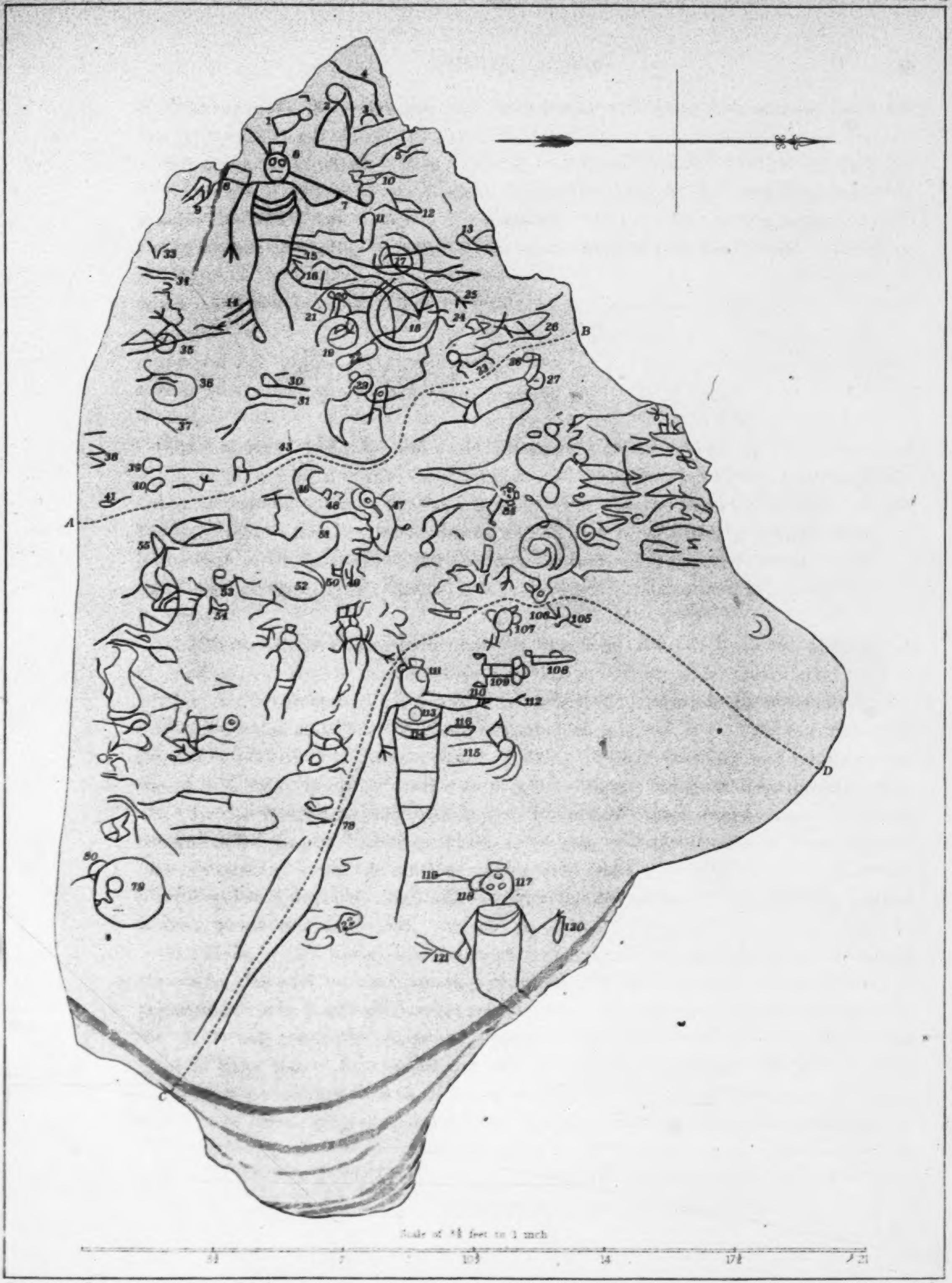
[1] Captain Johnston's Report, Ex. Doc. No. 41, p. 587.

6. Concave side above, and the back below; both smooth; appears more so from use than a glaze; some minute species of white mica in the edges.
7. Concave side represented; same sort of ware as the preceding; convex side a dark dove color, with marks of heat and smoke (edge of a vessel).
8. Convex side coarse and porous; the white on it appears to have been rapidly brushed over, and the black executed rapidly with a full brush; concave side brick red.
9. Still coarser, and more imperfectly baked; smooth, apparently from use, on the back, and of a mouse color.
10. Convex side shown; quite good pottery; edges of thickness about a line deep; baked orange color; middle, dove; the white *chearon* edge appears to have been drawn with freedom; concave side red, color of the other.
11. Coarse, porous, and slightly baked; concave shown; this side, regular surface; the other, color of the stripes, and irregular.
12. A perforated piece, tube; the body is black, hard, and shining; looks like black quartz (gun-flint variety); covered with an exterior red coat of a line thick, which looks like red coral, and as smooth as that substance. Each black conchoidal break at the ends, has a fine white line through them; orifice, eighth in. diam.; it is slightly curved.
13. A crude lump of chloride of copper (or the silicate); earthy and heavy.

Of the fragments of pottery figured, we have not had the opportunity of personal inspection. This is the less to be regretted from the very characteristic notices given. Some variety in the composition of aluminous and silicious material is noticed, and a considerable range of variety in the ornaments, all which evince but a rude taste. It may be deemed a coarse species of the aboriginal terra cotta. One remark may be made of it; namely, that the vessels have all been made by hand, and not raised on the potter's wheel. This instrument is very old in its mode of construction; being a whirling disc of wood, with an upright iron crank and foot-board. Nothing can exceed its simplicity, and we have no evidence that it has been improved in its principles for five thousand years.

Pottery made without it is not geometrically true, and is of very unequal thickness. These are characteristics that distinguish all the ancient pottery of the Indian era of North America, from the valley of Anahuac, the rivers Gila and Culiacan, to the banks of the Hudson, the Connecticut, and the Penobscot.

The figures impressed upon this species of ware, were, however, more elaborate in the southern than the northern tribes. The articles made were also of more varied utility and application. None of the Gila pottery which has been seen is superior, if quite equal, in these respects, to the vases and earthen vessels found in the low tumuli


A
B
C
D
Scale of 3½ feet to 1 inch
3½
7
10½
14
17½
21

Sketched Oct 10th 1850 by Capt S Eastman U S Army

W Williams Sc

Sculptured inscription on a rock. South side of Cunningham's Is Lake Erie

Lippincott, Grambo & Co Phila.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICH

of Florida.[1] Yet the latter was also hand-work, and made without the formative exactness of the potter's wheel.

Specimen No. 12 is manifestly a tube of coarse enamel, and not pottery, and has been brought to its present condition by the process of vitrification, and is consequently a higher species of art than the other articles. It resembles strongly, judging from the figure and description, a species of the same kind of ornament found in 1816 on the banks of the Niagara, in old graves.[2]

No. 13 is labelled, "An ore of copper."

4. ERIE INSCRIPTION IN THE INDIAN CHARACTER OF THE KEKEEWIN. (PLATE 41.)

THE drawing of the figures and symbols composing this inscription, which was executed in 1851, having been copied on stout paper and numbered, was transmitted to Mr. George Johnston, of Sault de Ste. Marie, Michigan, a gentleman well versed in the Indian language, manners, and customs, and by him submitted to the examination of Shingwauk or the Little Pine, the aboriginal archæologist, who, from his knowledge of the Indian pictography, interpreted a prior inscription incorporated in this work. (Vol. I., Plate 36.)

The Kekeewin or Kekeenowin symbolic drawings of the Indians, are an evidence of that general desire implanted in the human breast, which leads man to seek posthumous remembrance. It has been remarked, that these devices represent ideas—*whole* ideas; and their juxtaposition or relation on a scroll of bark, a tree, or a rock, discloses a continuity of ideas: (Part I., p. 340.) The highest object of this species of record is found in the Muzzinabiks, or rock inscriptions, and in the hieratic or juggler's art. In the American Indian, as in the Toltec and Aztec system, much was ever committed to memory. So that the lapse of time, and the demise of hieroglyphists, took away many of the circumstances that were more purely mnemonic. It is this feature which renders the mythologic and religious scrolls of the Mexican picture-writing, at this day, so obscure.

Something of this feeling was expressed by the Indian pictographist, on first casting his eye on this scroll — not so much perhaps from doubts as to the significancy of the principal symbols, but from the obscurity, or utter obliteration of others; and from the fact that they related to tribes and transactions he knew little or nothing of; who lived on Lake Erie at the time of the execution of the inscription.

He drew pencil-lines from A to B, and from C to D (Plate 41); observing, that from the obliterations or imperfect drawing of the figures included in this central part of the drawing, and from his present reflection on them, he could not make fuller explanations of them than he now submitted.

---

[1] Notices of some antique earthen vessels found in the low tumuli of Florida. New York Historical Society, 1847. W. Van Nordest, Printer for the Society, p. 15, 2 plates.

[2] View of the Lead-mines of Missouri. See also Bradford's Antiquities, p. 24.

The inscription is reproduced from Part II., and the figures are now inserted.

Figs. No. 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, &c., are included in this remark. He expressed the opinion that he believed the inscription related to the wars and history of the Eries, after the Indians became acquainted with the whites. The introduction of the symbol for a hat, in Figs. 6, 111, and 117, denotes this. By the same mode of interpretation, it may be said that the Indians had not yet received fire-arms from the Europeans, as no symbol for the gun is observed. Assuming what we believe to be correct, that the Iroquois first received guns from the Dutch, at Albany, in 1614, and that the Lake Indians did not receive them from the French for some years later, the date of the inscription cannot well be placed prior to 1625. The Eries were then in the country. Jefferson says that they lived on the Ohio, and were of the same original stock as the Five Nations.[1] Le Moyne affirms that the war had newly broke out against them, in 1653, and that they were conquered two years after.[2]

Of the unexplained part of the inscription, Shingwauk only speaks discursively. Nos. 84 and 27 are believed to be brothers. They are surveying a scene of carnage and battle. No. 27 holds his pipe (28) reversed, as if despairing and agonized. No. 84, on the contrary, sits calmly viewing the sanguinary field, with his foot removing a skull and the remains of a body. These are wild forest Indians, as they are drawn without hats.

No. 111 represents a great chief, evinced by his medal (113) and by his half moons or gorgets (114). His intercourse with Europeans, and consequent condition, are denoted by the square symbol for a hat on the head. He also retains his feathers. No. 112 denotes his pipe, which he holds in the attitude of smoking. No. 115 represents an inland Indian smoking. He wears his head-dress, and is one of the members of the ceremonial society for tattooing.

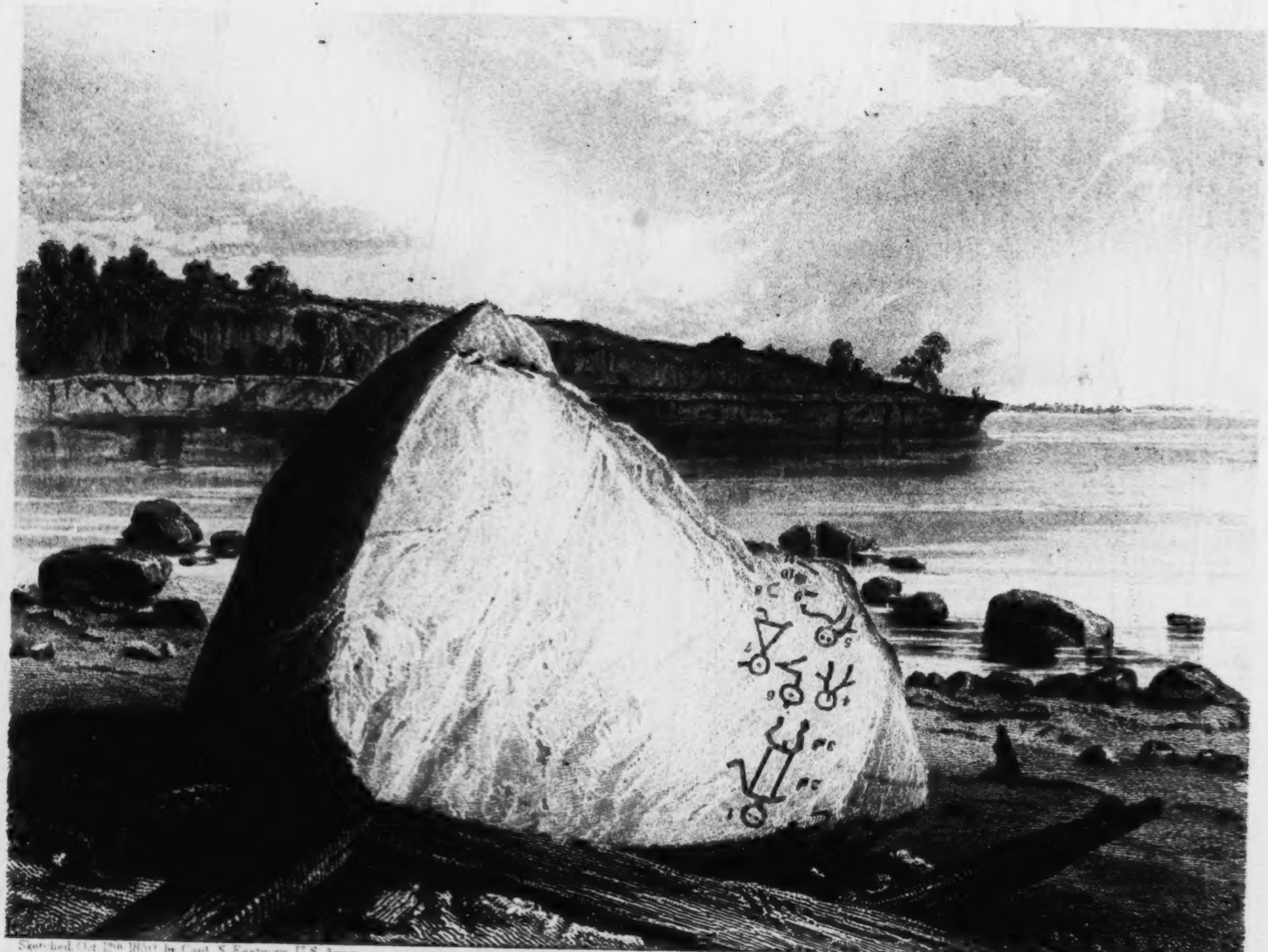
No. 117 denotes a chief and necromancer who tattoos; No. 118 is an ornament in his slit ear; No. 120, his medicine-sack; No. 121, his ceremonial instruments. By his also wearing a hat and three gorgets, like 114, he prefigures his rank, and his visits to the forts or trading-posts on the sea-board. He is evidently a man of consequence and power, which is further denoted by No. 119, a wand.

No. 116 symbolizes a dish of mixed colors, for the operation of tattooing. Figs. 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, represent objects to be copied, and placed pictorially on the chief (117, 119). Fig. 78 denotes a road, and 122, serpents who beset the path; symbolizing enemies, trouble, misery, and pain of the most pointed and stinging character. This completes the eastern end of the inscription.

---

[1] Notes on Virginia, p. 156. Lond. ed., 1778.

[2] Lettres Edifiante.



Sketched Oct. 12th 1850 by Capt. S. Eastman, U.S. Army

Pl. 4.

C. E. Wagstaff & J. Andrews Engrs.

Inscription on rock North side of Cunningham's Is. Lake Erie.

[illegible]

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF

The top figure, No. 6, opens the western portion of the pictograph. This is a chief and warrior of distinction. Fig. 7 denotes his pipe; he is smoking after a fast. Figs. 15, 16 are ornaments of leather, worn by distinguished warriors and chiefs; such as breech-cloths, with hoofs of the deer attached to them. This is further shown by No. 14, ornaments of feathers. Fig. 33 is a symbol for the number 10, and denotes ten days; the length of his fast. Fig. 34 is a mark for the number two, and designates two days; denoting that he fasted the whole time, except a morsel of food at sunset.

Figs. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 29, 35, 36, and 43, represent different objects relied on by the chief, in the exhibition of his magical and political powers; denoting, in him, the sources of long life and potent influence. Figs. 30, 39, and 41, denote a journey in snow-shoes. Figs. 31, 40 are (agreeably to the prior explanation on the Dighton Rock inscription) war-clubs. Part I., Plate 37.

Fig. 38 denotes a fast of twenty-one days, and 37 a fast of ten days, agreeably to the symbols for numbers before used. The hat and plume denote double influence with the White and Red races, and point him out as one of the leading and energetic actors in the events recorded.

Figures 79 and 80 appear to denote the position of lake Erie, and the connecting waters of Sandusky bay and river Huron as the scene of these transactions.

No. 1, Plate 40, denotes the exploits of a man who has performed several notable feats, at sundry times. Nos. 2 and 3 indicate a man of far-seeing intelligence. Nos. 4 and 5 are co-actors. No. 6 symbolizes the head of a man, held up by No. 7. No. 8 is the symbol of the moon. Figs. 9 and 10 are symbols of the sun. He assumes high influences and energies, and is an actor of note.

5. NOTICES OF SOME METALLIC PLATES EXHIBITED IN ANNUAL DANCES AMONG THE MUSCOGEES.

Copper was in its virgin, or the native state of mineralogists, in general use by the North American tribes. It was hammered out in the cold into various implements and instruments, at the era of the discovery. Recent disclosures, made subsequent to 1842, in the basin of Lake Superior, prove that it was extensively worked at an ancient period in the trap-veins of that quarter. The ancient veins, which had been filled up with earth and covered by a new forest growth, denote an amount of labor and art in the prosecution, which have led to the opinion, that the ancestors of the Indians could not have been the authors of this ancient mining; and such would seem to be the inevitable conclusion, were we to conjecture these extensive remains of mining industry to be the result of general and continuous labors, and not the slow remains of centuries. Certainly, the knowledge of the mechanical powers here displayed in raising, cutting, and transporting vast solid blocks of metal, is superior to that manifested in any ancient works which have been discovered.

But while the use of copper implements is shown to have been general, there is no evidence that the natives possessed the knowledge of forming brass.[1] The only well-attested instance of its discovery in the Atlantic States which we have, namely the so-called "skeleton in armor," found at Fall River, in Massachusetts, in 1834, has been found far more suitable to poetic[2] than historic uses.

Mr. George Gibbs has examined this subject with care (Part I., p. 127,) and establishes the extreme improbability of its being of the age of a very ancient interment, or at all the fabrication of the aborigines. The interment he conjectures to have been subsequent to 1620. To him the individual appears to have been one of the aborigines, and the articles found embrace nothing that might not have been obtained in trade from Europeans. This appears also to have been the opinion of Dr. Thomas H. Webb, who announced the discovery to the Northern Society of Antiquarians at Copenhagen.

A different opinion has however, on further search, been advanced by that Society.[3] In conformity with the theory of a Scandinavian colony on the waters of Narragansett bay, and in the valley of the Assonet or Taunton river, the individual is conjectured to have been of that colony, and consequently the interment must have been made early in the 11th century.

The interment of the body in dry sand, the careful wrapping of it, the preservative qualities of acetate of copper, and the broad plate of brass, bound with a Scandinavian belt of copper tubes, linked with hempen fibre, appear to favor this. Analysis of the plate of armor, or breast-plate, by Berzelius, shows it, however, constituently to resemble not the old Danish, but modern brass or bronze.[4] One fact seems clear; namely, that the brass plate found with the Fall River skeleton is of European manufacture, and can by no means be ascribed to the ancient arts of the American Indians.

The discovery of this plate of brass at Fall River[5] is suggestive of both the European origin and armorial use of the larger part of the antique plates preserved with such scrupulous and mysterious care amongst the Muscogees.

The earliest notice of these plates appears to be in the work of Adair,[6] who had passed many years as a trader among the Appalachian tribes. We are informed that on the 27th of July, 1759, a Mr. Balsover, a British trader in the Creek country, was told of the existence of these ancient relics by a very aged Muscogee chief. They consisted of seven pieces of copper and two of brass. They were regarded with superstitious awe, guarded with great care, and exhibited but once a year. This was at the green-corn dance, which is celebrated as a sort of thanksgiving. This feast is called the busk, an Indian term peculiar to that tribe.

---

[1] Memoires de la Société Royale des Antiquaires de Nord, 1840–1843; p. 105, Copenhagen, 1843.

[2] Vide Longfellow.

[3] Memoires, page 104.

[4] Ibid. page 115.

[5] Ibid. page 105.

[6] American Indians.

Le Clerk Milfort, who published his work at Paris, 1802,[1] describes them as rare and cherished relics, to which the Indians attached a high value. Mr. Pickett[2] affirms that there are eleven pieces. Two of these are articles of brass, eighteen inches in diameter, about the thickness of a dollar, and stamped with the Roman letters Æ with two dots. They are too large to justify the conjecture that they were cymbals, the only musical instrument to which they can be assimilated; and they were probably taken by the Indians from some of the early European marauders who landed on the Florida coasts. The other nine plates of copper[3] may suggest some ancient form of breast-plate used in similar forays; for the early adventurers stood in a hostile attitude to the tribes, held no terms with them, and only aimed to capture them to work the mines. The Bahama Isles were in a short time entirely cleared of the native inhabitants by the plundering expeditions to enslave Indians for this purpose. From the description and personal notices of Walter Lowrie, Esq., President of the Presbyterian Board of Foreign Missions, who examined these relics in the Choctaw country in 1852, compared with the figures in Pickett's History of Alabama, the following figures of these antique objects, as they now exist in the country west of the Arkansas, are drawn.

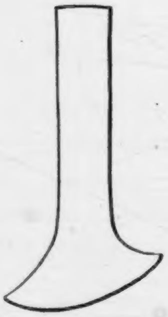


Fig. 1.

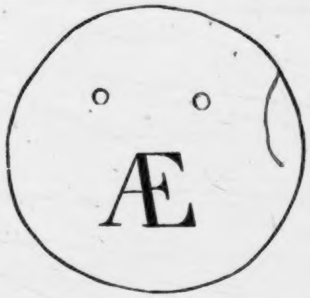


Fig. 2.

Muscogee tradition affirms that there were more of these plates possessed by them at former periods, of different kinds, some of which had letters or figures, but that the number was diminished by the custom of placing one or more of them with the body of a deceased chief of the pure or reigning blood. The plates remaining are placed in the hands of particular men. They are guarded with care, and kept from being touched by women.

---

[1] History of Alabama, Vol. I. p. 85.

[2] Ibid.

[3] Ibid.

The origin and use of these plates is a matter of conjecture. The Muscogees, who have no consecutive notions on the subject, and, like all the aborigines, are prone to hide every thing of this sort under figures and allegories, ascribe them to the gift of the Great Spirit; with just as much knowledge of a Deity, and no more absurdity, than the Greeks did their palladium and statue of Diana to the benignant hand of Jupiter.[1]

Such was the opinion of Opothlahola, one of their most distinguished modern chiefs. There is a tradition that they were derived from the Shawnees, during the ancient period of the sojourn of that tribe in Florida, with whom the Muscogees were on the best terms. The incidents of the separate Spanish invasions of Narvaez and De Soto, early in the 16th century, have completely passed from their traditions, and there is no reference to them as spoils derived from the Spanish defeats. This is, however, the most probable origin of these enigmatical articles of metal. At the battle of Mauvila, on the Alabama, the Creeks are stated, in Spanish accounts, to have taken or destroyed all their baggage, military stores, and supplies; and nothing is more probable than that these are fragments of the armor or musical instruments of that era. Such has been the opinion of old traders who have lived with them; amongst whom may be mentioned Barent Dubois, an intelligent citizen of New York.

---

[1] Acts, chap. 19, verse 35.

IV. PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY OF THE INDIAN COUNTRY. C.

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY OF THE INDIAN COUNTRY.

SYNOPSIS.

1. Inquiries respecting the Character and Value of the Indian Country.
2. Indian Territories of the United States. (1 Map, 1 Plate.)
3. Series of Saline Strata in the Onondaga Country.
4. Journal of the Expedition of Colonel Redick M'Kee, United States Indian Agent, through North-western California. Performed in the Summer and Fall of 1851. By George Gibbs.

1. INQUIRIES RESPECTING THE CHARACTER AND VALUE OF THE INDIAN COUNTRY. (Circular, 1837.)

16.—What are the chief rivers in the district or territory occupied? State their length, general depth and breadth; where they originate; how far they are navigable; what are their principal rapids, falls and portages; at what points goods are landed, and into what principal or larger waters they finally flow.

17.—Are there any large springs, or lakes, in the district, and what are their character, size, and average depth; and into what streams have they outlets? If lakes exist, can they be navigated by steamers? if gigantic springs, do they afford water-power, and to what extent?

18.—What is the general character of the surface of the country? Is it hilly or level—fertile or sterile; abundant or scanty in wood and water—abounding or restricted in the extent of its natural meadows, or prairies? What grains or other products do the Indians raise in the district, and what are its general agricultural advantages, or disadvantages? What are its natural vegetable productions?

19.—Do the prairies and woods afford an abundant supply of herbage spontaneously—are wells of water to be had at moderate depths, where the surface denies springs or streams?

20.—Has the old practice of the Indians of burning the prairies, to facilitate hunting, had the effect to circumscribe the native forests?

21.—Are there any extensive barrens, or deserts, marshes or swamps, reclaimable or irreclaimable, and what effects do they produce on the health of the country; and do they offer any serious obstacles to the construction of roads?

22.—Is the quantity of arable land diminished by large areas of arid mountain, or of volcanic tracts of country, with plains of sand and cactus?

23.—Is the climate generally dry or humid? Does the heat of the weather vary greatly, or is it distributed, through the different seasons, with regularity and equability? What winds prevail? Is it much subject to storms of rain with heavy thunder, or tornadoes, and do these tempests of rain swell the streams so as to overflow their banks

24.—Does the district produce any salt springs of value; any caves, yielding saltpetre earth; or any beds of gypsum, plaster of paris, or marl?

25.—Has the country any known beds of stone coal, or of iron ores, or veins of lead, or copper ores, or any other valuable deposits of useful metals, or minerals?

26.—What is the general character and value of the animal productions of the district? What species of quadrupeds most abound?

27.—Do the Indian traditions make any mention of larger, or gigantic animals in former periods? Is there any allusion to the mastodon, megalonyx, or any of the extinct races, whose tusks, or bones, naturalists find imbedded in clay, or submerged in morasses?

2. INDIAN TERRITORIES OF THE UNITED STATES.

(PLATE XXI.)

THE quantity of land ceded by the Indians from the commencement of purchases in 1795, to the close of 1839, was 442,866,370 acres.[1] The statements for the succeeding thirteen years have not been made up to the present year. The rate at which the Indian population declines, is not certainly deducible from any body of published attainable facts; although the details are in the process of being collected and generalized. Nor has such decline been regular, for definite and equal periods, in our history; the fluctuations in the vital scale of Indian life having been, as we perceive them to be at this day, very great. That the early estimates were exaggerations, in many cases, is undeniable; and where the best and most probable results have been incidentally exhibited by writers, they are to be regarded as mere approximations to the truth. The means of human subsistence, and of reproduction, generally keep an equal pace in every well-regulated condition of society; but the Indian tribes were exempted, in some measure, from the operation of general laws of increase and decrease; while they were at all times subject to an additional element of decline, from their perpetual hostilities. The hunter state is adverse to fecundity. An Indian female does not produce, on the average, more than two children; and we cannot look back to a period, since the era of the discovery of North America by Cabot, when the Indian population of the area of the United States probably exceeded, if it ever reached, one million souls. Estimates, combined with census returns furnished in 1850, (Vol. I., p. 523,) render it probable that the Indian population of the United States of that year, did not much exceed 400,000 souls; and the most liberal estimates cannot place it, at this time, with every accession from explorations, that have been since made in New Mexico, Utah, California, and Oregon, much over 500,000.

---

[1] Vide Vol. II. p. 598.

But whatever be the date, or the rate of increase or decline at fixed periods, it is undeniable that the quantity of land possessed by even the largest tribes has been out of all proportion redundant and excessive to the population; granting that the Indian population, in the gross, has been industrial at any given period.

The sale of these redundant lands, the original Indian possession and title to which has ever been acknowledged by the American government, has been the great and common resource of the Indian tribes. They are, and ever have been, the great landholders of America; and while the cessions have furnished ample areas for our rapidly-expanding population, this system of cession and payments has had the effect to keep the body of the tribes from feeling the necessity of industry. Although they are not civilians and proprietors of the soil *en franc allieu*, the acknowledgment of their usufruct title has placed them in the position of original grantors. For this purpose they are regarded as foreign powers, holding the sovereignty, and treated with as such; while, for every other purpose, they are acknowledged as the public wards of the government, and as wards they are interdicted from parting with their title to any but the national power. This relation of wards, who are tribal annuitants, has placed them in the condition of privileged debtors on the frontiers. Every object of use or luxury is at the command of the tribes who have heavy annuities, and the effect of this system has been to uphold their natural repugnance to labor, and to weaken and lower the tone of the Indian mind. Its capacities are paralysed by the periodical expectation of the government annuities, which are generally squandered in brief periods after they reach the Indians, on objects that do not invigorate or benefit, but tend to detract from its capacities of usefulness.

The accompanying Map, Plate 21, has been constructed with great pains and care, to exhibit the present territory occupied and owned by the Indians. It shows the recession of the tribes from the Atlantic, the Alleghanies, and the great lakes, towards the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific.

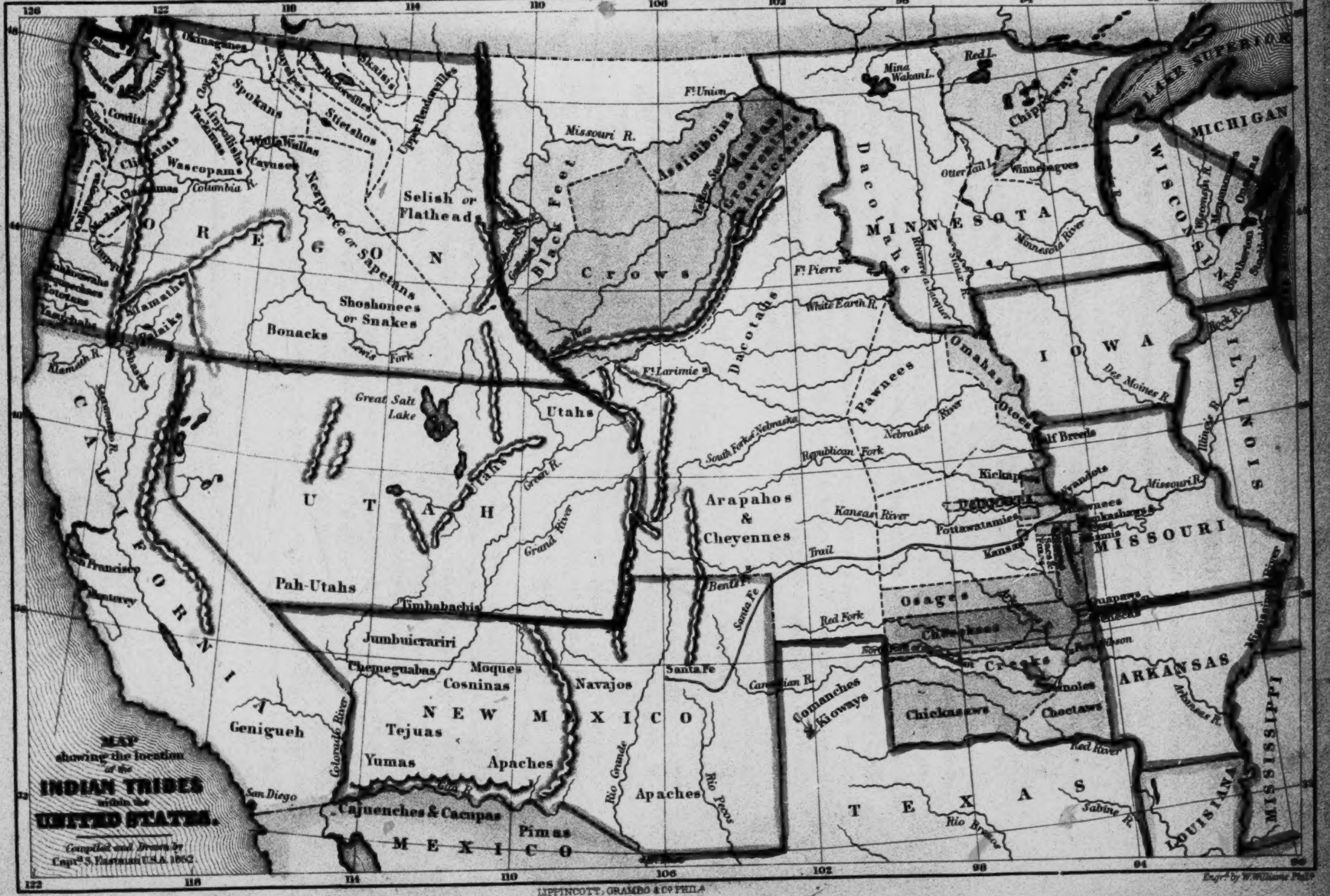
It is a mistake to suppose that any of the leading stock-tribes or primary generic groups of the aborigines have become extinct. Numerous small coast-tribes, extending at first along the shores of the Atlantic, through every latitude from the St. Lawrence to the capes of Florida, early fell before the triple touch of intemperance, indulgence and idleness, or their remnants retreated westward. But the parent languages were preserved in the body of the tribes who receded from the early points of European landing and settlement, thus preserving the historical line of the stocks. In this manner the numerous tribes of New England and the southern part of New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina, were speedily swept off; but nearly all these tribes spoke dialects of the great Algonquin tongue, or varieties of its sub-divisions, as the Mohegan, Lenno Lenape, and the Powhatanic. The Iroquois language, in its sevenfold dialects,[1] has been perfectly preserved. The Mohegan exists fully in the existing Stockbridges and Munsees of the West; the Lenno Lenape in the Delaware; the Algonquin proper in the Chippewa, Ottowa, Shawnee, and Miami, of the Mississippi Valley, and of the great lake basins. Of the Powhatanic sub-type of the Algonquin, we must judge from the old travellers and writers, compared with the existing geographical terminology of Virginia. The Cherokees have preserved their language and nationality intact. The languages of the great Appalachian tribes north of the Gulf of Mexico have come down to modern times in the Creek, Choctaw, and Chickasaw. An hiatus, however, exists in the ancient history of tribes of the Chicorean group, who lived on the Atlantic coasts of Florida, Georgia, and, to some extent, South Carolina, and appear to have been forcibly carried by the Spanish to work in the mines of St. Domingo; often from the coast direct, or from the Bahamas, Cuba, or others of the West India groups. In other cases, they were subjugated by, and incorporated with, the Muscogees.

The progress of purchase of the Indian territories herewith delineated, must, under the present expanding population of the United States, absorb these Indian territories wherever the lands have not been secured to them in perpetuity with the sovereignty thereof. For observations on the future prospects of the tribes, reference is made to section XI., herewith.

---

[1] Namely, Mohawk, Oneida, Onondaga, Cayuga, Seneca, Wyandot, and Tuscarora.

Plate 21


LAKE SUPERIOR
MICHIGAN
WISCONSIN
ILLINOIS
IOWA
MISSOURI
ARKANSAS
MISSISSIPPI
LOUISIANA
TEXAS
MINNESOTA
OREGON
UTAH
CALIFORNIA
NEW MEXICO
MEXICO
Chippeways
Winnebagoes
Otter Tail L.
Red L.
Mina Wakan L.
Minnesota River
Sioux R.
Riviere a Jacquer
Dacotahs
Ft. Union
Missouri R.
Assiniboins
Grosventres
Mandans
Arrickarees
Yellow Stone
Black Feet
Crows
Ft. Pierre
White Earth R.
Omahas
Otoes
Half Breeds
Des Moines R.
Rock R.
Illinois R.
Missouri R.
Pawnees
Nebraska River
South Fork of Nebraska
Republican Fork
Ft. Laramie
Kickapoos
Pottawatamies
Kansas River
Kansas
Wyandots
Shawnees
Osages
Cherokees
Creeks
Seminoles
Choctaws
Chickasaws
Quapaws
Senecas
Ft. Gibson
Red Fork
Canadian R.
Comanches & Kioways
Arkansas R.
Red River
Sabine R.
Rio Brazos
Arapahos & Cheyennes
Trail
Bents Ft.
Santa Fe
Navajos
Apaches
Rio Grande
Rio Pecos
Okinagenes
Spokans
Stietshoe
Skaisis
Upper Pendoreilles
Walla Wallas
Cayuses
Wascopams
Columbia R.
Cowlitz
Chinooks
Clackamas
Klamaths
Nezperce or Sapetans
Selish or Flatheads
Shoshonees or Snakes
Bonacks
Lewis Fork
Great Salt Lake
Utahs
Green R.
Grand River
Pah-Utahs
Timbabachis
Jumbuicrariri
Chemeguabas
Moques
Cosninas
Tejuas
Yumas
Genigueh
Colorado River
Gila R.
Cajuenches & Cacupas
Pimas
San Diego
San Francisco
Monterey
Sacramento R.
Shastas
Klamath R.
126
122
118
114
110
106
102
98
94
90
86

MAP
showing the location
of the
INDIAN TRIBES
within the
UNITED STATES.

Compiled and Drawn by
Captⁿ S. Eastman U.S.A. 1852

LIPPINCOTT, GRAMBO & Cᵒ PHILᴬ

Engrᵈ by W. Williams Philᵃ

3. SERIES OF SALINE STRATA IN THE ONONDAGA COUNTRY.

COMMUNICATED BY JAMES R. REES, ESQ.

The importance of recognizing the saliferous column in American geology, will give interest to the following memorandum of boring made at Lockpit, on the line of the Erie canal, by Mr. John Mead.

FEET.	SALINE COLUMN.	AGGREGATE.
3	Alluvial soil	3
46	Alternate layers of quicksand and clay. Here the rock was struck	49
30	Gypsum rock interspersed with strata of clay-slate. Here the first vein of salt water appeared. It rose and ran over the top in a tube of seventy-nine feet depth	79
44	Similar gypseous rock, with marl-clay slate. Salt water continued to rise in veins of strength	123
2	Blue limestone	125
4	Gypsum and clay strata. Here the second vein of salt water was struck at the depth of 129 feet. It appeared to be double the quantity of water, which ran over the top of the tube, and increased in strength from one to two per cent.	129
11	Gypseous and clay slate rock, 11 feet. Here the augers were loaded with a black substance adhering to them, depth 140 feet	140
11	Clay slate of a milk-white color	151
12	Indurated clay; it continued to grow harder to the bottom of the twelve feet	163
5	Softer cutting of the same kind	168
4	Harder cutting of the same kind	172
40	Same kind of rock, with an occasional hard streak. Here, at the depth of 212 feet, a hard streak of rock was passed through, and opened a vein of water and gas. Water discharged fifty gallons per minute, during the first hour; it then abated, and continued to run by turns, three times in twenty-four hours; it then continued to run regular or uniform	212
9	Gypsum and clay	221
3	Green rock	224
3	Blue rock	227
7	Of the above blue rock	234
2	Saliferous rock	236

2	Grey band	238
2	Grey band and red saliferous mixed a little	240
136	Red saliferous sandstone rock	376

At the depth of 242 feet the drill appeared to strike into a thin seam of rock-salt. At the depth of 250, a layer of fossil salt was reached, which raised the strength of the water from 38° to 58°, by the instrument graduated at 100°. At the depth of 270 feet the water stood at a strength varying from 13° to 17°, by an instrument graduated at 25°. At 280 feet the sediment was mixed with fossil salt, and the rock continued to grow salter as the auger descended. Samples of the rock, penetrated during the last twenty-three feet, were transmitted to you. By inspection with the microscope, they will be perceived to contain minute and regular crystals of sulphate of lime.

The boring was again renewed, and the well sunk 25 feet deeper in a continuation of the rock last mentioned, making it 401 feet deep; and the boring was then discontinued.

A tin tube 400 feet long was then run down the well, and water pumped up through it from the bottom of it, which stood at 25°, then 19°; as tested by an instrument graduated at 25°. Continued pumping until it ran down to 6°; discontinued the work for 24 hours, and again drew up water that stood at 25°; but on continuing to pump, the water diminished in strength as before.

The water continues to flow from the top of the tube, but in a more moderate degree than at first, at the strength of 6°; which, on evaporating, forms thin layers of salt.

The search for salt in the Onondaga country, appears to have been made at an early period. Accounts of its existence were carried to the sea-shore, by Indians, almost as soon as Europeans landed on the coast. There is little doubt, both from Indian and Spanish traditions, that the followers or successors of De Leon and De Soto were led into these northern regions under the delusive hope of finding glittering masses of silver; being misled by Indian reports of the incrustations of salt which were found on the low margin of Onondaga lake, when the saline springs were first discovered by the Indians. The natural production of a white and shining substance, was sufficient to fire the imaginations of adventurers who had left Europe pregnant with the idea of finding the hills, lakes, and forests of America, to conceal unbounded stores of silver and gold. There is hardly another interpretation to be given to a rude Spanish monument found in Manlius, a few years ago, with the date of 1520.

The earliest notices of the phenomena of the issue of salt water on the borders of Onondaga lake, were given by the French, about the middle of the seventeenth century. Le Moyne distinctly states the fact, in his journey into the Onondaga country, in 1652. The Indians were in the habit of manufacturing salt, by evaporating the water in earthen pots. It does not appear that the French, in their zealous endeavors to possess themselves of the trade and commerce of the country, ever turned this discovery to national account.

The English listened, with interest, to the accounts which were brought to the banks of the Mohawk and the Hudson, by the Iroquois sachems; and it is well known that a grant of the precinct supposed to contain the most valuable salt-mines, was made to Sir William Johnson, about the year 1760. The actual remoteness of the position; the immense forests, and portages over difficult routes, which intervened; and finally, the war of the Revolution, which changed wholly the position and rights of the parties, prevented any practical results from this grant.

Grants from the Indians were terminated by the proclamation of George III., in 1763; and when the smoke of the Revolution cleared away, the State of New York, which had succeeded to the sovereignty of the country, claimed all public rights of this nature. It would be an interesting inquiry to determine the earliest attempts which were made to obtain the water by sinking wells on the shores of the lake, and the progress of discovery and manufacture which marks the history of these celebrated and permanent springs, during the last seventy years. Whether the wealth and resources yielded to the State, or the benefits derived to individuals, are the greatest, is a matter of doubt.

Every attempt to enlarge the area over which this precious fluid prevails, is intensely important; and the details of such labors are well worthy of record. These borings of Mr. Mead, if they lead to no other result, will tend to show that nature has not limited her productions, and may incite to renewed researches.

3. JOURNAL OF THE EXPEDITION OF COLONEL REDICK M'KEE, UNITED STATES INDIAN AGENT, THROUGH NORTH-WESTERN CALIFORNIA. PERFORMED IN THE SUMMER AND FALL OF 1851.

BY GEORGE GIBBS.

Benicia, *California*, *Feb.* 23, 1852.

Sir: — Herewith you will receive a transcript of the diary kept by me during your recent expedition through the north-western part of this State, as also a map illustrating the country, and a few sketches and vocabularies of the languages in use among the Indian tribes through whom we passed.

With regard to the map, it is proper to state that it covers a district very little known, and heretofore never surveyed. Those portions adjacent to the route travelled over, are believed to be laid down with sufficient accuracy for ordinary purposes. As regards the rest, the best information which could be obtained has been used. It will be readily understood, that in a rapid march through a region of such considerable extent, many details have been passed over, which, in some respects, are important; but the general features of the country may be relied on as accurate.

As to the opinions advanced in the journal, you will of course in no wise be considered as responsible.

I am, sir,
Very respectfully yours,
George Gibbs.

Colonel R. M'Kee.

JOURNAL.

Monday, Aug. 11.—Colonel M'Kee and party, escorted by Major Wessells, and a detachment of thirty-five mounted riflemen, left Sonoma this morning, and moved over to Santa Rosa, encamping a little beyond Carillo's ranch. An odometer attached to one of the wagons, gave the distance at about 19¾ miles. The general route proposed to be followed by the expedition, was up Russian river to its sources, down Eel river to Humboldt bay, and thence over to the Klamath, ascending that to the neighborhood of Shasté[1] Valley, should the season permit.

A large number of Indians, belonging to this and the neighboring ranches, were collected in the afternoon, and informed of the objects of the agent, who promised, at a future time, to meet them for the purpose of making a formal treaty. Their neighborhood to the settlements, and the importance of first ascertaining the numbers and condition of those more distant, as well as the country suitable for a reservation, rendered any immediate action here undesirable. It is unnecessary to say, that these ranch Indians are entirely inoffensive, and perfectly under the control of the Spanish proprietors, who, in fact, have always treated them as *péons*, and inculcated the idea of their obligation to labor. From their influence with these bands, or rancherias, the principal difficulty will evidently arise in disposing of the natives, or inducing them to remove to any other part of the country. The slovenly modes of cultivation in use, comparatively unproductive as they are, have yet the merit of requiring little or no expenditure of money in wages; the Indians receiving a bare support beyond what they can steal, and then only during the summer. Wretched as this system is, it would be difficult to eradicate it from a race so wedded to old habits and ideas. The class of extensive Spanish proprietors is, however, destined to be of short duration. The titles to their enormous possessions, which, under the imbecile administration of the Mexican laws, passed unexamined or overlooked, are now to be inquired into, and many held originally merely by sufferance, will undoubtedly be rejected. But a more certain, and, perhaps, equally speedy agent is at work. Before the "breaking out of the mines," they possessed very little actual money. Immense herds of wild cattle, and bands of horses, constituted their wealth. Hides, for which the former were slaughtered in vast numbers, furnished a means of barter, and were, in fact, the currency of the country. A few acres of the rich soil in the valleys, barely scratched with a crooked log, produced their barley, melons, and vegetables; and they were fortunate when their Indian serfs left them even a sufficiency of these. The discovery of the hidden riches of the country, for the most part, added nothing to their prosperity. The toil required to develop them was foreign to their habits, and although the prices of what they could sell were enormously increased, necessities before unknown were at once introduced among them. The foresight of the new-comers, on the other hand, early led them to the acquisition of lands, and a few thousand dollars in money was a temptation too great for a Californian to resist. Ranch after ranch has thus been parted with to those more industrious or more sagacious; without counting the acres from which the hardier race has, by main force and obstinacy, shouldered its former claimants. Now that these, by a superior cultivation and greater labor, can undersell the Spaniard in all the productions of the soil, his ruin, and that not far distant, is certain. A sentiment of pity may lead us to commiserate the destiny of the ancient proprietor; but we cannot lament those occurrences which promise to convert an obscure province into a powerful State; or waste many tears upon the race which, grasping such vast possessions, was too indolent to nurture the agricultural wealth of the land, and had too little enterprise even to find the mineral that glittered at its feet.

---

[1] The true Indian pronunciation of this word appears to be Shastl, vide Fremont's Memoir.

Tuesday, Aug. 12th.—The Santa Rosa plains, here about a mile and a half in width, a short distance beyond widen out, connecting with the Petaloma valley, and extending westward toward Bodega for about twelve miles. A heavy sea-fog, which lingered on the plains throughout the morning, prevented our seeing them beyond a short distance; but the general character is similar to that of the Sonoma valley. The soil, though rich, bakes in the sun, cracking to the depth of several inches, and receiving the plough only during the wet season. The road, which at this time was good, wound along foot-hills, coming down from the right, and was shaded by oaks, here thickly scattered, from whose branches long festoons of moss depended. Five and a quarter miles beyond the Santa Rosa ranch, we came to that of Mrs. West, the San Miguel, situated like the first upon a small creek running into Russian river. The usual size of these estates in this part of California, appears to be from six to nine leagues of land; the league containing 5000 varas square, of thirty-three inches the vara. Around this, as elsewhere, we saw swarms of Indians idling about, or perched on high platforms of poles and bush, keeping away the crows, apparently less numerous and troublesome than themselves. The common crop everywhere is barley, and the harvesting and treading out were in progress; the latter being performed by turning a drove of wild horses into a corral filled with the sheaves, and stirring them round by active use of the whip and vigorous shouting. The average yield of barley to the acre, we were told, was sixty bushels, and the price asked for it on the spot (the same, by the way, as the market value at San Francisco) was five cents a pound. This is the only staple; the small quantity of Indian-corn raised being more for domestic use, than as a marketable commodity, and being inferior to that of good localities in the Atlantic States. Potatoes and other vegetables were of fine quality, but, as a general thing, required irrigation.

The foot-hills coming down from the higher ranges, are usually fertile, and covered with a thick growth of wild oats, which at this season are of a clear yellow. This hue, spreading over the whole landscape, presents to our eye, accustomed to the verdure of the east, a singular, and at first by no means pleasing appearance; the only relief being the dark foliage of the various oaks which cluster in groves upon hill and valley.

Our march of to-day brought us to Russian river, the Slavianska of the Russians themselves, about a mile and a half below Fitch's ranch; and we encamped among the trees upon the bank, having travelled thirteen and three-quarters miles. This river, the valley of which we were now to ascend, is here about twelve yards in width, and a few inches only in depth, running on a gravelly bed. Its bottom, however, two or three hundred yards in width, and the marks upon its banks, indicate a very different size when the waters from the mountains come down in the rainy season. Between two and three leagues below this point, at Cooper's ranch, the river, which above runs a general south-easterly course, turns west toward the ocean, passing through a cañon. It empties about nine miles below Fort Ross, without any bay at its mouth, which is obstructed by a bar formed of sand and imbedded logs, passable at low tide almost dry-shod. On the north bank commences the true Coast-range of mountains, which hereafter follows the shore of the Pacific to Cape Mendocino, where it terminates. Above that point the rivers run chiefly from the eastward, and the course of the mountain-chains is in accordance with them.

A number of Indians from the neighborhood came in, and a talk was held with them. The tribe to which they belong, and which has its head-quarters at Fitch's ranch, is called "Kai-na-méah," or, as the Spaniards pronounce it, "Kai-na-mé-ro." No opportunity afforded itself for collecting a vocabulary of their language; but I was informed that this dialect extends as far back as Santa Rosa, down Russian river about three leagues to Cooper's ranch, and thence across to the coast at Fort Ross, and for twenty-five miles above. On Bodega's bay, another tribe, the Tu-ma-leh-nias, use a different one. In appearance these Indians differ entirely from the Chinooks and other Coast tribes of Oregon, being taller and darker. They have quite heavy moustaches and beards on the chin, but not much on the cheeks, and they almost all suffer it to grow. Several were noticed with grey heads and beards. They are an ugly and brutish race, many with negro profiles, and some of the old men resembling Chinese figures of their deities. Their traditions are said to be exceedingly vague, and their religious ideas even more obscure. They have no knowledge of a God, but believe in a sort of demon whom they call "Puys," and whom they propitiate by worship, throwing up piles of stones to him, to which each passer-by contributes. As to any notion of Christianity, they have received none. Each band has its chief, who is hereditary, and of the Kai-na-méahs there are three. The total number of these appears to be about two hundred.

Wednesday, Aug. 13*th.*—The morning was again cloudy, and heavy dews had fallen during the night. A mile and a half beyond camp we crossed Russian river at Fitch's ranch, where it issues on the right from behind a high and steep bluff. Beyond the crossing, the road ran over low hills, covered with oaks, as below. The river here lay at some distance, a range of high hills intervening, and the valley having no longer the character of a continuous bottom, but being cut up by low spurs. Between seven and eight miles from the crossing, we struck the river again, and thence the route, now narrowed to a horse-trail, but passable for wagons, followed its course. We saw during the day great numbers of the blue or crested quail; coveys of from twenty to fifty, exceedingly tame, and perching in the bushes when started up. Although the young birds were nearly full grown, we had found a nest in our camp of last night containing eggs. These birds either unite in flocks of several families, or else, as has been stated, one male has two or three females in charge; for the number seen in a flock is far too great for a single brood. We passed another ranch, Piñás, and encamped on the river at a fine bend with abundance of wild oats around. The odometer gave us as our distance 15·67 miles.

The mountains opposite here come close down to the river. The valley since we last reached it, is generally narrow, well wooded with evergreen and other kinds of oak; and the soil, for the most part, good; though occasionally, as on the hills, gravelly. The redwood was now abundant on the mountains, to the left. The scenery was exceedingly picturesque, and many flowering plants of great beauty were every where in bloom. At camp we found recent signs of deer, and two were started within it. Two grizzly bears were also seen in the neighborhood.

Thursday, Aug. 14*th.* — To-day we remained in camp. The morning was again cloudy, and with what, in the Atlantic States, would have been sure signs of rain. Dew fell every night.

Two or three hundred yards above camp a strong soda spring rose in the bed of the river, and on the margin of the water, as it there ran. It boiled strongly, and tasted something like those at the "Beer Springs," on Bear river. The temperature was 78°, while that of the stream within a yard was 76°, and of the atmosphere 73°. Several deer were killed to-day, and a bear chased. The Rocky Mountain hare, or, as it is libellously called, "jackass rabbit," was abundant, and with good dogs would afford fine sport. Quartz rock, in connection with serpentine in place, was noticed in the bed of the river.

Friday, Aug. 15*th.*—This morning, for the first time, was clear. We left camp about seven, our road still passing up the valley, and crossing the river four times. In this part it was heavy with sand and coarse gravel; the river at flood time evidently overflowing the whole bottom. A little beyond the last crossing we reached Barillésás ranch, situated on a spur projecting into the valley. At this point, which is called the Rincon, we should have taken a trail leading up the right-hand branch of the valley, as it would have thus avoided passing over a hill. Russian river here emerges from the long cañon, and one of the trails follows through that also. Keeping up the valley, which beyond Barillésás is a beautiful one, we came to our first experience of the mountains. The road ascends an exceedingly steep and long hill, where the wagons, though light, had to double teams. From the top of one of the ascents there was a fine view down the valley. A long descent followed, during which it was necessary to lock both wheels, and after a march of eleven miles we reached and camped in a little basin, finding good grass and sufficient water in pools in an arroya. All these little valleys afford fine pasturage and abundant oak timber. The lower hills also are covered with oats. Some deer were killed at this place, and we saw signs of bear. Great numbers of a handsome species of woodpecker frequent the oaks, chattering and quarrelling vehemently. A peculiarity of this species, common through California and Southern Oregon, is that it imbeds the acorn for winter food, in the dead limbs of the oak and the bark of the fir, which are often thus seen riddled with holes.

Saturday, Aug. 16*th.*—The morning was fine, our elevation being great enough to clear the fog, and to render the night cool. We ascended in a north-westerly course for about four and one-half miles from camp, where we had another fine view back, and from which a pretty steep, but regular descent, led us into a deep hollow or basin in the mountains. Fronting us was a peak which forms a landmark at the entrance of Russian river into the cañon; and beyond, the still higher range, part of the chain separating it from Clear Lake. A succession of hills followed, until we struck the river again just above the mouth of the cañon. The valley here is narrow and bordered by mountains, the stream itself running between better-defined banks, edged with willows and undergrowth. The hills passed to-day were covered with bunch grass, the wild oats having disappeared. On one of them the big-coned pine was noticed, which among the Indians elsewhere furnishes almost as important an article of food as the acorn with those of this district. Following the bank of the river, our wagons were sometimes compelled to make detours to avoid the steep slopes of the foot-hills. About two miles from our first reaching it, however, the valley widened out into a fine bottom, and another mile brought us opposite to the last Spanish ranch on the river, that of Fernando Féliz, an old Mexican, who claims here some four leagues of land. Our camp was established on the left bank of the river, near a fine clear brook, and much colder than below. Féliz's house, like most of those of the lower class of Californians, was a miserable adobe hut, thatched with tulé, and connected with a sort of out-house by mud walls. A horde of Indians, all scantily dressed and many stark naked, were lounging in and about the enclosure, or perched in crows'-nests watching the corn. The old man received the party with a truly Spanish courtesy, and insisted in turn upon every one sitting down upon the only chair in the establishment. A more attractive spot to some of us was a pile of tulé under the shed, where were seated the two daughters and the daughter-in-law of the host, with a visitor, eating water-melons. The ladies were all tolerably pretty women, and their plump figures were shadowed forth agreeably beneath the thin folds of a chemisette and petticoat which constituted their costume. Féliz's son, a tall and rather fine-looking Californian, did the honors of the melons. Féliz appeared very poor, and indeed complained bitterly of his reduced state. He was too old to hunt, or to work himself. His cattle were almost all gone, his crop of barley was but small, and a little Indian-corn and a few melons and cantelopes, picked before they were ripe to save them from the Indians, were apparently his only other resources. On learning the business of the agent, he was in great tribulation; protesting that he should be utterly ruined were the Indians to be removed, as he could get no other labor, while at the same time he abused them as thieves who had killed his cattle and eaten his crop. His case seemed a hopeless one. It is that of many of his class, but the wheels of state must crush some victims in their inexorable career.

The distance travelled to-day was, by odometer, ten miles, to which one should be added for lockage, making the total from Sonoma a little over seventy-one and one-half miles.

Sunday, Aug. 17th.—Col. M'Kee started for Clear Lake, accompanied by Major Wessells and nine of the command as an escort, and a small pack-train carrying presents and provisions. Several gentlemen from the country below, who had come up on a hunting excursion, also went over. The men were mounted on mules to save the horses, as the road was a severe one; and the appearance of the cavalcade was amusing enough, with the heavy trappings of the mounted riflemen on their diminutive chargers, especially as some of the animals were exceedingly restive under the clattering of sabres and yagers. Our road after leaving the valley was an almost uninterrupted ascent to the summit of the great range which bounds the valley of the lake on the west, the path being an Indian trail, distinctly enough marked. The morning had been cloudy, and towards noon it set in pretty steadily to drizzle, continuing through the day, an occurrence rare at this season. The ascent in all was a very great one, the crest of the mountains being covered only with chemisal, dwarf-oak, and marsanita bushes. Just before reaching the summit we entered on a pretty little valley, two or three miles in length, and completely circled in the mountain, containing fine grass. Passing the divide, we came upon a steep descent ending in an abrupt pitch into the cañon of an arroya below, down which was a well-worn path, probably the equal labor of Indians and bears, guarded on either side by a thicket. Here was our almost entire descent to the level of the valley, which is probably not less than a thousand feet above that of Russian river. We wound down the arroya, now dry except in spots, and passing to the right of a couple of small tulé ponds, crossed some low hills into Clear Lake valley, towards its head. The bottom of the arroya widens out near these ponds, and bends to the left; the stream itself, when full, forming one branch of the principle tributary of the lake. At the ponds we saw a number of ducks and some deer, and a little beyond found the remains of a huge grizzly bear, which some vaquéros had, during the preceding spring, lassoed and baited with bulls. Striking the lake, our trail ran through the tulé marshes which border its western side to camp. This was in an oak grove in the bottom, upon a small stream, and some four miles from a high mountain which juts into the lake nearly equidistant from its extremities. The march to-day was estimated at fifteen miles.

Monday, Aug. 18th.—The morning was again threatening, and the sky did not clear till the afternoon. To-day about seventy-five Indians from the different bands on the lake, including the principal chiefs and head men, came into council. The objects and wishes of the government were explained to them by the agent, and some provisions distributed. They all appeared highly gratified, and grunted their approbation with perfect unanimity, particularly at the promise of beef. Most of these people were entirely naked, and very filthy, and showed less sense of decency in every respect, than any we had ever met with. Their women did not come with them; having, for the most part, been sent up to the hills. Towards evening we rode to the lake and visited the nearest rancheria. This, which was only a summer residence, was pitched in a clump of willow bushes in the tulé, and consisted of the rudest huts of twigs and rushes. A few old women only remained, who were pounding seeds in a pinolé; and they appeared to have a considerable stock both of these and of dried fish. Of fish, the lake abounds with different kinds, among which, a species of bass, so called at least, is considered the best. The fishing season is the fall and winter, when numbers of the adjoining tribes come down. The seeds, which are of anise and of various grasses, are collected by the women, who carry suspended on their backs a conical basket, holding about a bushel, and in the hand a smaller one, suitable for a scoop. With this they sweep among the ripe grass, with a motion similar to that of a man cradling; throwing the seed over the left shoulder into the larger one. The pinolé is pounded in baskets of firm texture, having a hole in the bottom, which is placed upon a smooth stone, and is afterwards stored for winter use. The acorn, however, abundant everywhere, furnishes their chief article of food. Their principal ingenuity is shown in the making of baskets; some of these being of very fine and close texture, capable of holding water. In fact, they boil in them by dropping in heated stones. The women generally wear a small, round, bowl-shaped basket on their heads; and this is frequently interwoven with the red feathers of the woodpecker, and edged with the plume tufts of the blue quail. They appeared to have no earthen or stone utensils, nor any of wood, except pipes, ladles, and pestles. Their canoes, or rather rafts, are made of bundles of the tulé plant, a gigantic bulrush, with a round, smooth stem, growing in marshy grounds to the height of ten or twelve feet. The pipe is a straight stick, the bowl being a continuation of the stem enlarged into a knob, and is held perpendicularly. They use a species of native tobacco of nauseous and sickening odor. The winter houses, which are large lodges supported on poles, and covered with the universal tulé, they always burn on leaving them in spring, to get rid of the vermin. The only building of this band which remained was the "Ser-a-loo," or sweat-house. This, which is used by them as a species of daily indulgence, is heated simply by fires, without the aid of water, and on leaving it, they take to the stream to cool themselves. It is generally built in a conical form, and the one here was about twelve feet high by twenty wide, with the earth excavated for a couple of feet deep within. The circles or mounds on which they have been built, are found in many places around the lake not now inhabited, and, from their number, as well as the great size of some, afford evidence of a formerly much larger population.

As regards this fact, there is but little doubt, nor of the principal cause of the diminution in the ravages of the small-pox, at no very remote period. Some old Indians, who carry with them the marks of the disease, state it positively; and it is reported, by native Californians, that over 100,000[1] perished of this disease in the valleys drained by the Sacramento and the San Joaquin.

Concerning the religious belief of these, as well as the adjoining Indians, it is difficult to obtain conclusive information. One of this tribe, who had been for three or four years among the whites, and accompanied the expedition, on being questioned as to his own belief in a deity, acknowledged his entire ignorance on the subject. As regarded a future state of any kind, he was equally uninformed and indifferent; in fact, did not believe in any for himself. As a reason why his people did not go to another country after death, while the whites might, he assigned that the Indians burned their dead, and he supposed there was an end of them; a speculation, however, probably originating at the moment, and not forming part of the national faith. Some of those who, during our conference, were questioned on the subject, admitted, that as there were good and bad men and animals, there might be good and bad spirits, and that it was reasonable that there should be a maker of what they saw around them; but they added, that these things were for white men to know about. Mr. Benjamin Kelsey, who had lived some time among these people, and whose intelligence and familiarity with Indian customs renders him a reliable informant, states, on the contrary, that among themselves the old men go through ceremonies, at night and morning, of a devotional character, singing, crying, and making signs; and that an Indian in his employment, who spoke Spanish, explained that it was like what the priests did. The custom of burning the dead is universal here, and through the length of Russian river; and, as we afterwards found, among cognate tribes at the head of Eel river.

---

[1] Doubtful.—H. R. S.

In personal appearance, many of the Clear Lake Indians are of a very degraded caste; their foreheads naturally being often as low as the compressed skulls of the Chinooks, and their forms commonly small and ungainly. They, as well as the river tribes, cut their hair short. They have also considerable beard and hair on the person. Few of the men have any clothing at all. The women, however, wear, even from the earliest childhood, a short fringed petticoat, generally of deer-skin, around the loins, but suffer the upper part of the body to be exposed. Sore eyes and blindness, the result of smoke and dirt, were common. It may be noticed that phymosis is common among all the Indian tribes of this country.

A vocabulary of this language was obtained from the Indian who accompanied us, and who spoke Spanish sufficiently to be enabled to interpret with his people. It was carefully taken down, and may be relied on as tolerably accurate. Many of the words will be found identical with those of the Indians on the upper parts of Russian and Eel rivers; and indeed he was able to converse with most of these — understanding them, however, much better than he could reply. (Vide § IX., Language.)

Tuesday, Aug. 19.— The preliminaries of the treaty were agreed upon in council this morning, a larger assemblage being present than yesterday. In the mean time an examination of the country was made, as well as time and means afforded, with a view to a reservation. The length of the lake has generally been stated at 60 miles, but it probably does not exceed 30 or 35. The width near the head is from eight to ten miles. It is divided near the middle by a spur from the high mountain below our camp, which extends nearly across it, and the lower portion is much narrower than the upper. The general course is from north-west to south-east. Its waters empty by an outlet into Cache creek; a stream which heads in a high peak to the northward, and runs towards the Sacramento, losing itself in a tulé swamp nearly opposite the mouth of Feather river. The lake has been generally represented as lying within the Sacramento valley, but its actual position is in a great basin of the mountains which border it on the west; for although the waters of the lake run towards that river, it is yet separated from it by a part of the chain, through a cañon in which Cache creek forces its way. Surrounded on every side by mountains, this valley is completely isolated from the adjoining country, there being no access except by difficult trails. Of these there are several; the usual one being from Napa across to Putos creek, or the Rio Dolores, as sometimes called, which heads to the south-west, and runs nearly parallel to Cache creek towards the Sacramento; losing itself, like the former, in a swamp, except during the rainy season. The principal valley upon the lake is that upon which we encamped, lying on the western side, and extending from mount M'Kee towards the head. The extent of this may be stated at ten miles in length, by an average width of four. A more beautiful one can hardly be pictured. Covered with abundant grass, and interspersed with groves of superb oaks of the most varied and graceful forms, with the lake and its green margin of tulé in front, and the distance bounded everywhere by precipitous ranges, it combines features of surpassing grandeur and loveliness. Flowers of great variety and elegance abound, the woods are filled with game, and in the season innumerable flocks of water-fowl enliven the shores. Two or three other valleys lie within the mountains, which generally come down to the water, but none are of the size and value of this. Upon the lake are several islands, of which the largest, called "Battle island," about a mile long, is at the northern end. Several mineral springs occur in the neighborhood, and at one of them, on the eastern shore, sulphur is found in great abundance, and in solid and pure deposits. Salt springs also exist among the mountains, from which the Indians, during the dry season, procure what they require; and further to the north-east, near the southern head of Cottonwood creek, rock-salt is obtained, for which the Lake Indians trade.

A cattle ranch was formerly maintained in this valley, and the adobe house, erected by the owners, was still standing about three miles from our camp, but at this time unoccupied. It was here that Andrew Kelsey and Charles Stone were killed by the Indians, in December, 1849; a murder which was severely punished during the next spring, by a party of troops under Captain Lyons, who succeeded in bringing up a mountain howitzer and two boats from below. The Indians, who had forted upon the creek, at the upper end of the lake, being driven out by a shot, were pursued in the boats to the island by a detachment of infantry, and on their trying to escape to the shore, attacked by the dragoons, who met them waist-deep in the tulé. The utter rout and severe loss which they suffered, had effectually subdued them, and undoubtedly brought about the readiness with which they now met the overtures of the agent.

Wednesday, Aug. 20th.—The council was again assembled, and the treaty explained to them as engrossed. The tribes represented were the Hula-napo, Habe-napo, Dah-no-habe, Möal-kai, She-kom, and How-ku-ma, belonging to the lake, and the Shanel-kaya and Bedah-marek, living in a valley situated to the north of it, on the east fork of Russian river. Provision was also made for the admission of the Cho-tan-o-man-as, living toward the outlet of the lake, but not present; and for the settlement of any other tribes the government may remove from other places. These are all more properly bands than tribes; each village, as is the case generally with the Indians of this part of California at least, having its separate chief. The names have each its signification. Thus, "Habe-napo" means stone house, "Dahno-habe," stone mountain, "Bedah-marek," lower people, &c. They give to the first six tribes collectively the name of "Ná-po-batín," or many houses; an appellation, however, not confined to themselves, as they term the Russian river tribes the "Boh-Napo-batín," or western many houses. The name "Lu-pa-yu-ma," which, in the language of the tribe living at Coyote valley, on Putos river, signifies the same as Habe-napo, is applied by the Indians in that direction to these bands, but is not recognized by themselves. Each different tribe, in fact, seems to designate the others by some corresponding or appropriate word in its own language, and hence great confusion often arises among those not acquainted with their respective names. They have no name for the valley itself, and call the different spots where they reside after those of the bands. In fact, local names do not seem to be applied to districts of country, though they may be sometimes to mountains. Rivers seem to be rather described than named — thus Russian river is called here Boh-bid-ah-me, or "the river to the west."

The Shanel-kayas and Bedah-marek speak a language, or more probably dialect, different from the Napo-batín, as do also the Indians of the portion of the lake south of Mt. M'Kee. That of the latter, perhaps, resembles more the Mu-tistul between the heads of Napa and Putos creeks, or some other of those lying between the lake and the bay of San Pablo. How many really different languages will ultimately be determined between the heads of the Russian river and San Francisco bay, it is impossible as yet to conjecture. On a cursory examination there appear to be several; but more critical enquiry will, perhaps, reduce them. That of the Napo-batíns, in its various dialects, seems to be one of the most extensive; reaching from the Sacramento range to the coast, and up as far as the head-waters of the Eel river.

It is difficult to ascertain the real numbers of these people. Common report had stated it at some 2500 or 3000; but the nearest approach which could be made to a count gave but 511 as the total of souls in the six tribes of the valley, and 150 to the two living in the mountains, who were represented by their chiefs only. To this twenty five per cent. was added, as the probable number of those not returned. The proportion of men, women, and children seemed to vary greatly. The men of the two nearest rancherias were with great difficulty persuaded to bring in their families, and their ratios were as follows: —

Huta-napo,	85 men,	81 women,	29 children.
Habe-napo,	29 do.	42 do.	13 do.

The details of the treaty appear elsewhere, and need not be repeated. It provided for the reservation of that part of Clear Lake valley lying to the northward of Mt. M'Kee, as designated on the accompanying maps, and for the assembling here of the tribes of Russian river, the coast and bay, and of the head of Eel river; the Indians to be furnished with teachers, agricultural implements, domestic animals, and seeds, and assisted in supporting themselves for the space of two years. As regards the suitableness of the reservation for its purpose, there can hardly be a doubt. The spot is isolated to a degree unusual even on the Pacific; abounds in all that is necessary for a large number of people in their savage state, and is capable of being made in the highest degree productive by cultivation. If the system pursued in this respect in the States is adhered to in California, (and in no other way can the condition of these Indians be elevated, or their extinction be averted,) it must be by removing at least their families from among the whites, and turning them to some fixed occupation. The central position of the lake country will easily enable such numbers as can be spared, to hire themselves out during the working season, while the stores provided at home will sustain them in the winter. They appear sufficiently tractable to admit of teaching, and to be averse to labor from indolence, rather than from pride. Great patience and tact will necessarily be requisite, and care should be exercised in selecting their teachers for these among other qualifications. We started on the return route about half past twelve, and reached the top of the mountain in four hours. The afternoon was fine, and we here enjoyed a magnificent view of the country and lake behind us. Some of the party left the trail by which we came up, at the head of the little valley, and descended by one leading to the left. An hour and a half of rapid travel brought us to Féliz's, where we learned that the camp had moved up a mile and a half further for better grass. We reached it a little after dark, and found that the rest had already arrived. During our absence, some Spaniards and vaquéros had lassoed and killed five grizzly bears in the immediate vicinity of the ranch. This amusement, which may be considered the national one of California, is performed by from two to four men, all mounted. One of them rides towards the bear, and as he rears, catches a paw with the noose, takes a turn round the horn of his saddle, and immediately starts at speed. Another following, lassoes in like manner the other foot, and spurs in a contrary direction, to prevent the bear overhauling the first rope, which he would otherwise speedily do. If there are more, they secure his hind feet and head, and the bear, thus rendered powerless, is dragged to a tree and made fast. Sometimes a wild bull is coupled with the bear by a riata, and the two turned loose to fight it out, the conflict generally ending with the death of both parties. This pastime seems tolerably dangerous to the uninitiated, but it is pursued with astonishing fearlessness and dexterity by the Californians; nor are some of the American settlers much behind them in either.

To-day a large rattlesnake of a bright green color was noticed among the hills near

Clear Lake. A large yellow species is also said to be found. Ground-squirrels, in size resembling the common grey squirrel of the States, but having shorter legs and a black patch between the shoulders, are common. The pine grouse and quail, geese, ducks, and cranes, abound in their proper season. Elk, bears, and black-tailed deer, frequent the mountains throughout all this region.

Thursday, Aug. 21st.—Arrangements had been made the day before for bringing in the adjoining river tribes, and inducing them to consent to a removal to the lake. For this purpose also, three of the principal chiefs had come over with us to assure them of their friendly disposition. Accordingly, four bands consented to enter into a treaty, viz., the Sah-nel, Yukai, Pomo, and Masu-ta-kaya; numbering in all, as was supposed, 1042 souls. The chief of the Kai-no-méahs, living at Fitch's ranch, who had come up from below, withdrew, being unwilling to consent to a removal, and the intermediate bands did not appear. These are believed to embrace the larger part of the population of the river; many of their people being at the ranches we had visited below. The estimate formed by Col. M'Kee of the whole number, from the head of Russian river down, was as follows:—

In the valleys of Sonoma and Russian river - - - - -	1200
On Clear Lake and the adjacent mountains - - - - - -	1000
On the coast from Fort Ross southward to the bay - - - -	500

I obtained here a partial vocabulary from one of the Yukai band. These live in the vicinity of Parker's ranch, above here. The tribe at this place, the Sah-nels, as also the Boch-héaf, Ubak-héa, Tabah-téa, and the Moi-ya, living between them and the coast, speak the same. The Ma-su-ta-kéa and Pomo, living further up on the west branch of the river, use the same as the Shanel-kaya of the east branch, who were treated with at the lake.

In general appearance there is a similarity among all the Indians between here and the bay, which indicates their common race. So little attention has been paid to their peculiar customs that we could gather very little information, and that not very definite.

The chiefdom is hereditary, but at present confined to small bands, each independent of the rest, though they often live together in winter. It is probable, however, that when more numerous, they had, as elsewhere, great head chiefs with more extended dominion; for in the Clear Lake language there is a distinct name for these. In one case we learned, where the males of a family had become extinct, and a female only remained, she appointed a chief. The custom of burning the dead is universal. The body is consumed upon a scaffold, built over a hole, into which the ashes are thrown and covered. Marriage lasts only during agreement, and they have but one wife at a time. If the parties separate, the children go with the wife. The practice of abortion, so common among the Chinooks, and some other tribes in

Oregon, is unknown here. The universal disease is said gradually to be finding its way among them, though we noticed no marks of it. A more intimate knowledge of their languages would probably discover many curious observances which have escaped observation. At some of their dances, for instance, we were told they avoid particular articles of food, even fowls and eggs. The flesh of the grizzly bear, few of them will eat at all. It is said that they believe the spirits of the dead enter them, and a story was related to us of their begging the life of a wrinkled-faced old she grizzly bear, as the recipient of some particular grandam's soul, whom they fancied it resembled. Parker, who was our informant, stated that an Indian wife he once had, used to speak of a god called *Big-head*, and when it thundered said that he was angry. Most of them, however, who have any faith, worship "Pooyah," (the Puys of the Spaniards.) One custom which had been noticed, was that of crying together night and morning, as was supposed for the dead, even after the lapse of some years. This may however be the same ceremony alluded to above as existing on Clear Lake. The wilder of these tribes hunt, but do not depend on game for subsistence. On great hunts they make brush fences of some extent with intervals containing snares, and drive the deer into them. Sometimes also they creep upon and kill them with arrows. Their principal food consists of acorns, roots and pinolé. Fish are taken in weirs, the salmon ascending far up Russian river.

Saturday, Aug. 23d.—It was decided to send the four wagons we had brought with us, back to Sonoma, although it was possible to carry them somewhat further. Indeed an attempt had previously been made to take a train through to Humboldt Bay; and it actually proceeded as far as the main Eel river, where the last of them was abandoned. The trail followed the river for a couple of miles, when it diverged, passing up a narrow lateral valley. About six miles from camp we crossed a range of low hills, and again reached the main valley, which here widened out into a handsome plain. A couple of miles beyond, we reached the last house on the river, that of George Parker Armstrong, or, as he is erroneously called, "John Parker," to whom reference has already been made. The house was a small building of logs, or rather poles filled in with clay, and thatched with tulé. Its furniture was somewhat incongruous; for upon the earthen floor and beside a bulls' hide partition, stood huge china jars, camphor trunks, and lacquered ware in abundance, the relics of some vessel that had been wrecked on the coast during last spring. Parker, or Armstrong, was formerly a man-of-war's man in Captain Belcher's squadron, which he left during the exploration of this coast, some fourteen years ago, since when he had wandered about in California, and recently posted himself here in advance of the settlements. Near the house stood the rancheria of the Yukai band, with whom we had treated below. Three Indians had been implicated in the Clear Lake murder, and were accordingly chastised by Captain Lyons on his return from Clear Lake, from which place he reached Russian river by a trail leading in here.

The valley at Parker's is some five miles in width by eight or ten long, but it is not as fertile as at Féliz's. Above here the river during the dry season runs chiefly under the sand, and water is only to be obtained in occasional pools. We halted for the night at Lyons's encampment, having made between fourteen and fifteen miles. About a mile above, the east fork of Russian river comes in, after a winding course through the mountains. Upon it lies the valley inhabited by the Shanel-kayas and others before spoken of.

Sunday, Aug. 24*th.*—To obtain better grass we passed up the river for about six miles, finding the bottom narrow and worthless. Crossing the now dry bed of the stream, we sought for a camp on the right bank, intending to make a short march, as we desired the next day to reach the head of Eel river. Finding no water, however, we turned off to the right and halted in a small prairie, upon a spring branch. Several deer were killed near camp, but we were all surfeited with venison, and preferred beef. We saw during our march to-day a number of pines and firs, with the usual growth of mansanita and madroña. The latter is a gigantic rhododendron, which occasionally attains a diameter of two or three feet at the butt. It is a very ornamental tree; the leaves being evergreen, and of a bright color, while the bark, which scales off annually like that of the sycamore, is red. The wood is valuable for several purposes, being very compact and fine-grained. It is much used for saddle-trees. In our camp were several large bay trees, which filled the air with an odor too strong to be agreeable. This, which is also called the wild olive, bears a nut of the size of a hazel-nut, covered with a thick green rind, and is excessively oily. The Indians use it where it abounds, as a favorite article of food; roasting it, however, first. It should be mentioned that we were joined at Féliz's by Mr. Thomas Sebring, one of the first party that traversed the route between here and Humboldt bay, and who now acted as our guide.

Monday, Aug. 25*th.*—We crossed the east fork of the river, and thence, by a high and steep ascent, gained the divide between that and the west fork; keeping, however, along the left side of the range, and looking down upon the valley of the latter. This is apparently narrow and broken, but is said to contain some good land and is well wooded. Water, however, is scarce during the summer. From these hills we could look back to a great distance, the peak at the entrance of the cañon below Féliz's standing up distinctly, with a back-ground of mountains, part of the Coast range, the continuation of which bounded on the other side the valley to our left. Near us, one point formed a very noticeable landmark, resembling, as it did in many respects, the basaltic formations on the upper Columbia. We found on our route the hills well clothed with bunch grass and wild oats, as also water in springs, but not in quantities sufficient for any considerable number of animals. The culminating point on the divide[1] between Russian and Eel rivers, may be considered as marked by an isolated rock, about thirty feet high, standing in a level plat of grass. From here our course ran northerly down a succession of hills, till about twelve miles from our last camp we descended into a valley running north-west and south-east. At the foot of the hills we found running water, in a branch under an alder thicket; but the grass had been burnt off by the Indians, for the purpose of collecting aniseed with greater ease, and we were obliged to proceed some four miles further down, and finally to encamp without water in our immediate vicinity, sending the animals back to it. This valley, which the Indians called Betumki, or big plain, is eight or ten miles long and four or five wide. Two streams come into it, which form the heads of the middle fork of Eel river, here called the Ba-ka-wha. These are not at this season continuous, but lose themselves in the plain. At the foot of the valley, a lagoon of a mile or two long forms in the winter, and thence the river passes out through a cañon. The valley is level, fertile in soil and sufficiently wooded, particularly at the upper or southern end. Although its elevation is very considerable, the hills around are well clothed with grass and timber. As being more distant from any probable settlement of the whites, this and the next valley might have been considered as more advantageous points of reserve than the Clear Lake country. It, however, is destitute of water sufficient for a numerous population; is too inclement in the winter season for a southern population to exist in it, and would not furnish enough of the natural productions on which they live.

In leaving Russian river, it may be proper briefly to state its general extent and that of the country upon it. Taking its general course without reference to windings, it is less than a hundred miles in length, and the aggregate amount of tillable land upon it is not great. The largest single body of prairie country is that lying between Santa Rosa and Fitch's ranch; which, though not altogether upon the river, may yet be considered as a portion of the valley, and which embraces a tract of some fifteen miles in length, by as much in extreme width. Above Fitch's, the bottom consists of detached valleys, of at most a few square miles in extent, separated by wooded hills. Small basins are also scattered among the mountains, which, however, do not greatly add to the quantity. This country, like that around the bays of San Francisco and San Pablo, generally requires irrigation for the production of green crops, but is admirably adapted to the small grains. Beyond this its great value is for pasturage, the ranges on either side being very extensive and rich. Large herds of cattle were formerly kept there, but the improvidence of the owners has allowed them to be almost entirely destroyed.

---

[1] Used as a noun, in this Journal, for ridge. — H. R. S.

The precaution had been taken of sending Indians on from Parker's to bring in those of this valley; and, with some trouble, they succeeded in collecting part of the men. The families abandoned their rancherias, and fled to the mountains on our approach. There are here five small bands, corresponding in appearance with those on Russian river, with whom, as well as those on Clear Lake, they are connected. They are much wilder than the others, having generally but little communication with the whites, though a few are said to have been employed as vaquéros. We found that they could make themselves understood by the Russian river Indians, and generally understood them; but their dialect is still different. A portion of their vocabulary was collected, and will be found in the Appendix. [§ IX. LANGUAGE.]

We remained in this camp two days. A considerable number of men were brought in, but all attempts to assemble their families served only to excite their suspicions. In fact, the object of the agent, in the process of double translation through which it passed, was never fairly brought before them. The speeches were first translated into Spanish by one, and then into the Indian by another; and this, not to speak of the very dim ideas of the last interpreter, was sufficient to prevent much enlightenment under any circumstances. But the truth was, that the gentlemen for whose benefit they were meant by no means comprehended any possible motive on our part but mischief. That figurative personage, the great father at Washington, they had never heard of. They had seen a few white men from time to time, and the encounter had impressed them with a strong desire to see no more, except with the advantage of manifest superiority on their own part. Their earnest wish was clearly to be left alone. To the last arguments brought forward, red flannel shirts and beef, their minds were more open, and they willingly performed many offices about camp, running for water, making fires, and waiting on the soldiers, who are sure to get work enough out of them always.

These men, like the other mountain tribes we afterwards met, though small, were well formed, with prominent chests, and the muscles of the legs and body well developed. Their arms, on the contrary, were diminutive. Some of them had shaved the hair from the person, and they almost all wore bits of stick, four or five inches long, through the ears. A few carried bows and arrows, and one had a spear, headed with obsidian, which is found scattered over these hills. The names of the bands in this valley were the Naboh, Chow-e-shak, Chau-te-uh, Ba-kow-a, and Sa-mun-da. One or two others were said to be absent. The numbers given by those who came in amounted in all to 127 men, 147 women, and 106 children. The total, including those absent, probably does not exceed 450 to 475.

From a high point to the west of our camp I obtained a fine view over the valley and surrounding hills. These are well timbered with oak and fir; which latter timber is now prevalent, and interspersed with fields of bunch grass and little valleys affording good pasturage. Water, however, is scarce.

Thursday, Aug. 28th. — We started rather earlier than usual, anticipating a heavy day's march, in which we were by no means disappointed. The first six or eight miles, though a series of constant ascents and descents, the former much preponderating, afforded a very fair trial. Small valleys lay scattered among the hills, covered with rich grass; and fine views opened behind, of the mountains between us and the Sacramento. At ten o'clock we halted for half an hour, while the guide sought for the route; no easy thing in a country presenting such an endless succession of hills, and cut up every where by Indian and deer trail. Unfortunately the wrong one was this time selected, and, after losing ourselves in a forest of redwoods, we turned directly up a mountain northward. Reaching the top with great difficulty, and on foot of course, the trail turned east and then south, and two hours of hard work brought us back to the starting point. The timber in these redwoods was very large; one tree that we passed measuring thirty-three feet in circumference, and a great proportion from twenty-five to twenty-eight. Scattered among them were firs, also of great size. On the top of the mountain we noticed, for the first time, the chestnut oak, and a species of chestnut, with leaves like those of the willow in form and size, the burrs being in clusters and containing fruit not much larger than the beach-nut.

Taking a fresh departure we reached, in about a mile, a little valley running east and west, and lying directly behind the mountain we had ascended. This we followed up, and again returning to our general north-westerly course, ascended to a point whence we could see the mountains beyond the Clear Lake valley, and among the intermediate peaks, "Loma Priéta," and Mount "M'Kee." A deep ravine or cañon lay on either hand. Here we again mistook our course, and instead of heading that to the left, kept up the divide between the two. After a still higher climb, and a futile attempt to descend, we turned back, and succeeded in finding the right course. From this divide a superb view opened of the Coast chain, upon one of the highest ridges of which we were travelling; range after range, heavily timbered, extending down towards the sea; and the sun, now in its decline, shone upon the distant ocean, the reflected rays illuminating the clouds above.

We formed camp near nightfall on the side of the mountain, with but poor grass and a scanty supply of water from a muddy hole. The animals, thirsty after their long march, had to be kept away by force, and groups of disconsolate mules stood, during the night, at a hardly respectful distance from the sentinel; their despairing bray mingling with the yelping of the coyotes. Our march was probably sixteen miles on our course, and twenty-four in all. It will be observed that we were crossing from the waters of the middle, towards those of the south fork of Eel river, on which is situated the valley we were next seeking. In consequence, however, of losing the trail, we were compelled to encamp short of the place intended, and upon the summit of one range of the Coast Mountains.

Friday, Aug. 29*th.*—The animals were much strayed this morning, having wandered off in search of grass and water. We marched only four miles, and finding both in abundance on a creek running towards the coast, concluded to encamp there, especially as all the dragoon horses had not been found. The herd of cattle, which formed part of our cavalcade, were driven on about two miles and a half to another arroya. A few Indians came into this camp, part of a band belonging to the next valley. They had with them a dog, the first we have seen among them, and of a breed not mentioned in Youatt, being apparently a cross between a turnspit and a coyote. When it is added that he was as great an adept in thieving as his masters, all praise of his capacity is exhausted.

The creek on which we were, seemed to be one of the sources of a river said to enter the coast thirty or forty miles below Cape Mendocino, and which among some of the sea charts is laid down as the R. des Marons. The deep ravine or cañon facing our camp of last night, was evidently one of its heads, as during the march we perceived a gap extending to the ocean. We were afterwards told by persons who had passed near the coast, that a quite extensive agricultural country apparently lay near its mouth.

Saturday, Aug. 30*th.*— A general and very noisy mourning among the mules came off this morning, as the old white mare that had officiated as bell-wether, had fallen down the hill and broken her neck. Our course continued northward, up high grassy hills, and then over the wooded table-land, which forms the western side of the valley. We found the cattle camp a couple of miles beyond, upon a brook running into it, with water and grass abundant. The men accompanying it had started three bears and wounded one, which however escaped. Strangely enough, the mules, generally very much afraid of them, had taken it into their *ears* to have a little private diversion on this occasion, and surrounding a grizzly bear which they found in the tall bottom grass, had performed a war-dance round him, kicking and snorting, but keeping carefully beyond the reach of his paws.

About a mile and a half further we reached the stream which runs through the valley, and crossing it, encamped, finding sufficient water standing in pools. This valley, called by the Indians Ba-tem-da-kai, we supposed to be on the head of the south fork of Eel river, and so we were informed by our guide and other mountaineers; but a belief exists, as we afterwards found, among some of the parties who have traversed this country, that it is, on the contrary, the head of the river before spoken of as entering the coast to the westward. It is apparently twelve or fifteen miles in length, by four or five wide, the general course conforming to the bend of the Coast range, being from south-east to north-west. That part lying on the easterly side of the stream consisted entirely of open prairie, fertile and producing an abundance of fine grass, while the westerly side is mostly wooded. The timber, as on the hills around, was of mixed oak and fir. A few Indians visited us, and were directed to call in the adjacent tribes.

The distance travelled to-day was four miles.

Sunday, Aug. 31*st.*—Quite a number of Indians were assembled and presents distributed, but no treaty attempted; for our Clear Lake interpreter, although able to comprehend them, could not explain freely in turn. Their language, however, is clearly of the same family as that of the tribes at the head of Russian river, and those last encountered. The total number in the vicinity, as near as could be ascertained, was about six hundred souls. In general appearance they resembled the Indians in the upper valley. They pluck their beards, and some of them tattoo. Many had their hair cut short, but others wore it turned up in a bunch in front, or occasionally on the back of the head. The practice of cutting the hair, so unusual among American Indians, is referred to by Jedediah S. Smith, one of the most adventurous of the whole class of fur-traders, who, during his various expeditions, constructed a map of Oregon and California. An entry upon this, designates the tribes living on the west of the Sacramento range as the "Short-haired Indians." The average height of these men was not over five feet four or five inches. They were lightly built, with no superfluous flesh, but with very deep chests and sinewy legs. Their expression was mild and pleasant, and vastly better than their reputation warranted. We saw no women, and the proposal to bring them in, at once excited their fear and distrust.

I took the opportunity of to-day's halt, to ascend the hills on the eastern side of the valley. The view from this point was beautiful, the stream winding in serpentine form along the margin of the plain, fringed with oaks and firs, and the long slopes beyond diversified with forest and prairie. To the east rose heavy ranges of mountains, between which and the yet more distant Sacramento chain, a wide and deep gap indicated another valley, supposed to be the source of the main fork of Eel river. Returning to camp, Mr. Sebring pointed out a sulphur spring, the water of which was very strongly impregnated. The temperature proved to be 70°, while that of the air was 68°.

Monday, Sept. 1*st.*—Following the principal valley down for a mile or two, it narrowed and became broken by spurs and deep ravines coming down from the mountain, until at a distance of three or four miles from camp, the stream abruptly turned to the left into a cañon. Beyond this the route became excessively mountainous, crossing deep arroyas and then ascending a broken ridge between the waters of the south and middle forks. The day proved cold and rainy, and the clouds prevented our seeing to any considerable distance, though occasionally we had glimpses of a vast circle of mountains closing around us. These seemed to follow the general chain, but were broken and erratic to a degree that rendered it almost impossible to trace continuous chains. The character of the country, so far as vegetation was concerned, was the same as that recently passed over; the higher and steeper crests being covered with chemisal, dwarf oak, holly, and other similar shrubs, and the less elevated with fir and oaks of various kinds, but of smaller size than those in the lower country. Grass was abundant, even at considerable heights, and water was to be found frequently in the arroyas; but it is to be remembered that reports of water streams, derived from those who have travelled these mountain regions at an earlier season, where the snow was but lately melted, are seldom borne out during the later summer months. We passed to-day in a deep arroya the wrecks of some of the wagons which Mr. Huestas had attempted to take through to Humboldt bay. This expedition started from Sonoma, in the spring of 1850, following the discovery of that harbor, and unfortunately proved abortive. The last wagon was finally abandoned upon the main fork, and the company struck across the mountains for the mines on the Trinity. But one family of Indians were met with on our march, and they fled incontinently; the women carrying with them their few effects, the man gallantly waiting to cover their retreat. He was evidently under great alarm, and with difficulty could be induced to accept a present of tobacco which a soldier offered him. These had robes of deer skin, dressed with the hair on, over their shoulders. They belonged to a wild mountain tribe, the terror of the valley Indians, and with whom earlier parties of whites had one or two encounters. Even their women are said to wield the bow and arrows with dexterity and courage. Of their language and affinities, nothing is known.

We camped this night on a deep ravine, opposite to two remarkable crags called the "Pilot rocks." Our elevation was great, and the night cold and uncomfortable. The pine grouse, well known in Oregon, were now abundant, and seemed to gather in flocks, as the fall approached. Some of our people here prospected for gold, and believed that, in miner's phrase, they had "raised the color," but without any degree of certainty. The distance travelled was twelve miles.

Tuesday, Sept. 2d.— In the morning Indian signs were visible round our camp, but nothing was missing. The day was again cloudy and threatening. Our march was over a succession of ridges, separating the waters of the south and main forks of Eel river, and was severe, not only on the animals, but the men, who were continually obliged to dismount and lead. A dozen or twenty Indians appeared upon a large swell near the road, after the column had passed, vociferating abusively, but offering no actual molestation to those in the rear. Near this place a party, to which our guide belonged, had been attacked the year before, and had killed a chief and two others. These, apparently, had had no notice of our approach, having probably little communication with the tribes above, who fear them. Indeed, the valley Indians informed us, that they were always whipped back when they attempted to penetrate the mountains.

A few miles from camp, the South Fork, other heads of which we had turned, passed behind a mountain to the left, and for some distance was entirely lost sight of, its course lying some ten or fifteen miles from the dividing ridge. The main fork had, apparently, an average distance of five or six miles, but was visible during the day but once, at a conspicuous point called "Saddle Rock." Beyond it a steep ascent led to another part of the divide, a sharp and very narrow comb, covered with chemisal and other shrubs, and exceedingly rough. Following this for five or six miles, we descended abruptly, and made camp about three o'clock on a ridge between two ravines. Here we found the skeleton of another wagon, and wondered at the obstinacy which had brought it thus far. It was the last relic of the ill-fated expedition which we encountered, as the party had here taken another route.

Our distance to-day was seventeen miles. Water was in sufficient quantity near camp, but the grass was poor, and we were compelled to tie up the animals, as well to prevent their straying, as from fear of Indians. The frequent occurrence of showers in these mountains during the summer months, seems probable, as we found new grass sprouting where it had been burnt over.

Wednesday, Sept. 3d.—We mounted a further continuation of the dividing ridge, and kept along its crest, still in a general north-westerly direction. Five or six miles on, we came to one of the most elevated points on our route, a mountain marked on its summit by a fir-tree, bearing a gigantic parasite. The scenery from here was magnificent, the mountains being interminable to view, and piled up in the wildest confusion. On the left lay the Coast range; on the right a vast basin opened, amidst which rose numerous peaks, sometimes in sharp, serrated ridges, elsewhere in regular cones, surmounted with large bare rocks like truncated pyramids or broken columns. Here their tops were yellow with grass — there shrouded with the dark foliage of the chemisal, or crowned with forests of oak and fir. Deep ravines and cañons intersected them, amidst which occasionally lay small green patches, whence the blue smoke of an Indian camp-fire curled upward, the rare signs of human life in this vast desert of mountains.

Our dogs started, this afternoon, a couple of half-grown grizzly bears, and chased them smartly up a hill, the bears lumbering along at a rapid though clumsy pace. A little further on, an old *she*, with two cubs, was roused from an arroya. A soldier who was in advance, broke her back with a rifle-shot, the cubs in the mean time escaping, pursued by one of the dogs. The other attacked the bear most resolutely. In the scuffle she rolled back into the water-course, and the soldier leaping in with his sabre, ran her twice through the heart. The fight, which lasted some minutes, created a general excitement, and some pistol-shooting was volunteered; but the credit of first blood and the death-wound, was unanimously given to the rifleman. The meat was packed into camp, but proved tough and unsavory. Leaving the crown of the ridge, our trail ran alongside hills to its left for some distance, until, descending a long and very steep declivity, we came upon the South Fork, or, as it is now called, "Kelsey's river," at the junction of a small stream named, after our guide, "Sebring's creek." The river was, at this time, not more than thirty or forty feet wide, and about eight deep. The low bottom furnished good grass, but was of small extent; the hill-sides, however, almost everywhere afford pasturage. What little land there is upon the river is very loose, resembling, in fact, a bed of ashes; but there is nowhere enough to attract settlers, even could any convenient route be found through the country. The mountains are much more craggy than those on Russian river; huge rocks standing out on their sides and summits. A grey sandstone, noticed to-day upon the ridge, forms the cañons of the streams.

The Indians at this point, unlike those of the past two days' march, are said to have been friendly to the whites who have passed through, and to have visited them freely. Owing probably to the size of the party, we could not get them in. No estimate can be formed of their number, but it cannot be great; nor is it probable that a large population exists anywhere among these mountains. One of the rancherias was near our camp; a wretched affair, and with no character of permanence. The tribe is said to have a practice, so far as known, peculiar to itself, of cutting the tongue, and allowing the blood to stream down over the person. Whether the custom is a religious ceremony or not, is unknown; it seems to be too universal for a mark of mourning. Their dress, like that of the last seen, consists of a deer-skin robe thrown over the shoulders. The severity of the climate renders some clothing necessary; for in winter the snow lies here to a great depth, and for a considerable time.

Our march was about seventeen miles, and a severe one on the animals, as for the two nights past they had but little grass, and the trail was very mountainous. The day was cool, and some rain fell.

Thursday, Sept. 4th.—We remained in camp to recruit the animals, and with the hope of finding some Indians, but none were seen. The morning was again rainy. An elk and two or three deer were killed. This country seems to be the paradise of the grizzly bear, for their signs are visible everywhere. A high mountain, which rises a few miles from camp, takes its name of the "Bear Butte," from an attack made by two or three upon a man belonging to a former party. The man escaped with his life, though fearfully crippled.

Friday, Sept. 5th.—The trail here crossed the river, and, skirting a grove of redwoods, ascended the mountain beyond. This timber had now reappeared, and was abundant in the bottoms, often attaining a gigantic size. Higher on the hills the fir and oak yet prevailed. The mountain sides and tops were generally very rich, and, where not wooded, covered with abundant and fine bunch grass; in fact, almost the only open country was upon these high slopes; the valleys, if the narrow bottoms can be so called, being generally filled with forest. Reaching the top of the ascent, we found the fog so dense that the advance party had stopped; and we were compelled to halt for about an hour. From this the trail descended to the foot of the Bear Butte, a high serrated crest, which forms a conspicuous landmark for many miles, and is even visible from the Bald Mountains, between Humboldt bay and the Klamath. Our route thence lay alongside hills, cut up by ravines coming down from the Butte, and running toward Cañon creek, a branch of which enters the river about a mile above our camp of last night. These were all living streams, and would afford good camping places, as grass is abundant. Leaving them, and crossing another ridge, we came upon the feeders of Wood's creek, another branch emptying some four miles above our next proposed camp, and which here ran on our right. The road was excessively bad, being a constant succession of ascents and descents upon sidelong hills intersected by arroyas, the beds of which lay deep below the surface. The ground too was soft, and added much to the labor of the animals.

During the day we met a party of half a dozen Indians, and induced them to stop. They were exceedingly pleased with the small presents given them, but could not be prevailed upon to accompany us into camp. Two or three of them were of larger stature than usual, and one was really a fine-looking young fellow. They wore the deer-skin robe over the right shoulder, and carried the common short bow, backed with sinew, and arrows pointed with stone, both tolerably well made. With all these Indians, the arrow-points are fastened into a short piece of wood, which in turn is fixed, though but loosely, into the shaft. The quiver, of dressed deer-skin, holds both bow and arrows. They had also, suspended round the neck, small nets, neatly made after the fashion of the common game-bag; the twine, which was very even, being of course their own work.

The last part of our march led us into a thick redwood forest, upon a mountain, through which we were obliged to cut our trail, the ground being covered with underbrush and fallen timber. A fatiguing climb and an excessively bad descent brought us again to the South Fork. On the other side was a small prairie of about eighty acres, from which, however, the grass was mostly burnt, a bare sufficiency only remaining. As it was already evening, and the march had been the most laborious we had yet made, we had no opportunity of seeking farther. It had drizzled a good part of the day, and the night was still wet. Our estimated distance was fifteen miles.

Saturday, Sept. 6th.—Frequent showers again fell to-day. A piece of grass having been found about a mile off, it was determined to remain over until something definite could be ascertained of the trail ahead, of which accounts from the hunting and prospecting[1] parties were unfavorable. Several Indians, among them some of our acquaintances of yesterday, came into camp. They were very dirty in person, and equally so in their habits; in disposition amiable and thievish. An attempt to collect the tribe proved futile; nor would it have been of any service except for the purpose of enumeration, as we could make them understand nothing, their language differing wholly from those above. They are said to be of a different tribe from the one so much dreaded by the valley Indians, but are probably of the same race. I endeavored in vain to get from them the names of articles at hand, parts of the body, &c., as they either could not or would not understand the object of the inquiry; nor was our Clear Lake Indian more successful after his method. We soon got tired of these gentry, as they did not render themselves useful, and required too much watching.

Our camp was a very pretty one, the little prairie being level and rich, and encircled by a magnificent redwood forest. One tree near the tents I measured, and found it to be fifty-two feet in circumference, at four or five feet from the ground, and this although the bark and a portion of the wood were burned away. It was still erect and alive at the top, notwithstanding the interior had been hollowed out to the height of probably eighty feet, and the smoke was even yet escaping from a hole in the side. The diameter, measured through a chasm at the bottom, was eighteen feet. Another, likewise much burnt, measured forty-nine feet in circumference, at five feet from the ground. The stump of a group rising from one root was twenty-two feet ten inches across. Those above mentioned were single trees, and without swell, the measurements given being the fair size of the shaft. Colonel M'Kee measured a fallen trunk near camp, which was three hundred and twenty-five feet in length, though not of extraordinary thickness. Larger trees than this are known to exist, but none were noticed by ourselves. Their shafts, often disposed in groups, rise to a vast height free from limbs, and their foliage is delicate and feathery. The bark is of an ash color, very thick, but not rough; the branches small in proportion, and the leaves resemble those of the hemlock rather than the cedar. The wood, however, is like that of the latter tree, and of a red color. It splits very readily; so much so, that the Indians, without the use of iron, get out immense planks for their huts. In a manufactured state, it is unsurpassed for shingles, ceiling, and weather-boarding. The redwood appears to belong exclusively to the coast region; nowhere, it is believed, at least in northern California, extending inland more than twenty-five or thirty miles, and it does not reach a more northern latitude than the parallel of 42°.

Sunday, Sept. 7th.—Our route to-day led down the bed of the river, crossing it some twenty times, and only occasionally turning into the woods. Some ten miles from camp we reached the junction of the South fork with the main Eel river, which had previously received other considerable branches. The two, at this time, however, contained nearly the same quantity of water. Below, the bed of the river is much wider, consisting as before of sand and coarse gravel, or large rounded pebbles, of every variety of color, and intersected with quartz, over which it spreads, being fordable almost anywhere. In winter, however, both streams bring down immense quantities of water, the drainage of a vast mountain region. No falls occur in their course, or rapids of importance, and the salmon ascends far towards their sources. With the exception of the valleys already mentioned, and, perhaps, two or three others upon other branches, all of them too distant to be valuable, Eel river may, above this point, be considered as destitute of arable land; but should hereafter the wants of California demand, it affords facilities for a lumber trade of the first importance.

---

[1] A local phrase employed by miners.—H. R. S.

Near the forks, we met a canoe, the first seen on our journey. It was a dug-out, square at both ends, and sufficiently rude and clumsy. The river was now filled with stakes, driven into the sand at pretty regular intervals, to which the Indians fasten baskets of wicker-work to take the eels, with which at certain seasons it abounds, and which have given their name to the stream. These, smoked and dried, constitute a principal article of food among the natives.

We camped at a small fern prairie on the right bank, where we found good grass. The day's march was about seventeen miles, which, over the stony bed of the river, was a severe one.

Monday, Sept. 8th.—We pursued our route down the river. Except two small prairies, the banks afforded no open land till near the close of our day's march. Bluffs of sandstone occurred here and there, apparently resembling that in the Coast range of Oregon, and bearing fossils similar to those at the mouth of the Columbia. About fourteen miles from camp we reached "Van Dusen's Fork," a branch coming in from the east. Its bed was nearly as wide as that of the main river; and though an inconsiderable stream at the time, it is said, during the freshets, to supply about half as much water as the other. The two united were now about fifty yards in width; but when flooded are some six hundred yards across, and very deep.

This, the last large branch of Eel river, we are told heads with the Mad river; a stream entering the coast above Humboldt bay, and, with the south fork of the Trinity, in the Sacramento range of mountains. It resembles in general character the other eastern branches. Some prairie land occurs some fifteen or twenty miles above its mouth; but the greater part of its course is through mountains, except that on the upper waters, as is generally the case on the western slope of that chain, are rolling hills, wooded with oak, and affording good pasturage. A short distance above its junction with the main river, the open country commences on both, and extends to the mouth. This point is distant about twelve or fourteen miles above the entrance of Eel river into the sea. The tide backs up to it, and at low stages renders the water brackish to within four miles. Below the forks the river is crooked, generally covering a wide space with sand and gravel. We encamped on the northern bank, about half a mile from the main stream. Our march was fifteen miles.

Tuesday, Sept. 9th. — As it was intended to remain in this neighborhood for some days, in order to recruit the animals, and hold a council with the Indians of the lower Eel river and of Humboldt bay, the party moved this morning in search of a suitable camp. About a mile out, the road ascended a high table prairie, exceedingly fertile, watered with springs, and well timbered. Here quite a settlement had been made; a number of houses built, or in the course of construction, and a considerable quantity of land enclosed, and under cultivation. Some crops of potatoes, planted late in the season, looked well; others were in bloom, or even just out of the ground; but the owners seemed to have no fear of their not reaching maturity. We were informed that rain had fallen occasionally during the summer, and that the same was the case last year; and the appearance of the vegetation indicated its frequency, as compared with the valley of the Sacramento. Some six miles from our starting place, we again struck the river, and followed it down, encamping a short distance off, upon a small branch, which we named "Communion Creek."—This camp was situated about eight miles from our last, as far from the sea, and twelve from the town of Humboldt. We here remained until the 15th.

Several of the neighboring settlers visited the camp soon after our arrival, and we learned that there were, including those on the south side of the river, about thirty. Preparations were made to call in the Indians; but unfortunately the only persons who spoke the language with any facility were absent. One or two others could barely communicate with them on a few subjects; but too short a time had elapsed since the arrival of the whites generally to have created any considerable intercourse. Still we were able to gather some particulars. The tribes on the coast from Cape Mendocino to Mad river speak substantially the same language, though the dialect of the Bay differs from that lower down. How far back this tongue extends we had no means of ascertaining. On Van Dusen's fork it constantly varies, so that they with difficulty understand the others. From the Indian wife of a settler on Eel river, I managed to procure some words, afterwards corrected and increased by another, which will be found among the vocabularies. No resemblance, as will be seen, exists between this and the Russian river languages; and, in fact, the appearance and habits of the Indians indicate a different race. As in all the others noticed on this coast, the *F* is wanting; and the Indians supply its place in pronouncing English names with the letter P. Unlike the Oregon and some of the California tongues, however, this contains the R, in which respect it is like those of the Klamath. No attempt could be made towards learning its construction; and there was much difficulty in obtaining even the words with certainty, owing to the indistinctness with which they pronounce; the first and last syllables being often hardly articulate. I noticed that several words from the "Jargon" or trade language of Oregon were in use, undoubtedly obtained from Hudson's Bay trappers. Such is the word "ma-witch," a deer, by them applied to all kinds of meat, as well as to the animal, though they have a corresponding name of their own. The word "pappoose," too, has wandered from its Atlantic home, to become a familiar one on the lips of this race, long after those have passed away to whom it was vernacular. The name given to this people by their neighbors is Wee-yot, and Eel river is known by the same.

As salmon were abundant, the Indians were all fat. They are generally repulsive in countenance as well as filthy in person. The men, like those in the mountains, wore a deer-skin robe over the shoulder; but evidently not for purposes of decency. The women were usually naked to the waist, wearing round the loins the short petticoat of fringe. This dress, in its various modifications of fashion and change of material, from dressed deer-skins, often beautifully worked and ornamented, to a rude skirt of grass, or the inner bark of the cedar or redwood, prevails over an extensive country and among widely different tribes. The close round cap of basket-work, is likewise their ordinary head-dress. These Indians have as many wives as they please, or more probably, as they can purchase, and allow themselves the privilege of shooting such as they are tired of; a method of divorce that obviates all difficulty as to subsequent maintenance. One of the whites here, in "breaking in" his squaw to her household duties, had occasion to beat her several times. She complained of this to the tribe, and they informed him that he should not do so; that if he was dissatisfied he must kill her and get another. As this advice came from her brother, it is fair to suppose that there was no offence to the family in such a procedure. The women are said to be chaste, and especially to admit no intercourse with the whites except on permanent conditions; a peculiarity which, as elsewhere, will probably disappear with the advance of civilization. Both men and women generally crop their hair very short all over the head, giving it much the appearance of a well-worn blacking-brush. The former pluck their beards out, but leave the hair on the rest of the person. Their heads are disproportionately large; their figures, though short, strong and well developed. Both sexes tattoo: the men on their arms and breasts; the women from inside the under lip down to and beneath the chin. The extent of this disfigurement indicates to a certain extent, the age and condition of the person, whether married or single.

As far as regards their number, we could not ascertain it with any exactness. As usual, it was much overrated in general report, and it is probable that those on the Eel river below Van Dusen's fork, and around the bay, fall short of five hundred. Their food consists principally of fish, eels, shell-fish, and various seeds, which, like those in the southern valleys, they collect after burning the grass. A small species of sunflower furnishes a very abundant supply of these last. The sallal, salmon, and berries, hazel-nuts, &c., also abound. Occasionally the more enterprising snare the elk, which are very numerous. They do not appear to be warlike or disposed to aggression, although one or two murders were committed when the whites began to come in. It appeared to us singular that at first they would not eat beef; but so few cattle had been brought here that the settlers used more themselves, and had probably spread the idea that it was not good, in order to save their stock. We found, however, that they readily learned the lesson when an opportunity was afforded them. The grizzly bear, which is found here in great numbers, they will not eat, because, as they say, it *eats them*, the *lex talionis* not applying in this case. The principal diseases noticed, were sore eyes and blindness, consumption, and a species of leprosy; not, however, the result of syphilis, which has never been introduced. From their own accounts, their numbers have been greatly thinned by a disease, from the description appearing to have been *gastritis*. Of the religious notions of these people nothing could be learned. They bury instead of burning their dead.

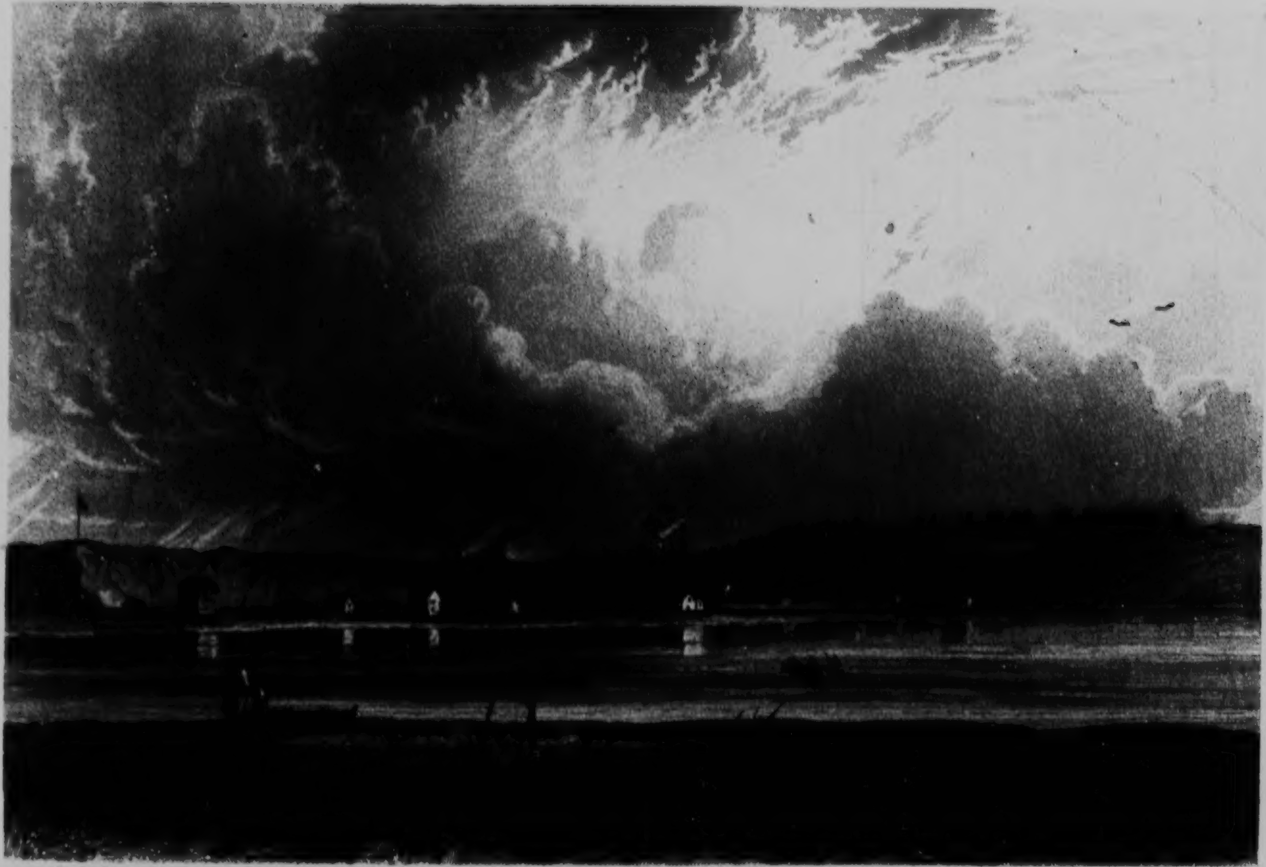
During our stay I devoted several days to an examination of the country; though a very complete one was impracticable for want of guides and facilities of transportation. The best portion is apparently that lying near the mouth of Van Dusen's fork, on either side of the margin stream. Lower down, the land on the right bank, with the exception of a narrow strip along the river, consists of rolling hills, covered with low shrubs, extending to the end of "Table Bluff," a promontory between the mouth of Eel river and the bay, and reaching back to the redwoods, behind the town of Humboldt. The soil of these hills is excellent; but the difficulty of breaking them up, the want of timber on the ground, and of running water, has hitherto prevented claims being taken there. On the south, what may be called the valley of Eel river is bounded by the Coast range, which terminates at Cape Mendocino. These mountains run back, in an easterly direction, some eighteen miles. They present a fine grazing country on the slopes, and good situations for farms at their base. The bottom land on the river is low and level, and in width averages perhaps five miles. Much of this is, however, covered with thickets of willows, &c., and is subject to floods in the rainy season. Those tracts above the reach of the freshets are generally of fern prairie, rich, but not easily subdued. In approaching the coast, the country is much cut up with sloughs, communicating with the river, and near the mouth consists of salt marsh and tide-land. The extent of the whole is not far from twenty miles square. For farming purposes, as carried on in the northern States, such as the production of green crops, the available portion of this is admirably calculated. On our return to the bay, later in the season, we were shown vegetables, particularly potatoes, turnips, beets, &c., of the finest quality, and of enormous size; some of the potatoes weighing from three to four pounds each. The climate, as has been mentioned, is much more moist than that of southern California, or the Sacramento valley. It is, however, apparently healthy. The winters are mild; snow never lying for any length of time, except in the mountains. Game is excessively abundant, including deer, elk, bears; and all the fall and winter, ducks, geese, brandt, cranes, and other water-fowl.

Partly from the difficulty of communicating with the Indians, and partly from the jealousy with which each little band seemed to view the rest, the efforts to collect them from the country around proved abortive, a few only visiting the camp from the nearest villages. It was an additional drawback, that the head chief of Eel river, to whom the whites have given the name of "Coon-skin," and who is said to possess considerable influence, was sick. To those who came in, small presents, together with hard bread, and beef, were distributed; but they could not be made to understand the object of our visit, and clearly remained to the last, in doubt whether the agent was simply a philanthropic individual, possessed of more red flannel shirts and cotton pocket-handkerchiefs than he knew what to do with, and who therefore indulged in the benevolent amusement of giving them away; or one who had some designs upon them, and was fishing for Indians with that particular bait. It being considered advisable, however, to bring in as many as possible, in order to produce an impression favorable to future efforts, I went down the river in a canoe, accompanied by Mr. Duperru, a gentleman of Humboldt, and Mr. Robinson, with three Indians, visiting the different rancherias on our way. These were very numerous, but consisting generally of only two or three families. Their appearance, as well as that of their inhabitants, was wretched, and we found sickness to prevail everywhere, the disease being apparently consumption. No inducement that we could offer would bring the Indians together, their dislike of one another amounting almost to hostility; each village assuring us that the next was very bad, and dissuading us from going on. Indeed, our own crew could hardly be forced to land at some places.

We descended as far as the tide-lands, a couple of miles from the mouth, where we had a fine view of the nearer, or "False Cape Mendocino," with its terraced sides. The banks of the river, to this point, were generally covered with thickets, occasionally interspersed with small prairies, bearing an enormous growth of fern. We attempted in one place to travel on shore; but after running out an old trail, lost ourselves in the rank weeds, and were glad to get back to our boat. Our Indians proved worthless boatmen, and the canoe leaking badly, we returned without going to the entrance. The river empties into the ocean through a sort of lagoon, made by the union of a number of large sloughs, or tide creeks, which intersect the low lands. A communication by one of these exists to within a mile of Humboldt bay, and with but little labor could be readily established throughout. The depth of water on the bar is sufficient to admit the smaller class of vessels. In fact, a schooner, called the "Jacob Ryerson," entered it in the spring of 1850, and proceeded up some miles; but the narrowness of the entrance, and the fact that the sea, except in very calm weather, breaks across it, will prevent its becoming available to any extent. The natural outlet for the produce of the country is, and will continue to be, the bay.

About nine o'clock in the evening, we reached the village from which we took the canoe, and stopped for the night, making our suppers of smoked eels, a cup of coffee, and of course a pipe of tobacco. These Indians, by the way, do not smoke; a glaring evidence of ignorance and debasement, to remedy which, it is to be hoped the earliest efforts of their future guardians will be directed! The eels proved excessively fat and oily, and seem to be a more favorite article of food, with them at least, than the salmon. The river bed near their villages, was everywhere filled with stakes, to which the eel-pots are attached; and the lodges farther down had, in some places, erected strong weirs of well-driven posts, to sustain nets. The band with whom we were encamped appeared to be among the laziest of the race, and even they had an abundant supply. We had brought with us our blankets, as a usual precaution, and now spread them on the sand, not far from the huts. A nearly full moon shone down upon us, a good fire blazed at our feet, and we sat till a late hour, drying our boots, and listening to the wailings of a new-born savage, or watching with humane interest the semi-occasional fights of a swarm of dogs belonging to the village. Two imps, of about ten and fourteen years of age, persisted in giving us their company, entertaining us with information which might have proved valuable had we understood it, and finally amusing themselves by gambling for the shirts we had given them, their only garments. The largest, of course, won, but was magnanimous enough to permit the loser to wear his lost property for the night; and both tucking up the skirts, that the genial warmth of the fire might reach them without interruption, stretched themselves on the damp sand, and slept like innocence itself. The next morning, as it was Sunday, we directed a general washing of faces throughout the village; a ceremony evidently of rare occurrence, and which happily settled a question before agitated in our camp. The representative of the Van Dusen's Fork Indians, who was present, was not darker, but only dirtier than the rest

Sunday, Sept. 14th.— As it had become evident that nothing could be effected with the Indians at present, for want of interpreters, it was concluded to break up camp the next day, and proceed on. With a view to the prevention of difficulty hereafter in the selection of a reserve, Colonel M'Kee decided upon setting apart provisionally, a tract sufficient for the tribes inhabiting Eel river, Humboldt bay, and generally the central portion of his district.—The reservation could at this time be made without embracing any land occupied by whites, and yet to include all the requisites for subsisting the Indians themselves. The tract was selected after obtaining the best information practicable, and comprised the country between Eel river and the Mendocino range, extending from the coast up to a point opposite to our camp. This it was believed would furnish sufficient agricultural land, together with the fisheries upon which they chiefly depend. An arrangement was also entered into, with a Mr. Charles A. Robinson, one of the settlers, on Eel river, to plant with potatoes a few acres of ground for the benefit of such Indians as could be induced to labor upon it.



[illegible] from a sketch by [illegible]

Eng^d by J. C. M^c Rae

[illegible] CALIFORNIA

Monday, Sept. 15th.— To-day the camp was broken up, and we moved down to "Humboldt City." The road, for the greater part of the distance, ran over hills covered with low brush. It is passable for wagons from the settlement near Van Dusen's fork, to an embarcadero on a slough putting up from the bay, whence produce is taken by water. The town, if it may be called so, is situated upon a little plateau of about forty acres, nearly opposite the entrance, and under a bluff, rising from the midst of a tract of low ground. It contains only about a dozen houses, and was at this time nearly deserted; Uniontown, at the head of the bay, having proved a more successful rival in the packing trade. Vessels of considerable size can lie close to the shore here; but the place is not destined to any importance, at least until the settlement and cultivation of the adjoining country shall make it a point of export for provisions.

Humboldt Bay (Plate 43) is probably a lagoon lying within a sand beach, and undistinguished by any prominent land-mark; for which reason it probably so long escaped observation from sea. Its extreme length is about eighteen miles; its width opposite the town not more than one, but greater near the upper end, averaging probably four or five. Somewhat singularly, no stream of any size enters it; the largest being Elk river, called Ka-sha-reh by the Indians, a creek emptying a mile or two above Humboldt. The bay was discovered, so far as we have any knowledge of its existence, in the fall of 1849, by a party under Dr. Josiah Gregg, well known as the author of a work entitled "The Commerce of the Prairies." This party had started from the Sacramento valley with a view of exploring Trinity valley, under the supposition that it emptied into Trinidad bay. Perceiving, however, that it finally turned to the northward, they left it, and crossed the country to that point, and subsequently came down upon this bay, which at first they supposed to be a lake. The party here divided, Dr. Gregg, with Mr. Charles Southard and some others, following down the coast to about lat. 39° 36′, and thence striking over the mountains to Clear Lake, beyond which Dr. Gregg died, in the attempt to reach Napa valley. Others of the party, among whom was our guide, Mr. Thomas Sebring, and David A. Buck, took the route up Eel river, reaching Sonoma in February. Both parties experienced great suffering in their winter journey through the mountains. It is greatly to be regretted that Dr. Gregg's notes, which are said to have been very minute, and accompanied with observations of latitude and longitude, have never been published. In the spring of 1850, Mr. Sebring returned to the bay, guiding two parties; and the attempt to bring the wagon train across, the failure of which has been mentioned, was made by another. — A vessel called the "Eclipse," started from San Francisco, chartered by some of the new settlers. Before her arrival, however, or that of the expeditions by land, information of the existence of the harbor was received at Trinidad, through a party of sailors who had been landed at the mouth of Eel river, and found their way thence up the coast; and the "Lama Virginia," Captain Ottinger, came down, entering first, and but a little after Captains Dennison and Tichenor had entered Eel river in the Ryersen. Such seems to have been the history of the discovery of this bay and the adjoining country. It may be added that Van Dusen's fork, so named after one of Dr. Gregg's party, was explored to a considerable height by Captain Tichenor while the vessel lay in the river. Whether the existence of the bay was previously known to the Hudson's Bay Company, is doubtful. They certainly trapped in the mountains between it and the Sacramento range, and there seems to be some evidence of the previous visit of whites, but no record of it has been preserved.

Tuesday, Sept. 16*th.*—We started up the edge of the bay, over salt marshes, crossing Elk river near its mouth. This stream is only fordable at low water, and even then we found it over girth deep to our horses. Its width is about twenty-five yards. A mile beyond we reached Bucksport, a settlement of half a dozen houses, with a fine prairie behind it; and finding that we could reach no other camp that day, halted, making but a little over three miles.

Wednesday, Sept. 17*th.*—One trail ran for nine or ten miles, in some places through fern prairie, but chiefly in heavy forest of fir and redwood. Beyond this we came upon the salt marshes which border much of the bay on the landward side, rendering travel by land at all times difficult, and which in summer add to the annoyance of miry ground, that of myriads of mosquitoes. The distance from Bucksport to Union is about eighteen miles; there is another intermediate place named Eureka, which we did not visit, our trail running too far inland. Union is at the head of the bay, but at some distance from the water, and goods are brought in boats to an embarcadero, within half a mile of it. It is built upon a nearly level plateau under a low table-land, and contains about one hundred houses. Its population, which at one time was over five hundred, had fallen off; few persons remaining, except a company of State volunteers, recently called out. Its importance was derived from its trade with the Klamath and Trinity mines; and we learned that until recently, an average of an hundred mules a week had been packed, taking some four or five thousand dollars worth of goods. The miners, having lately moved higher up, into the neighborhood of the Sacramento and Oregon trails, the business had fallen off. Trinidad, upon the coast, eighteen miles distant, has been the principal rival of Union in this trade, and was suffering under the same depression. It contains about the same number of houses, and probably about the like population.

What available land there is upon Humboldt bay is of a similar character to that on Eel river. Too much of it is, however, covered with forest; the cost of clearing which would be much greater than its value afterwards. Near Union, and upon Mad river, a few miles distant, there is some farming country, but as yet very little under cultivation.

We encamped upon the table-land behind the town, and found the grass much eaten and trampled; our animals suffered further from the swarms of mosquitos. The goods destined for the Klamath Indians had been sent to Trinidad; and as it was concluded to take the trail leading from here direct to the Klamath, without passing through that place, they were brought down in packs. A few of the Mad River Indians came in and received presents, but nothing was effected with them. I obtained a partial vocabulary of their language, which resembles substantially that used round the bay, and at Eel river. Beyond Mad river a different one prevails. The Bay Indians call themselves, as we were informed, Wish-osk; and those of the hills, Te-ok-a-wilk; but the tribes to the northward denominate both those of the Bay and Eel river, We-yot, or Walla-walloo. The Indians of Trinidad are called by them Chori, and those of Gold Bluff, between Trinidad and the Klamath, Osse-gon. Of these two last we saw nothing.

Wednesday, Sept. 24th. — Major Wessells, with the command, had moved the day before to a camp on the Bald Hills, beyond Mad river; and to-day the agent followed with his party, starting about noon. We took, as a guide for our future route, Mr. Benjamin Kelsey, an old resident of California, and one of the most experienced mountaineers in the State, who had trapped, in former years, through the country we were about to enter on.

The trail, a short distance from town, turned into the redwoods. It had been cut out by the inhabitants for the convenience of packing, and at this season was pretty good; but during the rains, the soil in these forests becomes a deep and greasy mud, very difficult to pass over. About five miles out, we reached the crossing of Mad river. This stream, as has been mentioned, heads with the south fork of the Trinity, Van Dusen's Fork of Eel river, and Cottonwood creek, a tributary of the Sacramento. Its length is about one hundred miles, the general course being from east to west. It enters the sea six miles above Union, but it possibly once ran into the bay itself; for a dry channel remains, which, with but little cutting, would connect it with one of the sloughs near the town. Some fifteen or twenty miles from the coast, the redwood timber disappears, and oak-covered hills extend back to the foot of the mountains, affording good pasturage, and some farming land. The immediate bottom of the river is narrow, and covered with alder and balm of Gilead. At this time it was about thirty or forty feet across, and knee-deep to our horses; but in winter it swells to sixty or seventy yards in width. The Humboldt trail to the Trinity crosses it some fifteen miles farther up.

Leaving the river, we ascended a long spur of mountain to the top of the dividing ridge between it and Redwood creek, through alternate forest and prairie land. The character of the mountains, from this to the Klamath, differs widely from those we have before passed over. Their summits are broader, and the declivities less steep and broken. Prairies of rich grass lie on their southern slopes, and especially on their tops, from whence their name of *Bald Hills* is derived. This grass was now yellow with ripeness, and the wind, sweeping over its long slender stems, gave it a beautiful appearance. The Indians use the stalks in their finer basket-work; and, when split, in the braids with which they tie up their hair, and other ornamental fabrics. The timber here becomes much more open, and fir, white and yellow, predominates over the redwood. This last is now chiefly confined to the immediate neighborhood of the coast. Springs of good water occur near almost all these prairies, and camps are therefore selected on their skirts. Late in the season, however, the grass is often burned, and dependence cannot always be placed upon the usual grounds. In winter, snow lies on them for several weeks, and to a considerable depth. Elk are very abundant in these mountains, and the ground was marked everywhere with their footprints.

We found the command encamped upon the summit of the mountain, at a point overlooking the whole of Humboldt bay and the ocean beyond. The men had here surprised a party of Indians, who fled at sight, leaving their squaws and baskets to follow as best they could. These Bald Hill Indians, as they are called, have a very bad reputation among the packers, and several lives, as well as much property, have been lost through their means. They appear to lead a more roving life than those of the Klamath and Trinity rivers; with the latter of whom they seem, however, to be connected.

Tuesday, Sept. 25th.—Our route to-day led down to a small branch of Mad river, and thence up another still higher mountain than the last, where we encamped upon another prairie. It had been our intention to go on to Redwood creek, but a train of packers returning, informed us that the only accessible camps there had been burnt over. Owing to the circuitous course of the trail, we made but about four miles on our direction, with some seven or eight of travel. From this summit there is even a more magnificent prospect than from our last camp; but unfortunately a dense fog had settled over the ocean and bay. Even this, however, afforded a superb spectacle; for it penetrated up between the different points of highland, lying only upon the bottoms, and from our elevated position, appeared itself a sea, whose long series of waves were as distinctly marked as in that it concealed and imitated. Our guide pointed out the position of the settlements on the coast, and the mouths of the streams, distinguishable by a break in the vapor.

Friday, Sept. 26th.—The first business of the morning was of course to descend the mountain which we had climbed the day before. About five miles from camp, we reached and crossed Redwood creek, a fine mountain stream, running over a stony bed, and now easily fordable, but which, in the wet season, is both deep and rapid. As we approached, we saw the signal-fires of the Indians, who had themselves decamped.

On the northern bank lay the small prairie we had intended to have reached last night. The trail now ran down the river for two or three miles, over very broken and rocky ground, and then again ascended the hills. We halted as before upon a mountain prairie, at a place known as "Indian camp;" making a distance of about twelve miles of travel, and with our last camp still in sight. From here the view opened, to the north, of the ranges dividing the Trinity from the Klamath, and the latter from the coast and Rogue's river; while to the south, the Bear Butte on Eel river, which we had passed on the 5th, was visible. It was too late in the afternoon to permit the ascent of "Kelsey's Point of View," a high craggy hill rising about a mile to the left of the trail, which would have given us a better view of this whole mountain region than any other we could have found.

Saturday, Sept. 27th.—Our march to-day was both as hilly and circuitous as before; the trail, after a long detour, descending to Pine creek, the first of the waters of the Klamath which we reached. The Trinidad trail, it should be mentioned, united with that from Union, about three miles from our last camp. Beyond Pine creek, which is a turbulent brook, with a very bad crossing, the route led over a ridge to a small branch in a deep ravine, and thence ascended another mountain beyond, on the summit of which we stopped. The place was known as "Bloody camp," from the murder of two whites, committed some time previous by the Indians of the hills. We passed to-day two other well-known halting places,—"French camp," between the junction of the trails and Pine creek, and "Burnt ranch," so called from an Indian village having been destroyed there, between Pine creek and the ravine. Our march was about twelve miles, and we had the satisfaction of finding that we were only two miles and a half from our next destination, the forks of the Klamath and Trinity. Water and grass were abundant, and it was accordingly determined to leave the animals here under a guard, while *the talk* was being held at the ferry. The next day we remained stationary, preparations in the mean time being made for assembling the Indians and for the accommodation of the party below.

Monday, Sept. 29th.—Col. M'Kee moved this morning to the ferry at the junction of the two rivers, Major Wessells remaining for a day or two longer at Bloody camp. The road was a continuous descent through woods, and our new camp was selected near the ferry, on the south bank, in a fine grove of bay trees. We were somewhat amused at finding a notice posted on the trail, advising whom it might concern, that Mr. Durkee, who kept the ferry, was at peace with his neighbors, and requesting that they therefore should not be killed without just provocation; a piece of intelligence to which our red guides carefully called our attention.

The Klamath river is here, during its lower stages, about fifty yards in width, and very swift. Its course in fact is obstructed at short distances by rapids throughout its whole length, till within ten miles of the sea, the descent from the source to the ocean being very considerable. There are, however, no falls of any height; the largest, which is a few miles below the forks, being little more than a rapid. Much error has existed in maps relating to this river; its mouth having by many, (among others, Captain Wilkes and Col. Frémont,) been placed in Oregon, about 42° 35′ N. L., and it was for a long time supposed that Rogue's river, which actually empties about that latitude, was a branch of the Klamath. The distinctness of the two streams has since been ascertained, but the source of the mistake is nowhere noticed. The manuscript map of Oregon and California, by Jedediah S. Smith, which was, till lately, the best source of information as to this part of the country, although in general singularly accurate, considering the extent of the region traversed and laid down by him, gave rise to it. Smith in 1828 ascended the Sacramento valley, and crossing the mountains, struck on what apparently was the south fork of the Trinity. This he followed down to its junction with the Klamath, and to the mouth of the latter; thence pursuing his route up the coast to Rogue's river~~, and the Umpqua,~~ and over into the Willamette valley. Supposing Rogue's river, or the Too-too-tutnis, to be the one which headed in Klamath lake, he so represented it on his map; and to the Klamath he gave the name of Smith's river, by which it is yet called upon all the English sea-charts. Smith was a fur-trader, and one of the most adventurous of that class; and was, as is believed, for some time at least, a partner of General Ashley of Missouri. His travels, from about the year 1821 to 1830, as traced upon his map, cover not only the heads of the Missouri, the Yellowstone, the two forks of the Columbia river, and the Colorado, but encircle the whole of the great basin of California, (which he moreover claims to have crossed in 1826 from San Francisco to the Great Salt Lake,) and on the Pacific extend from the Pueblo de los Angelos to Fort Vancouver. He was finally killed by the Camanches, and not, as is often supposed, on the river of his name. He however lost a party of fifteen men upon the Umpqua, on his route up from the Klamath, escaping himself with some difficulty. His furs and goods were recovered for him by Dr. M'Laughlin of the Hudson's Bay Company, who sent out a party for the purpose. Smith's map, it is believed, was recently purchased in Oregon by the Joint Commission of Army and Navy Officers, and is probably now in Washington.

The real course of the Klamath, after leaving the lesser lake of that name, is a little south of westerly, to about forty miles from the coast, where it turns nearly to the south of the forks, there again bending north-west to its mouth, which, as fixed by the United States Coast Survey, is in about latitude 41° 35′, some fifteen miles below Point Saint George, and thirty-five from the junction of the Trinity. The whole of it, after leaving the lake, is therefore in California. The country traversed by the Klamath from near its head waters, is a succession of mountains coming down to its banks, leaving but little, even occasional bottom land, and affording no inducement to others than miners. During the winter the snow falls to a great depth, rendering travel difficult if not impracticable, and its tributaries are swollen to torrents. No settlement can be maintained at its mouth, as the shifting sands are liable during any severe storm, to close it almost entirely. An instance happened during the past winter, when a bar preventing any access, formed across it; although at the time of the Ewing's visit during the preceding summer, there was fifteen feet of water at the entrance.

The Trinity, so called by its more recent explorers, from the idea that it emptied into Trinidad bay, rises in the neighborhood of the Sacramento, and pursues a southwesterly course for a considerable distance, turning afterwards west and then northwest to its junction with the Klamath. It receives a number of branches, the largest of which come from the north, with one exception, the South Fork. This heads in the Sacramento range, its sources being near those of Bottomwood creek, and it joins the main river about thirty miles above the entrance of that into the Klamath. Like the Klamath, the Trinidad runs during its whole length through mountains; only two small valleys occurring on its banks, of which the principal is between the south fork and its mouth. It is in size about half that of the Klamath, and its waters, likewise rapid, are of transcendent purity; contrasting with those of the latter stream which never lose the taint of their origin. The other principal branches of the Klamath, Salmon, Scott's, and Shasté rivers, will be spoken of hereafter.

The name of "Smith's river," which, as a matter of tradition, has been bandied from pillar to post, shifting from Eel to Rogue's river, has recently vibrated between a stream running into Pelican bay, and another, called by some Illinois river, and supposed to be the south fork of Rogue's river. Of the former, called by the Klamath Indians the Eenag'h-paha, or river of the Eenagh's, we received, at different times, information from those who had visited it. A small bay, or rather lagoon, lies within the beach at its mouth; and the river, where it falls into it, is some sixty yards wide. From fifteen to twenty miles from the coast, the principal forks occur; the northern taking its rise in the Rogue's river divide, and the southern, or more properly eastern, in that of the Klamath. Various other branches join it, draining quite an extensive tract. Near its mouth is said to lie a belt of good agricultural land, some fifteen miles in width, similar to that on Humboldt bay; and we were further informed, that immense quantities of iron ore are to be found on its branches; a fact which would account for the magnetic sand thrown up with the gold at Gold Bluff and other points on the coast, which could not have come from the Klamath.

Although the value of the country upon the Klamath and the Trinity, as an agricultural region, is too small ever to have attracted a population, it, notwithstanding, possesses great importance in its mines. The district through which gold is found, extends from the Shasté river, on the former, and the head-waters of the latter, to the forks. Below there, although it exists, the particles are fine, and the amount insufficient to pay for collecting. With perhaps one or two exceptions, the diggings have not been as enormously rich as at points on the tributaries of the Sacramento, but they cover a very extensive region, afford a fair renumeration to labor, and will, apparently, be of considerable duration. The details of the subject will be hereafter given, in speaking of various points. At present it is sufficient to say, that the metal appears to be distributed, in greater or less quantities, throughout all these mountains; as it is found in most of the small streams, as well as the main rivers. The quantity is, however, greatest high up; and the apparent source of the most abundant supply is the group of granitic peaks at the head of Scott's, Salmon, and the Trinity. Approaching the coast, the amount diminishes or disappears. With regard to the origin of the gold at what is called "Gold Bluff," a high cliff of indurated sand and clay, upon the coast between Trinidad and the mouth of the Klamath, as well as at some other points on the Pacific, the accounts given of it all point to the Klamath. The metal, which is in very fine particles, is found on the beach only after northwesterly storms; and it is said that different objects, among them a human body, known to have been lost in the river, have at various times been drifted ashore, indicating the general set of the current. The extreme comminution of the dust is conclusive as to the distance from which it comes; and the presence of iron sand is accounted for, by its existence, in ore, upon the small river in Pelican bay.

The name of Klamath or Tlamath, belonging to the tribes on the lake where the river rises, is not known among those farther down; nor could I learn that any other name for the stream exists among them than that derived from relative position. Thus, at the forks, the Weits-peks call the river below Poh-lik, signifying *down;* and that above, Peh-tsik, or *up;* giving, moreover, the same name to the population, in speaking of them collectively. Three distinct tribes, speaking different languages, occupy its banks between the sea and the mouth of the Shasté, of which the lowest extends up to Bluff creek, a few miles above the forks. Of these there are, according to our information, in all, thirty-two villages. It was the opinion of some, who were acquainted with the river, that each village would average nine houses, of ten souls to the house; but this estimate, which would give a population of nearly three thousand, and a village to about every mile and a half on the river, seems clearly too large. It is probable that some are but summer residences; and a very liberal conjecture of the number of the inhabitants, would be fifteen hundred. The names of the principal villages may be useful in determining analogies. They are the Weits-pek (at the forks), Wah-sherr, Kai-petl, Morai-uh, Noht-scho, Méh-teh, Schre-gon, Yau-terrh, Pecquan, Kauweh, Wauh-tecq, Sche-perrh, Oiyotl, Nai-a-gutl, Schaitl, Hopaiuh, Rek-qua, and Weht'l-qua; the two last at the mouth of the river. The Weits-pek village, on the north bank at this point, as well as the two smaller ones, situated respectively between the forks, and opposite on the south side, were burnt during the last spring, in consequence of some murders committed in the neighborhood; and, at the time of our visit, had not been rebuilt, the people living in temporary huts. The first contained about thirty houses, and was one of the most important of all. The same was the case with the Kai-petl, or, as it was called by the whites, Capel village, ten miles below. There was formerly a ferry there also, at which the trail then generally used from Trinidad, crossed; but the jealousy of the Indians being in some manner aroused, they attacked the house, killing four persons, and their town was therefore destroyed, and several of them shot.

Upon the Trinity, or Hoopah, below the entrance of the south fork or O-tah-wei-a-ket, there are said to be eleven ranches, the Oke-noke, Agaraits, Up-le-goh, Ollep-pauh'l-kah-teht'l and Pepht-soh, all lying in the little valley referred to; and the Has-lintah, A-hel-tah, So-kéa-keit, Tash-huan-ta, and Wits-puk, above it. A twelfth, the Mé-yemma, now burnt, was situated just above "New," or "Arkansas river." The total number of inhabitants belonging to these, is probably six hundred. They differ in no respect, except in language, from the lower Klamaths. Of the Indians above the forks on the main Trinity, or those on the south fork, we obtained no distinct information, except that they speak distinct languages and are both excessively hostile to the whites. The latter are described as large and powerful men, of a swarthier complexion, fierce and intractable, and are considered by the mountaineers as of another race, agreeing more with the wild tribes inhabiting the western base of the Sacramento range, and in the neighborhood of a large lake reported to lie there. The lower Trinity tribe is, as well as the river itself, known to the Klamaths by the name of Hoopah; of which, however, I could not learn the signification. A vocabulary of their language is appended; but it cannot be considered as altogether perfect, being obtained through the means of the Klamath interpreter.

Of the Indians of Redwood creek, called by the whites Bald Hill Indians, little was learned, and none of them could be induced to come in. They are termed Oruk by the Coast Indians, and Tcho-lo-lah by the Weits-peks. The general opinion is, that they are more nearly allied to the Trinity than to the Klamath tribes. The names of some of their bands, as given me by an Indian, were, commencing at the coast, the Cherr'h-quuh, Ot-teh-petl, Oh-nah, Oh-pah, and Roque-choh.

Still less is known of the Indians to the north of the Klamath; but we were informed that the first tribe on the coast were a warlike band called Tol-e-wahs, of whom the Klamaths stand in some awe. Above them on Smith's river are the Eenahs or Eenaghs, and on the head waters of that stream the Sians or Siahs. All these are said to speak different languages, or more probably dialects. Of the first I obtained a few words from an old Klamath, but they are hardly to be relied on.

With regard to their form of government, at least that of the Klamath and Trinity tribes, the mow-ee-ma, or head of each family, is master of his own house, and there is a sei-as-lau, or chief, in every village. There are also head chiefs to the different tribes; but whether their power has definite limits, is confined to peace or war, or extends to both, seems very doubtful. It certainly is insufficient to control the relations of the several villages, or keep down the turbulence of individuals. The courage and energy of a warrior, as we saw, often gives greater influence than the rank of a head chief.

The lodges of these Indians are generally very well built; being made of boards riven from the redwood or fir, and of considerable size, often reaching twenty feet square. Their roofs are pitched over a ridge-pole, and sloping each way; the ground being usually excavated to the depth of three or four feet, and a pavement of smooth stones laid in front. The cellars of the better class are also floored and walled with stone. The door always consists of a round hole in a heavy plank, just sufficient to admit the body; and is formed with a view to exclude the bears, who in winter make occasional and very unwelcome visits. The graves, which are in the immediate neighborhood of the houses, exhibit very considerable taste, and a laudable care. The dead are inclosed in rude coffins, formed by placing four boards around the body, and covered with earth to some depth; a heavy plank, often supported by upright head and foot stones, is laid upon the top; or stones are built up into a wall, about a foot above the ground, and the top flagged with others. The graves of the chiefs are surrounded by neat wooden palings; each pale ornamented with a feather from the tail of the bald eagle. Baskets are usually staked down by the side, according to the wealth or popularity of the individual; and sometimes other articles, for ornament or use, are suspended over them.

The funeral ceremonies occupy three days, during which the soul of the deceased is in danger from O-mah-á, or the devil. To preserve it from this peril, a fire is kept up at the grave, and the friends of the deceased howl round it, to scare away the demon. Should they not be successful in this, the soul is carried down the river; subject, however, to redemption by Péh-ho-wan on payment of a big knife. After the expiration of the three days it is all well with them. Such, at least, is their belief, as related to us by residents, so far as could be gathered from the Indians themselves. A qualification must probably be made on the score of incorrect translation and misunderstanding. In person these people are far superior to any that we met below; the men being larger, more muscular, and with countenances denoting greater force and energy of character, as well as intelligence. Indeed, they approach rather to the races of the plains, than to the wretched "diggers" of the greater part of California. Two young men in particular, a young chief and his brother, from a neighboring village on the Trinity, were taller than the majority of whites, superbly formed, and very noble in feature. The superiority, however, was especially manifested in the women, many of whom were exceedingly pretty; having large almond-shaped eyes, sometimes of a hazel color, and with the red showing through the cheeks. Their figures were full, their chests ample; and the younger ones had well-shaped busts, and rounded limbs; graces all profusely displayed, as their only dress was the fringed petticoat, or at most, a deer-skin robe thrown back over the shoulders, in addition.

The petticoat with the wealthier, or perhaps more industrious, was an affair on which great taste and labor were expended. It was of dressed deer-skin; the upper edge turned over and embroidered with colored grasses, the lower cut into a deep fringe, reaching nearly to the knee, and ornamented with bits of sea-shell, beads, and buttons. Sometimes an apron, likewise of heavy fringe, made of braided grass, the ends finished off with the nuts of the pine, hung down in front, and rattled as they walked. These dames, though bearing a high, and apparently well deserved reputation for morals, were exceedingly social; coming up in bands to our camp, to beg for beads and trinkets, and playing off a thousand airs of wild coquetry. Indeed, for powers of wheedling and coaxing they are unsurpassed; and when a rustic beauty established herself beside one, her plump arms resting on his knees, and her large eyes rolled up to his, the stock in trade of the victim was pretty sure to suffer. They made themselves perfectly at home; bringing their basket-work, and sitting round the tents, or romping under the bay trees; their jolly laughter ringing through the woods, and their squeals echoing far and wide, as some mischievous young savage pinched a tempting spot, or hugged them in his tawny arms. The manner of these Indians towards one another was generally caressing, the young men lolling about in pairs, and the girls sitting with their arms round each other. In justice and truth, however, it must be added that this Californian Arcadia was not all sunshine, even during the halcyon days of treaty-making, and that various habits and customs indulged in, were the reverse of inviting.

The dress of the men consists, generally, of a pair of deer-skins with the hair on, stitched together. Sometimes, however, a noted hunter wears a couple of cougar skins, the long tails trailing behind him; and others again, on state occasions, display a breech-clout of several small skins, sewed into a belt or waistband. Their moccasins are peculiar, having soles of several thicknesses of leather. They are not as skilful in the preparation of dressed skins as the Oregon Indians, and the use of those dressed on both sides is mostly confined to the women. Their bows are short, and strongly backed with sinews, which are put on by means of a glue extracted from fish, and they are often neatly painted. The arrows are well made, the points of stone or iron being secured to a movable piece fitting into the shaft. Among the skins used for quivers, I noticed the otter, wild-cat, fisher, fawn, grey fox, and others. The skins of a species of raccoon, of the skunk, and a small animal called the cat fox, were also employed for different purposes. In dressing their hair, which the men wear clubbed behind, considerable taste is sometimes shown; wreaths of oak or bay leaves, or the broad tails of the grey squirrel, being twisted round the head. Their pipes were made of wood, generally eight or ten inches long, and tapering from a broad muzzle to the mouth-piece. They are held erect when smoking, and the same species of wild tobacco is used that was noticed at Clear Lake. Both sexes pierce the nose, and wear some kind of ornament in it; the favorite one being the shell known as the "haiqua," among the fur traders. This, under the name of the "ali-qua chick," or Indian money, is more highly valued among them than any other article. Their canoes are fashioned like those of the bay and of Eel river, blunt at both ends, with a small projection in the stern, for a seat; and they manage them with wonderful dexterity, by means of a sort of half pole, half paddle. The women are adepts in basket-making of various kinds, as well as the making of thread and twine from a species of grass. They also manufacture a very pretty kind of narrow ribbon, by interweaving grass and thread. In this, as well as in their basket-work, they use several colored dyes, apparently of vegetable origin. The same round basket-cap noticed before, is worn by the Klamath women, figures of different colors and patterns being worked into it. They tattoo the underlip and chin in the manner remarked at Eel river; the young girls in faint lines, which are deepened and widened as they become older, and in the married women are extended up above the corners of the mouth. It is somewhat singular, that the Mohahoes and others, on the lower waters of the Colorado, tattoo in the same fashion. The children are carried in baskets suspended from the head, after the manner shown in the sketch. Their persons are unusually clean, as they use both the sweat-house and cold-bath constantly.

The different bands, even of the same tribes, if not at actual war, are exceedingly jealous of each other; and it was with great difficulty that they could be prevailed upon to convene from any distance, or kept together when brought in. They have a reputation for treachery, as well as revengefulness; are thievish, and much disposed to sulk if their whims are not in every way indulged. Whether this character is stronger with them than with any other tribe, is, however, doubtful. Deception is always one of the shields of the weak or ignorant; and as to dishonesty, it must be remembered that the articles in commonest use among the whites, and often improperly exposed, are the very ones which have the greatest value in the eyes of the savage. An axe, a blanket, a large knife, or tin pan, are of almost incalculable value to him; and it is not, therefore, to be wondered at, that the temptation to steal is seldom resisted, or that the ingenuity displayed in doing so is very great. What capacity they may hereafter show for civilization, can hardly be foreseen; but there appears to be no greater obstacle than existed in some of the Oregon Indians, who are now partially domesticated, and who, under steadier and better directed auspices, would have been much more so. The objects of the Hudson's Bay Company, the best of their earliest instructors, tended rather to make those people useful servants in their own peculiar occupation, than cultivators of the soil; while the missions failed almost entirely. The Indians of the Klamath and its vicinity afford a field for a new experiment. Their country furnishes food of different kinds, and in quantity sufficient to supply their absolute wants. Game, fish, and acorns are abundant. Improvident, however, as are all savages, they have their seasons of scarcity; and the climate of their country renders clothing and shelter requisite. It is through their wants that the desire of civilization can most readily be excited. Articles of dress and of food, at first mere objects of fancy or luxury, speedily become absolute necessaries; and an inducement to labor for these, especially when the obvious fruits of their industry are directly applied to their own use, arises as they become accustomed to them.

Dependence upon the whites follows invariably the discontinuance of their own habits. The bow and arrows are laid aside, and the blanket takes the place of the deer-skin. The value of their own productions first, and the wages of their labor afterwards, become essential to procure those articles which they cannot manufacture or supply. Thus the Indians of the Willamette valley, when urged to remove to another place where they should be free from molestation by the whites, absolutely refused; saying that they should starve, that they had lost their old modes of subsistence, and were obliged to work for a living. Such a result would of course not be that of a day; but a persistence in the system would undoubtedly bring it about here also. The education of the savage should first be directed to the improvement of his physical condition. With the generation which is already grown, at least, conversion to Christianity, or, as is frequently attempted, the inculcation of the peculiar doctrines of some particular sect, is impossible. The millions that have been expended upon this object in past ages, have produced no more lasting impression than the tread of the moccasin on the sea-shore. These Indians already afford one great point, by means of which, the influence of civilization can be exerted in their fixed habitations. If collected as occasion may offer, and its advantage be shown to them, upon reservations, where their fisheries can still be carried on, where tillage of the soil shall be gradually introduced, and where the inducements to violence or theft will be diminished or checked, they may possibly be made both prosperous and useful to the country. They have as yet none of the vices which so generally follow intercourse with the whites. They have never acquired a taste for spirits, and their ideas of chastity, as well as their remote situation, have hitherto excluded disease. So far as regards treaties between them and the whites, however, it may well be doubted whether, even if made in good faith, they can be kept, unless in the neighborhood of small military posts, and under the surveillance of military authority. Broken up into small bands or villages, each having its separate chief, and with no common controlling head, there is no influence which can be made to reach all the individuals of any tribe.

We too often give a general character to savage races, derived from a few, and those most probably the worst of their nation; forgetting that there may be as great diversity of disposition among them as among ourselves. Thus the majority may be well disposed, and yet implicated in crime by the acts of a very few; for knowing by experience the indiscriminate manner in which punishment is meted out, they are driven in self-defence to abet or defend them. But besides this, a constant source of provocation is to be feared from such of the whites as, transiently passing through their country, offer them insult and violence, without, perhaps, endangering themselves; but insuring revenge and retaliation upon others, and probably quite innocent persons. A population drawn together, like that of California, necessarily contains reckless and unprincipled characters, too many of whom regard the life of an Indian as of no more account than that of a dog; and who, in murdering them without provocation, give cause for the reprisals which have sacrificed many innocent lives and brought about expensive wars and barbarous devastation. That a protective military force should consist of regular troops there can be no question; for although volunteers may be more effective in revenging outrages committed, they can never afford security against their occurrence, and sometimes commit greater ones themselves. The mountainous and broken character of this country does not offer scope for cavalry in its usual form; but a light-armed force, especially if consisting of riflemen, provided with mules, would be highly effectual. The season for active operations is the winter, when flight to the mountains is impossible, and where the Indians are all concentrated in their villages upon the river. Troops moving upon the usual trails, would, if they did not reach the bands sought for, drive them among other and hostile tribes, who would soon cut them off. But it is as a preventive rather than an offensive force, that they would be needed. Possessing no fire-arms, these Indians are too much in awe of the whites not to remain quiet in the face of a permanent post; while, on the other hand, a source of trouble arising from needless provocation can thus only be put an end to. The proper strategic point for such a post on this frontier, is clearly at, or near, the forks of the Klamath or Trinity, where the principal trails from the coast to and up these rivers pass, and which commands the country lying below, that upon both rivers above, and also the Redwood, upon which a numerous and troublesome band are settled. Its supplies could be derived from a depôt established on Humboldt bay, or at Trinidad, and brought up by pack-mules. The ground immediately at the forks, though well enough adapted for buildings, does not afford the necessary pasturage for animals; but a small valley on the Trinity a few miles above, and included in the reservation made for the tribes, would give every necessary facility, as well as land for cultivation.

In leaving the subject, one remark seems not out of place. The policy early adopted by the Hudson's Bay Company, (who, better than any other body or individuals, succeeded in the management of the Indians with whom they came in contact,) was to break down the power and influence of petty chiefs, by placing in the hands of one man of energetic character, and secured to their interests, the supreme control of the whole tribe; governing entirely through him, raising him to the rank of a white man, and giving him the means of supporting the dignity and state of which the savage is so fond. Such was their course with COM-COMLY, and with CASE-NAU; and such should be adopted in the treatment of the wild and turbulent nations of the Klamath and Trinity.

Mr. Durkee, who owns the ferry at the forks, and who was to act as interpreter, was absent at our arrival, and did not return for several days. In the mean time, Mr. Thompson, of Gold Bluff, who had joined the party at Bloody camp, went down the river to induce the lower bands to come up; and Mr. Patterson, of Union, undertook to assemble the Trinity Indians. Both were partially successful; but full deputations, particularly of the Pohlik-Klamath villages, could not be got together. Some progress was, however, made in conciliation, and a pretty good feeling finally established. The Indians persisted in assuming that their burnt villages were to be paid for; and were in great doubt as to the propriety of a final settlement, while they remained one life in arrears. The chief, with great formality, displayed a bone, marked on one edge with twenty-six notches, being the number of white men admitted to have been killed upon the Klamath; while the other side of it contained twenty-seven, as the number of Indians killed by the whites. The difficulty was finally compromised by giving sixteen pairs of blankets for the extra Indian, and a squaw and child not enumerated, and furnishing four dozen axes, wherewith to rebuild their lodges. Their own jealousies, however, were the occasion of the greatest difficulty; and even after the treaty had been formally concluded, a portion of them refused to sign at the ferry, and had to be waited on at a point some distance down the river. The treaty embraced the usual stipulations of peace with the citizens of the United States; and provision to be made for them in a reserve. It unfortunately happened that during our stay the weather was too unfavorable to permit a survey being made of the district proposed. A description of this, with its natural boundaries, as laid down upon the map, was, however, obtained from the citizens present. In general terms, it embraced the country around the forks, extending on the Klamath, from the mouth of Pine creek, to the foot of Red-Cap's bar, as it is called, a distance of some fifteen miles; and on the Trinity to John's creek, about as far. It embraced the valley on the latter river, before spoken of, and which is supposed to contain six or seven miles of farming land. This latter track has always been the country of the Hoo-pahs; and at the time of our visit there were no white settlers upon any part of it, except Mr. Durkee, who kept the ferry, and who, possessing the confidence of the Indians, and speaking their language, will, no doubt, be permitted to remain.

Thursday, Oct. 9th.— The business of the treaty being concluded, the camp broke up to-day, and the train crossed, our route lying up the opposite bank. Since the destruction of the lower ferry, all travel on the Klamath has passed at this point, although further up many prefer the eastern side. The ferry is managed by a scow, working on a rope suspended over the river. The house is a log building, capable of standing against a siege, in which arrows alone are used, and covered with a huge tent which gives an additional room in front. The trail followed the stream, ascending and descending low, rugged points; but well made, considering the nature of the ground, the short space of time that it has been travelled, and the circumstances that have called it forth. Indeed, when it is remembered that all these trails, forming as they do a net-work over this whole mountain region, have either been entirely cut out, or at least rendered passable for animals, within little more than a year; and that by men whose occupations and objects permitted no loss of time, one rather wonders at their not being worse. The main trails have in general been made by parties interested in the various towns from which goods are forwarded, or by the packers who carry them to the mines; and the expense of exploring and laying them out has been considerable. Much improvement could, however, be effected in all of them, both in distance and facility; as they are frequently carried over mountains, either to avoid rocky points, where a little blasting would afford a remedy, or to obtain places for observation. A couple of miles above the forks, we reached the Hai-am-mu village, and visiting one of the lodges, found the inhabitants engaged in cooking and eating. The meal consisted of fish and acorn porridge, made by mixing the flour in a basket, in which the water is kept boiling by means of hot stones. Of the acorn flour they likewise make a sort of bread, which they bake in the ashes. They had several spoons, very neatly made of bone or horn. At this village there was a large fish-dam; a work exhibiting an extraordinary degree both of enterprise and skill. It crossed the entire river, here about seventy-five yards wide, elbowing up stream in the deepest part. It was built by first driving stout posts into the bed of the river, at a distance of some two feet apart, having a moderate slope, and supported from below, at intervals of ten or twelve feet, by two braces; the one coming to the surface of the water, the other reaching to the string pieces. These last were heavy spars, about thirty feet in length, and were secured to each post by withes. The whole dam was faced with twigs, carefully peeled, and placed so close together as to prevent the fish from passing up. The top, at this stage of the water, was two or three feet above the surface. The labor of constructing this work must, with the few and insufficient tools of the Indians, have been immense. Slight scaffolds were built out below it, from which the fish are taken in scoop-nets; they also employ drag-nets, or spear them, the spear having the barb movable, and fastened to the shaft with a string, in order to afford the salmon play. Similar dams to this exist on the Klamath, a few miles below the forks, and about fifteen above this one; and there is another upon the Trinity, thirteen or fourteen miles from its mouth. They form a frequent cause of quarrel among the bands inhabiting different parts of the rivers. Some understanding, however, seems to exist as to opening portions of them at times, to allow the passage of fish for the supply of those above.

The salmon, which form so important an article of food to the Indian tribes inhabiting the rivers of the Pacific, are of several apparently distinct species. No naturalist, that I am aware of, has examined their varieties and habits, and there are some points in regard to them, about which much dispute exists. Seven kinds are usually said to visit the Columbia; two of which, it is probable, are the bull trout and grey fin of the English waters, and another, perhaps, owes its peculiarities either to age or food. The spring salmon, which is by far the best, is apparently identical with that of the eastern States and of Europe. Towards fall, a darker colored kind makes its appearance, which, like the former, wends its way up such of the streams as afford sufficient water, and which is not the returning and exhausted fish. Later still comes the hump-backed salmon. This is hardly eatable, its flesh being dry and rank, and its appearance disgusting. The back, as its name indicates, is protuberant, the snout is depressed over the eyes, and the jaws furnished with large hooked teeth. Almost all the fish taken in the autumn have a diseased appearance; the skin being discolored in large blotches. The several species found in the Columbia, seem to inhabit the Klamath likewise. Besides the salmon, there is also the salmon trout, a beautiful fish, and excellent eating. Of the brook trout, the only variety I have noticed, differs from that of the eastern States in having black instead of red spots, and a narrow red line extending down each side, from the gills to the tail. The fins are also less bright than in the eastern fish. The salmon rarely, if ever, is taken in fresh water, with the fly or other bait; though in salt water at the bay, and in the mouths of the rivers, they will sometimes bite even at salt pork. The Indians dry them without salt, splitting them open, taking out first the backbone, next a thin slice of flesh on each side, for the whole length, leaving the skin covered with another layer. All parts, even the head and spine, are preserved alike.

Our march to-day, in consequence of a late start, and the distance of any grazing point above, was only five miles; the course being first north-west, and then changing to north. We camped opposite the high point which forms a land-mark from the Bald Hills, and which gives the name of Bluff creek to a stream entering from the north-west, called by the Indians Otche-poh. Upon the other side of the river was an Indian village, the Sehe-perrh; the first belonging to the tribe occupying the middle section of the river, and of which the Quoratem or Salmon river Indians may be considered as the type. The grass at this camp was scanty, except at a considerable height on the mountain behind us.

Friday, Oct. 10*th.*—About a mile and a half from camp, we reached Bluff creek, which is crossed on a bridge, erected by Mr. Durkee, and for which he has a toll license. The creek is about ten yards wide, with steep banks, and is not fordable in the rainy season. At this point the trail from the lower ferry comes in. The extent of the travel on the now united routes may be judged from the fact, that since March last, 6000 mules have crossed at this place. From the narrow ridge separating the creek and the river, we could look down on both; the latter being far below the level of the first, which has a rapid descent to the junction. Another mile and a half brought us to what is called Big Bar, where excavations had been made to a considerable extent by the miners, but which were now abandoned. These bars, as they are called, are flats formed at the bends of the river, of boulders and sand; and it is upon them that most of the washings are carried on. The richest deposits are usually found on the bed-rock beneath the debris, or in crevices in the strata of slate, which here lies in place. In fine sand it cannot be obtained by mere washing, but is usually extracted by means of quicksilver. As a general thing, however, the gold of the Klamath is coarse. The more elevated spots are usually preferred, as they are less exposed to access of water, and the smaller bars are considered the richest. The space allowed, by "miner's law," to each man, as his "claim," is thirty feet square. On some bars, the earth pays with considerable equality throughout; but this is unusual. Most of them will yield from five to ten cents to the bucket; and an average of from eight to ten is good yield. The ordinary process is for one man to dig the earth, and another to wash it; each carrying one half from the hole to the water. To dig and wash 200 buckets is considered a fair day's work for two men, with the common rocker. This machine is shaped like a shallow cradle, having a movable cover of sheet-iron, pierced with holes, upon which the earth is thrown. It is moved with one hand, while the other is employed in throwing on water. The gravel is thrown off from the cover as it is washed, the greater part of the earth being carried away, while the gold remains in the reservoir below, from which, at the end of the day, it is taken and cleaned in a pan. Another process of washing is by what is called a Long-tom, a trough through which a stream of water is conducted. These, of course, are capable of producing more, with less labor, than the rocker; but their use depends on the convenience of the place, and they cannot, like the others, be easily transported. Miners usually work in parties of two or three; but several of these are often associated together, for protection or other purposes. Occasionally the heads of companies employ themselves in "prospecting" for good spots, while the others are at work; or in packing provisions and other necessaries from the towns to the diggings. Many men, whose want of experience will not insure them good returns, or who want the means of supplying themselves, hire out to others, either for specified wages, or on half profits; receiving, in each case, their board.

A couple of miles beyond, we came to Red-Cap's bar; so called from a sub-chief living there. Here we found a trading-post, and a small party of miners at work; a portion of whom were hired for $75 per month, and their board. The average yield was probably half an ounce a day per man. The price of provisions varied according to circumstances; flour having lately ranged from 12½ to 25 cents a pound, and pork from 25 to 40 cents.

The village contained twelve or fourteen lodges, substantially built, and commodious. This band, the Oppegach, was included in the treaty made at the ferry. It belongs, like the rest of those above Bluff creek, to the Peh-tsik division; their language differing materially from that below the forks. At this place, however, they are said not to use it in its purity; having, like other borderers, adopted words from their neighbors. "Red-Cap," so called from a greasy-looking woollen head-piece, with which some miner had presented him, and which ordinarily constituted his sole dress, was a short, thickset individual, with a droll countenance, reminding one of the most authentic likenesses of Santa Claus. He is a man of considerable influence, friendly to the whites, and enjoying a high character for honesty. An instance of his justice, coupled with a display of financial ability, was related to us, as exercised on the occasion of a gun being stolen by one of his band. The weapon could not be found, but Red-Cap promised that it should be paid for, the price being fixed at thirty dollars. To raise this, he imposed an excise on all salmon sold to the packers and miners, of fifty cents; which, besides the usual price in beads, was to be exacted in "waugie chick," or silver white man's money. The amount was soon raised and handed over, and the oppressive tax abated.

At this place there is a ferry, where trains bound for Salmon river usually cross, keeping up the eastern side of the Klamath. A creek of considerable size enters opposite the village, and takes its name, the "Oppegach," from it. Above, the river, for some distance, passes through a deep and wild cañon; and although an Indian trail follows it on the west side, it is rendered impassable for mules, by a point of projecting rock. To avoid this, the pack trail which we followed turned up the mountain behind the bar, over which, and at a considerable height above the water, it afterwards ran. This portion of the route was dangerous even now, and four of the animals fell over; two mules breaking their backs, and a dragoon-horse being so much injured that he was afterwards abandoned. From this we descended to a considerable flat, known as "Orleans bar," crossing another branch of some size, the Ocketoh, at the mouth of which there was another dam, similar to that already mentioned, and apparently in every respect its equal. Formerly a ferry was kept here also, and several houses had been commenced. Attached to one of them, a fine piece of ground had been broken up and planted, from which we obtained a few tomatoes, a very welcome addition to our supper. The miners had, however, all left, either in consequence of difficulty with the Indians, or attracted by the reports from Shasté and Scott's valleys above. There were, in fact, at the time of our passing, but few on the lower Klamath; for although a good average could be made almost anywhere, it is always the case, that discoveries of a large amount at any particular point will drain the whole neighboring country. So far as we could learn, the bars on the entire course of the river, from the forks of Trinity up, will yield from five to eight dollars per day. A few spots produce more, but as these are of comparatively limited extent, and soon exhausted, the mining in this part of the gold region may be considered as simply a matter of high wages for hard work; a much more desirable state of things, where it is permanent, than the occasional "finds" of other placers.

We were here visited by a number of Indians from the neighboring villages, of which there are several on both sides of the river; the principal of which is the Tchai-noh, or Skeina, as commonly pronounced, also represented at the late council. Our camp was pitched opposite the ferry, the distance travelled being about twelve miles. Owing to the accident befalling the mules, the train did not arrive till late in the afternoon.

Saturday, Oct. 11*th.*—The march recommenced with the ascent of another mountain; the trail keeping along the ridge, at some distance from the river, and then down rolling hills to a small plat, about a mile above the entrance of Salmon river, a distance of about seven miles. Here we encamped, as it was the intention of the Agent to hold a council with the Indians of this neighborhood also.

Salmon river, or as it is called by the Indians, the "Quoratem," is the largest of the affluents of the Klamath, with the exception of the Trinity; and its general course is nearly parallel with that of the latter. It has two principal branches, which unite about fifteen miles from its mouth; the northernmost heading in the mountains, near Scott's river, the southern in the Trinity range. On both of these, mining operations have been extensively carried on, and they still continue productive. Trading posts are established at the forks, and at "Bestville," a mining village of some fifteen houses on the north fork, established by a trader of that name. Pack trails lead hence up both these streams to the head of Scott's river and the north fork of Trinity. The price of freight from the coast towns to these diggings, has at times been as high as two dollars a pound! The whole course of the Salmon is destitute of valleys, and some of the severest trials and sufferings which the miners have undergone, have been during their winter journeys through the high and broken mountain ranges which border it; many persons and whole trains of mules having perished in the snow.

The scenery at the mouth of the Salmon is exceedingly wild and picturesque. In the forks a high conical point of rock stands up, evidently once connected with the western bank of the Klamath; but which, broken off from the rest of the range by some convulsion, has now given passage to the river between; the strata of slate dipping abruptly to the south and west, showing the subsidence in that direction. Upon the Klamath, both above and below the junction, are Indian villages of some size, prettily situated on high platforms of rock projecting over the water, and shaded by groves of oaks and bay trees; while below, the river, compressed in its channel, rushes boiling over rapids. The accompanying sketches were taken, one from near our camp, representing the Tish-ráwa village, and the Klamath, below the entrance of the Salmon; the other from a mile higher up, showing the course of the Klamath through the mountains above the forks. The tree on the right hand of the latter represents one of the signal or "telegraph" trees of the Klamath Indians. These, which are among the most conspicuous features of the scenery upon the river, occur near every village. They are always selected upon the edge of some hill, visible to a considerable distance in either direction. Two trees, one trimmed in the form of a cross, the other with merely a tuft on the top, represent each lodge; and in time of danger or of death, a fire kindled beneath them, informs the neighboring tribes of the necessity or misfortune of its occupants.

Sunday, Oct. 12*th.*—We remained in camp for the purpose of treating with the rest of the bands belonging to this division of the Klamath. They do not seem to have any generic appellation for themselves, but apply the terms "Kahruk," up and "Youruk," down, to all who live above or below themselves, without discrimination, in the same manner that the others do "Peh-tsik," and "Poh-lik." The name Quoratem, that of one of the bands on the Salmon river, and frequently used for the river itself, appears to be a suitable one to designate the dialect of the middle section and those speaking it. The language extends on the Klamath from Bluff creek to a considerable distance above here; according to some reports, to the Eenah-met, or Clear creek, between thirty and forty miles further up, and on the Salmon to the principal forks. Higher on the main river, the prevailing language is the Shasté, and on the Salmon is said to be one of those used on the Trinity.

It was proposed to bring the whole of these into the reserve on the Trinity; leaving the Shasté, upper Klamath, and upper Trinity Indians, to fall within that intended to be established above; and a treaty, supplemented to that at Durkee's ferry, was accordingly concluded on that basis. Four bands, the Sche-woh, Oppe-yoh, Eh-qua-nek, and Eh-nek, were present, numbering in all probably 250 souls. The total number of the Quoratems may perhaps be set down at 600 or 700. They are very much scattered, some of their villages having been burnt. On the Salmon river, for instance, there are said to be now not more than fifty below the forks. No difference, except in language, is noticeable between these and the lower Indians; and intermarriages frequently take place among them.

Monday, Oct. 13*th.*—To-day our route lay along the bank, occasionally crossing small bottoms, for about six miles. Here the river made a large bend, to avoid which the trail passed over the mountain. Another, also much travelled by packers, crosses the Klamath about a mile beyond, and follows the east bank for sixteen or eighteen miles, when it recrosses and joins that on the west side. Continuing on, over high spurs, we descended again to the river, and found camp after a march of twelve miles. A portion of the road was dangerous, and one mule rolled down with his pack, but was recovered.

Tuesday, Oct. 14*th.*—The trail followed the same general southerly course as yesterday, gradually diverging from the river, which, five or six miles from camp, makes another bend to the eastward. Here we again ascended, passing over high mountain spurs, much of the route being rough and broken. Eight or nine miles from camp, a trail known as the "Serra-goin trail," now no longer used, comes in. It leaves the Klamath at a village of that name, a considerable distance below the mouth of the Trinity. A long descent brought us again to the river, which made a sharp turn round a spur from the other side. A considerable branch entered here on the west, which we crossed. The trail was excessively bad, running along the edge of the river, in short abrupt pitches, and over broken rocks. A fatigue party had been sent out in the morning to work the more dangerous places; but we were notwithstanding detained at one of these, known as the "Tent Rock," for an hour and a half. At low stages of the river however, as we afterwards learned, this can be passed through the water. From here we rode through scrub-oak thickets and low woods for two or three miles, and encamped on the river, the distance travelled being about fourteen miles. Much of the route was the worst we had passed over. We found very poor grass on the river bench where we halted, and the animals began to suffer, the feed having generally been poor since the start. The small benches, which occur at intervals on the river, are, for the most part, sterile, and being camps of necessity to the various pack trains, are easily exhausted. The mountains also bear evidence of a poorer soil in the diminished luxuriance of the forest, and the absence of those prairies which form so marked a feature south of the Trinity. The woods are much more open, and of a variety of timber; firs and pines being intermixed with various species of oak, the willow-leaved chestnut, the bay, and the madronia. Of the oaks there is a great variety; several of them evergreens, including the chestnut and live-oaks. The acorns, bay-nuts, and piñones, or nuts of the edible pine, all contribute to the subsistence of the Indians, who use them in various forms, roasted whole, or pounded into flour, and made into bread or porridge. Piles of the husks are to be seen round every lodge. We passed several small villages during the march, the inhabitants of which were of the poorer class, and appeared sickly. They complained too of hunger, though they had the usual store of acorns, and said that they were too weak to obtain fish or game. The principal complaint seemed to be a disease of the lungs. Blindness or sore eyes was universal among the aged, as in fact in almost every tribe we have visited. It struck me that there was a general aspect of decay among the Indians of this part of the Klamath, and we saw remains of numerous ruined lodges. These, however, are not of themselves conclusive evidence; as, although their habitations are generally permanent, they are accustomed to remove from a site where much sickness has occurred. Notwithstanding their poverty, they had the usual complement of wolfish-looking dogs, which came out of the lodges to look at us and went silently back. These fellows do not make much noise at any time, beyond a complaining yelp when kicked, unless they are engaged in one of their customary battles. Their voice, when they do bark, resembles that of the coyote. Their color is usually black and white, or brown and white. They have bushy tails and sharp noses, and in fighting, snap viciously, much after the manner of the wolf. The Indians, we were told, used them in hunting to drive deer to their snares, but I saw no instance of their being employed in this or any other way. They are most arrant and expert thieves, and it is said, carry their plunder to the lodge; a statement probably true only as regards what is not eatable. One peculiarity which they exhibit is inquisitiveness. They will follow and watch strangers with no other apparent motive than curiosity. I was often much amused at the expostulations of the squaws with the dogs, who were usually in the way or in worse mischief, and paid but momentary attention either to the cuffs they received, or to the exclamations of "chishé, chishé," by which they were accompanied. For the rest, they usually wear an expression of misanthropy and disgust at the world, which, as they are always half starved, is by no means singular. Unfortunately salmon blood does not kill them, as it does dogs of a more generous breed. The Indians, it may be remarked, do not appear to confer proper names on animals.

Wednesday, Oct. 15th.—The trail, for the first two miles, followed the river bank upon a steep slope, and sometimes at a considerable height. It being very narrow, there is some danger of sliding off. Here we lost a mule carrying the whole kitchen furniture of our pack train; as he did not fall, but deliberately jumped into the water, it seemed probable that, disgusted with life, he had chosen the surest way of terminating his sufferings, and taking revenge on his persecutors. Beyond, the river made another great bend to the eastward, the road again taking up the mountains. This is, if not the highest, one of the most elevated points passed on the route. Though steep, the ascent was pretty good; but the toil, added to poor food, began to tell upon the dragoon-horses, which were now every day in a worse plight. Indeed, for American horses, even in better condition than ours were when we started from Sonoma, these trails are too severe; and the smaller and lighter California horses, or still better, mules, are the only fit animals. We were two hours in an almost continuous ascent of the mountain; another, winding upon its summit; and a fourth, in rapid and steep descent to the river. Here we encamped at the mouth of Clear creek, a stream some ten yards wide. Good grass was found about half a mile down the river, on to which the horses were sent, the mules being driven across the creek.

From the summit to-day we had a fine view of the mountains which everywhere surround us, the vastness of which appeared as we rose towards their level. Heavy ranges lay between us and the coast, and divided us from the Salmon and Trinity; while to the north was seen the chain separating the waters of the Klamath and Rogue rivers. In clear weather, "Mount Shasté" itself is visible. Our march to-day was twelve miles.

A few Indians, the remnant of a larger band that once lived on our camp-ground, and now were settled on the creek near by, came in. One of them, with great delight, recognized a man in our party, and recalled himself to his recollection by signs. He had buried the Indian's child for him the year before, when sickness had prevented the father from doing it himself, and had hung beads over the grave. He evinced much gratitude, and a high sense of obligation for an Indian. These Indians complained of hunger, and seemed really destitute. As a temporary relief, by order of Colonel M'Kee, an ox was killed for them and the adjoining village.

Thursday, Oct. 16*th.* — Our departure was considerably delayed this morning, the mules having strayed in quest of grass. The last of the train did not, in fact, leave till nearly noon. Crossing the creek, we ascended a steep hill of some height; coming down to the river again about a mile above, at a place called "Wingate's bar," where we found a trading-house, and a party of miners. From this up, the number at work was greater. The amount made we presumed to be about half an ounce. Board was charged at twenty dollars per week. A little further on is another bar, known as the "Big Oak Flat," from a superb live-oak tree growing upon it, beyond which we again ascended, keeping along the brow of the mountain, on a very precarious path, and rising to the height of over a thousand feet from the river. A steep descent brought us to a deep hollow, only to climb another hill equally trying; and, after about four hours and a half of travel, we encamped, having made only eight miles. The animals were much exhausted, and a dragoon-horse and pack-mule were abandoned. Our camp was upon a level bottom, about a mile and a half long, and elevated fifteen or twenty feet above the river; sandy, but with better grass than we had met since leaving the ferry. Opposite us, a large creek entered, upon which there was also some level land.

During the marches of yesterday and to-day, we noticed, for the first time, a number of sugar-pines. This tree, which grows only on the mountains, resembles generally the large-coned pine, except that its bark is smoother. The cones are almost equally large, and the leaves long and coarse. The sugar is found exuding, in rough hard lumps, from the interior, but only where the tree has been partially burned, and is said not to follow the axe; though this may perhaps be questioned. Its color is an opaque white, its taste agreeable, partaking very slightly of a resinous flavor, and it is often used by mountaineers to sweeten their coffee. It is a very active purgative when dissolved in cold water, and much medicinal virtue is ascribed to it. The sugar found nearest the bark is of a darker color, and more vitreous in appearance, and is reputed to possess these properties in a greater degree than that taken from towards the heart. Some that was found had a peculiar sub-acid taste. While adhering to the tree, we were told, it withstands the changes of the weather; but after being separated from it, rapidly absorbs moisture, and falls to pieces. In some parts of the mountains, where the trees are numerous, a man can gather as much as five pounds a day. The piñon, or nut of this species, is considered better even than that of the nut-pine. The tree produces pitch, in addition, as abundantly as other kinds.

Friday, Oct. 17*th.*—After our arrival in camp yesterday, it was found that a mule carrying bedding had strayed into the woods; and to-day it was arranged that Major Wessells with the command should move on, while the Agent's party waited to seek for it. Mr. Kelsey and Colonel Sarshel Woods were at the same time sent forward to Scott's valley to call in the Indians. The mule was found by the miners at Wingate's bar, and in the course of the day was brought in. Two gentlemen, Messrs. T. J. Roach and W. J. Stevens, came down to-day from "Murderer's bar," a short distance above, where they had been located for some time past. They, with others of their party, had prospected extensively in the neighborhood, and communicated much information respecting the country. The creek opposite our camp, called by the Indians the Yoteh, we learned from them heads in the mountains between the north fork of Salmon and Scott's river, and is of considerable length. Mr. Roach and Mr. Charles M'Dermit had recently also ascended the "Batinko," or Indian creek, a branch emptying from the west, two or three miles above, and heading in the Sis-kiu mountains, between the Klamath and Rogue's river. From thence they crossed to the head of Cañon creek, which runs into a larger stream, now called Illinois river. Of this last there has been much dispute; some supposing it to be a distinct river, emptying into the Pacific near the Oregon line. The better opinion, however, seems to be that it is a fork of Rogue's river, which it enters ten or twelve miles from its mouth. Upon it is a large and fertile valley. The country upon Rogue's river itself, is spoken of with great praise, by all who have seen it, as containing fine farming valleys. The Indians of the Illinois valley are said to speak the language of this part of the Klamath (the Shasté), and not that of Rogue's river. We were further informed that Joe, the head chief of the Rogue's river Indians, the same with whom Major Kearney had his contest during the past summer, and who is now living in peace with the whites, at the ferry on the Oregon trail, claims the Shasté tribes as properly his subjects, although they yield him no allegiance. Be this as it may, the fact of a pretty intimate connection between the Indians on the upper part of both rivers, is clear. We heard of one custom prevailing in the Illinois valley, which is different from the practice here: that of burning the bodies of those killed in battle, instead of burying them, as they do in cases of natural death.

Saturday, Oct. 18*th.* — Our trail ran through oak thickets for a couple of miles, to "Happy camp," as the station at Murderer's bar is called. Some seventy persons make this their head-quarters; a portion of them being, however, almost always absent, either in packing, or mining, and prospecting, at a distance. They were, at this time, living in tents, but preparations were making to erect log-houses for the winter.

The amount averaged a day, was about six cents to the bucket of 20 to 25 lbs.; but it has been much higher. This, however, is considered a good paying rate. The miners on this part of the Klamath have not only been led away by brilliant reports from other parts, but to some extent discouraged by the murders and robberies of the Indians, which have rendered mining in small parties dangerous. The bar itself takes its name from the killing of three men, by the people living on the creek opposite our last night's camp. Lately, however, the greater part of the Indians have themselves disappeared, some of their ranches having been burnt by the whites, and it is supposed have moved either to the valleys above, or to that on the Illinois river. Their number between Clear creek and the mouth of the Shasté, does not appear to have been great, and judging from the number and size of the ranches, is probably not now over 300 or 400. On the creeks there are a few more, but not many at any distance from the Klamath, except in Scott's and Shasté valleys. Of the numbers above the mouth of the Shasté, and extending up to the foot of the Cascade range, we had no definite information. The name of Shasté may perhaps be found applicable to the whole tribe extending from Clear creek up; as, with perhaps some trifling variation, the same language appears to prevail as in the valley of that name.

The bottom at Murderer's bar is one of the largest on the whole Klamath, being about two miles in length, and containing some little arable land. Good pasturage can also be obtained on the hills around. Indian creek, which has been already mentioned, enters the Klamath just above the station.

Leaving here, we rode up the bottom for a couple of miles, and thence commenced an ascent over wooded hills to a high mountain, from the summit of which we had an extensive view. "Mount Shasté" was, however, not visible, nor had the weather been clear enough at any time as yet, to permit us to see it. The Klamath above Murderer's bar runs through a deep cañon, making a great bend to the south; its general course being here more westerly than southerly. It was seen at times from the mountain, much contracted by its narrow channel; but above, it again widened out apparently to its full volume, at the junction of the Trinity. So much of its water is in fact absorbed by the soil, or carried off by evaporation during its tortuous course, that it preserves a very uniform size, at least from the mouth of Scott's river down. A very steep descent from the mountain top brought us again to its banks, and we encamped where Major Wessells had stopped the night before, having made about nine miles.

The pine, which till recently has formed no feature in the landscape, was now common; at least three distinct kinds being seen — the yellow or pitch-pine, the sugar-pine, and the big-cone. The true nut-pine was not noticed. Cedars of the large white-barked species, common in Oregon, were also frequent. The leaves of the deciduous trees were fast falling, and the maple which mingled with the growth in the damp bottoms had assumed a brilliant yellow; almost the only approach to the gorgeous autumnal hues of the Atlantic that here meets the eye of the traveller.

Sunday, Oct. 29th.—About a mile beyond our camp we crossed a large brook or creek, which was afterwards fixed upon as part of the boundary of the "reservation," and as such is referred to in the treaty made at Scott's valley. We had no high points to pass to-day, the trail running along the river upon narrow benches. It was, however, rugged, and broken by ledges of slate, a part of it being excessively bad. About eight miles of travel brought us to what is known as the "Big Bottom," a tract covering a few miles square, which forms the nearest approach to a valley that we had seen upon the Klamath. Here is the usual trail for packers bound to Scott's and Shaste valleys, and a ferry or crossing to the eastern shore; the trail on the left bank being a dangerous one. It is kept by Indians, who pass goods in canoes, the animals swimming. Major Wessells had halted here the preceding night, expecting us to join him, and was to make but a short march beyond. As it would, however, take some time to cross the baggage, and there was fine grass in the bottom, we remained over. The mules were left on the north bank for the night, and we camped on the other side.

There were two Indian villages near this spot, but the lodges had been burnt by the whites. Messrs. Kelsey and Woods had visited them, and invited them to the council to be held in Scott's valley; but the men with a few exceptions had run off to the mountains on the approach of the command, leaving their families behind. These people were in a great state of destitution. Several of the early miners had been murdered in this neighborhood, and much property stolen, in revenge for which their successors had destroyed the lodges and killed some of the men. Of late they had been more peaceably disposed, but were still regarded with suspicion, having in their possession a few stolen animals and fire-arms. Those that we saw were evidently of the lowest caste, a little boy of nine or ten years of age being the solitary and remarkable exception. His features were regular, and even beautiful. These Indians keep up a constant intercourse with Rogue's river, whither it is probable many of them have recently gone. From many circumstances, it would appear that their place of residence, being the centre through which numerous trails led, has been a sort of common ground; the Alsatia of the neighboring country. We found here a young Indian, who spoke a few words of the Oregon jargon, and through him were enabled to communicate a little with the rest. By his means I collected enough of the language to ascertain its similarity to the Shasté, and also a partial vocabulary of his own tongue, which I presume to be one of the Rogue's river languages. His proper home he could not be made to tell; for although intelligent enough generally, he became very stupid when questioned as to where he belonged.

The bottom here seemed to be from two to three miles in length, and about a mile wide; a portion of it affording good pasture, but none apparently fit for agriculture. Two creeks enter the Klamath here; one from the south-east, at our camp; the other from the north-east, a mile above. It is along the latter that the Rogue's river trail passes. A miner whom we found here informed us that he had crossed over by it to that stream.

Monday, Oct. 30*th.*—The morning broke with a heavy fog, which, however, cleared off about eight o'clock. The sky of this region, it may be remarked, is, when unobscured, of a blue as pure and deep as that even of the Rocky Mountains.

The trail during the day followed the river bank. It was exceedingly rocky, and much obstructed with brushwood. We made only about ten miles, passing the spot where the command had encamped about a mile and a half. The grass was very poor, but we were informed that none could be found elsewhere, within the distance which we could drive. In camping on the Klamath, it is necessary to seek the neighborhood of the brooks, especially at this season; as the water, never pure, is now offensive from the number of dead salmon. Fortunately springs and small streams are abundant, and of the finest quality. We passed to-day only one Indian village, a small one, and that deserted; but saw a number of the people upon a hill beyond the river, and sent a messenger, who, with some difficulty, brought them to a talk, and invited them to come in. Large heaps of the shells of a species of Unio lay along the banks of the river, at different places. These form a favorite article of food with the Indians, who boil them in baskets by means of hot stones.

The approach of winter was now indicated by the appearance of numbers of ducks in the river, and by flocks of the banded-tailed pigeon, on their way to the south. Except the omnipresent raven and fish crow, we have hitherto seen but few birds in this whole region; a bald eagle on the look-out for salmon, a blue heron starting with dissonant scream from his perch on a dead fir tree, a few hawks and jays, and now and then a sparrow, being all.

The prevailing rock is now the white granite, resembling that of New Hampshire, which forms many of the highest peaks, particularly those at the head of Salmon and Scott's rivers. The bed-rock of the Klamath is, however, still dark blue slate, containing veins and seams of quartz. Of this the strata are everywhere displaced and broken up. A coarse sandstone or conglomerate of volcanic formation occurs. Without attempting to give any scientific description of this region, it may not be unimportant to mention that the blue slate is continuous along the whole route followed. Talcose and mica slates and serpentine are likewise in place; the last in greatest abundance, and covering the greatest extent. Where gold is found in the original rock, it seems to be always in the quartz veins of the blue slate; and these are more abundantly interposed farther up, than in the lower district. Thus the gold of the upper Klamath is much coarser than that found below the Salmon. Where it exists in the soil, independent of the gravelly bars of the rivers, it is most frequent in a reddish earth, as in the dry diggings in Shasté valley, and elsewhere. It is, however, impossible to account for the occurrence of large deposits in particular localities, while in others, seemingly as favorable, it is nearly or altogether absent.

Tuesday, Oct. 21st.—Passing over a point of mountain, we reached Scott's river, about a mile and a half from camp. This, which, next to the Shasté, is the largest of the upper forks of the Klamath, is here about fifteen yards wide, running through a narrow mountain gap, and over a bed filled with large boulders. Its sources are in the immediate neighborhood of the Trinity and the Salmon, and after their junction its general course is from south-west to north-east. Like all other mountain streams, its volume of water fluctuates greatly with the season; the amount brought down in winter being very considerable, while in the summer and fall it is fordable almost everywhere. It was formerly a well-known trapping ground of the Hudson's Bay Company, by whom it was called Beaver river. Its present name was given it from that of a miner who first developed its mineral wealth. Our trail now left the Klamath, and followed up this branch. Scott's river is the most thoroughly explored of all the gold-producing streams of northern California, and the extent of the works upon it is astonishing, even to those acquainted with the energy with which mining operations have been carried on. Between the mouth and the upper end of Scott's bar, three or four miles above, almost the whole river has been turned from its bed, and carried through canals, regularly built, with solid stone or log embankments, several feet in height and thickness. Many of these are from 100 to 200 yards in length. They were constructed by companies consisting usually of from ten to twenty persons; and we were informed, that at a court or convention of delegates, held in July to decide upon a contested claim, thirty-two companies were represented. The number of persons at work in the dams at the time of our passing, was small, certainly not exceeding a hundred; most of the miners having, at least temporarily, abandoned them. We made careful inquiries as to the productiveness of these enterprises, and were satisfied that, like most operations of the kind attempted elsewhere, they had been losing ones. Although very considerable sums had in some cases been taken out by single companies, and the total amount must have been very great, the average daily earnings for the whole working time was comparatively inconsiderable. It was variously estimated at from two to five dollars; the lowest being probably nearest the truth. Those who remained were doing better than this, the different dams yielding to the present workers from five dollars to an ounce a day. The gold was chiefly found in crevices of the bed-rock, and was very coarse. One piece was said to have weighed twelve, and another, found in the bank, fifteen pounds troy. Besides the dams, other washings were carried on with success, and the ground in front of the town of "Scott's bar" was literally riddled with what are called "coyote diggings."

This mining town contains some fifty houses, and, when we passed, numbered perhaps 150 inhabitants. Through the summer, however, the population had been far greater. In September, 600 votes were polled in the two precincts of Scott's bar and the mouth of the river; and even this was only a partial representation. The packing from this place is chiefly carried on from Reading's springs, or, as it is now called, "Shasté city," near Clear creek, in the Sacramento valley; the traders being, for the most part, their own packers. The price of freight was at this time twenty-five cents a pound, and the time taken in the journey seven or eight days. Flour was selling at thirty-five, and pork at fifty cents; but during the year they had been respectively as high as $1.50 and $2.25, and as low as twenty and twenty-five cents. We saw here a fair supply of other commodities used by miners. Fluctuations in the prices of provisions, goods, and transportation, are constant at all these places; depending in some measure upon the state of the trails, as regards supply, and upon the rush of buyers for the time being, as to demand.

Leaving the town, and following the right bank of the river for two or three miles, over a very broken trail, we again crossed and passed the high mountain on the left, to avoid a cañon which extends from here to the valley. The descent, though considerable, was gradual, and the trail good, in contrast with the execrable path from our camp to its foot. An hour and a half brought us to the top, and we then caught a glimpse of the valley of Scott's river below us, with the mountains beyond, and the snowy peak of Shasté lying to the south-east, towering above all. The view was a beautiful one, and not the less so, from its being the first for many a weary day's travel, in which the habitations of civilized man seemed not out of place. A rapid descent led us down to the plain, and to the log-house of a settler, and here we saw another unwonted sight, an ox-wagon laden with hay. Again crossing the river, here rippling gently over a bed of sand and gravel, we reached Major Wessells's camp, pitched about a mile beyond, on a small branch entering from the south, at about half past three in the afternoon, our march being about fifteen miles.

Wednesday, Oct. 22d. — Thin ice formed in our buckets this morning, but the weather continued to be fine. To-day we rode across the valley to a ranch on the eastern side, a distance of about eight miles, stopping on our way to ascend a hill from which we had a good view of a portion of it.

Scott's valley is, with the exception of Shasté, the largest either on the Klamath, or any of its tributaries; and is the only one in which any considerable quantity of good soil is to be found. Its extreme length is, however, not more than twenty-five or thirty miles, and its width, at the northern end, from eight to ten, diminishing towards its head to a narrow strip. Its total area does not much exceed one hundred square miles. By far the greater part of this, even, is suited only to pasturage, being too dry and gravelly for cultivation. Tracts of a better quality are nevertheless found chiefly upon the river, and the two or three small branches which continue to flow during the dry season; these seem well suited to the growth of potatoes and other vegetables, as well as small grain. The richest is in the neighborhood of old beaver-dams, and, by proper care, would become exceedingly productive. Timber is abundant on the hills on the western or northern sides; consisting of pine, of a quality not inferior to that of the Atlantic States. The slopes on the eastern side are covered with fine bunch-grass, affording excellent and most abundant pasturage. Salmon ascend the river in large numbers, before the waters subside in the spring. In the rainy season, travel in the valley is exceedingly difficult, and parts of it are even covered with water. Eight or ten houses, mostly small log buildings, had been put up at the northern end, and preparations were making for ranching animals on a pretty extensive scale. We found a good deal of hay mowed and stacked either for feeding at the corrals or transportation to Scott's bar, whither it is carried on mules. The price there was twenty-five cents a pound! The bunch-grass becomes a natural hay without cutting, and retains all its nutritive qualities. Animals, with any reasonable degree of work, will keep fat on it throughout the year. A second growth always springs up after the commencement of the rainy season. Wild clover abounds, also, in the valley. But little snow is said to fall here, and that does not remain long.

Thursday, Oct. 23d.—Mr. Kelsey returned last evening from Shasté valley, whither he had gone to invite the Indians. He found great difficulty in persuading them of the peaceful intentions of the expedition; as they had taken up the idea that the escort was a war party sent against them. Some of them, however, accompanied him a part of the way to satisfy themselves, but still lingered behind. Messengers sent to the neighboring lodges reported that the men had gone to the mountains to hunt. A few were finally collected, and the object of the Agent in visiting their country was explained to them through an Oregon Indian named "Swill," who lived with the tribe, and spoke their language. This man was afterwards dispatched with Mr. Abel, one of the interpreters, to make another effort to assemble the Shasté tribes, and Indian runners were sent to the Klamath and the upper lodges of Scott's river.

Several gentlemen from the neighborhood, among others, Major Theodore F. Rowe, Mr. Charles M'Dermit, Mr. Roach, and Dr. M'Kinney, visited our camp to-day, and were requested to remain for the purpose of giving information and advice regarding arrangements with the Indians. Col. M'Kee, further in view of the importance of rendering the treaty satisfactory to the miners and settlers, determined to invite them to be present from the different placers, either in person or by delegation, and notes to that effect were despatched both to Shasté, Butte city, and Scott's bar.

It had become evident immediately on our arrival, that more serious obstacles would interpose to a pacific arrangement with the Indians of this district, than at either of those before visited. On the one hand, the number of all the tribes intended to be included, was very large, being variously estimated at from four to six thousand; and their disposition was decidedly hostile to the whites, against whom they had several grounds of complaint; some of them more or less just. The great influx of miners had crowded them from their fisheries and hunting-grounds, and the commencement of permanent settlements threatened to abridge their movements still more. Many of their villages had been burned and their people shot; generally, it is true, in retaliation for murders or robberies, but in some instances no doubt wantonly; the result in either case being the same in rendering their families destitute and stimulating their desire for revenge. Animals stolen from others and sold to them had been seized, and not least, their women had been occasionally taken away. On the other side, a number of whites had been killed; some under circumstances of atrocious barbarity. Several whole trains had been plundered, reducing their owners to actual ruin; and a large amount of property stolen from time to time, in blankets, tools, provisions, and animals, upon which the miners depended for their subsistence. The number of mules and horses, and the quantity of fire-arms in their possession furnished, to some extent, proofs of the Indian outrages. To such a degree had the feeling of exasperation risen on the part of the whites, that they had determined on the setting in of winter to wage a war of extermination against the Indians on the upper Klamath and its tributaries generally. Two or three men were not considered as safe anywhere; and as the mode in which mining is carried on here involved the scattering of detached parties or individuals through the hills, they conceived the only way of protecting themselves would be to extirpate or drive off the enemy altogether. Such was the state of things when the Agent arrived. Supposing, however, that a treaty of peace could be effected which the majority of the whites and Indians would respect, there was great danger that it might be broken by outlaws of one race or another, whose conduct was beyond control; and that as discrimination is out of the question in such cases, a renewal of the strife would follow, with more violence than before. Another very serious difficulty remained. To fix upon a reserve, into which the Indians could be collected where they could be placed under the government of suitable officers; where game and fish would be abundant, and a sufficient tract of agricultural country could afford the means of civilization and partial support, and where, at the same time, the interests of the whites would not tempt encroachment, seemed to be next to impossible. The removal of the Indians beyond the limits of the State was clearly so; for Oregon had its own savage population, and the introduction of others was not only beyond the authority of the Agent, but would have been resisted to the knife. The Territory of Utah furnished no suitable home for them, or means of maintenance, and the intervening country embraced in Shasté county had already a larger number than the safety of the whites rendered desirable. The only bodies of level land in their own country were known to be the valleys of Scott's and Shasté rivers, and the amount of arable soil in either of them was comparatively small; far less than would suffice for a considerable number of permanent white settlers. A very considerable part of this was already taken up in claims, and to some extent improved. Further, it was impossible to find any district whatever, in which gold did not exist, or where miners were not carrying on their occupation. Under all these circumstances, the only possible method of accomplishing the proposed object, seemed to be for the Agent to invite the concert of the citizens themselves, and after obtaining the best information in his power, and hearing the suggestions and objections offered, to adopt such a course in reference to the reservation, as, with the least inconvenience to the whites, should furnish a refuge for the Indians. Into this it was proposed to collect them as speedily as possible, in order to prevent further collisions.

Friday, Oct. 24th.—Major Wessells having concluded to return from here by the way of Reading's springs and the Sacramento valley, started this morning; the reduced condition of his horses rendering it important to him to reach quarters before the rains set in; which, from the lateness of the season, might now be expected at any time. The route was up the valley, and following a branch of the north fork over the mountains to Trinity river, thence down nearly to Weaver-town, crossing to the head of Clear creek, and down that stream to the springs.

Mr. Kelsey and myself, accompanied by Colonel Woods and Mr. Marshall, left to examine the valley, following the branch on which the camp is situated to its head, and thence turning eastward towards the river. About four miles up, we stopped to examine a quartz vein in the hills to the left, which a company had opened, and were preparing to work. The quartz, which was quite solid, lay a few feet beneath the surface, under a bed of broken slate, dipping to the east under the hill. The gold was visible only in particular specimens; but was said to pervade the whole mass. No correct estimate could be formed of its productiveness, from the very imperfect trials made; but it was said to yield from five to forty cents to the pound of ore. The rock where the metal is not seen by the eye is, nevertheless, often as valuable, and yields more uniformly than the other. We found some good land in the little valley of a creek near by, which is about five miles long, and from half a mile to a mile wide. Crossing some low hills to the main valley, we followed the western side to the foot of a mountain, which afterwards was made one of the land-marks of the reserve, by the name of "Seino's hill." This part of the valley is little more than a pine barren, the land being gravelly, and cut up with arroyas from the mountains. Here Colonel Woods and Mr. Marshall left us, and continued up. Six or eight miles above, they met a considerable creek, entering from the south-west, which they followed up. This stream forked three miles above; and upon one of the branches they found small prairies. Both headed in the high granite peaks separating the Salmon from Scott's river; Mr. Kelsey and myself struck across the valley to the main stream. We had hitherto been accompanied by an Indian runner, who was sent out with invitations to some of the more distant villages. This man had kept our mules in a brisk trot during almost the whole distance, and he left us in the same long swinging walk which he had preserved from the first, apparently as fresh as when he started.

In crossing the valley we found ourselves at first entangled in the sloughs made by old beaver-dams, of which there seemed to be no end. Beyond these lay the main prairie, which afforded fine grazing; and here and there, in places upon the river, land well suited for cultivation, but in tracts comparatively limited. Considerable grass had here been cut and stacked for the use of the ranches. We followed the river down to camp, which we reached about dark.

Sunday, Oct. 26th.—Accompanied by Mr. Mulkey, one of our visitors, I rode to Shasté Butte city, a distance of about twenty-five miles from camp. This, it should be mentioned, is not to be confounded with Shasté city, or Reading's springs, near the junction of Clear creek and the Sacramento. Our route lay up narrow spurs of the valley, extending to the dividing ridge between the waters of the two streams, and crossing over descended by another. The arroyas in these were dry, water occurring only here and there in them. In both, but more particularly on the Shasté side, numbers of miners had been at work, and large quantities of earth were thrown up ready for washing when the rains should come on. These were almost all "surface diggings;" the gold being found very near the top of the soil, and most abundantly in the "gulches," or beds of small water-courses. The earth was of a reddish color, and generally free from stones of any size; though small fragments of quartz were interposed throughout. The hills here were well timbered; and I noticed another variety of pine, more nearly resembling the eastern white pine than those before seen. To-day being Sunday, but few of the miners were at work in the diggings; most of them were either engaged in cleaning up, or gone into town.

Shasté Butte city, as it is called, is a place of some 300 houses, built on two streets in the form of an L, and at this time numbered, including the immediate vicinity, about 1000 souls. It has sprung into existence since May last, in consequence of the rich diggings discovered here. It is situated, not on the river, but three or four miles from it, on a small creek, called by the Indians the Koostah, running into the Shasté from the west side some eight miles above its mouth. The diggings here are not merely in the hills, but in the valley itself, immediately round the town, and the ground was literally rooted up for many acres in extent;—large heaps of dirt having been collected, in anticipation of a supply of water. This is expected to yield ten cents a bucket on the average. We found in the town a plentiful supply of provisions, and in considerable variety; game being abundant, and beef, butter, and vegetables regularly supplied from Oregon. The price of board was three dollars a day, without bed, and a dollar for horses or mules standing at hay in a yard. The restaurants were fitted up in approach to San Francisco style; and in the evenings, music invited the lovers of liquor and of monté.

The next morning, accompanied by Mr. Moses Dusenbury, of Peoria, Illinois, whom I met here, I rode to the top of a range of hills about four miles distant, for the purpose of obtaining a view of the country. The prospect here was very extensive, commanding the northern and eastern portions of the plain, and extending south-easterly, to Mount Shasté, which was distant about thirty miles. In this direction, however, it was intercepted by the ranges of hills which break the level of the valley. Mount Shasté, or, as it is usually called, the "Shasté Butte," is not situated upon any connected chain, but rises by itself near the connecting point of several; the head-waters of the Sacramento separating it from the great range bounding the western side of its valley, and from the peaks which form the source of the Trinity. It is this mountain, and not Mount Pitt, as was supposed by Mr. Greenhow, which was designated as Mount Jackson by the sponsors of the "President's Range;" and it is the same as the Rogers' Peak of Smith. By the Shasté Indians it is called Wy-e-kah. Its height is stated to be 14,300 feet. In form, it possesses singular beauty; far surpassing any of its Oregon sisters, and rising thus alone from the plain, is seen to the utmost advantage. The crater stands out from its western side in the form of a truncated cone. From the same point of view we could see Mount Pitt, or more properly Pitt mountain, so called from the traps formerly dug near it, by the Indians; and the noted land-marks of the Oregon trail, the "Pilot Knob," on the Siskire range to the north, and the "Black or Little Butte," to the south. Pitt mountain is the same as Mount Madison, and apparently as Mount Simpson of other geographers.

Shasté valley is of irregular shape, but its extent may be stated, in general terms, as thirty-five miles in length, by an average width of eight; though there are some points where it is much wider. It extends from the foot of the Butte in a north-westerly direction, to the cañon through which the river enters the Klamath. That portion lying toward the mountain is occupied by fine forests, and is represented as sterile and rocky. Through the centre runs a singular range of mounds or buttes, rising separately from the general level, and of every conceivable form and size; among which are said to be tracts covered with an alkaline deposit, similar to those found on the North Platte, and the Sweetwater. The western side of the valley is an extensive plain, covered with a fine growth of bunch-grass, but barren, and destitute of water or wood. The same remark applies both to the ranges of hills scattered through it, and to those on its sides. The grass being at this time ripe, gave them, at a distance, exactly the appearance of ridges of blown sand.

Shasté river, the highest considerable tributary of the Klamath, rises, not in the Butte, but considerably to the north of it, in the extensive plains beyond the low range bounding the valley to the east, through which it has found a way. It has several branches, some of considerable length, but all losing themselves in the soil during the dry season. The river itself, wandering through arid plains, becomes tepid and unfit for use. Through the whole extent of the valley, we could not learn that any lands fit for agriculture existed, even did its climate permit; for at this great elevation frost occurs during almost every month in the year. As a pasturing district, the want of water is the only drawback; for although snow falls occasionally in winter, it does not remain long. Returning to town, we started in the afternoon on our return, and camped with some miners in the hills.

Tuesday, Oct. 28th.—On reaching camp, we found delegations from Shasté Butte city, and Scott's bar, present, together with other citizens from different parts of the valley, amounting in all to forty or fifty. But few Indians had as yet arrived, but towards evening the chiefs of the Shasté and Scott's river tribes, with some of the head men, came in. We learned from every quarter, that apprehensions existed that the object of assembling them was to kill the whole together; and this fear had prevented the chief of the Klamaths from coming. This man was the most important of all, from the number under his control, and his influence with the others. He had sent his son, a young man of seventeen or eighteen, to observe what was passing. A preliminary talk was held this evening, with those present, through the Indian "Swill."

At night we had a very beautiful aurora, first visible towards the north-east, and nearly in the direction of the town. It was of a rose color, and the light so brilliant that for some time we supposed Shasté Butte city to be on fire.

Wednesday, Oct. 29th.—Intelligence arrived of further depredations by the Pitt river Indians. That tribe, inhabiting a country difficult to penetrate, has long been considered as the worst of those of northern California. Their hostility to the whites has been unremitting; and their incursions being planned with great ingenuity and executed with daring and celerity, they have always been the terror of those pursuing the northern trails. Lately they had extended them into the mining region of Shasté and the Klamath. It has been supposed, and apparently with reason, that a number of white outlaws are connected with them, who furnish information and share the plunder. Some weeks before our arrival, a party had started from the Shasté to retake a large band of animals recently driven off; and as no tidings were heard from them, it was believed that they had been killed. Since then, several corrals, where mules and horses were ranched by the miners, had been robbed; and on one occasion forty were taken. Horse and mule stealing, both by Indians and whites, is, in fact, the most common, and one of the most serious crimes of the mining region; and as men's lives are constantly dependent upon their animals, the frequency of these occurrences creates great disquiet.

Another conference with the Indians took place to-day, when the subject was fully entered into. They professed a willingness to divide their country with the whites, and to receive the Trinity and Klamath tribes into the reserve. They promised to desist from all hostilities, provided they were not molested in the first place. It was found impossible, at present, to effect anything with the Trinity Indians, as their distance and wild habits would prevent access to them in season; but the son of the head Klamath chief, "Ishack," was despatched after his father; first receiving the present of a blanket, and being provided with a safe conduct. Until he should return the council was adjourned.

In regard to the location and limits of a reserve, no conclusion could be arrived at, on consultation with the citizens present; and it was seen that private interests would interfere with any selection. Claimants, or squatters, had been rapidly occupying what tillable land existed in the country; and every mountain and stream seemed liable to the objection of producing gold. On the other hand, it was most essential to the observance of a treaty, that, if possible, it should be rendered generally satisfactory. All saw the justice of leaving to the Indians the means of support, and the opportunity of improving their condition; and all saw likewise the importance of secluding them, so that the occupations of the miners could be elsewhere pursued with safety; but there was no place known where the interests of some would not be affected. Suggestions were made of the small valleys upon the creeks emptying into the Klamath from the north; but these were clearly insufficient in extent, even if otherwise suitable; and an insurmountable obstacle presented itself in this locality. The line between Oregon and California had never been run; nor was the position of any land-mark known with certainty; but it was very certain that the 42° parallel could not lie far enough north of the Klamath to afford the necessary country. Under these circumstances, it was determined to make a further examination of Scott's and Shasté valleys, and the intermediate country, although little more information could be hoped for than that previously collected; and Messrs. Charles M'Dermit and Alva Boles were chosen by the citizens to accompany Mr. Kelsey, Colonel Woods, and myself, for that purpose, detailed by Colonel M'Kee. The time allowed us was, unfortunately, limited; but for this there was no remedy.

Thursday, Oct. 30*th.*—A hard rain fell during the night, and our departure was delayed until eleven o'clock, when it partially cleared off, but the day continued cloudy.

We followed the west side of the valley up as far as Seino's hill, and thence struck diagonally across it. Its width was here contracted to five or six miles. The soil on the river was good, and on the eastern side consisted of a light sandy loam, well adapted to potatoes and other roots. Farther up, the valley became still narrower, the land continuing good, but much broken by sloughs formed by the beaver-dams. This animal appears, since the discontinuance of trapping, to be again multiplying throughout the country. We crossed back and forth several times, and towards dark camped nearly opposite the creek explored by Colonel Woods some days previous.

Friday, Oct. 31st.—We followed the course of the river for a couple of hours, the valley gradually becoming narrower and more broken and rocky. At its head the two principal branches, generally designated as the North and South Forks, unite at the foot of a high peak. The trail to Salmon river follows the latter; that to Trinity, one part of the former. On the south fork, about a mile and a half up, there is another quartz vein from which ore had been taken out. We had no time to visit it, but a number of specimens were shown us. The gold was not visible, and we did not learn the amount it yielded. About the same distance farther on, washings also occur. A trading shanty had been established at the forks, and we met several miners here. No diggings, it may be mentioned, are carried on in the valley itself, nor any in the hills around, excepting those already mentioned, at the northern end. It is, however, probable that in the high granite mountains lying between its head and the waters of Salmon river, gold will be found in numerous veins of the quartz, which appears to be abundant.

As regards the principal object of our journey, the agricultural capacity of the valley, its total extent is about one hundred square miles; of which not more than fifteen, or at farthest twenty, are of good tillable land, and of this a full half lies towards the southern end. A further portion might perhaps be rendered so by irrigation, but the only source from which water could be drawn would be the river.

We took the north fork, which turns sharply round the base of the eastern range. Between two and three miles above the junction, this again branches; the Trinity trail running up the right-hand branch. Our route lay up the left, on which there is a valley which we wished to examine. The course of this is from the north, and it runs almost exactly parallel to the main river, but in an opposite direction. The valley is nine or ten miles long, its width nowhere exceeding one. The soil is barren, and we found water but in one or two pools, the stream sinking into the ground. Grass was abundant, both in the bottom, and on the hills on either side. There was but little wood, and that pine. Reaching the head of the valley, we ascended the mountains to our right, and found ourselves at the top of a high ridge in turning to the northward and eastward; on the other side of which headed a corresponding branch, running into the lower end of the valley. Before us, at a distance of about three miles, stood the "Sheep-rock," a very remarkable point, which is visible for many miles around. We had supposed this to be on the dividing ridge between the waters of Scott's and Shasté rivers, but found it to lie within those of the former. It is said to be one of only three places, where the big-horn, or mountain sheep, is at present found, west of the Sierra Nevada. Another is a precipitous crag upon the Sacramento range, and the third, a mountain visible to the west of the Klamath, from some of the high points of view on the trail, and situated probably on the sources of Smith's river. To our great regret, we had no time to visit the rock and hunt them. Turning to the right, we followed the crest of the ridge, ascending to one of the highest points of the mountains between the two valleys. From here, a superb view opened of the great chains around us; the heads of the Sacramento, the Trinity, and the Salmon, extending from south-east to south-west, and there dividing the Klamath from the coast, and from the waters of Rogue's river, on the west and north; while to the east, the Shasté peak loomed up, a slender horizontal cloud resting upon its summit. To the north-east, a wide gap was visible, between the Cascade range of Oregon, and its continuation in the Sierra Nevada, through which the Klamath emerges from the lesser Klamath lake. We had, however, but short time to spend in admiration, for the sun was near setting, and it was necessary to seek camp. Seeing no hope of obtaining water, without descending into the cañon on our left, we finally halted for the night, upon the top, under the cover of a clump of red cedars. These trees, which, from the size of their gnarled trunks, must have been of enormous age, were not more than from twelve to fifteen feet high, and bore evidence of their long conflicts with wind and snow. From the dead limbs around, we made a fire that gleamed far and wide over the mountains; and having, with much pains, levelled a spot large enough to lie upon without rolling down the side, tied up our mules, and went, not exactly to bed, but to sleep.

Saturday, Nov. 1st.—We started at day-break, winding along the summit of the ridge in a north-easterly direction, enjoying the effects of a glorious sunrise upon the peak. It was not until after ten o'clock that we found water, and then only in a small hole. It sufficed, however, for our own breakfast, and to refresh our thirsty mules, after nearly twenty-four hours' abstinence. This done, we pushed down the mountain, starting, as we rode along, troops of black-tailed deer, which, after a stare at the unusual intruders, bounded away into the woods. About two o'clock we reached a narrow arm of the valley, where also we found a pool of water. The soil here, as it had been, in fact, on the mountains we had passed over, had the strongest appearances of yielding gold; being strewed with small fragments of rotten quartz, slate, and volcanic rock. The slate observed in place, on the summit, everywhere contained thin seams of quartz, and was often curled, as if by the action of fire. No prospecting seemed to have been attempted, probably on account of the absence of water. We followed this ravine to the main valley, which we struck at a point about west of Shasté Butte, and thence kept down its western side. Herds of antelopes sprang up from time to time before us, their sentinels alarmed by the clattering of our baggage mule, and scampered across the plain. These animals are here abundant, and we saw as many as a hundred at once. A couple of hours brought us to the main trail from Oregon, which we took. As the sun sunk behind the western range, its rays lingered on the "Butte," gilding its summit, and turning the grey rock beneath to a burning crimson. Fading away, the snow assumed that peculiar death-like hue which nothing else in inanimate nature resembles; and then the grey veil of dusk fell over all. By dint of hard riding, or what to our tired mules was such, we reached the town of Shasté Butte city, an hour after dark.

Two of our number were already familiar with every part of the valley, and although the time allotted to us did not permit us to do more than traverse the principal plain, we had a full view of its entire extent, and saw enough to satisfy us fully, that it nowhere contained a suitable tract for "a reserve." It is utterly destitute of wood, except in the pine-barrens at its south-eastern extremity; and of water, except in the main stream. It affords none of the wild productions, such as acorns, berries, &c., from which the Indians derive so large a part of their subsistence, and its parched and barren soil would produce no substitute, by cultivation. On reaching town, we found that Colonel M'Kee had that evening addressed a large public meeting of the citizens, on the subject of the treaty, and that they had, with great unanimity, appointed a committee, to enforce its observance, on the part of the whites, should one be effected.

Sunday, Nov. 2d.—The weather, fortunately, still continued fine. We returned to camp by the trail usually travelled, a different one from our route on the previous occasion. Like that, it pursued a long and narrow arm to a gap in the dividing ridge, and thence down another, leading to the ranch before mentioned, at the lower end of Scott's valley. Wagons pass up these ravines on either side, to the foot of the mountain, and the road could easily be made passable across. A wagon road already exists from Oregon to Shasté Butte city, on which produce is brought in; and wagons also reach it from the great trail to the States; but none has, as yet, been cut to the Sacramento valley direct. It is the opinion, however, of Mr. Kelsey and other experienced mountaineers, that a perfectly practicable route exists over the low range to the east of Shasté Butte. The pack trail now travelled, runs to the west of that mountain, between it and the land-mark known as the "Black Butte."

We reached camp some time after dark. The distance from the town to Brown's ranch, by the route we took to-day, is usually called sixteen miles, and to our camp twenty-four or five.

Monday, Nov. 3d.—The day was spent in arranging the details of the treaty. Our exploring party united in a report to the Agent, stating the result of the journey, and our belief that Scott's valley would afford the only resource for the agricultural part of the reserve. Colonel M'Kee, upon consideration, accordingly decided to set apart the lower, or northern end of the valley, for that purpose. In determining the other limits, it was held important to embrace, in as compact a space as possible, a tract which would afford sufficient hunting and fishing grounds for the expected population, and which should leave the most valuable mineral lands to the whites. As regarded the first object, a portion of the Klamath was essential for the fishery, and the northern boundary was therefore extended across it to the Oregon line, which, it was supposed, could not be far distant. As respects the latter, it was believed that, with the exception of the lower portion of Scott's river, the most valuable diggings lay upon Humbug creek, and eastward, including the Shasté valley; and these were therefore avoided. The earth already thrown up in the hills of Scott's valley would be washed out in the course of the winter, and no loss would therefore ensue to the miners there, the first of June being fixed as the period of occupancy. As to Scott's bar, and the river from thence to the mouth, they would probably be exhausted in a year; but that no real ground of complaint should be left, two years were stipulated for working them. The details of the "reserve" in other respects, will be seen from the accompanying map.

Into this reservation it was proposed to collect all the tribes on the Klamath, Scott's, and Shasté rivers, speaking the Shasté tongue, and also those of the upper Trinity river. A census of these was attempted, but the chiefs present were unable to proceed in arithmetic as far as the number of souls under them. They, however, gave that of "grounds" or villages, as follows:—

On the Klamath, the O-de-eilah tribe, at	24	grounds.
In Shaste valley, the Ika-ruck, Kose-tah, and Ida-ka-riúke, at	19	"
In Scott's valley, the Watsa-he-wa, and E-eh, at	7	"

Affording a total of fifty grounds or villages, averaging, as was supposed, sixty souls each, or three thousand in all; in addition to which the Trinity Indians, it was calculated, would furnish another thousand, or perhaps fifteen hundred.

The reserve, though the only one that could be made, taking into consideration the rights and necessities of the Indians, of course was unsatisfactory to some of the miners and settlers. In fact, without sacrificing the former entirely, it was impossible to select a district which would not interfere with the interests of adventurers among the whites. Those who had taken claims with a view to permanent residence, (which in general means a residence of one or two years, a long period in California,) and cultivation of the soil, and who had erected rude improvements thereon, naturally viewed the selection of the agent with feelings of particular disappointment. Many of them had purchased preëmptions or claims from others at high prices, and no idea seemed to have been entertained that the land would not be open to settlement, and that the same rights would not be granted them, as had been given to the emigrants to Oregon. At the same time a laudable spirit of acquiescence in the necessity of the case was everywhere shown, and petitions for indemnity, setting forth strongly the unexpected hardships sustained, were confided to the Agent, for presentment to the Indian Department or to Congress; petitions, it may not be impertinent to add, which have strong claims on the consideration of the national legislature. The Indians, though at first claiming the whole of the valley, appeared perfectly satisfied with the district allotted them, and expressed their desire to settle upon it at once. The promise that they should be instructed in the arts of the whites especially pleased them. A stipulation which was introduced, that they should deliver up all stolen animals, produced great disgust on the part of one chief whose reputation at home seemed to be a bad one; but he was reconciled by the threat, on the part of his own people, of killing him on the spot, if he declined to fulfil it, and thus endanger the general arrangement.

In regard to the number of reservations made in California, it is to be remembered that, so far, at least, as this portion of the State is concerned, the circumstances both of country and population are widely different from those existing in the frontier States of the Mississippi valley. No great neighboring hunting-grounds, covered with buffalo and other game, offer a place of removal of the Indians beyond interference with the whites, and without changing their mode of life, or affecting their means of subsistence; nor could they without horses or fire-arms obtain food there, did they exist. Broken up into comparatively insignificant tribes, speaking distinct languages, and varying greatly in their habits and character, the collecting them together would be impracticable, even if natural obstacles did not interpose. But the features of the country have a greater influence upon the savage than the civilized man. The one conquers them — the other is moulded by them; and it would prove almost as impossible to reconcile the Indian of the mountain to prairie life, as to naturalize the big-horn in the cattle pasture. These people are not nomadic. Even those without permanent habitations have at least permanent abiding places, or a country, and their attachment to localities is excessive. They may indeed be driven off, but they cannot be persuaded to go voluntarily. The singularly broken character of this whole region has tended more to render them distinct in every respect, by isolating them from all but very unfrequent, and then hostile, intercourse with one another, and this too prevents their being assembled in any one district; none existing which could contain them. So far as the Klamath country is concerned, moreover, the gold alone affords any attraction to the white man; and should this hereafter fail, it would soon be again abandoned to its former possessors. The true policy of the government is to allow to our own citizens every facility, consistent with justice and humanity to the Indian, of reaping that harvest which they alone know how to use, and by the establishment of small military posts, to check collisions or encroachments, which may endanger the safety of either. As respects those mineral lands which lie within the reservation, licenses to work them might hereafter be issued, subject only to such control as the principal object would render necessary.

In the evening we were entertained with a grand peace-dance, by a party of about fifty. Its main features resembled those of most other performances of the kind. The majority contented themselves with performing the part of chorus, beating time with their feet to a monotonous chant. Two young men were the principal actors, and kept up the exercise with great spirit. Both were slightly built, but with forms of great perfection; clean-limbed, straight, and lithe. Two ladies also joined in; one of them the new bride of our interpreter. This dame had, according to custom, bewailed her virginity for the three nights past, and rivalled the coyotes in the melancholy variety of her howls. She was an immense woman, but with a superb figure; and her competitor, unmarried, though not so tall, was almost as robust and as well built, according to the *embonpoint* order of symmetry. One of the male dancers carried a sort of whistle in his mouth, on which he played, apparently much to his own satisfaction. This was the only musical instrument that we noticed among them, except a species of flute, open at both ends, and with three finger-holes, out of which a Klamath Indian contrived to extort a noise. In the morning, November 4th, the treaty was explained carefully as drawn up, and the bounds of the reservation pointed out on a plat. In the afternoon it was signed in the presence of a large concourse of whites and Indians, with great formality. The usual presents were then distributed, and they separated in very good humor, the Klamath chief "Ishack," and his son, remaining for the benefit of our escort home.

Thursday, Nov. 6th.—It had been arranged that Mr. John M'Kee, Secretary to the Commission, should remain here for the purpose of seeing to the delivery of the property stolen by the Indians, and to exercise a temporary supervision over them. Mr. Kelsey and Col. Woods also concluded to stay in the valley, and the balance of the party, now reduced to Col. M'Kee, Mr. Walter M'Donald, and myself, with three men, started about noon on our return. We camped that night on Scott's river, at the foot of the mountain. The next day it rained slightly, but our mules being light we reached the crossing of the Klamath, at the Big Bottom. In passing through Scott's bar, we had an opportunity of seeing the rapidity with which downfall, as well as rise, can take place in this region. The town was literally deserted, and upon the extensive dams on the river we did not see a dozen men at work. All had left for Humbug creek or Shasté valley! On the 8th, we made Happy camp, the rain continuing, and the road excessively bad. Here we remained over Sunday; and on the 10th, the weather having cleared, travelled to the further side of the mountain, about three miles above our camp of October 14th. We had been recommended to cross the Klamath near this place, and to take the eastern side for a day's journey, thereby avoiding the passing of "Tent rock" and the mountain beyond it. We accordingly crossed the animals at an early hour on the 11th, the Indians ferrying ourselves and our baggage. The trail followed the river down for some distance, then diverging, crossed a high ridge, and again reached the water below the bend. From there it again pursued the course of the river, not leaving it for any great distance, though at times ascending high up on its banks. Although considerably shorter than the other route, and by no means so mountainous, it was excessively rough. We however made a rapid drive, and towards sunset reached the lower crossing, a distance probably of sixteen miles. The river, in places, was very winding, with narrow bottoms on the eastern side. We passed several Indian villages, mostly of two or three houses only, and exhibiting every trace of poverty. The sun at mid-day, notwithstanding the lateness of the season, was very warm, and the bay trees were everywhere coming into bloom. A few butterflies were still visible, and some late flowering plants still retained their blossoms. It should have been mentioned before, in connection with this part of the river, that in going up we noticed frequently near the trail, small piles of stone, generally consisting of three or four, placed upon one another; sometimes a dozen of them in a cluster. Supposing them to have some particular object or signification, I made particular inquiry through the interpreter, and was assured to the contrary; that they were merely built for amusement by idlers. They would naturally attract attention from a passenger by their frequency, and might be thought to have some connection with those built by the Puys worshippers of Russian river. The signal-trees, before spoken of, seem, however, to be the only monuments of the Klamath Indian, excepting their graves.

Wednesday, Nov. 12th.—We started in the morning to recross the river, and passed the baggage over in a canoe; but the mules proved troublesome, and on a second attempt, two of them, including my riding mule, got into a deep eddy, and were drowned. This crossing is a bad one; the water being swift, with a strong counter current on the west side, and a rapid just below. Our principal boatman was crippled in both legs, apparently by rheumatism, and walked only by the assistance of two sticks. His wife was a hunchback, the second deformed Indian of either sex that I saw on the Klamath. About a mile from the crossing we struck an old trail, and near by saw the carcase of my unlucky saddle-mule lodged upon a bar. The accident had delayed us till late, and the mules were so much exhausted by their stay in the water, that we made but a short drive, camping at our old ground of a month before, near the mouth of the Salmon. Several of our old acquaintances among the Indians visited us; and I succeeded in persuading a pretty girl, the chief's daughter, to sit for her portrait. The likeness was sufficiently good to be recognised, though it certainly did not flatter the very gentle and pleasing expression of her face, or the plump graces of her figure. The operation caused very considerable interest in the savage portion of the bystanders, who, one and all, pronounced it "schoyeh." We found the Indians of the village which had been burnt down, rebuilding their houses for the winter. The style was very substantial, the large poles requiring five or six men to lift. These lodges, it may be mentioned, are usually dismantled in summer, when the inhabitants live in temporary bush huts, probably to get rid of vermin. The salmon fishing was still going on; but the greater part of the fish exhibited an unhealthy appearance.

A miner who joined us during part of our journey, and who had lived some time in this neighborhood, mixing much with the Indians, described to us some of their customs. The marriage ceremony is thus conducted. The purchase of the wife is consummated by the payment of a certain quantity of "aliqua chick." After its delivery, however, the parties are not allowed to come together till the expiration of two days, during which the bride goes through the operation of the sweat-bath, the impatience of her lover being in the meanwhile moderated by confinement to a vegetable diet, such as acorn porridge and pinolé bread. The groom, moreover, must not club his hair after the usual fashion, but wears it loose; typical perhaps of his readiness to have it pulled, when occasion justifies. The season of probation closes with a dance, and the woman is thenceforward entitled to have the tattooing on her face extended above the corners of her mouth.

On the death of a person, the friends assemble, and raise a peculiar cry or wail, which is caught up from one to another, and can be heard to a great distance. The body is always kept over one night, before interment. If the deceased was one of any consideration, all the girls of the village unite in making baskets, to be placed round the grave; otherwise, one only is staked down at the head, and another at the foot. The "chick," or ready money, is placed in the owner's grave, but the bow and quiver become the property of the nearest male relative. Chiefs only receive the honors of a fence, surmounted with feathers, round the grave.

Their medical practice consists chiefly of pow-wows over the patient. One that my informant witnessed was held over a young girl, and was conducted, in the first place, by four maidens of her own age, relieved afterward by four old women. These stood one at either shoulder and foot, and went through a series of violent gesticulations, throwing up the arms, and stamping with the feet until exhausted, when they sat down, and went on with them in that posture, keeping up, all the time, a low cry; sucking the supposed seat of pain till they raised blisters, and kneading the flesh of the patient, or rather victim. This performance was sustained until they frothed at the mouth, and sank down almost insensible; the sick person meantime subsiding into a sort of stupor, from fatigue and excitement. Whether the result was what might have been expected, death, or not, the relator did not know. The raising blisters by suction of the mouth seems to be a favorite and common piece of surgery among them, and we heard of whites who had submitted to it for the relief of headache, with advantage.

Thursday, Nov. 13th.—Colonel M'Kee and myself started from a little below camp, in a canoe with three Indians, leaving the rest of the party to go on by the usual route. The Klamath, for some distance below the mouth of the Salmon, runs through a cañon, taking a bend to the eastward. Rapids occurred at short distances, down which we shot swiftly, the Indians managing the canoe with singular dexterity, by means of a sort of half pole, half paddle. At the most dangerous, or where the water was too shallow for our load to pass safely, they made us get out and walk. Our fellows chattered and shouted in great glee at the excitement, yelling the friendly salutation of "Ai-ye-quéh," as they passed the different villages, and were apparently much elated at the praises bestowed on their skill. The stoics of these woods are, in fact, anything but the impassive beings that poetry has handed down as the sole type of the Indian; and so far from being tearless, they can cry as naturally as a woman at the death of a friend, or, it is said by those who have tried the experiment, blubber like a school-boy at the application of a switch, or the end of a lariat.

The high banks of the river above us were clothed with the mixed growth of oak and fir, characteristic of the Klamath country. Huge masses of slate, broken up and inclining at every angle, here and there overhung us, while the stream was, throughout, confined between walls, on which the water-marks indicated the swelling height of the winter torrent, and the polished surfaces of the rocks, the terrific rapidity with which it speeds towards the ocean. In some of these cañons it is said to reach forty feet above the usual level. An hour and a half brought us to our old camp of October 10th. We stopped to visit the several villages here, and starting again, entered the cañon below Orleans bar; finding, to our regret, and, as we passed, nearly to our disaster, that the fish-dam at the mouth of Ocketoh creek had been washed away by a recent flood. From here to Red-Cap's bar, the river is again confined between precipices, and broken by rapids, and, indeed, with few interruptions, such continued its character to the ferry at Mr. Durkee's. We were compelled frequently to get out and follow the bank as best we could, while our boatmen sped merrily down. Nearing the Kaiammu fish-dam, we found that part of that also had been carried off. We reached Durkee's ferry about sunset, well pleased with the exchange from mule to canoe travel, and having accomplished about thirty miles by the course of the river. It should be noticed, as illustrating the relations of these Indians with one another, that we had considerable difficulty in inducing one crew to descend the whole distance with us; and that we succeeded only by promising to set them right with the Weits-peks for trespassing on their waters, and to prevent their stipulated reward from being taxed for "right of way;" the international principle not being recognised by them, that nations occupying part of the waters of a river, are entitled to the enjoyment of the whole.

We were detained at the ferry several days, a heavy rain occurring in the mean time, by which the river was raised with great rapidity to a height of about eight or ten feet above the previous level. The mountains between the Trinity and Salmon rivers were at the same time whitened with snow. On the 19th, we left Durkee's and reached "French camp." The next night we stopped near our previous camp of September 25th, having had rain all day; and the succeeding afternoon got into Union. The latter part of the road, particularly that between Mad river and the town, was extremely bad, the deep black soil in the redwood timber becoming an unctuous and slipping paste in wet weather. After two or three days spent in Union, for the purpose of disposing of the mule train, &c., the party having been broken up, we proceeded to Humboldt. No opportunity, however, presented itself for leaving until the 8th of December, when the steamer "Sea-Gull" arrived on her way to Oregon; and as this might prove the last opportunity, we concluded to proceed in her as far, at least, as Port Orford, hoping to meet the "Columbia" on her way down. In this we were disappointed; and were finally compelled to go on to the Columbia river. An accident occurring to the machinery, we did not reach Portland till the 19th; and on the 23d, left in the Columbia for San Francisco, where we arrived December 28th, 1851; having been absent on the Expedition nearly five months.

V. TRIBAL ORGANIZATION, HISTORY, AND GOVERNMENT. C.

TRIBAL ORGANIZATION, HISTORY, AND GOVERNMENT.

SYNOPSIS OF PAPERS.

1. History of the Iroquois Republic; its Government, Power, and Policy. By H. R. S.
2. Indian Tribes of Oregon and California. By G. F. Emmons, U. S. N.
3. Sioux, or Dacotah Proper (Second Paper). By P. Prescott, U. S. Indian Interpreter.
4. Origin of the Mandan Tribe, and its Stock of Affiliation. By H. R. S.
5. Migrations of the Iowas. (With a Map.) By H. R. S.
6. History of the Iowa and Sac Tribes. By Rev. S. M. Irvin, and Rev. Wm. Hamilton.
7. Hochungara Family of the Dacotah Group. By H. R. S.
8. Winnebagoes. By J. E. Fletcher, Esq., U. S. Indian Agent.
9. Ancient Eries. By H. R. S.
10. Carolina Manuscript respecting the Origin of the Catawbas. Office of the Secretary of State of South Carolina.
11. History, Language, and Archæology of the Pimos of the River Gila, New Mexico. By H. R. S.
12. Moqui Tribe of New Mexico. By H. R. S.

1. HISTORY OF THE IROQUOIS REPUBLIC; ITS GOVERNMENT, POWER, AND POLICY.

Great prominence has been given by historians to the Indian empires of Mexico and Peru. There has been, from the first, a strong predisposition to exalt the type of their semi-civilization, in order to enhance the glory of their conquest, and to challenge the admiration of mankind. Their labors and skill in building palaces and teocalli; their art of recording ideas by means of picture-writing; their municipal polity;

the fixity of their dynasties; and the social aggrandizement of their chief rulers, have been dwelt upon as furnishing the evidence of their high advance.

Such ideas were very natural three centuries ago, when Europe bowed to the most absolute forms of the feudal yoke; when Leo X. stretched his hieratic wand over the nations; when Charles V. swayed the empire of western Europe; and when Elizabeth ruled with a rod of iron over England; or gave, reluctantly, her sceptre to the bigoted, narrow-minded, and voluptuous Scottish dynasty, whose despotism, goading the Anglo-Saxon mind with unendurable tasks, led it to re-act, and assume its earliest form of republicanism.

That the Indian mind should, of its own monitions, pursue a similar track, concentrating the power of the many in the hands of a few, and loading with most intolerable burthens the slavish, unthinking masses, reproduced delight in the privileged circles of the old world. It was deemed a proof of the incapacity of man to govern himself by a mixed or republican system; without reflecting that the inherent feebleness of the Indian dynastic rule, with no sympathy or support from the masses, was the true cause of the speedy fall, after a short and inglorious resistance, of the glittering but incongruous and feeble empires of Mexico and Peru, which only cast the shadows of royal thrones.

The caciques and incas of Caxamarca and Cusco could build palaces and pyramids, and make roads and aqueducts—for all labor was compulsory and without reward; but the domicil of the laborer was a hut or a wigwam, made of the most light and perishable materials. The consequence of this inequality was, that when at a later age these regions of equatorial mildness and fruitfulness were examined, they were found strewed over with the monumental ruins of palaces and strongholds, once occupied by hereditary priests and rulers, but without any traces of the rights and comforts enjoyed by the people. These had, indeed, no rights and no comforts; and when the disproportioned and tottering framework of the aboriginal governments fell before civilization and Christianity, the common people were first placed on the basis of having some fixed rights, for which they had a guarantee. The conquest thus was a blessing.

Of the several governments existing in America when it was discovered and settled, none had a system which is at all comparable for its excellence and stability with the confederacy of the Iroquois. The tribes or cantons which originally composed it, were affiliated, not very closely perhaps or permanently, by history; though having the same language. Arrested in their wanderings, they became fixed to the soil. They still pursued war and hunting; but the field for war was external, and they returned in triumph to their respective cantons and villages, where their families pursued agriculture. A fixity of location, as in the two celebrated instances of Mexico and Peru, was the first fruit-bearing point in their social and political advance. The next was the absolute independence of the cantons. Each canton was, in fact, a military federal republic, in the councils of which the warriors were the representatives; and they were bound together by a general cordon of cantons. Unanimity was urged in all public questions, by every consideration of interest and honor. But it is very clear, as resulting from the absolute independency of the confederates, that each canton had a power very like that described by the Roman term veto; for it could dissent from the central proceedings without being called in question. Its quota of men was freely offered, or refused. Contributions for a central government there were none. A high notion of military glory existed, but the voluntary principle supported that.

It has been remarked that there was a strong resemblance in the principle of the Iroquois confederacy to the Grecian Amphyctionic Council;[1] and an acute and learned man has asserted, that the Iroquois language is mingled with Grecian roots.[2]

Mr. Prescott has placed before the literary world, accounts of the two most celebrated Indian governments of the new world, as they were found to exist at the opening of the sixteenth century; viz., those of Mexico and Peru. He has described the principles by which they had been, for considerable epochs, held together and governed; and shown also their inadequacy, owing to defects of the Indian character, to withstand the shocks and severe discipline of a higher civilization.

But while these two world-renowned monarchies are displayed as exhibiting the highest efforts of Indian mind in architecture, arts, a knowledge of the solar recessions, and of the pseudo literature of pictographic records, and the general force of political concentration, they are apprehended to have fallen infinitely short of the power of thought and forecast, and public polity, which were secured at the same era for a century and a half later, in the IROQUOIS REPUBLIC, a confederacy of bold tribes, which guarantied to each tribe, while conceding general power, their tribal or cantonal independence and sovereignty; and at the same time to each man and warrior his equal rights. This is, in fact, the great political problem, which has since been solved, through a long series of Colonial and State mutations, by the American government; not more perfectly, perhaps, so far as equal rights, and a jealousy of, and verbal stipulations against hereditary immunities were concerned. but by a more stable, united, fixed, determined and powerful system, of the application of the political doctrine of a democratic imperium in imperio.

It is a memorable fact, that the Iroquois were so strongly impressed with the wisdom of the working of their system of confederation, that they publicly recommended a similar union to the British colonies. In the important conferences at Lancaster, in 1774, Canassatego, a respected Sachem, expressed this view to the commissioners of Pennsylvania, Virginia, and Maryland. "Our wise forefathers," he said, "established union and amity between the Five Nations. This has made us formidable. This has given us great weight and authority with our neighboring nations. We are a powerful confederacy, and by observing the same methods our wise forefathers have taken, you will acquire fresh strength and power. Therefore

---

[1] Clinton.

[2] Charlevoix.

I counsel you, whatever befalls you, never to fall out with one another." No sage of the brightest day of Greece could have more truly appreciated the secret of their own power and success.

Lescarbot, La Potherie, Charlevoix, and all the missionary writers and historians of New France, acknowledge, and appear to have felt, the potency of the power of this aboriginal confederacy, while deploring the dreadful barbarity of their general manners and customs while engaged in war. Yet this class of writers did not perceive that this potency arose, not like that of Montezuma and Atahualpa, from exactions, but from the real independence and freedom with which the Iroquois contributed their quota to the war-parties and means of offence. By a heart-warm nationality of plaudits, which was upheld through their dances and other popular assemblages, they created a high appreciation of military virtue and heroism. In council, they preserved the air and deliberation of perfect Solons; and their fiat, when it was given, decreed the extinction of nations. Canada itself maintained, for a long period, a doubtful struggle against such a power.

It remained for the Anglo-Saxon race, who had themselves been struggling for civil liberty and private rights, from the days of King John, to appreciate fully the true character of the Iroquois confederacy. No persons, so far as we have read, have so early and so fully expressed their sense of, or seem to have been better qualified by their civic talents to judge definitely of its merits, in their respective eras, as Cadwalader Colden and De Witt Clinton.

"The Five Nations," observes Colden, in 1747, (as their name denotes,) "consist of so many tribes or nations, joined together by a league or confederacy, like the United Provinces, and without any superiority of the one over the other. This union has continued so long, that the Christians know nothing of the original of it. The people in it are known to the English under the names of Mohawks, Oneydoes, Onondagas, Cayugas, and Sennekas.

"Each of these nations is again divided into three tribes or families, who distinguish themselves by three different arms, or ensigns — the tortoise, the bear, and the wolf; and the sachems, or old men of these families, put this ensign or mark of their family to every public paper, when they sign it.

"Each of these nations is an absolute republic by itself, and every castle in each nation makes an independent republic, and is governed, in all public affairs, by its own sachems or old men. The authority of these rulers is gained by, and consists wholly in, the opinion the rest of the nation have of their wisdom and integrity. They never execute their resolutions by force upon any of their people. Honor and esteem are their principal rewards; as shame, and being despised, their punishments. They have certain customs, which they observe in their public transactions with other nations, and in their private affairs among themselves, which it is scandalous for any one among them not to observe; and these always draw after them either public or private resentment, whenever they are broke. Their leaders and captains in like manner obtain their authority by the general opinion of their courage and conduct, and lose it by a failure in those virtues.

"Their great men, both sachems and captains, are generally poorer than the common people; for they affect to give away and distribute all the presents, or plunder, they get in their treaties, or in war, so as to leave nothing to themselves. There is not a man in the magistracy of the Five Nations who has gained his office otherwise than by merit; there is not the least salary, or any sort of profit, annexed to any office, to tempt the covetous and sordid; but, on the contrary, every unworthy action is unavoidably attended with the forfeiture of their commission; for their authority is only the esteem of the people, and ceases the moment that esteem is lost. Here we see the natural origin of all power and authority among a free people; and whatever artificial power or sovereignty any man may have acquired by the laws and constitution of a country, his real power will be either much greater or less, in proportion to the esteem the people have for him.

"The Five Nations think themselves by nature superior to the rest of mankind, and call themselves ONGUE-HONWE; that is, men surpassing all others. This opinion, which they take care to cultivate and instil into their children, gives them that courage which has been so terrible to all the nations of North America; and they have taken such care to impress the same opinion of their people on all their neighbors, that they, on all occasions, yield the most submissive obedience to them. I have been told by old men in New England, who remembered the time when the Mohawks made war on their Indians, that as soon as a single Mohawk was discovered in the country, their Indians raised a cry from hill to hill, A Mohawk! a Mohawk! upon which they all fled like sheep before wolves, without attempting to make the least resistance, whatever odds were on their side. The poor New England Indians immediately ran to the Christian houses, and the Mohawks often pursued them so closely, that they entered along with them, and knocked their brains out in the presence of the people of the house; but if the family attempted to shut the door, they never tried to force it, and on no occasion did any injury to the Christians. All the nations round them have for many years entirely submitted to them, and pay a yearly tribute to them in wampum;[1] they dare neither make war or peace without the consent of the Mohawks. Two old men commonly go about every year or two, to receive this tribute; and I have often had opportunity to observe what anxiety the poor Indians were under, while these two old men remained in that part of the country where I was.

---

[1] Wampum is the current money among the Indians. It is of two sorts, white and purple; the white is worked out of the inside of the great conches, into the form of a bead, and perforated, to string on leather; the purple is worked out of the inside of the muscle shell; they are wove as broad as one's hand, and about two feet long; these they call belts, and give and receive at their treaties, as the seals of friendship; for lesser matters a single string is given. Every bead is of a known value, and a belt of a less number is made to equal one of a greater, by so many as is wanting fastened to the belt by a string.

"An old Mohawk sachem, in a poor blanket and a dirty shirt, may be seen issuing his orders with as arbitrary an authority as a Roman Dictator. It is not for the sake of tribute, however, that they make war, but from the notions of glory, which they have ever most strongly imprinted on their minds; and the farther they go to seek an enemy, the greater glory they think they gain; there cannot, I think, be a greater, or a stronger instance than this, how much the sentiments impressed upon a people's mind conduce to their grandeur, or one that more verifies a saying often to be met with, though but too little minded, that it is in the power of the rulers of a people to make them either great or little; for, by inculcating only the notions of honor and virtue, or those of luxury and riches, the people, in a little time, will soon become such as their rulers desire. The Five Nations, in their love of liberty and of their country, in their bravery in battle, and their constancy in enduring torments, equal the fortitude of the most renowned Romans. I shall finish their general character by what an enemy, a Frenchman, says of them; Monsieur De la Poterie, in his History of North America. 'When we speak,' says he, 'of the Five Nations, in France, they are thought, by a common mistake, to be mere barbarians, always thirsting after human blood; but their true character is very different. They are, indeed, the fiercest and most formidable people in North America, and at the same time are as politic and judicious as well can be conceived; and this appears from the management of all the affairs which they transact, not only with the French and English, but likewise with almost all the Indian nations of this vast continent.'

"Their matters of consequence, which concern all nations, are transacted in a general meeting of sachems of each nation. These conventions are commonly held at Onondaga, which is nearly the centre of their country; but they have fixed on Albany for the place of treating with the British Colonies. They strictly follow one maxim, formerly used by the Romans to increase their strength, that is, they encourage the people of other nations to incorporate with them; and when they have subdued any people, after they have satiated their revenge by some cruel examples, they adopt the rest of their captives; who, if they behave well, become equally esteemed with their own people, so that some of their captives have afterwards become their greatest sachems and captains. The Tuskaroras, after the war they had with the people of Carolina, fled to the Five Nations, and are now incorporated with them; so that they now, properly, indeed, consist of Six Nations, though they still retain the old name of the Five Nations, among the English. The Cowetas also, or Creek Indians, are in the same friendship with them.

"The Tuskaroras, since they came under the province of New York, behave themselves well, and remain peaceable and quiet; and by this may be seen the advantage of using the Indians well, and I believe, if they were still better used, (as there is room enough to do it,) they would be proportionably useful to us. The cruelty the

Indians use in their wars, towards those who do not or cannot resist, such as women and children, and to their prisoners, after they have them in their power, is deservedly indeed held in abhorrence; but whoever reads the history of the so-famed ancient heroes, will find them, I'm afraid, not much better in this respect. Does Achilles's behavior to Hector's dead body appear less savage? This cruelty is also not peculiar to the Five Nations, but equally practiced by all other Indians. It is wonderful how custom and education are able to soften the most horrid actions, even among a polite and learned people; witness the Carthaginians and Phœnicians burning their own children alive in sacrifice; and several passages in the Jewish history; and witness, in later times, the Christians burning one another alive for God's sake.

"When any of the young men of these nations have a mind to signalize themselves, and to gain a reputation among their countrymen, by some notable enterprize against their enemy, they at first communicate their design to two or three of their most intimate friends, and if they come into it, an invitation is made, in their names, to all the young men of the castle, to feast on dog's flesh; but whether this be because dog's flesh is most agreeable to Indian palates, or whether it be as an emblem of fidelity, for which the dog is distinguished by all nations, that it is always used on this occasion, I have not sufficient information to determine. When the company is met, the promoters of the enterprize set forth the undertaking in the best colors they can; they boast of what they intend to do, and incite others to join, from the glory there is to be obtained; and all who eat the dog's flesh thereby enlist themselves.

"The night before they set out, they make a grand feast; to this all the noted warriors of the nation are invited, and here they have their war-dance, to the beat of a kind of a kettle-drum. The warriors are seated in two rows, in the house, and each rises up in his turn, and sings the great acts he has himself performed, and the deeds of his ancestors; and this is always accompanied with a kind of a dance, or rather action, representing the manner in which they were performed; and from time to time all present join in a chorus, applauding every notable act. They exaggerate the injuries they have at any time received from their enemies, and extol the glory which any of their ancestors have gained by their bravery and courage; so that they work up their spirits to a high degree of warlike enthusiasm. I have sometimes persuaded some of their young Indians to act these dances for our diversion, and to show us the manner of them; and even on these occasions they have worked themselves up to such a pitch, that they have made all present uneasy. Is it not probable that such designs as these have given the first rise to tragedy?

"They come to these dances with their faces painted in a frightful manner, as they always are when they go to war, to make themselves terrible to their enemies; and in this manner the night is spent. Next day they march out with much formality, dressed in their finest apparel; and in their march observe a proud silence. An officer of the regular troops told me that while he was commandant of Fort Hunter, the

Mohawks, on one of these occasions, told him that they expected the usual military honors as they passed the garrison. Accordingly, he drew out his garrison, the men presented their pieces as the Indians passed, and the drum beat a march; and with less respect, the officer said, they would have been dissatisfied. The Indians passed in a single row, one after another, with great gravity, and profound silence; and every one of them, as he passed the officer, took his gun from his shoulder, and fired into the ground near the officer's foot. They marched in this manner three or four miles from their castle. The women, on these occasions, always follow them with their old clothes; and they send back by them their finery in which they marched from the castle. But before they go from this place where they exchange their clothes, they always peel a large piece of the bark from some great tree; they commonly choose an oak, as most lasting; upon the smooth side of this wood they, with their red paint, draw one or more canoes going from home, with the number of men in them paddling which go upon the expedition; and some animal, as a deer or fox, an emblem of the nation against which the expedition is designed, is painted at the head of the canoes; for they always travel in canoes along the rivers which lead to the country against which the expedition is designed, as far as they can.

"After the expedition is over, they stop at the same place in their return, and send to their castle to inform their friends of their arrival, that they may be prepared to give them a solemn reception, suited to the success they have had. In the mean time they represent on the same, or some tree near it, the event of the enterprize; and now the canoes are painted white, their heads turned towards the castle; the number of the enemy killed, is represented by scalps painted black, and the number of prisoners by as many withs (in their painting not unlike pot-hooks), with which they usually pinion their captives. These trees are the annals, or rather trophies of the Five Nations.[1] I have seen many of them; and by them and their war-songs, they preserve the history of their great achievements. The solemn reception of these warriors, and the acclamations of applause which they receive at their return, cannot but have on the hearers the same effect, in raising an emulation for glory, that a triumph had on the old Romans.

"After their prisoners are secured, they never offer them the least mal-treatment; but, on the contrary, will rather starve themselves, than suffer them to want; and I have been always assured that there is not one instance of their offering the least violence to the chastity of any woman that was their captive. But, notwithstanding, the poor prisoners afterwards undergo severe punishments before they receive the last doom of life or death. The warriors think it for their glory to lead them through all the villages of the nations subject to them which lie near the road; and these, to show their affection to the Five Nations, and their abhorrence of their enemies, draw up in two lines, through which the poor prisoners, stark naked, must run the gauntlet; and on this occasion, it is always observed, the women are more cruel than the men. The prisoners meet with the same sad reception when they reach their journey's end; and after this they are presented to those that have lost any relation in that, or any other former enterprize. If the captives be accepted, there is an end to their sorrow from that moment; they are dressed as fine as they can make them; they are absolutely free, (except to return to their own country,) and enjoy all the privileges the person had in whose place they are accepted; but if otherwise, they die in torments, to satiate the revenge of those that refuse them.

---

[1] This ideographic mode of conveying information is noticed in § VI. of the various volumes of this work.

"If a young man or boy be received in place of a husband that was killed, all the children of the deceased call that boy father; so that one may sometimes hear a man of thirty say that such a boy of fifteen or twenty is his father.

"Their castles are generally a square, surrounded with palisadoes, without any bastions or out-works; for since the general peace their villages lie all open.

"Their only instruments of war are muskets, hatchets, and long sharp-pointed knives. These they always carry about with them. Their hatchet, in war-time, is stuck in their girdle behind them; and besides what use they make of this weapon in their hand, they have a dexterous way of throwing it, which I have seen them often practice in their exercise, by throwing it into a tree at a distance. They have, in this, the art of directing and regulating the motion, so that though the hatchet turns round as it flies, the edge always sticks in the tree, and near the place at which they aim it. The use of bows and arrows is now entirely laid aside, except among the boys, who are still very dexterous in killing fowls and other animals with them.

"They use neither drum nor trumpet, nor any kind of musical instruments, in their wars; their throats serve them on all occasions where such are necessary. Many of them have a surprising faculty of raising their voice, not only in inarticulate sounds, but likewise to make their words understood at a distance; and we find the same was practiced by Homer's heroes.

Thrice to its pitch his lofty voice he rears,
O friend! Ulysses' shouts invade my ears.

"The Five Nations have such absolute notions of liberty, that they allow of no kind of superiority of one over another, and banish all servitude from their territories. They never make any prisoner a slave; but it is customary to make a compliment of naturalization into the Five Nations; and considering how highly they value themselves above all others, this must be no small compliment. This is not done by any general act of the nation, but every single person has a right to do it, by a kind of adoption. The first time I was among the Mohawks, I had this compliment from one of their old sachems, which he did by giving me his own name, Cayenderongue. He had been a notable warrior; and he told me that now I had a right to assume to myself all the acts of valor he had performed; and that now my name would echo from hill to hill all over the Five Nations. As for my part, I thought no more of it at that time, than as an artifice to draw a belly-full of strong liquor from me, for himself and his companions; but when, about ten or twelve years afterwards, my business led me again among them, I directed the interpreter to say something from me to the sachems; he was for some time at a loss to understand their answer, till he asked me whether I had any name among them: I then found that I was known to them by that name, and that the old sachem, from the time he had given me his name, had assumed another for himself. I was adopted at that time into the tribe of the bear, and for that reason I often afterwards had the kind compliment of brother Bear.

"The hospitality of these Indians is no less remarkable than their other virtues; as soon as any stranger comes, they are sure to offer him victuals. If there be several in company and come from afar, one of their best houses is cleaned, and given up for their entertainment. Their complaisance, on these occasions, goes even further than Christian civility allows of; as they have no other rule for it than the furnishing their guest with everything they think will be agreeable to him. For this reason, some of their prettiest girls are always ordered to wash themselves, and to dress in their best apparel, in order to be presented to the stranger for his choice; and the young lady who has the honor to be preferred on these occasions, performs all the duties of a fond wife, during the stranger's stay. But this last piece of hospitality is now either laid aside by the Mohawks, or, at least, they never offer it to any Christian.

"This nation, indeed, has laid aside many of its ancient customs; and so likewise have the other nations with whom we are best acquainted, and have adopted many of ours; so that it is not easy now to distinguish their original and genuine manners from those which they have lately acquired; and for this reason it is, that they now seldom offer victuals to persons of any distinction, because they know that their food and cookery is not agreeable to our delicate palates. Their men value themselves in having all kind of food in equal esteem. A Mohawk sachem told me with a kind of pride, that a man eats everything without distinction; bears, cats, dogs, snakes, frogs, &c., intimating that it is womanish to have any choice of food.

"I can, however, give two strong instances of the hospitality of the Mohawks, which fell under my own observation; and which show that they have the very same notion of hospitality which we find in the ancient poets. When I was last in the Mohawk country, the sachems told me that they had an Englishman among their people; a servant who had run from his master in New York. I immediately told them that they must deliver him up. 'No,' they answered, 'we never serve any man so who puts himself under our protection.' On this, I insisted on the injury they did thereby to his master; and they allowed it might be an injury, and replied, 'though we will never deliver him up, we are willing to pay the value of the servant to the master.' Another made his escape from the jail at Albany, where he was in prison on an execution for debt. The Mohawks received him, and, as they protected him against the sheriff and his officers, they not only paid the debt for him, but gave him land, over and above sufficient for a good farm, whereon he lived when I was last there. To this it may be added, all their extraordinary visits are accompanied with giving and receiving presents of some value; as we learn likewise from Homer was the practice in old times.

"Polygamy is not usual among them; and, indeed, in any nation where all are on a par as to riches and power, plurality of wives cannot well be introduced. As all kind of slavery is banished from the countries of the Five Nations, so they keep themselves free also from the bondage of wedlock; and when either of the parties becomes disgusted, they separate without formality or ignominy to either, unless it be occasioned by some scandalous offence in one of them. And in case of divorce, the children, according to the natural course of all animals, follow the mother. The women here bring forth their children with as much ease as other animals, and without the help of a midwife, and, soon after their delivery, return to their usual employment. They alone also perform all the drudgery about their houses. They plant their corn, and labor it, in every respect, till it is brought to the table; they likewise cut all their fire-wood, and bring it home on their backs, and in the marches bear the burdens. The men disdain all kind of labor, and employ themselves alone in hunting, as the only proper business for soldiers. At times when it is not proper to hunt, one finds the old men in companies, in conversation; the young men at their exercises, shooting at marks, throwing the hatchet, wrestling, or running, and the women all busy at labor in the fields.

"On these occasions, the state of Lacedæmon ever occurs to my mind, which that of the Five Nations, in many respects, resembles; their laws or customs being in both formed to render the minds and bodies of the people fit for war.

"Theft is very scandalous among them; and it is necessary it should be so among all Indians, since they have no locks, but those of their minds, to preserve their goods.

"There is one vice which the Indians have all fallen into since their acquaintance with the Christians, of which they could not be guilty before that time, that is, drunkenness. It is strange how all the Indian nations, and almost every person among them, male and female, are infatuated with the love of strong drink; they know no bounds to their desire, while they can swallow it down, and then indeed the greatest man among them scarcely deserves the name of a brute.

"They never have been taught to conquer any passion, but by some contrary passion; and the traders, with whom they chiefly converse, are so far from giving them any abhorrence of this vice, that they encourage it all they can, not only for the profit of the liquor they sell, but that they may have an opportunity to impose upon them. And this, as they chiefly drink spirits, has destroyed greater numbers than all their wars and diseases put together.

"The people of the Five Nations are much given to speech-making, ever the natural consequence of a perfect republican government. Where no single person has a power to compel, the arts of persuasion alone must prevail. As their best speakers distinguish themselves in their public councils, and treaties with other nations, and thereby gain the esteem and applause of their countrymen, (the only superiority which any of them has over the others,) it is probable they apply themselves to this art, by some kind of study and exercise. It is impossible for me to judge how far they excel, as I am ignorant of their language; but the speakers whom I have heard had all a great fluency of words, and much more grace in their manner than any man could expect among a people entirely ignorant of all the liberal arts and sciences.

"I am informed that they are very nice in the turn of their expressions, and that few of themselves are so far masters of their language, as never to offend the ears of their Indian auditory by an impolite expression. They have, it seems, a certain urbanitas, or atticism in their language, of which the common ears are ever sensible, though only their great speakers attain to it. They are so much given to speech-making, that their common compliments to any person they respect, at meeting and parting, are made in harangues.

"They have some kind of elegancy in varying and compounding their words, to which not many of themselves attain; and this principally distinguishes their best speakers. I have endeavored to get some account of this, as a thing that might be acceptable to the curious; but as I have not met with any one person who understands their language, and also knows anything of grammar, or of the learned languages, I have not been able to attain the least satisfaction. Their present minister tells me, that their verbs are varied, but in a manner so different from the Greek or Latin, that he cannot discover by what rule it was done; and even suspects that every verb has a peculiar mode. They have but few radical words, but they compound their words without end; by this their language becomes sufficiently copious, and leaves room for a good deal of art to please a delicate ear. Sometimes one word among them includes an entire definition of the thing; for example, they call wine, Oneharadeschoengtseragherie; as much as to say, a liquor made of the juice of the grape. The words expressing things lately come to their knowledge, are all compounds. They have no labials in their language, nor can they pronounce any word wherein there is a labial; and when one endeavors to teach them to pronounce these words, they say it is too ridiculous that they must shut their lips to speak. Their language abounds with gutturals and strong aspirations; these make it very sonorous and bold; and their speeches abound with metaphors, after the manner of the eastern nations, as will best appear by the speeches that I have copied. As to what religious notions they have, it is difficult to judge of them; because the Indians that speak any English, and live near us, have learned many things of us; and it is not easy to distinguish the notions they had originally among themselves, from those they have learned from the Christians. It is certain they have no kind of public worship, and I am told that they have no radical word to express God; but use a compound word, signifying the Preserver, Sustainer, or Master of the universe; neither could I ever learn what sentiments they have of future existence after death. They make a large round hole in which the body can be placed upright or upon its haunches; which, after the body is placed in it, is covered with timber, to support the earth which they lay over, and thereby keep the body free from being pressed. They then raise the earth in a round hill over it. They always dress the corpse in all its finery, and put wampum and other things into the grave with it; and the relations suffer not grass nor any weed to grow on the grave, and frequently visit it with lamentations. But whether these things be done only as marks of respect to the deceased, or from a notion of some kind of existence after death, must be left to the judgment of the reader.

"They are very superstitious in observing omens and dreams; I have observed them show a superstitious awe of the owl, and be highly displeased with some that mimicked the cry of that bird in the night. An officer of the regular troops told me also, that while he had the command of the garrison at Oswego, a boy of one of the far westward nations died there; the parents made a regular pile of split wood, laid the corpse upon it, and burnt it; while the pile was burning they stood gravely looking on, without any lamentation, but when it was burnt down they gathered up the bones with many tears, put them into a box, and carried them away with them; and this inclination which all ignorant people have to superstition and amusing ceremonies, gives the popish priests a great advantage in recommending their religion beyond what the regularity of the Protestant doctrine allows of.

"Queen Anne sent over a missionary to reside among the Mohawks, and allowed him a sufficient subsistence from the privy purse; she sent furniture for a chapel, and a valuable set of plate for the communion-table; and (if I am not mistaken) the like furniture and plate for each of the other nations, though that of the Mohawks was only applied to the use designed. The common-prayer, or at least a considerable part of it, was translated also into their language, and printed; some other pieces were likewise translated for the minister's use: namely, an exposition of the Creed, Decalogue, Lord's Prayer, and Church Catechism, and a discourse on the Sacraments. But as that minister was never able to attain any tolerable knowledge of their language, and was naturally a heavy man, he had but small success; and his allowance failing by the Queen's death, he left them. These nations had no teacher from that time, till within these few years, that a young gentleman, out of pious zeal, went voluntarily among the Mohawks. He was at first entirely ignorant of their language, and had no interpreter except one of the Indians, who understood a little English, and had, in the late missionary's time, learned to read and write in his own language. He learned from him how to pronounce the words in the translations which had been made for the late missionary's use. He set up a school to teach their children to read and write their own language; and they made surprizing proficiency, considering their master did not understand their language. I happened to be in the Mohawk country, and saw several of their performances. I was present at their worship, where they went through some part of the Common Prayer with great decency. I was likewise present several times at their private devotions, which some of them performed duly, morning and evening. I had also many opportunities of observing the great regard they had for this young man; so far, that the fear of his leaving them made the greatest restraint on them, with which he threatened them, after they had been guilty of any offence. Soon after that time, this gentleman went to England, received orders, and was sent by the Society, missionary to Albany, with liberty to spend some part of his time among the Mohawks.

"I had lately a letter from him, dated the 7th of December, 1641, in which he writes as follows: 'Drunkenness was so common among them, that I doubt if there was one grown person of either sex free from it; seldom a day passed without some, and very often forty or fifty, being drunk at a time. But I found they were very fond of keeping me among them, and afraid I should leave them, which I made use of to good purpose, daily threatening them with my departure, in case they did not forsake that vice, and frequently requiring a particular promise from them singly; by which means (through God's blessing) there was a gradual reformation; and I know not that I have seen above ten or twelve persons drunk among them this summer. The women are almost all entirely reformed, and the men very much. They have entirely left off divorces, and are legally married. They are very constant and devout at church and family devotions. They have not been known to exercise cruelty to prisoners, and have in a great measure left off going a fighting, which I find the most difficult, of all things, to dissuade them from. They seem also persuaded of the truths of Christianity. The great inconveniency I labor under, is the want of an interpreter, which, could I obtain for two or three years, I should hope to be tolerably master of their language, and be able to render it easier to my successor.'

"This gentleman's uncommon zeal deserves, I think, this public testimony, that it may be a means of his receiving such encouragement as may enable him to pursue the pious purposes he has in view.

"The Mohawks, were they civilized, may be useful to us many ways, and, on many occasions, more than any of our own people can be; and this well deserves to be considered.

"There is one custom their men constantly observe, which I must not forget to mention; that if they be sent with any message, though it demand the greatest despatch, or though they bring intelligence of any imminent danger, they never tell it at their first approach, but sit down for a minute or two, at least, in silence, to recollect themselves before they speak, that they may not show any degree of fear or surprize, by an indecent expression. Every sudden repartee, in a public treaty, leaves with them an impression of a light inconsiderate mind; but, in private conversation, they use, and are delighted with brisk, witty answers, as we can be. By this they show the great difference they place between the conversations of man and man, and nation and nation; and in this, and a thousand other things, might well be an example to the European nations."

This testimony of Mr. Cadwalader Colden, who had often been a commissioner to the Iroquois during the reign of George II., received from them the compliment of adoption; and as he was familiar with their history and customs, is entitled to all consideration. It is only to be regretted that he had not proceeded a little farther in the delineation of their character and institutions.

One of their most remarkable customs, and that which has perplexed civilians most to understand, is their descent of chiefs. And it is this trait that, more fully than any other, marks their jealousy of a privileged class in their government. The chiefs, who are never any more than the exponents of the popular will of the warriors, had only a life-tenure. The office died with the man. The descent was strictly in the female line. It was not the wife, but the sister next in birth to the chief, who transmitted the chieftainship. Her eldest male issue was the presumptive chief of the band; but even this required the ratification of the popular voice, and it was necessary that a public council should yield their assent. These councils had all the political effect of an installation. Crown or badge of office there was none. The simple garb of his ancestors marked the incumbent. If any difference was perceivable, it was rather in the neglect of everything like decoration. Feathers of honor he might wear, if these were the rewards of his bravery. But they were the every-day right of the warrior, and not the honor of the rakowana, chief, or sachem. At every mutation by the death of a chief, the hereditary line was broken, and returned into the body of the tribes. There was, therefore, no tendency to the aristocratic feature of feudalism, but the utmost jealousy to guard against it. It was only in the totemic tie, that the descent by blood-relationship was recognised, and carried the witness in itself; and this was equally strong in the female as the male. Totemically thus — a turtle totem denoted the brother or sister of a turtle family; a wolf totem of the wolf family; a bear totem of the bear family, &c. The appeal to the totem was a testimony unquestioned. It was a point of proud but stoical honor, and it was a testimony never doubted, whether in the social circle or wigwam, the grand council, or in life's last extremity at the stake; and it was recorded by a representative device at the grave.

The history of the world shows that it is one of the tendencies of bravery, to cause woman to be respected, and to assume her proper rank and influence in society. This was strikingly manifested in the history of the Iroquois. They are the only tribes in America, north and south, so far as we have any accounts, who gave to woman a conservative power in their political deliberations. The Iroquois matrons had their representative in the public councils; and they exercised a negative, or what we call a veto power, in the important question of the declaration of war. They had the right also to interpose in bringing about a peace. It did not compromise the war policy of the cantons, if the body of the matrons expressed a decision in favor of peace. This was an extraordinary feature in a government organized on the war principle, and among a race which, both in the domestic circle and in the corn-field, laid heavy burdens on their females.

To such a pitch of power had the Iroquois confederacy reached on the discovery of New York, in 1609, that there can be little doubt that if the arrival of the Europeans had been delayed a century later, it would have absorbed all the tribes situated between the gulf of St. Lawrence and the mouth of the Ohio, if not to the gulf of Mexico. Such a process of extension was in rapid progress when they were first supplied with fire-arms by the northern colonists; and as this was in advance of the western tribes, the result was, for a long time, promoted by it.

In a map prefixed to Mr. Colden's History, published in 1747, the most southerly and westwardly points of their influence are placed at the mouth of the Wabash, and along the eastern shores of lake Michigan. In the elaborate map of Lewis Evans, published by Benjamin Franklin in 1755, the country subject to their sway is called "Aquanishuonig;" and reaches, on the map, from the Wabash to the St. Lawrence, including both sides of lakes Erie and Ontario. It extends to the source of the Illinois, and to the mouth of the Ohio; and tradition denotes[1] that they extended their warlike incursions even to the entrance of lake Superior. Not that they had permanently conquered all this region, but they had rendered their name a terror to the tribes who lived far west, as well as east of the Alleghanies. They drove the Eries from the Ohio valley and the south shore of lake Erie, together with their allies, the so-called Neuter Nation of Canada; gave the Mississagues a location there, and reserved most of it as hunting-grounds. Not a village was suffered permanently to exist along the east banks of the Ohio, from the Monongahela to the Kentucky river; a territory which they ceded to Great Britain.[2] They pushed their forays along the entire range of the Alleghany mountains, through Pennsylvania, Maryland, West Virginia, and North Carolina, to Fort Hill, in South Carolina, the residence of the late Hon. John C. Calhoun, which was a Seneca station; waging the most inveterate war against the Catawbas and Cherokees. From the tables of Mr. Jefferson, their kindred, the Nottoways, Meherrins, and Toteloes, occupied the mountainous districts of Virginia;[3] under the name of Tuscaroras, they spread over the interior of North Carolina. The pride and arrogance with which they addressed the nations whom they had subjugated east of the mountains, particularly on the waters of the Susquehanna and Delaware, has no parallel in history. "Cousins," said Canassatego, addressing the once proud Lenno-Lenapes, at the treaty of Lancaster, in 1744, "let this belt of wampum serve to chastise you. You ought to be taken by the hair of the head and shaked severely, 'till you recover your senses, and become sober. You don't know on what ground you stand, nor what you are doing. Our brother Onas's[1] cause is very just and plain, and his intentions are to preserve friendship. On the other hand, your cause is bad, and your heart far from being upright. You are maliciously bent on breaking the chain of friendship with our brother Onas and his people. We have seen with our eyes, a deed signed by nine of your ancestors above fifty years ago, for this very land; and a release signed not many years since by some of yourselves, and chiefs now living, to the number of fifteen or upwards. But how came you to take upon you to sell land at all? We conquered you; we made women of you! You know you are women, and can no more sell land than women; nor is it fit you should have the power of selling lands, since you would abuse it. This land that you claim is gone through your guts! You have been furnished with clothes, meat, and drink, by the goods paid you for it; and now you want it again, like children as you are! But what makes you sell land in the dark? Did you ever tell us that you had sold this land? Did we ever receive any part — even the value of a pipe-shank — from you for it? * * * You have told us a blind story! * * * You act a dishonest part, not only in this, but other matters. Your ears are ever open to slanderous reports about our brethren! You receive them with as much greediness as lewd women receive the embraces of bad men; and for all these reasons we charge you to remove instantly — we don't give you the liberty to think about it. You are women; take the advice of a wise man, and remove immediately. You may return to the other side of the Delaware, where you came from.[2] But we do not know whether, considering how you have demeaned yourselves, you will be permitted to live there; or whether you have not swallowed that land down your throats, as well as the land on this side. We therefore assign you two places to go to, either to Wyoming or Shamokin; you may go to either of these places, and then we shall have you more under our own eye, and see how you behave. Don't deliberate; but remove away, and take this belt of wampum."[3] This is the language of a conqueror flushed with success, and conscious of power. It is a proof of this power to add, that the mandate was immediately obeyed. The Delawares went to Shamokin.

---

[1] Vide Oneota.

[2] Imlay's History of Kentucky.

[3] Notes on Virginia, p. 152.

After a pause, during which the speech was translated into the Iroquois and Delaware languages, Canassatego resumed his speech; and taking a string of wampum in his hand, added further, "After our just reproof and absolute order to depart from the land, you are now to take notice of what we have further to say to you.

---

[1] William Penn.

[2] In the West.

[3] Colden's History of the Five Nations, p. 79.

This string of wampum serves to forbid you, your children, and grand-children, to the latest posterity for ever, meddling in land affairs; neither you, nor any who shall descend from you, are ever hereafter to presume to sell any land. For which purpose you are to preserve this string, in memory of what your uncles have this day given you in charge. We have some other business to transact with our brethren, and therefore depart the council; and consider what has been said to you." Thus finally terminated the sceptre of Lenape rule.

Such reproachful language was not often heard in the Iroquois councils. It reminds one of the ironical speech of Garangula to the Governor-General of Canada, on the failure of his vaunted expedition to the Onondaga country. They always deliberated with the utmost calmness, and uttered their opinions and sentiments with emphasis and gesture, but in language lofty and dignified. That they were sometimes pathetic, is proved by the speech of the Cayuga chief, Logan, the son of Skellelamus.

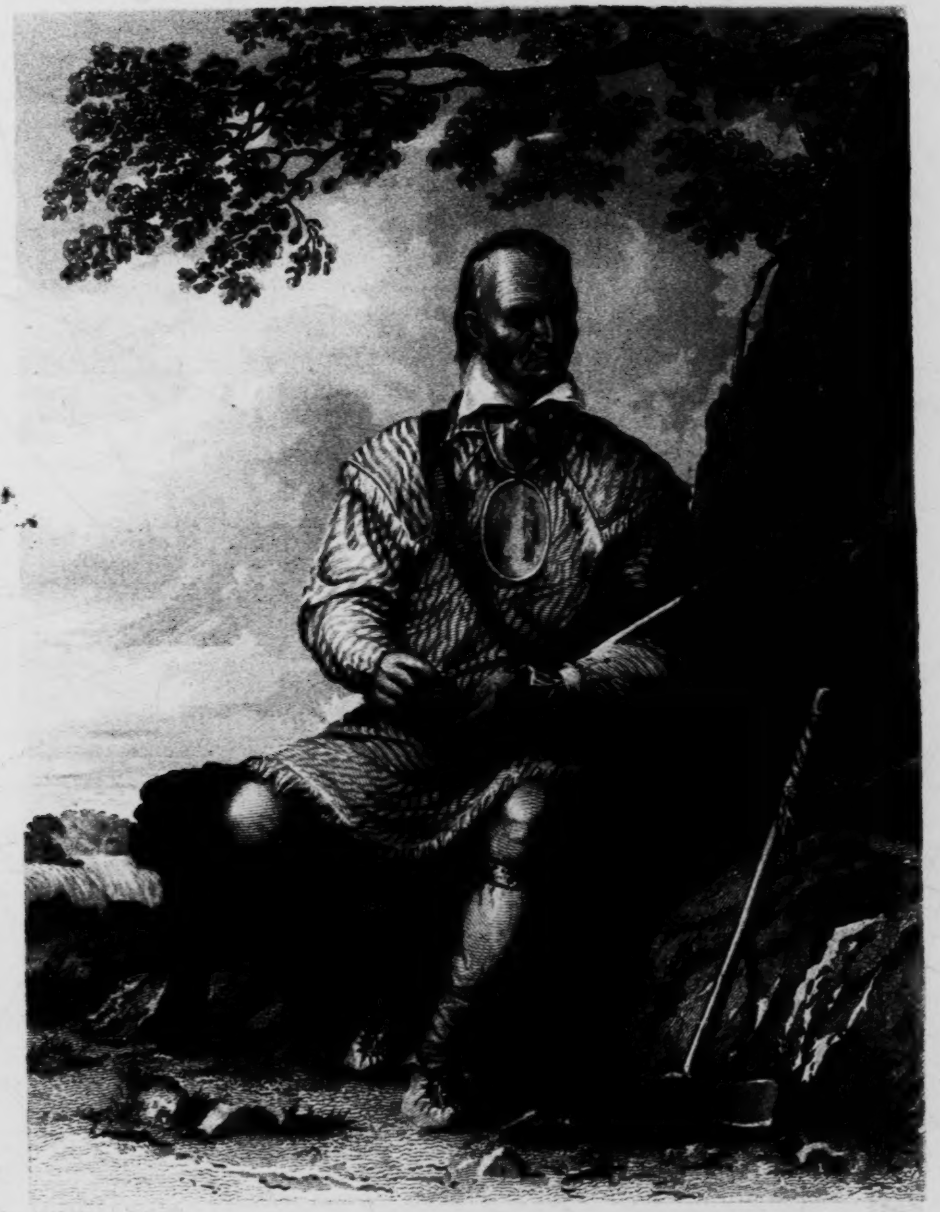
The Oneida sachem, Skenando, electrified the moral community, when an hundred years had cast their frosts around his noble and majestic brow, by views of the tenure and destinies of life, which were worthy of the lips of Job.

For readiness to perceive the true position of the Red Race, as civilization gathered around them, curtailed their hunting-grounds, and hemmed up their path in various ways; for quickness of apprehension, and breadth of forecast, and appositeness and sharpness of reply, no one of the leading groups of tribes of North America has equalled the Seneca orator Red Jacket, or Sagoyawata. (Plate 25.) Many persons of enlarged and cultivated minds are yet living, who have listened with admiration to his manly and eloquent orations.

Such were the Iroquois; and if this celebrated league had done nothing else to prove their capacities as thinking men, the instances alluded to, would justify us in pronouncing them to present some of the higher qualities of mind.

It is the observation of De Witt Clinton, a man of lofty intellect, and who is regarded as having been one of the greatest benefactors of his native State, that the Iroquois were the only people of the Indian stocks who possessed true eloquence.

There is more than one point of resemblance in this primitive Indian government to the principles of the articles of confederation which were first adopted for our own Union. In it, the States, like the Iroquois cantons, were all-powerful. And the same principles had made them so; namely, that military importance in the contest that had been just triumphantly finished. But there was one resemblance in their principles of union, which assimilates strongly with our present system. This is the principle of its extension. Every new canton which was added to the original Mohawk league, augmented its strength and durability, and took nothing away. When, after long experience of the working of the league, the five cantons admitted a sixth in the Tuscaroras, they were still more formidable to the surrounding nations. This was in 1712. Eleven years afterwards, in a full council at Albany, they received the seventh nation, in the



RED JACKET.

[illegible]

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

Necariages of Michillimacinac and Lake Huron; a people from whom they had been estranged since the first settlement of Lower Canada. They also received the Mississagues into their league, making the eighth nation. This was a people of five castles and eight hundred and fifty men.[1] They were Algonquins, but faithfully adhered to the confederacy, and fought with them against their enemies to the end.[2] They first lived, agreeably to Cusic, north of the Niagara river, but moved north, occupying the head of Lake Ontario in Canada, where their descendants still live. The Iroquois also brought off, and adopted the Tutelos from Meherrin river in Virginia,[3] and some other tribes of the Monahoac stock.[4] Their error appears to be this; that they did not admit to their confederacy, with equal rights, all the nations whom they conquered; whereby they would have become a most powerful confederacy, stretching from the banks of the Mississippi to the St. Lawrence. This error appears to have been almost perceived and announced by Cannassatego, when he gave that remarkable piece of advice to the Colonial Commissioners at Lancaster, in July, 1744; recommending union and agreement among themselves, and stating that this had been the cause of the Iroquois strength and power; a declaration, which, so far as the thought-work goes, may, indeed, for its political wisdom, be conceded to be the germ of our American Union.

---

[1] Colden, p. 177. London ed. A. D. 1747.

[2] The late Mr. Gallatin is wholly mistaken in classifying the Mississagues as Iroquois, as he does in Am. Eth. Trans., Vol. II.

[3] Jefferson's Notes on Virginia, p. 125. London ed. 1788.

[4] Ibid. p. 155.

[5] Colden, p. 149. London ed. 1747.

[6] The Eries, who appear to have lived on the Ohio, and spoke a cognate language, were exterminated or driven off south. See § V. present volume, where this subject is discussed.

2. REPLIES TO INQUIRIES RESPECTING THE INDIAN TRIBES OF OREGON AND CALIFORNIA.

BY GEORGE FALCONER EMMONS, U. S. N.

[REMARK. — We prefix to this paper a quarto Map of Oregon, &c., which has been reduced by Captain Eastman from a large sheet prepared by him from the later manuscript authorities, for the daily administration of the Office of Indian Affairs.]

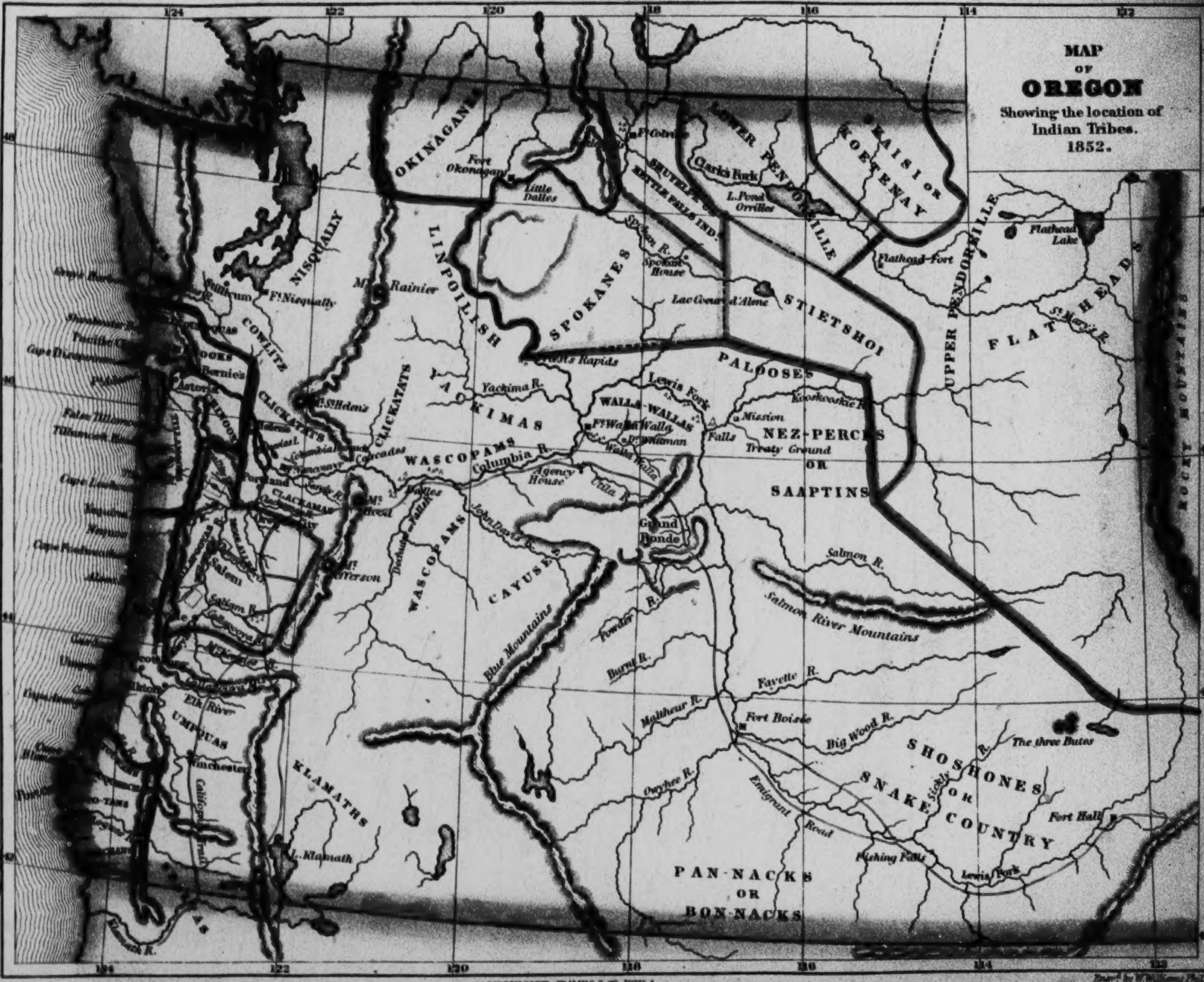
BUREAU OF CONSTRUCTION, &c.,
Washington, D. C., May 20th, 1852.

SIR: — Your printed circular calling for information in relation to the Indian tribes within the United States, is before me. The subject is one of such growing interest, independent of the duty we all owe in endeavoring to supply a void in the history of mankind, that I feel more regret than I can well express, that circumstances beyond my control prevented me from gaining much interesting information while among the tribes west of the Rocky Mountains. It was one of the primary objects of the expedition confided to me by the commander of the United States Exploring Expedition, in 1841, in passing through Oregon and Upper California, to the Bay of San Francisco.

As will appear upon reference to the printed Instructions in the fifth volume of the Narrative of the Exploring Expedition, and although my instructions, independent of this, gave me enough to do, it was owing mainly to the ague and fever that attacked nearly every officer and man in the party, and the subsequent hostility of the tribes, that I now find myself unable to answer many of the questions embraced in your circular.

Such as I can answer, I will now take again in the order propounded, confining myself to the following tribes, whose approximate numbers and localities are sufficiently described in the Narrative of the Exploring Expedition, Vol. V.

These names are variously spelled by different travellers, and the numbers differently estimated by those whose opportunities of forming a judgment were less favorable than those at the command of the different parties composing the Exploring Expedition. Therefore in these two particulars I shall copy verbatim from the above work: —



MAP OF OREGON

Showing the location of Indian Tribes.
1852.

OKINAGANES
LOWER PENDORRILLE
SKAISI OR KOETENAY
SKUYELPI OR KETTLE FALLS IND.
UPPER PENDORRILLE
FLAT HEADS
ROCKY MOUNTAINS
NISQUALLY
LINPOILISH
SPOKANES
STIETSHOI
PALOOSES
COWLITZ
CLICKATATS
YACKIMAS
WALLA-WALLAS
NEZ-PERCES OR SAAPTINS
WASCOPAMS
CAYUSES
CLACKAMAS
UMPQUAS
KLAMATHS
SHOSHONES OR SNAKE COUNTRY
PAN-NACKS OR BON-NACKS
Fort Okonagan
Little Dalles
Ft Colville
Clark's Fork
L. Pond Orrilles
Flathead Fort
Flathead Lake
St Mary's R.
Spokan R.
Spokan House
Lac Coeur d'Alene
Mt Rainier
Ft Nisqually
Mt St Helens
Yachima R.
Lewis Fork
Ft Walla Walla
Walla Walla
Mission
Falls
Kooskooskie R.
Treaty Ground
Columbia R.
Agency House
Utila R.
Cascades
Dalles
Mt Hood
Mt Jefferson
John Day's R.
Grand Ronde
Salmon R.
Salmon River Mountains
Blue Mountains
Powder R.
Burnt R.
Malheur R.
Fayette R.
Fort Boisee
Big Wood R.
The three Butes
Fort Hall
Owyhee R.
Emigrant Road
Fishing Falls
Lewis Fork
Astoria
Portland
Salem
Salem R.
Elk River
Winchester
California Trail
L. Klamath
Klamath R.
Cape Disappointment
False Tillamook
Cape Lookout
Cape Foulweather
Cape Orford
124
122
120
118
116
114
112
48
46
44
42

LIPPINCOTT, GRAMBO & Co. PHILA

Engd by W. Williams Phila

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS

NAMED IN THE ORDER OF MY ROUTE THROUGH THE COUNTRY.

TRIBES.	NUMBER.	LOCALITY, ETC.
Chinooks	209	Mouth of the Columbia river, north side, including some 50 miles interior.
Klatsops	220	Mouth of the Columbia river, south side, and 20 or 30 miles of sea-coast.
Chickeeles	700	North and east of ditto.
Kilamukes	400	South and east of ditto, extending to the coast. Number, I think, overrated.
Callapuyas	600	Valley of the Willamette river.
Umpquas	400	do. Umpqua do. going south.
Rogues or Rascally	500	do. Rogue do. do
Klamets[1]	300	do. Klamet do. do.
Shaste[1]	500	Mountainous country and dividing ridge between Oregon and California.
Kinkla	500[2]	On Destruction river and head-waters of the Sacramento river.
Sacramento	8000[2]	Valley of the Sacramento and its lower tributaries.
Tula or Tulara		

N. B. These numbers, I presume, were intended to embrace the remnant of several other tribes also occupying this country.

"1.—What facts can be stated, from tradition, respecting the origin, early history, and migrations of the tribe; and what are the principal incidents known, or remembered since A. D. 1492?"

Relating to their origin, early history, migrations, &c., I could learn nothing from those I communicated with worthy of repetition.

The fact, now well established, that Japanese vessels have been driven across the Pacific Ocean upon our north-west coast, will, of course, suggest but one way that our country may have been first populated.

"2.—By what name are they called among themselves, and by what name, or names, are they known among other tribes; and what is the meaning of these respective names? State the various synonyms. Where did the tribe dwell, at the earliest date; what was its probable number, and the extent of territory occupied or claimed by it? How has their location, numbers, and the extent of lands or territories, varied since the earliest known period; and what are the general facts, on these heads, at the present time?"

The names of the tribes here given are the same as known by themselves in every instance, I believe, but that of the Rogues, who were thus named by the whites, for several good reasons.

---

[1] For these tribes, see later estimates of Mr. Gibbs, p. 171: also, § XV. Statistics of Population.

[2] My own estimate.—G. F. E.

It will be observed that the principal river is generally of the same name as that of the tribe occupying the country through which it runs.

From their clanish habits, and peculiarities of language, I should conclude that they have seldom changed their location. Wars, too, so common among savage tribes, of which these are no exception, would naturally tend to confine each tribe within its original boundaries.

Their numbers must have been very much more numerous formerly, than appears by the preceding table, from their rapid decline since the whites have come among them.

The extent of territory claimed is usually bounded by rivers, mountains, prëeminent rocks or trees; and although their landed possessions do not appear to cause them much solicitude, I recollect upon one occasion a chief of the Callapuya came to my camp, and after pointing out the tops of certain hills, and other natural objects, as the boundaries of his country, expressed a hope that this would not be taken from them by the whites. Poor Indian! his country is already in the possession of the white man, or "pale-face," but it is very doubtful if he has lived to see it.

"4. — Is there any idea developed among them by tradition, allegory, or otherwise, that white people, or a more civilized race, had occupied the continent before them?"

They have allegorical traditions in regard to their origin, &c., and a confused idea of dates; I cannot now repeat anything in a tangible form.

"9. — Have they suffered any great calamity in past times, as from great floods, or wild beasts, from epidemic or pestilential diseases, or from fierce and sudden assailants?"

They have suffered great losses from the epidemic diseases since their first intercourse with the whites, which have exterminated whole tribes.

The introduction of the small-pox they attribute to the Hudson Bay Companies: the disease was very fatal to them in the year 1839.

The ague and fever, which also proves fatal to many every year, they say was never known among them until the year 1830, when an American captain, by the name of Dominis, arrived at Astoria, in a vessel, from the Sandwich islands; for these, and sundry other bodily complaints of modern date that they are subject to, they attribute altogether to the whites, whom, they appear to believe, have the power of withholding or communicating these diseases to them.

Hence one cause of their avowed hostility to the whites, and particularly to my party's passing through their country; to prevent which I received warnings by runners from the Shasté nation, long before I reached the Umpqua river, with threats of annihilation if I attempted it.

"9.—Does the tribe speak one or more dialects, or are there several languages spoken, or incorporated in it, requiring more than one interpreter, in transacting business with them?"

Of "Languages," &c.—I would respectfully refer you to the philological work of the Exploring Expedition, edited by a gentleman eminently qualified to do this subject justice, and whose opportunities were probably superior to those of any officer in the expedition.

"16.—What are the chief rivers in the territory or district occupied by the tribe? State their length, general depth and breadth—where they originate—how far they are navigable—what are their principal rapids, falls, and portages—at what points goods are landed, and into what principal or larger waters they finally flow."

The principal rivers traversing the country through which my route lay, were the Columbia, Willamette, Umpqua, Rogue's, Klamet, and Sacramento; the first and last only being navigable for large vessels for any considerable distance. All of these have their tributaries, that may be navigated by boats, and in several instances are worthy of the name of rivers. With the exception of the Willamette, that takes its rise to the southward, and flows north into the Columbia, their general direction is westerly to the Pacific ocean, until you pass the dividing ridge near the Shasté mountains, when you come upon the head-waters of Destruction river, that flow south into the Sacramento, the latter continuing in a south-westerly course to the bay of San Francisco.

"17.—Are there any large springs, or lakes, in the district, and what is their character, size, and average depth; and into what streams have they outlets?"

Passed many small lakes and ponds—most of them quite shoal. One place in Oregon—now quite filled up by the washings from the surrounding hills—was pointed out to me as formerly a lake, by an old gentleman by the name of McKay, who said he had formerly caught beaver there for the Company of John Jacob Astor, about 1811 and '12.

Springs are also quite numerous in the mountain districts; temperature generally between 40° and 50° F. Discovered one strongly chalybeate, south of the Shasté Peak. The gold region has since been discovered to extend north of this.

"18.—What is the general character of the surface of the country occupied by the tribe?"

The general features of this country, lying between a range of mountains running nearly parallel with the coast and the latter, and known as the President's range, is extremely mountainous after leaving the valley of the Willamette, until you descend into the valley of the Sacramento.

Immediately skirting the rivers, and occasionally removed from them, we passed over small prairie bottoms of rich soil; independent of which, but a small portion of the country is susceptible of cultivation. Neither wood nor water are very abundant, except in particular localities; the first, I think, is owing mainly to the annual fires set by the Indians; and the latter, evidently, to the annual drought, which dries up large streams of water.

With proper irrigation, all grains and vegetables that are common with us, would doubtlessly thrive; this, to a limited extent, has already been proven, through the exertions of our missionary establishment and the Hudson's Bay Company, in Oregon, and through Captain Sutter, and more recent American settlers, in Upper California; but in no instance, that I am aware of, through the efforts or industry of the Indians themselves.

"19.—Are cattle and stock easily raised—do the prairies and woods afford an abundant supply of herbage spontaneously—are wells of water to be had at moderate depths?"

Cattle and stock thrive admirably; sheep require watching on account of the wolves, &c. Wells were uncommon; two that I saw in Oregon were very deep—perhaps thirty feet to the surface of the water.

"21.—Are there any extensive barrens, or deserts, marshes or swamps, reclaimable or irreclaimable, and what effects do they produce on the health of the country, and do they offer any serious obstacles to the construction of roads?"

In my route, there were no very extensive barrens nor swamps; some of the latter, I have no doubt, had an unfavorable effect upon the health of the country, and might be reclaimed without much difficulty. They offer no serious obstacles to the construction of roads; but to make the latter suitable for travel in vehicles, and the transportation of goods, &c., much grading and bridging will be necessary.

"23.—Is the climate generally dry or humid? Does the heat of the weather vary greatly, or is it distributed, through the different seasons, with regularity and equability? What winds prevail? Is it much subject to storms of rain with heavy thunder, or tornadoes, and do these tempests of rain swell the streams so as to overflow their banks, and destroy fences and injure the crops? State the general character of the climate, giving meteorological tables if you can."

The six months' almost continual rain from fall to spring, and the remainder drought, will suggest the answer to the first part of this question. The variation of temperature within short intervals is greater than I have ever experienced elsewhere; for instance, the thermometer would stand at 100° F. during the heat of the day, in the shade, and descend to 32° or freezing, the same night. Upon one occasion, on the bottom-land of the Klamet, in about latitude 42° west, it rose to 110° F. at meridian, in the shade. Had but little reason to suppose that this country was subject to frequent storms, tempests, or tornadoes; during the summer and fall months only experienced one, and this unattended with rain, thunder, or lightning; it happened in the month of October, while we were encamped near the Shasté mountains, and prostrated some giant trees. The country has not the appearance of being much subject to inundations, except on the navigable waters of the Columbia, Sacramento, and San Joaquin.

My route was evidently too far to the eastward, or too near the ridge of mountain already alluded to, to feel the influence of the regular land and sea breezes; and I did not discover that there was any prevailing wind.

Would respectfully refer to the Report of the Geologist, Mr. Dana, who accompanied me, for answers to the two next questions. See Vol. V., Ex. Ex.

"26.—What is the general character and value of the animal productions of the district? What species of quadrupeds most abound? State their number and kind, and what effect the fur trade has had in diminishing the value of the country for the purposes of hunting, and what species still remain?"

Elk, deer, bear—white, black, and grizzly; panther, calamenul, wolf, fox, raccoon, rabbit, porcupine, pole-cat, mountain sheep, beaver, otter (land and sea), squirrel, weasel, &c., are among their wild animals; the buffalo not having yet crossed the Rocky Mountains. For a more detailed account upon this subject, I must refer to the Naturalist who accompanied me on this expedition, Mr. T. R. Peale; whose work I believe has not yet been published.

An animal of a different species from any before seen in California has been taken by a Mr. Hill of Nevada. It is called the California cat. It is described as being very beautiful, and bearing a resemblance to the marten; differing from it, however, in color, being a dark grey, encircled with bright brown rings, similar to the raccoon. The fur is very soft and beautiful. Its body is about the size of the grey squirrel, but about fifteen inches long, and its tail six[illegible] or seventeen inches long. 1852.

The fur trade has evidently diminished the value of the country for hunting purposes; some of the most valuable animals having already become rare in many portions of the country, where, thirty-five years ago, they were quite numerous.

The beaver is among the first to disappear.

"31.—Are they expert in drawing maps or charts of the rivers, or sections of country which they inhabit?"

Should judge not. I endeavored upon more than one occasion to obtain some information of the unexplored country adjoining them by tracings in the sand; but could not.

"32.—Are there any antique works, or remains of any kind, which are the result of human industry in ancient times, in your district?"

Saw upon the tops of some of the hills in the Callapuya and Umpqua country, small mounds of earth, and occasionally a pile of stones, seldom exceeding three feet in height. Suppose them commemorative of some event.[1] Upon some pre-eminent peaks found the stones so arranged as to adapt the place to a look-out station, and occasionally detected the Indians occupying such positions.

"34.—Has the progress of settlements west of the Alleghanies, and the felling of trees and clearing up of lands, disclosed any ancient embankments, ditches, or other works of earth or stone, having the character of forts, or places of military defence?"

Their only mode of fortifying, that came to my observation, was upon the banks of the Columbia river; by a circumvallation of palisades, placed close together, from ten to fifteen feet high, and between which there was occasionally a small loop-hole through which they could discharge their missiles. This fortification was so constructed as to afford those inside a covered way to the water or river.

"37.—Does the level surface of the prairie country, which is now partially over-run by forest, preserve any traces of a plan or design as of ancient furrows or garden-beds, which appear to have been abandoned at a definite period?"

None that I could discover. They would necessarily have to be very permanent, to remain long in existence in this country, where the soil abrades so much.

"39.—What is the general character of the antique implements, ornaments, or utensils of earthen-ware found in your district of the country?"

Saw but few implements of any kind. The water-tight basket, of various sizes and shapes, woven out of green bark or grass, is used by the tribes about the Columbia for almost all domestic purposes. I have been told that they even boil water in these, but this I never saw. They now begin to substitute our iron and tin vessels.

"40.—If pipes are found, what is the material—is it stone, steatite, or clay—how are they formed—to admit a stem, or to be smoked without, and what are their shapes, sizes, and ornaments?"

Their pipes are carved out of stone, steatite, or clay, generally so formed as to admit a stem, which is usually a piece of reed; they vary in size and shape, are generally ornamented by some animal figure in high relief upon the bowl or stem, or both. The weight of some I should judge to be six or eight ounces.

"41.—How many kinds were there? Describe them."

The stone pestle and mortar I noticed particularly among the Californian Indians;

---

[1] See Mr. Gibbs's paper, p. 174, for remarks on these heaps of stone.

the latter was frequently a fixture in the bed of the mountain streams, where holes had been worn or excavated in the rocks, and where water was always at hand.

Their use appeared to be confined principally to pulverizing acorns, roots, and seeds, for the manufacture of bread-stuffs.

"42.—MANUFACTURE OF DARTS, &C. What was the process of manipulation of these often delicately wrought articles? What species of mineral bodies were chiefly used—and how was the cleavage of them effected? Did the art constitute a separate trade or employment? If darts abound, what is the material and size? Do they differ much in size and apparent object, some being for war and others for hunting; and are there any elongated in the shape of spear-heads, or javelins? How many species of darts, spears, &c., were there? Describe them, and give figures of the size and descriptions of the uses of them."

Could learn nothing satisfactory in relation to the process of manipulation, which I was most anxious to do, regarding this as the highest order of art that I discovered among any of the tribes named. As many of their arrows are not armed, I should infer that one kind was intended for war, and the other for hunting or practice; their length appears, in most cases, to be graduated by the length of the bow, which among these tribes seldom exceeds four feet; the material most used is the wood of the yew or red-cedar, the strength and elasticity of which is considerably increased by a covering of the sinew of animals, the string used in projecting their arrows being of the same material.[1]

From the samples of arrows already furnished you, you can judge of the material used in arming, obsidian being most common.

Spears, darts, or javelins are seldom seen. The bow and arrow is almost universally used in the mountains, while the tribes on the sea-coast are beginning to adopt our fire-arms.

"63.—How were accounts formerly kept? And how are they now kept? If the terms skin, plue, and abiminiqua, or others, are employed in the interior trade as synonymous, and as the standard of value, in which accounts are kept, what is the scale of the computation?"

The Hudson's Bay Company had established certain prices for certain skins, long previous to our arrival in the country; and having graduated these to certain articles of exchange, as, for example, a beaver-skin equal to one blanket, &c., skins, in the absence of coin, had become the currency of the country.

Their powers of computation, so far as my opportunities for judging, are very limited.

"96.—Are they moral, sober, and discreet?"

Neither "moral" nor "sober" when they can get liquor enough to get drunk; generally "discreet" in other things, but cannot be relied on as a rule.

---

[1] See Mr. Wyeth's paper, Vol. I., for a description and plate of the Oregon bow.

"99.—Have the purposes of commerce, since the discovery of the continent, had the effect to stimulate the hunters to increased exertion, and thus to hasten the diminution or destruction of the races of animals whose furs are sought?"

Should think it had, the Hudson's Bay Company having found it necessary to make a rule to forbid the Indians killing animals while young.

"100.—Have the different races of animals declined rapidly since the prosecution of the trade? What animals flee first, or diminish in the highest ratio, on the opening of a new district of the remote forest, to trade?"

They have. The beaver first disappears: the buffalo is not found in this country.

"101.—Are the lands, when denuded of furs, of comparatively little value to the Indians, while they remain in the hunter state? Is not the sale of such hunted lands beneficial to them?"

Should conclude they were, from their always following the game; and under such circumstances a sale ought certainly to benefit them; and it will of course depend very much upon the manner the equivalent is applied, whether it does.

"103.—If the diminution or failure of wild animals lead the native tribes to turn their industry to agriculture, is not the pressure of commerce on the boundaries of hunting an efficient cause in the progress of Indian civilization?"

The diminution of game, or failure of wild animals altogether, would not, I think, be a sufficient stimulant to induce these tribes to cultivate the soil, so long as they can procure enough fish, roots, or berries, to subsist upon.

To the second question, I answer yes. Third question, do.

"104.—What evil effects, of a moral character, have resulted from the progress of the Indian trade? Has not the traffic in ardent spirits been by far the most fruitful, general, and appalling cause of the depopulation of the tribes? How has the introduction of gunpowder and fire-arms affected the principles of the trade, and what has been the general influence of this new element of the means of destruction, on their history and civilization?"

The introduction of liquor, which, although a fruitful source of depopulation among all savages, has among these been so much interdicted by the wise efforts and controlling influence of the Hudson's Bay Company's officers, headed by Governor McLaughlin, that they have evidently suffered less from this than the diseases which they attribute to the whites.

"Gunpowder and fire-arms," although much sought after by these Indians, more especially those having frequent intercourse with the whites, have likewise been withheld from them, to a very considerable extent. Hence the effect has principally been, in adding to the powers of the former, and causing the latter to be more respectful and cautious in their intercourse. To this consciousness of the superiority of the whites, or their fear of fire-arms, I attribute having passed through the country of four hostile tribes, with only twenty-eight fighting men, without losing one.

After an interval of seven years, I visit this southern portion of my route again; mingle principally among the tribes inhabiting the Sierra Nevada mountains and valley of the Sacramento, which were regarded as friendly. The gold is discovered—*civilization* and liquor pour into the country—collisions between the white and red man, and murders, become common—and while but a week in the mines, have seen parties of whites going out with their rifles to hunt Indians, as in our country they are in the habit of hunting wolves and foxes.

This system, faithfully persevered in as it has been so far, will soon relieve Congress of legislating in their behalf; and only hasten the end, which all history teaches us could not be very remote, of this unfortunate and doomed race.

"105.—Are there any serious or valid objections, on the part of the Indians, to the introduction of schools, agriculture, the mechanic arts, or Christianity?"

I did not hear any objections raised, on the part of the Indians, to the introduction of schools, agriculture, the mechanic arts, or Christianity; but with the example of our missionaries before them, and their efforts in their behalf, but little had been effected up to the time of our visiting the country; and such, I predict, will be the result to the end of time.

"106.—What improvements can you suggest in the existing intercourse laws of the United States, as last revised, with the Indian tribes? Are these laws efficient in removing causes of discord, and preserving peace between the advanced bodies of emigrants or settlers on the frontiers, and the Indian tribes?"

I believe the general application of these laws, if properly enforced, would lead to good results; but it has not been my fortune to see their effect upon these tribes.

"111.—What provisions would tend more effectually to shield the tribes from the introduction of ardent spirits into their territories, and from the pressure of lawless or illicit traffic?"

I know of no law that will be likely to shield these Indians from the introduction of ardent spirits, so long as it is used by the whites. The operation of what we now call the "Maine Liquor Law," among those claiming the advantages of civilization, aids me in coming to this conclusion.

"112.—Is there any feature in the present system of negotiation with the tribes susceptible of amendment and improvement?"

What justice most demands for these Indians is, that they should have immediate protection from lawless whites, i. e. in their persons or lives; they require none in property, for they have none. And the country they occupy is, at the farthest, but a temporary home for them. And while we are discussing the propriety of Indian agencies and treaties, they are falling by tens, fifties, and hundreds, before the western rifle.

A war of extermination has been declared by the whites of Klamath against the Indians of that vicinity. A party of settlers and miners surrounded two lodges at Indian Ferry, and shot the men and several squaws, and destroyed the ranch, thirty to forty Indians having been killed.

"113.—Are the game, and wood, and timber, of the tribes subject to unnecessary or injurious curtailment or trespass from the intrusion of emigrating bands abiding for long periods on their territories? Are there complaints of any such trespasses?"

Think it quite possible — had not been — heard none.

"119. — What ideas have the Indians of property?"

They appear to have a distinct idea of their rights to territory and personal property; but I cannot go farther into this subject. In saying they have no property, as in my answer to question 112, I speak of them generally; some few have horses, others canoes, &c.; but the masses can carry all of their personal estate upon their backs without much inconvenience.

"159. — Are the ties of consanguinity strong?"

I had but few opportunities of judging of their ties of consanguinity, as my intercourse was almost altogether with the men separated from their families. But from the fact that one of the hired men of my party, who had an Indian wife, purchased a little squaw, about eight years of age, from her parents for two blankets, I infer that they are not always very strong. I merely mention this as a fact; not that I believe it to be a fair criterion of the general estimate in which they hold their offspring.

"160.—Does the hunter state insure abundance of food and clothing to the family? How is this state, in its domestic bearings, affected by polygamy, and what are the terms and relative affections of stepmothers and children? Are wives well treated under the actual state of the hunter life? Are they ever interfered with in the household affairs, and management of the domestic economy? Do they participate, in any degree, in the hunter's vocation, or forest labors, and to what extent?"

Between hunting and fishing, I not only believe that the country generally through which I passed will furnish sustenance for the Indians occupying it, but with their natural indolence, the very exercise necessary for obtaining this will best promote their health. My party lived principally on game for two months; and I seldom sent out a hunter until after we had encamped in the evening. At one camp on the Sacramento, six grizzly bears and two deer were shot. It is true, game will soon disappear as the country becomes settled; and so will the Indians.

Clothing they rarely trouble themselves with; and when they do, it is generally some old cast-off garment, or skin, that rather disfigures them than otherwise.

Although I understood their laws punish infidelity in their wives with death, I was told that polygamy among their chiefs was not uncommon.

So far as I could learn, their general treatment to their wives is kind; and they are not interfered with in their household affairs; but they are expected to perform a good share of forest labors, and assist in preparing the winter's stock of food.

See answer to next question.

"161.—Are the labors of husband and wife equally or unequally divided?"

The labor of husband and wife, so far as I could judge among these tribes, operates the reverse of what it usually does in civilized life. The latter, independent of the usual household duties, goes into the fields to collect seeds, roots, acorns, &c., and not unfrequently joins the husband in piscatory excursions, besides occupying her leisure time in preparing the winter supply of food.

Hence I infer that these savages are no exception to the rule that, generally, obtains elsewhere among their race, in exacting a full, if not unequal share, of labor from their wives.

The males, I believe, in all instances, manufacture their hunting and war implements, including their canoes; while the females manufacture fish-nets, baskets, mats, &c. I am unable to say how far the latter are permitted to take part in the councils of the nation. I have seen them congregated in squads, and busily employed in pounding acorns, and preparing their winter's food, while all the males of the tribe, including boys, were painted and armed, waiting an expected attack from a neighboring tribe.

"164.—Are their appetites regular or capricious, admitting of great powers both of abstinence and of repletion?"

Never saw them refuse anything good to eat; from what I heard, more than from my own observation, believe they possess great powers of abstinence and repletion.

"168.—Are the changes of location, fatigue, cold, and exposure to the vicissitudes of climate, felt in the general result of Indian population? What is the highest number of children born? Are twins common?"

Learned but little in relation to courtship and marriage; should judge that barrenness was not unfrequent, that twins were very uncommon, and that the general average of families did not exceed two children; all of which I should attribute, in a great degree, to their precarious and exposed mode of life, in connection with the vicissitudes of climate, &c., and to this may be added the unusual custom of the mother in weaning her children.

"169.—Are strangers announced before reaching the lodge, and how are visits ordered? Do parties of Indians stop at a short distance, and send word of their intended visit?"

Among the friendly tribes, Indians visited our camp without any ceremony or previous invitation; but among the hostile tribes, they usually despatched one or more, unarmed, to solicit or make known their wants. I recollect a green bush was held up, upon one occasion, as an emblem of peace.

"172.—Has the wife or husband the right of divorce?"

Have been informed that divorces might be effected upon the mutual consent of the parties.

"173.—At what age are children weaned?"

Children are sometimes not weaned until they are five years of age.

"173.—Is the domestic government left wholly to Indian mothers?"

The domestic government of children is left wholly with the mother.

"177.—What are the effects of the introduction and use of ardent spirits in the lodge, in deranging its order?"

The introduction of ardent spirits among these people is every way fatal to their peace, health, and happiness, and will finally prove one of the fruitful causes of their depopulation.

"179.—Have they degenerated into any customs or practices revolting to humanity? Do they eat human flesh, upon any occasion; and if so, under what circumstances?"

Saw no evidences of cannibalism, nor practices revolting to humanity.

"184.—What is the Indian mode of salutation?"

The only form of greeting I observed was the shaking of hands, which I believe to be imitation of the whites.

"187.—Is stoicism of feeling deemed a mark of manliness by the Indians?"

In common with the Indian race generally, stoicism and taciturnity are among the characteristics of these people, but in a less degree to the north than the south.

"188.—Is there extreme acuteness of the senses, and a nervous power of appreciating the nearness, or relative position of objects? These have excited general notice, but the subject is still a matter of curiosity and further information."

Quickness of sight, &c. One example. When we had progressed about half-way in our journey, and arrived in a mountainous portion of the country, where there was not the least sign of a path or trail to guide us, there arose some discussion among the pioneers of the party as to which was the right way. Not agreeing, it was finally left to an Indian woman who was the wife of one of the trappers belonging to my party; and who, with her husband, had, several years previously, accompanied a party of the Hudson's Bay Company, through this portion of the country. She did not hesitate a moment in pointing out the right way; and as an evidence that she knew where she was, she pointed to a crotched tree not far off, where she had placed a small stone some years previous as a land-mark; then riding up to the tree, produced the same.

"189.—Are the Indians very prone to be deceived by professed dreamers, or the tricks of jugglers, or by phenomena of nature, of the principles and causes of which they are ignorant?"

They are very superstitious, and liable to be deceived by jugglers or professed dreamers; but I very much question if they are more thoroughly bamboozled and mystified than a large portion of our own people are by another set of jugglers, who practise their art and make their living surrounded by all the intelligence and civilization of the age.

"190.—How do their physical powers compare with the strength of Europeans?"

The physical powers of some of the mountain tribes, whose muscles are considerably exercised, I should think would compare very favorably with those of Europeans. The prairie tribes are very inferior in this respect; but few of either knowing anything of the use of the axe or scythe. The men fast and endure fatigue well.

"191.—How is still hunting performed?"

Still hunting is usually performed by first getting to leeward of the game, and hunting to windward, as among many whites.

"193.—How is the antelope approached?"

The deer and antelope are frequently decoyed within the reach of their arrows, by an Indian secreting himself in the grass and then crawling towards the game, exhibiting only a small object on the end of a stick.

They also build large circular pens of bushes, having an entrance, to entrap large animals. Some that we saw, we concluded were constructed for wild cattle; and others, leaving a small outlet opposite to the entrance, we presume were intended for rabbits.

"194.—MODE OF DRYING AND CURING SKINS. This is a very important branch of the hunter's art, and it would be interesting to know the process, the various methods, and the amount of labor and time required."

The only process of preparing skins that I witnessed, was in smoking deer-skins which had been previously cured. This was accomplished by spreading them on sticks placed over a hole dug in the ground, at the bottom of which a slow fire had been previously kindled.

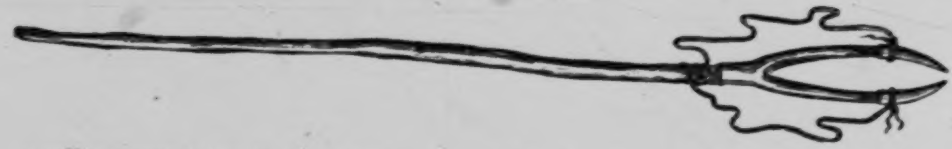
After keeping them in this position, and exposing both sides to the smoke for two days, they were then considered suitable to be made into clothing; of which several of the gentlemen of the party obtained suits before leaving Oregon; the object of smoking being to counteract the shrinkage in case of drying, after they have been wet by rain or in washing.

"195.—How many modes have they of taking fish?"

They catch fish by constructing weirs and dams, by scoop-nets, spearing, and by firing their arrows into them. In the running season, several tribes are in the habit of assembling at the Willamette Falls, for the purpose of laying in a supply for the season. They rig out planks and pieces of timber just below the falls, upon which they stand and catch the salmon in their scoop-nets, as they flirt out of the water in their attempts to overcome the cascade.

Their success with the bow and arrow, in this particular, may perhaps be regarded as demonstrating something more than mere physical skill in the use of this weapon.

Their spear, or fish-gig, is something like the following—not always straight—



a split or crotched pole, from ten to twenty feet long, armed at the spear end with deer's horn; which is intended to slip off the ends of the spear after they have entered the fish, when they are held by a lanyard attached to the pole just above the crotch, and by this means secure the fish as by a toggle.

"196.—Are the arts of hunting taught the children at an early age? Do they commence with archery? And at what age are the boys generally competent to engage in the active labors of the chase? Have women, thus left alone, or deserted, ever been known to practise the use of fire-arms?"

Archery is taught the Indian boys when young; I have seen those whom I did not believe over twelve years of age, very expert with the bow. I have also seen them, at about this age, armed and painted for war. Some Indian women belonging to my party carried fire-arms, as well as their husbands; and whenever we came to a bad place, where it was suspected Indians might be lying in wait for us, they took the precaution to examine their flint and priming.

"197.—What is the present state of the arms and implements used by the hunters of the tribe? Have they abandoned the bow and arrows, partially or altogether? Do they use the gun or rifle, in hunting deer or buffalo? Are they well supplied with ammunition, and at reasonable rates?"

Some of the tribes about the Columbia appear to have abandoned their own, and substituted fire-arms; but these have been but little used, owing partly to a scarcity of ammunition, and there being no necessity of their depending altogether upon them for their subsistence.

"198.—How are war-parties raised, subsisted, and marched?"

In regard to raising war-parties, I can only cite one instance, where it was accomplished in sight of our camp, by getting up a war-dance; which took place in the Rogue country, around a large fire, and lasted most of the night; resulting in their ambushing next morning, and final dispersion upon the near approach of the party.

"199.—How is the march of the party conducted after they are assembled? Do they move in a body, or separately in files or sub-parties?"

Have several times seen them in large bodies, without any particular order (unless it be *no* particular order) in marching; from their trails, I should judge they generally confine themselves to the order of single file. Sentinels were posted, when we encamped near their village on the head waters of the Sacramento.

"200.—To what extent do the chiefs exercise the duties and rights of officers?"

Chiefs evidently command, with the assistance of aids, or runners; but I could not discover evidences of any great degree of subordination and discipline among any of the tribes.

"201.—What are the usual devices of attack resorted to? What are the usual manœuvres?"

Their usual mode of attacking parties of whites, in which they have several times been successful, has either been by first straying in and about their camp in large numbers, unarmed, but pretending friendship, and watching for the first favorable opportunity to seize upon and massacre the whole.

Or to select the most favorable time and place to secrete themselves in ambush, and rise upon, and fire into, the party at a time most favorable to create terror and confusion, and, if possible, to separate the animals from their owners; to do which I am told that they usually wait until about one half of the party have got past, when they let fly their arrows, utter an indescribable yell, shake dried skins, &c. &c., and in this way usually secure many of the horses and packs, if they fail in destroying the party.

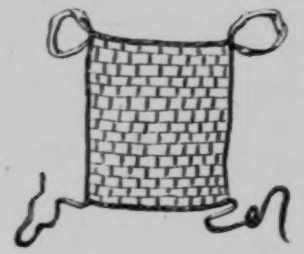
I could not learn that they had ever made a night attack.

"203.—Is personal servitude recognised? Are there any persons, who, having lost their liberty, or forfeited their lives, are reduced to slavery, or placed in the relative position of *peons*, or menials, who are compelled to work, and carry burdens?"

They have their slaves, male and female, who may, or may not, be captives, and whose relative position, I have been told, is much the same as that of a similar class among us, or the *peons* of Mexico.

"205.—What constitutes the ordinary dress of warriors, on a war excursion? What paints are used, and how are they applied to different parts of the person? What feathers are worn on the head, as marks of former triumphs? How is the hair dressed?"

For war costume, paint is freely used, the color principally red, applied to the face, arms, and chest. Feathers and leaves are also used to decorate the head. Some, I think, had the hair tied up in a knot; but my memory will not now permit me to enter into particulars; although these remarks, I believe, have a general application, I cannot, of my own knowledge, apply them but to one tribe that I saw in the Sierra Nevada mountains, some of whom were partially clad, while others were entirely naked. Some of these northern tribes wear, for their dress, a jacket of mail, something like the annexed cut, which covers them in front, and affords protection against arrows to the most vital portion of their bodies.

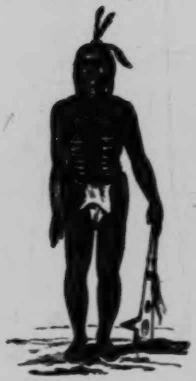


It is composed of thin parallel battens of very tough wood, woven together by a small cord; with arm-holes, and strings at the bottom corners, to fasten it around the waist.

"207.—How have these varied in the lapse of time? Are fire-arms substituted for the bow and arrow in war, as they are supposed to be, generally, in hunting? Are war-clubs, tomahawks, and knives, employed?"

Fire-arms are already substituted among the tribes having frequent intercourse with the whites. Knives are used. Saw no war-clubs nor tomahawks.

"208.—Is dancing a national trait of the tribe? Is it confined to males? How many kinds of dances are there?"



Saw but one war-dance, and one dance of honor. The first was among the Rogue Indians, and has already been alluded to; the latter was performed by Indian boys, on the banks of the Sacramento, in honor of our arrival; the latter were entirely naked, and averaging about twelve years each. Upon their body they had a variety of white chalk marks in front, something like those represented in the annexed cut. Think dancing was a characteristic mode of expressing popular feeling among all of these tribes. I did not hear of females being permitted to join in any of their dances.

"210.—How many kinds of games of chance exist? Is the tribe much addicted to these games?"

There are games of chance, where small sticks are used. I have only seen it practised by the males. The Valley Indians, and more particularly to the south, I think, are addicted to gambling. Never learned the modus operandi.

"211.—Deaths and burials. What are the characteristic facts connected with these subjects? When a person dies, how is the corpse dressed and disposed of?"

The custom appears very general among the Oregon tribes, when burying their dead, to deposit with the corpse, or upon a stick or pole alongside of it, some implement or utensil formerly used by the deceased; but as these relics are above ground, and perishable, they do not afford a means of judging of the state of the arts far back.

High and dry places are usually selected for burying-grounds. The bodies of some of the tribes on the Columbia river were placed in the bottom of canoes, in a prostrate posture, and then covered over with poles and pieces of split wood; after which the canoe was elevated from three to four feet above the ground, and then supported upon a scaffold; the direction of the canoe, or body, lying east and west, as near as I can recollect.

"212.—Are burials usually made in high and dry grounds? Are the bodies buried east and west; and if so, what reason is assigned for this custom?"

I noticed one or more exceptions to this general rule of selecting a high and prominent position for a burying-ground. Here, the bodies appeared to have been deposited upon the surface of the earth in a prostrate position, without any reference to the cardinal points of the compass, that I could discover, and then covered over with brush and poles; but not sufficiently to afford sure protection from the wild animals of the country, or carnivorous birds.

"227.—What are the materials, form, size, and mode of construction, of their lodges?"

Some of the tents or lodges about the Columbia, were constructed of upright posts, or pieces of split timber, and covered with skins.

Those in southern Oregon, and western California, were much more slightly constructed—generally of poles, sometimes lying horizontally upon one another; at others, forming a semi-circle, with both ends in the earth;[1] and again, by meeting at angles, to form a cone when in an upright position. All quite circumscribed in their dimensions, with a covering of poles and bushes; which must afford but poor shelter in the rainy seasons, and require frequent renewing.

"228.—Of what material are canoes or boats made, how are they constructed, and what is their usual capacity?"

All that I saw were made from one tree—dug out, and sharpened at either end. Those in Oregon were usually made from the pine tree, and some of them were large enough to carry twenty men.

Those in California were made from the pine, sycamore, and cotton-wood trees; about half the size, seldom so well finished, and never so well modelled, as the former. The larger canoes on the Columbia are sometimes propelled by short oars; all the others, by paddles which have long handles and short blades, and are steered by the same. All those I saw were probably excavated with modern implements obtained from the whites.

Those on the Rogue river were very roughly built—some of them scow fashion, with flat bottoms. Among the Klamāts, a bunch of bulrushes was used as a substitute, lashed up in the shape of a sailor's hammock, but considerably larger; upon which I take for granted the Indian sits astride, and makes use of it principally in spearing fish.

"230.—Is raw meat ever eaten? Do they use metallic cooking vessels, generally, and if so, what kinds?"

They generally cook both meat and fish; have been told that they have been known to eat both raw.

They begin to use metallic cooking-vessels about the Columbia. Their mode of life must make them irregular in their meals generally.

"231.—Method of curing meats?"

They dry meat by cutting it in thin slices, and placing it on horizontal poles several feet above the earth; and in smoking it, have then only to build a fire underneath.

---

[1] See a drawing in Vol. V. Exploring Expedition, p. 250.

Their fish is cured very much in the same way; after which it is pounded quite fine, and closely packed, to be used upon certain occasions, and for their winter's supply.

"232.—To what extent do the purely hunter tribes rely on these? Give a catalogue of them, denoting the various kinds of roots, truffles, berries, and nuts relied on."

Among the roots most used, are the kamass and bulrush.
" nuts " acorns and hazel-nuts.
" berries " arbūtus, service, whortle, and cranberries, black, straw, rasp, and goose-berries.
" seeds " pine cone, grass, &c.,

and doubtless many others I know not of. Fox grapes may be added to the above list; and in seasons of great scarcity, I have been told, they resort to certain barks. With a moderate degree of industry, there would be no occasion for the last resort in the country through which I passed.

"234.—What is the ordinary dress of the tribe, male and female?"

The ordinary dress of the tribes having frequent communication with the whites, particularly in north Oregon, was a mixture of coarse cloth, skins, old cast-off garments, and blankets which only covered a portion of their bodies, and set loosely upon their persons.[1] Going south from here, the amount of clothing diminishes; so that before you leave the Callapuya country, you frequently see the males with only a covering amidships. Continuing south until you arrive among the Umpquas, even this last excuse for a covering generally disappears; and you find them as nature has endowed them, apparently unconscious of what to us appears improper in such an exposé.

The females, however, appear more modest and shy, do not expose themselves unnecessarily; and those who have arrived at the age of puberty are seldom seen without some covering, extending from a little above to just below their hips, and equivalent to what is usually termed a "maro." This generally consists of a tasselled belt, made of bark, grass, and feathers, &c., that encircles the body just above the hips, and answers admirably for the purpose intended.

With the addition of a little tattooing, or an occasional daub of paint, nudity continues fashionable, until you arrive again within the influence of the whites on the Sacramento, which at this time did not extend above Captain Sutter's, or navigable waters.

"235.—Are there any other peculiar adaptations of dress to varying circumstances? Are there summer and winter dresses?"

---

[1] *Specimen of the Callapuya tribe, 5th vol. Exploring Expedition, p. 223.*

About the Columbia, the thick blanket is worn in the summer as well as winter; and farther south, I should think, some covering would be found almost as necessary in protecting them from the sun's rays in the summer, as from the cold blasts in the winter; but from the preceding answer it will be seen they seldom provide against either.

"236.—Do they attach a peculiar value to ornaments? What kinds of ornaments are most desired?"

They appear to value ornaments, although they exhibit but few. Among those worn are feathers of different colors, beads, buttons, porcupine quills, rings, bracelets, and shells.

The latter, I was told, constitutes a kind of currency among them. Some puncture the lobes of their ears, and others, but more rarely, the central or cartilagineous portion of their nasal organ, for the purpose of suspending some ornament.

"237.—Are there any native dye-stuffs, or roots or vegetables, employed in coloring parts of their clothing, or ornaments?"

They use paints, dyes, and ochres, or colored clays, either upon their persons, dress, or implements.

Some of them tattoo their faces, as well as their arms and breasts;[1] this habit is not confined entirely to the male, but, so far as I could see, is, to adults, much the most common with the males, and less so with either sex than among the nations of the Pacific islands generally.

"239.—What are the customs and fashions of wearing the hair and beard? Is the whole head shaved? Is the beard generally extirpated by the tweezers, or other mechanical means?"

Hair generally worn long, but not unfrequently tied up in a bunch: have seen it cut quite close on some of their boys. Beard very uncommon; suppose it to have been extirpated by some mechanical means.

"241.—What is the general scope and capacity of the Indian mind, as compared with other stocks of the human race?"

In regard to their mental capacity, believe them generally inferior to the tribes east of the Rocky Mountains, but superior to some tribes in South America; for more reliable data and particulars upon this subject, which I had but little opportunity of following up, I must again refer to the notes or work of Mr. Hale, the Philologist of the Exploring Expedition, which I have not yet seen, but presume it must convey some valuable information upon this subject, and others that I must pass over.

---

[1] See a specimen in 5th vol. Exploring Expedition, page 242.

"258. — How far has knowledge, art, and commerce, and the general progress of civilization, affected the improvement of the Indians, and changed or modified their original manners, customs, and opinions?"

The effect of semi-civilization among some of these Indians, resulting from frequent intercourse among the whites, appeared to me to have produced but little other change than that of dress, and a more tame and friendly feeling toward the whites.

And when opposed to this, you throw in liquor and some other of the refinements attending civilization, it may be a question with some whether it would not have been better for them to have lived and died in their savage state.

This reflection forces itself upon me, as from day to day I now read of the continual murders and massacres among these same people.

Only to-day 150 are reported to have been massacred by the whites in the "Shasté" country.

"259.—What are the prominent effects, physical and intellectual, of the intermixture, by marriage, between the European and Indian races? Has the tribe been much affected by such intermarriages?"

Not affected by amalgamation with the whites.

The few white trappers who had Indian wives had generally taken them from the tribes farther east, and their children were yet young.

"260.—What is the present rate of progress of population of the tribe, compared with former periods? Are they advancing or receding?"

From causes already alluded to, I believe they are rapidly diminishing in numbers, that they cannot keep up their tribal organization many years longer, and if not removed, or reinforced by bands lying east of them, that very few will be found alive in 1870.

"262. — What general changes have taken place in regard to costume and cleanliness, in the tribe, and in their habits or modes of living, and general housewifery?"

See answer to question 258.

"263.—Is this test of the barbaric or hunter state still tolerated; and if so, to what extent?"

See answer to question 161.

"264.—What is the present state of the tribe in respect to Christianity?"

The tribes in the Willamette valley, and about the Columbia, from Astoria to Walla Walla, have several years enjoyed the advantages of Christian teachers, both Protestant and Catholic: up to the time of my visiting the country, they had been but a few years operating, and very little had been accomplished; if they have been more successful since, the result will, I presume, be made known through reliable sources; civilization, with its concomitants, has perhaps thrown as many obstacles as aids in their way of accomplishing good.

"265.—Are the principles of temperance, in the use of ardent spirits, on the increase or decrease?"

The principles of temperance, which at one time were so much encouraged in Oregon by the Hudson Bay Company's officers, have been very much neglected with the increase of population and confusion growing out of the gold discovery, and it appears quite problematical if liquor will be again interdicted while the Indian lives.

"266.—What are the prominent facts in relation to the cause of education, in reclaiming and exalting the tribe? What means have been found most effective in the education of their children and youth? Have females duly participated in these means, and has any part of such means been applied to such branches as are essential to qualify them for the duties of mothers and housewives?"

Education, like religion, had made but little progress in Oregon, notwithstanding the earnest and laudable efforts of the American Baptist Mission, both male and female, who had succeeded in overcoming the prejudices of the Indian parents, and induced them to send their children to school; but like young partridges caged up, they were difficult to tame, and upon the first good opportunity would run away, swim the rivers, and return to their homes; sometimes their parents would carry them back, and the next good chance they would run again.

I did not hear that harsh treatment was resorted to in such cases. It would no doubt prove ineffectual.

The girls were reported more tractable than the boys, and some of the half-breeds, Canadian and Indian, were making considerable progress.

"268.—Is there any interest observable in the improved modes of agriculture?"

Have made no progress in agriculture, and so far as I could see, appeared perfectly indifferent about it.

"269.—Have the tribe provided for the construction of roads, bridges, and ferries, either by an appropriation of their general funds, or by imposing the duty of personal service or tax, on the residents of the several districts?"

Have literally done nothing.

"270.—To what extent is the English language spoken, and English books read, and what is the tendency of opinion and practice on this subject, in the tribe?"

Saw but two of the Klatsop tribe that pretended to speak the English language, and their knowledge in regard to it was very limited.

My opinion has already been expressed upon several of these points; their condition will not be much improved until our laws are enforced among them, restraining the whites as well as themselves.

"288. — Have there been any striking changes in the physical type of the Indian race, beyond that produced by latitudes and longitudes, and by their manner of subsistence?"

The physical difference between the Indians found at the mouth of the Columbia, and those inhabiting the upper valley of the Sacramento, is very striking; and very much in favor of the latter, who resemble the Pacific Islanders more than any I met with on the coast. This difference is, perhaps, as much due to their different manner of subsistence, as to latitude and climate: the language is also very different.

Many of the questions that follow I must pass over, having gained but little knowledge of the structure of their different languages, which vary very much, and to me appeared neither homologous nor homogeneous.

Through the assistance of an intelligent American, by the name of Rodgers, (who, with his young wife, was afterwards carried over the Willamette falls in a canoe, and drowned,) I endeavored to make out a vocabulary of the Callapuya language; but owing to their indolence and indifference, had not proceeded far when the former was taken sick, and left me. I afterwards employed a Canadian, who understood the jargon spoken about the Columbia river, but who could not interpret after leaving the Callapuya country. The language which I had previously heard most spoken about the Columbia was the Klatsop dialect, of which I can furnish the meaning to a few words, viz.: —

Ikaui, or Akaui	Their principal god, or deity.
So-ole	Another god, or name for same.
Ital-a-pus	" " of fish.
Tam-au-a-wa	" " " dancing.
Steokum	" " " evil.
Boston ships	A general name for all ships.
Boston man	" " " white men.
Co-at-la-li-kum	Man.
Cloach-man	Woman.
Chicks	Friend.
Chu-ban	Horse.
Moos-moos	Cow.
Mo-u-ets	Deer.
Cula-cula	Bird.

Ka-wacks	Dog.
Qua-wack	Salmon.
Qua-qua	Duck.
Su-bits	Wood.
Suk-walella	Musket.
Olem-bo, or boh	Pipe.
Kin-tle, or kin-u-tle	Tobacco.
Ma-ma-lus-te	Dead.
Loosh	Dying.
Wobu-kata	Die.
Mue, or muck	Eating
Close-nau-ich	Look-out.
Hi-as	Great.
Sa-math	Their future hunting-grounds.
E-to-ke-te	Good.
Ni-ka	I. Also, small.
Mi-ka	You.
Yo-ka	He.
A-ka	She.
We-si-ka	We — ours.
Mi-si-ka	Ye — yours.
Klas-ka	They — theirs.

I am not quite certain that I have, in every instance, adopted the spelling best suited to convey the sound.

The language is extremely guttural, and it requires some practice to catch the sounds.

Many words in this language, I presume, are common to the Chimook language, and, perhaps, to the Chickeeles, and Kilamukes, who mix with, and appear to understand each other.

Grimace, more than gesticulation, appears to aid them in their expression; a peculiarity less observable among the more southern tribes.

Finally, as a race, although they differ materially in language, in point of mental and physical development, and the color of their hair, eyes, and skin, I question if they differ more from each other than the people occupying the extremes of the United States. They are generally well formed, below the whites in stature, have an easy gait, but neither graceful nor handsome; their eyes and hair usually black — the latter occasionally brown, generally parted in the middle of the forehead, so as to hang down each side; noses broad and flat — some aquiline exceptions. The mouth large, lips thick, teeth fair, but in adults generally more or less worn.

They are wily, superstitious, lazy, indolent, and dirty. With these traits, united to an implacable hostility which they generally entertain towards the whites, it does not, I think, require much wisdom to predict their fate.

Facts that have developed themselves within the last year relating to these tribes, must, I think, convince the observing that Indian agencies and treaties cannot alone save them. It is melancholy to see them melting away so rapidly; but it does not appear to be intended that civilization should prevent it.

In conclusion, permit me once more to express my regret that I am able to furnish you with so little information in regard to these tribes, of whom so little is known.

Very respectfully,
Your obedient servant,
George Falconer Emmons,
Lieut. U. S. N.

Henry R. Schoolcraft, Esq.
Office of Indian Affairs, Washington, D. C.

3. THE DACOTAHS OR SIOUX OF THE UPPER MISSISSIPPI.

[Second Paper, continued from "Contributions," p. 199, Vol. II.]

BY PHILANDER PRESCOTT,

U. S. DACOTAH INTERPRETER, FORT SNELLING AGENCY, MINNESOTA.

SUBJECTS OF PAPER.

1. Religion.
2. Mythology.
3. Manners and Customs.

RELIGION.—[CONTINUED.]

"135.—Have they a class of persons who affect to wield the power of necromancy or sorcery? Do they affect to remove diseases, or to inflict them? Do they believe in witchcraft?"

Disturbances and murders are committed every now and then, on account of the belief in supernatural powers. They believe they can kill each other in various ways. So, if a person dies, some individual is charged with the offence, and revenge sought. (See Nos. 74 and 133.)

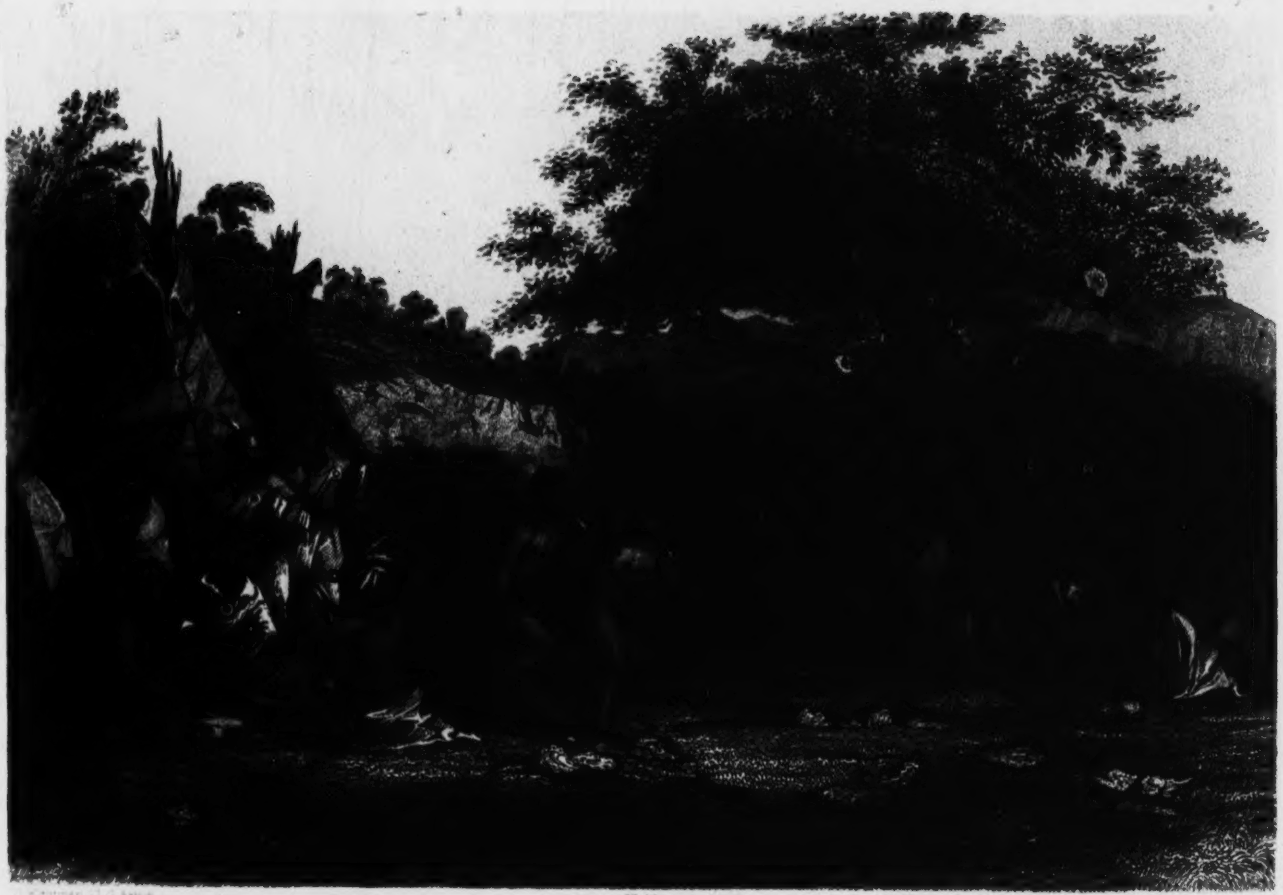
"136.—Do they believe in vampyres or in premonitions from the dead, or in the theory of ghosts? What is the Indian theory of dreams? Are dreams regarded as revelations of the divine will? Do they exercise much influence over the practical affairs of the Indian life? Are good dreams courted under the influence of abstinence?"

The Indians are much afraid of vampyres and the bat, and say they are a bad omen when they fly about them—also the *Ignis Fatuus*, vulgarly called the Jack-o'-lantern—the Indians are very much afraid of them. Whoever sees one of these at night, it is a sure sign of death to some one of the family. Dreams are much believed in by them, and they talk over their dreams, but what causes them they cannot tell. One thing is certain, that their bad dreams are caused mostly by their over-eating at night and going to sleep soon after. I have known an Indian to go to two or three feasts of an evening, and eat all that was given him, which would amount to five or six pounds of venison, with the fat along with it. In good dreams they suppose some friendly spirit has been near them, giving them some good advice. Indians are often downcast and think some ill fate is going to happen them. I suppose there is hardly a day passes over an Indian family, but some omen is seen or heard; therefore they are very much troubled in their superstitious beliefs.

"137.—What species or degree of worship do they, in fine, render to the Great Spirit? Do they praise him in hymns, chants, or choruses? Do they pray to him, and if so, for what purpose? Is it for success in hunting, war, or any other avocation of life? Give, if you can, a specimen of their prayers."

To analyze the worship of Indians, in our view amounts to nothing at all. They are very tenacious and say they are right, and are very zealous and cling to their old habits like death, and will not give way to any kind of teaching. They pray, but their prayers are very short. The following is a sample. "Spirits or ghosts, have mercy on me and show me where I can find a deer or bear," (as the case may be,) and so with all things. Their prayers are to the creature and not to the Creator. I once was travelling with some Indians by water. We came to a lake. The Indians took their pipes and smoked, and invoked the winds to be calm, and let them cross the lake in safety

"138.—Do they fast that they may acquire mental purity, or cleanliness to commune with him? Are the general feasts at the coming in of the new corn, and at the commencement of the general fall hunts, of a religious character? Are these feasts of the nature of thanksgivings? Are any of the choruses, or songs of the priests, sacred, or of a hieratic character? Is the flesh of the bear or dog which is sacrificed, used to propitiate favor? Is it true, that all the flesh, bones, and the 'purtenance' of the animals sacrificed in the feast, must be eaten or burned, as in the institution of the paschal supper?"



S. Eastman U.S. Army

Pl 27

R. Hinshelwood

WORSHIP OF THE [illegible]

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

I never knew any of the Dacotahs to fast on religious principles, but for one or two things; that is, the worship of the sun and moon. I have known them to fast two and three days. The worship of the sun, (Plate 27,) is caused by some one having dreamed of seeing the sun. The worship is performed at intervals of about four or five minutes, by two young men in a most singular attitude. The two worshippers are almost in a state of nudity; only a piece of cloth about their loins. The worshippers have each of them a small whistle in their mouths, and face the sun. The mode of dancing is a kind of hitch of first one leg and then the other; but they keep time to the singing and beating upon raw hides or parchment. In their singing there are no words used, nothing but the chorus appropriate to such occasions. The nearest and best comparison that I can make of them when worshipping, is a frog held up by the middle, with its legs about half drawn up. This dance is kept up two and three days, during which time the worshippers eat no food. The feast of the new crop is made for what we would term a thanksgiving; but the Indians apply it in honor to their war-medicine and the medicine used among themselves. If a man makes a feast of new corn, it is in honor of his war medicine. If a woman makes a corn feast, it is in honor of the medicine they use among themselves. At these feasts, if a person does not eat all that is given him or her, they do not have to pay for it, as in some of their feasts; but otherwise, the one that eats up his dishfull first, will probably receive a present from the person who made the feast, of a gun or large kettle, or some traps. This being a common custom amongst them, there is always amongst the eaters a great strife to see who will eat up their portion first, and get the present. As soon as the word is given for them to commence eating, the work commences, and such blowing, stirring, eating, and sweating, as that the grunting animals could not surpass them. The music is vocal, but nothing but a chorus, but considered sacred amongst the Indians. In some of their feasts, everything is sacred. Not a morsel of the meat must fall to the ground. The spirits will be displeased and some great calamity will befall them. The bones are all gathered up, and either burnt or thrown into the water, so that the dogs cannot get them, nor be trampled upon by the women in particular; because they consider a woman very unclean at times, and it would be a great sin for them to step on or over any part of the remnants of their offerings.

"139.—Are the leaves of the tobacco plant, which are cast on the waters or burned in the pipe, offered as sacrifices to the Great Spirit?"

Tobacco is used in most of their ceremonies except the feasts above mentioned. I never saw them use any. Its perfumes are offered to the ghosts, or spirits, on many occasions, for good luck in hunting, for calm weather, for clear weather, &c.

"140.—Have you observed any traces of the Ghebir worship, or the idea of an eternal fire? It is seen in their pictorial scrolls of bark, that they draw the figure of the sun to represent the Great Spirit. Is the sun the common symbol of the Great Spirit? Do they now, or did their ancestors, worship him through this symbol?"

These Indians have not many symbolic ideas. The answer to this question is given above.

"141.—What are the notions of the tribe on the nature and substance of fire, or caloric? Is fire obtained from the flint, or from percussion, deemed more sacred than from other sources?"

Fire obtained in any way appears to be all the same to them. Fire formerly was obtained by friction, (Fig. 1, Plate 28.) A piece of wood was squared or flattened, so as to make it lie steadily. A small hole was commenced with the point of a stone. Then another small stick was made, round and tapering at one end. The small end is placed in the small hole of the piece of wood first described. The Indian puts one hand each side of the small round stick, say six inches long, and commences turning it as fast as possible back and forth. Another person holds the under piece with one hand, and a piece of spunk in the other, so that where there is the least signs of fire, he is ready to touch the spunk, and kindle the fire by putting the lighted spunk into a bunch of dry grass that had been rubbed fine in the hands. In this way they say they have made a fire in a short time, when all the materials were ready.

"142.—Did the Indian priests, at former periods, annually, or at any set time, direct the fire to be extinguished in the Indian lodges, and ashes cast about to desecrate them, that they might furnish the people new and sacred fire to re-light them?"

The Indians, when they make their sacred feasts, remove all the fire from the lodge, and rekindle it from the flint and steel before the food is put on to cook, so as to be sure and not have anything unclean about the feast. For my part, I am forced to believe that these feasts are handed down from the children of Israel, but have through time lost all their original features and merits.

"143.—What notions have they of the planetary system? Are the stars or planets regarded as parts of a system?"

The Indians do not profess to know much about the stars, although they have names for a few of them.

"144.—How do signs affect them? Do omens and prognostications exercise a strong sway over the Indian mind? Do they ever influence councils in their deliberations, or war-parties on their march? Are predictions, drawn from the flight of birds, much relied on? Are auguries ever drawn from the sombre hue, shape, or motions of the clouds?"

The Dacotahs have many signs, as fowls flying, animals running, and sounds at night. In their war-excursions the Indians are often guided by signs and dreams.

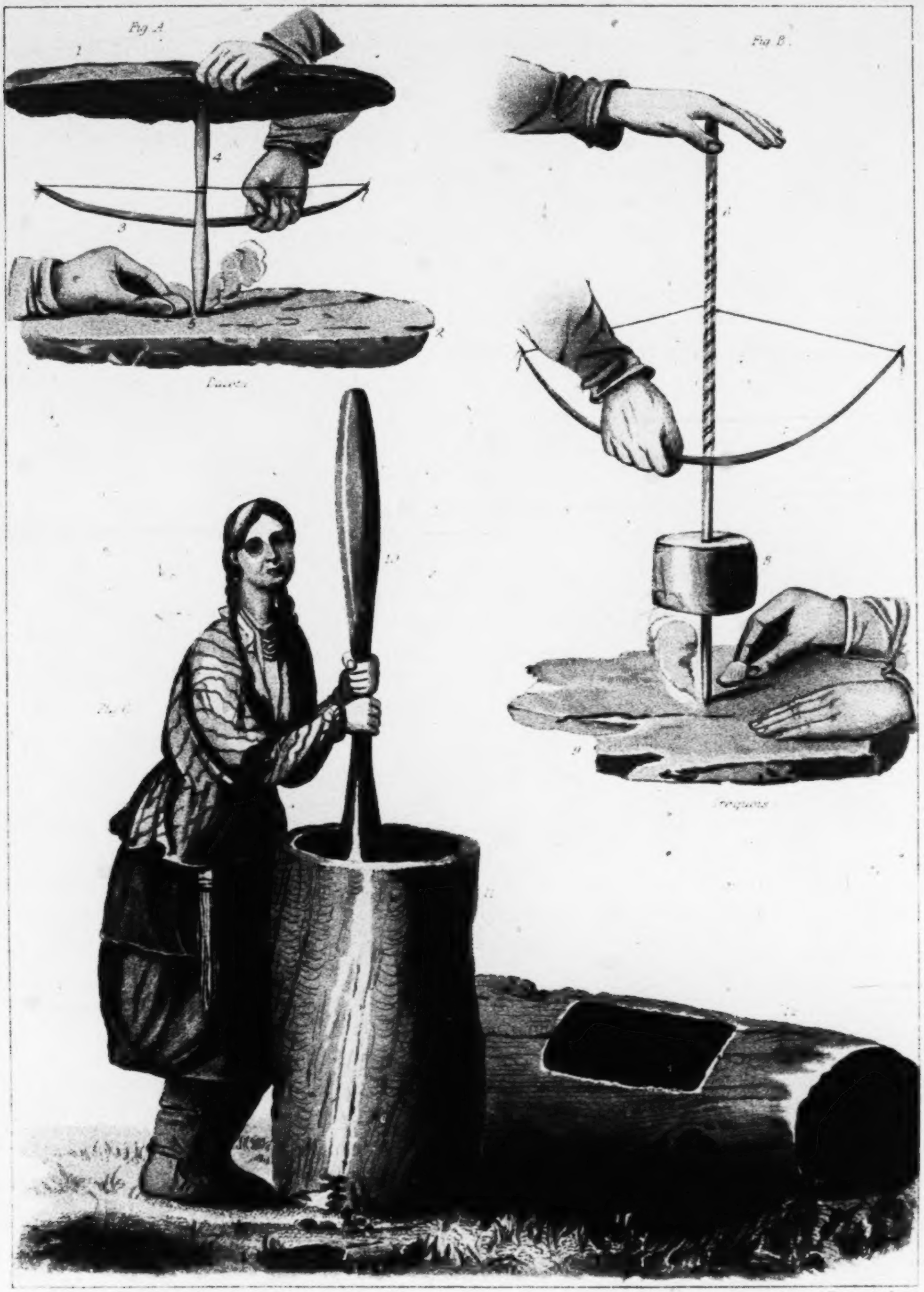


Fig. A
1
4
3
5
2
Dacotas
Fig. B
6
7
8
9
Iroquois
Fig. C
10
11
12

Drawn by Capt. S. Eastman U.S.A.

Bowen & Co.

MODES OF OBTAINING FIRE FROM PERCUSSION

PUBLISHED BY LIPPINCOTT, GRAMBO & Co. PHILA.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

"145.—Is there reason to believe the Indians to be idolators? Are images of wood or stone ever worshipped? or is there any gross and palpable form of idolatry in the existing tribes, similar to that of the oriental world?"

The Dacotahs have no images of wood that they worship, nor have they any edifices for public worship. These Indians worship in their natural state. An Indian will pick up a round stone, of any kind, and paint it, and go a few rods from his lodge, and clean away the grass, say from one to two feet in diameter, and there place his stone, or god, as he would term it, and make an offering of some tobacco and some feathers, and pray to the stone to deliver him from some danger that he has probably dreamed of, or from imagination.

"146.—Do they believe in the immortality of the soul, and the doctrine of moral accountability to the Creator? Do they believe in the resurrection of the body? Do they believe, at all, in the doctrine of rewards and punishments in a future state?"

The Indians believe in the immortality of the soul, but as for accountability they have but a vague idea of it. Future rewards and punishments they have no conception of. All that they can say respecting the soul is, when it leaves the body, it goes southward, but of its abode they have no fixed idea. Everything appears to be dark and mysterious with them respecting the future state of both the soul and body.

"147.—What is the common notion of the Indian paradise? Do the virtuous and vicious alike expect to enjoy its fruitions? Are there any deaths in the Indian paradise? Or is it a final state? Will there be any giants or enchanters there? Will there be any wars?"

They believe that each soul acts for itself. As for the Indians' paradise, they have not looked far enough into futurity to give any kind of an idea about it. They think they will still continue to be at enmity with their former enemies. As many as four souls inhabit one person, like a bear, which the Indians say has four spirits; and believe some other animals have souls.

"148.—Is there not a perversion of the doctrine of immortality respecting the brute creation? Do the Indians believe in the resurrection of animals? Do they believe that the Great Spirit has given the brute creation souls and reasoning powers, as well as man? An Indian, in 1820, begged pardon of a bear, whom he had shot on the shores of Lake Superior. Did this imply that he was to encounter him, as an immortal being, in another life?

The Indians believe that many animals have the power to injure them, by a migrating movement. In many cases, where an Indian is taken sick, he lays his sickness to some biped, quadruped, or amphibious animal; but they charge some of their own people with the cause of some animals torturing them with sickness, and the only way they have of driving the animal from the sick is to make something similar to it of bark, and shoot it to pieces. The following is a list of the Indians' laws of prohibition, and if not obeyed, some one of the family has to suffer; so they are most always in trouble. For instance, a turtle a woman must not step over. None of the family must stick an awl or a needle into the turtle: if they do, they are sure the turtle will punish them for it, at some future time. The same with a coon, a fisher, a bear, a wolf, a fish; in fact, as to almost all kinds of animals, they must not stick an awl or needle into them. Also with a stick of wood on the fire. No person must chop on it with an axe or knife, or stick an awl into it. If he does, some one will either cut himself, or run a stab in his feet, for so doing. Neither are they allowed to take a coal from the fire with a knife, or any other sharp instrument. A woman must not ride or bridle a horse. A woman must not handle the sack used for war purposes. A woman must remain out of doors during the time of her menstruation, and the war implements must hang out of doors during that time. The Indian, praying to the bear, was fearful that some other bear might take the wounded bear's part, and probably tear him to pieces. If a bear attacks an Indian, and tears him, the Indian will say at once the bear was angry with him. The fear that they have of them is in this life. As for animals having reasoning powers, I have heard Indians talk and reason with a horse, the same as with a person. I have known many instances of horses running away from their owners. The owner would say the horse was mad, or displeased, because they had not given him a belt, or a piece of scarlet cloth to wear about his neck.

The red hand spoken of by Mr. Stevens as seen on the walls of the ruins in Central America, is a very common thing amongst the Dacotahs. You will see sometimes a whole row of the stamp of the whole hand, with red paint, on their blankets. The paint that they use is oxide of iron. They pick it up in many places in this country, and burn it, then pulverise it, and it makes paint equal to Spanish brown. This represents that the wearer has been wounded in action by an enemy. If the stamp is with black paint, it denotes he has killed an enemy in action.

"149.—What peculiar societies characterize Indian life? Are these societies bound by the obligation of secrecy? What secret rites exist? Do they partake of a religious, festive, or other character? What knowledge do they profess to cultivate? Is the knowledge and practice of medicine confined to the members or professors of these societies?"

The clans in the great medicine dance are kept secret. The Indians that are not members of the dance, know no more about it than the white people. They have many feasts that they call religious feasts. There are two societies: one is the medicine society; the others are not members of the medicine society; still, out of these feasts and dances, they have no distinction — all are on an equal footing. I cannot say these feasts are free from vice or bad people. In the great medicine dance, there are people of all sorts and morals; the murderer, the drunkard, the adulterer, the adulteress, the thief, &c., &c., are all associated in the great medicine dance. Still, it is a mysterious thing, and equally as secret, and probably more so, than Free-masonry; for there are instances where Free-masonry has been divulged, but the great medicine dance of the Dacotahs I never heard, nor has tradition handed down an instance, of their secrets having been divulged. (See No. 12.) We cannot perceive that there is any more wisdom amongst the medicine party, than there is in those that do not belong to it. Neither are they more artful, only to do mischief, and keep the people in ignorance. They oppose everything that tends to enlighten them. Could this absurd practice be broken up, no doubt this people would listen to good counsel; but the medicine party claim to be possessed of supernatural powers; therefore they fear each other, and so they end their days in mutual fear of this imaginary power. As for songs, they have no lengthy ones; three or four words is about the length of them. They have a number of tunes, or choruses, which they sing on many occasions at feasts, dances, &c.

MYTHOLOGY.

"150.—What peculiar myths have the tribe? Do they believe that the great spirit of evil manifests himself on the earth, in the form of the serpent? Are the rattle-snake, and other venomous species, more than others, invested with fearful powers? Do the priests sometimes put these into their drums? Is the respect and veneration paid to serpents, the true cause of their lives being spared when encountered in the forest? Do they offer tobacco to appease the spirit of the snake?"

As to their belief of evil spirits, they do not understand the difference between a great good spirit and a great evil spirit, as we do. The idea that the Indians have is, that a spirit can be good when necessary, and do evil if it thinks fit. The rattle-snake is much feared by them, and in fact all kinds of snakes are looked upon with horror; still, they will not kill one of them. I never knew of any Indians putting the rattlesnake in their drums, but they use the skin in the great medicine dance. The rattles are also kept in their medicine-bags. The Indians say, if they kill the rattlesnakes, some other one will bite them for so doing. Indians sometimes smoke to serpents, and ask them to be friendly to them, and go away and leave them. Sometimes they will leave a piece of tobacco as a peace-offering.

"151.—Is the belief in metamorphosis general? Do they believe that various quadrupeds, birds, or reptiles, were transformed into men?"

These Indians have no such belief.

"152.—Do they believe in the Pythagorean doctrine of metempsychosis, or the transmigration of souls?"

They have no belief of this kind.

"153.—What particular animals stand high in their mythology, and how does this belief affect their institutions? Do the respect and honor which are paid to the turtle, wolf, and bear, and to the clans who bear these devices, (vide 77,) arise from the supposed importance of ancient heroes or valiant men, who fell under the necromantic power of evil spirits or wizards? And what influence has this myth had on the original establishment of the totemic system of the clans?"

The honor that is paid to these animals, is to keep peace with them; for they fear that they can supernaturally send diseases upon them. This myth is kept up by the clans of the medicine party, and probably, in some instances, deters them from injuring each other.

"154.—What fabled gods, demigods, heroes, and viewless spirits, or genii of the air and earth, have they embraced in their oral traditions? Who were Inigorio and Inigohatatea? Are they allegorical representations of the Great Spirit's will in the moral world? What demigods, giants, or heroes, are denoted by the names Quetzalcoatl, Tarenyawago, and Manabozho?"

Nothing of this amongst these Indians, only the winds. They have a name for the four cardinal points, which are described as follows: the way of the setting sun is west, the situation of the pines is north, the way the sun rises is east, the downward direction is south. There is supposed to be an animal in the water, who has large horns, and which they call Unk-a-ta-he. The Indians pretend to be in possession of its bones, in small pieces, which they value very highly for medicine.

"155.—What are the names and classes of their principal local deities, or woodland spirits, and what analogy do they bear to the mythological creations of the old world? Is there a class of creations analogous to fairies? Are there fairies of the water, as well as of the land? Are the Indian *puckwies* visible or invisible? Are they vicious or benign? Do these creations delight to dwell in romantic retreats, or at picturesque points? Are there local spirits, or a kind of local nymphs and dryads, who reside in caves or at cascades, or inhabit cliffs or mountains? Do they protect or entrap travellers? Do the natives believe in mermaids or *mermans?*"

The Dacotahs believe in fairies of the water, and say they often see them in all shapes of animals; they think them vicious, and consider it an omen of some calamity that is to befall them. They believe there are fairies of the land, as well as in the water. There are local spirits inhabiting almost all singular places of the Indian country—as cliffs, mountains, rivers, lakes, &c., &c.; they believe these spirits trouble them often. They believe in what they call Unk-a-ta-he of two kinds; one of the water, and one of the land. They say these animals have great power, and can even kill the thunder. They have a country for their spirits to go to. Some of their people have died, and returned back from the spirit land, and say they saw a large city, full of spirits of all classes of people.

"156.—Are the Indian allegories, fables and lodge stories, mentioned in Title V., fruitful in the revelation of their mythological notions? Are such oral tales and relations common? Do they form a species of lodge-lore, which the young early learn?"

The Indians have many oral tales that they tell in the lodge at night to their relations, in relation to all kinds of people and animals.

"157.—Is thunder personified? How many thunderers are there? Are they located in different quarters of the heavens? What is their various character, and origin?"

Thunder is a large bird, they say; hence its velocity. The rumbling noise of thunder is caused by an immense quantity of young birds; it is commenced by the old bird, and carried on by the young birds, or thunders; this is the cause of the long duration of the peals of thunder. The Indian says it is the young birds, or thunders, that do the mischief; they are like the young mischievous men who will not listen to good counsel. The old thunder or bird is wise and good, and does not kill anybody, nor do any kind of mischief.

"158.—What fabled monsters and dragons, with wings or horns, filled the antique epochs of the world; and who killed them, or how were the races extirpated? Has their system of mythology been affected by the introduction of Christianity? Something of this kind is thought to be observable in examining the ancient picture-writings of the Aztecs, written after the conquest of Mexico, and it is important to guard against this intermixture of original and interfused notions."

The only fabled monsters we hear of, are the Giant and the Unk-a-ta-he; the Giant surpasses all in power, and the Unk-a-ta-he next. The Giant, or Ha-o-kuh, can kill anything it looks at, merely by its piercing eyes. They are yet in existence. We do not perceive that the system of mythology has been affected by Christianity as yet. The Indians' notions in this country are mostly all premature; as yet, some few may have an intermixture of notions.

MANNERS AND CUSTOMS.

"159.—Are the ties of consanguinity strong? Are there terms for each degree of relationship, and what are they for the different degrees? Are the same names used for collateral relatives by the father's as by the mother's side? Are the same terms used for elder and younger brother, and for elder and younger sister? Are the words aunt and uncle by the mother's side the same as aunt and uncle by the father's side? By what terms are the dead alluded to? State any peculiarities which may exist in the terms denoting kindred, age, or sex, or other particulars in the family names, which mark them, or distinguish the principles of speech in the family circle from those of other known nations."

They have a degree of relationship, three and four generations back. The old women generally keep this account, and are very correct. They have no surnames, but always live near together; their houses are not more than ten feet apart. They cannot well forget their relationship; the father's name, as well as that of the mother, is recollected for three or four generations. They are not named after either of the parents; an Indian may be called a White Spider, and his son a White Whale, or Red Buffalo; and so with a woman. The mother may be called the Checkered Cloud, and the daughter may be called Grey Hand, or Red Blanket. The same names are not used for elder brother and younger. The first male child may be named Chiska; the second, Hapan; third, Hape; fourth, Chahlun; fifth, Hah-ka: the first female, Wenvonah; the second, Hahpan; third, Hahpistinah; fourth, Wauska; fifth, Wehahka. If there are any more born, they have to give them some other name, for they have no more regular names for children; and after a short time, these names are changed to some outlandish things. Aunt and uncle are the same on both sides. The dead are alluded to, and their names left to be understood. The names of the deceased are seldom spoken by the Indians; they say such an one's brother or sister, uncle or aunt, as the case may be, is dead. All Indian names are peculiar to their habits and customs; the men have different expressions from the women, and new beginners are laughed at frequently by both men and women. To a man, they say you talk like a woman; and to a woman, they say you talk like a man. The languages of all the nations differ so much that they cannot understand each other.

"160.—Does the hunter state insure abundance of food and clothing to the family? How is this state, in its domestic bearings, affected by polygamy, and what are the terms and relative affections of stepmothers and children? Are wives well treated under the actual state of the hunter life? Are they ever interfered with in the household affairs, and management of the domestic economy?"

The hunter does not furnish abundance of food and clothing. Now and then an Indian will furnish a plenty of venison for his family for a month or two in the winter. Some of them do not kill more than from two to ten deer in the winter hunts. Some kill from ten to fifty. So those that have good luck feed the poor. The clothing the Indian takes in credit of the traders, for which he pays one-half to two-thirds of the amount. Polygamy is the cause of a great deal of their miseries and troubles. The women, most of them, abhor the practice, but are overruled by the men. Some of the women commit suicide on this account. Some of their stepmothers are kind. Some are very bad, and the children are treated accordingly. Their wives, or dogs, as some of the Indians term them, are well treated, as long as they let the men have their own way, and do all the work, except hunting. They keep as many wives as they want; and if a woman remonstrates against this, (that is, polygamy,) she probably will get a beating. The men do not often interfere with the work of the women; neither will they help them if they can avoid it, for fear of being laughed at and called a woman.

"161.—Are the labors of husband and wife equally or unequally divided? Does the public security of their hunting-grounds, arising from council and warlike expeditions, enter into the views of the wife, as constituting an acceptable part of the husband's duty? Who makes the arms and implements of war? Who makes canoes, paddles, cradles, bowls, and dishes? Who plants, and hoes, and gathers the fruits of the field? Who makes fish-nets, weaves mats, and cuts rushes, and gathers wild rice? Run through the entire class of forest labors, and draw a comparison between the relative industry, or time, devoted by the husband and the wife."

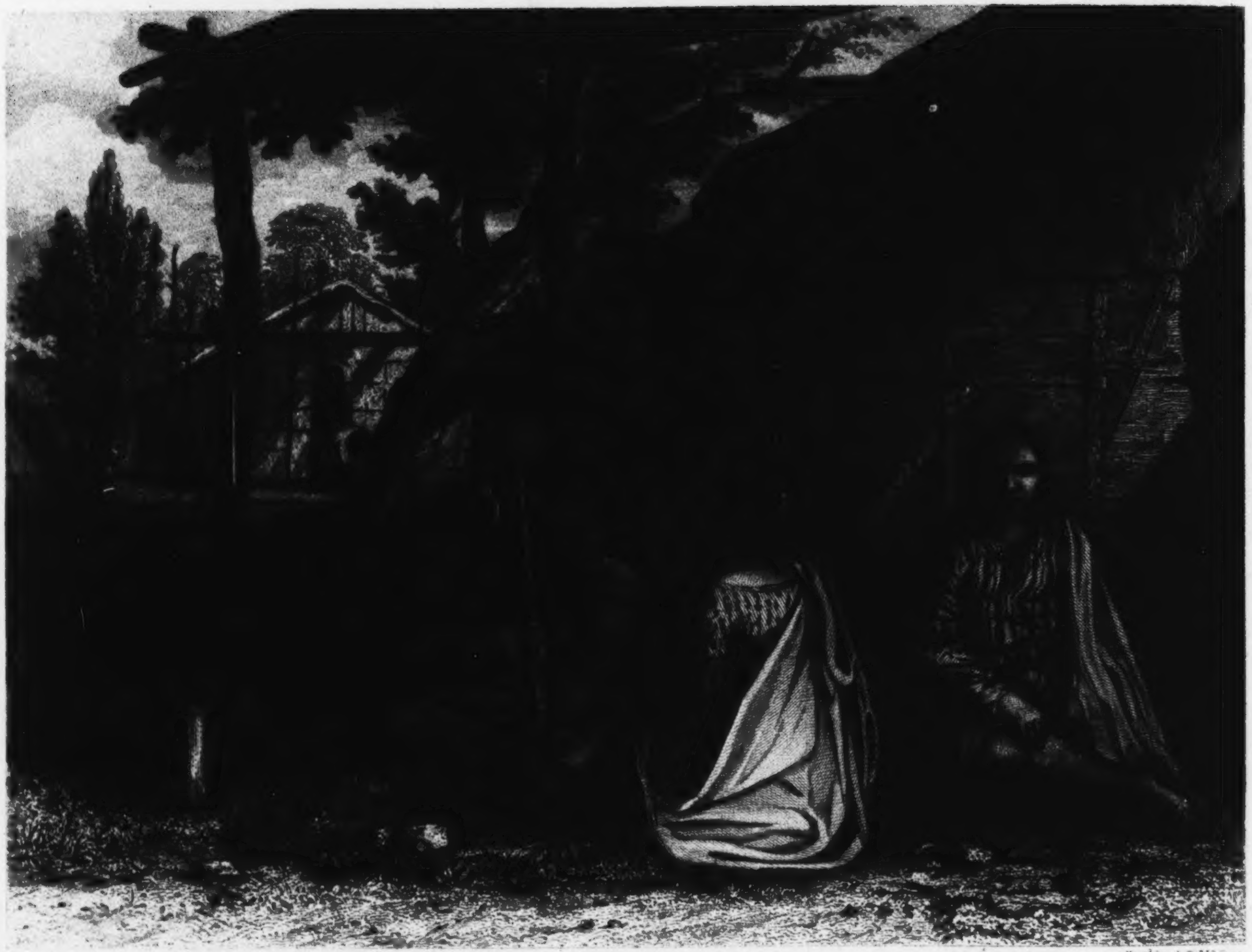
The labors are not equally divided. Take the year round, probably, it is for a month or two in the winter, when the men are most busy; it is in the midst of the winter hunts. The women often upbraid one another for their cowardice, and think it is right for their husbands to defend their country and family. The men make all the arms and implements of war; and the women are not allowed to touch them, nor go near them, particularly when menstruation is with them. Men and women make canoes, paddles, cradles, bowls, and spoons. The women plant and hoe the corn, and gather it. The men sometimes help to husk the corn. The women make mats, pull rushes, gather wild rice, cut the wood, carry the lodge, cut the grass, cook, prepare the skins and furs for market, dress the skins, make moccasins, and mend them, mend clothing, and make them, dig roots, dress meat, pound and make pemican. In the summer a man does not work more than an hour in the day. Through the summer the women labor about six hours per day. In winter the men will average about six hours in a day, and the women about ten hours per day.

"162.—What are the usual causes of family jars in the Indian lodge? Are domestic discords common? Is the loss of youth and youthful attractions in the wife a cause of neglect? Does barrenness produce dissatisfaction? Do children give their mother an additional power over her husband's affections?"

Domestic discords are often in a village, not in every family. Some families live a long time without any serious quarrelling, and some are at it all the time. Some are passionate and cross, and scold. Barrenness does not appear to displease them in some cases. As children increase, the parents appear to be more affectionate; but then this friendship is often broken up by the husband taking a second or third wife. At the age of forty, fifty, and sixty years, we see some of the Indians seeking to get a new wife. In the case of plurality of wives, the most vicious and strongest one is mistress of the lodge. The Indian is generally sedate and dignified. The Indian women are as fond of dress as any other people in the world; and put on all the finery they can get —silver brooches, wampum, ribbons, or blankets of fine cloth. I have seen a woman's dress that was all covered with large and small brooches, and garnished blankets and leggins, which cost them probably two hundred dollars. Where there is a plurality of wives, if one gets finer goods than the other, you may be sure there will be some quarrelling among the women; and if one or two of them are not driven off, it is because they have not strength enough to do so. The man sits and looks on, and lets them fight it out. If the one he loves most is driven off, he will go and stay with her and leave the others to shirk for themselves awhile, until they can behave better, as he says.

"163.—How is order preserved in the limited precincts of the lodge? Casual observers would judge there was but little. Inquire into this subject, and state what are the characteristic traits of living in the wigwam, or Indian house. How do the parents and children divide the space at night? How are wives, and females of every condition, protected in their respective places, and guarded from intrusion? Is there a prescribed or fixed seat, or *abbinos*, as it is called, for each inmate?"

There is but little order in the lodge. Children act much as they please, and every Indian is a king in his own lodge. The children generally roll themselves up in their blanket by themselves; that is, after they are four, five, or six years old. Under this age they generally sleep with their parents or grand-parents. Fear is the best protection. The fear of being punished is what keeps many of them from committing crimes. There is a fixed seat for the man and for the wife. The woman sits next the door and the man sits next to her, or in the back part of the lodge. As the woman has all the drudging to do, she sits next the door, so as to be handy to get out. The woman has one particular way of sitting. She always draws her feet up under her to the right side, and thus sits for hours sometimes; a position no white could remain in twenty minutes, I believe, (Plate 29.) The man does not sit in this position at all, but tumbles and lounges about as he pleases. They all sit flat upon the ground on some straw and skins of different kinds. This is in the lodge. The summer-house is from twenty to thirty feet long, and fifteen to twenty wide, with a platform on each side about two feet high and six wide. On this platform they all sleep in summer; generally four families in a lodge, sometimes more. If there are four families, each one will have a corner, and if there are more, (young married people, for instance,) they take the middle.



Drawn by Capt. S. Eastman U.S.A.

Engd by J. C. McRae

FEMALE MODE OF SITTING

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

"164.—SOCIALITY IN THE LODGE CIRCLE. Are the inmates taciturn and formal, or do they, when relieved from the presence of strangers, evince a general ease and spirit of sociality? Is this observed particularly on their wintering grounds in remote parts of the forest? Do they eat at certain hours of the day? How many meals do they take in the twenty-four hours? Do they address the Great Spirit at any meal or feast, by way of prayer? Are their appetites regular or capricious, admitting of great powers both of abstinence and of repletion?"

We believe they are diffident, and have some respect for strangers, and are more modest before them than at other times, and are very secret in sleeping together. I have lived with them for many days and months at a time, and never saw an improper secret exposure. Their habits and customs are not the same in winter as in summer. The men say they do not sleep with their wives more than once or twice a month. In the winter they have no particular hours for eating. It is according to the quantity of food they have that determines how many times they eat in a day. If they have plenty, they eat often; if not, from one to two meals per day. The women are no eaters in comparison to them. In the common meals they seldom offer up thanks. Sometimes an Indian will say "Wah negh on she wan da;" which means, Spirits of the dead, have mercy on me. Then they will add what they want; if good weather, they say so; if good luck in hunting, they say so. This is about the amount of the Indian's prayer. Their appetites are capricious, admitting of great powers of abstinence and of repletion. Some Indians I suppose have eaten a gallon of food and probably more at one meal.

"165.—Is there any tradition of the institution of marriage? Has it the sanction of the Indian medas, or priests, or of the parents only? What are its ceremonies? Is the preparation of an abbinos in the mother-in-law's tent, to receive the bride, a part of these ceremonies? Is this act done with parade? Are the mats, skins, clothing, and ornaments, appropriated to it, where the parties can afford it, rich and costly?"

They have a marriage ceremony or form of marriage, which is considered lawful and binding. The parents or relations are the only persons consulted. The priests have nothing to say in the marriage affairs. There is very little ceremony inside the lodge. The ceremony is outside the lodge. The mother-in-law has something to say in the choice, and that is about all. The bride is received in the open air, and with some pomp and ceremony. The dress for the bride is as costly as can be obtained.

"166.—How are courtships managed? Are there regular visits to the lodge, or are the interviews casual? Do young persons, of both sexes, adorn themselves, to become more attractive? Do they use any peculiar paints or ornaments? Do young men play near the lodge, on the pibbigwun, or Indian flute? Are these chants appropriate? Do they make presents to the object of their esteem? Are presents made to the parents? How is consent asked? When are the parents consulted? Are matches ever made without their consent?"

Courtships can be carried on at almost any time, owing to their being huddled together, and all the time meeting each other about the lodges. Some we may say, make their visits regularly to the lodge; others do not; and some may not visit the lodge at all, or ever have spoken to the woman, and the first thing she knows she is bought. Both sexes adorn themselves. Red is the most used. The young men play on the chotunkah, or flute. If they make presents, it is of little amount. Finger rings, or ear rings, are about the amount of presents to girls. Consent is asked by sending the price of the girl. If accepted, the girl is sent; if not, the goods are faithfully returned. I have known the goods to be returned because there was no powder-horn. There are many matches made by elopement, much to the chagrin of the parents.

"167.—At what age do the Indians generally marry? Are there bachelors, or persons who never marry? Are there beaux, or young men addicted to dress? Do widowers remarry, and is there any rule, or limit of propriety observed? Do young widows usually marry again? Are their chances of marriage affected by having previously had children?"

They marry at the age of from ten to twenty. I do not know of a bachelor among them. They have a little more respect for the women and themselves, than to live a single life. The young only are addicted to dress. Widowers and widows remarry, the most of them. They go almost always one year before they marry; some two or three years. A woman having many children, is a detriment to her getting married. Their having children does not appear generally to be much in the way of marriage.

"168.—How does a forest life affect the laws of reproduction in the species? Does the full or scanty supply of subsistence govern it? Are the changes of location, fatigue, cold, and exposure to the vicissitudes of climate, felt in the general result of Indian population; and at what age do women cease bearing? What is the highest number of children born? What is the earliest known age of parturition? Are twins common? Is barrenness frequent?"

There appears to be no difference. They have children at all times of the year, as whites do. No doubt those causes produce a large number of diseases. Many die in infancy, caused by exposure, and many die of consumption. The women cease bearing from thirty to fifty years of age. As the Indians do not know their age, we cannot tell the exact time or age of bearing children; but by all that we can see, we think from thirteen to fifteen is as early as they have children. Fifteen or sixteen is the largest families amongst the Dacotahs. Three to eight is a common family amongst the Indians. Twins are not common. Barrenness is not common.

"169.—Are strangers announced before reaching the lodge, and now are visits ordered? Do parties of Indians stop, at a short distance, and send word of their intended visit? How are the ceremonies arranged, and how are guests received and entertained? Is precedence always awarded to guests? Are social visits made, in which these ceremonies are set aside?"

Visitors are announced by the children, generally, some time before they reach the lodge. The Indians sometimes send word of an intended visit. The guests enter the lodge, and, sitting, wait for a pipe to be lighted. After a puff or two, the pipe is passed to the next one, and so on round. Sometimes twenty persons will smoke out of one pipe, after which some food is set before them, which is eaten by the guests alone, without any ceremony by many, by some a word of thanks is given to the host. Social visits are made in their own villages. They give supper sometimes, and at any time of the day a repast is given, in which there is but little ceremony. Probably some old man will make a short speech of praise to the host. A messenger is always sent. Hospitality is a general characteristic among the Sioux. There have been instances of baseness and perfidy.

"170.—Are there persons who exercise the office of midwives? Are the labors of parturition severe? Are separate lodges provided? Are arrangements made in anticipation? Does any female friend attend as a nurse? Are cases of solitary confinement rare? Is there any rite analogous to circumcision?"

The grand-mothers, and the mothers of daughters, and when they are not at hand, other women are called in. The men scarcely ever interfere in midwifery. Sometimes the women are entirely alone, when they have children, and have no trouble, apparently. Sometimes, when out on a hunting excursion, a woman may have a child, and there will be no one present but the husband, and a very awkward business they make of it. The women often laugh at them in those cases. Arrangements are made, as far as can be, for people that have nothing in common. The infant, when it is born, is wrapped up in swan or goose down, then laid in a blanket, and wrapped up warm in it, and tied up for a short time, say one hour. The child is then taken and washed, and put back into the blanket, with a new band of down. There is a rite performed, which I should think was analogous to circumcision; that is, boring of the ears, which is a ceremony of considerable display of feeling. Horses, guns, cattle, &c., are given away on the occasion.

"171.—Are there any ceremonies at the naming of children? By whom is the name given, and from what circumstance? Does the father or mother bestow the name? Are these names usually taken from the objects or incidents of dreams, which have impressed the minds of the sponsors, and are supposed to be sacred? What are the usual names of males and females? Give specimens.

There is no particular time for naming children. From one day to a year, and sometimes longer, they have for naming children. The parents give names, sometimes others do it. The first sometimes give a name; their names are generally taken from objects seen and heard. Tah-tun-kah-dootah, Red Buffalo, Tasen-i-chah, Ground Squirrel, Nay-he-no-we-nah, or Spirit of the Moon. A woman's name, Hahzah-dootah-win, the Red Whortleberry. The word win is added to every woman's name, meaning feminine, to distinguish it or them from men's names. There is no secrecy in children's names, but when they grow up there is a secrecy in men's names. Etiquette, or respect for persons, is the cause of it. Nicknames are given for some trifling or mischievous conduct.

"172.—Has the wife or husband the right of divorce? Must there be good causes, and what are they generally? Must the chief of the village be consulted? What is the common practice? Which party takes the children?"

There are divorces from one to many, caused by polygamy. Some, no doubt, have cause for divorce. The chief seldom interferes. Both parties take the children sometimes. Other times the man, and sometimes the woman.

"173.—How are children nursed and attended? What is the kind of cradle used — how is it constructed — is it well adapted to the purposes of the forest, and the protection of the child from accident? Is it suited to promote the natural growth and expansion of the limbs? How do females become *in-toed?* Are the feet of female infants bound by their mothers in the cradle in such manner as to *turn in,* and do they thus determine their growth? At what age are children weaned? How do children address their parents? Do they abbreviate their words? How do mothers address their infants and children? Are there any terms of endearment?"

The children are nursed as well as could be expected for people in their situation. The cradle is a flat piece of board, with a bow over the head; it is well adapted for the life they live. The mode of lashing the children does not appear to affect their growth any. The men and women are all in-toed; I believe it is in their nature. The feet of the infant are not turned in when they are bound. Children are weaned at from one year to eighteen months. Father and mother; Ahta is father, Enah is mother. Some of their words are abbreviated. (My child. Mechuckshe, my son; Mechunckshe, my daughter.) They have words that they use for endearment.

"174.—Is the domestic government left wholly to Indian mothers? Is it well exercised? Is there any discrimination, in the discipline, between male and female children?"

The management of children is left mostly to women. A male child is not whipped as much as a female. Some women think it wrong to strike a boy any how.

"175.—How is the identity of their traditions kept up? Are children initiated in the knowledge or lore of their fathers, by the mother, in nursery tales, or are they left to pick it up, at later periods, from mingling in dances, congregations, and feasts?"

The children are taught by their parents all their customs; and then again, they see them acted out every day almost, so they cannot help but learn them. Grandmothers have much to say on the manners and customs, and traditions. There are many that tell stories, and a number of them will gather round and listen, and be much amused at the singular fictions they tell.

"176.—Are families often increased by the addition of white children, or youth who have been stolen in marauding excursions, on frontier settlements? State any known instances of this kind. Was the incorporation into the family in these cases complete, and were the persons reclaimed in after life?"

The Mendawahkantons have very few children, at present, that they have stolen or taken prisoners. In former times they used to take a great many women and children prisoners. The Sioux say they have taken a great many from the Iowas, and Indians of the Mississippi and Missouri. We know of no whites ever having been taken prisoners, except in one instance. Some people were coming from Red river to Saint Peters. The Sussetons attacked them, and killed several of the white people, and took one or two children prisoners, which were delivered up to Lieutenant Green, an officer of the 5th infantry, and brought down to Fort Snelling.

"177.—What are the effects of the introduction and use of ardent spirits, in the lodge, in deranging its order? Does it lead to broils and scenes of intoxication? Does it diminish the means of the hunter to procure food and clothing? Does it impair his capacity of hunting? Does it injure his health? Does it affect his reputation? Does it deprive his wife and children of necessary comforts? Do its excesses lead the victim, in the end, to want, to the murder of friends, killed in states of inebriation, and finally, to his own premature death?"

The effects of ardent spirits in the lodge are equal to the appearance of a grizzly bear amongst them. The men get drunk, and perfectly crazy; all at once, the Indian will grasp his gun and knife, and out he goes, in search of some one that has injured him. He drives through the women and children — they scream with fright, and fly to the woods; the maniac, if he cannot find the object he wishes, will take after the women and children; and many a night have they had to sleep out in the coldest winter nights, on account of these drunkards. The use of ardent spirits makes them unhealthy, and the effect is carried down to the children. An Indian, when he drinks, sleeps out very often, almost naked, which brings on disease. It makes him lazy; and what he ought to give to his children goes to buy whiskey. The amount paid for whiskey, in this country, if spent for corn, would feed all the Indians on the Saint

Peters river, full one half of the year. In the sight of the Indians, drunkenness is not looked upon as a great evil; that is, by the major part, for the most of them drink to excess, and try all means to get liquor. They come and make complaints about the whiskey traffic, and at the same time are carrying it secretly into the country. Indians are always poor enough; but by indolence and drinking, they suffer much more. There are thousands of people in the United States that have not half the advantages of the Indians who draw annuities, and would live a happy life if they had some advantages which those Indians have. But not so with the Indians themselves; they are all in misery and trouble, and always will be, until our government treats them as a father treats his children — judges and acts for them, and compels them to listen to the President, who is their guardian. They often kill each other in drunken broils, which news does not often reach the President. Many are the cases of premature deaths by intoxication, and the Dacotah nation is beginning to wane, and everything appears to be hopeless as to the future; and we have forebodings that it will be said, ere long, "This is where a fine-looking race of Dacotah Indians lived."

"178.—What means are taken to preserve the family identity? If the clan-marks or totems denote affinity, is it not rather the evidence of a general, and not a near family connexion?"

The Dacotahs have no marks of identity as noticed. The medicine-sack of a deceased Indian is given to the nearest relation; this is the only mark of identity. This sack is kept for two or three generations sometimes; but the names of the owners have no affinity to the former family. So all is kept in the memory; and when that fails, all is gone.

"179.—Has there been a declension of the tribes in the United States from any former probable condition, and what is the type and character of the hunter state, as it exists amongst these tribes? Are any of the tribes quite degraded in the scale of being? Have they degenerated into any customs or practices revolting to humanity? Do they eat human flesh, upon any occasion, and if so, under what circumstances?"

It is reported by the Indians themselves that there were once many more Siouxs than at present. The Indians of the Missouri have degraded themselves in the scale of human beings, and have habits and customs revolting to humanity and decency. Many of the Siouxs eat the heart of an enemy; all the war-party will get a mouthful if they can.

"180.—Is there any proof of the existence of infanticide among the American Indians? Are the lives of female children held in less esteem than those of males? Are widows ever doomed to death on the decease of their husbands? Is there any tradition that they were ever burned, on such occasions, as upon a funeral pyre? Are devotees to religion ever known to sacrifice themselves to their gods, as is done in the East? Do they ever suspend themselves on hooks of iron, with the view of enduring meritorious sufferings? Do they wear particular spots on their foreheads to denote religious sects? Are there any castes among the North American tribes, or any vestiges of such an institution, or belief? Are any of the American waters, or great rivers, deemed sacred, and coveted in death?"

Infanticide is committed occasionally among the Dacotahs. The lives of female children are held in less estimation than the male children. The widows are not doomed to death on the decease of the husband. Some women die shortly after their husband, with a purer love than that of the man. We have no tradition of their burning any one after death. We know of no human sacrifices that are accredited. They do not suspend themselves on hooks, but sometimes run a knife through the fleshy part of the arm or thigh, as a token of mourning for deceased relatives. A few have marks for fancy mostly. Caste, among the Indians, does not seem to be noticed among the Dacotahs. A negro very black, they despise. The rivers and waters are not coveted in death.

"181.—Do they, in scalping persons slain in battle, use any ceremony, or adopt any practices which are of oriental character? Is the scalp-lock, which it is customary to cultivate, a usage of ancient origin; and is there any peculiar mode of tracing antiquity in its form and position?"

Any part of the head is scalped when in a hurry; but when they have time they scalp the whole head and face, except the nose, eyes, and mouth. This is a trophy for the women and children to dance about.

"182.—Is the patriarchal feature strongly marked in the Indian institutions? Note whether there be anything in their manners, customs, or opinions, resembling ancient nations of the eastern world. Observe, particularly, whether there be any customs respecting the sacrifice of animals, or the withdrawal of females, or any other well-known ancient trait, in which the Indian tribes coincide."

Meats forbidden, are strictly observed by the Indians, but all differ in the different kinds of meat forbidden, (see Deuteronomy, Chap. XIV.) Fish also, (Deuteronomy, Chap. IX.) Self-righteousness prevailed amongst them, (Leviticus, Chaps. XXII., XXX.) In some of the Indians' feasts they have to eat all the food cooked, (Leviticus, Chap. XXIII.) The feast of first fruits is strictly observed among these Indians. An Indian will not eat of his fruits until he has made a feast. All meats offered must be of the best kind, (Leviticus, Chaps. XV., XX.) This law respecting women is strictly observed. A woman cannot enter a lodge during her menstruation. When their issue ceases, they go and jump into the water up to their waist, and wash themselves thoroughly, and build a fire near by, and stand by it until dry. When they go to the lodge, the fire is all removed from out the lodge. The woman enters, and a new fire is kindled, (Leviticus, Chap. XI.) There are some animals they consider unclean and will not eat them. In all the Indian feasts of spiritual forms, incense is offered in the following manner. After the feast is over, the host draws a large coal or two from the fire, and some leaves of the cedar are laid thereon, and all the dishes are perfumed. Then the Indians leave the lodge for home, taking with them the dishes.

"183.—Do the Indians swear, or use any form of oath? Is the Great Spirit ever appealed to by name, or is the name carefully suppressed, or some other substituted for it?"

They swear by Wakonda and the Earth. The Great Spirit is seldom named, only in forcing the truth, and not frequently. Also some appeal to the Earth.

"184.—What is the Indian mode of salutation? Have they any conventional terms for it? Do they shake hands? If so, is this an ancient custom, or is it done in imitation of Europeans? Do they greet each other by name? Did the Indians anciently rub or fold their arms together, as was witnessed on the first meeting of the northern tribes with Cartier in the St. Lawrence, A. D. 1535?"

They seldom greet each other, and seldom shake hands. Of late years, some of the old people shake hands. It is not an ancient custom. These Indians have no mode of greeting.

"185.—Is smoking a very ancient custom? Was there a time when their ancestors did not smoke? Did they bring the habit from abroad? Was the tobacco-plant given to them by the Great Spirit? How and when? State the tale. Was the gift made in the north, or did they bring the plant from the southern latitudes? If this plant will not grow, and come to perfection so as to bear seed, in high northern latitudes, is this not a proof that their general migration was from the southern or central latitudes?"

Smoking is a modern practice, and was introduced by the traders. Also the tobacco.

"186.—Approbativeness. Is this strongly developed in the Indian mind; and what forms of exhibition does it assume in the manners and customs? Is the war-path pursued as the chief avenue to fame? Are hunting and oratory pursued with the same ultimate ends? Are there any other modes in which an ambitious chieftain can gratify the passion?"

Many of them have strong, expressive looks. It is exhibited in many ways; in power, in anger, in love, in mischief, or in craftiness. War is often resorted to, to appease anger. If they cannot succeed in this way, they try their luck by quarrelling at home.

"187.—Is stoicism of feeling deemed a mark of manliness by the Indians? To what extent is the countenance a true exponent of the actual state of feeling? Does taciturnity proceed from a sense of caution, or is the mere act of silence deemed wisdom? What general theories of thought govern the manners of the sachems, and to what extent, and in what manner, are the maxims of conversation and of public speaking taught to the young?"

Stoicism is deemed necessary to form a brave man. You seldom hear an Indian complain. I once saw an Indian's arm amputated; and you could not perceive a muscle move in his face. As soon as the limb was off, the Indian asked for a pipe to smoke. Mock-peeah-mence, Walking-Cloud, was his name. Indians are generally cautious. This is caused by necessity and habit: also from the constant wars which are carried on and carried out, by men coming in, dispersing the enemy, and taking every advantage of them. Public speaking is a gift of nature. Generally there are many of the chiefs who are no orators.

"188.—Quickness of sight and acuteness of observation in threading the wilderness: these have excited general notice, but the subject is still a matter of curiosity. How are they guided when there is neither sun by day, nor moon by night? How is the precise time of the desertion of an encampment, and the composition and character of the party, determined? What are the elements of precision in this knowledge, so far as they are to be found in the plants, or forest, or in the heavens? Is there extreme acuteness of the senses, and the nervous power of appreciating the nearness, or relative position of objects?"

I have known Indians to get lost in their own hunting-grounds, but it is not a frequent occurrence; and I believe the Indians are not as good judges of distance and direction as our white hunters, particularly in a country they are not acquainted with. They are guided by some foreknowledge of the country, tracks and traces. They are generally very correct in telling the time of passing or leaving camps. In summer when the grass is trodden down, it will soon wither, but will retain some color for several days; but if a rain should fall, the grass turns a dark color, and in this way they tell pretty accurately when any one is passing along. They say it is so many days since it rained, and the foot-tracks have either been made before or since, say three, four, five, or six days, as the case may be. In the winter they tell in the same way, by snow falling after the camp has been raised, or before; also when they cut wood, the cuts will change color. The strength of the camp is found by the number of lodges, and number of fires. They claim to have some extreme acuteness of the senses, and often pretend to tell when an enemy is near them.

"189.—Are the Indians very prone to be deceived by professed dreamers, or the tricks of jugglers, or by phenomena of nature, of the principles and causes of which they are ignorant? Is not the surrounding air and forest converted, to some extent, by this state of ignorance of natural laws, into a field of mystery, which often fills their minds with needless alarms? Are their priests shrewd enough to avail themselves of this credulity, either by observing this general defect of character, or by penetrating into the true causes of the phenomena? Do the fears and credulity of the Indians generally nourish habits of suspicion? Do they tend to form a character for concealment and cunning?"

We say that they are deceived, but the Indians say they are not deceived, and do not believe in all the tricks of their jugglers. They will not acknowledge they are ignorant, particularly in religious opinion, and war. They say the whites are the greatest fools they ever saw, to go and stand up like a stump to be shot at. Indians are all cunning; and all their thoughts are upon war and strategy. The game they kill is killed in large quantities by cunning, in approaching within shooting distance. Once an Indian bet a keg of whiskey with a trader, that he could go into the open prairie and approach a deer and kill it. So one day an opportunity happened in sight of all the people at the trading house. The Indian approached the deer and killed it, and got his keg of whiskey. The Indians are very credulous. Phenomena, they say, are sent as omens from something that is angry with them. Meteors, Aurora Borealis, and things of this kind, they fear very much. They can conceal desires for a long time, and revenge the longest of all. An Indian had his niece killed by a Chippewa, who cut the girl's nose and upper lip off, after she was dead. Thirty years after, the uncle went to war, and they killed a Chippewa girl. The Sioux did as the Chippewa did, and got revenge, as he said, by cutting off the girl's nose and lip.

"190. — How do their physical powers compare with the strength of Europeans? How many pounds can they lift? What are their comparative powers in running, or rowing a boat? Are they expert and vigorous in handling the axe, or the scythe? What is the greatest burden which you have known an Indian to carry?"

Their physical powers are not to be compared with those of the whites in any way, but by travelling, or carrying on the head, and this is custom. One hundred and fifty pounds is a heavy lift for an Indian; still, I suppose an Indian would carry two hundred pounds on his head by a strap quite easy. I have seen white men beat the best of them running short races. Rowing a boat they know nothing about; but to paddle a canoe, there are but few to surpass them. They cannot chop or mow. The women beat the men very decidedly in chopping.

4. ORIGIN OF THE MANDAN TRIBE, AND ITS STOCK OF AFFILIATION.

SUBJECTS OF PAPER.

a. Mandans.
b. Crow Tribe.
c. Paunch Band or Clan.
d. Minnetarees Proper.
e. Minnetarees of the Willows.
f. Gros Ventres.
g. Big Bellies.
h. Mattasoons or Ahahaways.

MANDAN AND UPSAROKA FAMILY.

History has but little that it can appropriate to itself, respecting most of our Indian tribes. One of the most common and striking facts respecting them, consists in that evolvement of one tribe from another, under some distinctive name, and the assumption of a position of independency, which has covered the broad country with a multiplicity of various dialects and languages, bands, tribes, and nations, and with its concomitant, endless wars. Most commonly these names are terms of reproach, from some other tribes; sometimes they are geographical terms, with local inflections, denoting the places where they dwell; never do they denote the ethnological chain which connects the great circles and groups. Tradition is soon exhausted, and the Indian mind is prone to take shelter in allegory and fiction.

The Mandans hold their place in this category: agreeably to a tradition which they communicated in 1805,[1] they had a subterraneous origin. They were shut out from the light of heaven, and dwelt together, near a subterraneous lake. A grape-vine, which extended its adventurous roots far into the earth, gave them the first intimation of the light that gladdened the face of the earth. By means of this vine, one half of the tribe climbed up to the surface, and were delighted with its light and air, its wild fruits and game. The other half were left in their dark prison-house, owing to the bulk and weight of an old woman, who, by her corpulency, tore down the vine, and prevented any more of the tribe from ascending.

---

[1] Lewis and Clarke's Expedition, p. 139, Vol. I.

If we compare this relation in the only light in which sense can be made of it, namely, a figure or allegory, designed to show some important phase, or calamitous point in their history, it may be said that darkness is a symbol of woe and trouble. By this they were enveloped, and held, for a well-remembered time, from the benefits and advantages of subsistence, from which they had been excluded. Grapes and buffalo may be deemed symbolical of abundant fruits and game. Owing to the intervention of a female, one half of the tribe were actually excluded from these benefits. In short, they were, by some mischance, parted into two bands or tribes, and went different ways. The particular character of this mischance can only be conjectured; it is only inferable, symbolically, that it was intense, as the depth below the sunlight surface denotes.

The religion of the Mandans consists in a belief in one great presiding good spirit, who is observant of their destinies. Each individual selects for himself some animal, or other object of personal devotion. This animal, or other creative object, becomes his protector and intercessor with the Great Spirit. To please and propitiate it, every attention is bestowed, as he wanders in the forest. Success in war, hunting, and planting, is sought through this intercessor, who is ever regarded as his guardian spirit. The rites of this guardian worship are generally secret, and the favor sought is through the magic, or mysterious skill, or art, of the supplicant in simples and medicines. Every operation of the laws of nature, which is not palpable to the senses, is deemed mysterious and supernatural. By the ignorance of the darkened minds of the lower class of Canadians, who were the first to be brought into contact with them, this unseen action was called "a medicine." The Indians readily adopted this erroneous phrase, and are disposed to consider every phenomenon to be medical, which is mysterious.

Information given to the late General William Clarke, in his expedition up the Missouri, denotes that the Mandans have suffered greater vicissitudes of fortune than most of the American tribes. About a century ago, they were settled on both banks of the Missouri, some fifteen hundred miles above its mouth. They were then living in nine villages, surrounded by circular walls of earth, without the adjunct of a ditch. The ruins of one of the old villages observed in 1804, covered nearly eight acres, and denoted a comparatively large population. Two of these villages were on the east, and seven on the west side of the Missouri. They were first discovered and made known to us, in this position, in 1772. (Mitchell's letter herewith.) They appear to have been a hated tribe to the Dacotahs or Sioux, and Assineboins, who, from the earliest traditionary times, carried on fierce war against them. Finding themselves sorely pressed by this war, and having experienced the wasting inroads of the small-pox, the two eastern villages united into one, and migrated up the river, to a point opposite the Arickaras, 1430 miles above the mouth. The same causes soon pressed the other seven western villages, reducing them to five; they also afterwards migrated in a body, and joined their tribes-men in the Arickara country, and concentrated and settled themselves in two large villages. Here they dwelt for a time, but were still subject to the fierce attacks of their enemies; and deeming the position unfavorable, they removed higher up the river, and took possession of a precipitous and tenable point of land, formed by an involution of the Missouri, where they formed one compact village, in 1776. The eastern Mandans had settled in two villages, but finding the attacks of the Sioux hard to be resisted, united also in one village. The two divisions of Mandan villages were still separated by the Missouri river, but seated directly opposite each other, about three miles apart, including low lands.

The position is estimated to be 1600 miles from the junction of the Missouri with the Mississippi. There they were visited by Lewis and Clarke, on the 27th October, 1804. This was a memorable, and an auspicious event in their history; as the intrepid American explorers determined to pass their first winter in this vicinity. They built Fort Mandan a few miles distant, on a heavily-wooded piece of bottom-land, which yielded trees of sufficient size for erecting quarters for themselves and the men. They immediately opened an intercourse with the Mandans, and established a friendship with them, which was strengthened by the incidents of a winter's residence. Captain Clarke, on one occasion, marched out with a body of men, to defend them against a murderous attack of the Sioux; and by this act of intrepidity secured their highest respect, and gave them a practical assurance of the fidelity of his counsels. In accordance with the policy of the government, he had counselled them against the fatal policy of those wars which had reduced their population from nine to two villages, and threatened their extinction. He recognised Poscopsahe, or Black Wild Cat, as their first, and Kagonamok as their second chief, with their subordinates; and distributed medals and flags, in accordance with these recognitions. Poscopsahe responded to his advice proposing a general peace among the prairie tribes, and admitted the good influences that must flow from this expedition through their country, and across the Rocky Mountains. The expedition remained some five months at Fort Mandan, and made a most favorable impression upon this tribe.

No estimate of the Mandan population is given by Lewis and Clarke. It is a point respecting which their chiefs seem to have been studiously silent. The population was doubtless depressed from their former numbers, dating back to any period of their separate points of residence on lower parts of the Missouri, and their pride and policy alike forbade reference to it. Of all people, the Indians are the most uncomplaining; they can calmly and stoically see themselves decline, tribally and personally, but it is a prime point of Indian character not to complain. It is also to be remarked, that the whole aboriginal population of the United States has, at all periods of their history, felt a strong repugnance to be numbered.

The Mandans are reported by the Indian Bureau, in 1836—prior to the date of the commencement of these investigations—on doubtful data, at 3200. There is no period known to us, when they could have reached that number. The judgment of persons best acquainted with them, places their gross numbers, in 1837, at 1600; an estimate as high as could be well made, when the considerable annual losses to which they have been subjected from war, are considered. The number of births among the prairie and non-industrial tribes is at best but adequate, and often inadequate, on the average, to repair the losses by deaths;—estimating war, at all times, greatly to swell the list. These losses carry the average above the ordinary list of Indian casualties.

Surrounded, as the Mandans were, by active enemies, and doomed, as they appear to be, to extinction, they might have resisted their course of depopulation a long period, had it not been for the re-occurrence of small-pox among them, in the summer of 1837. By this fatal calamity their numbers were reduced, in a few days, to less than one-sixteenth of their whole number. One of the reports of the disaster reduced the survivors to thirty-one, another to one hundred and twenty-five, another to one hundred and forty-five. (Vide Vol. II., p. 239.) They were compelled to abandon their villages, rendered pestilent by the decomposition of so great a number; and the survivors at first fled to the Minnetarees, and afterwards established a small village a few miles above the old site of Mandan. Mr. T. A. Culbertson, who visited the upper Mississippi in 1850, puts them in that year at fifty lodges, and one hundred and fifty souls.[1] By the report of Col. D. D. Mitchell, Superintendent of Indian Affairs, dated two years later, which is hereto appended, the present number of the Mandans is shown to be three hundred and eighty-five.

The physical peculiarities described by Col. Mitchell, as well as the traditions stated by him, are worthy of careful examination. The late Dr. Samuel George Morton, who had elaborately examined the physiology of the Indian tribes, expresses the opinion (Vol. II., p. 322) that the grey hair of the Mandan denotes only a morbid state of it, analogous to that which supervenes in Albinos, and consequently that it does not take the case out of the operation of the general laws of the development of human hair. Four Mandan skulls in his extensive collection of Crania, in the Academy of Natural Sciences, at Philadelphia, whose admeasurements have been taken by Mr. Phillips, agreeably to Dr. Morton's system, give for that tribe an average facial angle of 74°, and an internal capacity of 80½ cubic inches. (Vol. II., p. 335.) The highest average facial angle and internal capacity of the crania of any of our groups of tribes in the United States, is found to exist in the Iroquois, being respectively 76°, and 88 cubic inches, denoting the Mandans to have an inferior intellectual development to that celebrated group.

The origin of the Mandans has been a subject creating some diversity of opinion. In 1804–5, during the ascent of Lewis and Clarke's expedition, there lived four miles below the Mandan village, at a place called Mahaha, seated on a high plain at the mouth of Knife river, the remnant of a tribe called Ahahways, or "people who dwell on a hill." They were called by the French, Soulier Noir, or Black Shoes, and by the Mandans, Wattasoons. This people, though regarded as a distinct tribe, appear to have many characteristics in their manners and history, in perfect accordance with the Mandans. They dwelt near them, at lower points of the Missouri, and were driven off, along with the Mandans, by the Siouxs and Assineboins, by whom the greater part of them were put to death. They coincide with them in their religious beliefs, and in their manners and customs, and were ever on good terms with them, and their allies, the Minnetarees. It is affirmed of the Wattasoons (Alcido's Geography, article Ahahaways) that they claim to have once been a part of the Absaroka, or Crow nation, whom they still acknowledge as relations. They understand the language of the Minnetarees, their near neighbors and friends; and it is presumed that they are affiliated to the latter.

---

[1] Fifth Annual Report of the Smithsonian Institute, p. 143.

The Minnetarees were found in their present position by Lewis and Clarke. They are the Gros Ventres and Ponch Indians of the French, and the Big Bellies and Fall Indians of the Hudson's Bay traders. The accounts given to these explorers, put them at 600 warriors, or 3000 souls, on the Missouri, in 1804. Mandan tradition asserts that the Minnetarees came out of the water to the east, and settled near them, when they occupied their position at the nine villages; that they were a numerous people, and settled themselves on the southern banks of the Missouri. While thus seated, a feud arose among them, and a separation took place; two bands of them went into the plains, under separate leaders, and were known by the name of Crow and Paunch Indians. The other bands moved up the Missouri, concurrently with themselves, to their present position. In these migrations, the Minnetarees and Mandans had the same friends and the same enemies.

This tradition the Minnetarees proper do not confirm. True to the general Indian principle of local origins and independency, which is a mere backer of title to the lands everywhere, they assert that they grew out of the ground where they now live. They also assert that the Metahartas, or Minnetarees of the Willows, whose language is the same, with little variations, came out and rejoined them from the plains, which gives confirmation to the Mandan tradition of their former dispersion while living below, near the nine villages.

Lewis and Clarke were informed that the Minnetarees were a part of the Fall Indians, who occupy the country between the Missouri, at Mandan, and the great Saskatchawine river of Hudson's Bay.

Mackenzie applies the term Fall Indians, or Big Bellies, to a tribe living on the south fork of the Saskatchawine, extending from that branch south-east across the plains from latitude 47° 32″ north, to longitude 101° west, to the south bend of the Assineboin river.[1] He places the number of men at 700; an estimate which, if we assume half this number to be heads of families, would give a gross population of 1750, which, added to the cognate Minnetarees on the Missouri, before given, would denote a gross Minnetaree population of 4750. These estimates were made respectively in 1790 and 1804, although Mackenzie did not publish his work till 1801, nor Lewis and Clarke till 1814.

---

[1] Voyages from Montreal through the continent of North America, &c. London Edition, p. 61–67, Introd.

The Fall Indians are not to be confounded with the Sitkeas, consisting of Blackfeet, Piegan and Blood Indians, or Pawkees, who occupy the main Saskatchawine, reaching over southerly to the great bend of the Missouri. It is seen, from Umprevill's vocabulary, that the two languages are distinct, and they are proved by Mr. Gallatin, (vide Archæologia, Vol. II., p. 373,) to have no words whatever in common.

From a vocabulary of the Minnetarees, collected by Mr. Say, in Major Long's first expedition, this language is perceived to have analogies with the Upsaroka, or Crow language. But, by a comparison of the Minnetaree and Mandan annexed (2.), there is but a slight resemblance between the inflections of these two languages, and a wide disagreement in radicals. Hitherto, our means of examining the Mandan language have been confined to ten compound words; being the names of chiefs who signed the treaty of July, 1825, which are extracted by Mr. Gallatin, at p. 379, Vol. II. Archæologia Americana. A full vocabulary of the Mandan, consisting of three hundred words, (vide § IX.,) has recently been received from Colonel Mitchell, of St. Louis, which enables us to speak with more confidence of its character, and the position of this tribe among the Missouri Indians. This vocabulary has been prepared by Mr. James Kipp, an intelligent person, who has been, for a long time, engaged in commerce with the tribes of the upper Missouri, and is well versed in the Mandan and Minnetaree dialects.

By the table of the classification of the Indian languages, prepared by Mr. Gallatin in 1836, and herewith first published from the manuscript, the Mandans are arranged under his 10th, or Sioux family; the latter term corresponding, generally, with the "Dacotah group" of these investigations. We are still without a vocabulary of the Upsaroka language, except the short and fragmentary one of Mr. Say, in Long's First Expedition. But from the present cultivated state of the Dacotah language, and from Mr. Kipp's ample vocabulary of the Mandan, we are inclined to believe that this language cannot retain the position assigned to it by Mr. Gallatin, from very scanty materials of comparison in the Sioux or Dacotah group. At the same time, the probabilities are also lessened by its being cognate with the Upsaroka, to which its resemblances do not appear to be greater than mere propinquity of position would expose it. From the want of a full vocabulary of the Upsaroka, above referred to, this question cannot be satisfactorily settled; but the annexed comparisons (1.) go far to denote the claims of the Mandans to independency of linguistic position among the tribes of the Missouri. At the same time, it admits of little doubt that the Upsarokas owe their origin to the Missouri Valley; from which, by the fortunes of war, or enterprise, they have in past times fled to the foot and spurs of the Rocky Mountains.

I annex to these remarks a letter of Colonel Mitchell, the present Superintendent of United States Indian Affairs on that important frontier, to which his knowledge of the tribes of Missouri, and the Plains generally, and his good judgment of the Indian character and movements in those bleak latitudes, give great weight.

WASHINGTON, *January* 28, 1852.

SIR:—In compliance with your request, I furnish you with a brief history of the Mandan Indians. The early portion of their history, I gather from the narration of Mr. Mackintosh; who, it seems, belonged to, or was in some way connected with the French Trading Company, as far back as 1772. According to his narration, he set out from Montreal, in the summer of 1773, crossed over the country to the Missouri river, and arrived at one of the Mandan villages on Christmas day. He gives a long, and somewhat romantic description of the manner in which he was received, and dwells at some length upon the greatness of the Mandan population, their superior intelligence, and prowess in war. He says, at that time the Mandans occupied nine large towns lying contiguous, and could, at short notice, muster 15,000 mounted warriors. I am inclined to think that the statistics of the author whom I have quoted are somewhat exaggerated; and at the time he visited the Missouri, the Mandans were not so numerous as he represents. There are, however, the ruins of five villages in the neighborhood of the present village, which were evidently, at one time, occupied by the Mandans; and judging from the space which these "deserted villages" cover, they must have been powerful communities; at least so far as numbers could make them powerful.

As far as we can learn, the Mandans seem to have been a warlike people; so much so, as to cause the neighboring tribes, the Sioux, Cheyennes, Assineboins, Crows, and other smaller tribes, to unite in a crusade against them. The operations of this military alliance against the Mandans (according to Indian history) were prosecuted with great vigor for three years; the Mandans, in the mean time, being driven from village to village, until the different bands became concentrated at the place which they now occupy. This village is situated on a high projecting cliff on the banks of the Missouri; the rocky barrier being an impregnable fortification for about two-thirds of the circular space occupied by their dirt lodges; the remaining space opening on the plains was strongly fortified, and in this position they were enabled to defend themselves against the combined forces of their numerous enemies. The Mandans were, however, not content to act on the defensive; but continued to send out, annually, war-parties against the Sioux, and other tribes by whom they were surrounded. In these warlike excursions, they lost many of their bravest young men, which prevented any increase of population. They remained in this independent position until the summer of 1837, when an enemy, far more formidable than the Sioux, or other neighboring tribes, made his appearance: I allude to the small-pox, introduced among them, as well as the other prairie tribes, during that year. This fell pestilence swept off about one-half of all the prairie tribes, excepting the Crows and Mandans. The former escaped entirely by fleeing to the Rocky Mountains, and interdicting all communications with either whites or Indians, for more than a year. The Mandans remained in their ancient village, trusting to the potency of their "great medicine," and were almost entirely annihilated.

When the small-pox disappeared from the country, the once-powerful nation of Mandans was reduced to 125 souls! and these consisted mostly of women and children. The Arickaras (a neighboring and friendly tribe) moved in and took possession of the village; they were thus, for the time being, protected against their relentless enemies, the Sioux. As the Mandan children grew up, and intermarried, the population rapidly increased; so much so, that in 1847 the remnants of the tribe gathered together, and built a town or village for themselves, where they now reside on friendly terms with their neighbors, and are rapidly increasing in population. They now number about 385 souls.

The Mandans are a proud, high-toned tribe, and could not bear the idea of losing their name and nationality by being amalgamated with the Arickaras or any other nation.

There are great diversities of opinion as to what tribe or tribes the Mandans originally belonged. I am inclined to believe they are a distinct tribe, or at least their relationship to other tribes is so very remote, that it cannot now be traced. In their language, manners, customs, and mode of life, they are altogether different from the Indians occupying that region of country; and in fact differing from any Indians on the continent of America, so far as my observation extends; and I have some knowledge of a large majority of the existing tribes.

Apart from their peculiar language and habits, there is a physical peculiarity. A large portion of the Mandans have grey hair, and blue or light brown eyes, with a Jewish cast of features. It is nothing uncommon to see children of both sexes, from five to six years of age, with hair perfectly grey. They are also much fairer than the prairie or mountain tribes; though this may be somewhat attributable to the fact of their living in dirt lodges, and less exposed to the sun than the prairie tribes. Information as to some of their peculiar customs can be found in the Journal of Lewis and Clarke. The scenes described by Catlin, existed almost entirely in the fertile imagination of that gentleman.

Very respectfully,
Your obedient servant,
D. D. MITCHELL,
Sup't. Ind. Affairs.

HENRY R. SCHOOLCRAFT, ESQ.
Washington City, D. C.

At a subsequent period, namely, 11th August, 1852, the same gentleman transmitted me the vocabulary of the Mandan language, to which allusion has been made. "You know," he observes, "I always contended that Mr. Gallatin was in error, in supposing the Mandan and Sioux descended from the same stock. Mr. Kipp, who has been well acquainted with both tribes, for upwards of thirty years, and speaks both languages with great fluency and correctness, fully concurs with me in opinion. There are a few words, that are somewhat similar in sound; but this Mr. Kipp accounts for by the fact of the Sioux and Mandans having been neighbors from time immemorial, and, during intervals of peace, visiting and intermarrying with each other."

The existence of the syllable "sub," in the Mandan language, and in the apparent sense in which we employ this Latin preposition, as signifying a less or subordinate degree, is a peculiarity which has not been found in any other Indian language in North America. It is noticed as a mere anomaly in Indian syllables, and not as denoting a foreign derivation. Thus, man, in the Mandan, is numankosh; boy, subnumankosh; woman, mihi; girl, submihi. The syllable is quite frequent, and always in this apparent sense. Another peculiarity is the sound of the Greek ipselon, as it is strongly heard in German, which may be represented by y y.

(1.)	Upsaroka.	Mandan.
Good	Eetshick	Shish.
Bad	Kabbeeaik	Yiggosh.
Bison	Beeshay	Ptihnde (cow).
Bull	Cheeraypay	Peroké.
Beaver	Beerappay	Warappe.
Tobacco	Opay	Manashé.
Fear	Namatay	Tehansh.
Mountain	Amay-thee-bay	Aparash-yteksh.
Elk	Eecheereecaty	Umpa.
Knife	Mitsee	Mahi.
Near	Ashkay	Ashgash.
Friend	Sheeka	Manuka.
To eat	Baboushmeek	Worūth.
Little	Eerokatay	Yamahe.
Y. Woman	Meekatay	Submihé.
Water	Meenee	Miné.
Fire	Beeday	Warade.
Wood	Monay	Mana.
River	Anshay	Passanhe.
Horse	Neecheeray	Umpa manyse (like an elk).

	UPSAROKA.	MANDAN.
No	Baraytah	Migosh.
Strong	Batsatsh	Zihush.

(2.)	MANDAN.	MINNETAREE.
Wolf	Hārate	Saijah.
Man	Numankosh	Matsa.
Arm	Aadé	Arrough.
Bear	Mato	Lahpeetze.
Bird	Mareksuke	Sacauga.
Boy	Subnumankosh	Shikauga.
Neck	Itaino	Apeeh.
Bison	Peroké	Keeeerepee.
Beaver	Warappe	Meerapa.

5. MIGRATION OF THE IOWAS.

[With a Map.]

THE Iowas are noticed in the earlier French accounts of the Mississippi Valley. It is questionable whether they were known to the early Spanish adventurers who visited the lower part of that valley. The name "Ayennes," which appears in the narrative of Cabaca de Vaca's wanderings through Arkansas, after the unfortunate expedition of Narvaez in 1527,[1] may, possibly, be an early reference to them. Their history, along with the other tribes of the Great Prairie, or Dacotah group, assigns them an origin in the south-west. The French usually called them Ayouas or Ajoues — an orthography which very well restores the existing sounds of the name.

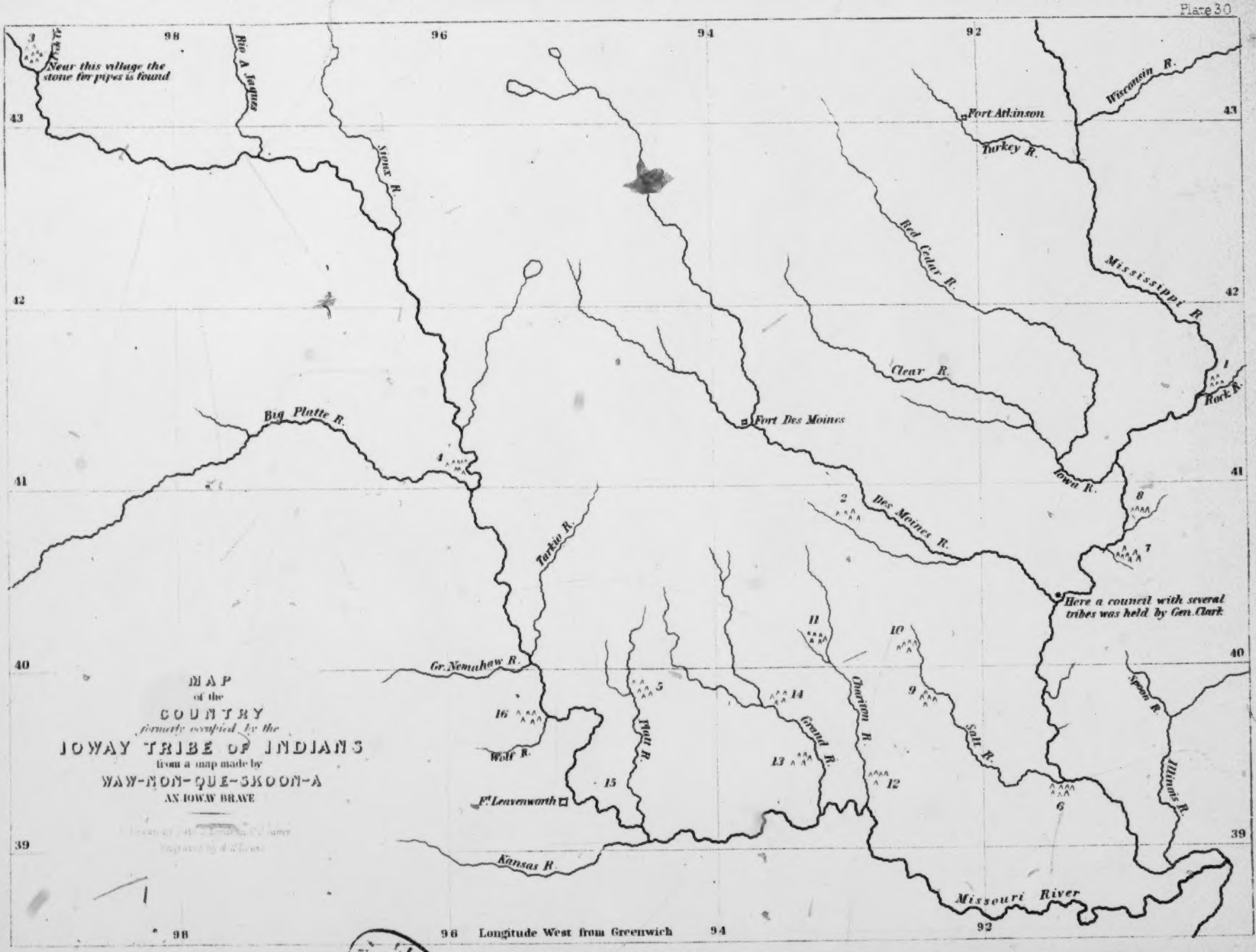
In Alcedo's Spanish Geography, under the name of Ajoues, they are mentioned as a tribe of Louisiana, for whose government a garrison had been kept on the Missouri.

Mr. Irvin and Mr. Hamilton, to whose joint paper herewith annexed, attention is invited, are missionaries on the Missouri river, to the Iowa and a party of the Sac tribe. They are in the service of the Presbyterian Board of Foreign Missions, which is located, as its central point of action, in the city of New York, under the superintendence, for many years past, of Walter Lowrie, Esq.

The original outlines of the Indian map which is herewith exhibited, (Plate 30,) is due to those gentlemen, and is a singularly interesting document in Iowa history. It was drawn in the rough, by Waw-non-que-skoon-a, with a black-lead-pencil, on a large sheet of white paper, furnished at the mission-house, and has been reduced in size, and its rigid lines adapted to the surveys of the public lands on the Missouri and Missis-

---

[1] Buckingham Smith's Trans.


43
42
41
40
39
98
96
94
92
Longitude West from Greenwich
3
Near this village the stone for pipes is found
Rio A Jaques
Sioux R.
Big Platte R.
4
Fort Atkinson
Turkey R.
Wisconsin R.
Mississippi R.
Red Cedar R.
Clear R.
Fort Des Moines
1
Rock R.
Iowa R.
8
7
2
Des Moines R.
Here a council with several tribes was held by Gen. Clark
Tarkio R.
Gr. Nemahaw R.
16
Wolf R.
Ft. Leavenworth
15
5
Platt R.
14
Grand R.
13
11
Chariton R.
12
10
9
Salt R.
6
Spoon R.
Illinois R.
Kansas R.
Missouri River

MAP
of the
COUNTRY
formerly occupied by the
JOWAY TRIBE OF INDIANS
from a map made by
WAW-NON-QUE-SKOON-A
AN IOWAY BRAVE

[illegible]
[illegible]

Lippincott, Grambo & Co. Phila.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

sippi. It furnishes a practical and affirmative reply to query No. 31, on the capacity of the Indians to execute geographical charts. The original is retained in the Indian Bureau.

The object of Waw-non-que-skoon-a was to denote the places where the Iowas had lived during the sixteen migrations which preceded their residence at their present location, the Missouri; and, in truth, it nearly exhausts their history. The marks to denote a fixed residence, are a symbol for a lodge. These are carefully preserved, with their exact relative position. Their order, as given, is also preserved by figures. Could eras be affixed to these residences, it would give entire accuracy to the modern part of their history.

As it is, it depicts some curious facts in the history of predatory and erratic tribes, showing how they sometimes crossed their own track, and demonstrates the immense distances to which they rove.

The earliest date to which their recollection extends, as indicated by location No. 1, is at the junction of Rock river with the Mississippi. This was, manifestly, in or very near Winnebago territory, and confirms the traditions of several of the Missouri tribes, (vide Fletcher's paper.) From this point they migrated down the Mississippi to the river Des Moines, and fixed themselves at No. 2, on its south fork. They next made an extraordinary migration, abandoning the Mississippi and all its upper tributaries, and ascending the Missouri to a point of land formed by a small stream, on its east shore, called by the Indians Fish creek, which flows in from the direction of, and not far from, the celebrated Red Pipe stone quarry, on the heights of the Coteau des Prairies. No. 3.

They next descended the Missouri to the junction of the Nebraska, or Great Platte river, with that stream. No. 4. They settled on the west bank, keeping the buffalo ranges on their west. They next migrated still lower down the Missouri, and fixed themselves on the head-waters of the Little Platte river. No. 5.

From this location, when circumstances had rendered another change desirable, they returned to the Mississippi, and located themselves at the mouth of Salt river. No. 6. Here passed another period. They next ascended the Mississippi, and settled on its east bank, at the junction of a stream in the present area of Illinois. No. 7. Their next migration carried them still higher on that shore, to the junction of another stream, No. 8, which is well nigh to their original starting point at No. 1.

They receded again to the south and west, first fixing themselves on Salt river, No. 9, above their prior site, No. 6, and afterwards changing their location to its very source. No. 10. They then passed, evidently by land, to the higher forks of the river Chariton, of Missouri, No. 11, and next descended that stream to near its mouth. No. 12. The next two migrations of this tribe were to the west valley of the Grand river, and then to its forks. No. 14. Still continuing their general migrations to the south and west, they chose the east bank of the Missouri, opposite the present site of

Fort Leavenworth, No. 15, and finally settled on the west bank of the Missouri, between the mouth of the Wolf and Great Namahaw, No. 16, where they now reside.

These migrations are deemed to be all of quite modern date, not exceeding the probable period to which well-known tradition could reach. They do not, it would seem, aspire to the area of their ancient residence on the lower and upper Iowa rivers, and about the region of St. Anthony's falls. (See Prescott's paper.)

We are taught something by these migrations. They were probably determined by the facility of procuring food. They relied, ever, greatly on the deer, elk, and buffalo. As these species are subject to changes, it is probable they carried the Indians with them. It is not probable that their locations were of long continuance at a place. Not over a dozen years at a location, on the average. It might be longer at some places, and less at others. This would not give a period of more than 180 years, before their arrival at their present place. Marquette found them, in 1673, at the mouth of the Des Moines. This, it is seen, was their first location.

It is not probable that the game-pursuing Indians were more fixed in their ancient, than in their modern locations. Indeed, the very reverse is true; for the modern hunter tribes avail themselves of the proximity of military posts, and out-settlements, to guard themselves from the approaches of hostile bands.

The population of the Iowas, as given at early dates, is very uniform, having evidently been copied by one writer from another. In some ancient MS. data in the Royal Marine Office, at Paris, which were submitted to the inspection of the American Minister (General Cass) in 1842, their numbers were put down, for about 1730, at 1100. When Colonel Bouquet marched over the Alleghanies against the western Indians, in 1764, the same numbers are used. Each of these dates assigns their residence to the Missouri, and there had, evidently, no recent information been received. The French alone were at that time in communication with them, and their alliance with the western Indians, in this war, made it impracticable to obtain further data.

By the official returns transmitted to the Indian Bureau, in 1848, they are stated at a fraction under 750 souls. They are, from the subjoined report, subjected to the influence of ardent spirits, and other deteriorating causes. The vital statistics furnished in 1848, give 55 births, and 90 deaths; an unusual sickness having supervened. 100 men are put down as hunters, and 60 as agriculturists; 33 children attended school, and 10 could speak the English language. They possessed 150 horses; the whole number adhered to their native religion; two persons were pledged to temperance. They received a little over $7000 annuity, in coin, and could muster 150 warriors. They possessed a council-house, a school and church, and two missionaries, and assistants, beneficially employed to teach and reclaim them.

Messrs. Hamilton and Irvin are engaged, as the practical duties of their mission permit, in the investigation of the Iowa language, which is a well-marked dialect of the generic Dacotah group, and have nearly completed a grammar and dictionary of that tongue. (For remarks upon it, see Section IX.)

The Iowas first entered into treaty relations with the United States, September 16, 1815. Their original right to the soil, with that of all the western tribes, is fully acknowledged. They have ceded considerable portions of territory. The whole annual sum required to fulfil treaty obligations with them, in 1851, was $7875. (Vide Part II., p. 569.)

The Iowa tribe gives name to one of the States of the Union; a territory of great beauty of surface and exuberant fertility, abounding in water-power, and possessing a fine climate.

6. IOWA AND SAC TRIBES.

BY REV. S. M. IRVIN, AND REV. WM. HAMILTON.

[Introductory Note.—From information derived from the Sac and Fox delegation, who visited Washington in the summer of 1852, the Sacs number, at this time, thirteen hundred souls; the Foxes about seven hundred. The tribe still retains its love of savage life and manners, beyond almost all others of the removed Indians on our borders. They dislike schools, missionaries, and even dwellings; and many of them yearn to go further west, that they may be still more distant from civilization, as well as nearer the buffalo, and other game. Their efforts at cultivation have been very feeble, though they inhabit a fine country, well adapted to successful agriculture. The tribe has a fund of $30,000.]

Iowa and Sac Mission, *Feb.* 1, 1848.

Sir:—Your circular of July 17th, together with the numerous queries on the Indian character and condition, reached us in due time. We were much gratified in contemplating the interest manifested by the Department in behalf of the poor Indians, and felt ourselves not only honored, but privileged in being invited to lend our mite to this desirable object. You were pleased to address us separately; but to better promote our object, with more ease to ourselves, we have concluded to respond jointly. We have for more than ten years been associated in the mission work, under the direction of the same society, and part of the time living as one family. As you are perhaps aware, we are under the direction of the Presbyterian Board of Foreign Missions, in New York, of which Walter Lowrie, Esq., is Corresponding Secretary. Our mission was commenced in 1837.

The time has fully come when we should have all our affairs relative to the Indian subject ready to send to you, and we at first thought that we would be certainly prepared by this time, but we find ourselves much disappointed in this. The business of the mission, and the boarding-school, and the press, and preparations for it, have carried us along with almost unconscious rapidity. As it is, we propose to send on all we have in readiness that will be of any use or interest, and that we will continue our researches on the queries as fast and far as we can, until the first of April; sending you a few sheets at a time, as we may get them prepared. If we should not get through the subject by that time, and a continuation of them after that will be of any use, we will, as time and means may allow, continue to send on. If, on the contrary, their continuation after this date will not be of any advantage, you will be so good as to let us know.

We will only add a few general remarks, which may be kept in mind in examining what we may send you, and to which we may refer in what we write.

1st. Our acquaintance is mainly with the Iowas: though the Missouri band of Sacs have been our neighbors, yet they have refused our instructions, and kept their distance, so that we know but little comparatively of their real character, though they have always treated us with much respect. These, however, being a branch of the Mississippi tribes, and also of the same family with the Potawatomies, Kickapoos, and others, their character will, no doubt, be fully set before you from other sources.

2d. We will take up your questions in order, placing the number only in the margin on the left hand, and answer them as briefly as we can, to render any satisfaction; waiving all those which do not refer to our tribes, and such as we cannot answer with a good degree of certainty, to ourselves.

3d. In tracing their history, religion, &c., it will be exceedingly difficult to proceed with certainty and satisfaction, from the difference we find in the notions of different individuals: *e. g.* to-day we will sit down with an old Indian, who will enter into a plausible detail of their history, or religious belief, or some traditions of their fathers. Another of the same age and patriarchal rights will give quite a different statement about the same things; or perhaps the same individual would to-morrow give his own story quite a different shade. This is the reason why the reports of the transient observers vary so much. It requires long acquaintance, and close observation, to arrive at anything like just conclusions on these points; and it is only by collecting different and conflicting notions, and balancing them, that we can find which prevails.

4th. The Iowas are probably but a remnant of a once numerous and considerable nation, which has dwindled down to the present few; and these have lost much of their pure native character, if we may so term it. As their numbers diminish before the whites, so also are their native characteristics destroyed. Indeed, they complain of this themselves, that they are losing the great medicine of their fathers, that they do not now worship as they once did, and that much of their history and character is lost. It will be seen, therefore, that our inquiries will be attended with some difficulty; but what we can get worthy of credence we will cheerfully forward, hoping that it may serve a little to promote the benevolent design of the Department.

You will find herewith a copy of our elementary book, in the Iowa language, the first that we have done at the station; some answers to a few of the first questions, and also to the last, on the subject of language; also a sheet just from the press, belonging to a little work in the form of a grammar of the Iowa language. This work will reach over, perhaps, 150 pages of the size before you. We did hope to have it through the press by this time, but having no help in printing, could not. We will send you the sheets as they get through the press, at least until we get through the "parts of speech," and if spared to complete it, send you a full copy.

We will also mail herewith a hymn, and question-book, and also a few prayers, all of which have been prepared and printed at this station. Wishing you every blessing, and especially that you may have abundant success in carrying out your benevolent designs for the good of the poor neglected and down-trodden Indians, we are, Hon. Sir,

Your obedient servants,

S. M. Irvin.
Wm. Hamilton.

History.

"1.—What facts can be stated, from tradition, respecting the origin, early history and migrations of the tribe; and what are the principal incidents known, or remembered since A. D. 1492? Can they communicate anything on this head, of ancient date, which is entitled to respect? What is the earliest event, or name, in their origin or progress, which is preserved by tradition, and from what stock of men have they sprung?"

But little worthy of credit can be gathered with regard to their origin and early history. Some, professing to be wise, among them, enter into long details of these subjects; but on examining more closely, and comparing views, it involves all their statements in complete doubt. The more honest, and not the less intelligent, agree in saying that the true history of the Iowas is in a great degree lost, and that nothing of their early history is any longer correctly known. The notion of their having descended from animals, seems to prevail, (which will be more fully given under their "religion,") and that all the tribes of Indians were originally one; that to obtain subsistence they scattered in families, and in this way became distinct tribes. The place where they lived, when all in one tribe, was on an island, or at least across a large water, towards the east, or sunrise. They crossed this water by skin canoes, and swimming. How long they were in crossing, or whether the water was salt or fresh, they do not know. No remarkable event of antiquity, worthy of note, is remembered by them.

"2.—By what name are they called, among themselves, and by what name, or names, are they known among other tribes; and what is the meaning of these respective names? State the various synonyms. Where did the tribe dwell, at the earliest date; what was its probable number, and the extent of territory occupied or claimed by it? How have their location, numbers, and extent of lands or territories, varied since the earliest known period; and what are the general facts, on these heads, at the present time?"

The Iowas are, among themselves, and also among the neighboring tribes, called "Pa-hu-cha," or "Dusty-nose." When they separated from the first Indian tribe, or family, to hunt game, their first location was near the mouth of a river, where there were large sand-bars, from which the wind blew quantities of sand or dust upon their faces, from which they were called Pa-hu-chas or Dusty-noses. Here an old Iowa Indian, about sixty years old or more, speaks: "About sixty-six years ago, we lived on a river, which runs from a lake to the Mississippi, from the east, and on the east side of that river. Our fathers and great fathers lived there for a long time, as long as they could recollect. At that time we had about four hundred men fit to go to war, but we were then small to what we had been. Our fathers say, as long as they can recollect, we have been diminishing. We owned all the land east of the Mississippi. Whatever ground we made tracks through, it was ours. Our fathers saw white men on the lakes about 120 years ago; do not know where they came from. About the same time we first got guns. We were afraid of them at first, they seemed like the "Great Spirit." Our fathers also, at the same time, for the first received iron, axes, hoes, kettles, and woollen blankets. We, the old men of our nation, first saw white men between forty and fifty years ago, near the mouth of the Missouri."

"3.—Are they of opinion they were created by the Great Spirit on the lands, or are they conquerors, or possessors through the events of war, or from other causes? Can they recollect the first interview with whites, or Europeans—the first sale of lands, or treaty made by them—the introduction of fire-arms, woollen clothing, cooking vessels of metal, ardent spirits, the first place of trade, or any other prominent facts in their history?"

Nothing except what is conveyed in the preceding. They do not claim to have obtained lands by great conquest.

"4.—Have they any tradition of the creation, or the deluge, or of their ancestors having lived in other lands, or having had knowledge of any quadrupeds which are foreign to America, or crossed any large waters, in their migration? Is there any idea developed among them by tradition, allegory, or otherwise, that white people, or a more civilized race, had occupied the continent before them?"

Of the flood, hear the Indians:—

"Our fathers tell us, that a long time ago, it rained a long time; perhaps twenty or thirty days; and all animals and all Indians were drowned. The Great Spirit then made another man and woman out of red clay, and we came from them. Do n't know what became of the whites in the flood: they may have been saved in boats or canoes. The Great Spirit told our fathers all this, or told the first man he made." No knowledge of a more enlightened race living in this country before them.

"5.—Have they any name for America? If there be no direct term applicable to the entire continent, search their oral traditions in the hope of detecting the name?"

Nothing to be found.

"6.—Did they, before the discovery, live in a greater degree of peace with each other—had they formed any ancient leagues; and if so, of what tribes did they consist, how long did these leagues last, and when and how were they broken? Did they build any forts or mounds in their ancient wars, or were the earth-works we find in the West erected before they arrived; and by whom, in their opinion, were these works erected?"

It would seem from their traditions that they have always been at war with each other; and indeed it would seem that it is fear, or considerations of policy alone, which prevents them from going to war with other nations; even those with which they have the greatest affinity. They had made treaties with other nations before they saw the whites; but they were always driven to it from fear, and hence those leagues were usually broken, even by the party first proposing peace, as soon as their strength would justify. The Iowas, however, have not upon record any important treaty with neighboring tribes, nor any noted violation of treaties made.

The manner in which their fathers made treaties was as follows. The nation desiring to make peace would collect all their principal men, and travel together until they came in sight of the enemy's village. They would then stop, and send forward into the village a single individual, bearing the peace-pipe, stem foremost, wailing as he went. The remaining company of the peace party would then follow at some distance. The pipe-bearer, on reaching the village, would be conducted by some one to the first chief's house. A favorable reception would be indicated by the chief thus visited, by taking a whiff of smoke from the extended pipe. Should he refuse, it was always considered hazardous to the chief himself; as it is supposed that such a refusal exposes him to an angry visitation of the Great Spirit, in taking away the life of the chief or some of his family. When the pipe-bearer has been thus received, as is always the case from the foregoing consideration, the whole peace company are received in the first chief's lodge, and manifestations of friendship exchanged by shaking the right hand, while the left is passed down the other arm, from the shoulder, and rubbed forcibly over the breast.[1] They also eat and stay several days together.

---

[1] This is an unconscious reply to No. 184.

They have not made any great fortifications or breast-works, nor can they give any explanation of the great earth-works of the country, except that there is an allusion to a great fortification in one of their sacred songs, which appears to have been made or controlled by some of their great fathers.

"7.—What events have happened, in their history, of which they feel proud, or by which they have been cast down? What tribes have they conquered, or been conquered by, and who have been their great men? Have they suffered any great calamity in past times, as from great floods, or wild beasts, from epidemic or pestilential diseases, or from fierce and sudden assailants?"

The greatest victory in the recollection of the Iowas was about forty-five years ago, when they say they destroyed thirty houses of the Osages with all their inhabitants. Their greatest loss was thirty-three years ago. Twenty men were killed, and three women taken prisoners by the Sioux. Forty-five years ago, just after the Osage victory, the small-pox took off about one hundred men—women and children not counted. Thirty-three years ago, they lost about sixty men, besides women and children, with a disorder like the small-pox, perhaps measles or scarlet fever. Thirty-six years ago, they felt the shock of an earthquake;—one very considerable, and several less severe shocks.

"8.—Who is their ruling chief? Who are their present most noted chiefs, speakers, or war captains? State their names, and give brief sketches of their lives. When did the tribe reach their present location, and under what circumstances?"

White Cloud, known among the Indians by the name of Wi-e-wa-ha, or good disposition, is the first chief of the Iowa tribe. His father is spoken of as a great man among the Iowas; noted mainly for his courage and generosity. His son, the present chief, is not remarkable for any trait except an insatiable thirst for spirits. Indians usually indulge in drunkenness only occasionally, as opportunity and influence may favor such indulgences; but he is more sottish, and is disposed to keep it by him all the time. Very regardless of the interests of his nation, and much more notorious for keeping bad company than for repelling the irregularities of the vagrant of the nation. A man of no brilliancy of mind, or firmness of character; though great pains have been taken to make a contrary impression on the minds of strangers by a favorite interpreter, and a few others, hanging upon him for pecuniary considerations. Has sustained his influence in his nation, heretofore, by purchasing large quantities of goods and provisions on the credit of the nation, and giving them to a few braves (so called) and favorites in the tribe. Since the most wise and most just arrangement of the Department in dividing the annuity equally among the heads of families, has been adopted, it is hard to see how he will sustain himself. Most likely he will sink to the level which he ought to occupy. Offers no encouragement to the school. Has three wives, and sometimes four. A man of middle size, one eye out from the constant use of liquor, about 35 or 36 years of age; a poor speaker, and says but little in council usually.

Na-che-ning-a, or No-heart-of-fear, is the second chief of the Iowas, and the principal business-man of the nation. He is at this time chief speaker. Not remarkable for strength of mind, but under good influence will always be a fine man. Shows some concern for the welfare of his people, a friend to the whites, and anxious to have his people adopt their customs. Very friendly to education. The school and mission owe much to him for his friendship and influence; he has always been their fast friend. A man of good appearance; has but one wife, with whom he has always lived in as much domestic happiness as perhaps is ever enjoyed among savages. Is almost 45 years of age.

Neu-mon-ga, or Walking-rain, is the third chief; a man of most dignified and fine appearance, and of a shrewd and cunning mind. Modest and well-behaved among the whites — ambitious and selfish among his people, and generally of doubtful reputation; though perhaps the most observing and calculating among the chiefs, and a ready speaker. Near 50 years of age; has one wife, with whom he has lived agreeably for a long time.

Waw-mo-moka, or "Thief," is the fourth chief, but a young man who takes but little part in the business affairs of the nation. A young man of a very fine disposition, and perhaps the only chief of the tribe not known to have ever been drunk. For his sobriety, he has received a neat temperance medal, sent from some friends in England to those of the nation worthy of them. Of good appearance, over 20 years of age, and has one wife.

He-wa-tho-cha, or One-who-sheds-his-hair, is regarded as the fifth chief of the tribe; quite deaf, and has but little mind. If he undertakes to speak in council, it is only to repeat something said by a predecessor. About 50 years of age, common appearance, one wife, and one son. A few others claim to be chiefs, but are not recognised as such by the nation. Would it not be well for government, as fast as the condition of the tribes may allow of it, to put down this system of chiefship altogether? This, no doubt, will and must be the final issue in the event of their improvement, allied as they are to our republican government; but might not this power be commenced much sooner, through the agency of our government? It would be a great spur to the rising generation, and a check to the existing tyrannical authorities.

At this time there is not any conspicuous "brave," or speaker, among the Iowas. A few years ago their great orator died. He was regarded by both Indians and whites as a very great speaker. The following brief and well-authenticated speech of his agrees well with this nation's oratorical powers. He once conducted a war party against the Osages, but without any success. On their way home, weary and dispirited, they passed near where were some white emigrants, and finding their horses some distance from their houses, concluded to steal them, and ride home. The whites discovered the theft, and by a pushed march, soon overtook the Indians with the stolen horses. This speaker being head of the band, it fell upon him to reconcile the difficulty, which he did by at once, on hearing of the approach of the whites, turning to meet them in the most friendly manner, and, as soon as he could obtain audience, addressing them in substance as follows: "You are our friends and brothers, we are glad to see you. We are friends to the whites, and we know their ways. We know their way is, that when a friend or brother is in distress, they allow him to take such things as he needs to help him out of distress without asking for it, if it is necessary. We were weary and in distress to get home to our friends and families, and we took your horses as friends, intending to send them back as soon as we would get home. We know these horses are yours; we do not claim them, but we just borrowed them in our distress, feeling that we were all friends." The argument appears to have been sufficient, and a compromise was at once made. Few men, under the excitement of such an occasion, would have been able to adopt such a course. His name was Wa-cha-mon-ya, or One-who-kills-as-he-walks. He died two years ago, about sixty years of age, of good size, and most intellectual and noble appearance.

"9.—Does the tribe speak one or more dialects, or are there several languages spoken, or incorporated in it, requiring more than one interpreter, in transacting business with them? Are there aged persons who can state their traditions?"

There is but one language spoken in the Iowa tribe, and one interpreter answers all purposes. Their language is of the same family with the Winnebagoes, Kansas, Omahas, Punkas, Osages, and others.

There are a few aged persons who pretend to be able to state their traditions with great accuracy; but we find it is not the most pretending that is the most correct, or to be relied on. We hope, however, to find enough from various sources to be able to give about all that is existent on this subject.

International Rank and Relations.

"10.—What rank and relationship does the tribe bear to other tribes? Do their traditions assign them a superior or inferior position in the political scale of the tribes; and is this relationship sanctioned by the traditions of other tribes? To what mode can we resort to settle discordant pretensions to original rank and affinities of blood?"

The rank and relationship of the tribes is difficult to find, as they seem to be quite independent of each other, and each one disposed to claim superiority. At present, however, the Iowas do not seem to be very ambitious as to superiority of rank in this respect; but the traditions of their fathers would make them to have been superior to many nations, and equal to the greatest, though it does not seem that they ever claimed for themselves superiority over all nations, either in numbers or wisdom.[1] Their pretensions to equality with other great nations is, however, disputed by some of the neighboring nations, and a very inferior position in the scale of nations assigned them. The Sacs say that they found the Iowas a small band, driven before their enemies, and that it was through kindness extended from the Sac nation, that the Iowas exist. The Iowas, in return, say that they found the Sacs a small band of men only, almost exterminated by the Sioux, that they took them and gave them wives, and that, but for them, the Sac nation would have been extinct long ago. It will be difficult to adopt any successful mode to reconcile these discordant pretensions to original rank. As they, as tribes, have always[2] lived more or less adjacent, perhaps a detail of the views of each nation, with regard to the strength and powers of all surrounding nations, regardless of what they might claim for themselves, might show what nation or nations have been superiors, at least in certain districts, or among neighboring tribes. The relation, rank, and friendship of the tribes are not expressed by the terms "brother, father," &c. The language is doubtless the most reliable means of tracing the original affinity of these scattered people. There is, however, another process, which, if rightly pursued, might throw great light on the origin of these people, as well as on their clouded history. Let the religious ceremonies of each principal tribe be carefully and particularly drawn out in detail, and diligently compared. This would lead to something more to be relied on, than the vague traditions of more modern times, most of which have sprung from vain bravadoes who told their own stories, and who are often regardless of truth. Their religion they held sacred, and their ceremonies are taught from father to son, and they have not been altered in the least, for at least many generations. They neither add to nor diminish from these, nor does it appear that they are in the habit of forming new ones. This would be going more to the law originally written on their hearts, if allowed the expression, than anywhere else, and upon this we might more rely. These ceremonies and songs are much more numerous than is generally supposed, and reference is had to many things which can be found nowhere else; *e. g.*, see the inquiries after the cause of the strange earth-works in this country — nothing direct or indirect could be found, while on that subject. It was afterwards, however, found that there was a direct allusion to a great earth and wood fort, built and commanded by some great one of their ancestors.[3] Thus many things might be got in this way, and in no other, which would throw light on their history and character, and by carefully comparing these, some clue might be obtained to their origin. Such an investigation would probably settle the question whether they are of Jewish descent. It is difficult to think that they are the descendants of Abraham, in view of the difficulties in the way; but in their manners and customs we see many analogies, besides the fact that we have in this school, and at this time, two boys, one of about seven, and one of about four years old, who have been circumcised. These boys are half-breeds, said to be from the "Blackfeet tribe." Their father may have been a Jew, and had it done, but we know not. We may in future have an opportunity of getting more light on this subject.[1]

---

[1] They are a branch of the Hochungara type of the Dacotahs. — H. R. S.

[2] Not so. The Sacs, in 1712, lived at Saginaw, in Michigan. The Iowas never east of Wisconsin. — H. R. S.

[3] This is a Winnebago tradition.

The foregoing method would require much time and research, but it would not be necessary to trace out the mummery of each little band or division, in such an inquiry, only the leading tribes in each family of language. It would also be attended with some difficulty from two causes. 1st, the want of competent and faithful interpreters; for it must be borne in mind, that many interpreters who can do well in ordinary things, know nothing scarcely of their religion, for it has almost an independent vocabulary of its own. 2d, There is a great delicacy on the part of those most skilled in these things, to communicate fully and freely on these subjects, particularly to strangers. They fear that it may bring upon themselves, or on their nation, some great calamity. Still, however, pecuniary inducements could be brought to bear on this point, so that enough might be had to throw much light on their dark history and origin.

"11.—Are there belts of wampum, quippas, or monuments of any kind, such as heaps of stone, &c., to prove the former existence of alliances, leagues, or treaties among the tribes? If so, describe them, and the places where they are to be found."

No monuments, mounds, piles of earth or stones, or wampum, to mark the existence of former alliances or treaties with neighboring tribes. The "peace-pipe," so common among Indians, is the only external used on such occasions.

"12.—What is the badge, or, as it has been called, the totem of the tribe—or if it consist of separate clans, or primary families, what is the number of these clans, and what is the badge of each?"

There is no badge, or totem, peculiar to the Iowa tribe, except the peculiar cut of the hair; and even this is not peculiar to the Iowa alone, for other adjacent tribes cut the hair in the very same style.

The Iowa tribe is divided into primary clans; these clans bear the title or name of the particular animal or bird[2] from which they are supposed to have sprung. The

---

[1] This was subsequently investigated, at my request: vide letter appended.

[2] This direct affirmative reply to query Number 12, which has just been negatived by the respondent, is doubtless owing to a misapprehension of the Algonquin word "totem," which means the clan-marks of these very animals and birds.—H. R. S.

Iowas recognize eight leading families, though some of them are now extinct. These families are,

1st, the Eagle family.
2d, " Pigeon "
3d, " Wolf "
4th, " Bear "
5th, " Elk "
6th, " Beaver "
7th, " Buffalo "
8th, " Snake "

These families are known severally in the tribe by the particular manner in which their hair is cut: 1st, the Eagle family, is marked by two locks of hair on the front part of the head, and one on the back part left long: 3d, Wolf, scattered branches of hair left to grow promiscuously over the head, representing islands, whence this family is supposed to have sprung: 4th, Bear, one side of the hair of the head left to grow much longer than the other: 7th, Buffalo, a strip of hair left long from the front to the rear part of the head, with two branches on each side to represent horns.

The other families, with their peculiar badges, are lost. This manner of cutting hair is confined to the male children; as soon as they are grown, they adopt the common fashion of the tribe, which is to shave off all the hair except a small braid, or scalp-lock, left near the top of the head, with a small formation of cut hair surrounding it about two inches on the front and sides, and extending down the back of the head. This cutting is usually done about once a year, and is said, by them, to be of great advantage in expelling troublesome vermin.

"13.—Have geographical features, within the memory of tradition, or the abundance or scarcity of game, had anything to do with the division and multiplication of tribes and dialects, either among the Atlantic or Western tribes?"

According to tradition, the scarcity of game has had much to do with dividing the tribes. Rivalship and ambition among chieftains, and war leaders, has no doubt had also much to do in this affair. Divisions of this kind now exist among several of the frontier tribes, within the recollection of many who are now living. This was perhaps one cause of the small band of Sacs now on this river (Missouri) breaking off from the main band on the Mississippi. There is also a small band of Iowas separated from the main body, and living now on the Nemahaw river (of the Missouri), who broke off from the same cause.

"14.—What great geographical features, if any, in North America, such as the Mississippi river, Alleghany mountains, &c., are alluded to, in their traditions, of the original rank and movements of the tribe: and was the general track of their migrations, from or towards the north or the east?"

The Great Lakes east and north-east, perhaps Baffin's bay also, and the Mississippi river, are the only important geographical lineaments which appear to be referred to in their traditions; and hence their general movements in emigrating have been west or south-west.[1]

GEOGRAPHY.

"15.—Have the Indians any just ideas of the natural divisions of the earth into continents, seas, and islands? What ideas have they of the form of the earth?"

No correct ideas. They can hardly conceive of the earth being a globe; consequently they have very confused notions of the process which causes day and night and the seasons.

"16.—What are the chief rivers in the territory or district occupied by the tribe?"

The Missouri river is the eastern or north-eastern boundary of the lands of both the Sacs and Iowas. This stream requires no description, being already well known. The Great Nemahaw bounds the Iowas on the north. This stream is not far from thirty yards wide, deep, sluggish, and mazy, and can be forded in but few places.

"17.—Are there any large springs or lakes in the district, and what is their character, size, and average depth; and into what streams have they outlets?"

No lakes of size worthy of note on the lands of either of the nations. Some fine springs, but not large enough for driving machinery.

"18.—What is the general character of the surface of the country occupied by the tribe? Is it hilly or level — fertile or sterile; abundant or scanty in wood and water — abounding or restricted in the extent of its natural meadows or prairies?"

Beautifully diversified with gentle hills and plains, most of which are fit for cultivation, except on the immediate bluffs of the Missouri. The slopes inclining to the Nemahaw are usually gentle enough for cultivation, and the streams extensive. Soil generally very fertile; timber very scarce; springs of water and running brooks rather abundant. No restriction in the extent and resources of the prairies or natural meadows of the country. The main products of Indian agriculture are corn, beans, pumpkins, melons, &c. The soil is also well adapted to the growth of wheat, hemp, tobacco, oats, potatoes, &c.

"19.—Are cattle and stock easily raised—do the prairies and woods afford an abundant supply of herbage spontaneously — are wells of water to be had at moderate depths, where the surface denies springs or streams?"

---

[1] This concurs with the Winnebago traditions. — H. R. S.

Cattle and stock raised with great ease. Winters are often cold for cattle, but dry and fine. A superabundance of herbage, and pasturage fine. The Oregon Battalion passed by us, remaining nearly two weeks in our vicinity, with over 4000 animals to subsist upon the prairie grass; and a month after they left, we could not see the places where they had been, so abundantly and rapidly does the grass grow in the summer.

Water can be had by digging at from twenty to thirty feet usually. St. Joseph's, twenty-five or thirty miles distant, affords a market; but the great misfortune is, our poor people here have nothing to take to market.

"20.—Has the old practice of the Indians of burning the prairies to facilitate hunting, had the effect to injure the surface of the soil, or to circumscribe, to any extent, the native forests?"

This subject seems not to have been observed by the Indians so as to state anything satisfactory upon it.

"21.—Are there any extensive barrens, deserts, or swamps, reclaimable or irreclaimable, and what effects do they produce on the health of the country, and do they offer any serious obstacles to the construction of roads?"

None of any consequence, either to district roads, or endanger health. Marshy ground is always, by the Indians themselves, regarded as unhealthy; this, with a desire to be able more readily to see the approach of an enemy, causes them usually to select high grounds for villages and encampments, except in the winter season, when places are chosen sheltered, by hills or woodlands, from the winds.

"22.—Is the quantity of arable land diminished by large areas of arid mountain, or of volcanic tracts of country?"

See the foregoing.

"23.—Is the climate generally dry or humid? Does the heat of the weather vary greatly, or is it distributed, through the different seasons, with regularity and equability? What winds prevail? Is it much subject to storms of rain with heavy thunder, or tornadoes?"

The climate is generally dry and most beautiful, with clear and almost constant sunshine, but the temperature exceedingly variable, the thermometer at times falling 40° in a few hours, and again rising with the same rapidity. There are also great extremes in the general character of the seasons. Extremes of heat, cold, wet, and dry, for a long time together. The present winter is very remarkable for being warm. We have pursued our avocations in the office much of the winter without fire. Four years ago the winter was as remarkable for cold.

South winds generally prevail. Frequent storms of thunder and rain in the summer, with occasional tornadoes of great violence, generally attended with hail, and tremendous displays of electricity. These, however, are not generally very extensive, being narrow and soon exhausted.

"24.—Does the district produce any salt springs of value; any caves, yielding saltpetre earth; or any beds of gypsum, or plaster of paris, or of marl?"

None of these things have yet been discovered in this district, though the Indians find, east of the Missouri, (we know not exactly where,) sulphur in quite a pure state. We have seen specimens, but have none at hand; if we procure any, we will forward them as opportunity may offer.

"25.—Has the country any known beds of stone coal?"

Small beds of coal appear in several places, but not opened or examined to any extent.

"26.—What is the general character and value of the animal productions of the district? What species of quadrupeds most abound?"

Scarcely any wild animals to be found. A few deer, turkeys, prairie wolves, and occasionally a large grey wolf, may be found. Though, according to the Indian account, the streams once abounded with beaver, otters, and other furred animals, none are to be found now; farther north and south, there are said to be some panthers and badgers. No grizzly bear known or seen near this for many years. The buffalo, which, only forty years ago, abounded as far down the Missouri as St. Charles, is already driven 150 or 200 miles beyond us. All this great destruction of native game is doubtless owing, in a great measure, to the fur trade. The beaver and buffalo seem to recede more rapidly than most other animals, before the advance of civilization.

"27.—Do the Indian traditions make any mention of larger or gigantic animals in former periods? Is there any allusion to the mastodon, megalonyx, or any of the extinct races, whose tusks, or bones, naturalists find imbedded in clay, or submerged in morasses?"

None, so far, has as yet been discovered, nor is it likely there will be, as the Indians never explore those regions where such things are usually found.

"28.—What species are we to understand by the story, on this head, told to Mr. Jefferson, or by the names Ya-ga-sho, Quis-quis, Win-de-go, Bosh-ca-dosh, or others, which are heard in various dialects?"

Not acquainted with these stories.

"29.—Have they any peculiar opinions, or striking traditions, respecting the serpent, wolf, turtle, grizzly bear, or eagle, whose devices are used as symbols on their arms, or dwellings, and how do such opinions influence their acts on meeting these species in the forest?"

No remarkable traditions respecting any of these animals, though it would seem that they pay a kind of religious adoration to some animals, reptiles, and birds. There is a small bird, a species of the hawk, which they never kill, except to obtain some portions of its body, to put with their sacred medicine. They say it inhabits the rocky cliffs of mountains, and is very difficult to take; that it has a remarkable faculty of remaining a long time upon the wing. This faculty seems to obtain for it the respect of the Indians, as it seems to soar with ease toward what they suppose is the land of the blessed.

Many of the Indians do not kill snakes; particularly such individuals as profess to be "snake doctors." If they meet a snake, particularly the rattlesnake, they usually stop and talk to it, and make it some offering or present, such as tobacco, or such things as may be at hand; propose friendship and peace between the snakes and the children of the nations, &c., &c. Soon after the Iowas commenced to build their village near the mouth of Wolf river, in 1837, a youth of the nation came into the village, and reported that he had seen a rattlesnake on the point of a hill near the village. The great snake doctor of the village immediately went out, taking some tobacco and such articles with him; and on finding the snake, made his presents, had a long talk, and on his return to his people, told them that now they might travel about in safety, as peace was made with the snakes.

The devices of bears, buffaloes, &c., found on skins, horsewhips, saddles, war-clubs, &c., are only a kind of heraldry, or hieroglyphic record of their adventures in killing such animals. The journeys of war-parties are sometimes recorded in the same way.

"30.—Have they any tradition respecting the first introduction of the horse upon this continent?"

None.

"31.—Are they expert in drawing maps or charts of the rivers, or sections of country, which they inhabit? State their capacities on this subject, denoting whether these rude drawings are accurate, and whether they evince any knowledge of the laws of proportion, and transmit, if you can, specimens of them.

See the accompanying map, drawn by an Iowa, herewith enclosed. (Plate 30.)

ANTIQUITIES.

"32.—Are there any antique works, or remains of any kind, which are the result of human industry in ancient times, in your district? And what traditions, or opinions, have the tribes, on the subject?"

None, except some very small mounds on a high prairie, in view of both the Wolf and Missouri rivers; which, however, are pretty certainly known to be the remains of earth houses, built by the Pawnees, or perhaps some other tribe in the habit of using such residences. The mounds, consequently, are very small. There is also a curiously formed circular trench, or ditch, on the south side of Wolf river. The earth appears to have been excavated, some depth below the surface, to considerable width, in the form of a ring, enclosing an area of perhaps half an acre. As there is the appearance of having been a village near this, the Indians say that this circular formation was a play-ground, as the Pawnees, they say, are now in the habit of forming such rings, in which to perform a certain sort of play for amusement. All this has been told to us, as we have neither seen the ring itself, nor been acquainted with the usages of the Pawnees. But we have had it from reliable sources.

"33.—What is generally thought by men of reflection, to be the probable origin and purpose of the western mounds?"

Upon this we cannot give any useful ideas, and there are none in our vicinity that we can describe.

"34.—Ancient fortifications. 35.—Circular works. 36.—Imitative mounds."

None of these things in our district.

"37.—Does the level surface of the prairie country, which is now partially overrun by forest, preserve any traces of a plan or design, as of ancient furrows or garden-beds?"

Nothing of this kind has been observed.

"38.—Is there any ancient or noted mark on rocks, or any artificial orifice or excavation in the earth, or other land-mark known in local tradition, which denotes historical events?"

None, that are known of.

"39.—What is the general character of the antique implements, ornaments, or utensils of earthen-ware found in your district of the country? 40.—If pipes are found, what is the material—is it stone, steatite, or clay?"

Nothing of the kind found or known. It might be remarked that this country is very new, so far as occupancy by the whites extends; consequently such things, being naturally imbedded below the surface, cannot soon appear. It is said, however, that about three miles below St. Joseph's, in the State of Missouri, near the bottom of a very high hill, called "King Hill," (on the top of which are the evident remains of a fortification,) are three broken pieces of potter's ware, of very rude and curious formation, and evidently the work of an ancient and very rude people; but we have not seen any specimens, but believe that they exist.

"41.—How many kinds of utensils of stone were there? How was the axe usually formed, and from what materials? What was the shape and construction of the stone tomahawk? Was it always crescent-shaped, and pointed?"

No information on the subject. All the instruments used by our Indians are obtained from the whites, except bows, wooden bowls and ladles, and their wooden mortars for beating corn. They can give no account of the implements used by their fathers, nor have any of them been handed down, or kept in their families.

"42.—Manufacture of darts, arrow-points, and other missiles. What was the process of manipulation of these often delicately wrought articles?"

The arrow-points now in use, are of iron obtained from the whites, and those made expressly for going to war are sometimes bearded, and are called "angry arrows." It does not appear to be a trade: each one seems to be able to make for himself in proportion to his necessities. The file is the principal instrument used in manufacturing these points. As the country is new and but little cultivated, but few have yet been found; and those found do not differ materially from the common flint arrow-point generally found in the Eastern States.

"43.—What species of sea-shells have been found, in ancient graves or mounds, at remote points from the ocean?"

None found here.

"44.—Shell-coin, wampum, ancient currency?"

Nothing clear on this subject.

"45.—Was iron, copper, tin, or any other metal, used by the aboriginal tribes in America, for the purposes of art, prior to the discovery of the continent by Columbus?"

No mineral improved, refined, or used by these Indians, so far as we know. The arm-bands, &c., found here, have all been obtained from the whites.

"46.—Do the rocks of America, or any ancient architectural structures, disclose any ancient alphabet, hieroglyphics, or system of picture-writing, capable of interpretation, which promises to reflect light on the obscure periods of American history?"

Nothing discovered in this region.

Astronomy.

On entering upon the subject of astronomy, and several others of like character, (and indeed I may say the whole Indian history,) we find it very difficult to obtain what may be regarded as a correct synopsis of the views of the tribe on any particular point; particularly subjects that are obscure, and require the exercise of the mind. Each one appears to have his own views, which, in many points, differ from others, and, in some particular, may differ from all others. Hence, to give the notions of one in full, without consulting others, would be unfair. It is therefore necessary, in order to give a fair statement of what may be regarded as the prevailing notion of a tribe, on any subject doubtful and abstruse to them, to examine many different individuals, and compare their views. To do justice to all the subjects brought forward in these inquiries, would require years of close labor and attention. Other duties forbid us attending to this subject as we could wish, and as would make it more satisfactory and useful to you. We have therefore to advance slowly, but will try to embody what may be regarded as standards of their notions on these various subjects.

"47.—The earth and its motions. What is the amount of their knowledge on this subject? Do they believe the earth to be a plane, a globe, or a semi-circle?"

Very limited and confused. No idea of more than one continent. They have always thought that the earth was an island, surrounded on all sides by water. On inquiring what was on the other side of the water, the answer was "water." Cannot conceive of it having much, if any relation to the planets, except that we derive our heat from the sun; but how the sun, earth, and moon are retained in their respective places, cannot understand. Thought that the earth was flat, and did not think of it being round, until told so by the whites. A notion prevails among some of the Iowas, that the stars are a sort of living creatures like men. This arises from the following tradition. "Long ago, a child, when very young, observed a certain star in the heavens, which he regarded more than all others. As he grew up, his attachments for the star increased, and his mind became more and more set upon it. When able, he went out to hunt, and while travelling, weary and alone, not having very good success, this favorite star came down to him, and conversed with him, and conducted him to a place where he found bear, and plenty of game. After this he was always a great hunter."

"48.—Have they any idea of the universe, or other creations in the field of space, which have in their belief been made by the Great Spirit?"

All things visible were created, they think, by the Great Spirit; but cannot extend their thoughts, without much aid, to other systems in the vast field of space beyond our own globe.

7. HOCHUNGARA FAMILY OF THE DACOTAH GROUP.

THE name of Puants, as the cognomen for an Indian tribe, first appears in the French missionary authors, in 1669. The people on whom they bestowed it, lived on Green Bay of Wisconsin, and the bay itself was called after the tribe. By the Algonquins they were called Wee-ni-bee-gog, (plu. animate,) a term which has long been anglicized under the form of Winnebagoes, (plu.) The original is founded on two Algonquin words, namely, weenud, turbid, or foul, and nibeeg, the plural form for water. The same radicals are employed in the terms Winnipeg, and Winnepeag,—names for northern lakes, in which the meaning is simply, turbid water. It is found that both these lakes have a stratum of whitish muddy clay at their bottoms, which is disturbed by high winds, giving the waters a whitish hue, and imparting more or less turbidity. The termination in o, in the word Winnebago, stands in the place of the accusative, and renders the term personal.

By the tribe itself they are called Hochungara, which is said to mean Trout nation, and sometimes Horoji, or Fish-eaters. They have always maintained the character of manly brave men, and appear to have formerly exercised a considerable influence among the surrounding tribes. Their language shows them to belong to the great Dacotah stock of the west, and they were found in the van of that group of families of tribes, being the only one of its number who had crossed the Mississippi below Minnesota, in their progress eastward.

The Winnebagoes are a tribe of good stature, and a manly air and bearing, and coincide with the other tribes of Indian race in the United States, in possessing the characteristic straight black hair, black glistening eyes, and red skins. They have maintained their position as a tribe of independent feelings and national pride, during all the earlier periods of our acquaintance with them.

This claim of the Hochungaras to the possession of considerable mental capacity, is sustained by the cranial admeasurements which I have recently caused to be made at the Academy of Natural Sciences, at Philadelphia, (Vol. II. p. 335, of these Inquiries.) In these examinations they are placed at 89 cubic inches internal capacity, and 79° facial angle, on the skulls examined.

How long they had maintained their position at Green Bay before the arrival of the French, we know not. But they had receded from it towards the west, before the visit of Carver, in 1766, who found them on Fox river. Father Allouez says that it was a tradition in his days, that they had been almost destroyed, about 1640, by the Illinois. They have kept on good terms, within the period of history, with the Sacs and Foxes, the once noted and erratic Mascoutins, the Menomonies, Ottowas, Chippewas, and Potawatomies, denoting a wise and considerate policy on the part of their chiefs.

Their own traditions, and the accounts we have gathered from some of the tribes on the Missouri, denote them to be the ancestors of the Iowas, Missouries, Otoes, and Omahaws.

Their earliest traditions relate to their residence at Red Banks—an ancient location on the east shore of Green bay—and to trade with the French. They have a tradition that they once built a fort; an event which appears to have made a general impression on the tribe, and which may, without improbability, be connected with the finding of the archæological remains of an ancient work on Rock river;[1]—perhaps, with the war with the Illinois, mentioned by Allouez. Geographically considered, they are the aborigines of central Wisconsin.

The Wisconsin, the Rock, and the Wolf rivers, flowed from this central height east, west, and south, and gave them the advantage of descending on their enemies at will. The French found them in league with the Menomonies; and these two powers gave shelter to the flying Sacs and Foxes, when they were finally expelled from lower Michigan. The event of this flight was not completed till the commencement of the Pontiac war—so late as the year 1760. With the French, notwithstanding the reception of these two fugitive tribes, they maintained friendly relations, and traded uninterruptedly. With the Chippewas, Ottowas, Potawatomies, Kickapoos, Mascoutins, and other tribes of the Algonquin group of families, who surrounded their possessions north, east, and south-east, they also kept on general terms of friendship; a point that required great address, as the Sacs and Foxes seemed to have been cut loose from their ancient natural Algonquin affinities, and were perpetually making inroads on these tribes, particularly on the Chippewas of Lake Superior, whom they united with the Sioux in opposing. Tradition represents the Sacs and Foxes to have engaged in battles against the Chippewas, at Lac View Desert, Lac du Flambeau, and the Falls of St. Croix, and Francis River, on the upper Mississippi. They were defeated, along with the Sioux, by the Chippewas under Wabojeeg, in a great battle at the Falls of St. Croix. To preserve their relations with the French, under these circumstances, required skill and diplomacy; but in this, they had the great body of the Sioux, their relatives, immediately west of them on the Mississippi, to sustain them.

On the fall of the French power in Canada, in 1760, they were slow and cautious in entering into intimate relations with Great Britain. But the French had left the elements of their influence with the western Indians, in the metif population, which resulted from an amalgamation of the Canadian and the Indian female. This power was conciliated by the English agents and commanding officers, who thus mollified the Indian resentments, and replaced them by confidence in the conquerors.

The Winnebagoes were firm in their new fealty. They opened their country to English traders; and when the Americans rose, in 1776, to assert a new nationality, the Winnebagoes sided with the Crown. In all the local questions of jurisdiction, at Prairie du Chien, Green Bay, and Michillimackinac, they were arrayed, without a single exception, on the side of the British authorities.

---

[1] Called, with pedantry, and an entire disregard of Indian history, Aztalan.

When the question of fealty assumed a new vitality, by the war of 1812, the same preferences prevailed. They sided with the Crown and flag of the Red Cross against the Americans. They helped to defeat Colonel Croghan at Michillimackinac, Colonel Dudley at the rapids of the Miami, and General Winchester at the river Raisin. They were brought into the field of action by Colonel Robert Dixon and Mr. Crawford, two prominent traders of leading minds and influence, who then resided at Prairie du Chien and St. Peter's. They hovered, with the other hostile lake tribes, around the beleaguered garrison of Detroit, and helped to render its forests vocal with the war-whoop. And they returned, in 1815, like the other tribes, to their positions in the north-western forests of Wisconsin, upper Michigan, Iowa, and Illinois, rather chap-fallen, to reflect that they had not in reality been fighting for their own independence, but merely to assist one white power to sustain itself against another. This was acknowledged at a public conference at Drummond island, in 1816, by the noted chief Waubasha.

In 1812, they had listened to the false revelations of the Shawnee prophet of the Wabash, Elksottawa, and his more celebrated brother Tecumseh, who told them, along with the whole mass of the western Indians, that the time had arrived for driving back the Americans in their progress westward, and for regaining, under the British standard, their lost dominion in the West. They accordingly contributed their auxiliaries in the bloody battles fought in lower Michigan and Ohio, in the, to them, delusive war that ensued. They, like the other Indians, reduced their population thereby; lost every practical and promised object, were wholly deserted, or unrecognised in the treaty of Ghent, with the extended groups of tribes of the Dacotahs and Algonquins, and returned to their homes gloomy and sour-minded against the Americans. They assumed some insolence, in the years immediately following, to travellers in the Fox and Wisconsin valleys. Hoo-choop, a stern chief at the outlet of Winnebago lake, assumed to be the keeper of the Fox river valley, and levied tribute, in some cases, for the privilege of ascent.

In the fall of 1821, a young Winnebago Indian, called Ke-taw-kah, killed Dr. Madison, of the United States army, by shooting him from a horse, under circumstances which gave the act the air of great cruelty, as it was wholly unprovoked. The murderer was promptly arrested, tried, and executed. The act was disavowed by the nation, and led to no interruption of peaceful relations. Deeds of this kind have not been of frequent occurrence with this tribe.

For some years after the war of 1812, in which the political hopes of all the tribes were wrecked, they were looked upon with distrust by travellers. But with the exception of the death of Dr. Madison, and that of another man named Ulric, at Green

Bay, they gave vent to few passionate outbreaks, and the tribes preserved peaceful relations with the United States. All the lake tribes had been misled by the war of 1812, supposing that its results, through their adherence to the mother country, would be to restore to them their hunting-grounds west of the Alleghanies, or, at least, to set bounds and metes to the encroachments of the Anglo-Saxon and Celtic races. And when the contrary was made known to them, and they began to comprehend it, most of the tribes retired from the field of conflict to their native woods, like a bear who had been robbed of her cubs.

The Winnebagoes were not, therefore, peculiar in their moodiness in the elevated and central parts of Wisconsin, their old home and hunting-grounds after this war. The history of their dealings with the American government is brief and definite. They remained undisturbed masters of their territory in the centre of Wisconsin till recently. The first indication that they could not permanently remain there was, perhaps, given by the expedition to explore the country, in 1820. They gazed at that expedition silently, as not understanding it. Their first treaty with the United States was signed June 3d, 1816, about five months after the treaty of Ghent, in which they pledged themselves to peace, confirmed all prior grants to the British, French, and Spanish governments, and agreed to restore prisoners. On the 19th of August, 1825, and the 11th of August, 1827, they adjusted, at Prairie du Chien, and Butte des Morts, with the other tribes, and with the United States, their territorial boundaries. Their lingering surliness to the United States, and the unfriendly feeling produced by the war of 1812, broke out at Prairie du Chien, on the Mississippi, in the summer of 1827, when they fired on a barge descending that stream, and committed other outrages. This brought upon them the prompt movement of troops from St. Louis, which checked their outbreak; and Hoo-choop, their principal chief in east Wisconsin, with thirteen other principal men, affixed their signatures to the treaty of the 11th of August, 1827.

In the year 1828, the discovery of valuable lead-mines in their territory, north of Rock river, led the inhabitants of the frontiers of Illinois to pass over, and commence mining operations in that quarter. This produced alarms and collisions on both sides, which were settled by the treaty of Green Bay, of August 12th, 1828, by which a temporary line of boundary was established, and 20,000 dollars allowed them for depredations.

On the 1st of August, 1829, they ceded a tract south of the Wisconsin river, including the mineral district, for the consideration of 540,000 dollars, payable in coin, in thirty annual equal instalments: in addition, large appropriations were made for agricultural purposes, the introduction of smiths and agents, and the payment of claims.

In 1831-2 they unwisely connected themselves in a clandestine participation of some of the bands, with the schemes and dreams of Black Hawk. The war with the Sacs and Foxes was waged exclusively on the Winnebago territory; they, at its close, ceded all their remaining land in Wisconsin, lying south of the Wisconsin and Fox rivers; and accepted, in exchange for it, a tract west of the Mississippi, in Iowa, called the Neutral

Ground. The sum of 270,000 dollars, payable in coin, in twenty-seven annual payments of 10,000 each, was granted, to equalize the exchange of territory. By this treaty stipulations were made for the introduction of schools, the removal of shops and agencies, and their advance in agriculture and civilization. The treaty, which was concluded at Rock Island on the 15th of September, 1833, was one of great benefit to the tribe, who prospered and increased in population under its execution. The remarks of Mr. Lowry on this subject, Vol. II. p. 526, are referred to.

One of the worst acts flowing from their connection with the Sac war, and which stains their character by its atrocity, was the assassination of Mr. Pierre Pacquette, the interpreter at the agency, on the Wisconsin Portage. He was a man of Winnebago lineage, and was reputed to be one of the best friends and counsellors of the nation.

By a treaty concluded on the 1st of November, 1837, they agreed to remove to the Neutral Ground, the United States stipulating to transfer there the privileges for their civilization, and to establish manual labor schools for their instruction.

On the 23d of October, 1839, Governor Lucas of Iowa, reports that an exploring party of them had arrived in that Territory in the spring of that year, to the alarm of Keokuk, the head Fox chief, who complained of the movement, and requested that they might be sent south of the Missouri.

The Winnebagoes themselves disliked the removal, neither could they be induced to go south. The Commissioner, in his report of November 28, 1840, remarks, that after some of the contiguous bands had passed over the Mississippi, the rest manifested so much aversion to quitting their old homes in Wisconsin, that the emigration was committed to General Atkinson, who, eventually, extended the time to the spring of 1841. Great efforts were required, however, to overcome their reluctance to remove to the Neutral Ground. In September, 1840, the aged chief Karamanee, Weenoshaik, and other chiefs, made speeches to the Agent strenuously opposing it. At length the government determined to remove the agency, schools, and shops, to Turkey river, and directed the next annuities to be paid there. The nation still clung, as with a death-grasp, to the hills and valleys of Wisconsin, but these steps were effective. Governor Dodge reports that the effects of their remaining in Wisconsin, since the large increase of their annuities under the treaty of 1837, were demoralizing, and that they began rapidly to depopulate.

Mr. Lowry remarks, in 1842, that the depopulation from indulgence, drink, and disease, which had attended the removal, had been very great and demoralizing. He says that the number of children to each female in the tribe did not exceed the average of one; and that wretchedness and bloodshed were of so frequent occurrence as to cease to excite attention. Thirty-nine persons had perished in this way in a short time, and sometimes two or three were stabbed to death in a night.[1]

Under this arrangement, subsequent removals were made to the stipulated grounds in

---

[1] Report of D. Lowry, September 30th, 1842.

Iowa, till the whole tribe had migrated. During a period of ten or twelve years, while they occupied the Neutral Ground, they appear to have augmented in their numbers and means, and improved in habits.

It is observed by Mr. David Lowry, on the 15th of February, 1848, that their numerical strength increased while they were on the Neutral Ground, and has been in the process of increasing since they removed west of the Mississippi. There was a visible change in habits of cleanliness, and their opinions underwent a marked change respecting the subject of labor, so that the females were no longer expected or allowed alone to work in their fields.

On the 13th of October, 1846, in a treaty concluded with authorized delegates, the tribe ceded the "Neutral Ground" in Iowa, and agreed to accept an adequate tract of country north of the river St. Peter's, on the upper Mississippi. By this treaty, one hundred and ninety thousand dollars were agreed to be paid them in various forms, of which sum, the interest of eighty-five thousand dollars, at five per cent., was directed to be paid to them in annuities, during a period of thirty years.

In conformity with this treaty, the tribe has been removed to a tract on the upper Mississippi, fronting on the same, between the Watab and Crow-Wing rivers; which tract was purchased from the Chippewas by the treaty of the 2d of August, 1847. The seat of the agency is established at Long Prairie river, where buildings and shops have been put up for them, and extensive fields fenced and ploughed by the farmers appointed to teach them agriculture. Some difficulties have been encountered in inducing the entire tribe to concentrate on this position, and in overcoming the erratic habits of the tribe. But it is believed that these causes have been entirely overcome.

The earliest notice we have of the Winnebago population, is one found at Paris, in a manuscript list of Indian tribes, prepared by Mons. Chaurignerie, in 1736. He puts the Puants or Winnebagoes, at eighty warriors and seven hundred souls.

It is to be remembered, in relation to these small numbers, that Allouez had reported them to have been almost destroyed by the Illinois, at a prior period. In the estimates published by Colonel Boquet, in the narrative of his march west of the Alleghanies, in 1764, they are put down at 700 warriors, an evident mistake. Pike, the first American author on the subject, estimates the entire Winnebago population, in 1806, at 2000. In the tables accompanying the plan of removal west of the Mississippi, communicated to Congress on the 27th of January, 1825, they are given at 5800;[1] an exaggeration, if Pike be correct, since, by principles of Indian reproduction, they could not have increased 3800 in twenty years, with the war of 1812 intervening.

In the project for a reorganization of the Indian Department, submitted by General P. B. Porter, in 1829, this estimate is repeated.[2] In the statement of tribes east of the Mississippi, transmitted with the report of the Commissioner of Indian Affairs, in 1836, the number is reduced to 4500. This number is repeated in the tables of the

---

[1] Doc. 21, 18th Congress, 2d Session.

[2] Doc. 17, 20th Congress, 2d Session, House of Representatives.

Commissioner's report for December 1, 1837, there having evidently been no effort to obtain new or correct estimates, within the year. The same stereotype figures appear in the official reports for 1839, and for 1840. It is not till the official report of November 16, 1842, that their number, from actual census on the Neutral Ground, is given, and they are found to be 2183; yet the old estimate of 4500 is still given as the total population, east and west. From the precision with which this census of 2183 is given by the Agent, and the known fact that all the Winnebagoes had then emigrated, it is believed to embrace the whole Winnebago population.

In the tables accompanying the report of November 25, 1844, the old estimate of 4500 again reappears, with the census number, 2183;[1] leaving it to be inferred, either that in the two years from 1842 to 1844, there had not been a death or birth in the Winnebago nation, or that no attention had been paid to the topic. The same statements are served to Congress in the fall of 1845,[2] but they are omitted in the report of 1846.

In the autumn of that year, several eminent citizens of New York, apprehending that but little reliance could be placed on the vital and general statistics, and other information respecting the Indian tribes, addressed a memorial to Congress, suggesting the collection and preparation of more full and authentic information. A clause was inserted in one of the acts, directing the Secretary of War to call the attention of the Agents on the frontier to the subject. The result was so encouraging, as it is shown in Doc. No. 33, House of Representatives, 29th Congress, 2d Session, that in the act reorganizing the Department, passed March 3d, 1847, Congress made provision for taking a census of the whole number of tribes within the boundaries of the United States.

The Winnebago population was reported in lists of families, as accurately taken from the pay-rolls, and from personal inspection by J. E. Fletcher, Esq., their Agent in 1848. These returns, which are published in Part I., page 498, designate the separate bands into which the tribe is geographically divided; indicating families, sexes, and ages. The total strength of the tribe, as shown in its new location on the tracts purchased from the Chippewas on the upper Mississippi, is 2531. Of this number, 1244 are men, 1202 women, including the children. Of these, there were about 400 souls who would not permanently remove to the new site on Long Prairie river, and who scattered south among the tribes on the Missouri. Replies of the Agent are also given to the queries directed to be circulated, discussing important points in their history, traditions, manners, and customs, which are believed to be entitled to every credence; they are, in part, herewith given.

The language of the Winnebagoes, as given by Mr. Lowry, is a peculiar modification of the generic Dacotah, with the sound of *r* very conspicuously used.

---

[1] Report of 1844, p. 21.

[2] Report of 1845, p. 13.

8. WINNEBAGOES.

BY J. E. FLETCHER, ESQ., U. S. INDIAN AGENT.

Office Indian Sub-agent,
Turkey River, *March 7th*, 1848.

Sir:—I have the honor to enclose herewith such answers as I have been able to prepare to a few of the queries enclosed with your circular of July last.

I regret that I have not been able to comply with the request contained in said circular, that answers should be furnished by the 1st of February last. I intended to answer all of the queries which are applicable to the tribe under my charge, and with this view I conversed with most of the old chiefs, and accompanied by the Agency interpreter, visited the oldest persons of the tribe at their lodges, to collect information respecting the history and traditions of the tribe, but on examination of my notes I am unwilling to forward them to the Department until I shall have tested their correctness by availing myself of the services of a more competent interpreter.[1]

I requested Mr. S. B. Lowry to furnish me answers to several chapters of your queries, which he consented to do; and has obligingly submitted replies relative to crime, hunting, and language, which you will please find enclosed herewith, together with his letter accompanying. (Vide Future Prospects, Vols. II. and III.)

I shall employ all the time I can spare from indispensable duties, in preparing other answers required; and will forward them as early as possible.

I have the honor to be,
Very respectfully, your obt. servt.
J. E. Fletcher,
Indian Sub-agent.

Dancing and Amusements.

"208.—Is dancing a national trait of the tribe?"

Dancing is a national trait of this tribe, and is a part of their religious, social, and military system.

The war-dance is celebrated before starting on a war-path; but although this tribe has not, for several years past, been engaged in war, this dance is still kept up, and frequently practised. The object of this seems to be the same as that sought to be effected by martial music and military reviews among the whites; namely, to keep alive a martial spirit, and "in peace prepare for war." The old warriors sometimes join this dance; but usually only the middle-aged and young men engage in it: occasionally boys are allowed to join in it. Women do not engage in the war-dance, but encourage it by their presence as spectators. The dancers appear in their war-costume, with a weapon, or something to represent a weapon, in their hands. The musicians are seated around a flag in the centre: the music consists of drums, rattles, and singing. When the music commences, the dancers spring into the ring, and dance promiscuously, brandishing their weapons, and making menacing gestures. This exercise is violent, and cannot be long sustained without rest. Occasionally a warrior will step forward, and go through a pantomime of the discovery, ambuscade, attack, killing, and scalping of an enemy; another will give a history of his exploits, and accompany the recital with appropriate gestures.

---

[1] These papers have subsequently been received, having been revised and re-examined by Mr. Fletcher, and will be submitted, in full, in Vol. IV.—H. R. S.

When an officer of the government, or any distinguished person, visits their village, they assemble and dance; this is done ostensibly as an honor, but in reality with the expectation of receiving a present.

The scalp-dance affords a striking illustration of the vindictive and bloodthirsty spirit of the savage, and the means by which this spirit is imbibed and cherished in their children. I have witnessed but one dance of this kind. In the spring of 1851, a large party of Chippewa Indians were encamped near the Winnebago Agency; five of their warriors left the camp secretly, went into the country of the Sioux, and in the night surprised and murdered, in a most barbarous manner, a family consisting of two men, one woman, and two children, and took their scalps. I saw them on their return, remonstrated with them, and told them that their Great Father would be displeased when he heard of their conduct; they made this reply: "Last year we had a talk with our father, Governor Ramsay, and our brothers the Long Knives; they told us that we must not go to war; that if the Sioux made war on us, they would be punished: a short time after we had this talk, our enemy came to our village at Otter-tail lake, when our warriors were on a hunt, and killed several of our women and children: we sent word to our brothers, the Long Knives, and asked them to avenge our wrongs, according to their promises: we have waited a long time, and nothing has been done for us; the spirits of our dead could not rest, and we concluded to avenge them ourselves, and have done so. Our father, you know that we speak the truth." They had spoken truth, and I could only say, in reply, that if they had made war on men, their equals, I could not blame them, but that they had disgraced themselves, in the estimation of all brave men, by murdering unoffending women and children; and that the Great Spirit would be angry with them for such cruelty.

The Indians being now assembled, they proceeded with their dance; the scalps were hung up on sticks set in the ground, and men, women, and children, danced around them; occasionally the women and children would take a scalp and carry it round the ring. This dance was continued for hours, with great excitement. One of the Chippewas killed his man with a spear; finding it difficult to extricate his weapon on account of the barb, he cut out a piece of flesh with his knife, and brought it home, still adhering to the spear; this flesh was cut in pieces, and given to the boys, who ate it raw.

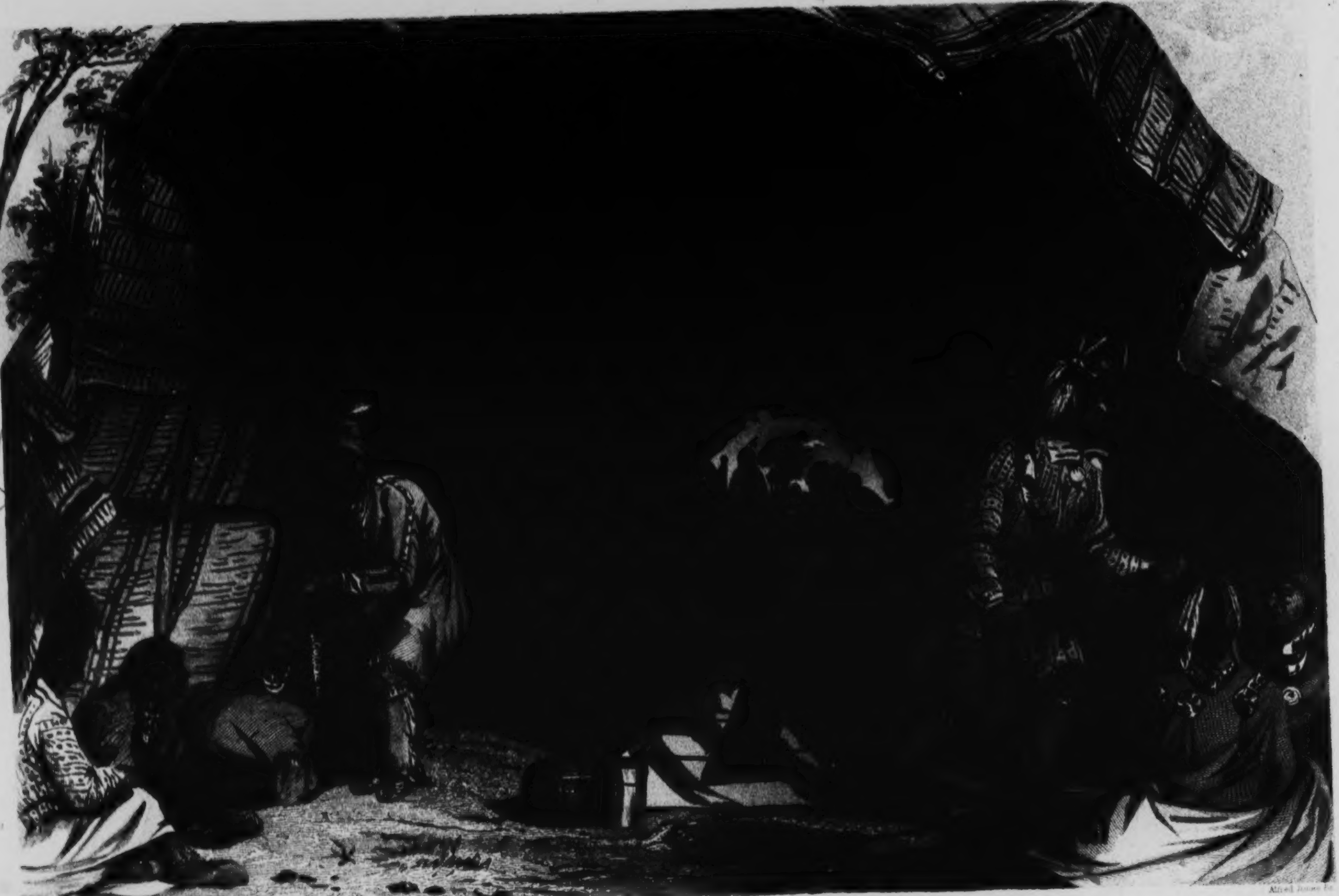
The funeral dance is performed at the grave, when a sacrifice is made for the dead. They dance around the grave to the music of the drum and singing.

The pipe-dance, and other convivial dances, are joined in with spirit and glee by the old and young. The women in dancing have but one motion; they spring on the toes, both feet together; the body erect, and hands by the side. The men bound on the right and left foot alternately, with the body slightly bent forward.

The Medicine Feast. (Plate 31.)

This feast is an ancient custom or ceremony; it is accompanied with dancing, and is sometimes called the medicine dance. The members or communicants of this feast constitute a society having secrets known only to the initiated. Gentlemen of the Masonic fraternity have discovered unmistakeable evidence that there is a similarity between the secret signs used by the members of this society, and those of Free-masons; like them they have a secret in common with societies of the same order, wherever located; and like them, have different degrees, with secrets belonging to each respectively, in the same society; but, unlike Free-masons, they admit women and children to membership.

They have no regular or stated times for holding this feast; and all the members do not attend at the same time, but only such as are invited by the master of the feast. Persons desirous of joining this society will, in some cases, use the most rigid economy for years, to enable them to lay up goods to pay the initiating fee. This fee is not fixed at any stipulated amount; those who join pay according to their ability. Sometimes goods to the amount of two and three hundred dollars are given by an individual. Goods given for this purpose generally consist of blankets, broadcloths, calicoes, wampum, and trinkets, and are given to the medicine men, who perform the ceremony of initiating the member. When one or more persons make application to join the society, preparations are made for a feast and dance, which is held in an arched lodge, or bower, constructed of poles, and covered with tent-cloth and other materials. The size of the bower is made to conform to the number of persons to be invited, and this number depends much on the ability of the person who makes the feast. The width of a bower is about sixteen feet, the length varying from ten to seventy-five yards. The members of the society sit on each side of the bower, the centre being reserved for dancing. Candidates for admission into this society are required to fast three days previous to being initiated. At some period during this



Capt. S. Eastman U.S. Army Del.

Pl. 31

Alfred Jones Sc.

MEDICINE DANCE OF THE WINNEBAGOES

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

fast they are taken by the old medicine men to some secluded secret spot, and instructed in the doctrines and mysteries of the society; and it is said that the candidates are during this fast subjected to a severe sweating process, by covering them with blankets, and steaming them with herbs; the truth of this saying is not here vouched for, but the appearance of the candidate, when brought forward to be initiated in public, corroborates it.

The public ceremony of initiation usually takes place about 11 o'clock, A. M. The public exercises of dancing, singing, praying, and exhorting, which precede the initiations, commence the previous morning. Before the candidates are brought forward, the ground through the centre of the bower is carpeted with blankets and broadcloth laid over the blankets. The candidates are then led forward and placed on their knees upon the carpet, near one end of the bower, and facing the opposite end. Some eight or ten medicine men then march in single file round the bower with their medical bags in their hands. Each time they perform the circuit they halt, and one of them makes a short address: this is repeated until all have spoken. They then form a circle and lay their medicine bags on the carpet before them. Then they commence retching and making efforts to vomit; bending over until their heads come nearly in contact with their medicine bags, on which they vomit, or deposit from their mouth a small white sea-shell about the size of a bean; this they call the medicine stone, and claim that it is carried in the stomach and vomited up on these occasions. These stones they put in the mouth of their medicine bags, and take their position at the end of the bower opposite to and facing the candidates. They then advance in line, as many abreast as there are candidates; holding their medicine bags before them with both hands, they dance forward slowly at first, and uttering low guttural sounds as they approach the candidates, their step and voice increasing in energy, until with a violent "Ough!" they thrust their medicine bags at their breasts. Instantly, as if struck with an electric shock, the candidates fall prostrate on their faces — their limbs extended — their muscles rigid and quivering in every fibre. Blankets are now thrown over them, and they are suffered to lie thus a few moments: as soon as they show signs of recovering from the shock, they are assisted to their feet and led forward. Medicine bags are then put in their hands, and medicine stones in their mouths; they are now medicine men or women, as the case may be, in full communion and fellowship. The new members, in company with the old, now go round the bower in single file, knocking members down promiscuously by thrusting their medicine bags at them, (Plate 31.) After continuing this exercise for some time, refreshments are brought in, of which they all partake. Dog's flesh is always a component part of the dish served on these occasions. After partaking of the feast, they generally continue the dance and other exercises for several hours. The drum and rattle are the musical instruments used at this feast. The most perfect order and decorum is observed throughout the entire ceremony. The members of this society are remarkably strict in their attendance at this feast: nothing but sickness is admitted as an excuse for not complying with an invitation to attend. Members sometimes travel fifty miles, and even further, to be present at a feast, when invited.

The secret of the society is kept sacred. It is remarkable, that neither want nor a thirst for whiskey will tempt the members of this society to part with their medicine bags.

Whether these medicine men possess the secret of mesmerism or magnetic influence, or whether the whole system is a humbug and imposition, is difficult to determine. A careful observation of the ceremonies of this order for six years has been unable to detect the imposition, if there be one; and it is unreasonable to suppose that an imposition of this character could be practised for centuries without detection. There is no doubt that the tribe generally believe that their medicine men possess great power.

9. OBSERVATIONS ON THE HISTORY OF THE ANCIENT ERIES.

Recent research denotes that the word Catawba[1] is not of much antiquity, and cannot be relied on as a guide or clue in the investigation of their early history. It appears to have been bestowed, before the middle of the 17th century, by some tribe speaking the Algonquin language, in which the final syllables, awba, mean male. The Catawbas possessed, from the earliest notices, a fixed character for indomitable courage and consummate art in forest life.

By an apparently authentic manuscript memoir of their traditions, in the official archives of South Carolina, a copy of which is herewith submitted, they are stated to be a northern tribe, having been driven, about 1650, under a very perilous state of their affairs, from the line of the great lakes, by their inveterate enemies, the Connewangoes.

Connewango river enters the Alleghany river on the north, from the Great Valley, and is the ultimate outlet of Chatauque lake, through which an important ancient line of Indian portages existed to lake Erie. It draws its waters within seven miles of the southern borders of that lake. The Indians who occupied it were Seneca Iroquois, and bore, it appears from this tradition, the local appellation of Connewangoes. The Connewango is a copious stream, and is one of the true sources of the Ohio.[2] The descendants of this branch of Senecas, who also occupied the Olean fork, constitute the modern band of Corn-planter, and still live near Warren, on the Alleghany, others at Teonegono, or Coldspring, on the reserve of the Senecas, secured by the treaty of 1842.

---

[1] There is a probability that the old spelling of this name embraced a *w* for a *b* in the final syllable. See Evans's map of 1755.

[2] Agreeably to the Indian view, in which the Alleghany river is, to this day, called Ohéo by the Senecas.

The date given in the Carolina tradition, to the flight of the Catawbas from the north, coincides, within five years, with the last war and defeat of the Eries, agreeably to Le Moine.[1] This war broke out afresh in 1653. In that war, the intrepid missionary to the Iroquois whom I have named, visited the Onondaga country. On the 9th of that month, agreeably to his journal, his ears were startled by a dismal wail, which the Iroquois set up for the loss of three men, who had been killed by the Eries, "about a day's journey from the latter;" i. e. Onondaga. They had also taken prisoner, and put to death, a great chief, called Annencraos.

In a formal address, which he subsequently makes to the Iroquois, on his mission to their country, and the French policy generally, he consoles them, in the Indian figurative language, for the loss of the Seneca chief taken by the Eries; and with the symbolic gift of a tomahawk to each of four cantons, he approves the renewal of the war by their cantons against the Eries, and concludes his address by urging them never to lie in wait, on the lakes, for any nation of the Algonquin or Huron stocks, while on their journey to the capital of New France.

It is clear that this renewal of the war against the Erie or Cat nation, was agreeable to the French. The latter never had any mission among them, and they were regarded as their enemies. Charlevoix places their final defeat and expulsion in 1655,[2] only three years after the renewal of the war named by Le Moine. The tradition that they encountered the adverse influence of the French, in being driven south—that is, the power of the French Indians, so called—is a feature coincident with facts otherwise obtained.

That the Eries should send forays into the Iroquois country, east of the Genesee river, such as that mentioned by Le Moine, favors the idea that their residence was not remote. When Le Salle arrived on the Niagara river, in the beginning of 1679, twenty-seven years after Le Moine's trip to Onondaga, the Senecas occupied the entire southern banks of Niagara river, and the shores of Lake Erie, as high, at least, as the portage through the Chatauque and Connewango. The Attionandarons, or Neuter nation, were then unknown; and the destruction of the Eries was a tradition. Both tribes had fallen before the rising Iroquois power. The Neutral nation is not by any means to be confounded with the Eries, the latter of whom made forays, under their connivance, deep into western New York. But it is manifest that they were a cognate people. Cusic, in his Tuscarora pamphlet, places the Neutral nation, at an early day, on the Niagara ridge, and declares distinctly, that the neutrality which distinguished them for years, was at length violated, which brought upon them the ire of the Iroquois. It is stated by the French missionaries,[3] that the principal village of this nation was taken in 1651, when the tribe was destroyed, those who were not killed in battle being either incorporated with the Senecas, or dispersed.

---

[1] Notes on the Iroquois, p. 332.

[2] History of New France.

[3] Arch. Amer. Vol. II., p. 76.

Ha-sa-no-au-da,[1] an educated Seneca chief, and a person well acquainted with the Iroquois history, in a communication, a part of which is hereto appended, is inclined to believe that the Cat tribe must have been the same as the Neuter nation; they only, however, spoke a kindred dialect, and concurred in a policy, at first kept secret, but afterwards being revealed, brought the whole power of the Iroquois on their backs, leading to their extirpation. From all authorities, the two tribes at least spoke a kindred dialect, namely, a dialect of the Wyandot branch of the Iroquois. It is fair to infer that they were closely affiliated. If so, the territory of the Neuter nation offered a point of treacherous concealment for the egress of occasional small marauding parties, who crossed the Genesee, in their secret and isolated inroads, in the manner mentioned by Le Moine, in 1653. The discovery of this treachery, by the reigning chieftainess, at the old stronghold of Kinuka, on the Niagara ridge, is distinctly stated by Cusic.[2] It led to their downfall. Their treachery brought down the immediate vengeance of the Iroquois, who attacked and carried their chief position. The war against them was finished in two years, that is, by 1655, when, it is inferible, the survivors joined the Eries, on the sources of the Alleghany, and in the Ohio valley. Here, however, they were pursued by the conquering Iroquois, who, the very next year, (1656,) began their war against the Eries, or, as the Iroquois called them, Attionandarons. It is perceived, from the missionary relations, that this war with the Eries was ended in two years; so that by a vigorous prosecution of hostilities with these two cousin-bands, for four years, or by another authority, (which dates the taking of the queen's hold at Kinuka, in 1651,) six years, they had conquered and subdued these two tribes. So completely had their destruction and dispersion been effected, that neither the Neuter nation nor the Eries appear to have had a place in Indian history since, at least by these names.

But a more serious war, with a more considerable and also remotely affiliated people, now arose. The Andastes, or Guandostagues, occupied the area lying immediately west from the residence of the Neuter nation, between the Niagara river and Buffalo creek, extending west to the heads of the Alleghany.

They were, it is believed, called Kahquas by the Senecas. It is inferible from Cusic, and from the French missionary authors, that the Andastes or Kahquas, who were of remote kindred blood, sympathised in the destruction of the Eries and Attiondarons, and gave them secret aid in the war. The Iroquois now turned upon them with the uplifted tomahawk. A bloody and long-continued war ensued, which was not terminated till 1672—full sixteen years from its commencement—when they also were subdued and expelled from the southern shore of lake Erie. There is no evidence now, but old ditches and embankments, and antiquarian relics, to show that these tribes had ever inhabited the country.

---

[1] Mr. Parker S. Ely.

[2] History of the Six Nations.

The Iroquois, who, by expelling the Neutral nation, and another tribe, the Missisagies, from the Ontario borders, had spread west of the Genesee, now extended their residence up the southern shore of lake Erie, from Deoseawa to the sources of the Alleghany, and to the Cuyahoga and Sandusky bay and river; the latter of which was, as we are informed by Lewis Evans, subsequently assigned to the Quaghtogies or Wyandots.

The war with the Andastes or Kahquas was of such a character that Iroquois tradition distinctly retains its memory. It was so marked a triumph of Iroquois bravery, that eighty years have still left some of its leading incidents fresh in the minds of the Senecas. When I visited the Iroquois cantons in 1845, to take their census, under the authority of the legislature of New York, I called the attention of the Senecas at Tonawanda, and on the Buffalo creek, and at Catteragas, and Alleghany reservations, to this subject. It was from them that I learned that the people with whom their ancestors fought, and who so stoutly resisted their arms in the ancient homestead of the Andastes, were called by them Kahquas.

Agreeably to the traditions of Hayekdiokun or Black-snake,[1] important battles were fought on the Deosewa or Buffalo, and on the Eighteen-mile creeks, at both of which the Kahquas were defeated. They showed me some of the monuments of these defeats. The survivors fled, and were pursued to the Alleghany, called by them Ohéo, where they took shelter on an island, and partly through a finesse of the Senecas, were again defeated, and finally fled down the Alleghany river, and have never since appeared.

It is precisely at this point that the Carolina tradition of the Catawbas picks up the history of that enigmatical people, who exist as an anomaly in the southern Indian philology. Admitting their flight through the Alleghany river, from lake Erie, under the name denoted, and the vindiction with which they were pursued by the Connewango Senecas, as events which are satisfactorily established by concurrent Indian tradition, it only remains to determine whether the Catawbas are descendants of the Attionandarons or Neuters, the Eries or Cat nation, or the Andastes or Kahquas. The tradition of the year 1650, in the Carolina MSS., best agrees, in its general import, with the era of the subjugation of the Neuter nation of Niagara, and of the Eries of lake Erie. By one authority, the assault of the main citadel of the Neuters took place in 1651, and all the authorities coincide in fixing on 1655 as the termination of the war with the last tribe. The war with the Kahquas began the next year; but their expulsion did not occur until the lapse of some sixteen or seventeen years. In the mean time, the remnants of the two first conquered nations fled, as this document states, at first to Virginia and finally to the Carolinas.

That the Eries lived in the Ohio Valley before their final defeat, is quite certain. Mr. Jefferson, in his notices of the Indian tribes of the south,[2] not only affirms this tradition, but couples it with the assertion that they spoke a language cognate with the Iroquois, and its affiliated branch, the Monacan, or Tuscarora.

---

[1] Notes on the Iroquois, p. 318.

[2] Notes on Virginia.

Lewis Evans published his celebrated map of the British colonies in 1755,[1] just a century after the reputed expulsion of the Eries. In his analysis preceding it, he describes the Eries as having inhabited the Ohio and its branches, by certain boundaries, from which they had been expelled by the Senecas and their western allies. In this destructive contest, a part of the tribe were either extirpated, or incorporated in the Seneca tribe, or driven, indefinitely, westward.

The name of Catawbas, or Cuttawas, appears to have originated here. The map contains a line called "the common path to the Cuttawa country," which starts on the bank of the Ohio, opposite the mouth of the Scioto river, and runs to the head of the Kentucky river, which was an important point in all the early Indian migrations. This line denotes the ancient war-path between the northern and southern Indians.

It is perceived, from a survey of our Indian history, that the Iroquois language had, at the remotest era, elements remaining in some of the tribes occupying the slopes and summits of the southern Alleghanies or Appalachians. Of these, Mr. Jefferson enumerates all the Monacan dialects. The Tuscaroras, Nottoways, Tuteloes, Meherrics, Chowans, and Wyanokes, were included in this class. Nottowa, or Nadowa, is the Algonquin term for an Iroquois; and it may be conjectured that these elements of tribal developments were left behind in the original Iroquois migrations to the north.

The Tuscaroras were received into the Iroquois confederacy, after their ill-judged and most untoward rebellion against North Carolina, in 1712. The Tuteloes and Meherrics were subsequently received and allotted lands with the Cayugas.[2] The Nottoways remained in Virginia. From a vocabulary of their language, which Mr. Jefferson transmitted to Mr. Duponceau, the latter immediately determined that it belonged to the Iroquois stock.

From a comparison of the Catawba language with the Woccoa, as recorded by Lawson, it is seen to be a dialect of that stock. Lawson, who travelled in 1700–1, from Charleston, South Carolina, to Pamlico Sound, by an interior route, mentions among the Indian tribes he found, the Kadapaws, a word in which we may probably recognize the modern cognomen of Catawba. This was more than half a century after the date of the defeat of the Eries and Attionandarons. In a subsequent part of his journey, he states an instance of the undying vengeance with which the Senecas and Oneidas followed these fragments of tribes into this remote quarter.

With these preliminary remarks, the Carolina manuscript, to which attention has been directed, will be the better understood.

---

[1] Evans's Analysis and Map. Philadelphia, 1735, B. Franklin, Printer. 1 vol. 4to. 32 pages.

[2] Mohawk tradition, from Mrs. Carr, a daughter of Brant; given to me in 1844.

10. CAROLINA MANUSCRIPT RESPECTING THE ORIGIN OF THE CATAWBAS.

The Catawbas were a Canadian tribe. The Connewangos were their hereditary enemies, and, with the aid of the French, were likely at last to overwhelm them. The Catawbas, judging correctly of their perilous condition, determined on a removal to the vicinity of the English settlements. They set out from their ancient homes, about the year 1650, crossed the St. Lawrence,[1] probably near Detroit, and bore for the head-waters of the Kentucky river. The Connewangos all the time kept in full pursuit. The fugitives, embarrassed with their women and children, saw that their enemies would overtake them, chose a position near the sources of the Kentucky, and then awaited the onset of their more powerful adversaries. Turning therefore upon their pursuers, with the energy desperation sometimes inspires, they gave them a terrible overthrow. This little nation, after their great victory, without proper regard to policy, divided into two bands, and remained on the Kentucky, which was called by the hunters the Catawba, and were in time absorbed into the great families of the Chickasaws and Choctaws. The other band settled in Bottetourt county, Virginia, upon a stream afterwards called Catawba creek. They remained there but a few years; their hunters pressing on to the south, discovered the Catawba river, in South Carolina, (Eswa Tavora,) and the entire Virginia band (about 1660) came in a body to effect a permanent settlement on that stream. Tradition states that the Cherokees, who assumed to be the true aborigines of the country, considering the Catawbas as invaders of their soil and freehold, marched in great force to meet them at or near the old nation ford, and a battle ensued between these brave and determined people, which lasted nearly an entire day. In the early part of the engagement, the Catawbas, having small-arms, gained a decided advantage; but in the latter part, the Cherokees changed the fortune of the battle, by superior numbers. It is said the Cherokees lost 1100 men, and the Catawbas about 1000. Victory was suspended, but the parties remained on the field, and it was expected the strife would be renewed on the following day. Early, however, in the morning, the Cherokees sent a deputation to the Catawbas, lauding their bravery, saluting them as brothers, and offering them a settlement anywhere upon the north-east side of the river. Hostilities ceased, a permanent peace was agreed upon, and to preserve it, Broad river was established as the dividing line south-westwardly, and the intermediate country declared neutral ground. Tradition holds that a pile of stones, monumental of the battle, was erected on the ground where it occurred. No account of this contest appears in any printed work, from Adair to Ramsay, or in any authentic manuscript. It is certain, however, that the Catawbas did settle on the north-east of the Catawba river, that they had fire-arms, that the country between the Broad river and the Catawba was occupied by neither nation, presented fewer marks of ownership than any other portion of the State, and that Broad river was called by the Catawbas, Eswau Huppeday, or Line river. The two latter circumstances indicate a treaty, and in all probability the result of a bloody contest and a drawn battle.

---

[1] The St. Lawrence proper heads in lake Ontario.

The division of the tribe, as it came out of Canada, and the Cherokee war, will account for a large diminution of the numbers of the Catawba nation. They were scarcely settled in their new abode, when they fell upon a band of the Wassaws, who occupied the country about the Wassaw and Cane creek, in the district of Lancaster. There, it is said, after a noble resistance in their stronghold, the remains of which are still to be seen on Colonel Stewart's plantation, on the Wassaw creek, they (the Wassaws) were cut off to a man. The conduct of the Catawbas towards the Wassaws, furnishes the only disparagement I have ever heard of the national character of that people. The northern Indians, acting under French influence, occasionally hung upon the Catawba settlements, and carried on against them a sort of predatory and irregular warfare. A few warriors, from time to time, fell in these guerilla contests, which were kept up for many years. The hatred of the French towards the Catawbas, may be learned from the fact that, as late as 1753, the Canadian authorities determined to extirpate them; and that the Connewangos declared, in a great council at Albany, which was held about this time, that they never would make friends with the Catawbas, while the grass grew or the waters ran.

When Colonel Barnwell, about the year 1720, was sent against the Tuscaroras, who had broken up New Berne, then just founded by the Baron De Graffenreidt, upwards of 100 Catawbas accompanied him. A few warriors fell in the prosecution of that admirably conducted expedition. In the campaign against the Cherokees, during the Governorship of H. W. Littleson, undertaken without cause, except the gratification of his Excellency's heartless and guilty vanity, about 100 Catawbas marched under the Colonial flag, and several fell in different skirmishes. The campaign, as it deserved to be, was disgraceful and unsuccessful. About 1753, Governor Dinwiddie sent a message to the Catawbas, to induce them to unite their forces with the militia under the command of Colonel Washington. They promptly agreed to do so, but were restrained by the Carolina governor (Glen), who reminded them that peace was their true policy, as they were a little nation; so much had their ranks been thinned, even at that early day, by war. In an attack upon Sullivan's island, a full company of Catawbas, under the command of Colonel Thompson, participated in its defence. But as the British general on Long island entertained strange suspicions about the Colonel's 18-pounder, the loss of the Catawbas was inconsiderable. A company of Catawbas marched under Colonel Williamson, in his Cherokee expedition; during which, a few of their brave men perished. The Catawbas were always ready to engage in the American service, and always acquitted themselves like brave soldiers. The nation was greatly reduced, in the early stage of the Revolution, by the small-pox. The Indians resolved to adopt a practice common to all the original tribes, of steaming themselves for the cure of this disease, almost into a state of fusion, and then plunging into the river. By this malpractice, hundreds of them died. Indeed, the woods were offensive with the dead bodies of the Indians; and dogs, wolves, and vultures were so busy, for months, in banqueting on them, that they would scarcely retreat from their prey, when approached by any one. In fact, so greatly were the Catawbas thinned by this malady, that at the close of the war, by the advice of their white friends, they invited the Cheraw Indians to move up, and form a union with them. The present nation is about equally composed of Catawbas and Cheraws. They have lived in great harmony. The Cheraws have retained their own language, but ordinarily use the Catawba.

Among the causes which tended to diminish the numbers of the Catawba nation, may be mentioned their wars and skirmishes, on their own account, and their adhesion to the military fortunes of their white friends; the ravages of the small-pox; the intemperate use of ardent spirits, by all ages and both sexes; the loss of their game, by the encroachments of the white hunters; the assassination of King Hagler, by a few Shawnees, about 1760 (so important is the life of an individual sometimes to a whole people); the fact of their being encircled on every side, and mixed in with a vastly more powerful and energetic race, whereby a distressing sense of inferiority and depression has been kept up among them; and, added to all, impolitic legislation, which gave them permission to lease their lands for long periods, securing to them a miserable subsistence, which exempted them from labor.

In the year 1735 the nation had in reservation only thirty acres of the large and fertile territory, not a foot of which was in cultivation. In the history of South Carolina, Ramsay solemnly invokes the people of South Carolina to cherish this small remnant of a noble race, always the friends of the Carolinians, and ready to peril all for their safety. They never have shed a drop of American blood, nor stolen property to the value of a cent. They have lost every thing but their honesty. Hagler was a great man, and the nation still speak of him with much feeling. They have never looked up since his death. Hagler was succeeded by King Prow, or Frow, who reigned but a short time. On his death, General Newriver, who had gained a splendid victory on New river, in Virginia, over the northern Indians, was called to rule over them; they having determined, in imitation of their white brethren, to repudiate royalty. He was succeeded by General Scott, and by Colonel Ayres. Scott was a considerable man. The Catawba language proper is a pretty good one; it corresponds in its general structure with the other aboriginal tongues of North America, which, Adelung says, are highly artificial and ingenious. The old set of Catawbas were a likely people; Major Cantry, for example, was a noble specimen of a man; and the wife of Joe Scott was a perfect Venus. Almost all my books and manuscripts were lost on my passage from Charleston to Mobile. I have, consequently, been obliged to speak from memory; and I have no doubt, often am wrong as to dates. If your glorious State would purchase for this people (who make a strong appeal to the sympathies of every Carolinian) a good tract of land in a healthy part of the State, and place over them a white man of decided responsibility as their patron, to direct their conduct and settle their differences, they would do better than they have done for fifty years. If they love a man, he may make them do any thing, even toil for a livelihood, and keep decently sober. This would be doing a great deal; should this policy be pursued, the funeral yew will not be fixed over the last Catawba for a century.

11. HISTORY, LANGUAGE, AND ARCHÆOLOGY OF THE PIMOS OF THE RIVER GILA, NEW MEXICO.

THE earliest Spanish accounts of this people locate the tribe in the Gila Valley, very nearly in the same position which they now occupy. This is about 240 miles above the present site of fort Yuma, at the junction of the Gila and Colorado rivers. They are at present intimately associated with the Coco Maricopas. This association has produced a general concurrence in manners and customs, dress, modes of living, the same kind of houses, and the same good and general policy; but the language is different; and the latter are an entirely distinct tribe, having, agreeably to their own traditions, come to their present position from the west. Their union with the Pimos is recent.

The Pimos assert that their ancestors migrated to their present position from the east, or as they phrase it, the rising sun.[1] Like most of the Indian tribes, mingling fable with fact, and without analytical powers sufficiently strong to separate them, they assert that their first parent was caught up to heaven. After this, those of the tribe that remained on earth wandered west, and fixed their abode on the Gila.

The men and women of the Pimos and Coco Maricopas, have the custom of wearing long hair reaching to their waists. They put it up in twists, and sometimes coil it around their heads; with others, it is allowed to hang down the back. In front it is cut straight across the forehead, where it hangs in a thick mass, and protects their eyes from the glare of the sun. The sexes practise this custom alike, the only perceptible difference being, that the males wear their hair the longest. It grows very thick. They sometimes put it up as a turban, with a kind of clay, which serves to give permanency to the coil or folds of this species of tiara.

With respect to their history, it may be suggested, that, prior to the era of the

---

[1] Report of Captain A. R. Johnston, U. S. A. Ex. Doc., No. 41, p. 601. Washington, 1847.

Spanish, the country they now occupy was inhabited by the Navajoes, or Moquis, who have passed north to their present positions. It is among the early traditions which are recorded by some of the Spanish missionaries, that the "Casas Grande" which stand upon Pimo territory, were erected by the Navajoes. Recent reports of the expedition of Col. Donophan, denote that such structures are yet to be observed among that people.

During the recent residence of Buckingham Smith, Esq., as Secretary of the American Legation in Mexico, this gentleman copied sundry documents from a collection of thirty-two manuscript volumes in the Archivo-General of the city of Mexico, made by order of the King of Spain, about the close of the last century. Of these, he has furnished for this work the following translations respecting the history of this tribe; of their predecessors in the occupancy of the Pimo country; and of the erection, by a nation from the north of the Gila, of the Casas Grande.

(A.) FROM THE DIARY OF FRANCISCO GARCES.[1] (1775.)

§ 121. As soon as the sun rose, there came the three Indians of Zuñi, to whom I said that I would not now go to their towns, as the Yavipais would not accompany me; and I could no longer return by the Moqui, fearing what might happen to me from them, should I go back without the Yavipais. I was informed that the Yutas were the friends of the Spaniards, as well also as the Yavipais; but the journey was long, and even an escort and animals ("habio") necessary; of all of which there was need, and there were many doubts of getting any in New Mexico; for the Governor, or the Commandant Rivera, might hold perhaps my incursion pernicious, and in no degree for the service of the king; particularly might he do so, as it had not been expressly ordered by your excellency. At last I wrote to the father minister of Zuñi, although I did not know his name, informing him of my arrival at that town, and of the bad reception the people had given me in contrast with that by other nations, and charging him to send the letter, or a copy of it, to the Governor and the Reverend Father the Custodian, to whom I greatly commended myself.

Those of Zuñi went with this letter for me; and in a short time came my ancient Yavipai, with a chief of the village, urging me to go on and see the towns of the Moqui, where they would give me food, since they would not do so where I was. I saddled the mule, and accompanied by two Indians and by many staring boys and girls, I went down the side of the town to the east, where they showed me the road to the other towns. I hesitated to go, for want of company; but my ancient Yavipai said to me, that I and the mule were hungry, and that he would wait for me there five days; for he had not yet done selling the mezcal and the other things he brought. Accordingly, I made up my mind to go alone, and entered on a very sandy plain, extending a great way to the south. On one side and the other I saw many fields of maize and beans ("frijol"), and many males occupied at their work. I went up another table-land, and on it found two young herdsmen watching sheep, and a woman with her axe, looking for wood. They ran away on drawing near me; from which I saw the ill will of that people to be general; and considering the evil known better than the good to be discovered, and that in the end my friends the Yavipais were at Oraibe, I determined to go back and return over the three leagues traversed.

---

[1] The friar had been ordered by the viceroy Bucarali to proceed with a companion, the father Eyarch, in company with father Font and Colonel Anza, to the river Colorado, and to wait there till the return of the two last from San Francisco, to which they were destined.

At night I entered the Moqui, astonished at the sight of the many people on the roofs of the houses, looking at me as I passed with my mule, in search of the corner of the preceding night, which, after making some turns, I found.

In this town were two kinds of people, and two languages; the first is seen in the color and stature of the males and females, the second in their different manner of singing. Some are of a color clear and somewhat red, and are good looking; and others are small, black, and ugly.[1] When they go out of town, they appear in clothing like Spaniards, wearing dressed skins, tight sleeves, pantaloons, boots and shoes. Their arms are "xavas" and lances. In town they wear shoes, and sleeves of colored cotton, ("manta pinta,") and a black blanket, of the sort they make. The women wear tunics as low as the ancle, without sleeves, and a black or white shawl over the head, like a square mantilla; the tunic confined by a belt, usually of a variety of colors. They do not pounce or paint themselves, nor did I see beads on them, or ear-rings. The old women wear the hair in two braids, and the young women in a tuft over each ear, or altogether drawn to one side, taking much care of it.

Notwithstanding that they did not favor me, I formed the idea that there were many good people among them, and that the bad were only those who governed. There might have been other reasons for this beside that of not wishing to be baptized, or of admitting Spaniards into their country; like that of knowing that I had come from the Tamajabs and from the Yumas, friends of their enemies, and consequently holding me as the spy of the Yavipais, Tejua, and Chemeguabas. They also knew that I came from, and was a minister among, the Pimas, with whom they were at war, as I had been told by the Indians of my mission, and because of this and the ruins which are found on the river Gila, I have suspected that anciently the Moquis extended as far as there. I asked of some old Sabaipuris of my mission, many years ago, who had made those houses which were fallen down, and the earthen-ware that is found, broken in various places, on the river Gila; for neither the Pimas nor Apaches know how to make such. They answered me, the Moquis only know how to make those things; and they added, that these neighboring Apaches are not related among themselves, that there are some much farther to the north, where they used to go, long since, to fight; but had never been up into the plateau where they lived. This information was confirmed, in that the Yavipais took out for me a bowl of earthen, like the cups ("cows") found in the house of Montezuma; and I asking them whence they had gotten it, they said that in the Moqui there is much of that ware. As I did not go into a house, I could not see any in them; but from below I saw on the azoteas some large colored pots. So likewise the Gila Pimas have told me that anciently the Apaches came from the house, which is called of Montezuma, to give them battle; and it being certain that those whom we know for Apaches have no house or fixed habitation, I am inclined to think that they were the Moquinos who came to fight, the which made war upon by the Pimas, who have ever been numerous and brave, and that they forsook these habitations of the river Gila, as they have that ruined town which I found before coming to Moqui, retiring to where they now live, in that advantageous position, defended as it is with so many precautions against every attack.

---

[1] These passages were read in the Spanish to Jose Maria, an educated Indian of New Mexico, a Tejua, visiting Washington this summer; who, after conversing a moment with his companions in their native tongue, stated that they had the knowledge, from tradition, that a part of the people of Galisteo, a long time ago, went to Moqui, and others to Santo Domingo. The red people, he said, were the Tejuas, and the black, the old inhabitants of the place. Galisteo, he continued, is a ruin; its Indian name is Tanoque: the translation is, "the lower settlement." The language they spoke was very like ours, but not the same. — TR.

Within the town there was no water, but on the side to the east, I saw an abundant spring, with a descending stairs of stone, and curbing of the same. In my corner I rested that night, and my mule was taken by the Yavipais to the pen of the preceding day.

(B.) From the Diary of Fr. Pedro Font. (1775.)

On the 31st, the Commandant having determined that the people should rest for the day, we have had time to go and examine the great house which they call that of Montezuma, situated a league from the river Gila, and distant from the lagune some three leagues to the east-south-east, whither we have been accompanied by some Indians and the Governor of Utiritue, who, on the way, related to us a history or tradition which those Indians preserve from their forefathers on the subject of that house, the whole of which amounts to fables mixed confusedly with some Catholic truths.

I took an observation from this place of the great house, marked on the map with the letter A,[1] and found it to be in 33° 3·5′, and thus I say: in the Casa Grande of the river Gila, the 31st day of October, of the year 1775, the meridional altitude of the inferior limb of the sun 42·25°. We observed this edifice and its vestiges with all care; the iconographic plan of it I give here;[1] and for its being better understood I give the following description and explanation.

---

[1] The diary is accompanied with a map, drawn with great particularity, by the Father. — Tr.

The Casa Grande, or Palace of Montezuma, may have, according to the accounts and scant information there are of it which the Indians give, an antiquity of five hundred years; for it appears that its foundation was laid by the Mexicans, when in their transmigration the devil took them through many lands, until arriving at the promised country of Mexico, where, in their extensive settlements, they raised edifices and planted a population. The place on which the house stands is level, separated from the river Gila to the distance of a league; the remains of the houses which formed the town extending more than a league to the eastward, and to the other points. All this ground is strewn with pieces of pots, jars, plates, &c.; some coarse, and others colored of a variety of tints — white, blue, red, &c.; a sign that it was once thickly inhabited, and by a people distinct from the Pimas of the Gila, as these know not how to make like ware. We made an exact survey of the edifice and its position; we took its measurement with a lance for the moment, which I afterwards reduced to geometrical feet, and is, a little more or less, the following.

The house is square, and sets exactly to the four cardinal points. About it are some ruins indicating a fence or wall which enclosed the house and other buildings, remarkable at the corners, where there appears to have been a structure like an interior castle or watch-tower; for at the corner which stands to the south-west, there is a piece up, with its divisions and one story. The exterior wall of the house is four hundred and twenty feet from north to south, and two hundred and sixty feet from east to west. The interior is composed of five halls: three in the middle, of equal size, and one at each extreme, of greater length. The three are twenty-six feet from north to south, and from east to west ten feet. The two at the ends are twelve feet from north to south, and thirty-eight from east to west. In height they are eleven feet, and in this are equal. The doors of communication are five feet high and two feet wide; are nearly all of the same size, excepting the four first, being the four outer, which appear to be as wide again. The thickness of the walls is four feet: they are well enclosed; those of the exterior are six feet. The house had a measurement on the outside from north to south, of seventy feet, and from east to west of fifty. The walls are scarped from without. Before the door on the east side, there is, apart from the house, another room, which is from north to south twenty-six feet, and from east to west eighteen feet, exclusive of the thickness of the walls. The wood-work was of pine, from what could be seen; and the nearest ridge of pines is some twenty-five leagues distant, which has also some mesquite. The entire structure is of earth, and, according to appearances, the tapia was made in blocks of different sizes. A very large canal leads up, a good distance, from the river, from which the population were supplied, and which is now much filled up. It is evident, however, that the edifice has had three stories, and if that be true which could be gleaned from the Indians, and from the marks which were to be seen, there had been four; the lower floor of the house having been below, like that of a cellar. To give light to the rooms, there are only to be seen the doors and some round holes in the middle of the walls which look to the east and west; and the Indians said, that through those holes, which are somewhat large, the prince, whom they called the Bitter Ahan, looked out to salute the sun when it rose and set. No appearances of stairs were found; from which we judged that they had been consumed by the fire which had been set to the building by the Apaches.

---

[1] Not existing with the manuscript in the Archives. — TR.

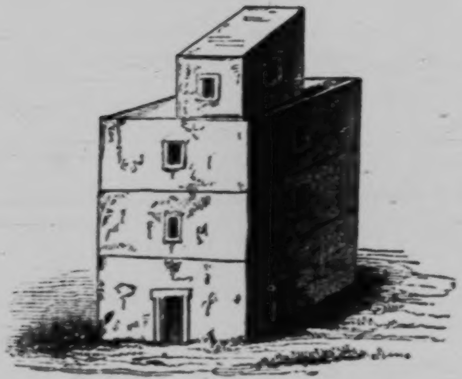
On the first day of November, we sallied from the lagoon at half after nine o'clock in the morning, and at one in the afternoon we arrived at the town of San Juan Capistrans de Virtud, having travelled in a course to the west-north-west. The Indians, calculated at about a thousand in number, received us in two lines, the men on one side, and the women on the other; and we having dismounted, they all came to salute and shake hands with us—first the men and afterwards the women; showing great satisfaction at seeing us. They gave us an entertainment under a great arbor which they made for the purpose; before which, although they were heathen, they set up a large cross, and afterwards brought water to the camp for the people. These Gila Pimas are gentle and comely.

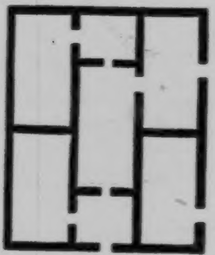
(C.) FROM THE DIARY OF AN EXPEDITION MADE BY THE ENSIGN JUAN MATEO MONGE, IN THE MONTH OF NOVEMBER, 1697.

On the 17th, having heard mass as on the sabbath, leaving the plain by the mud holes of that river, which is capacious enough for a ship to sail in, and is shaded by the thick foliage of groves, we proceeded to the west, and ever in sight of the river, along a little ridge, from the summit of which we saw to the east the same mountain of Florida where the Apache enemy are accustomed to reside, and where, on another occasion, they were fought; and to the west we saw also the Casas Grande, which, from being at the distance of seventeen leagues, appeared to be castles; and travelling always through woods bearing the medicinal fruit of the jojobe, at the end of eight leagues we arrived at a round green hill, which appeared like a garden and cliffs, with a crystalline and cold spring of water on its top, which, leaping up in jets, irrigated all the sides. We called it San Gregoris Jaumalturgo; and taking some refreshment, we came down into the plain and valley of the river, and having travelled two leagues, we slept, keeping watch.

On the 18th, we continued to the west over an extensive plain, sterile and without pasture; and at the end of five miles, we discovered, on the other side of the river, other houses and edifices. The sergeant, Juan Bautista de Escalante, swam over with two companions to examine them; and they said that the walls were two yards ("varas") in thickness, like those of a fort, and that there were other ruins about, but all of ancient date. We went on to the west, and at the end of four more leagues, we arrived, at mid-day, at Casas Grande, within which mass was said by Father Rino, who had travelled to that place fasting.

There was one great edifice, with the principal room in the middle, of four stories, and the adjoining rooms on its four sides, of three stories, with the walls two yards in thickness, of strong mortar and clay, so smooth and shining within, that they appeared like burnished tablets, and so polished that they shone like the earthen of Puebla. The windows are square and very true, are without hinges or bolts, ("sin quicios ni atravesados,") were made with a mould and arch, the same as the doors, although narrow, and in this particular might be recognized to be the work of Indians. It is thirty-six paces in length, and twenty-one in width, of good symmetry, as the following design, with the ground-plan, will show.





At the distance of the shot of an arquebuss, twelve other houses are to be seen, also half-fallen; having thick walls, and all the ceilings burnt, except in the lower room of one house, which is of round timbers, smooth and not thick, which appeared to be of cedar or savin, and over them sticks (otales) of very equal size, and a cake of mortar and hard clay, making a roof or ceiling of great ingenuity. In the environs are to be seen many other ruins, and heaps of broken earth, which circumscribe it two leagues, with much broken earthen-ware of plates, and pots of fine clay, painted of many colours, and which resemble the jars of Guadalajara, in New Spain. It may be inferred that the population or city of this body politic was very large; and that it was one of government, is shown by a main canal, which comes from the river by the plain, running around for the distance of three leagues, and enclosing the inhabitants in its area, being in breadth ten varas, and about four in depth, through which perhaps was directed one-half the volume of the river, in such a manner that it might serve for a defensive moat as well as to supply the wards with water, and irrigate the plantations in the adjacencies. The guides said that, at the distance of a day's journey, there are a variety of other edifices of the same construction toward the north, on the opposite side of the river, on another stream which flows to unite with this, and which they call Verde, built by a people who came from the region of the north, the chief of whom was called the Siba; which name, according to its definition in their language, is the Bitter man, or the Cruel; and that because of the sanguinary wars he held against the Apaches, and twenty other nations confederated with them. Many being killed on both sides, the country was abandoned; a portion of the inhabitants, dissatisfied, separated and returned to the north, whence they had come years before, and the rest went to the east and south. From this information we judge—and it is probable—that they are the ancestry of the Mexican nation, which is according to their structures and vestiges; and are like those that are spoken of as existing in the 34th degree of latitude, and in the environs of the fort of Janos, in 29 degrees, which are also called Casas Grande, and many others, of which we have notices, to be seen as far up as the 37th and 40th degrees north. On the margin of the river, distant one league from the Casas Grande, we found a town in which we counted 130 souls. * * *

Having heard mass on the 19th, we continued towards the west, over sterile plains. On all the grounds about these buildings, there is not a single pasture; but appear as if they had been strewn with salt. Having traversed four leagues, we arrived at a town, Tusonimon; which is so named from a great heap of horns, from the wild or sylvan sheep, which appears like a hill, and from the numbers that there are of the animals, they make the common subsistence of the inhabitants. From what can be seen from the highest of those houses, there appears to be a country of more than a hundred thousand hastas[1] in extent.

The heathen Indians received us with jubilee, giving of their provision to the soldiers; and we counted two hundred persons, who were gentle and affable. Remaining there to sleep, the Father and I instructed them, through the interpreters, in the mysteries of our Holy Faith; on which they besought us that there might be baptized fifteen of their children, and seven sick adults.

---

[1] The measure of a lance, about three yards in length.—Tr.

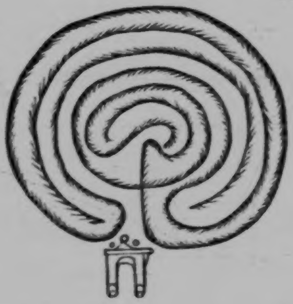
(D.) From the Anonymous MS. of a Jesuit, who, it is said in the Preface, lived many Years as a Missionary in the Country he describes. The Work is entitled, "Descripcion Geographica, Natural y Curiosa, de la Provincia de Sonora. Por un amigo del Servicio de Dios, y del Rey Nuestra Senor. Ano de 1764."

This copious river, Gila, rises in 36° of latitude, and in rather more than 268° of longitude, in that part of the region which looks to the south from the mountain called El Mogollón, the country of the Apaches. It comes out through the narrow passages, or from a long chasm in a place called Todos Santos, and afterwards traverses the valley of Santa Lucia, from which, as well as from the opposite side, on the north, it receives a small stream. Its course from its rising, is toward the south-west, although afterwards it is chiefly to the west, with the exception that in places, in consequence of the interposition of different ridges, it takes a course somewhat to the south and north-west; in which flow it runs to the east and west, through all the country of the Apaches ("Apacheria"), forming most fertile vales; some like the vale of Florida, over twenty leagues in width, for more than the distance of a hundred leagues. At the end of forty-six leagues from its origin, the river of San Francisco unites with it, which rises in the same mountain of Mogollón, where it looks to the north, near the granaries ("troges") of the Apaches, and runs in a direction south-west, among sharp ridges, until coming to the Gila, at its entrance into the vale of Florida, about the distance of six leagues, and leaving, some ten leagues to the left, the mud springs in the mountains of Florida, which range with it, it comes out of that valley and country of the Apaches, breaking its way through some very precipitous mountains, at whose sides come to unite with it the river San Pedro, in the manner I have before described. Those granaries, the Spanish force discovered, in its march for the general campaign in the year 1737, on the road to Acome, and were well provided with grain.

From this junction, the Gila pursuing its stated course for the matter of twenty leagues, it leaves on the left, at the distance of a league, the Casa Grande, which they call that of Montezuma, from a tradition current among the Indians and Spaniards, of its having been one of the habitations where, in their wide transmigrations, the Mexicans rested. That building is of four stories, which are still standing; its ceiling is of the beams of cedar, or "hazcal," the walls of a material very solid, which appears to be the best of mortar. It is divided into many rooms and lodgings, of sufficient size to accommodate in them a travelling court.

At the distance of three leagues from this house, and to the right of the river, there is another house, but now much demolished, from the ruins of which it is inferred that it was of much finer material than the first. In the neighborhood of these houses, for some leagues in every direction, wheresoever the ground is turned, are to be found fragments of pottery of a very fine quality, and of a variety of color. From a very large canal, higher up the river, still open for the distance of some two leagues, we are left to conclude that the people could not have moved very rapidly in passing here, as it appears to have supplied a city with water, and irrigated many leagues of the rich country of those beautiful plains. About the distance of half a league from that house, to the west, may be found a lake which empties into the river; and although its volume is not large, its depth is greater than it has been able to sound with the many strings that could be tied together.

These Pimas tell of another house, of a design and make more strange, which they say is to be found farther up on that river; its figure is that of a kind of labyrinth, the form of which, as the Indians trace it on the sand, is in the manner given in the accompanying cut; but it appears more likely to have been a house for recreation, than for a great lord to reside in.



To other buildings of greater extension, more art and symmetry, I have heard the Father Ygnacio Xavier Keller refer, although I do not recollect in what part of his apostolic missions they were seen. I know that his reverence said that they came to a straight line in front, were built alike, and were nearly half a league in length, and the width appeared to him nearly as great; the whole divided into equal squares, and each house three or four stories in height, although then much disfigured from having fallen in many places; but that at one of the angles still was standing an edifice of a larger size, in the form of a castle or palace, of five or six stories in altitude. The canal, like that already described, the father said it not only passed along the front, but before it reached the houses, it was divided into many branches, through which the water might be admitted into all the streets, perhaps to cleanse them in their waste places at pleasure, as is done at Turin and other cities of Europe, and was even in Mexico in times past. This last Casa Grande is on the other side of the river, and may be the same with that which before is spoken of; for all who have seen it agree that it is the ruins, not of one structure only, but a place once extensively inhabited.

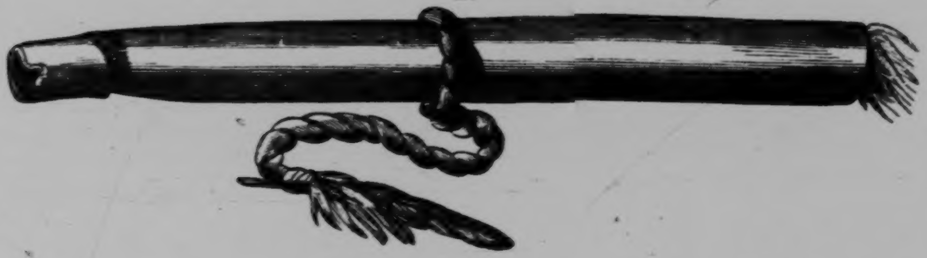
Between those Casas Grande inhabit the Pimas on one and the other margin of the Gila: the towns of that people, which occupy ten leagues of the mild vale along it, with some islands, abound in wheat, maize, &c., and yield so much cotton, to whom also is referred the fabrication of the finest kind of pottery, which is found at one of the archæological indications of the Gila valley.

12. MOQUI TRIBE OF NEW MEXICO.

In the month of August, 1852, a message reached the President of the United States, by a delegation of the Pueblos of Tesuque in New Mexico, offering him friendship and intercommunication; and opening, symbolically, a road from the Moqui country to Washington. This message, of which the leading points were communicated by figures or symbols, having fulfilled its object, and being gazed at as a curiosity in saloons, where ambassadors from higher courts are received, was referred to me, as falling more specifically within the cognizance of my inquiries.

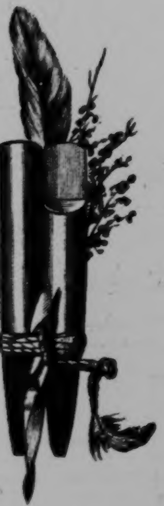
This unique diplomatic pacquet consists of several articles of symbolic import. The first is the official and ceremonial offer of the peace-pipe. This is symbolized by a joint of the maize, five and a half inches long, and half an inch in diameter. The hollow of the tube is filled by leaves of a plant which represents tobacco. It is stopped, to secure the weed from falling out, by the downy yellow under plumage of some small bird. Externally, around the centre of the stalk, is a tie of white cotton twisted string of four strands, (not twisted by the distaff,) holding, at its end, a small tuft of the before-mentioned downy yellow feathers, and a small wiry feather of the same species. The interpreter has written on this, "The pipe to be smoked by the President." The object is represented in the following cut, (A.)

A.

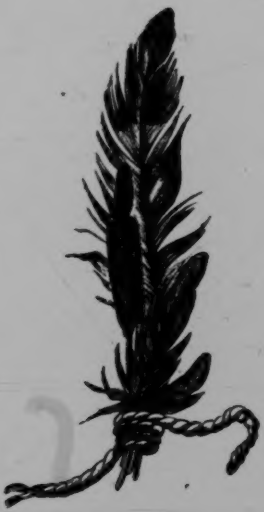


The second symbol consists of two small columnar round pieces of wood, four and a half inches long, and four-tenths in diameter, terminating in a cone. The cone is one and a half inches long, and colored black; the rest of the pieces are blue; a peace color among the Indians south, it seems, as well as north. This color has the appearance of being produced by the carbonate of copper mixed with aluminous earth; and reminds one strongly of the blue clays of the Dacotahs. The wood, when cut, is white, compact, and of a peculiar species. A notch is cut at one end of one of the pieces, and colored yellow. A shuck of the maize, one end of which, rolled in the shape of a cone, is bound up by cotton strings, with a small bird's feather, in the manner of the symbolic pipe. There is also tied up with the symbolic sticks, one of the secondary feathers and bits of down of a bird of dingy color. The feather is naturally tipped with white. Together with this, the tie holds a couple of sticks of a native plant, or small seed of the prairie grass, perhaps. It may, together with the husk of the maize, be emblematic of their cultivation. The whole of the tie represents the Moquis. The following cut (B) represents this symbol.

B.



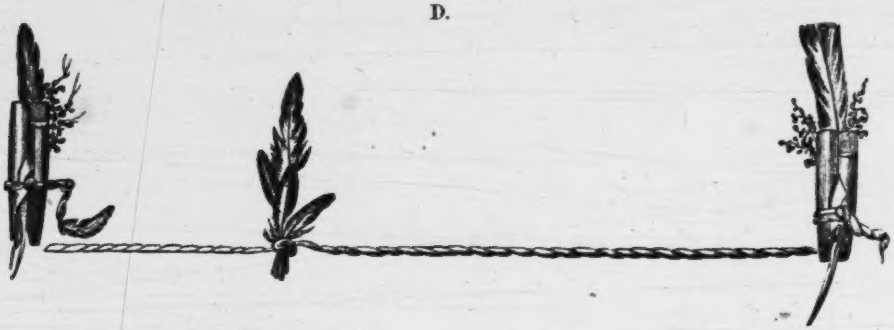
C.



The third object is, in every respect, like Fig. B, and symbolizes the President of the United States. A colored cotton cord, four feet long, unites these symbols. Six inches of this cord is small and white. At the point of its being tied to the long colored cord there is a bunch of small bird's feathers. This bunch, which symbolizes the geographical position of the Navajoes, with respect to Washington, consists of the feathers of six species, the colors of which are pure white, blue, brown, mottled, yellow, and dark, like the pigeon-hawk, and white, tipped with brown. (See the preceding cut, C.)

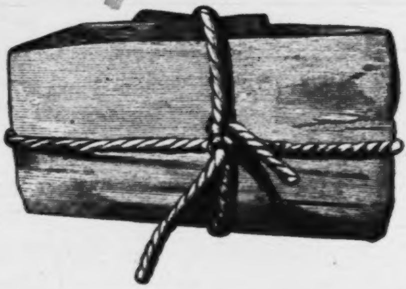
The interpreter appends to these material effigies, or devices, the following remarks. These two figures represent the Moqui people and the President; the cord is the road which separates them; the feather tied to the cord is the meeting point; that part of the cord which is white is intended to signify the distance between the President and the place of meeting; and that part which is stained is the distance between the Moqui and the same point. Your Excellency will perceive that the distance between the Moqui and place of meeting is short, while the other is very long.

D.



The last object of this communication from the high plains of New Mexico, is the most curious, and the most strongly indicative of the wild, superstitious notions of the Moqui mind. It consists of a small quantity of wild honey, wrapped up in a wrapper or inner fold of the husk of the maize, as represented in Figure E. It is accompanied by these remarks:

E.



"A charm to call down rain from heaven.—To produce the effect desired, the President must take a piece of the shuck which contains wild honey, chew it, and spit it upon the ground which needs rain; and the Moquis assure him that it will come."

It is thus perceived that the superstitions of the Moquis are identified with those of the erratic hunter tribes who occupy the continent north of their position on the elevated heights of New Mexico—a position which they have apparently occupied since the earliest discoveries of the Spaniards.

In 1540, Coronada, with 150 horsemen, and 200 footmen, having united his forces at Compostella, set out by the order of Mendoza, the viceroy of Mexico, to verify the wild stories of cities and towns, silver and gold, and a high civilization, which had reached him, by runners, as existing in the region north of the Gila, which now bears the name of New Mexico. They were accompanied by 800 Indians, and took with them 150 European cows, and a large flock of sheep, to serve as food. This fact is alluded to for the purpose of adding, that the latter were probably the origin of the immense flocks of sheep at present possessed by the Moquis and Navajoes. Three hundred and twelve years have served greatly to multiply this species; and every year has probably only further convinced them of the importance and value of this animal, which is easily raised, in supplying them with sustenance. It has also given them the material for the manufacture of blankets; an article which they make, as we are informed, without the use of the distaff, but by a peculiar application of their native ingenuity.

But neither the raising of sheep, nor the making of blankets, have lifted from their minds the dark veil of ignorance and superstition, nor divested them of a belief in the degrading doctrines of magic, which mark the unreclaimed savage, wherever he dwells.

VI. INTELLECTUAL CAPACITY AND CHARACTER. C.

INTELLECTUAL CAPACITY AND CHARACTER.

SYNOPSIS OF PAPERS.

A. ORAL FICTIONS.

1. Hiawatha; an Iroquois Tradition. By Abraham Le Fort.
2. The Little Monedo, or Boy-man; an Odjibwa Tale. By Ba-bahm-wa-wa-gezhig-equa.
3. Trapping in Heaven; a Wyandot Tradition of 1637. By Paul Le Jeune.
4. The Great Snake of Canandaguia Lake; an Iroquois Tradition. By John M. Bradford, Esq.
5. Shingebiss; a Chippewa Allegory.

B. POETIC DEVELOPMENT OF THE INDIAN MIND.

6. Song of the Okogis. By Ba-bahm-wa-wa-gezhig-equa.
7. Hawk Chant. By James Riley.

A. ORAL FICTIONS.

The capacity of the human mind to recuperate and amuse itself by fictitious recitals during states of repose, after scenes of toil and danger, is one of its most striking original developments; and we perceive traces of it in the earliest passages of human history. Sometimes allegory is employed. This trait was early observed by the missionaries to the North American Indians; and although lost sight of in the popular accounts of the tribes for a long time, it is found to characterize, so far as inquiries go, the leading stocks of the United States. How far it may be traced west and south, it may be premature to inquire.

The tale of "Trapping in Heaven," now introduced, is gleaned from the missionary records of New France, in 1636. It has some features in common with the tale of the boy who caught the sun in a snare, found among the Algonquins, in 1822.[1] We are informed that these oral tales are confined in their utterance by the Indians to the winter season; the reason for which is a mythological belief, as expressed by an aged Indian of Lake Michigan (Vide Demonology, § XII.), that the ground is then covered with a mantle of snow, and the genii, who are believed to inhabit all parts of the earth, cannot then hear the narratives in which their names are sometimes made free with.

In these imaginative relations of the Indian wigwam, allegory takes its widest range, and it is as singular as it is unexpected, to find that symbols sometimes conceal important moral truths. Thus, an individual, prefigured as the head of a family of hawks, one of the latter of whom is so unlucky as to break a wing, is made to uphold fraternal affection, by a line of self-sacrifice and prudential conduct, for a whole season of want, which is a pattern for human imitation. A warrior's soul travels from the field of battle, to discover whether its loss, in the shape of a brave man slain, will be missed and lamented as much as is usually supposed. An esteemed wife and sister return, as ghosts or spirits, to the earth, disguised in human form, to learn whether the regrets expressed for their untimely death were real and lively testimonials of human woe, such as society professes, generally, to feel on these occasions.[2] These are touches of delicate irony on the sincerity of the professions of society, which are little to be looked for among savages.

The history of the American tribes soon enters the shadowy and gorgeous precincts of mythology, where the imagination has free scope in accounting for the origin and rise of nations, institutions, and customs. None of the tribes are so destitute of imagination as not to have something of this sort to cover many a wide hiatus in their history.

1. Hiawatha, or, the Origin of the Onondaga Council-Fire.[3]

Tarenyawago taught the Six Nations arts and knowledge. He had a canoe which would move without paddles. It was only necessary to will it, to compel it to go. With this he ascended the streams and lakes. He taught the people to raise corn and beans, removed obstructions from their water-courses, and made their fishing-grounds clear.

---

[1] Algic Researches.

[2] Ibid.

[3] Derived from the verbal narrations of the late Abraham Le Fort, an Onondaga chief, who was a graduate, it is believed, of Geneva College.

He helped them to get the mastery over the great monsters which overran the country, and thus prepared the forests for their hunters. His wisdom was as great as his power. The people listened to him with admiration, and followed his advice gladly. There was nothing in which he did not excel good hunters, brave warriors, and eloquent orators.

He gave them wise instructions for observing the laws and maxims of the Great Spirit. Having done these things, he laid aside the high powers of his public mission, and resolved to set them an example of how they should live.

For this purpose, he selected a beautiful spot on the southern shore of one of the lesser and minuter lakes, which is called Tioto (Cross lake) by the natives, to this day. Here he erected his lodge, planted his field of corn, kept by him his magic canoe, and selected a wife. In relinquishing his former position, as a subordinate power to the Great Spirit, he also dropped his name, and, according to his present situation, took that of Hiawatha, meaning a person of very great wisdom, which the people spontaneously bestowed on him.

He now lived in a degree of respect scarcely inferior to that which he before possessed. His words and counsels were implicitly obeyed. The people flocked to him from all quarters, for advice and instruction. Such persons as had been prominent in following his precepts, he favored, and they became eminent on the war-path and in the council-room.

When Hiawatha assumed the duties of an individual, at Tioto, he carefully drew out from the water his beautiful talismanic canoe, which had served for horses and chariot, in his initial excursions through the Iroquois territories, and it was carefully secured on land, and never used except in his journeys to attend the general councils. He had elected to become a member of the Onondaga tribe, and chose the residence of this people, in the shady recesses of their fruitful valley, as the central point of their government.

After the termination of his higher mission from above, years passed away in prosperity, and the Onondagas assumed an elevated rank, for their wisdom and learning, among the other tribes, and there was not one of these which did not yield its assent to their high privilege of lighting the general council-fire.

Suddenly there arose a great alarm at the invasion of a ferocious band of warriors from the north of the Great Lakes. As they advanced, an indiscriminate slaughter was made of men, women, and children. Destruction threatened to be alike the fate of those who boldly resisted, or quietly submitted. The public alarm was extreme. Hiawatha advised them not to waste their efforts in a desultory manner, but to call a general council of all the tribes that could be gathered together from the east to the west; and he appointed the meeting to take place on an eminence on the banks of Onondaga lake.

Accordingly all the chief men assembled at this spot. The occasion brought together vast multitudes of men, women, and children; for there was an expectation of some great deliverance. Three days had already elapsed, and there began to be a general anxiety lest Hiawatha should not arrive. Messengers were despatched for him to Tioto, who found him in a pensive mood, to whom he communicated his strong presentiments that evil betided his attendance. These were overruled by the strong representations of the messengers, and he again put his wonderful vessel in its element, and set out for the council, taking his only daughter with him. She timidly took her seat in the stern, with a light paddle, to give direction to the vessel; for the strength of the current of the Seneca river was sufficient to give velocity to the motion till arriving at So-hah-hi, the Onondaga outlet. At this point the powerful exertions of the aged chief were required, till they entered on the bright bosom of the Onondaga.

The grand council, that was to avert the threatened danger, was quickly in sight, and sent up its shouts of welcome, as the venerated man approached, and landed in front of the assemblage. An ascent led up the banks of the lake to the place occupied by the council. As he walked up this, a loud sound was heard in the air above, as if caused by some rushing current of wind. Instantly the eyes of all were directed upward to the sky, where a spot of matter was discovered descending rapidly, and every instant enlarging in its size and velocity. Terror and alarm were the first impulses, for it appeared to be descending into their midst, and they scattered in confusion.

Hiawatha, as soon as he had gained the eminence, stood still, and caused his daughter to do the same; deeming it cowardly to fly, and impossible, if it were attempted, to divert the designs of the Great Spirit. The descending object had now assumed a more definite aspect, and as it came down, revealed the shape of a gigantic white bird, with wide extended and pointed wings, which came down, swifter and swifter, with a mighty swoop, and crushed the girl to the earth. Not a muscle was moved in the face of Hiawatha. His daughter lay dead before him, but the great and mysterious white bird was also destroyed by the shock. Such had been the violence of the concussion, that it had completely buried its beak and head in the ground. But the most wonderful sight was the carcase of the prostrated bird, which was covered with beautiful plumes of snow-white shining feathers. Each warrior stepped up, and decorated himself with a plume. And it hence became a custom to assume this kind of feathers on the war-path. Succeeding generations substituted the plumes of the white heron, which led this bird to be greatly esteemed.

But yet a greater wonder ensued. On removing the carcase of the bird, not a human trace could be discovered of the daughter. She had completely vanished. At this the father was greatly afflicted in spirits, and disconsolate. But he roused himself, as from a lethargy, and walked to the head of the council with a dignified air, covered with his simple robe of wolf-skins; taking his seat with the chief warriors and counsellors, and listening with attentive gravity to the plans of the different speakers. One day was given to these discussions; on the next day, he arose and said:

My friends and brothers; you are members of many tribes, and have come from a great distance. We have met to promote the common interest, and our mutual safety. How shall it be accomplished? To oppose these northern hordes in tribes singly, while we are at variance often with each other, is impossible. By uniting in a common band of brotherhood, we may hope to succeed. Let this be done, and we shall drive the enemy from our land. Listen to me by tribes.

You (the Mohawks), who are sitting under the shadow of the Great Tree, whose roots sink deep in the earth, and whose branches spread wide around, shall be the first nation, because you are warlike and mighty.

You (the Oneidas), who recline your bodies against the Everlasting Stone, that cannot be moved, shall be the second nation, because you always give wise counsel.

You (the Onondagas), who have your habitation at the foot of the Great Hills, and are overshadowed by their crags, shall be the third nation, because you are all greatly gifted in speech.

You (the Senecas), whose dwelling is in the Dark Forest, and whose home is everywhere, shall be the fourth nation, because of your superior cunning in hunting.

And you (the Cayugas), the people who live in the Open Country, and possess much wisdom, shall be the fifth nation, because you understand better the art of raising corn and beans, and making houses.

Unite, you five nations, and have one common interest, and no foe shall disturb and subdue you. You, the people who are as the feeble bushes, and you, who are a fishing people, may place yourselves under our protection, and we will defend you. And you of the south and of the west may do the same, and we will protect you. We earnestly desire the alliance and friendship of you all.

Brothers, if we unite in this great bond, the Great Spirit will smile upon us, and we shall be free, prosperous, and happy. But if we remain as we are, we shall be subject to his frown. We shall be enslaved, ruined, perhaps annihilated. We may perish under the war-storm, and our names be no longer remembered by good men, nor be repeated in the dance and song.

Brothers, these are the words of Hiawatha. I have said it. I am done.

The next day the plan of union was again considered, and adopted by the council. Conceiving this to be the accomplishment of his mission to the Iroquois, the tutelar patron of this rising confederacy addressed them in a speech elaborate with wise counsels, and then announced his withdrawal to the skies. At its conclusion, he went down to the shore, and assumed his seat in his mystical vessel. Sweet music was heard in the air at the same moment, and as its cadence floated in the ears of the wondering multitude, it rose in the air, higher and higher, till it vanished from the sight, and disappeared in the celestial regions inhabited only by Owayneo and his hosts.

2. The Little Monedo, or Boy-Man.

A CHIPPEWA TALE.

There was once a little boy, remarkable for the smallness of his stature, living alone with his sister, who was older than himself. They were orphans, and lived in a beautiful spot on a lake shore; and many large and picturesque rocks were scattered around their rural habitation. The boy was not only very small, but he never grew larger as he advanced in years. There had never been seen a dwarf before, among his people, and they looked on him as a very insignificant being. Some thought him one of those little creations whom they call puk-wud-jinine, or fairies of the hills, who are seen to dance along over the ground, as light as the down of thistle. But the most of them said, "Nay, we all know this little fellow; he eats and drinks, like one of ourselves, and we knew his father." But the spirits, seeing him despised, had compassion on him, and determined to give him great power.

One day in winter, he asked his sister to make him a ball to play with along the shore, on the clear ice; she made one, but cautioned him not to go too far. Off he went, in high glee, throwing his ball before him, and running after it full speed, and he went as fast as his ball. At last, it flew to a great distance; he followed it as quick as he could, and after running for some time, he saw four dark substances on the ice, straight before him. When he came up to the spot, he was surprised to see four large tall men lying on the ice, spearing fish; the one nearest to him looked up, and in turn was surprised to see such a diminutive being, and calling to his brothers said, "Tia! look, see what a little fellow is here!" After they had all looked a moment, they resumed their position, and covered their heads, intent on searching for fish. The boy thought to himself, "These men are so large and tall, that they treat me with contempt, because I am little of stature; but I will teach them, notwithstanding, that I am not to be treated so lightly." After they were covered up, the boy saw that they had each a large trout lying beside them; he slyly took the one nearest him, and placing his fingers in the gills, and tossing his ball before him, ran off at full speed. When the man to whom the fish belonged looked up, he saw his trout sliding away, as if of itself, at a great rate; the boy being so small he could not be distinguished from the fish. He addressed his brothers, and said, "See how that tiny boy has stolen my fish; what a shame it is he should do so!" The boy reached home, and told his sister to go out and get the fish he had brought. She exclaimed, "Where could you have got it? I hope you have not stolen it?" "Oh! no," he replied, "I found it on the ice." "How," persisted the sister, "could you have got it there?" "No matter," said the boy; "go and cook it." He disdained to answer her again, but thought he would one day teach her how to appreciate him. She went to the place where he said he had left the fish; and there, indeed, she found a monstrous trout. She did as she was bid, and cooked it for that day's consumption.

Next morning, he went off again, as at first, and when he came near the large men, who fished every day, he threw his ball with such force that it rolled into the ice-hole of the man of whom he had stolen the fish the day before. As he happened to raise himself at the time, the boy said, "Nejee (friend), pray hand me my ball." "No indeed," answered the man, "I shall not;" and he thrust the ball under the ice. The boy took hold of his arm, broke it in two in a moment, and threw him to one side; he then picked up his ball, which had bounded back from under the ice, and tossed it as usual before him, outstripping its speed. He got home, and remained within till next morning. The man whose arm he had broken halloed out to his brothers, told them his case, and deplored his fate. They hurried to their brother, and as loud as they could roar, threatened vengeance on the morrow; as they knew the boy's speed was too great for them to overtake him, and he was already almost out of sight. The boy heard their threats, and awaited their coming, in perfect indifference.

The four brothers the next morning prepared to take their revenge. Their old mother begged them not to go: "Better," said she, "that only one should suffer, than that all should perish; for he must be a Monedo, or he could not perform such feats;" but her sons would not listen; and taking their wounded brother along, started for the boy's lodge, having learnt that he lived at the place of rocks. The boy's sister thought she heard the noise of snow-shoes on the crusted snow, at a distance advancing, and she then saw the tall men coming straight to their lodge, or rather cave, for they lived in a large rock; and she ran in in great fear, and told her brother the fact. He said, "Why do you mind them? give me something to eat." "How can you think of eating at such a time?" she replied. "Do as I bid you," he continued, "and be quick." She then gave him his dish, which was a large mis-qua-dau (turtle) shell, and he commenced eating; just then the men came to the door, and were about lifting the curtain placed there, when the boy-man turned his dish upside down, and immediately the door was closed with stone. The men tried hard to crack it with their clubs; and at length succeeded in making a slight opening, when one of them peeped in with one eye; the boy-man shot his arrow into his eye and brain, and he dropped down dead. The others, not knowing what had happened to their brother, did the same; and all fell in like manner, from their curiosity being so great to see what the boy was about. After they were all killed, the boy-man told his sister to go out and see them; she opened the door, but fearing they were not dead, turned back hastily and told her fears to her brother. He then went out and hacked them into small pieces, saying, "Henceforth let no man be larger than you are now." So men became of their present size.

When spring advanced, the boy-man said to his sister, "Make me a new set of arrows and bows." She obeyed, as he never did any thing himself that required manual labor, though he provided for their sustenance. After she made them, she again cautioned him not to shoot into the lake; but regardless of all admonition, he on purpose shot his arrow into the lake, and waded some distance till he got into deep water, and paddled about for his arrow, so as to attract the attention of his sister; she came in haste to the shore, calling him to return; but instead of minding her, he called out, "Ma-mis-quan-ge-gun-a, be wau-wa-coos-zhe-shin;" that is, You of the red fins, come and swallow me. Immediately that monstrous fish came and swallowed him; and seeing his sister standing on the shore in despair, he halloed out to her, "Me-zush-ke-zin-ance;" she wondered what he meant, but on reflection thought it must be an old moccasin; she accordingly tied the old moccasin to a string, and fastened it to a tree near the water's edge. The fish said to the boy-man under water, "What is that floating?" The boy-man said to the fish, "Go take hold of it, and swallow it as fast as you can." The fish darted towards the old shoe, and swallowed it; the boy-man laughed to himself, but said nothing till the fish was fairly caught; he then took hold of the line, and began to pull himself and fish to shore. The sister, who was watching, was surprised to see so large a fish; and hauling it ashore, she took her knife and commenced cutting it open, when, lo! she heard her brother's voice inside of the fish, saying, "Make haste and release me from this nasty place." His sister was in such haste that she almost hit his head with the knife, but succeeded in making an opening large enough for her brother to get out. When he was fairly released, he told his sister to cut up the fish, and dry it, as it would last a long time for their sustenance; and insisted that she should never again doubt his ability in any way. So ends the story.

3. Trapping in Heaven.

A WYANDOT STORY.

In 1637, Paul le Jeune was a missionary to the Indian tribes who yet remained near the island of Hochelaga, on the St. Lawrence. He was the first of that devoted band of teachers, the history of whose labors constitutes so celebrated a figure in the settlement of New France. Although Canada had been discovered by Cartier in 1534, scarcely thirty years had elapsed since the first efforts to found settlements. The people amongst whom he labored, were the original tribe who occupied Hochelaga on Cartier's first visit to that place in 1535. There is full evidence that this tribe had stood at the head of that celebrated nation, on whom the French bestowed the Indo-Gallic name of Iroquois — a name which had for its root-form the national exclamation of "Yo-hah!"

It was on that occasion of the initial visit of the adventurous mariner of St. Malo, when these Indians carried him to the highest elevation upon their island, around which the St. Lawrence poured its divided waters, that he bestowed upon it the name of Mont Royal, which it has since borne.

Le Jeune was surprised to observe that the natives were in the habit of entertaining themselves by fanciful tales, which, in a people who made war and hunting their boast, constituted a curious branch of mental phenomena.

"I have heard them," he observes, "relate a great many fables; at least I presume that the most intelligent among them consider these tales as fables. I will relate a single one, which seems to be very ridiculous. They tell a story that a man and a woman being in the woods, a bear came and fell upon the man and strangled him and eat him. A hare of wonderful size fell upon the woman and devoured her. He did not, however, touch her child which she bore in her womb, and of which she was near lying-in. A woman passing by this place shortly after this carnage, was much astonished at seeing this child living; she took it, brought it up as her son, calling him however her little brother, to whom she gave the name of Tcha-ka-bech. This child never increased in size, remaining always like a child in swaddling-clothes; but he attained such a wonderful strength, that the trees served for arrows to his bow. I should be too long in relating all the adventures of this man-child: he killed the bear which had devoured his father, and found still in its stomach his beard quite entire. He also killed the big hare which had eaten his mother, whom he recognized by the locks of hair which he found in his belly. This big hare was some genii of the day; for they call one of these genii, who, they say, was a great babbler, by the name of Mich-ta-bou-chion; that is to say, big hare. In short, this Tcha-ka-bech, wishing to go to heaven, climbed up a tree: being almost at the top, he blew upon this tree, which shot up and grew larger when this little dwarf blew upon it; the higher he climbed the more he blew, and the higher and larger the tree grew; so that he got to heaven, where he found the prettiest country that could be imagined. Everything in it was bewitching; the land excellent and the trees very beautiful. Having examined everything well, he came back to bring the news of all these to his sister, so as to induce her to go up to heaven and stay there for ever. He came down therefore by this tree, building cabins (wigwams) every here and there in its branches, where he might rest his sister whilst going up again. His sister, at first, was obstinate, but he described to her so glowingly the beauty of that country, that she took heart to surmount the difficulty of the journey. She brought with her her little nephew, and climbed up this tree, Tcha-ka-bech following behind so as to catch them if they should fall. At each stopping place they always found their wigwam ready made, which was a great comfort to them. At last they got to heaven; and in order that nobody might follow them, this child broke off the stem of the tree pretty low down, so that nobody could get to heaven by it. After having much admired the country, Tcha-ka-bech went off to set his snares, or, as others call them, traps; in the hope, perhaps, of catching some animal. At night, on rising to go and see to his traps, he saw them all on fire, and did not dare to go near them. He returned to his sister and said to her, 'Sister! I do not know what it is in my traps; I can see nothing but a big fire, which I did not dare to go near to.' His sister, suspecting what it was, said to him, 'Oh brother! what a misfortune! assuredly you have caught the sun in the trap: go quick and let him out; perhaps in travelling by night he has fallen into it unawares.' Tcha-ka-bech, much astonished, went back, and having looked carefully, found that in truth he had caught the sun in the trap. He tried to get him out, but did not dare to go near him. He found by a lucky chance a little mouse, caught it, blew upon it, and made it become so big that he made use of it to unbend his traps and let the sun out; who, finding himself freed, continued his course as usual.[1] Whilst he was detained in these traps, the day failed down here on earth. To say how long ago, or what is become of this child, is what they do not and cannot know.

"I have only allowed myself to say, that the Mahometans believe that the moon once fell from heaven and broke. Mahomet, desiring to repair this accident, took it, put it into his sleeve, and by this movement mended it and sent it back to its place. This story of the moon is as credible as the one I have just told you of the sun. In conclusion, *Beati oculi qui vident quae nos videmus.* Happy are they whom the goodness of God has called to a knowledge of the truth."

4. THE GREAT SNAKE OF CANANDAIGUA LAKE: AN IROQUOIS TRADITION.

BY JOHN M. BRADFORD, ESQ.

[IN communicating this little legend of Seneca tradition, the writer remarks, under the date of Geneva, June 15th, 1852, "that he has no hope that it will be new to investigators of Indian history, but yet believes that, in its simple and undistorted shape, it might afford some new aspect. It has appeared," he says, "in various shapes, on various occasions. As it is now communicated to you, it has, for its authority, the old settlers of this region, and is founded on Indian tradition."]

A LONG time ago, from the bosom of the Nundowaga hill, where it looks down upon the waters of the Canandaigua lake, emerged the founders of the Seneca nation, who, seeing that the land was fair and goodly, on that hill took up their abode. And there they dwelt for many years, and occupying themselves entirely in such pursuits as were necessary for their livelihood, from very small beginnings, they increased to a numerous family. No hostile tribe disturbed their repose — nothing alarmed, nothing harassed them — peace reigned among the people of the hill.

---

[1] This incident will remind the reader of the tale of the sun-catcher in Oneota, collected in 1822, among the Chippewas.

One day some children, playing without the rude palisades which surrounded the town, found and brought within a snake, very small, very beautiful, and apparently harmless. Loved by the young, fondled by the old, cherished by all there, the snake remained and grew; so rapidly indeed, that the arrows of the boys failing to supply the demands of its increasing appetite, the hunters of the tribe day by day gave it some portion of the results of their more successful chase. Thus kindly cared for, it became great and strong, and then roaming through the forest, or plunging into the lake in quest of its own food, it so thrived, that ere long it became of length so enormous, as to be able quite to encircle the whole hill. Having attained this great size, it began to manifest an irascible, wicked disposition, and this upon so many occasions, that the people of the hill became greatly alarmed for their safety; and being also oppressed with the fear that, even if it did not actually consume them, it would, by its monstrous consumption of game, reduce the tribe to starvation, it was resolved, in solemn council, that the snake must die. The dawn of the next day was fixed upon for its destruction.

Just as the day was breaking, the monstrous reptile was seen lying all around the base of the hill, encircling the whole town with its length, closing every avenue of escape, its huge jaws wide opening just before the gateway. Vigorously did the whole tribe assail it; but neither arrows, spears, nor knives, could be made to penetrate its scaly sides. Some of the people, frightened, endeavored to escape by climbing over it, but were thrown violently back, rolled upon and crushed. Others, in their mad efforts, rushing to its very jaws, were devoured. Terrified, the tribe recoiled, and did not renew the attack till hunger gave them courage for a last desperate assault, in which all perished, and were swallowed, except a woman and her two children, who escaped into the forest while the monster, gorged with its horrible feast, was sleeping.

In her hiding place, the woman, by a vision, was instructed to make arrows of a peculiar form, and taught how to use them effectually for the killing of the destroyer of her tribe. Believing that the Great Spirit was her teacher, she made the arrows, and carefully following the directions she had received, she confidently approached the yet sleeping monster, and successfully planted the arrows in its heart. The snake in its agony lashed the hill-side with its enormous tail, tore deep gullies in the earth, broke down the forests, and rolling down the slope, plunged into the lake. Here, in the waters near the shore, it disgorged its many human victims, and then, with one great convulsive throe, sank slowly to the bottom. Rejoiced at the death of her enemy, the happy woman hastened with her children to the banks of the Canadesoga lake, and from them sprang the powerful Seneca nation.

The Indians affirm that the rounded pebbles, of the size and shape of the human head, to this day so numerous on the shores of the Canandaigua lake, are the petrified skulls of the people of the hill, disgorged by the great snake in its death-agony.

5. SHINGEBISS; A CHIPPEWA ALLEGORY.

THERE was once a poor man, called Shingebiss, living alone in a solitary lodge, on the shores of a deep bay, in a large lake. Now Shingebiss, according to his name, was a duck when he chose to be so, and a man the next moment: it was only necessary to will himself one or the other. It was cold winter weather, and this duck ought to have been long off with the rest of his tribe towards the south, where the streams and lakes are open all winter, and food is to be easily got. But the power he had of changing himself into a man when he wished, made him linger a longer time, as the shingebiss always does, in the north, till every stream was frozen over, and the snow laid deep over all the land.

The blasts of winter now howled fiercely around his poor bark wigwam, and he had only four logs of wood to keep his fire during the whole winter. But he was a manly, cheerful, and trustful man, who relied on himself, and cared very little for any body, beyond treating all with kindness who called on him; and he always had something to offer them to eat, which is a very great point of attention and respect among his people..

How he managed to live no body knew. It was a perfect mystery to the wild foresters around who visited him. For the ice was very thick on the streams, and the weather was intensely cold. Yet in the coldest day, when every one thought he must starve and freeze, he would go out to places where flags and reeds grew up through the ice, and changing himself to a duck, pluck them up with his bill, and dive through the orifice in quest of fish. In this way he supplied himself plentifully, and went home to his lodge dragging strings of fish after him.

This independence of character, great hardihood, and power of resource, vexed Kabibonocca, the god of the north-west, who sends cold and storms; and he determined to freeze him out, and kill him for his obstinacy. "Why, he must be a wonderful man," says he; "he does not mind the coldest days, and seems to be as happy and content as if it were the moon of strawberries (June). I will give him cold and cold blasts to his heart's content." So saying, he poured forth tenfold colder blasts and snow-drifts, and made the air so sharp that it seemed to have the keenness of a knife. But still the fire of Shingebiss, poorly supplied, as it apparently was, did not go out. He did not even put on more clothing, for he had but a single strip of skins about his body; and he was seen with this in the coldest days, walking on the ice and carrying home loads of fish.

"Shall he withstand me?" said Kabibonocca, one day; "I will go and visit him, and see wherein his great power lies. If my presence does not freeze him, he must be made of rock." Accordingly, that very night, when the wind blew furiously, he came to his lodge door, and listened. Shingebiss had cooked his meal of fish, and finished his supper, and was lying on his elbow before the fire, singing one of his songs. Kabibonocca listened attentively, and plainly heard these words:—

Kabibonocca, neej ininee,
We-ya, Ah-ya-ya-ia.
Kabibonocca, neej ininee,
We-ya, Ah-ya-ya-ia.
Iau, neej ininee, aa-ia,
Shingebiss, ia-ya, &c.

Windy god, I know your plan,
You are but my fellow-man;
Blow, you may, your coldest breeze,
Shingebiss you cannot freeze.
Sweep the strongest winds you can,
Shingebiss is still your man:
Heigh for life, and ho for bliss,
Who so free as Shingebiss!"[1]

The hunter knew that Kabibonocca was at his door, but affected utter indifference, and went on singing his songs and varying them to suit his humor. At length Kabibonicca, not to be defeated in his object, entered the wigwam and took his seat without saying a word, opposite to him. But Shingebiss put on an air of the most profound repose. There was nothing to indicate, by a look or change of muscle, that he heard the storm or felt sensible of the least cold. Nor did he, by his calm and easy manner, evince a sense of the presence of his distinguished guest. But taking his poker, as if no one was present, he got up and poked the fire to make it burn brighter, and then resumed his reclining position again, singing out—

"Windy god, I know your plan,
You are but my fellow-man."

Very soon the tears began to flow down Kabibonocca's face, and increased so fast, that he presently said to himself, "I cannot stand this; the fellow will melt me if I do not go out." He did so, leaving the imperturbable Shingebiss to the enjoyment of his songs, but resolving at the same time, that he would put a stop to his music. He poured forth intenser blasts, and made the air so cold, that it froze up every flag-orifice, and increased the ice to such a thickness that it drove him from all his fishing-grounds. Still, by great diligence and enterprise in going to very distant places, and deep water, he contrived to get the means of subsistence, and managed to live. His four logs of wood gave him plenty of fire, and the few fish he got sufficed him, for he eat them with great quietness and contentment. At last, Kabibonocca was compelled to give up the contest. "He must be some Monedo (a spirit). I can neither freeze him nor starve him. I will let him alone."

---

[1] This is the true spirit of the original.

B. POETIC DEVELOPMENT OF THE INDIAN MIND.

WAR is a natural state of barbaric society. It is thus depicted by the earliest writers, sacred and profane. In the earliest delineations of forest life, given of our Indians, a few petty communities, with little differences of language and manners, are found to have assumed the powers of a nation, and by far the most prominent evidence they have given of this nationality is seen to have been in the power to carry on war against each other. In the few and fitful pauses of peace, the ancient tribes are found to have been prone to recite, in some public manner, their exploits and feats of daring; as if acts of bravery alone were godlike, and could not be sufficiently praised. In this manner, the very earliest epochs of Indian history became filled with the names of forest heroes, who were not long, in the partial traditionary history of their descendants and kinsmen, in assuming the position of divinities and gods.

Time and history have not been sufficient, on this continent, to mature these antique names of savage wars into names as familiar to ourselves as the classic forms of Ammon, Mars, Saturn, and Hercules. But the process by which the Indian names were eliminated from the verbiage of early languages and traditions, has been very much the same. We observe this in the boastful and wild songs and mythologic traditions of the Algonquins, the Iroquois, and other leading genera of tribes and tongues which have enacted the chief scenes in the panorama of Indian history.

It is known that the seasons of leisure and recreation of all the American tribes are devoted, in no small part, to the songs and dances of their warlike deeds; and in this way they have fixed the public approbation strongly on military worth as the chief attainment. Through the influence of these gatherings and festivities, a new body of warriors is raised every decade, from the listening children who are to take the places of their fathers and progenitors on the war-path. To do as their forefathers did, is commendation beyond all praise. The songs are generally some wild boast of prowess or achievement, or violent symbolic expression of power, and allusions to their tutelary divinities, having for their theme triumph in battle. The chorus of these chants consists, for the most part, of traditionary monosyllables, which appear to admit often of transposition, and the utterance of which, at least, is so managed as to permit the words to be sung in strains, to suit the music and dance. This music is accurately kept, and the bars marked with full expression by the Indian tä-wä-ë-gun and rattle, accompanying the voices of the choristers.

No collections and translations of their forest or war choruses and songs have been made, which at all do justice to the sentiments and ideas expressed. It is perhaps too early in our literary history to expect such collections. The expressions of warriors who join the dance with sharp yells, which are responded to by the actors already in the ring of the listeners to heroic exploits, are, to a large extent, mnemonic, and are intended to bring to mind known ideas and conceptions of war and bravery. Many of them appeal to the names of carnivorous birds or quadrupeds which are employed purely as symbols of speed, prowess, or carnage. All the concomitants of the Indian war-path are presented to the mind. The hearers are expected to know the mythological and necromantic theories and dogmas of the tribe, on which these expressions are founded, and but for which knowledge the expressions would lack all their force and pertinency.

Attention has been directed to this subject as one that is suited to illustrate Indian character, and it is hoped that a collection of authentic materials respecting it may be made among the tribes who yet rove the forests and prairies of the continent.

There is another department in which the feelings and sentiments of the Indian tribes have been poetically expressed—it is the memory of the dead. A fallen warrior is honored and lamented by the whole tribe; the gathered village attends his funeral. An address is uniformly made, which often partakes of the character of eulogy. A speaker, or a counsellor, is buried and lamented with equal respect; and the names of their brave and wise men are remembered with tenacity. There is no subject, perhaps, which calls forth more sympathy than the death of children.

In a subtle system of cosmogony and creative effort, in which concurring divinities are recognised as having either performed a part, or as having, by antagonistic powers, disturbed the work after it was completed, the whole universe (earth, planets, and sky) is regarded indeed as animated, either in part, or symbolically. Each class of creation is believed to have its representative deities, who have eyes and ears open to everything that exists, transpires, or is uttered. Viewed in this light, winds have voices — the leaves of the trees utter a language — and even the earth is animated by a crowd of spirits who have an influence on the affairs of men. Hence many of their chants and songs, accompanied with music, have allusion to this wide and boundless theory of created matter. In short, it may be affirmed that the Indians believe that every element is a part of the great creative God.

Wherever Indian sentiment is expressed, there is a tendency to the pensive — the reminiscent. It may be questioned whether hope is an ingredient of the Indian mind; all the tendency of reflection is directed towards the past. He is a man of reminiscences, rather than anticipations. Intellectualization has seldom enough influence to prevail over the present, and still more rarely over the future. The consequence is, that whenever the Indian relaxes his sternness and insensibility to external objects, and softens into feeling and sentiment, the mind is surrounded by fears of evil, and despondency. To lament, and not to hope, is its characteristic feature.

If poetry is ever destined to be developed in such minds, it must be of the complaining and plaintive, or the desponding cast. Discarding the single topic of war, such are, indeed, the specimens we possess; — words addressed to a dying man — to a lost child — death — the fear of evil genii — or a sympathy with nature. Most of the attempts to record poetic sentiments in the race have encountered difficulties, from the employment of some forms of the Grecian metres; or, still less adapted to it, English laws of rhyme. They have neither. It is far better suited, as the expression of strong poetic feeling, to the freedom of the Hebrew measure; the repetitious style of which reminds one of both the Indian sepulchral or burial chant, and eulogy. There is indeed in the flow of their oratory, as well as songs, a strong tendency to the figure of parallelism.

Ne-gau nis-sau — ne-gau nis-sau —
Kitchi-mau-li sau — ne-gau nis-sau.
I will kill — I will kill —
The Americans — I will kill.[1]

Unattractive as the field is, there is yet something to be gleaned in it; and its gleaning is deemed to be within the object of these investigations, and worth the expenditure of the effort. Its results are important as appreciating the true intellectual state of the man, as a depressed family of the human race. The divine principles of Christianity entitle them to the blessings provided for the whole race; and the efforts to bring these benighted branches of it to a knowledge of its merciful provisions, should not be deemed as thrown away merely because they are not immediately or largely successful.

There is poetry in their very names of places: Ticonderoga, the place of the separation of waters; Dionderoga, the place of the inflowing of waters; Saratoga, the place of the bursting out of waters; Ontario, a beautiful prospect of rocks, hills, and waters; Ohio, the beautiful river — these, and a thousand other names which are familiar to the ear, denote a capacity for, and love of harmony in the collocation of syllables expressive of poetic thought. But the great source of a future poetic fabric, to be erected on the frame-work of Indian words, when the Indian himself shall have passed away, exists in their mythology, which provides, by a skilful cultivation of personification, not only for every passion and affection of the human heart. but every phenomenon of the skies, the air, and the earth. The Indian has placed these imaginary gods wherever, in the geography of the land, reverence or awe is to be inspired. Every mountain, lake, and waterfall is placed under such guardianship. All nature, every class of the animal and vegetable creation, the very sounds of life, the murmuring of the breeze, the dashing of water, every phenomenon of light or electricity, is made intelligent of human events, and speaks the language of a god.

---

[1] Notes to Ontwa.

6. SONG OF THE OKOGIS, OR FROG IN SPRING.

BY BA-BAHM-WA-WA-GEZHIG-EQUA.

SEE how the white spirit presses us,—
Presses us, — presses us, heavy and long;
Presses us down to the frost-bitten earth.[1]
Alas! you are heavy, ye spirits so white,
Alas! you are cold — you are cold — you are cold.
Ah! cease, shining spirits that fell from the skies,
Ah! cease so to crush us, and keep us in dread;
Ah! when will ye vanish, and Seegwun[2] return?[3]

7. HAWK CHANT OF THE SAGINAWS.

BY JAMES RILEY.

THE hawks turn their heads nimbly round;
They turn to look back on their flight.
The spirits of sun-place[4] have whispered them words,
They fly with their messages swift,
They look as they fearfully go,

---

[1] This is in allusion to the heavy beds of snow which, in the north, often lie late in the spring.

[2] Spring.

[3] Robed in his mantle of snow from the sky,
See how the white spirit presses our breath;
Heavily, coldly, the masses they lie,—
Sighing and panting, we struggle for breath.

Spirit, oh! spirit, who first in the air,
The Great Master Monedo wondrously made;
Cease to be pressing the sons of his care,
And fly to the blue heights from whence ye have strayed.

Then we shall cheerfully, praisingly sing,
Okógis, Okógis, the heralds of spring.
First to announce to the winter-bound ball,
Sunshine, and verdure, and gladness, to all!

[4] Geezhigong.

They look to the farthermost end of the world,
Their eyes glancing bright, and their beaks boding harm.[1]

This chant reveals a mythological notion in the belief of the Indians, that birds of this family are intelligent of man's destiny. They believe that they are harbingers of good or evil, and often undertake to interpret their messages. Living in the open atmosphere, where the Great Spirit is located, it is believed the falcon family possess a mysterious knowledge of his will.

---

[1] Birds! ye wild birds whom the high gods have made,
And gifted with power of a wondrous kind,
Why turn ye so fearfully, shy, and dismayed,
To gaze on the heavens ye are leaving behind?

Come ye with news of a mystical cast,
Speaking of enemies crouched in the wood,
Who on our people shall burst like a blast,
Heralding ruin, destruction, and blood?

Come ye with messages sent from on high,
Warning of what the wide heavens shall pour,
Whirlwinds, tornadoes, or pestilence nigh,
Wailing, starvation, or death on our shore?

Come ye with words from the Master of Life,
Bringing intelligence good in your track?
Ah, then, ye bright birds, with messages rife,
Why do you turn your heads, doubtingly, back?

VII. TOPICAL HISTORY. B.

TOPICAL HISTORY.

SYNOPSIS OF PAPERS.

1. Upper Posts of Canada in 1778. By James Madison.
2. Western America beyond the Alleghanies, in 1785. Memoranda of a Journey in the Western Parts of the United States of America. By Lewis Brantz.
3. Indian Life in the North-western Regions of the United States, in 1783; with an Introduction by H. R. S. Being the Relation of the Voyages and Adventures of a Merchant Voyager, &c. By John Baptiste Perrault.
4. Personal Narrative of a Journey in the Semi-Alpine Area of the Ozark Mountains of Missouri and Arkansas, which were first traversed by De Soto, in 1541. By H. R. S.

1. UPPER POSTS OF CANADA IN 1778.

BY JAMES MADISON.

The following remarks are found among the unedited papers of Mr. Madison, in his peculiar handwriting. They were evidently the result of an interview with a trustworthy person, who, it is known, had passed years with the Indians in the capacity of a trader, and who was well acquainted with the lake defences. They serve to show the carefulness with which information was sought on the subject, at a peculiarly trying period of the Revolutionary struggle.

These posts, with the exception of Niagara, were rather designed to keep the Indians in check, than as capable of being defended against civilized armies. That they were in no fear of such armies is, however, improbable. Two years after the date of these memoranda, namely, in 1780,[1] the post of Michillimackinac, which had remained in its ancient position on the peninsula of Michigan, was removed to the island of that name, in lake Huron, as being a better position to resist attacks from the land.

---

[1] Vide Personal Memoirs of thirty years' residence in the West, where this question is considered at large.

It was at these posts that the lake Indians, who sided against the Americans, were supplied with arms and ammunition, to carry on their disastrous depredations against the frontiers; and it was deemed an important object to learn their strength and capacities of defence.

ACCOUNT OF THE UPPER PARTS OF CANADA. BY JOHN DODGE.

Michilimakinac, at the head of lake Huron, is a small stockaded fort with a few cannon and two block-houses. The garrison consists of eighty soldiers, commanded by Major S. C. Deposter.

From Michilimakinac to lake St. Clair, where was formerly a small fort now evacuated, is 280 miles. This lake is fifteen miles across. Nine miles from the southern extremity of it stands Detroit. This island[1] is stockaded in with cedar. The pickets are nine feet above and two and a half beneath the ground. It has several small block-houses with cannon, and a ditch half-way round the citadel, eight feet wide and five feet deep. The citadel and town is stockaded in the same manner. The settlement, consisting of French, extends twenty or thirty miles along the straits. The militia, including all able to bear arms, amounts to 850: only one English captain among them. Detroit is the general rendezvous of the savages.

From Detroit to lake Erie is eighteen miles. This lake is 280 miles across from east to west. At the east end is Fort Erie, a small stockade fort, with two small block-houses defended by two five-pounders. There are in lakes Erie and Huron four armed vessels, one carrying sixteen six and four pounders; the other three twelve-pounders. There are three small merchant vessels occasionally used by the commandant as look-outs. Eighteen miles from the east end of the lake is Fort Slucher, where is a command of men to guard the public stores and merchants' goods. The portage at the falls of Niagara is eight miles. At nine miles' distance, on the east side of the river, where it falls into lake Ontario, is Fort Niagara. This fort is naturally fortified. The walls are built with stone and mortar, twelve feet high, with a trench on the back part of it. The woods are cleared for a mile behind it, where the ground is very level. Here are two large block-houses, built with stone and mortar, with six twelve-pounders in each. There are twelve twelve-pounders on the rampart, and ten mortars of different sizes. The garrison consists of 250 soldiers, commanded by Col. Powel. Col. Butler, who commands the savages and 100 volunteers, is also here when not harassing the frontiers. Lake Ontario is 260 miles in extent. At the east end of it lies the old Fort Cataraqui or Frontenac, now evacuated. Twelve miles down the river St. Lawrence is Deer island, where are stationed 150 soldiers, without a fort. There are two vessels in lake Ontario, which mount eighteen six and eight pounders, besides a few smaller ones carrying swivels, all very badly managed.

---

[1] Detroit is on the main.

The whole regular force in Canada and the naval islands, including all the upper posts, amounts to 5533.

A large river, the Outawas, flowing into the St. Lawrence, a little above Montreal, heads so near lake Huron or the rivers running into it, that a communication might be maintained between Canada and Detroit, and the more western and north-western ports, even if the communication through the lakes Erie, Superior, and Ontario were intercepted. The traders at present frequently transport their goods through that channel.

2. MEMORANDA OF A JOURNEY IN THE WESTERN PARTS OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, IN 1785;

TOGETHER WITH OBSERVATIONS MADE, AND AUTHENTIC INFORMATION RECEIVED,

BY LEWIS BRANTZ.

TRANSLATED, IN 1852, FROM THE ORIGINAL GERMAN MS. OF THE AUTHOR,

BY BRANTZ MAYER,

AND PRESENTED BY HIM, RESPECTFULLY, TO HIS FRIEND,

THE HON. H. R. SCHOOLCRAFT:

TOGETHER WITH

CAPTAIN BRANTZ'S ORIGINAL VIEW OF PITTSBURG, IN 1790.

INTRODUCTORY MEMOIR.

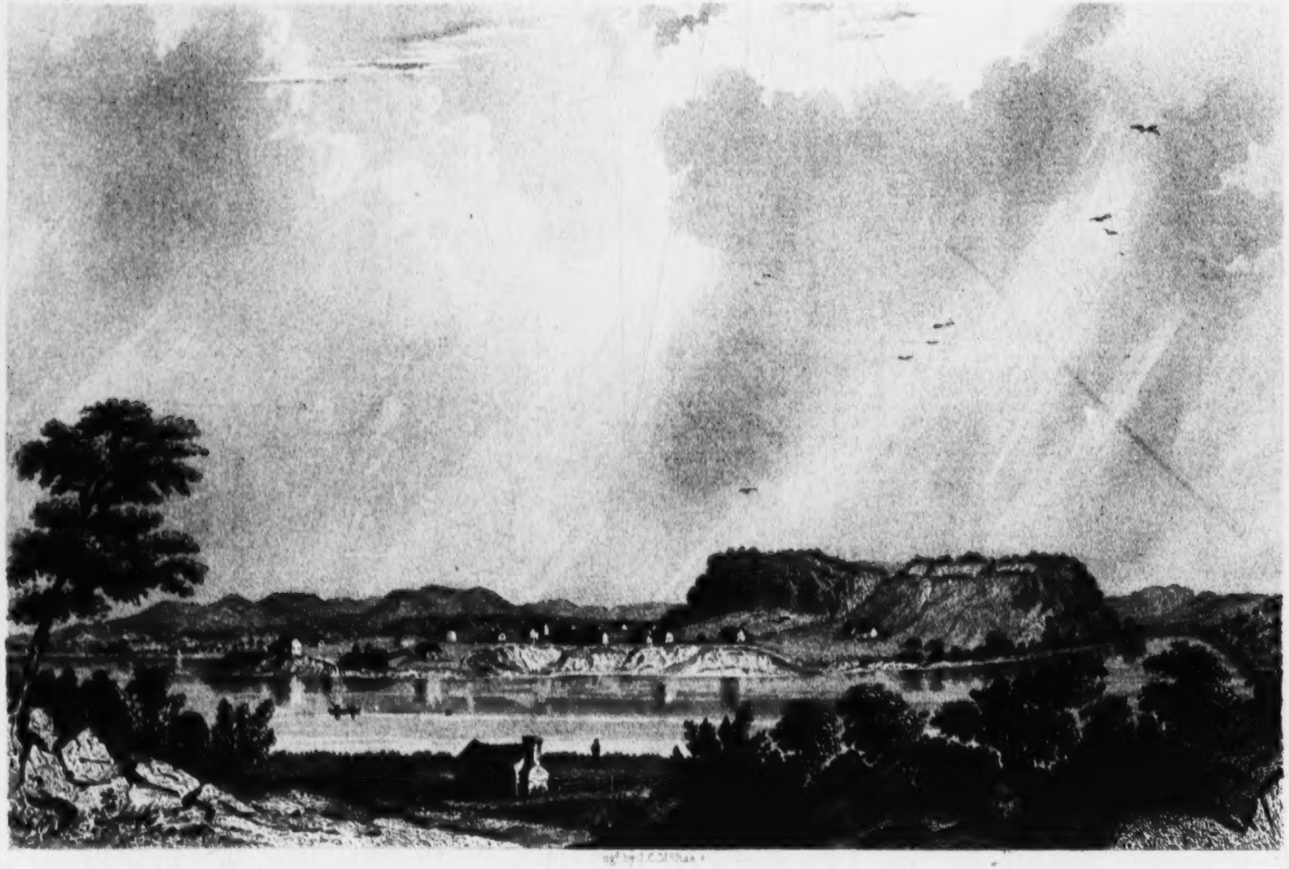
THE following Journal, written in the German language, from which I have carefully translated it, came into my possession with the private papers of my valued friend, Mr. LEWIS BRANTZ, of Baltimore. I regard it as a most interesting memorial of the Great West, sixty-seven years ago. It displays the resources, and denotes the prospects of that magnificent region, as it then burst on the sight of an ardent, intelligent, and well-educated youth of seventeen.

The full description he gives of the post at Fort Pitt, now Pittsburg — his interesting sketch of that lonely frontier post — the narrative of his descent of the Ohio to the Falls at Louisville — his continued journey thence to the mouth of the Cumberland, and up that river to Nash's Station, or Nashville — his perilous travel, with a caravan and pack-horses, through the wilderness of Kentucky, "the dark and bloody ground," — to Baltimore, his minute itineraries, recording the travelling posts that then existed throughout those savage-haunted forests — his accurate topographical descriptions of the regions he traversed; their condition and resources, present as well as prospective — are all highly valuable to the student of the history of those early days; and, while they exhibit the hardy and intelligent energy of the young adventurer, deserve preservation in some permanent record. I cannot but think that such narratives are especially interesting at the present time, when the great effort of the day seems to be to connect the east and the west by public works, and thus to afford means of transportation for the rich productions which, in 1785, our young traveller saw hidden in the then untrodden wilderness.

Mr. Brantz was a German. Born at Ludwigsburg, near Stüttgard, in Wirtemburg, he was educated very thoroughly at Aarau, in Switzerland, where he was a schoolmate of the late Professor Hassler, the distinguished chief of our Coast Survey. At Aarau they formed an acquaintance, which was afterwards closely cemented by congenial scientific pursuits in the country to which they emigrated.

Mr. Brantz came to this country in early life, with many other enterprising Europeans, to push his fortunes. He was an accomplished linguist, and being, like most German youths, thoroughly instructed in the branches needed for a practical life, he soon attracted the attention of persons anxious to open a wider commerce with the West than had yet been accomplished by the ordinary trading journeys of that day. In addition to this, his enterprising employers desired to colonize with Germans, certain lands they possessed in the wilderness; and, accordingly, Mr. Brantz was despatched in the double trust of leading these foreigners to their home among the savages, and of examining the commercial resources of the valleys of the Mississippi and Ohio. Hence his journeys and his Journal. His picture of Fort Pitt, or Pittsburg, in 1790, displays his remarkable accuracy. Every house at the fort is minutely delineated and colored, in the original sketch in my possession; and forty-five years afterwards, sitting together on the hill opposite the modern and flourishing Pittsburg, I listened to his narrative of adventures in the woods, saw him point out every place of historical interest in a landscape which art and trade had so transformed, and learned the secret of his patient, just, and firm intercourse with the Indians, which had enabled him, while yet a boy, to deal with them successfully, and to pass unharmed through their romantic fastnesses.

But Mr. Brantz was not destined to grow up in the West, or to pass his life amid its bustling novelties. On his return to Baltimore, the stirring trade of that place after the peace, led him into an active commercial career. Believing that the life of a seaman would strengthen his rather delicate constitution, and, desirous to be independent



Engd by J.C.McRae

PITTSBURG IN 1790

[illegible] from the original sketch taken from the south side of the Monongahela by Lewis Brantz Esq

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

of others, he soon commanded his own vessels, and sold his own cargoes, during many years, in an extensive commerce with Europe and the Eastern and Western Indies. He had bold adventures in the Mediterranean during the European wars, or when our vessels went forth armed against Algerine pirates; and once, through the courageous management of Captain Jaheel Brenton, who afterwards became an admiral, and was knighted, he narrowly escaped slavery among the Moors, when wrecked near the town of Oran, in Africa.

After many years spent in successful commerce, Mr. Brantz at last found time to engage leisurely in his favorite scientific studies and pursuits. He devoted himself, for a long time, to surveying the Patapsco river, its branches, and part of the Chesapeake Bay; the engraved map of which is now found, by expert seamen, to be the best that has hitherto been prepared. For ten or fifteen years he kept a Meteorological Journal, the results of which he printed privately in a large volume of some 400 pages, deposited by me in the Collection of the Smithsonian Institution. It was the first thoroughly systematic work of the kind undertaken and published in the United States. At this period he also prepared a minute history of the growth of the trade of Baltimore, and a most comprehensive analysis of the resources of that city and vicinity, a work which I now possess in MS.

During the last ten years of his life, he made voyages to the west coast of South America, to China, and to Mexico; residing several years in the latter place. On his return to Baltimore, he was soon desired to take the Presidency of the Philadelphia and Baltimore Railroad, which, under his care, was quickly completed, and the intercourse between the cities opened. He had just finished this road, in January, 1838, when he suddenly died.

He was a most accomplished gentleman, of quiet and dignified manners; thoroughly versed in all he attempted to master, whether in literature, science, commerce, or art. He was always a most instructive and entertaining companion. His modesty kept him back from that public arena in which he might have won most distinguished honors; and, dying, the last of his race, he left behind him no one who bore his name, except the person who offers this humble tribute to his honored memory.

BRANTZ MAYER.

BALTIMORE, *25th August*, 1852.

MEMORANDA OF A JOURNEY IN THE WESTERN PARTS OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, IN 1785. BY LEWIS BRANTZ.

I DEPARTED from Baltimore, on the Patapsco river in Maryland, and passing through Fredericktown, travelled towards Hagerstown, which is properly called Elizabethtown.

Both these small settlements are situated in the same State, and are almost exclusively peopled by Germans, who, like most of their countrymen, are much more wealthy and laborious than the Americans. The soil increases in fertility as we approach Hagerstown; and in its neighborhood, like that of the adjacent streams, is extraordinarily rich, producing the cereal grains in abundance. The inhabitants carry their produce to Baltimore, whence it is exported to the West Indies. The people lead the life of a hardy and laborious peasantry—each one on his own independent plantation, except such as dwell in small villages, and support themselves either by trade or by mechanical operations.

Within eight miles of Hagerstown, in a north-eastern direction, and at a spot where it would be least expected, though not very distant from the foot of the Blue Ridge, is found a most extraordinary cavern. Its aperture is a very depressed or flat arch, but the entrance is nevertheless sufficiently commodious; being nearly forty feet long, and eight feet high.

The interior of the cave is oval in shape; its greatest length being three hundred feet, and its breadth one hundred and thirty. In the midst of this fine vault, there is a pyramidal stalagmitic rock, with smaller ones on both sides of it. These stalagmites, like all the others within the cave, are formed by the drippings of petrifying water. On the roof, numerous pendent stalactites are beheld, which daily increase in size and number, and look like grotesque chandeliers. On the right side of the cavern, many small basins have been scooped out, resembling irregular waves formed by a lofty cascade. These basins are mostly filled with water of crystal clearness, whose surface, however, is covered with a sort of adhesive scum, which remains on the hands when dipped into it.

At the termination of this first chamber, there is a small opening, which affords admittance to a sort of alley three hundred feet in length, and about seventy high. As the air in this interior cavern is not so light, and possesses an extremely drying character, nothing is to be seen except some eighteen stalagmitic rocks, about thirty feet high, together with pyramids, stalactitic sheets and columns, all of which are formed by the petrifying fluids. The floor resembles a petrified river; while, in the rear of this alley or avenue, a beautiful lakelet spreads out, over whose silent waters no one has ever passed. Profound stillness reigns in this gloomy chamber, and not the slightest motion or current is perceptible in its lake. One of our party fired a pistol across the water, and the stunning echo reverberated far beyond its apparent limits, while the smoke of the weapon floated back lazily after a quarter of an hour. The darkness which reigns in this cavern, makes torches necessary. On the right side of the alley just described, a similar one of about two hundred feet in length penetrates the earth, but we found no water in it. The air of the cavern is truly heavy, and a vapor seems constantly to pervade it.

On leaving Conococheague, I struck upon a mountain range; and before passing it entirely, and reaching its western termination, I travelled nearly one hundred and twenty English miles in a north-western direction. I crossed the North Mountain, Sideling Hill, the Alleghanies, various spurs of the Appalachian chain, together with some other mountains, among which Laurel Hill is worthy of special mention. The Alleghany Mountains divide the waters which flow eastwardly into the Atlantic Ocean, from those which discharge themselves through the Mississippi into the Gulf of Mexico.

Almost all the fertile and well-watered valleys among these mountains are inhabited; but the people, mostly Americans, are rougher and more uncultivated than those dwelling further east. A region known as "The Glades," like a few other places on the route, is settled by Germans. Wild beasts were formerly numerous in these mountain ranges, but they are now almost entirely destroyed by the hunters. In one of the valleys, Bedford, a small town, is situated. Westwardly from these elevations, the soil is well-watered and fertile, particularly that portion lying in the forks of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers, and another tolerably large region northwardly and eastwardly. Thence it is still forty miles' journey to Fort Pitt, and the inhabitants of that lonely place are quite similar in character to those I have just described.

Fort Pitt, formerly the strongest western fortification of the Americans, is situated at the junction of the above-named two rivers. A small garrison is still retained there, in order to keep up the fort; yet it is said, that next summer the troops will be relieved, and the fort razed to the ground. A settlement, called Pittsburg, has been commenced, and there are a considerable number of houses. The inhabitants live chiefly by traffic and entertaining travellers, though there are, as yet, but few mechanics.

The view enjoyed at this place, from two elevated spots, is, in truth, the most beautiful I ever beheld. Opposite the fort, and also at some distance towards the Monongahela, is a coal-hill, which furnishes this valuable mineral in abundance. Generally, the country on the Ohio river and beyond it is rich in this useful gift of nature.

During my sojourn at Fort Pitt, I twice made excursions by the Monongahela to Red Stone Old Fort, which lies in this vicinity. I found this to be the best grain country, yet its surface is not level, though it is not cut up by high mountains. It contains many fine mill-streams and sites. The flour, which is made here in great quantity, is exported to the Falls of the Ohio, to Illinois, and was sent even to New Orleans, before the navigation of the Mississippi was stopped. If this commerce of the great stream should not be made free, (as we hope it will be,) I do not know what the inhabitants of this region will do with their cereal productions; for Kentucky has begun to require no longer her supplies of flour and provisions from abroad. I have heard persons of experience, and who had made the adventure, declare, that grain, purchased here, could be transported as cheaply to New Orleans, as from Lancaster to Philadelphia.

Red Stone is the spot from which emigrants from Virginia and Maryland embark for Kentucky.[1] I remained in this country until the end of April, and then descended the Ohio. At that time the snow was three feet deep on the mountains, and at Fort Pitt the trees and fields were still in their winter dress; but when I had descended the Ohio about sixty miles, I found the trees already becoming green, and the whole bottoms covered with exquisite verdure. The magnificent Ohio, in its course towards the south-west, before it discharges itself into the Mississippi, receives the following considerable streams:—On the south side, Little and Big Kanawha, Kentucky, Green, Cumberland, and Tennessee or Cherokee. On the north side, the Muskingum, Scioto, Big and Little Miami, and Wabash, said to be navigable near 900 miles.

Upon the Ohio, as well as upon the Mississippi, the wind, during the spring, commonly blows up the stream, and frequently with such violence, that it becomes impossible for open boats to keep the middle of the river. This, of course, is of great advantage to the ascending vessels, while it impedes so greatly the descending navigation, that even the stoutest oarsmen cannot force their vessels further than twenty-five miles daily, whenever the breeze is particularly strong. The wind commonly begins to blow about nine o'clock, A. M., and does not cease until about seven o'clock, P. M.: near three o'clock, P. M. it is usually most violent. I have observed waves in the Ohio as large as those in the Chesapeake bay; and I have been assured that they are even higher and larger still in the Mississippi. The night season, accordingly, is the best period for the descending navigation; yet good care must be taken not to steer or row, and to allow the boat to run its course with the strength of the stream, which will always carry it through the deepest channels. I know of one boat, which, in consequence of being rowed during the night, was run on the point of an island, upset, and the whole cargo damaged; while, if the current had been allowed to have its course, it would have carried the vessel around the island in perfect safety. My own boat was thus once run ashore in broad day. It is well, moreover, to traverse these rivers during the night, and to land as seldom as possible, in order to escape the danger of attack from Indians. Whenever it becomes absolutely necessary to go on shore, a good watch should always be kept, as scarcely any boat, either before or since I descended the river, has passed without being molested by the savages. In the boat which I have mentioned as having been wrecked on the island, before I arrived at the Falls, one man was killed, and four mortally wounded by the Indians.

---

[1] This is the site of the town of Brownsville, the head of the present steam navigation of the Mississippi Valley nearest the eastern mountains; and the spot, even at that early day of emigration, to which the main trail over the Alleghanies had been directed. It was an attractive place to the whites, as it had evidently been to the Indians, as we may judge from the ingenious works with which the savages fortified it. This post, known in border-story as "Red Stone Old Fort," became the rallying-point of the pioneers, and was familiar to many an early settler as his place of embarkation for "the dark and bloody ground."

In western legends, the celebrated Michael Cresap is connected with this stronghold. In those narratives Cresap is spoken of for his brave, hardy, and adventurous disposition, and awarded credit for often rescuing the whites by a timely notice of the savages' approach, a knowledge of which he obtained by ceaseless vigilance over their movements. It afforded me great pleasure to have it recently in my power to vindicate him completely from the charge of cruelty and murder, contained in the celebrated speech of the Indian Logan. When Logan's kindred were slain at Yellow Creek, Cresap was not in the neighborhood, but on his way home to Maryland, over the mountains.

Red Stone Old Fort was frequently Cresap's rendezvous as a trader, and thither he resorted with his people, either to interchange views and adopt plans for future ventures, or for repose in quieter times, when the red men were lulled into inaction and the tomahawk and scalping-knife were temporarily buried. These were periods of great conviviality. The days were spent in athletic exercises; and, in the evening, the sturdy foresters, bivouacked around a fire of huge logs, recounted their adventures; or if, perchance, a violin or jews-harp was possessed by the foresters, it was occasionally introduced, and the monotony of the camp broken by a boisterous "stag-dance."

Cresap's keen mind discovered, at that early day, that this location would become exceedingly valuable as emigrants flowed in and the country was gradually opened. Accordingly he took measures to secure a "Virginia title" to several hundred acres, by what at that time was known as a "tomahawk improvement." Not content, however, with "girdling" a few trees, and "blazing" others, he determined to insure his purpose; and in order that his act and intention might not be misconstrued, he built a house of hewed logs, with a shingle roof nailed on, which is believed to have been the first edifice of this kind in that part of our great domain west of the mountains. I am not possessed of data to fix the precise date of this novel erection, but it is supposed to have occurred about 1770, and the title of the property was continued in the Cresap family for many years, but was finally disposed of to the brothers Thomas and Basil Brown, who emigrated from Maryland.

See B. Mayer's Discourse on the lives of Logan and Cresap.—Day's Pennsylvania Hist. Coll., p. 342, et. seq., and the American Pioneer.

BRANTZ MAYER.

The Ohio river merits justly the epithet of "beautiful," which has been bestowed on it; in many places its scenery is melancholy, and in some even terrible, particularly when the wind is tempestuous. Wherever, along its margin, a mountain or hill rises on one side of the river, the opposite shore is generally spread out in a valley, or fruitful bottom. At some places, mountains of a considerable elevation are found on both sides, while, at others, the land is perfectly level on either bank; in the latter places the river is straighter and broader, though, in the mountainous portion, it is curbed into a narrower space, and is correspondently deeper.

From Fort Pitt to the mouth of the Great Kanawha river, the land on the Ohio is very rich, and is settled on both sides by whites, who have established themselves in the wilderness, in consequence of their unwillingness to live under the restraints of law. They lead a savage life. Below the mouth of the Kanawha, the land is no longer so rich as that above, and is, moreover, overflowed oftener by the river, while, of course, but few inhabitants have hitherto clustered in the bottoms. My journey from Fort Pitt to the Falls consumed fourteen days. We travelled during three nights, and fortunately nothing extraordinary occurred, though we had stormy weather during the whole time. We met fifteen canoes, with passengers, bound to Fort Pitt from the Falls.

Louisville is located quite near the Falls. Some houses are already erected; yet this lonely settlement resembles a desert more than a town. The district of which Kentucky is a part, extends some distance back from the Ohio, and many small towns are already laid out in it. About sixty miles from the Falls, near Lexington, the country is thickly settled; this is also the case in the vicinity of Boonsborough, Danville, Harrodsburg, and other similar places. More than 20,000 inhabitants are already estimated to be settled in this region. This number may seem large, as it is not yet twelve years since this region was begun to be generally known. But the American who was devoted to liberty, or, at least, to a life without the stringent restraint of law, found in this remote wilderness a country suited to his tastes; and it is, therefore, not at all surprising that numerous followers have tracked him into the forest, and that the inhabitants will continue increasing in still greater numbers. In the beginning, Kentucky afforded, moreover, a refuge for many culprits who were unable to dwell with safety in the more populous parts of the nation, where law was vigilant. The industrious adventurer, greedy for independent wealth, also found here a region capable of gratifying his desires; and many land speculators are accordingly circulating among the settlers.

The "Falls of the Ohio" is the only landing place at present; and it abounds in merchandise. All the export trade which this rich district can expect at some day to realize, must be carried on with New Orleans; but this is now prevented by the Spaniards. The three counties of Lincoln, Jefferson, and Fayette, which compose this district, have sent a petition to the Legislature of Virginia, soliciting a separation from that State; and it is supposed that they will be erected into a new and independent sovereignty.

"The Falls of the Ohio" are about two miles in length. They are formed by a rocky ledge, which crosses the river, and produces a small cascade; but when the waters are high, I am told that no portion of this fall can be seen; yet when the waters have subsided, there is a channel by which boats are still enabled to pass this dangerous point. When the river is very low, four small islands are seen; while at an ordinary height of the stream, two only are visible. There are excellent pilots for the passage, who carry almost every boat through in perfect safety; though if proper skill is not used, serious accidents may easily occur.

After sojourning about a fortnight at the Falls, I embarked again on my boat in order to reach the Cumberland. It required only five days' floating along the stream to enable me to enter the mouth of this river, — a distance of about 500 miles. We were favored by most charming calm weather; and we found no obstruction during our whole journey, save from the Delawares whom we frequently met on our way, and found encamped at the mouth of the Wabash. This nation, the whole of whose territory has been taken possession of by the whites, has now no home, and live in the country of the Chickasaws. They number now only about five hundred warriors in their band. We sold them some brandy for beaver-skins; and we fortunately escaped paying for them with our lives. The Indians, in trading with strangers, are very suspicious and distrustful; nor is it by any means judicious to sell them ardent spirits; for they drink till they become drunk, when they know neither friends nor enemies, and behave like wild beasts.

About 150 miles below the Falls, the country becomes low, and nearly flat; while the Ohio, as well as the Wabash, inundates a wide district. Below the Falls, the Ohio is much wider, and its current not so strong.

The Cumberland river has its source near the Kentucky, but thence, making a curve, it runs in an entirely opposite direction; and, after a course of about 500 miles, discharges its waters into the Ohio. When it is high, or even tolerably high, it is navigable for more than 400 miles; but when the stream is low, it cannot be ascended more than 250. Its waters are said to be the quietest of all the western rivers. After passing a day at its mouth, we commenced ascending the stream, with the aid of eight oarsmen; but we found the current much stronger than we expected, and thus we passed fifteen days, laboring harder than galley-slaves, before arriving at Nashville, which is about 211 miles from the mouth of the Cumberland. No navigable streams discharge themselves into the Cumberland. The only considerable ones are the Little river, the Red river, and the Harpeth. Between the embouchure of the Cumberland and Nashville, there are some white settlements.

Nashville is a recently founded place, and contains only two houses which in truth merit that name; the rest are only huts that formerly served as a sort of fortification against Indian attacks.

It is only about five years since this country was begun to be developed; and in the civilized portion of the Union, there are at present but few who know even its name. During the war with the British, the inhabitants of this remote station suffered greatly from the inroads of the Indians, and were almost exterminated, when the peace of 1783 released them at once from their dreadful sufferings and horrid anxiety. The people resemble those whom I have already spoken of in Kentucky; but their reputation, for some time past, has been rather worse than that of their northern neighbors. It is said, however, that since they have come under the laws of North Carolina, their deportment has improved. Some distinguished official personages, whose duty required their continuance at this post, have in some degree polished these rough dwellers of the wilderness, who, in their lonely and distant fastness, had in truth begun to live very much like the Indians. Nevertheless, I am sorry to learn that magistrates are occasionally found here with their ears cut off!

Furs are the sole productions of this region with which the people supply their wants. The traders who supply them with merchandise are mostly Frenchmen, either from Illinois, or the post of St. Vincennes. The Illinois traders obtain their dry-goods from Michillimackinac, on lake Michigan, and their liquors from New Orleans; while the St. Vincennes people purchase their articles of traffic (which are generally of a substantial character) from Fort Detroit, between lakes Erie and Huron, and transport them up the Miami, thence nine miles by land to the Wabash, and then down the Wabash to the post at St. Vincennes. The greater portion of the inhabitants at these two posts, live by the Indian trade. Like the population on the Cumberland, they obtain furs from the savages by barter, and carry them to certain places, where they traffic with them for suitable merchandise. The trade of the country on the Cumberland relies mainly on the free navigation of the Mississippi; and, as I have already remarked, it is unfortunately still closed against us. Without it, this region, as well as that of Kentucky, will be badly off; for what can it produce for its necessities, even in time, save grain, provisions, tobacco, hemp, &c.; and as all these are heavy articles of trade, where can they be sent, except down that river to New Orleans? Yet it seems not at all probable that a single place will be allowed to impede the progress of two districts as large as those of which I am now writing. The cost of their supplies, in this region, in consequence of the great distance from any other sea-port, must therefore always be extremely high.

I may mention the following as the productions of the Cumberland country, no others having been yet attempted—viz.: Indian-corn, which succeeds best in a virgin soil:—I have understood that, in good years, the crop has yielded more than one hundred bushels per acre. Tobacco is also prolific in a new land, and it is reported to resemble the best qualities of Virginia. Grain and vegetables grow extremely well in soil that has been already tilled. Fine cotton can be made abundantly. Sheep, which are easily raised, produce excellent wool. Horned beasts find their forage in the woods in winter and summer, and fatten in both seasons. A certain kind of cane, which remains green the whole winter, is extremely nourishing for the cattle. Cows yield a very rich milk, and cheese is already made in large quantities; yet it is scarcely to be expected that this means of feeding stock will long continue. In Kentucky it has already ceased in many places. The inhabitants will soon be obliged to engage in the cultivation of meadows, which they do not seem to understand. Wood, suitable for building, is also one of the productions I may enumerate. There is an abundant yield of oak, hickory, maple, (from which tree a quantity of sugar may be extracted,) sycamore, poplar, red-cedar, and almost all other kinds of wood except the fir-tree, which is found in but few locations. If this country were peopled with men really fond of manual labor, and possessed, besides, a lucrative commerce, it might become one of the most flourishing in the nation.

I was near forgetting the numerous salt springs, which are some of the most extraordinary curiosities in this neighborhood. Salt is already made from them at Bullit's

Lick in Kentucky, about twenty-four miles from the Falls. It furnishes a sufficient supply for Kentucky, and even exports some to the Cumberland. The salt sells at the salt-works for ten shillings of Virginia currency. On the Cumberland there are also a number of these saline springs; yet they are not worked, the inhabitants preferring to pay ten or twelve dollars for the Kentucky article, when they might produce the same quantity for two dollars! The principal springs are at French Lick, near Nashville; another, less known, situated on the Red river, is very rich; and besides these, there are a number of other springs containing salt and sulphur, none of which are, however, used by the inhabitants except for their cattle, which fatten considerably by drinking of them. Some of these springs rise and fall every twenty-four hours, and hence it is supposed they communicate with the sea!

I remained in Nashville until the 10th of December, when I returned to Baltimore by land, accompanied by other travellers. During my stay on the Cumberland, I made two excursions with surveyors into the wilderness, where I obtained an excellent notion of the character, situation, and quality of the soil and territory. On my return to Baltimore, I travelled with a pack-horse, in order to carry my provisions and corn for myself and my beasts. We traversed an uninhabited region for about 140 miles, a great portion of which is known as "Barrens," wherein nothing grows but grass, which is greatly liked by the horses in spring. Here and there small trees and groves of oaks are found, along the small streams and rivers. The land in these barrens is commonly poor in comparison with that on the Cumberland; however, it is believed that it will produce good grain. Herds of buffaloes are found in these solitudes; but they have been considerably hunted by the woodsmen, and are diminishing in number. Varieties of elk and deer are found in numbers; yet during our journey we saw but a single elk, and that, too, at a distance, though we found large numbers of their bones.

Water is scarce in this region, and especially so at the end of summer. We rode, on one occasion, twenty-four miles without finding a drop for our animals. The streams rising therein, run but a short distance and disappear beneath the ground, whence they re-appear again, after coursing along for some distance in their subterranean concealment. The most remarkable springs are the Roaring springs, Dripping springs, Sink-hole springs, and Caving springs; and of the latter, there is one fifty feet below the surface of the earth. The most noteworthy rivers in the country between the inhabited parts of Kentucky and the Cumberland, are the Big Barren river and the Green river, into which the first debouches. Along the course of these streams, as well as in other spots, there are stretches of land of remarkably good character, and during this year some persons propose establishing settlements for the accommodation of travellers.

The part of Kentucky through which I returned, belongs to the district I have already described, and forms the southern portion thereof. I arrived there on the 18th of December, and I had to await the arrival of a caravan until the 26th. After we had formed a train of about one hundred persons, we chose two chiefs to command us during our perilous journey. On a route through an uninhabited wilderness of one hundred and fifty miles, there are scarcely five miles in which travellers have not been slain by Indians. The savages lie in ambush for the wayfarers on this abominable and almost impassable path, which is hardly wide enough for a horse, and attack them at daybreak if they linger on the road, killing almost always the greater part of the train, should it happen to be unprepared. Nevertheless it is quite astonishing to observe the vast number of persons emigrating with their families to Kentucky.

We set forth on the 27th of December, and, every night, we placed ten sentinels who watched continually. We reached the Holston after six days' travel, without the slightest mishap. As the country in this region is thickly settled, our caravan was quickly dispersed. My horses, in consequence of their extreme fatigue and want of forage, had suffered greatly, and required repose before I could venture to continue my journey of five hundred miles further east. Accordingly, I left the high-road, in order to reach a private dwelling, where I obtained good food and forage, and, at length, I reached Baltimore, after a fresh start, in twenty days, without accident.

OBSERVATIONS.

The country along the Holston river, which has its sources in three spring-heads, viz., North, Middle, and South Holston, produces extremely fine grain. Corn succeeds only in good seasons. The soil, generally speaking, is not uncommonly good, though there is no want of fine mill-streams and particularly good water. The river Holston begins to be navigable at the junction of the north and south branches, and, after a south-westerly course, it debouches in the Tennessee, which flows into the Ohio. The "Muscle shoals" prevent the navigation of the Tennessee river by boats of deep draft; and, accordingly, it is only when the waters are high that it can be descended. Eastwardly from the source of the Holston, lies New river, a portion of the great Kanawha, which runs westwardly from the Appalachian chain to the Ohio. It appears to me that the land, eight or ten miles back from this river, is better than that on the Holston. The only trade carried on here is on the Holston, and with Richmond, in Virginia, where the inhabitants sell their butter, cheese, sarsaparilla, ginseng, snake-root, &c., and trade for merchandise in return. All transportation is made in wagons, and, accordingly, is very costly.

Eastwardly from the Alleghany mountains, at the sources of the Roanoke river, which flows into the Atlantic Ocean, in North Carolina, and along the course of that stream, the soil is of excellent quality. Much tobacco is raised there and taken to

Richmond. From this spot, between the North, Blue, and South mountains, to the Potomac, the soil is almost invariably of the same quality. In the valleys, tobacco and grain are cultivated, which are partly sold in Baltimore, and partly in Richmond. Lexington, Staunton, Millerstown, Staufferstown, Newtown, and Winchester, lie on the road, and in all these places many Germans are settled.

Efforts are now making to render the falls of the Potomac navigable, but I cannot imagine that the present generation will derive much advantage from it.

Some Words from the Language of the Choctaws.

Howbeck	A horse.
Chickamaw	That is good.
Ohkà	Brandy.
Babashiela	Salutation of welcome.
Tshiaffà	One.
Toccolò	Two.
Detchená	Three.
Ostà	Four.
Tashawè	Five.
Annalè	Six.
Ontocolò	Seven.
Ondotchinà	Eight.
Tschacalè	Nine.
Toccolà	Ten.
Awa tschiaffà	Eleven.
Awa toccolò	Twelve, and so on to nineteen.
Boccole toccolò	Twenty.
Boccole detchenà	Thirty, and so on to 100.

In the greater part of these words the accent is placed on the last syllable, which almost always terminates with a vowel.

Itinerary from Baltimore to Fort Pitt. 1785.

From	Baltimore	to	Ellicott's Mills	12	miles.
"	thence	"	Simpson's	14	"
"	"	"	Hobbs's	10½	"
"	"	"	Fredericktown	14½	"
"	"	"	Middletown	9	"

From	thence	to	Hagerstown	18	miles.
“	“	“	Dr. Schnebley's	5	“
“	“	“	Ronseg's	15	“
“	“	“	McConnell's	12	“
“	“	“	McDonnell's	11	“
“	“	“	Crossings of Juniata	10	“
“	“	“	Bedford	14	“
“	“	“	Burnet's	4	“
“	“	“	Grundlan's	15	“
“	“	“	Spicher's	8	“
“	“	“	Loud's	13	“
“	“	“	Dr. Peter's	12	“
“	“	“	Cherry's Mill	10	“
“	“	“	Millerstown	10	“
“	“	“	Ben Loud's	8	“
“	“	“	Widow Myers	10	“
“	“	“	Fort Pitt	12	“
Total from Baltimore to Fort Pitt				247	miles.

Itinerary from Fort Pitt to the Mouth of the Ohio, in the year 1785, *by L. B.*

From	Fort Pitt	to	Big Beaver Creek, Fort McIntosh	30	miles.
“	thence	“	Little Beaver Creek	13	“
“	“	“	Yellow Creek	9	“
“	“	“	Mingo Town	18	“
“	“	“	Grass Creek	2	“
“	“	“	Wheeling Creek	25	“
“	“	“	Grave Creek	10	“
“	“	“	Beginning of the Long Branch	16	“
“	“	“	End “ “	16	“
“	“	“	Muskingum River	23	“
“	“	“	Little Kanawha River	12	“
“	“	“	Hockhocking River	13	“
“	“	“	Big Kanawha River	83	“
“	“	“	Great Guyandotte River	24	“
“	“	“	Big Sandy Creek	13	“
“	“	“	Scioto River	45	“
“	“	“	The Three Islands	75	“
“	“	“	Limestone Creek	10	“

From thence to the	Little Miami River	65	miles.
“ “ “	Licking River	8	“
“ “ “	Great Miami	27	“
“ “ “	Big Cone Creek	32	“
“ “ “	Kentucky River	44	“
“ “ “	Rapids of the Ohio	77	“
“ “ “	Salt River	23	“
“ “ “	Beginning of the low country	132	“
“ “ “	The first of the Five Islands	38	“
“ “ “	Green River	27	“
“ “ “	A large Island	58	“
“ “ “	Wabash River	40	“
“ “ “	The Great Cave	62	“
“ “ “	Cumberland River	33	“
“ “ “	Tennessee River	12	“
“ “ “	Fort Massac	11	“
“ “ “	Mouth of the Ohio	46	“
Total from the Big Cone Creek to the mouth of the Ohio		1172	miles.

Itinerary from the Mouth of the Cumberland to Nashville, in the year 1785, *by L. B.*

From the mouth to	The Great Yellow Banks[1]	30	miles.
“ thence “	The Little Yellow Banks	10	“
“ “ “	Little River	23	“
“ “ “	Red River	75	“
“ “ “	Harpeth River and Shoals	35	“
“ “ “	Nashville	38	“
Total from the mouth of the Cumberland to Nashville		211	miles.

Itinerary from Nashville to Baltimore, in the year 1785, *by L. B.*

From Nashville to	Manco's Station	12	miles.
“ thence “	Malden's Station	18	“
“ “ “	West Fork of Red River	7	“
“ “ “	Roaring Spring	18	“
“ “ “	Big Barren River	15	“
“ “ “	Dripping Spring	13	“
“ “ “	Sink-hole Spring	14	“
“ “ “	Blue Springs	9	“

---

[1] These distances have not always been measured, so that others may vary them somewhat.

From thence to the Little Barren River	12	miles.
" " " Green River	8	"
" " " Clay Lick	25	"
" " " Carpenter's Station in Kentucky	20	"
" " " Grape Orchard	20	"
From thence, through the Great Wilderness to Martin's Station	140	"
" " " Valley Station	25	"
" " " Block-house	35	"
" " " Washington Court-house	30	"
" " " Major Davis's	12	"
" " " Atkins's	25	"
" " " Fort Chissells	27	"
" " " Crockett's	8	"
" " " Ingraham's Mill	7	"
" " " New River	8	"
" " " Alleghany Mountains	15	"
" " " Widow Kent's	4	"
" " " John Smith's	9	"
" " " Big Lick	15	"
" " " Widow Breckenridge's	9	"
" " " Anderson's Ferry, on James River	18	"
" " " Captain Poll's	8	"
" " " Lexington	15	"
" " " James Loyell's	10	"
" " " Burk's	14	"
" " " Staunton	11	"
" " " M'Machen's	10	"
" " " Schneff's	12	"
" " " Arnitz's	8	"
" " " Roeck's	14	"
" " " Colonel Bird's	16	"
" " " Millerstown	10	"
" " " Staufferstown	18	"
" " " Winchester	12	"
" " " James Stow's	11	"
" " " Harper's Ferry, on the Potomac	19	"
" " " Fredericktown	20	"
" " " Hobbs's	14	"
" " " Simpson's	11	"

From thence to Ellicott's Mills	14 miles.
" " " Baltimore	12 "
Total from Nashville to Baltimore, Md.	837 miles.

Resumé of Journey in 1785.

From Baltimore to Fort Pitt, by land	247 miles.
" Fort Pitt to mouth of Cumberland, by water	1103 "
" Mouth of Cumberland to Nashville, by water	211 "
" Nashville to Baltimore, by land	837 "
Total journey	2398 miles.

3. INDIAN LIFE IN THE NORTH-WESTERN REGIONS OF THE UNITED STATES, IN 1783;

BEING THE

RELATION OF THE VOYAGES AND ADVENTURES OF A MERCHANT VOYAGER IN THE INDIAN TERRITORIES OF NORTH AMERICA, SETTING OUT FROM MONTREAL MAY 28TH, 1783.

BY JOHN BAPTISTE PERRAULT.

TRANSLATED FROM THE ORIGINAL FRENCH MSS., WITH NOTES, GEOGRAPHICAL AND GEOLOGICAL, AND AN INTRODUCTION,

BY HENRY R. SCHOOLCRAFT.

INTRODUCTION.

THE life and manners of the troubadour, so far as they affected the simple and gay-hearted peasantry of France, were, at the opening of the 17th century, transferred to North America. This spirit was early developed by the magnificent and inspiring rivers and lakes of New France, over which its merchants roamed in pursuit of the adventurous and absorbing fur-trade. The Couriers du Bois, as they were at first called, fascinated with scenes so novel and animating, lightened their toils with songs as they swept, in boats and canoes, up and down the immense area of clear and sparkling waters. This area spread before their eyes as some fairy maze — stretching between the mountain heights of Quebec, and the fertile and far-stretching savannahs of Louisiana. In this new world of watery intercommunications—the noisy cascades and rapids of the St. Lawrence — the great chain of interior lakes from Ontario to Superior, and the Lake of the Woods — the astonishing scenic display of the Falls of Niagara — the Mississippi, reaching for three thousand miles, and receiving tributaries like the Ohio, the Missouri, and the Arkansas, compared to which the Seine and the Loire were mere brooks—these were but elements in the great hydrographic panorama through which they swept by an easy stroke of the paddle. No wonder that a peasantry, and the adventurous bourgeois who led them, who were alike prone to be absorbed by the sublime scenes before them, should, as if the murmuring cataracts were but one great orchestra of nature, give vent to their gayety in chants and songs, to which the rapid strokes of their paddles kept time.

To add to these excitements, they were guided in their adventurous trips by one of the most picturesque races of mankind — the painted and plumed Indians, who, like themselves, were eminently bent on the enjoyment of the present scene with little thought for the future; and it cannot be deemed surprising that the American wilderness, and its freedom from restraints, had so many charms for the three classes who supplied perpetual elements to the fur-trade: namely, the voyageur, the trader, and the ambitious money-making bourgeois, who sought, in the fibre of the beaver, a treasure more reliable than that which had eluded the grasp of De Soto.

Besides all this, the French decidedly liked the Indian race. They admired his lofty step, keen eye, ready oratory, and independent, manly tone. They were more than half inclined to agree to his mythology. They respected his wild and often imposing mystical ceremonies, they assimilated with his manners, they chose their wives of these foresters, and as one of the French ecclesiastics observes of his countrymen, "they did not convert the Indians to the principles of Christianity, but the Indians converted them."

Among those who were, in youth, smitten with the charms of Indian life and the fur-trade, was the author of these "Relations." He was an educated young man, of one of the best French families in the city of Quebec, where his kindred still hold their rank and position in society. He went out, not in a menial capacity, but in the quality of a clerk, and consequently a bourgeois. He hied to the then great centre and metropolis of Indian trade, Michillimackinac, and after some primary trips to the much-admired region of the far-famed Illinois, he chose the North-west as the theatre of his life and adventures; and here he passed more than sixty years of his long life. He was always trustworthy; a man of urbanity and mildness, of good judgment, of a very retentive memory, ingenious in mechanics, interesting in conversation. He had, at an early period, married the daughter of one of the wild Indian sovereigns at the sources of the Mississippi, by whom he had a numerous family.

When he was far advanced in life, finding him possessing good memory and to be replete with anecdotes of Indian life, I invited him to pass a winter at my house at Elmwood, at a time when I was engaged in the study of the French language, with the principles of which he was classically acquainted. To these recitals of study he always came into my room with his best coat on, and with the polite air and manners of a court official who waits on the prime minister. At my request, he recorded the outlines of his early journeys and residences among the Indian tribes of those remote regions; and it is from these manuscripts, which are often illustrative of the Indian manners and customs, that I submit the following translations. They have laid among my Indian papers twenty-five years. Mr. Perrault died at Sault Ste. Marie on the 12th of November, 1844, aged, it is believed, eighty-five.

INDIAN LIFE IN THE NORTH-WEST IN 1783.

BY JOHN BAPTISTE PERRAULT.

My deceased father was born at Quebec, in 1732, being of a respectable family of that city. He finished his studies at the age of twenty, under the French government, who gave him a situation at the foundery of St. Maurice. After the taking of the country by the English, he was stationed at Trois Rivieres, in the capacity of an Inspector, under General Haldimand. In 1770, he commenced merchandizing at Riviere du Loup, from whence I was sent, at a suitable age, in 1776, to the College of Quebec, where I remained until 1782.

My father, having dealings with Mr. W. Kay of Montreal, sent me, about the middle of March, 1783, to adjust them. Then I was first seized with the desire to travel, seeing the preparations making by M. Marchisseaux, merchant-voyager, a friend of my late father, who had recommended me to his house. I declared to my father my intentions on the subject, and, with his consent, I returned to Montreal the first of April, and agreed with that gentleman to go to the Illinois in the capacity of a clerk, at the price of a thousand livres and twenty sols, being exempt from all servile labor; to set out on the first intimation.

On the 16th of May, 1783, I received the orders I had long desired; for I had figured to myself the great advantages I should derive from that calling. M. Marchisseaux directed me to assemble the men whom he had engaged at Montreal for the voyage; namely, Sacharite, Quebec, St. Germain, Robért, Dupuis of Maskinongé, Antoine and Francis Beauchemin, Ménard, L. Lavellé of Sorel and Yamaska: to conduct them to St. Francis, and take from the Wabanakis[1] two canoes, and bring them to the house of M. Marchisseaux.

---

[1] Eastlanders: from the Algonquin words *wabanoong*, the east, and *ahkee*, earth; a term bestowed by them, and afterwards by the French, on certain tribes situated between the confines of New England and the river St. Lawrence. The orthography of the word is not settled. It is generally Abenakie in old French authors. They were chiefly located, in Charlevoix's time, at the Saut de Chandiere, opposite Sillery. The use of the term itself is rather to be discouraged, as not sufficiently distinctive. It has been applied, by the Monomonees and Chippewas of the present day, to the emigrant Iroquois from New York, settled at Green Bay. — TR.

On the 12th of May, at one o'clock in the morning, I took leave of my mother, who pressed me to take supper, but my heart was too full to permit me. I had, at the time, a presentiment of what in reality took place before I again returned.[1] I withdrew amidst a burst of tears, accompanied by theirs. I proceeded to St. Francis, to take the canoes; and arrived at Montreal on the 15th of May, at noon. On the 16th, I received orders to go and conduct the *equipages* to La Chien, where the waters from the north detained us till the 27th. On the next day we set out, and encamped at the lake of Two Mountains on the 28th. Our canoes were loaded too heavy. Our *bourgeois* (a term in general use among *voyageurs* for the master or proprietor of the adventure) was obliged to get a third to lighten us. We continued our route in safety, and with little detention. The water was, however, so high as to compel our bourgeois to engage two more hands; one of whom deserted during the following night.

We arrived at Mackinac on the 28th of June, and remained there until the 15th of July, (this being the anniversary of the establishment of the fort on the Island, which was owing to Governor St. Clair, who had been relieved the preceding year by Captain Robinson.) As the merchants of Mackinac had not yet all their buildings, (and consequently room was scarce,) M. Marchisseaux wanted to build a house with a small store, to occupy on his return from the Illinois. After the buildings were done, we continued our route towards La Baye (Green bay), with the intention of passing by the way of Prairie des Chiens, where we sojourned two days. On the third, being now *en derive*, we encamped at the Sauk village[2] at Turkey river, about sunset; M. Marchisseaux being necessitated to pass here, instead of the direct route from Mackinac to St. Louis, by way of the Illinois, in order to collect his credits from the Indians. We continued our route, and passed St. Louis during the night, fearing a seizure from the Spaniards, who did not, at that time, suffer any persons to import merchandise into Louisiana from Great Britain. We arrived at Kaôs,[3] then under the British government, on the 11th of August. M. Marchisseaux hired two apartments in the house of M. Soucier, in the village, to establish a store of French goods, and sold off his Indian goods to M. Choteau, merchant of St. Louis, who equipped[4] on the Missouri, at an advance of 137½ per cent., payable in peltries; namely, beaver at one dollar per pound; otters at one dollar and fifty cents; raccoons at twenty cents; bears at two dollars; deer-skins at fifty cents each; and in the same proportion for other furs.

The winter of '83 was very severe; there were two feet of snow; and the crust so strong that it bore men and dogs, so that deer were killed in the snow with the stroke of a hatchet, in a way which had not before been seen by the oldest inhabitants. There was a bridge of ice opposite St. Louis, which held for an entire month, and gave the Creoles and Spaniards the pleasure of visiting. That year there were a number of gentlemen from Montreal, who had stores at Cahokia; namely, Messrs. James Grant, Meyers, Tabeau, and Guillon, who had but little business, on account of their having arrived too late. But they revenged themselves by entering into the amusements of the place; for the Creoles are, in general, indolent, and love dancing above every other people. That year M. Crozat was commandant at St. Louis.

---

[1] Alluding to the death of his mother.

[2] Now Cassville, Iowa county, Wis. Mr. Perrault informs me that the Indian village had been established by the Sauks and Foxes that year, they having left the Wisconsin in consequence of their disastrous war with the Chippewas. — Tr.

[3] Cahokia.

[4] To equip, in the patois of the North-west, is to furnish the travelling clerks with goods, provisions, &c., for their trade with the natives. This is generally done on a year's credit, payable in furs. — Tr.

About the 15th of April, the packs from the Missouri arrived. Our bourgeois settled his accounts with M. Choteau, and received seventy-four packs of furs. His retail store at Cahokia produced 500 Spanish dollars, and 400 pounds of tobacco. We left Cahokia on the 4th of May, for Mackinac. My directions were to pass by Chicago, having one barge and one canoe, and to await the arrival of M. Marchisseaux at Little Detroit,[1] in lake Michigan, he having gone by the way of Prairie des Chiens, to terminate his business with the Sauks. After fourteen days' detention, he arrived, and continuing our route, we reached Mackinac the beginning of July, where I found myself at liberty.

In 1784, Mr. Alexander Kay came up from Montreal with two canoes, to enter the Fond du Lac of lake Superior, and Leech lake. I closed with him, in the capacity of clerk, for Pine river.[2] It was his intention to go in late, to avoid making credits; and he resolved to send forward Mr. Harris, whom he had engaged, rapidly, in order to purchase wild rice of the Indians, with directions to return and meet him at Fond du Lac, about the middle of August.

We left Mackinac on the 29th of August in two canoes, well loaded. Having no person to serve as guide, who had knowledge of the route, we were compelled to go round the peninsula of Kewywenon (lake Superior), where the continual blowing of adverse winds, together with rain, detained us a considerable time. We reached La Pointe on the 1st of November; being a fête, (All Saints' Day,) Mr. Kay invited us all to a repast, and afterwards, in the evening, had a party at his tent. Messrs. Laviollet, Caillargè, and Graverott wintered there. The next day we had a light wind in our favor, in the morning, but it increased so rapidly, that we found it impossible to go ashore at night. We passed the river Boulè, without being able to enter, and in consequence were obliged to go on all night, the sky being overcast, and the weather cold. Two hours before day, we attempted to enter the river of Fond du Lac, but the fury of the waves rendered it impossible, and in attempting to make a neighboring bay, our canoes broke up on the waves. The goods were cast along the beach, scattered here and there, for six arpents[1] on either shore, all wet and freezing. At the time, I could only deplore my fate. On the next day, with the aid of the men, I repaired the canoes, and collected the dispersed pieces of goods; but it was impossible to dry everything, or to restore completely the damages of this misadventure. On the next day, having entered the river, we saw, on doubling the point of the Little lake,[2] a wintering house. It was that of Mr. Default, come from the Grand Portage, a clerk of the North-west Company. We stopped at his door. As Mr. Kay had indulged himself with a glass in the morning, he now took a second, which put him into an ill mood for receiving Mr. Default, who had come down to the beach to receive him, and whom he treated with rudeness. But Mr. Sayer, seeing the true cause of his disorder, kept silence, and gave him no information. The character of Mr. Kay was extravagant, haughty, prompt, arrogant, enthusiastic, taking counsel from no one; in fine, harebrained. I had told him, some days before, that he should not conduct in that manner, for we were about the same age, and I was on familiar terms with him for two years before, he having dwelt near my father's house at Rivière du Loup, for the purpose of engaging voyageurs for his brother William. Without reflection, he ordered us to go to the Grand Portage, (of the river St. Louis.) I took the liberty to tell him that his enterprise was ill-judged, that he had not taken provisions for the number of mouths we had here, being already nearly exhausted; that Mr. Harris had not arrived, agreeably to expectation, and that it was now too late to go on. Mr. Default, fearing that we should remain, and become a burthen to him, offered to furnish provisions for several days; but he thanked him, saying he hoped very soon to see Mr. Harris.

---

[1] Little Detroit is a passage between the islands in the mouth of Green bay, noted as an ancient camping-ground for boats and canoes, in making the traverse from main to main. It is also, so to speak, a fork in the road, where the routes from Prairie du Chien, and from St. Louis, north, towards Mackinac, unite. — TR.

[2] Of the upper Mississippi. This river enters, on the right bank of the Mississippi, something more than a day's journey, by water, below Sandy lake. It is connected, by a series of small lakes and portages, with Leech lake. — TR.

We now departed at all hazards for the interior. The whole stock of provisions now consisted of one bag of flour, one keg of butter, and one of sugar for his own use. His retinue was composed of fourteen men, his *savagesse*, himself, and me, making seventeen persons in all, and nothing to eat. To crown our misfortune, we now encountered Mr. Harris, with three men, and an Indian called the Big Marten, with nothing in his canoe but part of a barrel of salt meat. At this Mr. Kay was much cast down. We encamped all together at the *decharge*[3] of the Grand Portage. Mr. Kay requested Mr. Harris to render an account of the twenty pieces of goods he had put in his hands to procure food (wild rice, and dried meat). He replied that he had seen very few Indians; that the greater part of them had gone to pass the winter in the prairies west of the Mississippi; that they had no wild rice, the abundant rains having destroyed it; finally, that he had made some credits with the Indians, whom he had supplied with the means of passing the winter; all of which was not very satisfactory to Mr. Kay, who saw himself without resources. I advised him to return to Fond du Lac, and go up to the Indians on the first opening of the navigation, at the time when they are rich in furs. But this gentleman would take advice from no one, but determined to follow his own caprice. It was his will absolutely to go inland; and after drinking, he menaced his men with a pistol, if they refused to follow him. His language to me was not without asperity; but I made no reply, knowing it would not avail to remonstrate, and having no doubt but he sought the death of himself and his men. His resolve being made, and Mr. Harris and his men only serving further to diminish our rations, we entered the Grand Portage forthwith. Mr. Kay determined to take Mr. Harris and seven men, with Big Marten for his guide, and go in advance, with the view of persuading the Indians to hunt for us, as moose were then abundant. And he left me behind with the baggage, with a promise that he would soon furnish me with provisions. The day after he left me, the snow fell over six inches in depth. I had very little provisions to go on, but they would not increase by delay.

---

[1] The arpent is a measure of length with the French, being 180 French feet.

[2] Immediately after entering the river St. Louis, of Fond du Lac, it expands into a lake, whose direction is transverse to the general course of the river.—TR.

[3] The point at which the goods are landed for the purpose of being carried around a fall or rapid.—TR.

The day after the snow fell, an Indian arrived with a letter from Mr. Kay, who informed me that he had determined to go to Pine river. He directed me to advance with the goods, as far as Savanne Portage, and, if possible, to pass the winter there; and to send three men with the Indian (who had killed a moose, and brought me a portion of it) to carry fifteen pieces, assorted for trade, to the portage *aux Couteaux*,[1] where he would wait for them. I immediately complied with his order, by sending off the men. We were ourselves eleven days in getting to the Savanne, amidst ice and snow, and with nothing to eat. We lived on the seed-pods of the wild rose, and the sap of trees. I put the goods *en cache*[2] with two small interior canoes, at the entrance of the Savanne Portage. I made a lodge with an oil-cloth, at the little *lac de la Puise* in the portage, where we lived many days on small *tolibies*;[3] but they were soon exhausted as the ice became thick. Our only resource now was *racine de guenouilla* (flag-roots), which we boiled; and these we were necessitated to search at the bottom of the little lake, or in a marsh amidst snow. This resource failing, we were obliged to quit the place, for now it seemed as if all species of birds had flown away. Each one went, by turn, to hunt; but got nothing.

About Christmas, we could no longer resist our wants, and resolved to save ourselves by going to Pine river, although reduced to a feeble state for the journey. We set out to descend the west Savanne creek, which leads into Sandy lake, travelling on blanket shoes, (*souliers de couvertes.*) We saw, in a bay, the poles of an Indian lodge, where they had encamped before the snow fell. I went a little farther, and chanced to find a frame for drying moose-skins, around the edges of which there was left a strip of the dried skin. As we were hungry, we did not amuse ourselves by boiling it, but forthwith roasted and eat it. We now proceeded across Sandy lake, to strike the Mississippi, and follow down it. I was continually in hopes of meeting some one who might effectually encourage us.

---

[1] So called from the argillite, in a vertical position, which forms the banks of the river St. Louis at that place. — Tr.

[2] To put *en cache*, is not always to hide, or conceal. The term is frequently used in a sense corresponding to *deposit*, as when canoes are left at a portage. — Tr.

[3] The *tolibi*, or, as it is called by the Chippewas, *tonibee*, or *odönabee*, is a small kind of white fish found in the northern waters, having the nether lip shortened, which is the characteristic indicated by the Indian name, i. e. water-mouth. — Tr.

On the following day, about noon, we arrived at the river Vaseuse, which was about an arpent broad, shallow and open; but we had no means of passing it. The men forded it, without taking off their clothes. I took off mine, to preserve them dry, and swam over. On assembling on the other side, it was cold, and the men struck up a fire to warm themselves. At this moment our attention was arrested by hearing a gun fired close to us. It was the Big Marten, in chase of a deer for Mr. Kay and Mr. Harris. I was not slow in responding a shot, and in a moment he was with us. We were very happy to see him, for we had taken a very bad route. He said to me: "Friend, I was attracted hither by the shot you fired, being in chase of a deer, whom I have killed." He sold it to me. And after dividing the meat, we were not long in cooking it. We then slept.

I begged the Big Marten to conduct us to Mr. Kay's, to which he consented. And taking the direct Indian path, about mid-day, we fell upon the entrance to Lac du Licore, three leagues distant from Pine river. We there met three men of Mr. Pinot, who wintered, as a trader, near Mr. Kay. They were come, in search of dried meat, to the lodge of Barrique'eau, (a Chippewa so called.) They presented us some of their food en passant. About sunset, we arrived at Mr. Kay's house, at Pine river. He was both pleased and surprised to see us, for he had despaired of us, not having been able to get a guide to conduct his men. We now rested. It was about the commencement of January when we arrived. I recounted all that had taken place, from the time of his departure till our arrival, at which he seemed to be moved. I saw that there was no good understanding between Mr. Harris and himself. This was his own fault, as, having no experience in this sort of enterprise, he would do everything out of his own head.

He said to me, the day after our arrival, that he would be flattered to have me set out, very soon, with three men and an Indian guide, to go and remain at Savanne portage, to await the opening of the navigation; and descend, with the goods, to Sandy lake, and there to await Mr. Harris and an Indian called Kitchemöwa. Two days after, we departed, each carrying forty-five pounds of dried meat. Mr. Kay told me, as soon as I reached my post, to send back the Indian and two of the men; that he was going out with a party of Indians to pass the spring in my neighborhood. In fine, it was the Indians who gave us our subsistence, although it was not without pains, for

Mr. Harris had not used all his efforts to get supplies, and Mr. Kay himself was mortally hated by the Indians.

We reached the Savanne portage on the fourth day. Hunger now began to pinch us. What had been eaten on the route and at my post, together with the provisions necessary to carry the men back, had exhausted more than two-thirds of what each one originally had.[1] Independent of which, I had but little time to wait for the Indians, who, I fancied, would soon supply me; and in consequence, I wrote to Mr. Kay that I should not keep the men, whom he might want to go to Sandy lake, and to send them to me to remain during the severe snows, and finally, to bring to my house the goods left in deposit, with the three canoes at the mouth of the Savanne. I sent back the men the next day, being the 26th of January. On the 27th, I set to work with my man, whose name was Lauzon, to cut the logs for building a house twelve feet long by ten in breadth, which was finished on the 7th of February, when we entered it.

We had but little food at that time, but I expected relief very soon, which did not however come; for the Indians were dispersed one way or another, as is their custom, and did not come together again for a long time, which reduced us, a second time, to fasting. Lauzon became so weak that he could not raise himself without pain. He was a great smoker. I told him that it was the tobacco that caused his weakness, but it was no time to give advice. It was with much difficulty I could chop and carry in the wood necessary to keep us warm.

About the 20th of February, early in the morning, while I was cutting the ice to set the nets, in front of our door, I cast up my eyes and saw with surprise an otter who had got upon a large stone and was eating a fish; for it was seldom that this animal was seen at this place. I ran to look for my gun. I fired, and killed it. Lauzon was quite re-animated by this adventure. We prepared to broil it, and eat heartily. Within an hour after, while I was cutting wood, having gone out with my gun in my hand, for we were in constant apprehension of the Indians, who were anthropophagi,[2] I perceived an Indian approaching me. He came very nimbly, and had half a fawn-skin of wild rice. We now feared death or some imminent danger. But it turned out to be the Indian who had formerly served as our guide. He brought me a letter from Mr. Kay, who gave me but sad news on the subject of his affairs. The Indian told me that he had started before the men, who were on the way with provisions, and would arrive in the course of a couple of days. I sent him back the next day. During the night of the same day, Mr. Harris's brother-in-law (an Indian) arrived, from the neighborhood of the portage aux Couteaux. He had killed a bear, which remained at his lodge. He gave me the tongue and the heart, and asked me to go with him with my man, to carry the carcase. I paid him in rum, and we set out early the next morning. He out-walked us. We got the meat, and returned very late, being greatly fatigued. About midnight, the *Brechèt*[1] arrived, and gave me the half of a moose. The next day, the Big Marten came in and brought me an entire moose. They both came with their families, to encamp and to have a drinking bout, (*un boisson.*) The same day, the men arrived with their charge, being well pleased to see abundance of food. The Indians continued to come in day by day, and were loaded with meat. I persuaded the brother of La Petite Rat[2] to go across the country to Mr. Kay, to advise him that I should keep the men at the portage until the snow was gone. I put them to the trains to carry the goods and canoes from the little lake to the outer end of the portage.

---

[1] On Mr. Perrault's reading the MS. to me, I asked him, as but five days, at most, had elapsed since leaving Pine river with 185 pounds of dried meat, if it were possible that his three men, besides himself and the Indian, had eaten so great a quantity of meat. He replied, "Yes!" that the men, having nothing else, eat an unusual quantity; that they eat frequently through the day, and often got up at night to eat. — TR.

[2] Tales of cannibalism are current among the northern voyageurs, who are generally more intent on raising the fears or wonder of their auditors, than scrupulous of the authenticity of the facts, which they are content to relate on the strength of hearsay. That the northern Indians have feasted on human flesh, under circumstances of great excitement in war or hunger, is undoubted. But there are no facts to justify the conclusion that they preferred human flesh as their ordinary diet. — TR.

The time of making sugar being now arrived, the Indians decided to make their sugar in the vicinity of my post. When Mr. Kay received my letter, he determined to come and join me, and to leave Mr. Harris with four lodges of Chippewas, to ascend Pine river by water, on the first opening of the navigation. As the Indians had retired to their sugar-camps (sucreries), I went to see them to apprize them of Mr. Kay's intended visit, which was verified on the third day after, when he arrived about noon. He was well pleased to find everything in order at my post, and I was delighted to see him again. He confided to me all the troubles he had had with the Indians, and told me he would revenge himself on Cul Blanc,[3] who had insulted him, although he had, at the same time, beaten him, but that he would repay him on getting to Sandy lake, as well as Le Cousin,[4] a noted rogue, who had remained below with Mr. Harris, and had spent all his time in going about, for mischievous purposes, among the Indians.

Now we had nothing to do, (the winter's hunt being over, and the Indians all gone to their sugar-camps,) we were happy in the enjoyment of tranquillity. I made a canoe of wood, out of a pine tree suitable for the purpose. It was large enough to contain two persons, with the necessary tackle. As Mr. Kay was desirous to reach Sandy lake, I proposed to him to make the attempt; to which he readily assented.

---

[1] Katawabata, or Parted Teeth.

Thirty-seven years afterwards, namely, in 1822, this man visited me at Sault Ste. Marie, being then a man verging towards seventy. He told me that he was a boy at the taking of old Mackinac, (1762.) The French, he said, wished him to take up the war-club, but he refused. The English afterwards thanked him for this, and requested him to raise the tomahawk in their favor, but he declined. The Americans afterwards thanked him for this, nor did they ask him to go to war. They continually advised to peace, and, he adds, "I am a friend to peace." Though not in the lineal line of the chiefs of Sandy lake, he was regarded as a civil chief and counsellor; and was respected both by the Indians and the traders. He died at Sandy lake in 1828.—Tr.

[2] Wah-zhusk-ons. The diminutive form of the word muskrat.—Tr.

[3] Wah-biddé-a, Whitebottom.—Tr.

[4] A male cousin, in Chippewa, is Natah-wis; a female cousin, Né-ne-moosh-shá.—Tr.

We left the post about the 15th of April; for the little river[1] opened very early. The Indians had by this time come in, and were with us. The water being high, we ran the rapid of the Pine portage; Mr. Kay bid every one exert himself, but about half way down the rapid, the canoe turning square about, filled, and upset; he lost his baggage, and had been himself drowned, had not an Indian called *le Petit Mort*,[2] his friend, swam to his relief. He had almost lost all recollection when he was brought ashore.

We arrived, the next day, at Sandy lake, and made towards the fish-dam at its entrance, before many Indians had got there; for the place afforded a great resource for fish. The Bras Cassé,[3] chief of Sandy lake, was at the bottom of a bay, with many others, mending their canoes, and we did not see them. But we encamped on a peninsula at the entrance of the lake, where we had no sooner arrived, than the Indians made us a visit; each one carrying their beaver and dried meat, with a large present of game from the chief, who sent word that he would visit us as soon as his canoes were finished. We remained there from the 27th of April until the 2d of May, trading with the Indians, who came in from all quarters, and waiting the arrival of the men from Pine river. The same day, we heard a gun fired below; and within an hour after, Mig-a-zee (the Eagle) arrived. He had left Mr. Harris and his men below. Mr. Kay said he would go to them, although somewhat fatigued the night previous by the continual running of the Indians, as they arrived. On parting, he told me to draw some rum, of which he took a stout drink; and as he knew there was no more rum at the post of Pine river, when he left Mr. Harris, he thought a dram would be pleasing to him also; for which reason, he told me to fill one of the flagons of his liquor-case, to take with him. He also gave me orders to give the Indians no drink during his absence; which was difficult, because they were already tipsy.

The Indians had given me the name of the Writer,[4] which they were accustomed to do to all whom they observed writing. As soon as Mr. Kay was gone, I did not want for visits; his *savagesse* remaining in the tent with me. A great many Indians came in; among the number was Katawabada and Mong-ozid (Loon's Foot), who said to me, Writer, give us rum! I told them that I could not — that I was not master. They tormented me a long time. The Loon's Foot threw to me a pair of metasses, which he had got on credit, and had not paid for, (for he was a poor paymaster,) demanding rum for them. I told him, No! He then talked with Mr. Kay's woman, who was tired of them, as well as myself. She begged me to give them a little, after which they went out of the tent.

Within an hour after, Le Barrique'eau arrived, and told me that Mr. Harris and

---

[1] West Savanne creek, a tributary of Sandy lake, and through this lake, of the upper Mississippi. — Tr.

[2] Tshe-by-ains. The diminutive form of the word ghost. — Tr.

[3] Bö-koon-nik, Broken Arm. — Tr.

[4] O-zhe-bé-e-gäd, he who writes; or, O-zhe-bé-e-ga w'in-in-ne, writing-man. — Tr.

Mr. Pinot had actually arrived at the fish-dam. The Indians, one and all, set up a shout of joy, and ran to the beach to receive them. They did not, however, meet with a very good reception; the flagon Mr. Kay had taken with him, having intoxicated the whole party. They debarked; and while Mr. Harris was getting his tent pitched, Mr. Kay entered mine, and took a glass in my presence. Mr. Harris was quite noisy. To complete the scene, the ferocity of Cul Blanc had returned. He had persuaded Le Cousin to stab Mr. Kay in the course of the winter, saying to him, that he had not courage enough to do it. The other gloried in being equal to the commission of a crime, which he had promised to perpetrate when they came together. The Cul Blanc was sitting with many others on a hillock before the fire, smoking, directly in front of Mr. Kay's tent. Le Cousin got up, and went towards the tent, at the entrance of which he met Mr. Kay. Mr. Kay's bed was placed across, opposite the pole supporting the tail-piece of his tent. The barrel of rum was behind the bed, in the bottom of the tent. Mr. Kay saw him coming, as he was going to take a seat beside me, on his bed. At this moment, Le Cousin entered. He tendered his hand, and asked for rum. Mr. Kay, who did not like the man, answered "No! You do not pay your credits. You shall have none. Go out, immediately." With this, he took him by the arm, and conducted him out of the tent. On turning round to re-enter, the Indian, who was armed with a knife which he had concealed under a *mantelet de calmande*, gave him a stab on the back of the neck. He then retired towards the camp-fire, which was surrounded by a great many Indians, and our men. I got up immediately, on hearing the scream of his wife, whom I perceived in front of me. "Have you been stabbed?" I inquired of Mr. Kay. "Yes," he replied, "but he shall pay for it." So saying, he put his hand in the mess-basket, and drew out a large, pointed table-knife, with which he sallied furiously from the tent, without my being able to stop him. The Indians, seeing the knife in his hand, asked the cause of it. He said that Le Cousin had stabbed him, and that he was in search of him to kill him. But Le Cousin had taken refuge in his own lodge, which was near our camp. Mr. Kay went towards the lodge. We ran after him, to prevent some fatal accident. The tumult was, by this time, very great. Great numbers were collected from all sides; and all, both French and Indians, bereft of their reason, for it was in the midst of a general carouse. In a moment, every one seized his arms; and there was a motley display of knives, guns, axes, cudgels, war-clubs, lances, &c. I found myself greatly at a nonplus, for I had not before witnessed such a scene. I saw so many preparations, that I judged we should have a serious time.

Mr. Kay pursued Le Cousin, but before he could reach him, the passage to his lodge was blocked up by the crowd. Le Cousin's mother asked him what he wanted. "Englishman," said she, "do you come to kill me?" She made her way among the crowd, armed with a small knife, and reached the spot where Mr. Kay was standing, without any one's observing the knife; for she came in an humble attitude, imploring

Mr. Kay for the life of her son. In a moment, Mr. Kay cried out, in a loud voice, "I am killed!" and he fell. We entered, and found that she had struck him in the side, making an incision of more than three inches. We now took him to his tent, bathed in his blood. We laid him on his bed, which in a moment was soaking with his blood.

At this moment, his friend, Le Petit Mort, who had been tipsy and gone to sleep, started up. He ran to Mr. Kay's tent, where the first object he saw was his friend, pale and quivering. He went and embraced him, amidst a flood of tears, saying, "My friend, you are dead, but I survive to revenge you." In contemplating a calico nightgown which Mr. Kay had on when he received his wound, and which was all bloody, he could no longer restrain his anger. He took up the knife which Mr. Kay had at the time he was wounded, which had been brought back by his wife, who was present; he sallied out of the tent to seek revenge—not of Le Cousin, who was the instrument, but not the author of the murder—but of Cul Blanc, who was sitting before the fire, smoking his pipe. He seized him by the scalp-lock, drew his body back with one arm, exclaiming, "Die, thou dog!" and with the other hand he plunged the knife into his breast, while Cul Blanc begged for mercy.

This scene of carnage put a stop to the drinking. The women spilled out all the rum, of which there was still no small quantity in the different lodges. The stab Cul Blanc had received did not prove mortal, notwithstanding the ghastliness of the wound; the knife having passed out through the flesh, without penetrating any vital part. But the blood issued copiously, and disfigured him. His wife carried him off, trailing his blood through the camp.

This tragedy being finished, Le Petit Mort re-entered the tent. He told his wife, who had followed him, to go and search for certain roots, which he chewed and formed into a cataplasm for the wound, after having applied his mouth to it, and sucked out the extravasated blood; an operation which caused Mr. Kay great pain. He enjoyed a little ease during the remainder of the night, and following day. Petit Mort passed the night opposite to his bed. The next day, he took off the compress, and replaced it by another; after having once more sucked out the blood, and cleansed the wound. The patient became so much exhausted by this dressing, that for the space of half an hour he lost all recollection. When he regained his senses, he felt easier, and asked for the Bras Cassé, who had not yet heard what had happened; for the Indians had been occupied in drinking, and he had been getting ready to depart, having only delayed a little to give some game to the Frenchmen. He came to the field of these atrocities, entered Mr. Kay's tent, and gave him his hand, saying, "My friend, your misfortune has given me much pain. If I had been here, it would not have taken place. One thing, however, consoles me. It is, that I had not gone off; but you may depend upon my best efforts to restore you." Mr. Kay accepted his offer; having confidence in him, and in his skill in the medical art, in which he was very expert. He resolved to take him along on his route to Mackinac, to take care of him.

On the 3d of May, the Bras Cassé took him in hand, and began to apply his medicines, which were found to be efficacious. After letting him repose a little, he told him that he would cure him; but in order to do this, he must bridle his appetites. He must abstain from the use of pepper and salt on his food; he must guard against drinking, *de ne point toucher de femmes.* The next day, Mr. Kay was a little better. He sent for Mr. Harris and myself to come to his tent, to deliver his orders. He said to us: "Gentlemen: You see my situation. I do not know whether God will spare my life or not. I have determined to leave you at all hazards, to set out for Mackinac, with seven men, accompanied by the Bras Cassé and his wife, to take care of me on the road. Assort the remainder of the goods, and ascend to Leech lake, and wait there for the return of the Pillagers, who are out in the prairies. In short, complete the inland trade. Mr. Pinot is too feeble an opponent to do you much injury. I confide in the capacity of you both." A few moments after, Mr. Harris went out, when Mr. Kay said to me particularly, taking hold of my hand: "My dear friend, you understand the language of the Chippewas. Mr. Harris would go out with me, but he must accompany you. He is a good trader, but he has, like myself and others, a strong passion for drinking, which takes away his judgment. On these occasions advise him. I will myself speak to him before my departure. Prepare everything to facilitate our passage over the portages, and along the lake (Superior). I shall set out to-morrow. I find myself better every day."

I left him with his physician, and went out to distribute the provisions and lading for two inland canoes; one for Mr. Kay, and the other for the four men who were to take the furs from Pine river, consisting of 19 packs of 80 pounds each, and four packs of deer-skins, to serve as seats for Mr. Kay's men. The next day, Mr. Kay was a little better; which diffused pleasure among us all. I constructed a litter (*brancard*) for two men to carry him over the portages, and he set out the same day, being the 5th of May, about two o'clock in the afternoon. Mr. Pinot also departed the same day, to accompany him on the route. Bras Cassé, and his wife, embarked about sunset. They all encamped together on the straits of Sandy lake, at the entrance of West Savanne creek of the portage. We heard no news from them on the 6th.

We now prepared to ascend the Mississippi to Leech lake. We had, all together, three pieces of strouds, six pairs of blankets of each kind, one keg of powder, two bags of lead and ball, a nest of kettles, the remainder of our net-thread and twine, and three kegs of Jamaica spirits. The next day, being the 7th, we departed. We with difficulty got to Swan river, on account of the high water. The next day, about noon, we found Indians encamped, namely; Le Soliel, La Petite Corne, Champinios, and Le Tirer au Blanc. We apprehended bad news for our trade, as they had wintered in Swan river and Trout lake, which is a tributary of it. They had, however, made good hunts, and were rich in furs and dried meats. The first thing they asked for was rum. We made a keg of rum into two, and began to trade. They were not a long while in getting intoxicated.

Mr. Harris's wife, seeing her friends in a merry mind, took part with them, as well as her husband, who, not having had occasion to drink on the route, profited of the moment to get tipsy. Rattie, one of the men, came to me, and said to me that Mr. Harris was drinking with the Indians. I tried, gently, to recall him to a sense of propriety. But what reason is there in a drunken man? Very little, truly! Afterwards, I said to him, "Will you absolutely drink with the Indians? I shall cross the river, where they can ask for no more drink." I put this determination into immediate execution; had the canoes loaded, and traversed the Mississippi to get out of the noise of dissipation. We had sold the two kegs of mixed rum, and the Indians still had considerable in their lodges.

Late in the evening, the Petite Corne cried out that Mr. Harris was seeking us. I had the canoe put into the water, with four men, to fetch him. We were obliged to bind his wife, in order to bring her on board. A short time after, quiet was restored, and we went to bed. We passed the night in tranquillity. Next day, we had bad weather, but embarked; Mr. Harris being sullen, and out of humor. We had made a good piece of our way (*une bonne pipe*) before he looked around for his dog. He was missing. He then, in spite of his wife, went back to look for him, while we remained waiting. He went quite to the Indian lodges, where he remained drinking with them the rest of the day, and the following night. The next day I went after him, on my way, returning with the dog. He was somewhat ashamed of himself, and made some excuses. I told him that that was not to the purpose, but that he did wrong to his reputation. We continued our way, and encamped near the entrance of Deer river, below the Falls of Peeká-gamah.[1] The next day we met Wacha, with Mitanaskonce, his brother; who gave us a bear (entire) which they had killed a little above the Falls. We encamped at the entrance of the prairies at Oak Point. The next day we went on, and encamped at the Forks[2] of Lac Cedre Rouge, and Lac

---

[1] Signifying the Turn, or Elbow; as the Mississippi, just above this fall, makes a sudden bend. The fall itself interrupts the navigation, and a short portage is made around it. This portage lies over a stratum of what Mr. Eaton denominates, granular quartz rock. It is moderately elevated above the river, which has worn its passage over and through it; the river itself being very much compressed in width, and passing down a rugged and inclined channel with a velocity which would, probably, prove fatal (unless in an uncommonly high state of the water) to any boat or canoe which should attempt the passage. This stratum is the last rock seen in place towards the north-west, in our journey to the sources of the Mississippi, in 1820. Its positive elevation above the waters of the Gulf of Mexico and Hudson's Bay, according to approximate estimates made by me, *en passant*, during the expedition, is about 1280 feet. Above this point, the Mississippi has its course through extensive natural meadows, expanding sometimes into lakes, of which the most noted are, in the order of ascent, Vaseu, Winnepeek, and Red Cedar; Cassina, or Cass lake, is so named in compliment to Governor Cass.—Tr.

[2] The Forks here referred to, are formed by the junction of the Leech lake waters with those from the Cassinian sources of the Mississippi.—Tr.

Vaseu; where we saw Mr. Ka-Manito-wee,[1] who gave us the dried meat of a moose, which we scaffolded with the bear's carcass we had before, to serve as food on our descent. The Indian told us that the Pillagers had arrived at Leech lake, and were preparing to go to Mackinac, and that they had made successful hunts; which gave us pleasure, in the hope that we should have their trade. We parted for that place on the next day. Having entered the river (of Leech lake), we ascended into the lake, and went to the point called the Otter's Tail.

As the Indians were numerous, and rogues when in liquor, Mr. Harris said to me: "We shall do well not to take the rum to the Indians, but to say to them, 'Our drink is at the entrance of the river, and is put aside for you, that you may make your purchases, after which we shall go and get the liquor.'" No sooner said than done. We kept about two gallons of rum, and left about four kegs of mixed rum behind. We were well received by the Indians, who had, however, been obliged to leave a party on the road, on account of being followed by the Sioux. After letting them know the terms on which we would exchange with them, they commenced trading, giving in the first place the furs to pay for their rum, which we sold at thirty *plus*[2] per keg, to be estimated as follows: bears, one plus; an otter, one plus; three martens, one plus; a lynx, one plus; fifteen muskrats, one plus; a buffalo robe, two plus; and other furs in proportion. After finishing our trade, which occupied until the next day, we had twenty-six interior packs, and still left in the hands of the Indians twenty packs, which they brought out to Mackinac and Sault Ste. Marie. The Indians of Leech lake were, at that time, numerous, notwithstanding that they had suffered severely about two years before from the small-pox.[3]

The day after closing our trade, we set out to descend to our *cache;* for we had now but little meat; and we had got but two fawn-skins of wild rice from the Indians; a scanty supply to take us to the Fond du Lac. Having reached our *cache*, we found nothing; the large bear, the bear-skin, and the moose meat, having been eaten by carcajoux[4] and foxes. We were much dispirited on beholding this; but what was done it was useless to repine at. We came to the Savanne portage without accident; where, on the morning after our arrival, we were joined by Mr. J. Rèaume, and Mr. Piquet. The first had wintered at the foot of Red lake, in the North-west, (*coté du nord,*) at Mr. Grant's fort, at the entry into Red river. The other had wintered at lake Pàtchàtechambàn, in Turtle portage, which was so named in the time of their forefathers, on account of the Indians having consulted the turtle as an oracle. For he always kept his head towards the enemy's country, to warn them that they must be on their guard. But it was several years since he had ceased to give any oracular indications.[1]

---

[1] Witch-Devil, or Wizard-Devil, the term being indifferently used by the Chippewas. — Tr.

[2] A plus is a prime beaver, or the worth of a beaver in other furs. The corresponding term in the Chippewa is, abimminikwa. — Tr.

[3] This coincides with Sir Alexander M'Kenzie, who, in his History of the Fur Trade, places the general ravage of this fatal disease among the North-western Indians, about 1781–2. The Leech lake Indians have increased in numbers within late years, having been exempted from disease, and living in a section of country yielding an abundant supply of both wild rice and animal food. Their strength was reported to me, in 1824, at 1700 souls. — Tr.

[4] The ursus luscus, or wolverine of the systems. — Tr.

We informed Messrs. Rèaume and Piquet that the Pillagers were on the road to Mackinac. They determined to await their arrival, after they should have made the portage. We continued our route, and arrived at the Grand Portage of the Fond du Lac, about six o'clock in the morning. Seeing a storm gathering, we encamped. In a moment the storm burst. Mr. Piquet had much ado to encamp. The lightning was very vivid, with heavy and frequent thunder-claps. Very little rain fell, but it turned to hail, which increased in weight and size to nearly a ———;[2] varying, however, in shape, some of the particles being round, others pyramidal, angular, or irregular; which put me, at the moment, as well as all who saw this phenomenon, in great fear. The storm continued scarcely half an hour; yet, in that time, the hail fell almost six inches in depth, and it was two days in melting. We were obliged to sojourn on the portage, for the men could not travel the road. Mr. Rèaume encountered this storm on the portage aux Couteaux, with a party of Indians. The day following, we moved forward, and on the fourteenth day encamped at the mouth of the Fond du Lac river, being the 7th of June. We were there detained (*degrades*[3]) by the ice.

The Indians informed us that Mr. Kay had passed a long time before, that he was a little better, and had the appearance of being on the recovery. They thought he had, by that time, passed Kewywenon. The Pillagers came in, day by day, and encamped with us. The ice was so driven into the bay, that we could not proceed. And we remained there seven days, without being able to pass out of the river, with but little to eat. We were reduced to little jack-fish, which the Indians gave us, and to the berries of the saccacomis,[4] until the 14th. On the 15th, the wind arose pretty brisk during the night, drove out the ice, and left a commodious passage for us to go as far as the river Broule, where we encamped. We had left, of the goods, one pound of sewing thread, and five bunches of small cord (maitre), which Mr. Bel[1] had made into a small net, during our detention at Fond du Lac, and had not yet been used. We set this net during the night, (in the mouth of the river,) and next morning drew out some siskawèttes,[2] and several other kinds of fish. We proceeded the next day, and made a good day's journey, encamping at Petit Peche, this side (west) of La Pointe. We put out our net, but the ice was driven in so, that we were obliged to remain the whole day, awaiting the dispersion of it. This took place at night, and we continued our route early in the morning, having taken a few fish. We got to La Pointe, where we were detained three days by contrary winds; and during this time, Le Gros Pied and his family assisted us in fishing. Although we had left our small canoes on the Grand Portage (of Fond du Lac), and resumed our large Mackinac canoe, the wind was too high to admit our crossing the bay to Point au Froid. The next day, however, at an early hour, we crossed, and went to Montreal river to encamp. In short, we encamped from river to river, until we reached L'Anse (Kewywenon), where we waited two days before we could make the traverse. There Messrs. Rèaume and Piquet rejoined us, and we effected the crossing in company, on the third day. They took the lead of us the next day, because we were now obliged to live by fishing. We got to White-fish point, after having entered all the intervening rivers to fish, and encamped. The weather proving calm the next day, we crossed over to Gros Cap, and we reached the Sault about three o'clock in the afternoon. We remained there the rest of that day and the next day, our men taking the opportunity to regale themselves. We learned that Mr. Kay had passed the Sault[3] quite ill, and that the Bras Cassé, seeing that he would not follow his advice, and being ill-treated, returned from Miner's river without being paid. It is probable we passed him in crossing Kewywenon bay, or the islands of Huron bay.

---

[1] The Turtle portage referred to in the text, is on the line of communication between lake Winnepeek of the Mississippi, and Rainy lake; and is to be distinguished from the Turtle portage (of the same region) which connects upper Red Cedar, or Cass lake, with Red lake. On referring this passage to Mr. Perrault, for the purpose of eliciting more fully the Indian superstition on the subject, he remarked that when the Chippewas began to use the portage, they found on the height of land, after leaving the Mississippi waters, and before reaching those of Rainy lake, a small hillock, having the external figure of the turtle. They surrounded the spot with painted poles, on which were hung such offerings as are made to spirits. These offerings were also laid upon the hillock, and the precincts were thus rendered sacred. Around this spot they seated themselves to smoke. The oracle was addressed by the seer of the party; and he uttered the responses, or gave such predictions as suited his purposes. — Tr.

[2] Having doubts as to the comparison used, I have thought best to suppress it. — Tr.

[3] This term, in the sense here used, is peculiar to the north-western voyageurs. — Tr.

[4] The arbutus uva ursa. The word saccacomis, which the author uses as the Indian name of this plant, is a modification of the Chippewa phrase sug-ga-kum-min-e-ganzh, being descriptive of a creeping vine, with berries, having the property of holding by, or sticking to. Ap-pah-koos-se-gun is a general term for smoking mixture,

---

and kinni-kinnick is the corresponding term with the Grand river Ottawas and southern Chippewas. The latter term is a slight modification of the animate form of the verb to mix; the animate form of this verb having its termination in *ick*, and the inanimate in *un*.—Tr.

[1] Mr. Harris is thus commonly called by the Canadians. It is a term to be traced to his Christian name of William, through the nickname of Bill. This man is still (1830) living, at a very advanced age, and, like most of the clerks, interpreters, and canoe-men of the North-west, who chance to live long, is in a state of extreme indigence. For many years he has renounced entirely the use of ardent spirits. His recollection of events is confused and imperfect, yet, at favorable moments, seems unimpaired. To the usual infirmities of age, the loss of sight has lately been added. He is a native of Albany, New York, whence he was transferred to the banks of the St. Lawrence, while quite young, and, by a series of adventures, passed a long life in the north-western regions.—Tr.

[2] Sees-kow (Chippewa), plural in sig. A kind of trout, of an oily nature.—Tr.

[3] The definite article is applied, by the French, in north-western geography, in a manner that may not appear very intelligible out of the precincts of the lakes. When they speak of Le Baye, La Prairie, and Le Sault, without any adjunct, Green Bay, Prairie des Chiens, and Sault Ste. Marie, are respectively intended. In the same manner, L'Ance is Keweena, or Kewywenon bay, and La Pointe, Point Chegoimegon, both of lake Superior.—Tr.

We left the Sault on the third day. On reaching Point Detour the wind proved favourable, and we determined to travel at night. But we had cause to repent of it; for the weather proved foul, and we got our packs wet. We spent the next day on Gravel island in drying them. We arrived at Mackinac on the 24th of July, about mid-day. While the men were employed in discharging the canoe, I went to Mr. Kay's lodgings. I found him in considerable pain. He gave me his hand, saying, "I am glad to see you. I am in a poor way. I have resolved to go down to Montreal, but fear much the fatigues of the journey. Mr. Holt will arrange your business, to whom you will address yourself to re-engage. As to Mr. Harris, it rests on my mind that he was the cause of my misfortune."

Mr. Kay's business being soon closed, he went to Montreal, in the canoes, after Captain Robinson (then in command at Mackinac) had got a second operation performed upon him by the port surgeon, which gave him great pain. At the lake of Two Mountains a suppuration of his wound took place, and, in spite of all efforts, he died at that place on the 28th of August, 1785.

[Note.—The Fourth Paper of this Section, stated in the Synopsis, is omitted.]

VIII. PHYSICAL TYPE OF THE INDIAN RACE. B.

PHYSICAL TYPE OF THE INDIAN RACE.

SYNOPSIS OF PAPERS.

1. Unity of the Human Race.
2. Examination and Description of the Hair of the Head of the North American Indians, and its Comparison with that of other Varieties of Men: with Diagrams of the Structure of the Hair. By P. A. Browne, LL. D.

1. UNITY OF THE HUMAN RACE.

It will not, it is thought, be deemed out of place, in publishing the following interesting scientific observations of Mr. Browne, detailing the results of his examinations of the hair of the North American Indian, under the searching influence of the microscope, to express the opinion which is entertained on the general law of species. For it is by no means intended, in anything that *has*, or *may be*, published in these investigations and collections of original matter, to make the topics introduced the medium of expressing theoretical views and opinions; far less of making the papers the medium of theories which may appear to call in question the general judgment of mankind, or the belief of the Christian world in the unity of the human species.

Microscopical examinations would seem to indicate that there are three principal species of human hair, as denoted by the scrutiny and comparison of the physical structure and organization of specimens from the heads of the red, black, and white man. Thought seems to be taken aback by so remarkable a disclosure in the already wonderful progress of microscopical investigations. Human hair appears, to common observation, a not very important part of the animal organization of the integumentary covering of the cranium. Its chief design appears to have been to ornament and protect the head — that crowning part and finished glory of the created structure of man. That it should be found, when viewed under magnifying power, to have been impressed with very exact and perfect laws of organization, as in round, oval, or flattened columns, with capillary tubes filled with fluids of different properties, and covered with appendages analogous to scales, subject to the power of disease, &c., as these examinations denote, is not contrary to those laws and forms of perfect geometrical exactitude, order, and beauty, which naturalists perceive in every other department of created nature. But, on the contrary, these new discoveries in the structure and properties of human hair supply a series of novel and beautiful evidences of perfection in the works of the Divine Finger. Linnæus found the highest order and exactitude in the number and shapes of a petal, or leaf. Haüy did the same in the angles of a crystal, and Agassiz in the configuration of the minutest fish's scale; or, to give a yet more striking proof of the design of creation, we refer to Dalton's great discovery of the Atomic theory. By the latter, the very elements of the universe are shown to be governed by the most exact and fixed laws of combination, and each of the examples referred to, is affirmative of the principles of the most strict order and fixity of form and exactitude of structure in natural history — an order and fixity which is found in the organization of the human hair. This, Mr. Browne has demonstrated.

The late eminent Dr. Samuel George Morton has suggested that there have existed "primordial" states of the physical organization. The introduction of this term appears intended by him to denote a condition of primordial fixity in the physical varieties of the human race, which was of a character so marked and generic, as to insure the reproduction as fixed varieties, as they are observed in the general and essential external lineaments and traits of the human race.

Analogies taken from the inferior orders of creation, animal and vegetable, and even mineral, perhaps, if examined microscopically, as well as by the principles of orictognosy, indicate that a species must consist in some new character or radical development of the species-characterizing, or frame-type of the object, and not merely in the evolvement of varieties. With respect to the animal creation, Buffon has well observed, that animals which do not possess this species-characterizing power do not reproduce themselves; and that if, as in the case of the mule, there be an apparent new species, it is utterly without the capacity of reproductive perpetuation.

It is believed that these microscopical investigations of Mr. Browne make a decided advance in Dr. Morton's but suggested theory of "primordial" conditions of human physiology. If a trinary distinction of the race is practicable, it would seem to be a more natural and philosophical conclusion to consider the differences noticed as being merely variform; and if viewed in this light, they may be regarded as coming under Dr. Morton's "primordial" states of the physical organization.

In his examination of the hair of the intermixed blood of the Indian race, Mr. Browne has observed that the hair becomes what may be regarded as a mere genealogical feature, derived, as the color of the eyes, and other physical indicia, from either of the parents, irregularly, or if by fixed laws, yet of so subtle a character that, like resemblances in the occurrences of every-day life, in the children of mixtures of the Saxon, Celtic, and other varieties of the human family, the chances of likeness are wholly beyond the power of prediction.

There are some practical views of "hybrid" life, (if this term may be applied with strict propriety to the human species,) respecting which, it is hoped to collect a body of vital statistics of a new character, such as the average stature, weight, strength, &c., of the various Indian and Indo-European men. With respect to longevity, a single remark may now be made, namely, that the first generation of the mixed races derived from the Indian stock, are comparatively short-lived. Few of the females who have enjoyed every advantage of civilization, education, and refinement, reach to the age of forty.

Two generations of ascending change from the Indian mother are completely sufficient to alter every trait of the aboriginal, and to throw back the red variety into the general character and stock of the highest grade of color and beauty of the human race. The same period of ascending change, I am informed, on the side of the progenitor, is equally sufficient to produce the complete return of the black man to the highest type of the race. Like streams flowing into the ocean, there is a uniform standard produced from these two genealogical elements. On the assumption of the truth of the latter remark, a more conclusive proof of their original unity, agreeably to the test of Buffon, could scarcely be offered.

2. EXAMINATION AND DESCRIPTION OF THE HAIR OF THE HEAD OF THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS, AND ITS COMPARISON WITH THAT OF OTHER VARIETIES OF MEN.

MADE BY P. A. BROWNE, LL.D., OF PHILADELPHIA.

My collection of Indian pile is, probably, the most extensive and valuable in existence, including specimens from all the following groups, viz., Iroquois, Algonquins, Dacotahs, and Appalachians; and from nearly all the tribes now existing, belonging to, or descended from, those groups.[1]

---

[1] The difficulties experienced in making this collection can scarcely be imagined. Through the instrumentality of the Hon. W. M. Meredith, then Secretary of the Treasury, and H. R. Schoolcraft, LL.D., and Historical Indian Agent of the United States, I obtained, from the Hon. H. H. Stewart, then Secretary of the Interior, circulars addressed to each agent, missionary, and teacher, in the service of the Department, within the Union; requesting their co-operation in collecting specimens of the pile of the heads of Indians. To these, answers were received from Jonathan C. Fletcher, Esq., of the Winnebago Agency, and Nathaniel M. M'Lean, Esq., of

The examination of the American Indian pile includes, first, its general appearance. It is long, straight, lank, and black colored, lacking lustre.

Long. The length of the hair of the heads of their females exceeds that of their males.

The hair of Weeunkaw, a Winnebago female, specimen sent by Mr. Fletcher, measures two feet six and a half inches.

That of the wife of Crane-ribs, of the same tribe, and sent by the same, one foot seven inches.

That of a child of Little Hill, who is one of the principal chiefs of the Shegonics, sent by the same, measures one foot three and a half inches.

That of a pure Choctaw female, sent by Dr. Nott, measures one foot four and a half inches.

That of a female Sioux, sent by Mr. M'Clean, measures one foot eleven inches.

That of Bishekise, a pure Sac, a descendant of Black Hawk, sent by Mr. Symington, measures one foot. Comparison. In my collection of Chinese hair specimens, I have one, the name not mentioned, sent by Lieutenant Alonzo Davis, of the United States Navy, which measures four feet three inches.

The hair of the head of the Chinese Tsou Chaoong, who exhibited in Philadelphia, specimen presented by himself, measures four feet.

The hair of Asjunk, of Canton, specimen presented by Lieutenant Davis, measures three feet eleven inches.

I have not in my possession any specimens of very long hair of the head of the oval-haired species. I have some of the beard of the Hon. Richard Vaux, presented by himself, which measures one foot eleven inches. The wool of the pure eccentrically elliptical-shaped species (negro) seldom exceeds three inches in length. That the American Indians trim the hair of their heads, is ascertained by inspection of the specimens, where the anterior extremities of the stalks, (except those of young hairs,) are found to be abrupt; whereas, if the hair was not cut, they would be pointed.[1]

---

the St. Peter's, Minnesota, Sub-agency. I next procured circulars from the Rev. C. C. Jones, Corresponding Secretary of the Board of Home Missions, and Mr. Walter Lowrie, Corresponding Secretary of the Board of Foreign Missions, of the Presbyterian church, to their missionaries. I have been favored with answers from the Rev. P. Dougherty, of the Mackinac Mission, Michigan, the Rev. R. S. Symington, of Independence, Missouri, the Rev. William Hamilton, of St. Joseph's, Missouri, the Rev. E. M'Kinney, of Council Bluff, Iowa, the Rev. R. L. M'Loughridge, of the Creek Agency, west Arkansas, and the Rev. J. E. C. Dorimus, Bayou Grosse Tête, Louisiana; and to these eight gentlemen, and to the Rev. A. Barnard, of Cass Lake, Minnesota, (who was written to by my kinsman, Mr. William Harned, of New York,) and to my friend Josiah Nott, M. D., of Mobile, Alabama, I am indebted for this valuable part of my collection of pile; and to them I return my sincere thanks.

[1] Also, they have an instrument with which they pluck their beards. Mr. Hamilton says that it is a curled wire, and that they generally carry it about them. Mr. M'Kinney remarks that, "they have, naturally, very light beards; that it is an almost invariable practice with them to pull it out; that some of them carry, tied to their persons, an instrument made for the purpose; and that he has often detected them in the process." He adds, that "occasionally they cultivate moustaches, particularly on the under lip." [? imperial.]

Straight and lank. The hair of the head of the pure American Indian is straight and lank.

The hair of John Pringle, who is a son of Little Hill, one of the principal chiefs of the Shegonic tribe, whose wife is a mixture of pure Winnebago and Sioux, is a fine specimen of straight, lank, Indian hair. (See Fig. 1.)

Some Indians are sensible of this peculiarity in their locks, and even seem to understand that it is transmissible. An American gentleman, who had remarkably black and straight hair, for his species, was introduced to an Indian chief, who immediately pointed to his hair, repeating the word "Indian." The gentleman, by way of pleasantry, remarked that there was a tradition in his family that his grandmother had once been chased by an Indian; upon which the chief replied, significantly, "He overtook her."

The hair of the American Indian must, necessarily, be straight and lank, owing to its shape, as will be explained hereinafter.

By a mixture of species, this property is affected.

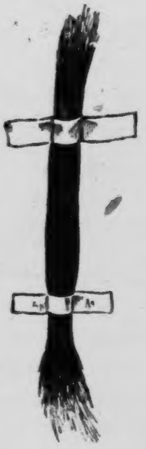


Fig. 1.

J. M. Strut, a pure Winnebago, aged 25, (specimen sent by Mr. Fletcher,) has straight, lank hair. What is the class to which his wife belongs is not mentioned; but her hair *flows*, indicating some mixture of the blood of the white man, and the hair of their child *curls*.

Michael St. Cyr, a di-Mestisin, Winnebago and French, (specimen sent by the same,) has *curled* hair.

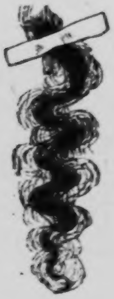


Fig. 2.

The hair of the Mulattins has, generally, a crimped or undulated appearance. (See Fig. 2.)

With the Costins, as also with *compound* hybrids, the crisp or frizzled characteristic of the wool of the eccentrically elliptical-piled species is hardly ever perceptible, but sometimes it exhibits itself in a peculiar manner; see the lock of hair of the tetra-di-Mulattin, Anna Varne, (specimen sent by Mr. M'Louridge,) which, for the space of about four inches, is straight and lank; terminating abruptly in a curl. (See Fig. 3.)

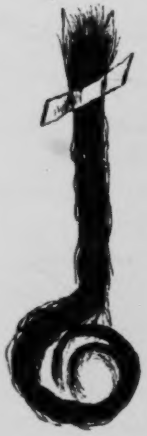


Fig. 3.

Mr. J. L. Lyon, of Dubuque, Iowa, says that, "all male Indians of the present race, from Hudson's Bay to the Rio Grande, have beards. When left to grow, it is confined principally to the chin; but by those of pure blood, in a savage state, is generally (and perhaps universally) plucked out by means of a spring, formed of a coil of brass wire."

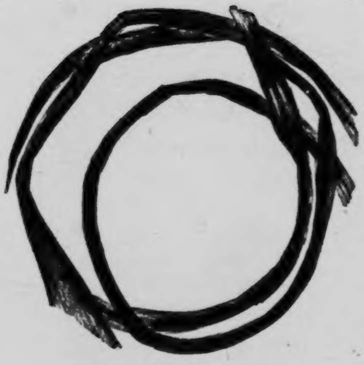


Fig. 4.

The spiral curl of the eccentrically elliptic species is beautifully exhibited in the annexed diagram of the stalk of the pile of the Bushman boy, who was brought from the Cape of Good Hope. (See Fig. 4.)

Black colored. Pure American Indians have *black hair* and black eyes. My cabinet furnishes but a single example (if even this is an exception), in the *red* hair of Lucy Choate, (familiarly called, on that account, Red Lucy.) "She is pure Creek, *as far as known*;" Mr. Loughridge, to whom I am indebted for this rare specimen, sensibly adding, "but the *red* hair indicates a mixture of white, as Indians invariably seem to have black eyes and *black* hair." The shape of this young lady's hair is *cylindrical*, with the exception of one filament, which is *oval*. It is also *straight* and *lank*.

The wool of the *pure* eccentrical elliptic-piled species is black. I know of no exception.

The pile of the oval-haired species, when not black nor colorless, has some shade of red or brown; and the progeny sometimes have hair of the color of one of the parents, and sometimes the color of the other; and at others still, the color of their hair resembles that of neither parent. I have been witness to several instances where the hair of both father and mother was black, and that of the child was red.

The colors of the pile of Mestisins are various and mutable.

Michael St. Cyr, a di-Mestisin, Winnebago and French, by his wife, a pure Winnebago, with straight black hair, has four children; one, fourteen years of age, has chestnut hair, brown complexion, and black eyes; another, aged twelve, has dark chestnut hair, brown complexion, and black eyes; the third, a brunette, has blackish-brown hair and black eyes; the fourth has blackish-brown hair, brown complexion, and black eyes.

The sister of Michael St. Cyr is married to a Pole, and has one child that has blonde hair and light eyes; and another who has light brown hair, copper complexion, and black eyes.

J. A. Alexander, an American, of light complexion, dark hair, and blue eyes, is married to a hexa-Mestisin, Winnebago and French, and has two children; one with brown hair, a sallow complexion, and dark eyes; and the other with flaxen hair, brown complexion, and blue eyes. (Specimens of all the above sent by Mr. Fletcher.)

OF THE LOSS OF THE COLORING MATTER OF THE INDIAN HAIR.

As a pure American Indian advances in years, the coloring matter of his pile becomes less and less abundant, forming what is generally, but improperly, termed "*grey* hair." It is colorless hair.

A Winnebago female, aged 100, (her name not given by Mr. Fletcher, who sent the specimen,) has hair of an entire ashy-white color.

Meshegenequa, a hexa-Mestisin, French and Chippewa, a female, aged 80, (specimen sent by Mr. Symington,) has hair entirely silver-white.

Catherine Myat, a tetra-Mestisin, Winnebago and French, aged 80, (specimen sent by Mr. Fletcher,) has about one-third of her hair silver-white.

Ashguagonabe, a pure Chippewa chief, aged 70, (specimen sent by Mr. Dougherty,) has about one-half of his hair white.

It is probable that the American Indians do not turn (what is termed) *grey*, as early as the oval-haired species.

Muhguhreh, a mixture of Ottawa and Chippewa, who is between 60 and 70, (specimen sent by Mr. Dougherty,) has only a few white hairs.

White-crane, a pure Kanzas, aged 60, (specimen presented by Mr. Hamilton,) has no white hairs.

A pure Iowa, male, aged 60, name not mentioned, (presented by the same,) has a few colorless hairs.

Ojegance, aged 60, mixture of Chippewa and Chippewa and Ottawa, (specimen sent by Mr. Dougherty,) has a few white hairs.

Ahgasa, of the same tribe, (specimen presented by the same,) aged 60, has a few white hairs.

Nawhekaw, a pure Winnebago chief, aged 58, (specimen sent by Mr. Fletcher,) has about one-third white hairs.

Broad-face, a mixture of Winnebago and Menomonee and Sioux, aged 56, (sent by the same,) has about one-half white hairs.

Kewagishkum, a mixture of Ottawa and Potawatomie, aged 50, has no white hairs.

Five others, of different tribes, whose ages, respectively, are something less than 50, have no colorless hairs.

Mr. Hamilton saw an Indian man, from 20 to 23 years old, who was partly grey, and a boy of from 10 to 12 years old, who was quite grey. No specimens were forwarded.

There are many cases mentioned in books, of the hair of the oval-piled man becoming *suddenly* white, and I have several specimens in my cabinet which belong to that category; but I have no examples of this kind in regard to the hair of the American Indian, unless the cases above referred to, as reported by Mr. Hamilton, may so be considered.[1]

---

[1] They may have been Albinos.

LACKING LUSTRE.

The hair of the head of the American Indian is deficient in lustre. This may be owing, in part, at least, to a want of cleanliness; for, although they grease their locks, they appear to be seldom combed or washed. I have frequently found small fragments of feathers and other foreign matters among the Indian hair; not to mention some other things still more exceptionable.

The presence or absence of lustre is a characteristic of some importance in the examination and description of pile. There is a striking contrast between the dull ash-colored hair of the aged Winnebago female, and the shining silver-white hair of Meshegenequa, both above mentioned.

PARTICULAR DESCRIPTION OF THE AMERICAN INDIAN HAIR.

PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

There is no word in common use which includes hair and wool; we have therefore adopted the term *pile*, from *pilus*, a hair.

We have never seen an accurate definition of this integument. It may be described as follows: it is a filamentous appendage of the skin of the mammalia, formed of gelatine and protein, emanating from cells growing at its *lower* extremity only, consisting of—First, a root, which is, for the most part, imbedded in the dermis, and connected with vessels and nerves; and Second, an unvital protruding stalk, terminating at its inferior extremity in a button, and at its superior one in a point; this stalk is composed of, First, a squamose, imbricated cortex; Second, a fibrous intermediate substance; and Third, a coloring matter. Pile possesses great ductility, flexibility, elasticity, and tenacity; is highly electric—polarizes light—is of great endurance—has but little hydroscopic properties—very little power to conduct caloric—a very low specific gravity—no contractibility, and is of gradual and periodical decidence.

The tegumentary appendages of the American Indian belong to this category.

Pile is divisible into *hair* and *wool*, which differ one from the other, as follows:

First, in *shape*—hair being either cylindrical, cylindroidal, oval or ovoidal; while wool is eccentrically elliptical.

Second, in uniformity of shape of the same filament; hair being, generally, of the same shape throughout the filament, but wool is less uniform in this particular.

Third, in the formation of the cortex; the scales of which upon hair are less numerous, and more depressed; while those upon wool are more numerous, and less depressed.

Fourth, in direction; hair being straight, flowing, or curled, while wool is crisped or frizzled, and sometimes spirally curled. (See Fig. 4.)

Fifth, in inclination; hair issuing out of the epidermis at an oblique angle thereto; but wool issues out of the epidermis at a right angle.

Sixth, in color; hair often assuming a variety of colors; but wool being generally white, brown, or black.

Seventh, in uniformity of color in a single filament; each separate filament of wool being monochromatic; while that of hair of some of the lower animals is often polychromatic.

Eighth, in dimensions; hair being generally longer, and of a greater diameter than wool.

Ninth, in exuberance; wool being generally produced in greater profusion than hair, upon a given area of skin.

Tenth, in the apex; that of hair being more, and that of wool less pointed, in proportion to their relative diameters.

Eleventh, in the disposition of the coloring matter; a hair (when perfect) having its coloring matter in a central canal, which is not the case with the most perfect wool.

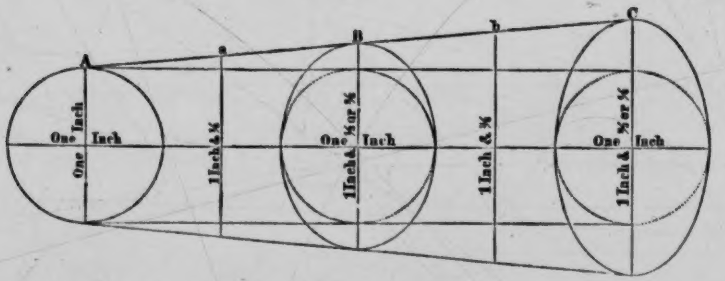
The covering of the head of the American Indian is *hair;* it is in shape cylindrical or cylindroidal — the scales are not numerous, and are depressed; it is in direction straight and lank; it issues out of the epidermis at an oblique angle, and it has no central canal for the coloring matter, which is disseminated in the cortex or fibres. It differs from the hair of the head of the white man, in these two respects; that the latter is, in shape, oval or ovoidal, and it has a central canal for the conveyance of the coloring.

That peculiar *lank* appearance of the hair of the head of the American Indian is owing to its cylindrical form. In all piles constructed according to the plan revealed by the modern perfect examinations under the microscope, there are antagonizing forces, viz.: that of the ductile and elastic fibres, to stretch and shrink, whenever acted upon mechanically or chemically, and that of the non-ductile and inelastic cortex to resist these forces. When the hair is *cylindrical*, the stretching and shrinking powers are equal on all sides of the filament; which, (equality,) preserves the hair straight, and gives it this lank appearance. But when the hair is oval, there are a greater number of fibres upon the two flattened sides, than upon the ellipsoids; and there is, consequently, a tendency to curve in that direction. Pass a cylindrical hair, from an American Indian's head, between rollers, so that it will become flattened, and it will immediately curl, according to the degree of depression.

Having once established this law, we are no longer at a loss to determine the *shape* of the filaments from the *appearance* of the hair; if the pile hangs *straightly* and *lankly*, we may safely pronounce that it is *cylindrical;* if it curls, it must be oval; if it has *spiral* curls, it is eccentrically elliptical.

In the following figure, (Fig. 5,) A represents the cylindrical, B the oval, and C the eccentrically elliptical pile.

Fig. 5.



These are the *general* forms of pile. We must now notice some that are special.

As the figure recedes from A (the cylindrical), on its passage to B (the oval), it becomes, first, cylin*droidal* (a), where the greatest diameter is less than $\frac{1}{8}$ greater than its smallest; and secondly, lesser ovo*idal*, from a to B, where the greatest diameter exceeds its smallest by more than $\frac{1}{8}$, but by less than $\frac{2}{8}$ (or $\frac{1}{4}$). As the figure recedes from B (the oval), on its passage to C (the eccentrically elliptical), it becomes, first, greater ovo*idal*, from B to b, where the greatest diameter exceeds that of its lesser by more than $\frac{2}{8}$, (or $\frac{1}{4}$,) but by less than $\frac{3}{8}$; and secondly, eccentrically ellip*toidal*, from b to C, where the greatest diameter exceeds that of its lesser by more than $\frac{3}{8}$, but by less than $\frac{4}{8}$ (or $\frac{1}{2}$).

We have seldom found a filament of pile, of the head, whose greatest diameter exceeded that of its lesser by more than $\frac{3}{8}$.

Some Examples of the Diameters of Piles according to the above Classes and Varieties.

CLASS I. Including the cylindrical and cylindroidal.

Variety 1. Cylindrical.

First, *modern* hairs.

1. Hair of the head of a Choctaw American Indian, the specimen presented by Doctor J. Nott; diameter $\frac{1}{217}$ of an inch.

2. Of Big-water, American Indian chief, killed in battle, in Texas; specimen presented by Col. James Morgan; diameter $\frac{1}{236}$.

3. Of Cap-o-co-mah, a male Sac Indian, a descendant of Black Hawk; specimen presented by the Rev. R. S. Symington; diameter $\frac{1}{246}$.

Second, *ancient* hairs.

4. Hair from the head of a mummy found in the Temple of the Sun, near Lima, Peru; specimen presented by Prof. Pancoast, of Philadelphia; diameter $\frac{1}{344}$.

5. Hair from the head of a mummy found at Pachamack, Peru; specimen presented by Prof. S. G. Morton; diameter $\frac{1}{312}$.

6. Hair from the head of a mummy found at Arica, Peru; specimen presented by the same; diameter $\frac{1}{318}$.

7. Hair from a mummy found at Pisco, Peru; specimen presented by the same; diameter $\frac{1}{418}$.

8. Hair from a mummy found in Mexico; specimen presented by the same; diameter $\frac{1}{304}$.

9. Hair from a mummy found in Brazil; specimen presented by the same; diameter $\frac{1}{281}$.

Variety 2. Cylin*droidal.*

1. Hair of the head of a Choctaw American Indian, (female;) specimen presented by Doctor J. Nott, of Mobile; diameters, $\frac{1}{304}$ by $\frac{1}{350}$.

2. Hair of the head of the Chinese, Tsou Chaoong; specimen presented by himself; diameters, $\frac{1}{207}$ by $\frac{1}{304}$.

CLASS II. (Including oval and ovoidals.)

Variety 1. *Oval.*

1. The hair of the head of his Excellency, General George Washington; specimen presented by Mr. Perrie; diameters $\frac{1}{312}$ by $\frac{1}{416}$.

2. The hair of the head of his Excellency, General Andrew Jackson; specimen presented by the Hon. C. J. Ingersoll; diameters, $\frac{1}{212}$ by $\frac{1}{312}$.

3. The hair of the head of William F. Van Amringe, Esq., of New York; specimen presented by himself; diameters, $\frac{1}{250}$ by $\frac{1}{364}$.

Variety 2. *Lesser ovoidal.*

1. Hair of the head of the Hon. John B. Gibson, Chief Justice of Pennsylvania; specimen presented by himself; diameters, $\frac{1}{237}$ by $\frac{1}{412}$.

2. Hair of the head of the Hon. John Sergeant; specimen presented by himself; diameters, $\frac{1}{207}$ by $\frac{1}{304}$.

3. Hair of the head of Samuel S. Halderman, Esq., Professor of Natural History in the University of Pennsylvania; specimen presented by himself; diameters, $\frac{1}{384}$ by $\frac{1}{437}$.

Variety 3. *Greater ovoidal.*

1. Hair of the head of Count Wass, of Hungary; specimen presented by Col. James Page, of Philadelphia; diameters, $\frac{1}{381}$ by $\frac{1}{416}$.

2. Hair of the head of the Emperor Napoleon Bonaparte; specimen presented by Prof. John K. Mitchell, of Philadelphia; diameters, $\frac{1}{318}$ by $\frac{1}{418}$.

3. Hair of the head of Prof. Benjamin Silliman, the elder; specimen presented by himself; diameters, $\frac{1}{213}$ by $\frac{1}{304}$.

CLASS III. Eccentrically elliptical, and eccentrically elliptoidal.

Variety 1. *Eccentrically elliptical.*

1. The wool of Congo Billy, the manumitted slave of Col. S. B. Davis, of Wilmington, Delaware; specimen presented by Col. Davis; diameters, $\frac{1}{312}$ by $\frac{1}{910}$.

2. The wool of the Bushman Boy, brought from the Cape of Good Hope by the American Consul, M. Chase; specimen presented by Prof. C. Meigs, of Philadelphia; diameters, $\frac{1}{315}$ by $\frac{1}{855}$.

Variety 2. *Eccentrically elliptoidal.* (No examples.)

MIXTURE OF CLASSES.

1. Of simple hybrids.

Variety 1. Mixture of white and black.

1. The hair of the head of a person supposed to be an equal mixture of black and white; some $\frac{1}{320}$ by $\frac{1}{460}$, others, $\frac{1}{316}$ by $\frac{1}{562}$.

Variety 2. Mixture of black and Indian.

1. The hair of the head of Bartola, the female Aztec dwarf, exhibited in New York, in February, 1852; specimen presented by Messrs. Kettel & Moore, of New York; diameters of some hairs, $\frac{1}{460}$, others, $\frac{1}{274}$ by $\frac{1}{560}$.

Variety 3. Indian and white.

1. Hair of the head of Lucy Choate, aged 11, Creek American Indian and white; specimen presented by the Rev. R. M. Loughridge; diameters of some hairs, $\frac{1}{416}$, and others $\frac{1}{304}$ by $\frac{1}{250}$.

2. Compound hybrids.

1. Hair of the head of ——— Hinten, late hair-dresser, of Philadelphia, whose father was white, and whose mother was the progeny of an Indian and Negress; specimen presented by himself; diameters of some hairs, $\frac{1}{312}$, others $\frac{1}{281}$ by $\frac{1}{416}$, and others still $\frac{1}{250}$ by $\frac{1}{500}$.

2. Hair of the head of Tuh-duh-guh-mak-ke, a male Ottawa Indian, mixture with Negro and white; specimen presented by the Rev. P. Dougherty; diameters of some hairs, $\frac{1}{305}$, others $\frac{1}{315}$ by $\frac{1}{500}$, and others still, $\frac{1}{305}$ by $\frac{1}{500}$.

3. The hair of the head of Ellen Perryman, who is ½ white, ¼ Muscogee American Indian, and ¼ black; specimen presented by the same; diameters of some hairs, $\frac{1}{416}$, others $\frac{1}{415}$ by $\frac{1}{312}$, and others still, $\frac{1}{600}$ by $\frac{1}{307}$.

Of the different Parts of the Pile of the American Indians.

Of the *Button*. The inferior extremity of the stalk of pile is soft and cellular; it is either spheroidal, ovoidal, spindle, pestle, or club-shaped, or amorphous. In the oval-haired species, when the pile is healthy, this portion is generally spindle-shaped, white, and either transparent or translucent. It had been called the "bulb;" but as the same name had also been given to the follicle, Henlée, (who has given an elaborate account of it,) calls it the "button." Fig. 6 gives a correct representation of the button of one of the oval-haired species.

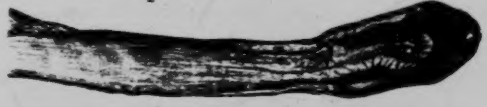


Fig. 6.

Now let the reader compare this with the following figures of the buttons of some of the pure Indian tribes.

THE BUTTONS OF THE HAIR OF THE HEAD OF THE AMERICAN INDIAN.

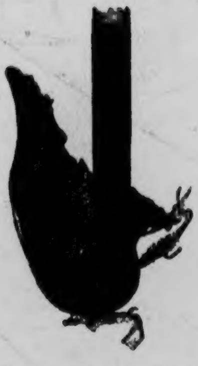


Fig. 7.—Button of a Sac.

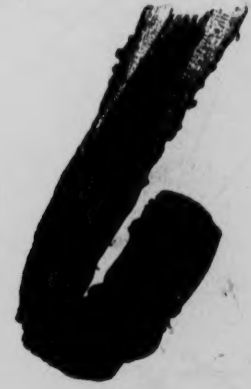


Fig. 8.—Button of a Sac.

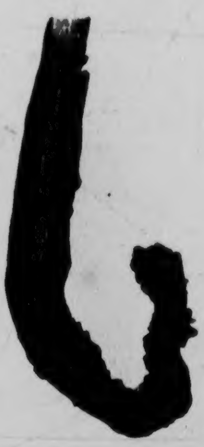


Fig. 9.—Button of an Ottawa.

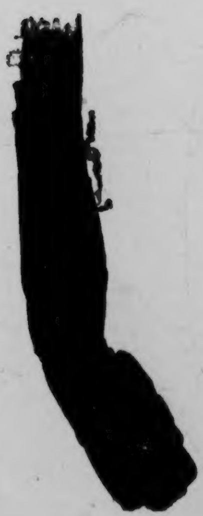


Fig. 10.—Button of a Winnebago.

Fig. 11.—Button of a Winnebago.

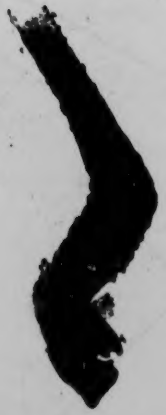


Fig. 12.—Button of a Sioux.

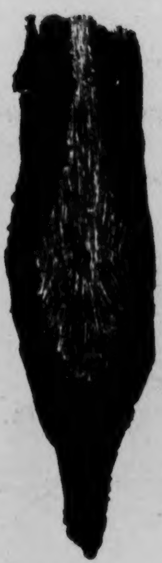


Fig. 13.—Button of a Pawnee.

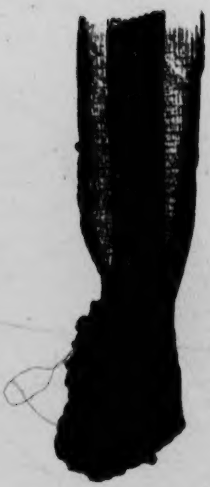


Fig. 14.—Button of an Iowa.

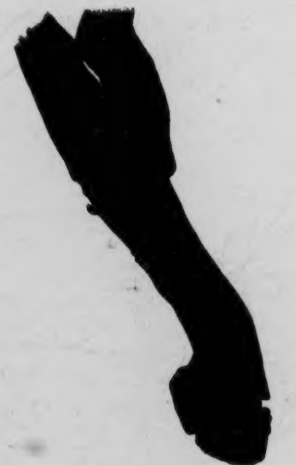


Fig. 15.—Button of an Otoe.

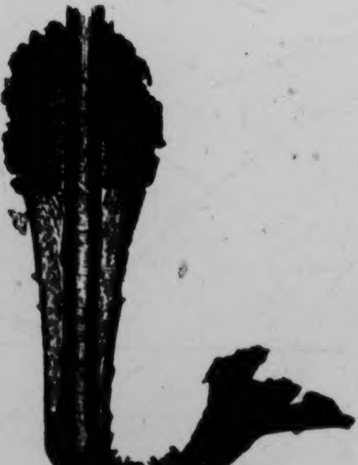


Fig. 16.—Button of an Omalia.

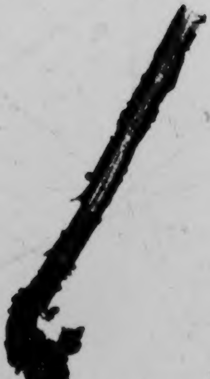


Fig. 17.—Button of a Tetra-mono-Costin.

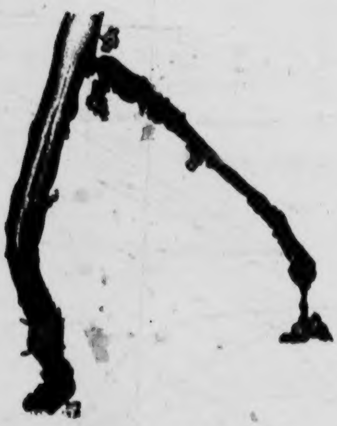
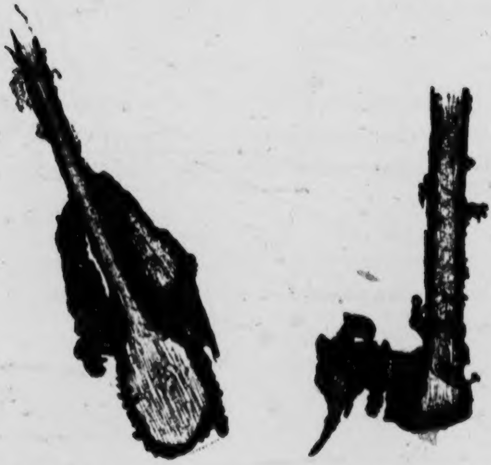


Fig. 18.—Button of a Tetra-mono-Costin.



Figs. 19 and 20.—Button and Follicle of a Tetra-di-Mestisin.

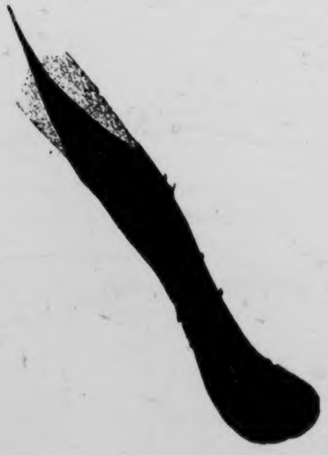


Fig. 21.—Button, Shaft, and Point of a new Hair, which has not penetrated the Epidermis.

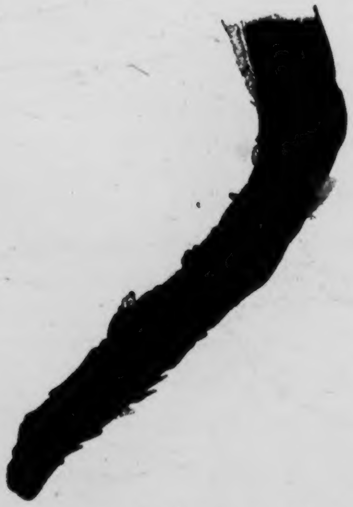


Fig. 22, B.—Shaft of the Hair of a Sac, drawn out of the Button.

And to complete the comparison, I give the button of the wool of one of the pure eccentrically elliptical species. (See Fig. 30, No. 3.)

Of the Shaft of the American Indian Hair.

This portion of the stalk of pile, which extends from near the inferior extremity of the button[1] to the apex of the stalk, may be examined under three heads, viz.: the cortex, the intermediate fibres, and the centre.

Of the Cortex of the Hair of the American Indian.

The cortex of *this* hair, like that of the hair of the oval-piled species, is *squamose;* but the scales are less numerous, more rounded, and more depressed, than they are on wool.

Fig. 23, A, represents the scales upon hair, and B, those on wool.

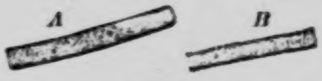


Fig. 23.

I have an instrument with which I can *plane* a shaving of cortex from the shaft of pile, as you would plane a shaving from a piece of wood.

The annexed figure represents one of these shavings. (See Fig. 23, B.)

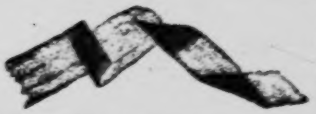


Fig. 23.—B.

Of the Fibres of the Hair of the American Indian.

Between the cortex and the centre of pile, are the fibres which constitute the strength of the shaft

Fig. 24, A, represents the shaft of the hair of the Hon. Henry Clay; and Fig. B, that of a Choctaw Indian, (the specimen sent by Dr. Nott,) where the cortex has been purposely artificially removed, leaving the fibres exposed to view.

These fibres of pile are supposed to be composed of fibrils of smaller dimensions. See Fig. 25, which represents the disrupted hair of the eyebrow of one of the oval-piled species, where fibres are exposed to view which have a diameter of less than $\frac{1}{10000}$ part of an inch.

---

[1] I say, "from near the inferior extremity of the button," &c.; for the lower part of the shaft may always be drawn out of the button, and often is so withdrawn, leaving the button in the dermis of the head. The following figure exhibits the shaft of a hair of an oval-piled man, with the inferior extremity thus pulled out of the button.

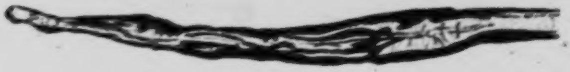


Fig. 22.—A.

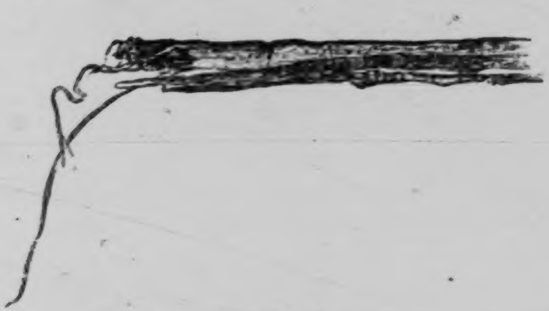


Fig. 24.—A.

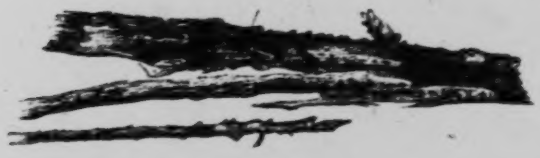


Fig. 24.—B.

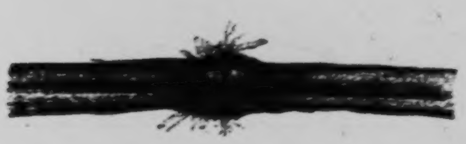


Fig. 25.

To assist the examination of the internal conformation, pile may be *crushed*. The following is a fragment of a hair which has undergone that operation.

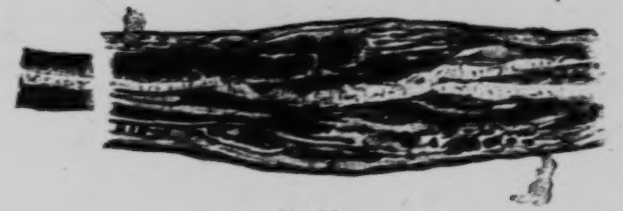


Fig. 26.

Of the Centre of the Indian Hair.

The coloring matter of the hair of the oval-piled species (when there is any coloring matter) is found in a central canal; but that of the hair of the American Indian, and of the wool of the eccentrically elliptical species, is disseminated in the cortex and the fibres.

I have an instrument with which I can cut a transverse section or disk of pile so thinly, as to be viewed under the microscope as a *transparent* object. In this way it can be ascertained where the coloring matter flows, or is disseminated. The annexed figure represents a disk of a hair of the head of Lucy Choate, before referred to.

Fig. 27.

The anterior termination of pile, in its normal state, is pointed; consequently, young hairs that have not yet pierced the epidermis are always in that state; and so are all hairs that have not been cut or injured. But if the point be removed, *that* hair remains for ever after abrupt, and does not grow pointed again, as M. Mandl has supposed. (See Comptes Rendue, 1845.)

The following figure represents a fragment of the scalp of Big-water, (before referred to,) with a pointed hair that had not pierced the epidermis.

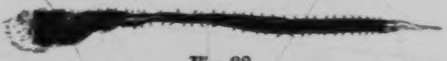


Fig. 28.

Sometimes this termination is furcated, trifurcated, and even quadrufurcated. The following figures exhibit these appearances: — A, represents the bifurcated hair of the head of a lady of the oval-piled species. B, the bifurcated wool of Congo Billy, a pure excentrically elliptical. C, the trifurcated hair of a Choctaw Indian. D, the quadrufurcated pile of another Choctaw Indian.

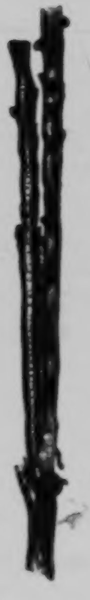


Fig. 29.—A.

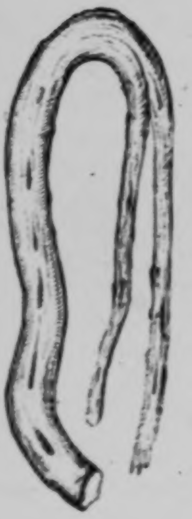


Fig. 29.—B.

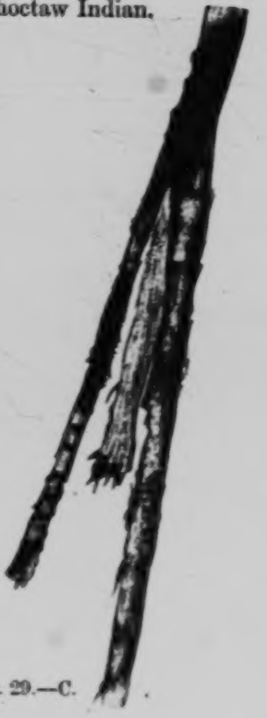


Fig. 29.—C.

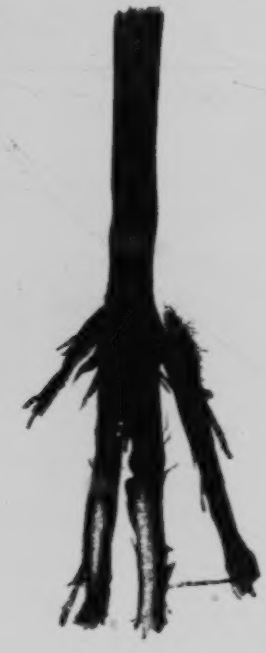


Fig. 29.—D.

Of the Follicle of the Hair of the American Indian.

The follicle or root of pile, improperly called the "bulbe," must next be considered. The follicle is imbedded in the dermis, and encloses the button, as in the following figures may be seen. No. 1 shows the follicle and button of an oval-haired man. No. 2, the same parts of an American Indian. No. 3, those of one of the excentrically elliptical species.

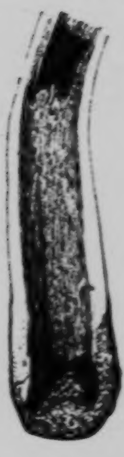


Fig. 30.—No. 1.

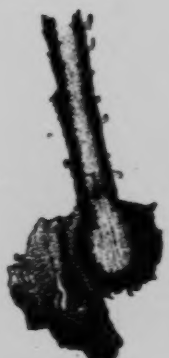


Fig. 30.—No. 2.

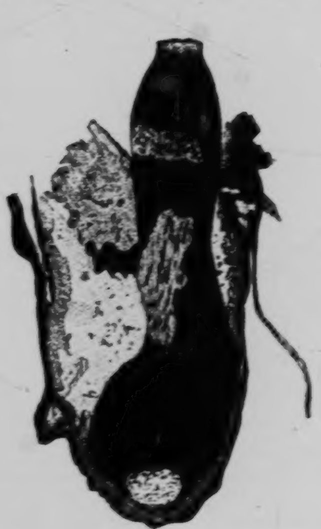


Fig. 30.—No. 3.

Of the Ductility, Elasticity, and Tenacity of Indian Pile.

I have an instrument, of my own invention, with which I can take the ductility, elasticity,[1] and tenacity of pile, at one operation. With this "trichometer" I operated upon the hair of the pure Chippewa, Ashquagonabe, diameter $\frac{1}{326}$ of an inch, (sent by Mr. Dougherty,) with the following result.

With 320 grains, one inch of it stretched $\frac{1}{30}$ of an inch; elasticity entire.[2]
" 570 " " $\frac{3}{30}$ " "
" 670 " " $\frac{4}{30}$ " minus $\frac{1}{30}$ of an inch.
" 720 " " $\frac{5}{30}$ " "
" 870 " " [illegible] " " [illegible]

---

[1] Flexibility of pile includes elasticity; for instance, when you bend a filament of pile to one side, the fibres of the other side must elongate, or they would break.

[2] By this expression is meant that the hair returns to its original dimensions upon the removal of the weight. It must be recollected that elasticity never exceeds the action, as irritability does; but pile has no irritability.

With 920 grains, one inch of it stretched $\frac{25}{50}$ of an inch; elas. minus $\frac{17}{50}$ of an inch.
" 970 " " $\frac{27}{50}$ " " $\frac{18}{50}$
" 1020 " " $\frac{28}{50}$ " " $\frac{19}{50}$
" 1070 " " $\frac{28}{50}$ " " $\frac{20}{50}$
" 1120 " " $\frac{31}{50}$ " " "
" 1170 it broke.

In order to institute a comparison of this Indian's hair with that of an oval-haired man, I operated upon the hair of the Hon. John Sergeant, whose diameters are $\frac{1}{267}\times\frac{1}{384}=\frac{1}{320}$, one half of a cylindrical hair.

With 270 grains, one inch of it stretched $\frac{1}{50}$ of an inch; elasticity entire.[1]
" 290 " " $\frac{2}{50}$ " "
" 330 " " $\frac{3}{50}$ " "
" 450 " " $\frac{4}{50}$ " "
" 490 " " $\frac{5}{50}$ " "
" 530 " " $\frac{6}{50}$ " minus $\frac{1}{50}$ of an inch.
" 540 " " $\frac{7}{50}$ " " $\frac{2}{50}$
" 550 " " $\frac{8}{50}$ " " $\frac{3}{50}$
" 580 " " $\frac{9}{55}$ " " "
" 590 " " $\frac{10}{50}$ " " "
" 600 " " $\frac{12}{50}$ " " $\frac{4}{50}$
" 620 " " $\frac{14}{50}$ " " $\frac{6}{50}$
" 630 " " $\frac{17}{50}$ " " $\frac{7}{50}$
" 640 " " $\frac{18}{50}$ " " $\frac{8}{50}$
" 650 " " $\frac{20}{50}$ " " $\frac{11}{50}$
" 670 " " $\frac{22}{50}$ " " $\frac{13}{50}$
" 680 " " $\frac{24}{50}$ " " $\frac{15}{50}$
" 700 " " $\frac{26}{50}$ " " $\frac{16}{50}$
" 710 " " $\frac{28}{50}$ " " $\frac{17}{50}$
" 720 it broke.

The Weight of the Hair of the American Indian.

A fragment of a hair of an American Indian, measuring exactly one inch, weighs $\frac{1}{250}$ part of a grain.

The specific gravity of the hair of the American Indian is unascertained.

Incineration of the American Indian Hair.

I exposed ten grains of the hair of the head of an American Indian for thirty minutes to the heat of an anthracite furnace, in a platina crucible; the residue was a black turgid mass, somewhat fibrous on the exterior, weighing two grains.

---

[1] See note to preceding page.

Upon being re-exposed to the same heat, in a Dutch crucible, for thirty more minutes, (during the greater part of the time it was red-hot,) the residue was a black powder, weighing less than a grain.

Of Albinos among the American Indians.

I have no specimen of the hair of an American Indian Albino; but notice that Wafer says that he saw many of them among the native American Indians of the Isthmus of Darien; and in Latham's Natural History of the Varieties of Mankind, p. 395, it is stated that many of the Luni Indians of California are Albinos.

The Polarization of Light with the Hair of the American Indians.

I have not been able to succeed in polarizing light with the hair of the pure American Indian.

Of Ancient American Indian Hair.

I have in my cabinet ancient Indian hair from the Temple of the Sun, near Lima, Peru; from Pachamach, Peru; from Arica, Peru; from Pisco, Peru; from Mexico; and from the interior of Brazil. They are all cylindrical, straight, and lank; and all, except the Brazilian, of a very dark-brown color, (having, doubtless, been black:) the Brazilian hair is black. As far as these specimens go, they tend to show that the ancient Indians of America (the mound-builders[1]) were the same species of men as the present American Indians.

I have some Egyptian mummy hair, presented by Mr. George R. Gliddon, and Prof. John K. Mitchell, M. D., which is *oval*.

I design to make a more particular examination, and give a minute description of these ancient hairs at some future time.

---

[1] The mound-builders were the ancestors of the existing Indian race. The theory of there having been prior races of superior civilization and arts has no countenance from examinations made in this work.—H. R. S.

IX. LANGUAGE. B.

LANGUAGE.

SYNOPSIS OF PAPERS.

A. CLASSIFICATION OF THE INDIAN LANGUAGES.

1. A Letter, enclosing a Table of Generic Indian Families of Languages. By the late Hon. Albert Gallatin.
2. A Reply to some of the Historical and Philological Topics of Investigation brought forward in the foregoing Letter of Mr. Gallatin. By H. R. S.

B. PRINCIPLES OF THE INDIAN LANGUAGES.

3. An Analysis of the Pronominal and Verbal Forms of the Indian Languages; proposed by a distinguished Foreigner. Anonymous.
4. Grammatical Comments on the preceding Queries. By H. R. S.
5. Observations on some of the Indian Dialects of Northern California. By G. Gibbs.
6. New Vocabularies of various Dialects and Languages.

A. CLASSIFICATION OF THE INDIAN LANGUAGES.

1. A Letter enclosing a Table of Generic Indian Families of Languages.

By the late Hon. Albert Gallatin.

New York, 21*st July*, 1846.

Dear Sir: — I am very desirous to obtain vocabularies of the Comanches, Pahi-Mahas, and other Indian tribes of Texas and head-waters of Red river and Arkansas, delegations of which are now at Washington. I do not want that of the Caddoes, nor of any of the tribes which have been transferred from the eastern to the western side of the Mississippi.

You may be generally apprized of my labors in that respect, but not of the extent to which they have been carried. In the year 1826, having already collected many materials, I applied to the War Department for such information as might have been collected in the Indian Office; and this being very scanty, the Secretary, at my request, sent a circular to the Indian agents, enclosing models of vocabularies, select sentences, and grammatical queries. Mr. Barbour had never attended to that subject, and was not a philologist. His circular and all the enclosures were drawn by me; and I enclose a printed copy, which, by looking at the notes appended thereto, will explain the general plan and object for which the queries and sentences were selected. Should it be deemed useful again to distribute some of these, I may send you about twenty printed copies still in my hands. I have none of those designated in the circular as No. 3, which is not material, as it only showed what, at that time, was the extent of my knowledge on that subject.

Complete, or nearly complete answers were received for the following languages: — Mohawk, Cherokee, Muscogee (Creek), Choctaw, and Caddo; and the late E. James published a translation of the select sentences in the Ojibwa or Chippewa. Shorter vocabularies were received from several other quarters by the Department, all which were transmitted to me. I availed myself of all the publications within my reach; of the extensive manuscript collection of vocabularies by Mr. Duponceau; of those of the Harvard University; of the Philadelphia Philosophical Society; and in fact of every learned Society in Boston, Worcester, New York, and Philadelphia. The result was, "The Synopsis of the Indian Tribes of the United States, east of the Rocky Mountains, &c.," published, in 1836, in the 2d volume of the American Antiquarian Society. To this I presume that I may refer, as I presented a copy to the Congress Library, and two to the War Department.

Although the vocabularies and grammatical notices of the few above-mentioned tribes were inserted at large in that Synopsis, I was, in preparing a general comparative vocabulary, obliged to reduce the large one first proposed, to one of 180 words for fifty-three tribes. Miscellaneous, but still extensive vocabularies were added for about twenty other tribes.

Since that time, I had ceased to attend to that subject, and had received no other additional information but complete vocabularies of the Black-Feet and of the Upsarokas or Crows, communicated by Mr. Kenneth M'Kenzie, the agent of the St. Louis Fur Company, who has resided near twenty years at the mouth of the Yellow Stone river. But Mr. Hale, the Philologist of the Exploring Expedition, has now supplied us with vocabularies of every tribe of the Oregon Territory within the late treaty boundaries of the United States, besides useful information respecting the languages of the tribes of California and of those north of Fuca's Straits. He has also obtained from the missionaries, abridged grammars of three of the most important languages of Oregon; and he has adopted my own vocabulary of 180 words, which greatly facilitates the comparison of the languages of that region with those of the Indians east of the Stony Mountains.

Encouraged by this great accession, I am preparing for the press, 1st, a general, but still very incomplete view of the grammar or structure of the several languages of the aborigines of America; which, as far as they have been examined, seem to leave no doubt of the general unity of that race: 2d, a comparative vocabulary of the languages of the tribes within the United States and north of their northern boundaries; to which I am enabled to add specimens of those of California from the 32d to the 42d degree of latitude. I may hereafter submit to you some observations respecting the mode of obtaining more complete information respecting the grammars, and will now only say, that, with a single exception, (at least so far as I know,) recourse must be had for that purpose to the missionaries, who alone have a sufficient motive for studying those difficult languages, and but few of whom have the sufficient education and talent to perform the task successfully. The exception is that of the Ojibwa language, of which Mr. Schoolcraft, owing to particular circumstances, is able, if he can devote his time to it, to give a full and satisfactory grammar. At present it is only to the vocabularies that I wish to draw your attention.

Of all the tribes within the United States, now or formerly living east of the Mississippi, I want the vocabularies of only three small ones, the Piankeshaw, which I know to be a dialect of the Miami, and two tribes of about 300 souls each, the Alibamous and the Coosadas, incorporated with the Creeks, but speaking at least a different dialect, if not language. Although the Seminoles are well known to the Muscogees, they may, and probably do speak a distinct dialect, of which it would be desirable to have a vocabulary.

The only deficiencies west of the Stony Mountains are with respect to Indians north of the United States, and for supplying which I must apply to Russian and English authorities.

Where I am most defective is in the south-western portion of the country, between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains, principally the tribes of Texas, and those roving on the head-waters of Red river and of the Arkansas river, south of the Pawnees and west of the Caddoes. I beg, therefore, leave to repeat my request that vocabularies may be obtained of the languages of the Indian tribes from that quarter, now at Washington, principally of the Camanches and Pani-Mahaws.

I enclose, for that purpose, a short vocabulary of about sixty-eight words, which I have generally adopted for my intended publication, and which is extracted from that of 180 words. I have added the 112 words, which, together with the sixty-eight, complete the said large vocabulary. The location or range of the several tribes is also respectfully requested.

I also enclose a general synopsis of the Indian tribes embraced in my plan, arranged into families of language and languages, according to their vocabularies, and geographically, as they respectively stood when first coming into contact with the Europeans. It may not be so fully understood without a map and explanations. But you will perceive that I have vocabularies of more than 100 languages, reducible to about forty families. Eight or ten of these cover nineteen-twentieths of the whole territory.

As this, if I live long enough to complete it, will be my last contribution to that object, I naturally feel anxious to make it as full and as useful to those who may succeed me, as possible. Permit me to add, that although I derived great assistance from the materials collected, as above stated, by the War Department, the only expense incurred by government was that of printing the circular and forms of the vocabularies and grammatical queries which I have enclosed. I ask now for no other but analogous assistance. I will publish the work at my own risk and expense. Should it hereafter appear to be useful for the public service, to distribute copies amongst the agents of the Indian Department, it may then subscribe for the necessary number.

I pray you to be kind enough to acknowledge the receipt of this communication, and I have the honor to remain, respectfully,

Dear Sir,
Your obedient servant,
ALBERT GALLATIN.

W. MEDILL, ESQ.
Commissioner of Indian Affairs,
WASHINGTON.

Excuse the erasures, &c. I write with difficulty, and have at this moment no amanuensis.—A. G.

SYNOPSIS OF INDIAN TRIBES.

A. NORTHERN, EXTENDING FROM THE ATLANTIC TO THE PACIFIC OCEAN.

Families.	Languages.	Languages.
	EAST OF ROCKY MOUNTAINS.	WEST OF ROCKY MOUNTAINS.
I. Eskimaux	1. Greenland.	3. Kotzebue's Sound... } Behring's Straits.
	Labrador.*	4. Tshuktchi .... }
II. Athapaccas	2. Hudson's Bay.	5. Kadiac Island, N. W. coast America.
	Churchill's river, Hudson's Bay.*	8. Tahculi or Carriers (Harmon and Hale).
	Copper Mine river,* &c.	9. Kenai, Cook's Inlet.
	6. Cheppeyans.	10. Tlascani, near mouth of Columbia (Hale).
	7. Sussees.	11. Umquas, south of do. (Hale).
		Loucheux,* mouth Mackenzie's R., d'tful.

B. EAST OF THE MISSISSIPPI.

Families.		Languages.	Families.		Language.	
III. Algonkins	Northern	12. Sheshatapoosh } North'n side			34. Saukies, Foxes, Kickapoos.†	
		Gulf of St.			35. Shawnoes.	
		13. Scoffies .... } Lawrence.			36. Menomenies.	
		14. Montagnars, Saguenay to Montreal.	IV. Iroquois	Western	37. Wyandotts, or Hurons.	
				Five Nations.	38. Senecas.	
		15. Eastern Chipeways (Long).			39. Cayugas.	
		16. Ojibways.			40. Onondagoes.	
		17. Ottowas.			41. Oneidas.	
		18. Potawatamies.			42. Mohawks.	
		19. Knistinaux.†		Southern	43. Tuscaroras.	
	Eastern	20. Micmacs, N. Scotia, N. Br'k.			44. Nottoways.	
		21. Etchemins, N. Br'k, Maine.	V. Catawbas		45. Catawba (Woocons extinct).	
		22. Abenakis (Penobscots).	VI. Cherokee		46. Cherokee.	
	Central Atlantic	23. Massachusetts.	VII. Chocta, Muskhog.		47. Chocta ...... } nearly identical.	
		24. Narragansets.			48. Chicasa .... }	
		25. Mohicans.				
		26. Long Island.			49. Muskhoghee	The Creek Confederacy; but the Seminoles, though Muskhogs, had separated.
	Southern Atlantic	27. Minsi.			50. Hitchittee........	
		28. Delawares.			Seminoles*	
		29. Nanticokes.			Coosadas*	
		30. Powhattans.			Alibamous*	
		31. Pamticoes.				
	Western	32. Illinois......... }	VIII. Utchees		51. Utchee	
		33. Miamis .... }				
		Piankishaws* }	IX. Natchez		52. Natchez	

* This asterisk denotes the languages of which I have no vocabulary.—† The Saukies and Foxes, though Algonkins, have for a long time been settled west of the Mississippi; and the Winnebagoes, though Sioux, are east of that river. The Dahcotahs are partly found also there. — ‡ The Western Knistinaux have by conquest extended far beyond the meridian of the Mississippi.

C. BETWEEN THE MISSISSIPPI AND THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS.

Families.		Languages.	Families.	Languages.
X. Sioux	North	53. Winnebagoes,* east of Miss'pi.	XI. Gros Ventres.......	63. Ahnenin.
		54. Dahcotas.	III. Algonkins...........	64. Black Feet, Paegans, Blood Indians.
		55. Yanktons.	XII. Pawnees	65. Pawnees.
		Tetons.*		Ricaras.*
		56. Assiniboins.	XIII. Kiaways	* } Wander upper waters of Arkansas.
			XIV. Kaskaias	*
	South	57. Quappas, Arkansas.	XV. Cumanches	*
		58. Osages, Kansas.	XVI Pani, Towiacks..	* Red River (Tawakeroes), Towekas, Wachos?
		59. Ottoes, Missouris, Ioways.		
		60. Omahas, Puncas.	XVII. Caddoes.........	66. Caddo, Red River, (Nandakoes, Tachies, Nabedaches.)
	West	61. Minetarees (stationary).	XVIII. Adaize	67. Adaize ....
		Mandans.*	XIX. Chetimaches.....	68. Chetimachas.......
		62. Upsarokas, or Crows.	XX. Attacapas	69. Attacapas........... } South of Red river.
		Shyennes (doubtful)?	XXI. Natchitoches	Natchitoches, Apelousas* ....

D. WEST OF THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS.

Families.		Languages.	Families.	Languages.
		OREGON (Hale).		NORTH OF FUCA'S STRAITS, along Pacific.
XXII. Jelish.........	Northern	70. Atnahs, north of 49° N. lat.	XXXII. Kituanaha.....	91. Coutaria or Flatbows, north of 49° N. lat.
		71. Flatheads, part do.	XXXIII. Ugaljachmutzi....	* Lat. 60, between Pr. W'ms Sound and Mt. St. Elias, (perhaps Athapascas.)
		72. Skitsaih.	XXXIV. Koulischen ..	
		73. Piscous.		
	Middle ...	74. Skwalz (Nasqually.)	XXXV. Naass	
	Western..	75. Tsihailish (Sea shore.)	XXXVI. Skidegattz ...	92. Sitka, bet. 52 and 59 lat.
		76. Cowelitz.	XXXVII. Wakash	93. Huitsla, bet. 52 and 55 main.
	Southern	77. Neirtshaus, or Upper Killamuks.		94. Queen Charlotte Island.
XXIII. Sahaptin ...	Upper	78. Nez perces.		95. Newittee } Vancouver's Island.
	Lower	79. Wallawallas.		96. Nootka Sound
XXIV. Wailatpu....		80. Cayuse.		UPPER CALIFORNIA, 32 to 42° N. lat.
		81. Molele.		
XXV. Tshinook.....	Lower	82. Chinooks, Clatsops.		97. Talatui† } River San Sacramento.
	Upper	83. Watlala.		98. Pujari
XXVI. Kalapuya...		84. Willamets.		99. Sekumre
XXVII. Jakon		85. Lower Killamuks.		100. Tsamak
XXXVIII. Luturim		86. Clamets.		101. San Raphael, near San Francisco.
XXIX. Sasti		87. Shasties.		
XXX. Pulairih		88. Palaiks.		102. La Solidad, near Monterey.
XXXI. Shoshonees	Eastern..	89. Snakes.		103. San Miguel.
	Middle ...	Bonnarks.*		104. Kii, near San Gabriel.
	Western..	90. Wihinasht.		105. Netela, near S. Juan Capitouro.

---

* This asterisk denotes the languages of which I have no vocabulary.

† These nine imperfect Californian vocabularies, collected by Messrs. Hale and Dana, are not yet digested, but will probably be reduced to six families.

2. A REPLY TO SOME OF THE HISTORICAL AND PHILOLOGICAL TOPICS OF INVESTIGATION BROUGHT FORWARD IN THE FOREGOING LETTER OF MR. GALLATIN.

MR. GALLATIN'S efforts, in 1846, to obtain from the government a renewal of the facilities for collecting vocabularies, which had been awarded to him in 1826, were not productive of the success he had hoped, and to which they were entitled. His letter was not, I believe, even answered. The gentleman to whom it was addressed had given no attention to philological inquiries, and its importance was not appreciated; added to which, the era was one of official excitement, owing to the (then) recent outbreak of the Mexican war, in consequence of which, the letter was probably overlooked. However this may be, when I came into the office, early in 1847, I could not find the letter, a friend having called my attention to its existence; but it was referred to me, late in December, 1848, as being pertinent to the subject of my inquiries.

The synopsis of tribes enclosed in the letter of Mr. Gallatin, exhibits thirty-seven families of language as occupying the continent north of the southern boundary line of the United States, as it existed in 1846, extending from the Pacific to the Atlantic. Of these generic families, vocabularies are requested to be furnished of but seventeen tribes east of the Stony Mountains, extending northwardly through British America to the shores of the Arctic ocean, and thence through Behring's Straits, along the Pacific coasts, to the mouth of the Columbia river.

Information is also solicited of the languages of the tribes occupying the south-western angle of the United States, lying on the sources of the Arkansas and Red rivers, and the plains of Texas.

With respect to the region west of the Mississippi, full vocabularies have been obtained, from authentic sources, which are now published, of the languages of the Arapahoe and Cheyenne, two warlike tribes who occupy the sources of the Platte and Red rivers. A vocabulary of the Comanches of Texas, of 193 words, furnished by Mr. Neighbors, and published in Part II. of this report, shows that leading tribe to speak a language closely cognate with the Snakes, Bonacks, and Shoshonees of the Rocky Mountains. Of the minor tribes of the Wacoes, Keechies, Towacoros, Lipans, Ionies, and Anduicos, of Texas, we are still without vocabularies.

The Gros Ventres of the upper Missouri, the eleventh family of Mr. Gallatin's table, are decided to be Minnetarees. The Minnetarees themselves, the sixty-first of his Sioux family, (both Minnetarees proper, and Minnetarees of the Willows, with the Mattasoons, or Ahahaways, of the Missouri,) are Upsarokas.

In the report[1] of Lieutenant J. W. Abert, United States Army, published in 1848, a vocabulary of 226 words is given of the Cheyenne language, with its numerals to twenty, and its decimals to 100. It is perceived that the latter differ wholly from the

---

[1] Ex. Doc. 41.

Sioux, presenting some marked analogies with the Algonquin numerals, but less striking resemblances to its general vocabulary. In 1851, a full vocabulary of this language, agreeably to the printed formula used in these collections, was obtained of the delegation that visited Washington, and is hereto annexed, (D.) It is perceived that it possesses the Algonquin pronominal sign of the first person, in its compound terms. It is characterized, as a distinct dialect, by the frequent use of the letter *r*. This letter is sometimes apparently employed in its interchangeable form, and also sometimes for *l*. The withdrawal of this dialect from Mr. Gallatin's table, where it is marked doubtful, is required. Col. W. H. Emory, United States Topographical Engineers, has transmitted a valuable vocabulary of 150 words of the ancient Pimo language of the valley of the Gila river, which is recorded in this volume.

By the vocabulary of the Arapahoes (E), now submitted, it is perceived to be a cognate dialect of the Cheyenne. It has the distinctive sound of *r*; it also possesses the Algonquin pronominal sign of the first person, and coincides strikingly in its numerals. This tribe, which numbers some 2500 souls, is not noticed in Mr. Gallatin's table, or in his letter. Our acquaintance with the tribes at the base of the Stony Mountains is becoming more intimate every year, and we must soon be in possession of complete information for attempting their final classification.

The Piankeshaws, to whom allusion is made, formerly lived on the Wabash river, and are one of the three divisions of the Miamies, into which the policy of Captain Wells, the Agent, after the close of the Indian war, in 1793, decided the recognition by the United States of the Miami nation.

The "Alibamous" are, agreeably to Le Clerc Milfort, an integral part of the Muscogee nation. They are represented as such by So-ko-pe-chi, an aged Creek chief, who, in 1848, reported their historical traditions to Mr. D. W. Eakins. (Vide Vol. I., p. 265.) Agreeably to this authority, the "Coosadas" were a part of the original Creek stock who lived on the Coosa and Tuscaloosa branches of the Alabama river. Benjamin Marshall, the second chief of the Creek nation, who visited Washington, with a delegation of his people, in 1848, told me that the confederacy consisted, originally, of Muscogees, Alabamas, Hitchetees, and some other bands or tribes, who, although having dialectic differences, spoke and understood one language; and that this language had the same general principles and sounds, except the elements of the Utchee and Natchez, (VIII. and IX. of Mr. Gallatin's tables,) who were conquered and incorporated tribes.

By a vocabulary of the Seminole (F), collected by Captain J. C. Casey, U. S. A., this language is shown to be pure Muscogee. With ample opportunities for deciding the question, having been several years on official duty in Florida, he pronounces it identical.

The Catawbas continue to be regarded as speaking a separate and distinct language. Tradition,—which is put on record in Paper IX. of the section on Tribal Organization, History, and Government, of the present volume (Vol. III.),—represents this tribe as having originated in the west and north. They are stated to have been driven south by the infuriated hostility of the Iroquois, and to have formed an alliance, eventually, with the Cherokees, after having encountered that tribe in a sanguinary battle on the grounds of their residence in the upper parts of South Carolina. This tradition traces them as high as the Conawango fork of the Alleghany river and the banks of Lake Erie, and we feel a confidence in stating that in this rapidly-declining tribe, now chiefly in North Carolina, we behold the remnant of the defeated, long-lost, and celebrated tribe of the Eries.[1] Mr. Jefferson, in his Notes on Virginia, states that the Eries were driven by the Six Nations from the Ohio valley — a remark which appears to be founded mainly on information contained in the "Geographical Analysis" of Lewis Evans, published by Dr. Franklin, in Philadelphia, in 1754.

The enlargement of the boundaries of the United States, by New Mexico, southern Utah, and California, has greatly increased and complicated the classification of the Indian languages. And what seemed near the point of accomplishment in 1846, by the collection of a few wanting vocabularies and grammars, is still a work which will require time and labor. Fortunately, with the extension of our military posts, and the operations of the Indian Bureau in these regions, the means of our information are rapidly extended. In 1848, Lieutenant Whipple, U. S. Topographical Engineers, collected a vocabulary of 217 words of the Yuma or Cuchan language of California. (Vol. II., p. 118. Nearly full vocabularies of the Cusha and Costos languages of central California have been furnished by A. Johnson, United States Agent. (Vol. II., p. 404 to 508.)

Original vocabularies of thirty-five words each have been published, on uniform principles of orthography, of eight languages of the Algonquin group, and of four of the Iroquois group; in which, besides their fulness, the pronouns are carefully distinguished from the verbs and substantives. Our means of comparison is further enlarged by the Comanche, Sasitka, and other vocabularies, now exhibited. It is designed to record, in like manner, in the future numbers of this work, complete vocabularies, collected on uniform principles, of every important language in the United States.

An expedition was authorized by the Indian Office, in 1851, to visit the tribes of California situated north of the bay of San Francisco and west of the Sacramento, extending to the boundary of Oregon Territory. George Gibbs, Esq., whose services were secured for that occasion, kept a journal of this expedition, which is published in § IV., Physical Geography of the Indian Country. The collected vocabularies of fifteen of the Indian tribes of that region are embraced in the present volume. These have been collected by Mr. Gibbs. By this accession, our means of judging of the native tongues of California are greatly enlarged.

---

[1] Erie appears to be a Wyandot term, received and perpetuated, with elisions, by the French.

One of the most important additions to our recent vocabularies of the Indian languages, consists of the Mandan. Causes, which are not difficult to be imagined, had prevented our obtaining any vocabulary at all of the language of this tribe. Mr. Gallatin extracted a few names of chiefs from an Indian treaty concluded with that tribe, on the Missouri, in 1825. These names were evidently, in part, a mixture of Sioux and Minnetaree, and afforded no certain means of comparison. Mr. Kipp, who transmitted the vocabulary of the Mandan, which is now for the first time published, and who has long been practically familiar with it, is of opinion that it is radically different both from the Dacotah and the Minnetaree.

A vocabulary from the ancient line of Spanish discovery on the Rio Grande, has been recently obtained from the delegation of Pueblo Indians, from Tusuque on the Rio Grande. Many of the words in this vocabulary are monosyllabic, and suggest a connection with Asiatic stocks, in which this feature is prominent.

Comparisons of the vocabularies of the ancient Indian languages of the continent, with each other, and with yet-existing remnants of those stocks, denote the Pamptico of North Carolina to have been a dialect of the Algonquin. No resemblances exist between the Tuscarora, as spoken in that State at an early period, and the Woccoa. But there are striking coincidences between the latter and the Catawba, giving confirmation to the historical opinion expressed by Mr. Lewis Evans and Mr. Jefferson, of the retirement of the defeated Eries from the Ohio valley into North Carolina; and leading observers to conclude that this withdrawal arose from ancient and still-remembered affinities of blood and language.

In addition to these accessions to our means of information, forms of vocabularies and historical queries have been extensively distributed among persons of intelligence in Texas, New Mexico, and Oregon, who are engaged in the service of the government in those parts of the Union, as well as in other quarters; embracing the west base of the Nevada, the elevated plains of New Mexico, and the Rocky Mountains; and the expectation is confidently entertained that the results will materially tend to advance ethnological science. Scanty and imperfect as our materials still are on this subject, we can hardly hope to establish a general classification of those various tribes within the Union which shall have a permanent character, until the record of our vocabularies obtains more completeness.

The desire to classify the American languages, is an object of high intellectual attainment. Every attempt of this kind is meritorious, and the literary public is under deep obligations to every laborer in this field. It requires, however, materials which were certainly not in existence in 1836, when the distinguished observer, to whose letter this is, in part, a response, undertook it; nor have such materials yet been collected. We cannot erect the edifice till these materials are accumulated; and our first duty is still demanded in rendering this preliminary labor ample and reliable. It is a proof of the devotion and assiduity with which Mr. Gallatin commenced, in his retirement, these researches, that the arduous pursuit of etymology, alone, without a practical acquaintance with the languages, led him to offer the outlines exhibited. Generalizations were difficult, and misconceptions in some of the details inevitable, under the circumstances. It is by no means probable that the number of generic families is as great as it is represented. Principles of a mere generic character, in the root-forms of the vocabularies, the mutable sounds of the vowels, and their effects upon the interchangeable consonants, in juxtaposition, require more enlarged groups of languages; discrepancies melt away under the power of analysis; and the signs of the pronouns alone, draw into generic circles, languages which have no other trace of affiliation. H. R. S.

B. PRINCIPLES OF THE INDIAN LANGUAGES.

2. AN ANALYSIS OF PRONOMINAL AND VERBAL FORMS OF THE INDIAN LANGUAGES, IN THE EXHIBITION OF "WORDS AND FORMS OF SPEECH, PREPARED WITH A VIEW TO OBTAIN THEIR EQUIVALENTS IN VARIOUS INDIAN DIALECTS."

One	Un.
Two	Deux.
Three	Trois.
Four	Quatre.
Five	Cinq.
Six	Six.
Seven	Sept.
Eight	Huit.
Nine	Neuf.
Ten	Dix.
An Indian	Un Indien.
A man	Un homme.
A woman	Une femme.
A shoe	Un soulier.
A gun	Un fusil.
I	Je.
Thou	Tu.
He	Il.
We (thou and I)	Nous (tu et moi).

We (he and I)	Nous (il et moi).
Ye	Vous.
They	Ils.
This Indian	Cet Indien ci.
That Indian	Cet Indien là.
These Indians	Ces Indiens.
Those Indians	Ces Indien là.
This shoe	Ce soulier.
That gun	Ce fusil.
These shoes	Ces souliers.
Those guns	Ces fusils.
Which man?	Lequel homme?
Which Indians?	Quels Indiens?
Which gun?	Quel fusil?
Which guns?	Quels fusils?
Who (singular)?	Qui (singulier)?
Who (plural)?	Qui (pluriel)?
Who gave it to him?	Qui le lui adonné?
Whom did he give it to?	A qui l'a-til donné?
What (thing)?	Quel (chose)?
My son	Mon fils.
My sons	Mes fils.
His son	Son fils.
His sons	Ses fils.
Our (thy and my) son	Notu (ton et mon) fils.
Our (his or her and my) sons	Nos (ses et mes) fils.
He is good	Il est ton (une personne).
It is good	Il est bon (une chose).
He is *not* good	Il n'est pas bon (une personne).
It is *not* good	Il n'est pas bon (une chose).
That *he* may be good	Qu'it soit bon (une personne).
That *it* may be good	Qu'it soit bon (une chose).
He is arrived (by water)	Il est arrivé (peur l'eau).
It is arrived (as a boat)	Il est arrivé (comme un bateau).
I love him	Je l'aime.
He loves me	Il m'aime.
I see him	Je le vois.
He sees me	Il me voit.
I bring him	Je l'amene.
I bring it	Je l'apporte.

I bring it for him	Je l'apporte pour lui.
He brings it for me	Il l'apporte pour moi.
I see him	Je le vois.
I see his son	Je vois son fils.
He lives	Il vit.
He causes him to live	Il le fait vivre.
He sees himself	Il se voit.
I hurt him	Je lui fais mal.
I hurt myself	Je me blesse.
I kill him	Je le tue.
I kill a moose	Je tue un cerf.
He kills himself	Il se tue.
He kills him *for* himself	Il le tue pour lui meme.
He kills *it* for himself	Il le tue pour lui meme.
They kill one another	Ils atrient l'un et l'autre.
They love one another	Il s'aiment l'un et l'autre.
They kill *for* one another	Il trient pour l'un et l'autre.
He drinks	Il boit.
He drinks *often*	Il boit souvent.
He walks	Il marche.
He is a great walker	Il marche beaucoup.
He steals	Il vole.
He is a thief	Il est un voleur.
I love him	Je l'aime.
I do *not* love him	Je ne l'aime pas.
He loves me	Il m'aime.
He does *not* love me	Il ne m'aime pas.
I love it	Je l'aime.
I do *not* love it	Je ne l'aime pas.
A husband	Un mari.
I have a husband	J'ai un mari.
I have *not* a husband	Je n'ai pas un mari.
He is asleep	Il dort.
He *feigns* to be asleep	Il fait semblant de dormis.
He is drunk	Il est enivré.
He *feigns* to be drunk	Il fait semblant d'être enivré.
I suppose he is asleep	Je suppose qu'il est endormit.
I suppose he is living	Je suppose qu'il est vivant.
A snow shoe	Un soulier à niége.
I am snow shoe making	Je fais dis souliers à niége.

I am a man	Je suis un homme.
I am a woman	Je suis une femme.
He lives	Il vit.
Life	La vie.
He walks	Il se promène.
He walks a little	Il se promène un peu.
He eats	Il mange.
He eats a little	Il mange un peu.
Where art thou?	Où est tre?
Here I am	Je suis ici.
Where is he?	Où est il?
He is here	Il est ici.
Where is his son?	Où est son fils?
His son is here	Son fils est ici.
His son is *not* here	Son fils n'est pas ici.
Where is *my* gun?	Où est mon fusil?
It is here	Il est ici.
It is *not* here	Il n'est pas ici.
Where is *his* gun?	Où est son fusil?
His gun is here	Son fusil est ici.
His gun is *not* here	Son fusil n'est pas ici.
Where do you put him?	Où le mettez vous (une personne)?
Where do you put it?	Où le mettez vous (une chose)?
I put *him* here	Je le mets ici (une personne).
I put *it* here	Je le mets ici (une chose).
I laid *it* here	Je le pose ici.
He sits	Il est assis.
He lies	Il est couché.
He goes	Il va.
Whence comes he?	D'oir vient il.
Whither goes he?	Où vient il.
A lake	Un lac.
At the lake	Au lac.
He comes from the lake	Il vient du lac.
He goes to the lake	Il va au lac.
How (what manner)?	Comment (dans quelle memicre)?
When (past)?	Quand (passé)?
When (future)?	Quand (futur)?
Where?	Où?
How much?	Combien?

It is cold weather	Il fait froid.
It is hot weather	Il fait chaud.
A tent	Une tente.
My tent	Ma tente.
Thy tent	Ta tente.
His tent	Sa tente.
Our (thy and my) tent	Notre (ta et ma) tente.
Our (his and my) tent	Notre (sa et ma) tente.
Your tent	Votre tente.
Their tent	Leur tente.
At the tent	A la tente.
At my tent	A ma tente.
At thy tent	A ta tente.
At his tent	A sa tente.
At our (thy and my) tent	A notre (ta et ma) tente.
At our (his and my) tent	A notre (sa et ma) tente.
At your tent	A votre tente.
At their tent	A leur tente.
From the tent	De la tente.
Yes	Oui.
No	Non.
I press *him* (with my hand)	Je le presse (avec ma main) une personne.
I press *it* (with my hand)	Je le presse (avec ma main) une chose.
I press *him* (with my foot)	Je le presse (avec mon pied) une personne.
I press *it* (with my foot)	Je le presse (avec mon pied) une chose.
I press *him* (with my mouth)	Je le presse (avec ma bouche) une personne.
I press *it* (with my mouth)	Je le presse (avec ma bouche) une chose.
I press *him* (with force)	Je le presse (avec force) une personne.
I press *it* (with force)	Je le presse (avec force) une chose.
I blush	Je rougis.
I cause him to blush	Je le fais rougis.
I am ashamed	J'ai honte.
I cause him to be ashamed (by my *conduct*)	Je lui fais honte (par ma conduite).
I cause him to be ashamed (by my *words*).	Je lui fais honte (par mes paroles).
He says	Il dit.
I say to him	Je lui dis.
He says to me	Il me dit.
I say to them	Je leur dis.
They say to me	Ils me disent.

Replies, in the Ojibwa Language, to the Preceding Analytical Forms.

One[1]	Ningo che wa. (Paizhic.)	
Two	Neezh wa. (Neezh.)	
Three	Nis wa. (Nis-wa.)	
Four	Ne win.	
Five	Nah nun.	
Six	Ningoot was wa.	
Seven	Neezh was wa.	
Eight	Shwas wa.	
Nine	Shon gus wa. (Shong.)	
Ten	Quaitch. (Metass-wa.)	
An Indian	Pai-zhik un nishina-ba	1.
A man	Innini.	
A woman	Equa.	
A shoe	Muckasin.	
A gun	Paush ki-ze gun.	
I	Neen.	
Thou	Keen.	
He	Ween	2.
We (thou and I)	Kena wind. (Keen gia neen.)	
We (he and I)	Kena wind. (Ween gia neen.)	3.
Ye	Keenah wa.	
They	Weenah wa.	
This Indian	Mah-bah unnishinah-ba.	
That Indian	Ah owh unnishinah-ba.	
These Indians	Ogoowh unnishinah-baig.	
Those Indians	Ah gwee unnishinah-baig.	
This shoe	Mahn dan muckasin.	
That gun	Mahn dan paush ki-ze gun.	
These shoes	Mah min muckasenan.	
Those guns	Mah min paush ki-ze gun un.	
Which man?	Ah wa neen innini?	
Which Indians?	Ah-wa-na-nug unnishinah-baig?	
Which gun?	Wa go nain paush ki-ze gun?	
Which guns?	Wa go nain paush ki-ze gun un?	
Who? (singular.)	Ah wa nain?	
Who? (plural.)	Ah wa naisug?	4.

---

[1] The first equivalents, in enumeration, are the running and quick mode of counting.

Who gave it to him?	Ah wa nain kah me naud?	
Whom did he give it to?	Ah wa nain un kah me nah gin?	
What (thing)?	Wa go nain (ahyche)?	
My son	Ningwis.	
My sons	Ningwis-ug.	
His son	Oguis.	
His sons	Oguisun.	
Our (thy and my) son	Keen ah wind (kegwis gia neen) ningwis.	
Our (his or her and my) sons	Keen ah wind (ween gia neen) ningwis-ug.	
He is good	Mino bemah tezie	5.
It is good	Ohnishe shin	“
He is *not* good	Kah ween menobemah tezie-*see*	6.
It is *not* good	Kah ween obnishe shin *see* non	“
That *he* may be good	Ah pay dush menobemah tezid.	
That *it* may be good	Ah pay dush onisheshing.	
He is arrived (by water)	Keme shaw-gah.	
It is arrived (as a boat)	Kepah gah mish kah (me tigo chemaun).	
I love him	Ni sah gee ahn	7.
He loves me	Ni sah gee ig	“
I see him	Ni wah bahnahn.	
He sees me	Ni wah bahnig	8.
I bring him	Nim be nahn.	
I bring it	Nimbetou	9.
I bring it for him	Nim be tah wah	“
He brings it for me	Nim be tang	“
I see him	Newah bah mahn.	
I see his son	Newah bah mahn oguisau.	
He lives	Pemah tezie.	
He causes him to live	Ween oh be mah je aun	10.
He sees himself	Wah bandizo.	
I hurt him	Nëwe sah gain dah me ah.	
I hurt myself	Nëwe sah gain dah e diz.	
I kill him	Nënisah	11.
I kill a moose	Nënisah möñze.	
He kills himself	Nisah de zo	12.
He kills him *for* himself	Onetamazonan	13.
He kills *it* for himself	Onetah mah dizonan.	
They kill one another	Ween ah wah nisiotëwug	14.
They love one another	Ween ah wah sah gee iotëwug	15.
They kill *for* one another	Mah maysko nisetah mah te wug.	

He drinks	Minequa.	
He drinks *often*	Ween mö zhug minequa	16.
He walks	Ween pimosa.	
He is a great walker	Ween gitche netah pimosa.	
He steals.	Ween kemotie.	
He is a thief	Ween kemotish kee.	
I love him	Nin sah gee ah'n	17.
I do *not* love him.	Kah ween neen ne sah gee ah *see*	"
He loves me	Ween nin sah gee ig	"
He does *not* love me.	Ween kah ne sah ge igo *see*	"
I love it	Nin sah gee ton	"
I do *not* love it	Kah ween nin sah gee to *seen*	"
A husband	Wa nah ba me mind	18.
I have a husband.	Nin dah yah wah nin nah bame	"
I have *not* a husband	Neen kah we vah nenah bame	"
He is asleep.	Ween nebah.	
He *feigns* to be asleep	Ween neba kah zo.	
He is drunk.	Ween kewush qua be.	
He *feigns* to be drunk	Ween kewush qua be kah zo.	
I suppose he is asleep	Nindenain dum nezah.	
I suppose he is living	Nindenain dum pemah tize.	
A snow shoe	Ahgim.	
I am snow shoe making	Nindah gee me kay.	
I am a man	Nin de ni ni-*we*	19.
I am a woman	Nin de qua *we*-	"
He lives	Pemah tize.	
Life	Pemah tize-*win*-	20.
He walks.	Ween pemosa.	
He walks a little	Ween pungie pemosa.	
He eats	Ween wesenie.	
He eats a little	Ween pungie wesinie.	
Where art thou?	Ah nin de ah yah yan?	21.
Here I am	Oh oh mahn nindah yah	"
Where is he?	Ah nin de ah yaud?-	"
He is here	Oh oh mahn ah yah-	"
Where is his son?	Ah nin de ouguisan ah yah nid?	"
His son is here	Oguisan oh oh mahn ah yah wun	"
His son is *not* here	Oguisan kah omah ah yah see wun	"
Where is *my* gun?	Ah neen de nim pash kize gun?	
It is here	Oh ow à taig	22.

It is *not* here	Kah ween oh mah ah tay see non	22.
Where is *his* gun?	Ah neen di ween opash kezegan?	
His gun is here	Ween opash keze gun ahyah nee	23.
His gun is *not* here	Ween opash keze gun kah omah ahyah senini	24.
Where do you put him?	Ah neen de ah said?	
Where do you put it?	Ah neen de ah toyan?	
I put *him* here.	Omah nin dah sah.	
I put *it* here	Omah nin dah ton.	
I laid *it* here	Omah nin ge ah ton.	
He sits	Ween nah mah dah be.	
He lies	Ween shinge shin.	
He goes	Ween mah chah	24.
Whence comes he?	Ah neen de ween wainjebaud?	
Whither goes he?	Ah neen de azhe mah chaud?	
A lake	Sah gah e gan.	
At the lake	Sah gah e gan ing	25.
He comes from the lake	Ween sah gah e gan ing onjebah.	
He goes to the lake	Ween sah gah e gan ing ezhaw.	
How (what manner)?	Ah neen kah e zhe way buk? or, In what way did it take place?	
When (past)?	Ah neen ah pee kah e zhe way buk? or When did it occur?	
When (future)?	Ah neen ah pee wah e zhe way buk? or When will it occur?	
Where?	Ah neen de?	
How much?	Ah neen menik?	
It is cold weather.	Ke sinah wain dah gwut.	
It is hot weather	Ke zha tay wain dah gwut.	
A tent	Pe bah ge wah yahn ay gamig	26.
My tent	Nin pe bah ge wah yahn ay gamig	“
Thy tent.	Kee pe bah ge wah yahn ay gamig	“
His tent	Ween ope bage wah yahn ay gamig	“
Our (thy and my) tent	Keen ah wind (keen gia neen nin) pe bah ge wah yahn ay gamig.	
Our (his and my) tent	Keen ah wind (ween gia neen nim) pe bah ge wah yahn ay gamig.	
Your tent	Keen kepe bah gee way yahn ay gamig.	
Their tent	Ween ah wah oh be bag ge wah yahn ay gamigowah.	

At the tent	Pe bah ge wah yahn ay ga megong.	
At my tent	Nim pe bah ge wah yahn ay gah mig-*ong*	27.
At thy tent	Keen kepe bah ge wah yahn ay gah mig-*ong*	"
At his tent	Ween ope bah ge wah yahn ay gah meg-*ong*	"
At our (thy and my) tent	Kepe bu ge wah yahn ay gah migon-*ong* (keen gia neen) kepe buge wah yahn ay gah migonan	"
At our (his and my) tent	Keen ah wind (ween gia neen) nim pe bah ge wah yahn ay gah mig	"
At your tent	Kepe bah ge wah yahn ay gah meg-*ong*	"
At their tent	Obe bage wah yahn ay gah megow-*ong*	"
From the tent	Onje pebah ge wah yahn ay gah meg-*ong*	"
Yes	Aih.	
No	Kah ween.	
I press *him* (with my hand)	Neninging nemah gonahn.	
I press *it* (with my hand)	Neninging nemah gonon.	
I press *him* (with my foot)	Nesit ang nemah goosh kah wah.	
I press *it* (with my foot)	Nesit ang nemah goosh kan.	
I press *him* (with my mouth)	Nindoning nemah goosh kah wah.	
I press *it* (with my mouth)	Nindoning nemah goosh kau.	
I press *him* (with force)	Mush kah we ze wining nemah goosh kah wah.	
I press *it* (with force)	Mush kah we ze wining nemah goosh kau.	
I blush	Nin dah gach.	
I cause him to blush	Neen sah nin do dah wah ahyah gid.	
I am ashamed	Nemain e saindam.	
I cause him to be ashamed (by my *conduct*).	Neen sah nin dotah wah may nesaindang onje nin de zhe way bosewin.	
I cause him to be ashamed (by my *words*).	Neen sah nin dotah wah may nesaindang onje ne keke towinan.	
He says	Ween ekedo.	
I say to him	Neen nin de nah.	
He says to me	Ween nin dig.	
I say to them	Ween ah wah ninde nang.	
They say to me	Ween ah wah ninde goog.	

4. GRAMMATICAL COMMENTS ON THE PRECEDING ANALYTICAL FORMS.

In these forms the French equivalents are added, with the view of more precisely defining the forms themselves. Much reliance is had, in the Indian country, on persons acting as interpreters, to whom the French is a vernacular language. The replies are given, therefore, first in the French, and afterwards in the Ojibwa language.

1. There is no definite article in the language. The term pai-zhik stands for the numeral "one," and is employed also in the sense of "an."

2. This inquiry is put as if with a knowledge, in the interrogator, that the Indian language was wanting in the third person feminine. Such is the fact. The nominative, being a true epicene, requires no gender to be expressed by the objective. It is completely satisfied, in its grammatical functions, by an indication of organic or inorganic life — thus merging the distinction of gender. Gesenius says there was no distinction in the third person among the Hebrews, in the era of the Pentateuch.

3. The inquiries do not bring out the duplicate "we," which exists in the language. "Thou and I," and "he and I," are, respectively, keenowind, which means a plurality of persons, consisting, in the order of thought, of "you or ye," (any plural number,) and "myself." This is the inclusive form of "we." If it be intended to exclude himself, the speaker employs the word neenowind, meaning "ye or you," (any plural number,) without himself. This is the exclusive "we" of the Ojibwa language.

The "we" is, therefore, inclusive or exclusive of the speaker; and may include or exclude two, or an indefinite number of persons. This principle is carried throughout all the conjugations of the verbs. Is there any thing in the Asiatic languages like it?

4. Here the demonstrative pronoun "who," takes the ordinary inflection ug for plural.

5. The distinction between the two great animate and inanimate classes of nature, the leading principle of the language, is here made by radically separate words. The full meaning of the translated phrase is, He is a good person, and, It is a good thing.

6. The negative, in these senses, is conveyed by the particle "see," which is understood.

The object that is sought by these questions is attained by the Indians without the introduction of separate pronouns at all. "I, you, he," and "she," are expressions avoided by the use of the personal term, izzi. Mino is the animate form of the adjective "good." Emah is, apparently, from ieah, which is declarative of existence. Tezie is from izzi.

The same object is effected in the case of the neutral pronoun "it," which is superseded by the impersonal term atta; or, in other cases, by the employment (as here seen) of impersonal adjectives, as onisheshin, a word meaning that an inanimate substance is good.

"He and it" are terms, therefore, which cannot be shown in apposition, in this language, in the forms supposed.

7. "Or her." The only genderic distinction, in the objective of the conjugations, is between the personal and impersonal forms as a class. The infinitive of the verb, in this instance, is saug. Before this word the indicative requires the personal pronouns "I, thou, and he, or she," to be always prefixed. Ne is the pronoun "I," in this case. Two increments of the compound are thus supplied: "I love." To denote the object requires a third increment, which is given in ah; or, as the vowel is sometimes heard, the broader sound of au. This denotes person, without indicating sex; and is equivalent to "him or her." This inflection appears to be a derivative from ieau, the great leading verb of this language, meaning, as it is variously applied, life, existence, or vital possession, &c. To make this inflection coalesce with the infinitive saug, euphony requires the connective e. The n final is the sign of the third person. Thus we have the expression complete in ne-saug-e-ah-n, I-love-a-person-(he).

Reverse the action of the verb, and the objective member of it governs the phrase; namely, ne-saug-e-ig. Ig is an abbreviation, or short mode of pronouncing igoo, or igieu, "them, those persons;" and when thus shortened, means one of their number: it is equivalent to the pronoun "he," and the phrase must be literally construed backwards,—not ne-saug-e-ah, I love him; but ne-saug-e-ig, me he loves.

8. Precisely the same pronominal principles are shown in the verb "to see." Its radix is wahb or waub. Wahbahm means "he sees (a person)," ah denotes the third person, and the letter n is the objective sign of the third person.

9. The infinitive of the verb to bring, is neemb. The personal class of objects is made by the inflection ah; (sometimes written au or aw.) The third person is denoted by the ordinary sign n. The impersonal class of objects is made by toan. Each of these inflections requires the connective vowel e.

10. The causative verb majeaun, is merely preceded by the full term for the third person, ween, and the prepositional term öbe thrown between.

11. Nisah, verb to kill. 12. Ezo, himself.

13. The preposition "for" does not exist as a separate word, or at all, I believe, in the language.

14. De signifies the orifice of the alimentary canal. It is employed, in compound terms, for the vital system. Hence nisi, to kill generally; de, to kill by entering the vital system. Ug is the ordinary animate plural of nouns ending in the vowel u, in which sense it signifies "they," and answers to the pronoun singular, ween.

15. By prefixing the infinitive of the verb to love, (saug,) to the vital particle de, and adding the plural wug, the same reciprocal action is given to the verb.

16. Mözh-ug is the adjective "often." Minequa, "he drinks;" ween, "the third person." The order of thought is, "he often drinks."

17. This question has been before put. The negative is made by the particle see for the personal forms, which take an n in the impersonal "it."

18. Na-baim appears to be the disassociate term for husband. It has its root manifestly in aubai or iaubai, a male. Ne-na-baim, my husband. By the term wai-nah-baim-e-mind, the speaker utters a sentence declaratory of this relationship.[1]

19. The inflection we, here makes the declarative. The letter d, in both sentences, is one of those changes which appear to be easily introduced in a language not written. Strictly, the terms should be written nin-enine-we and nin-e-qua-we; but the utterance of an accented e after n, naturally, it appears, introduces the sound of d, which is contrary to etymology.

20. The inflection win converts all verbs in the infinitive or the third person singular, into substantives.

21. The substantive verb, which it is the purpose of these terms to bring out, is written by the translator under each question, "ah-yah," the usual inflections for tense and person being added. The true notation of this, as given in preceding pages, (Vide Languages, A., Vol. II.,) is ieau.

22. Atta means a thing; any inanimate thing. The ing gives the phrase a verbal form. Ah-ow or oh-ow is the ordinary equivalent for "here." The syllable see performs its usual office of negation.

23. The word ah-yah here performs the office of "is."

24. The precise translation, which would be the ordinary reply in Indian life, is rather, His gun, "the man's," is not here. Nothing is more frequent than this species of verbiage with the Indians.

24. Ma-jah is the verb "to go."

25. Ing is an inflection which conveys the prepositional senses of "in, on, at," to all words requiring these meanings.

Sa-gí-e-gan-ing	At the lake.
Ad-dó-po-win-ing	On the table.
Muk-kuk′-ing	In the box or chest.
Muz-ze-ní-e-gun-ing	In the book.
Pa-wá-t-ing	At St. Mary's Falls.

26. Generally the replies give more information than is asked for. In this case the sense is confined, appropriately, to a cloth tent, such as soldiers and bourgeois in the Indian trade employ. But it is described as pitched on the land, or along shore—"aygaming."

27. The sense of "at," in these phrases, is given by the inflection ong. That of "from," in the last phrase, is implied by the same inflection.

---

[1] The Indian of these translations is by Mr. George Johnston, who is intimate with the idioms of the natives as spoken. His orthography has not been changed at all when it expressed, accurately, the sounds. The syntax has been restored where it was required, and the Indians held up to the grammatical rules which they have themselves imposed, but which, in their careless and hasty conversations, they sometimes violate or slur over, dropping inflections which are often necessary to perfect precision of thought.

5. OBSERVATIONS ON SOME OF THE INDIAN DIALECTS OF NORTHERN CALIFORNIA.

BY G. GIBBS.

ANY one who has ever attempted the acquisition of a foreign tongue, can appreciate the difficulty of catching, at first, the pronunciation of its words. This, alone, renders it no light task to reduce to writing languages containing sounds so uncouth and unfamiliar to our ears as those of the Indians. The labor, however, only commences here. Nice attention, and the habit of observation can, in a measure, overcome it; but many of those sounds are not susceptible of representation by any characters of our alphabet, and there are others which present shades of distinction just attainable by an arbitrary use of them. In the collection of the following vocabularies, all care and attention possible was given to convey the words as they presented themselves to the writer; but it is probable that the signs employed will, nevertheless, in many cases, carry a different idea to others. I have preferred to adopt the Spanish sound of the vowels, when used singly, as being more definite than the English. Thus *a* is pronounced as in "father;" *e* as *a* in "mare;" *i* as *e* in "key;" *u* as *oo* in "coop;" *y*, when a vowel, retaining, however, the English sound. *Ai* has the sound of *i*, long; *ei* that of *a* in "lay." The acute accent, except when placed over a final vowel, denotes that the stress is upon that syllable.

Beyond the mere difficulty of catching or conveying sounds, others have arisen from the circumstances attending our march, from the want of interpreters sufficiently understanding the various languages and dialects, and from the character of the Indians themselves. The expedition was necessarily, in every respect, a reconnoissance; for with regard to almost all the country traversed, no reliable information, as to either its geography or its inhabitants, could be obtained beforehand. During the few and short intervals of halt, there were so many objects of passing importance to be attended to, that leisure for careful revision was seldom had. The very brief and limited intercourse between the whites and Indians, away from their own settlements, had allowed them no opportunity of thoroughly acquiring any one tongue, and the means of inquiry were not only very limited, but of very uncertain reliability. Finally, the impatience of restraint of the Indians, and their fatigue at a continued stretch of attention, prevented as detailed an examination as was to be desired.

It is, however, still hoped that these vocabularies will add something of value to the stock of information possessed on the subject, and that at least they will afford the groundwork of a more correct investigation hereafter. The words are the same as those on which most of the comparisons of Indian languages heretofore made, have been founded.

Tcho-ko-yem and **Cop-eh.** I have not yet been able to ascertain, to my own satisfaction, the number of languages or dialects formerly existing in the country to the north of the bays of San Francisco and San Pablo, between the straits of Karquines and the coast, and extending up to Russian river and the mountains below Clear lake. There certainly were several, differing sufficiently to deserve comparison. The southern extremity of the peninsula, as far up as the mission of San Rafaél, according to the best information I could obtain, was occupied by a tribe called by the Spaniards Tulares. They are said to be nearly extinct, and I have not met with any of them. Above the mission, and occupying the country upon the coast, and in the valleys of Petaloma and Sonoma, extending as far north as Santa Rosa, and eastward to Susqual, was a second, and apparently much more numerous one. In Petaloma valley, the original inhabitants are reduced to almost nothing, and they have been replaced by the Indians of Suisun, from the bay of that name, above Benicia. Of their language, an example is given in that of the Tcho-ko-yem band of Sonoma valley. It was obtained from an Indian who spoke Spanish, and is as correct as it could be made at a single interview. Sonoma, it should be remarked, was not originally the name of a district, but of a chief, and was conferred upon the valley now called by that name, by the Spaniards. The lower part of Napa valley, and the country around the straits of Karquines, were said to have been occupied by another tribe. To the north of these, in the mountains on the heads of Napa, Putos, and Cache creeks, there were still other bands, speaking other dialects; but probably of very limited numbers. Of these, one, the Copéh, spoken by the inhabitants of Putos creek, is given below. (See the vocabularies annexed.) This account, however, is by no means reliable or distinct, and the inquiry should be pursued hereafter. The diminution of all the various tribes living in the neighborhood of the old settlements, and the corruption or commingling of their several tongues, render any investigation a difficult one, and require time to carry out.

Kula-napo. The name of one of the Clear lake bands. The language is spoken by all the tribes occupying the large valley. This vocabulary was received from an Indian who accompanied the expedition as a servant of Dr. J. S. Griffin, United States Army, and who acted as an interpreter with his people. It was carefully taken down, and under more favorable circumstances than any of the others. An attempt was made in this case, as well as in that of the Tcho-ko-yem, to obtain the conjugation of a verb, but without any intelligible result. The affinity of the tribes on the upper waters of Russian and Eel rivers to the lake Indians, will be noticed, and it seems probable that this valley was the former seat whence the others have emigrated.

Yu-kai, on Russian river,

Chow-e-shak, and

Batem-da-kai-ee, on heads of Eel river. The last is not the name of a band, but of a valley occupied by several of them, whose names we could not learn. These three were all obtained through the medium of our Clear lake Indian, who translated to the respective parties what he received, in Spanish. As much care as practicable was given to putting them down correctly; but their only value is probably in showing the extent of the language of the lake.

WEE-YOT, and

WISH-OSK. The first is the name given to Eel river, by the Indians at its mouth, and here applied to their dialect of that common to the river, and to Humboldt bay. The vocabulary is far from perfect; less from the difficulty of conveying the idea—for on my return I obtained a very good interpreter—than from the very indistinct utterance of the Indians. The second is the name given to the Bay and Mad river Indians by those of Eel river. This was the dialect of the upper part of the bay, and was received from quite an intelligent young man. The general language, as elsewhere mentioned, seems to extend from Cape Mendocino to Mad river, and as far back into the interior as the foot of the first range of mountains.

WEITS-PEK. The name of the principal band on the Klamath, at the junction of the Trinity. This language prevails from a few miles above that point, to the coast; but does not extend far from the river on either side. The constant recurrence of the letter *r* in this and the other languages of this district, will be at once noticed as a distinction from the Oregon tongues. In many words and proper names, it is sounded with a distinct and forcible roll. The *f*, however, another Shibboleth to the Oregonians, is unknown here also.

HOO-PAH. This, which is the name given by the Weits-pek, and other Klamath Indians, to the lower part of the Trinity and its inhabitants, I have retained for their language. The words were taken down as repeated by a young chief; but as the translation was effected through the medium of the Weits-pek, the meaning may have suffered in some cases. This language extends to the South Fork.

TAH-LE-WAH. The few words of this tongue were obtained, not from one of the tribe, but from a Schrégon or Serragoin Indian, of a band lower down on the Klamath, who partially understood it. His memory appeared, however, very defective, and little reliance can be placed on their accuracy. They may serve, however, to connect this with other tongues more certainly known.

EH-NEK. The name of a band at the mouth of the Salmon, or Quoratem river. This latter name may perhaps be considered as proper to give to the family, should it be held one. The language reaches from Bluff creek, the upper boundary of the Pohlik, to about Clear creek, thirty or forty miles above the Salmon; varying, however, somewhat from point to point. On the Salmon, it is said by some to extend to the sources; by others, only to the forks. The name of Peh-tsik, "above," is the term by which the collective tribe is known by the lower Indians.

WATSA-HE'-WA. This is one of the Scott's river bands of the Shasté family. The language prevails from Clear creek up the Klamath, probably to the neighborhood of the lakes; though, as in the last case, there is a difference in dialect at the extremes.

The vocabulary may be relied on with some certainty, as several Indians assisted in giving it; the Oregon jargon being used in communicating with them.

HOW-TE-TE'-OH. This was collected at Scott's valley, from some Indians who came over from the Rogue's river ferry, where they lived. Nothing further is known with respect to it.

NABIL-TSE. Probably, also, a Rogue's river tongue. It was received from a young Indian whom we found at the upper ferry on the Klamath. Whether the word Nabil-tse referred to his particular band, I could not decide. Neither of the last two languages belong to California; but as the communication between Rogue's river and the Klamath is constant, they have been introduced as perhaps throwing light on the relations of the different tribes. It may not be out of place to remark that the intercourse of the whites with the Indians, perhaps more than their own among one another, tends to the conventional introduction into common use of certain words. The jargon, as may be supposed, is already in some degree familiar to the Shastés; and it has been remarked in the Journal that the words "mawitch," and "pappoose," were found as far down as Humboldt bay. In like manner, another jargon is gradually forming, between the bay and the lower Klamath. The word "schoyeh," which on Eel river means *white*, and at the Forks, *good*, is now used everywhere in the latter signification. "Ai-e-queh," *friend*, common apparently to both, is the universal hail among all the river Indians. "Moos-moos" has been introduced from Oregon for *cattle* and *beef*, and "pivu" invented as the name of fire-arms, &c. It is sometimes the case, therefore, that the true origin of a word is mistaken from this cause also.

VOCABULARY OF THE DELAWARES, IN 1792.

FROM THE PAPERS OF JAMES MADISON.

NOTE.—The orthography used in the Indian words has no mute or superfluous letter. The sounds of the letters are according to the French. The c, the g, the w, and the x, are rejected; for the c hard, the k; for the c soft, the s; for the ch, the tsh; for the q, the k; and for the w, the u is used. The a has two sounds, the a open, and the â broad. The common method of accenting is omitted; and the emphatical syllable is formed by an additional letter. Present name of the tribe is Delaware. Present seat, Edgpiiluk, in New Jersey West. Their numbers about forty years ago were about 280, are now about 30.

MR. JAMES MADISON. PHILADELPHIA, *December*, 1792.

ENGLISH.	DELAWARE.	ENGLISH.	DELAWARE.	ENGLISH.	DELAWARE.
Fire	Taande	Smoke	Kolheek	A day	Kiisku
Water	Bee	Cloud	Kumhââk	A month	
Earth	Hââkke	Fog	ââuân	A year	Gutekââkun
Air	Shââkhân	Rain	Suuklan	Spring	Siike
Wind	Shââkhân	Snow	Uiinâ	Summer	Niipân
Sky	Musheek	Hail	Sidoniila	Autumn	Takooko
Sun	Kiisku	Ice	Hukkooem	Winter	Liiuan
Moon	Nibeeshu	Frost	Tuuban	A man	Liinnu
Star	Hongiis	Dew	Sussuuskui	A woman	Hokkuââ
Light	Opaang	Rain-bow	Monukooen	A boy	Ilâiitshit
Darkness	Piiske	Thunder	Patihââkun	A girl	Hokkuââtshit
Day	Kiisku	Lightning	Oslahiilâ	A child	Ommamündot
Night	Tipââkke	Yesterday	Olekee	Father	Nukuââ
Heat	Shiitte	To-day	Kiisku	Mother	Onna
Cold	Tââ	To-morrow		Brother	Niimut

Brother	Niimut	Thigh	Pooim	Monax	Mikuuktshe
Sister	Donniina	Leg	Uikååt	Beaver	Nakuee
Husband	Uikiimuk	Foot	Siit	Raccoon	Nahanuun
Wife	Nihounshan	Toe	Gitsiit	Opossum	Opiing
Son	Giis	Skin	Nikuåån	Hare	
Daughter	Daanus	Nails		Squirrel	Honneek
The body	Uatuhaape	Bone	Okuåån	Flying-squirrel	Honneekuis
The head	Uiil	Blood	Mohooek	Ground-squirrel	Honneekuis
The hair	Miiluk	Life	Lalaheokooen	Mole	Uitpiittshe
The beard	Uitunna	Death	Nongiil	A bird	Tshulilans
The face	Uiisking	Food	Mimiittshing	An eagle	Opollåån
An eye	Uiskiingul	Meat	Uinus	Hawk	Mekollåån
The nose	Uikiiko	Fat	Paame	Owl	Kukuus
The cheek	Uiikån	Lean	Laneook	Turkey	Tshikuuna
Chin	Uiitshe	Bread	åpoon	Swan	
Lip	Shaatu	Indian-corn	Huskuiim	Wild-goose	
Mouth	Tuun	Milk	Nunakoon	Duck	Kuikuiingus
Tooth	Uipiitil	Egg	Ohuul	Turkey-buzzard	Amotshiikus
Tongue	Uiilan	A house		Raven	Uingaokuee
Ear	Uitunk	The mammoth		Crow	Hahees
Neck	Okuehuunge	Buffalo	Sisiliamuus	Black-bird	Sikihiila
Arm	Tillimuunge	Elk	Linimuus	Crane	Tollakåå
Wrist	Onåäkte	Deer	ååtu	Pigeon	Ameem
Hand	Onåäkte	Moose		Dove	Aluum
Finger	Lintshkåånil	Bear		Pheasant	Mimituiis
Belly	Uoote	Wolf	Tumme	Partridge	Pupikuiis
Back	Hunpkue	Panther	Kuinishkuun	Mocking-bird	Tshitshikniin
Side	Ishonneese	Wild-cat	Tshingue	Red-bird	Matshipoii
Bubby	Tuulke	Pole-cat	Skuååk	Snake	Ikuuk
Nipple	Nunukuun	Fox	Oopus	Lizard	Kikaksuus

ENGLISH.	DELAWARE.
Butterfly	Amookås
Fly	Sakiimo
Fish	Namiis
Frog	Kuikuenkuikiilåt
Gold	Uisåuååsun
Silver	Opussuun
Copper	Mikoppokinååkun
A stone	Assuun
Wood	Tahuun
Gum	
A mountain	Ohee
Hill	Kuitahuun
Valley	Indatatakuohaak
Sea	Kihittuun
Lake	Indimnalaheek
Pond	Mimipeek
River	Kittuun
Creek	Siipu
A spring	Tupeek
Grass	Muskiikul
A tree	Hittuuk
Pine	Kouuee
Cedar	Tolaala
Sycamore	
Poplar	Amohuula
Ash	Pakomme
Elm	Piplehamcheelen
Beech	Tshitshitlanååksik
Birch	Uilikååna
Maple	Onsikååmme
Oak	Misåkååk
Chesnut	Opimiintsh
Hickory	Tukuimiinge
Walnut	Tukuimiinge
Locust	Konueek
Mulberry	Okottimaang
A vine	Tshipiitkil
Tobacco	Shaate
Joy	Nuleliinda
Sorrow	Gieliinda
One	Guute
Two	Niiska
Three	Niihå
Four	Nåå
Five	Pollinuuk
Six	Kuutash
Seven	Niishash
Eight	Hååsh
Nine	Piiskunk
Ten	Tilluun
Eleven	ååte guute
Twelve	ååte niishå
Thirteen	ååte niihå
Fourteen	ååte nåå
Fifteen	ååte pollimuck
Sixteen	ååte kuutash
Seventeen	ååte niihash
Eighteen	ååte hååsh
Nineteen	ååte piiskunk
Twenty	Nishinååkke
Twenty-one	Nishinååkke ååte guutte
Thirty	Niihå kinååkke
Forty	Nåå kinååkke
Fifty	Pollinuuk kinååkke
Sixty	Kuutash kinååkke
Seventy	Niihash kinååkke
Eighty	Hååsh kinååkke
Ninety	Piiskunk kinååkke
A hundred	Guute pååkke
Two hundred	Niishå pååkke
Three hundred	Niihå pååkke
Four hundred	Nåå pååkke
Five hundred	Pollinuuk pååkke
Six hundred	Kuutåsh pååkke
Seven hundred	Niishåsh pååkke
Eight hundred	Hååsh pååkke
Nine hundred	Piiskunk pååkke
A thousand	Tilluun pååkke
White	Opeek
Black	Siitke
Green	Iskuiskuinååkue
Blue	Siitke
Yellow	Miiså
Red	Mokkee
Good	Kihålåålit
Bad	Oskouulit
Large	Hiingun

Small	Tongeetu	Sick	Piitsit	To see	Binaaman
High	Olamehukkuum	Brave	Olamaalsu	To speak	Gekiitte
Low	Haakking	Cowardly	Kuue	To walk	Buumska
Broad	Hinguetongue	Wife	Kikileuotte ?	To run	Uishâmeheela
Narrow	Tongimaatuk	Foolish	Kipitsheoote	To stand	Niipoy
Old	Hiluus	I	Niihun	To sit	Tuumetoppe
Young	Uiisksu	You	Kee	To lie down	Tshongeehe
New	Uiishun	He	Nakââme	To smoke a pipe	Nuupâ
Hard	Tshiitunna	She		To love	Dâhoola
Soft	Tââkke	They		To hate	Guingohââla
Sweet	Uiinguân	This		To strike	Bakkuunda
Sour	Shuuân	That		To kill	Nihiila
Bitter	Uisâkâân	To eat	Miitshe	To dance	Guiinska
Hot	Shiitte	To drink	Mumââne	To jump	Bokokihaala
Cold	Taau	To sleep	Kouueen	To fall	Hokkingdeleheela
Dry	Haahun	To laugh	Gilkiis	To break	Tukuiheela
Wet	Suuklan	To cry	Tupaak	To bend	Dokaktuhiina
Strong	Tshituune	To sing	Gindasuu	Yes	Kihiila
Weak	Shââuise	To whistle	Giipa	No	Maata
Pretty	Uitiissa	To smell	Gisiaamun		
Ugly	Matiaasu	To hear	Biindam		

VOCABULARIES OF INDIAN LANGUAGES IN NORTHWEST CALIFORNIA.

BY GEORGE GIBBS, ESQ.

ENGLISH.	TCHO-KO-YEM.	COP-ÉH.	KULA-NAPO.	YUKAI.
Man	Tai cese	Peht lŭk	Kaah	Bai a
Woman	Koo léh cese	Muhl téh	Dáh	Mah ta
Boy	Yo kéh (small)	Wah chik	Kah wih	
Girl	Ko yah	Hé yo	Dah hăts	
Infant, child	Soo léh	Hé yun ké	Löh	
Father	Ah pee	Pai se (head of family)	Harik	Ahm eh
Mother	Eh nüh	Ou éhk	Nihk	Ahm teh
Husband	Oh lih		Dah'k	
Wife	Koh lah		Bai lé	
Son	Eh ai	Chee kil	Wah kai ouk	Keg a wih
Daughter	Too neh	An i ho	Wuh ma sher kah	Keg a wih
Brother	Ah tah	Klum ka báh	Mëch	
Sister	Woh kóh	Klo téh	Do huts	
Indian, people	(No name) Meechah, people	(No name) Sohk, people	Ya ual ma napo (all the towns)	
Head	Mó loh	Buhk	Kai yáh	Snah
Hair	Mó loh	Tee ih	Moo sooh	Éh
Face	Óh nee	Doolh	Uih mo	
Forehead	Shoo toóh	Sinh	Do léh	
Ear	Ah lóhk	Maht	Sheé mah	Shmah
Eye	Shut (shoot)	Sah	Ōoi	Ooi

Nose	Huk (hoŏk)	Kuin ik	La bah bo	Dl'ah
Mouth	Lah gup	Kohl	Ka tsé deh	Hah
Tongue	Lehn teep	Tá hal	Bal	How bah
Teeth	Küht	See ih	Ya óh	Oh
Beard	Oo tooh	Cheh sa ki	Kats u tsu	
Neck	Hel écke	Peh roo	Mi yáh	
Arm	Tau likh	Sah lah	Tsu áh	
Hand	Ook koosh	Sem'h	Bih yah	Ta nah
Fingers	Ouis ook koosh (little hand)	Ku púmh, Koo poomh	Bih yeh (Tso hi, little hand)	Ta nah, ou hai
Nails	Pee tcheeh	Chai ee	Rick'h	
Body	Mee éss	Toohl	She báh	
Leg	How woll	Nahno yierh	Sha kóh	
Foot	Co yok	Mai'h	Kah máh	Sha gooh
Toes	Ouis oo yok	Koo poomh, Ku púmh	Ké ma, Tso hi	
Bone	Cool oop	Pahk	H'yah	
Heart	Wis kee	Pooh ro	Tsa mai	
Blood	Kee chawh	Sahk	Bah láik	Ba lai
Town, village	Yoh mee (house)	Ah na ku il	Na poh	Chah (house)
Chief	Hoi poosh	Kla ma ka min	Ka ha lik	
Warrior			Mah schàio	
Friend	Oi yáh		Uih nah wa	
House	Ko cháh	Kó wéhl	Kah	
Kettle	Scho ká ya		Hah beh sha reh	
Bow	Kóh no	Noon'h	Pah chee	
Arrow	Ohn ma ká	Noh kokh	Schu mai	
Axe, hatchet	Loo táh ya	L'hacha (Spanish)	Kah gah	
Knife	Tchi cháh	Do koh	Kah lih, na ga	Kah li mat
Canoe, boat	Sha káh	Noö	Schu nah	
Shoes	Sho nikh		Kah ma ga ooh	
Pipe	Soom kih	Boh tih	Sa ha ha be	
Tobacco	Kai aúh	Lohl	Sah háh	

ENGLISH.	TCHO-KO-YEM.	COP-ÉH.	KULA-NÁPO.	YUKAI.
Sky, heaven	Lih léh	Peh lah	Kah lih	Kah lih
Sun	Híh (heéh)	Sŭnh	Lah	Dah
Moon	Poo loo look	Sinolbo sŭnh (night sun)	Luë lah (night sun)	Dah
Star	Hit tish	Tah tee men	Ooï yah hoh (eyes of light)	To lul
Day	Hee ah na	Sah nee	Dah mul	Beh meh chihl
Night	Ká wool	Si nohl	Lu éh	Beh dueh
Light	Tché wah	Sah náh	Kah lih da mul	
Darkness	Yoo tezzi	Mee neéh	Po tih	
Morning	Ah wen hee a		Lu ehm	
Evening	Oo kan hee		Lu ehk	
Spring			Sheh ko me	
Summer	Wee lah walle (dry season)	Pohm sin (wet season)	Mu tah oui nel	
Autumn			Kuh tsaië	
Winter	Om me chus walle (wet season)	Peh lah (dry season)	Tsi tal pu ber a la	
Wind	Hennáh	Tou di	H'yah	
Thunder	Táh la wa	Káh na chee	Kah lim a ma to to	
Lightning	Táh keep	K'eh rá	Kah lim a ma tsoi tsoi	
Rain	Oo pah	Yóh ro	Kih keh	Be sheh mah
Hail				
Snow	Hoo tooi	Yohl	H'yul (h'yul dahno, a snow peak)	Yuh
Fire	We kih	Póh	K'hoh	Hoh
Water	Keehk	Méhm	K'hah	Hah
Ice	Shoo sháh		Hi máou	
Earth, land	Wéh ah	K'irh	Kai	Mah
Sea	Lee wáh	Wóh less	Kah tóme	
River	Po láh (running water)	Ká pai	Bi dáh me	B'dah
Lake	Poo lok	Tcho pól	Kah shoh	
Valley	Lóh kul loh	Willa'hk	Ka ho ku cha ma (ravine)	
Hill, mountain	Hól lo mah	Hé wíh	Dah no	
Island		Ueh nem to koi (middle of water)	De leh ba ron	

Stone	Le péh (le pùh)	Ko doi	Ka beh	Ka béh
Salt	Ko yoh	Uéh t'l	Kah éh	
Iron	Hai yah		Kah mah	
Tree	Ah loo ass	Lahk moo	Kah léh	Kah leh
Wood	Schee méh		Kaih	
Leaf	Scha poo lah		Si tal	
Bark			Kah wal	
Grass	Ko leh	Klá kan	Kah tsa	
Pine			Kah sihl ha léh	
Flesh, meat	Kes soom	Nóhp	Bi shéh	Bi sheh
Dog	Hot toll	Hai ook	Hai uh	Chu chu
Buffalo				
Bear	Koo leh	Le lai	Boo ral	Bi tah
Wolf	Hoohn	Uhl	Ku nu la	
Deer	Kes soom	Siáh	Hintil bi shéh	
Elk	Hak kai ya	Lo koi ya	Bo oh	
Beaver	Tee miss		Ka as	
Tortoise			Hah na rih wah	
Fly			Tsa mul	
Musquito			Lu dah lu do	
Snake		Koo séhb	Kah lu tu rook	
Bird	Seep Seep (generic for small birds)	Moh lok	Tsina bi lut (small bird)	Si tah
Egg	Poo loh	Pahk pak	Koh	
Features	Pah kah	Piht	Ih fh	
Wings	Taü likh (arms)		Schál	
Duck	Mel léh		Cay au	
Pigeon	Pooi yuh		Ta, báh ta bo	
Fish	Lo tah (generic)	Téhl	Schah (generic)	Shah
Salmon	Kah sih	Hoo he	Mah lah	
Sturgeon				
Name	Ah wess (only of man)	Cha kéht	Shih	

ENGLISH.	TCHO-KO-YEM.	COP-ÉH.	KULA-NÁPO.	YUKAI.
Affection	Weh lak (love)	O yéh but	Hah mitski	
White	Pah kiss	Cha máh	Pi tah o	Ka leh
Black	Moo loo táh	Sil te	Keela keelick	Ka sheh
Red	Tchu poo táh	Kil kil e	Keh dah reh duk	Ho lib
Blue	See weé tah	Sil tso borh	Tsá keh tsa keh	
Yellow	Loo choó tah		Pŏl	
Green	See weé tah	Tcha báh	Doh tor	
Great	Oon nûn nee	Béh né	Bah tin	Ma toh
Small	Yo kéh	Koo shi	Kooch	
Strong	Hah chím	To kéh to	Sih	
Young	Soo kooh (new)	Pavo illáh in	Lóh	
Old	Oi yiss	Tchch ahk	Buh tse keh	
Good	Toh wiss	Lai oo us	Hoh dih	
Bad	O moh	Tcho ee	Niss	
Handsome	Toh wiss	Lai oo kus	Nah tsai oh	
Ugly	O moh	O réh	Kah lil	
Alive	Hen nak	loo moo erbos	Mahl	
Dead	Tee loh nass	Loo mos	Mu dal	
Cold	Keet, sezze	Per rahr	Kah tsil	Ka si
Warm	Wee lauw	Sa nas chu	Kŏt	
I	Kah nee	Pih luk	Hah	Ah
Thou	Meeh	míh	Mah	Mah
He	Ik koh	Pil léh	Mehp	Moh
We	Mah ko		Ouah	
Ye	Meeh ko		Mah	
They	Mook kam (all)		Behk	
This	Chah ma ze		Meh	
That	In tess		On báh	
All	Mook kam	Chá ket	Yah oual me	
Many, much	Tché kén	Ah noo	Quum tsāh	

Who	Mahn tee	Poh pah mi (who is it?)	Ke yah	
Near	Ca ha uente	Köhl	Oua rih	
To-day	Shoo koo hee	Páh sa ni	Shoh	
Yesterday	Nee tehtsh hee	Léh ni	Duk ah	
To-morrow	Auw weh	Béh na	Dou ehm	
Yes	Ooh	Oh	Eh	
No	Hee ih	El esh ҫho	Quih	
One	Kehn yeh	Eh téh ta	K'hah lih	Tchah
Two	Oh shah	Pahm pah ta	Köts	Hoh
Three	Teh léh kah	Po nohl ta	Homeka	Se wuh
Four	Hoo yah	Eh moos ta	Dol	Tuk
Five	Keh neh koosh	É tes em ta	Leh ma	Sȟal
Six	Pah chees ak	Ser pohl ta	Tsa di	Tsa di
Seven	Shéhm lah wee	Ser poh teh ta	Ku la höts	Ko bah
Eight	Oh shoh yak	Pa néh moos ta	Ko ka dohl	Ko ko dul
Nine	Uh nes ash	Pa neh moos téh ta	Hah da röl shum	Na qual shum
Ten	Kih chiss	Pam pa sun ta	Hah da rul tek	Hual tek
Eleven	(Count no farther)	(Count no farther)	Na ga lih	
Twelve			Nah	
Twenty			Kai lih leh ma	
Forty				
One hundred	Kee chis kee chis		Quum ka hai	
Four hundred				
One thousand				
To eat	Yoh loh moo sih	Báh	Ku hu	
To drink	Oo shooh	Teh téh	Mih	
To run	Hih chee uh	Uih tú le	Kah nu oual	
To dance	Kah wool	To loh	Kik e yal	
To sing	Koh yah	Moo hé	Ken ih	
To sleep	Éh't	Ka náh	Se mah mére	
To speak	Mah cha u	Téh wéh	Kah nuh	

ENGLISH.	TCHO-KO-YEM.	COP-ÉH.	KULA-NÁPO.	YUKAI.
To see	El lih	Tchó weh	Hehts	
To love			A met ke	
To kill	Oh kéh	Li móh	Schaak	
To sit	Wat téh	Pih tla ham	Kah kim	
To stand	Tah láhs	Peh chai u	A le go kim	
To go	Oh poë	Kai oon chel	Le loŏm	
To come	Oh ni	Uer suhn	Koo roo hoŏm*	

* North, ku hu la; south, yoh; east, shoh; west, boh; a year, kale ho ho tsai; a head chief, koom ha la kai.

ENGLISH.	CHOW-E-SHAK.	BATEM-DA-KAI-EE.	WEE-YOT.	WISH-OSK.
Man	Ba ah	Baäh	Ko éh	Ko éh
Woman	Mah ta		Ka booch	Ka bootse
Boy	Ká wih		Kush á ma	Liger itl
Girl	Ka wia ma ta		Kush á ma	Mah tserh
Infant, child	Ka wih tu		Kush á ma	Tserk
Father	Ah me ch		Whe wo i	
Mother	Ah teh		Whe wauh	
Husband	Mah ta yuh		Há quéh (married)	Wéh o wut'l
Wife	Mah da han		Há quéh (married)	Wéh o wut'l
Son	Kég a wih		Kush á ma	
Daughter	Bah tee		Kush á ma	
Brother	Bah keé		Kohts pe lon	Re kuss
Sister	Ah mi shéh		Kohts pe lon	Toh ka
Indian, people	Chah		Kuhts we ráhk	Ko ehl
Head	Shen ah	She mah	Met wet	Wut wetl
Hair	Eh	Éh	Pah'tl	Paht'l
Face	Hui mo		Soo lá tek	Kaht souetl
Forehead	De léh		Chek que réh'l	Taht ho ké

Ear	She máh		Wut we loh'ī	Met pel oke
Eye	Oui ka beh	Ooi kah béh	Mel léh'd	Mel éh
Nose	Lah	Lah	Met héhr	Tut heh
Mouth	Ha sa lah	Hah	Mel loh'l	Mel ohn
Tongue	Bah	Bah	Méht	Meht
Teeth	Óh	Oh	Mëh'pt	Meh'pt
Beard	Hai yamh		Chéh'pl	Tséh 'pl
Neck	Mee yah		Che rush	Rer wel o ketl
Arm	Ko mooh		Mohr	Rohr
Hand	Ta nah	Tauah	Wess	Re wess
Fingers	Ta nah too	Sépa	Wess	Re moh kess
Nails	Éhtah		Met kun	Ret kun
Body	Shu báh		Hit'l	Tah'
Leg	Boo náh		Taht whil la goh	Taht whe la goh
Foot	Ka mah	Kamah	Wel lih'tl	Weh lihl
Toes	Ka ma tsu		Tlch la quéh	Rita we lihl
Bone	Yah		Wet ka ráh	Wah tla kah
Heart	Kahm		Mets wets wá	Re wut
Blood	Ba láih		Ker wik	Kow ek
Town, village	Pöh		Kats wáh'tl	Mohl
Chief	Tcha ka léh		Kái o wuh	Kow quéh'tl
Warrior				
Friend	Yah mah		Āi o quéh	Ai e quéh
House	Tchah		Mohl (tahq, lodge)	Mohl
Kettle	Ha beh p'ka		Ké will áh gue	Tswats
Bow	Tsoo		Shwát	Tăt he
Arrow	Tchoke		Sáhpe	Tsahpé
Axe, hatchet			Mehtl	Mahtl, meht lass
Knife		Kah be bah	Po méh pel	Set a pa
Canoe, boat	Shu nah		Ah low éh	Shu nah, há loa
Shoes	Ka ma la pa lik		Shig era quél	Shu gar a quel

ENGLISH.	CHOW-E-SHAK.	BATEM-DA-KAI-EE.	WEE-YOT.	WISH-OSK.
Pipe	Sa hah hah béh		Maht lél	Kes wuk, maht'letl
Tobacco	(Spanish)		Quass quuck	Quass wuk
Sky, heaven	Kah líh		Wehn	Wehn
Sun	Mah chi dáh	Dah	Taum	Tahm
Moon	Du eh dah	De wé dah	Tso lai lo quéh	Tsé wehl
Star	Toh tul		Wénne wel léhde	Koom e rats
Day	Cha ma chihl		Éri with lau	
Night	Ber du el		Koh nah	
Light	Da bo chah		Éri with lau	
Darkness	Shë du eh te		Se swek	
Morning	Nu em mah		Te gut tahl	I tug e ruk
Evening	Da bo di nah		Kut ta wíh	Nuy ug eruk
Spring	Kats a meh			
Summer	M'ta ui nalmo			
Autumn	Pah bollin			
Winter	Koh tsat tsao			
Wind	Yáh yám		Ruk ta gun	Rah te gut'l
Thunder	Mah ke lah		Tah kok	
Lightning	Mah ke lah tso tum		Iht luk	
Rain	Bu sheh mah		Póh weh	Poh wah
Snow			Heh'q	
Hail	Uhman		Tah le tah wik	
Fire	Hoh	Hoh	Măss	Mess
Water	Kah	Kah	Meráh tche, or póh wih	Mer áh che (hoh'l)
Ice	Eh ma ha nim		Tah le tah wik	
Earth, land	Mah	Mah	Let kuk	Let kuk
Sea	Kah ma lul		Kut sug ger uh	
River	Be dahn		Lah lihl	
Lake				
Valley	Kah koh			

Hill, mountain	Da néh		Quus	Wáh na
Island			Hura wá wik	
Stone	Ka béh	Ka béh	Plá tuk	
Salt	Sheh éh		Pŏk	Pah kel ohn
Iron			Ká lish	
Tree	Kah leh	Kah leh	Rath lá wa	Wah nok
Wood	Haíh		Mah tee	
Leaf			He weh ger úk	
Bark			Wits we ráhtch	
Grass	Kah dih		Héh man u wul	Wis e rats, moh yuk
Pine			Wah nakq	
Flesh, meat	Bi shéh			Meh luk
Dog	Hai uh	Hai úh	Wyets	Wy'ts
Buffalo				
Bear	Bo tah		Mowk	Mowk (griz.) skerot lera (blk.)
Wolf			Rak whleer éhl	
Deer	Bi shéh		Meh luck	Haht lucq
Elk			We lau wéh	
Beaver				
Tortoise				
Fly			Pihl what quo téh	Kuts
Musquito			Pa yee	
Snake			Hah ritch	
Bird	Tá ka si		Eera wéh shl	
Egg			Tát tuk	
Feathers			Hlep ten a woï	
Wings			Wetch we rah che	
Duck			Ha lah lih	Ha la litl
Pigeon			Hum méhk	
Fish	Shah		Math luk quahts	
Salmon			Math lúk	Maht luk

ENGLISH.	CHOW-E-SHAK.	BATEM-DA-KAI-EE.	WEE-YOT.	WISH-OSK.
Sturgeon				
Name			Shever eign yel[1]	
Affection			—— shék	
White	Kaléh	Kaléh	Schó yeh	Koh tse roh
Black	Ka tséh	Kat séh	Paht pat	Peht, kih'
Red	Tâts	Ho limb	Ker wik	Te weh pah, sau gihk
Blue	Tsa hàát		Tse rai eet	Tse rai eete
Yellow	Tsa poot			
Green	Tâts			Toh ketl
Great	Ko ma toh		Rah ta	Kuh tseh
Small	Ko bit suh		Kush ah ma	
Strong			Āsh kun	
Young				
Old			Mow ee ma	
Good			Koht se rohe	Kohtse roke
Bad			Sauks	Tse raia, sauks
Handsome				
Ugly				
Alive				
Dead			E quus soë	Tah rok
Cold	Kah sée		Kuts láh will	Kuts low eh
Warm			Klett	Hah tow ah
I	Ah	Tchab	Yeel	Yeel
Thou	Mah	Mah mih	Keel	Kheel
He	Moh	A búh		Te will ah
We				
You				
They				
This			Wun	
That			Wun	

All			Katsa	Kutsa
Many, much			Katsa	
Who			Quut que rúk que[2]	
Near			Meet se roi	
To-day			Morok (now)	
Yesterday			Kou voi	
To-morrow			Taum kohtsé (one day)	
Yes			Che wán	Keh'tl
No			No	Keh ya
One	Tchah	Tch'ah	Koh tse	Kohtsa
Two	Kauh	Koh	Er ee ta	Ritta
Three	Si buh	Se buh	Er ee ka	Ribk
Four	Tak'h	Tak	Re aw wa	Ri yah
Five	Shál	Shal	Wessa	Wéh sah
Six	Tsa di	Tsadi	Tuk se loke	Kle loke
Seven	Ko bah	Ko ba	Ah loh	Hah loh
Eight	Ko ko doh	Ko ko dul	E o wit	He o wit
Nine	Ko al shum	Na kahts	Mes e roke	Sheroke
Ten	Ko al tuk	Ku oual	Ro toh ke	Re loke
Eleven	Naqual		Me kohtsé	
Twelve	Koh		Me reeta	
Twenty	Cha mi ma		Reeta bah	Rita ba hel
Forty	Koh teh		Ramáh	Rama hel
One hundred				Niti wésa wanni hel
Four hundred				
One thousand				
To eat			Tu poi	Kéhs (to chew, a-poshe)
To drink			Tu poi	Me rah tsee
To run			Lath lee ka	Kou la géh
To dance			Tah lo lo woi	
To sing			Lah lihse	Láh liss

ENGLISH.	CHOW-E-SHAK.	BATEM-DA-KAI-EE.	WEE-YOT.	WISH-OSK.
To sleep			Tehk thlil	Teh tlehl
To speak			Kuts wulloi	Tah loh
To see			To whit lah	Tow eht lah
To love				
To kill				
To sit			Tuk kow wun	Tut hulló
To stand			Tum moi	Tum méh
To go			Tah lah wih	Roh lah
To come			Kuh lug a reet	Kou ro wáh
			Kou lou	Kome tah[3]

[1] Chev er eign yel, apparently, is the question, "what do you call it?"

[2] Quut que ruk que, who is that?

[3] Quut we rá qua, what is that? hit tub, west wind; hit tah, north wind; kluk ri e guh, south wind; meht lahk, east wind.

ENGLISH.	WEITS-PEK.	HOO-PAH.	TAH-LE-WAH.	EH-NEK.
Man	Pagēhk	Quais tai	Poh lus an'h	Ah wunsh
Woman	Wint suk	Tsah mest lah		A skik ta wa
Boy	Hoh ksh	Te lêrrh hêrtsh	Kerrhn	Anak' ho cha
Girl	Wai in uksh	Mis kéh yuts	Ker neehl	Yeh ni pá ho itch
Infant, child	Tchai nuks			
Father	Meg wah she		Wah nux a wah	
Mother	Tsi ma mus		Kerrh winnah	
Husband				
Wife				
Son	Hoh ksh			
Daughter	Wai in uksh			
Brother	Opah	Hwa at		Yah tish
Sister	Winersh	Nauh terrtsh		Ah huk moi ram
Indian, people	Olle quah, legub	Quais tai	As to wa	Ah rah
Head	Teguéh	Ok héh	As tin tah	Ak houtsh houtsh

Hair	Lep taitl	Tsé wok		If foon
Face	Tåk leh	Haun ith	We taw a luh	Ah ve
Forehead	Teh wéh	Hots in tah	Ta ha na nahn ta	Yoop win
Ear	Spéh guh	Hot che weh		Teeve
Eye	My lih	Huanah		Yoop
Nose	Met pee	Hun tchu	Sohn, see toh	Yoof wi
Mouth	Mih lutl		Sto wis	Up mah
Tongue	Meh pl'h	Sast ha	So'h	Up ree
Teeth	Mer pet'lh	How wa	Shteé	Woo'h
Beard	Méh perch	Hottah	Se merrh perrh	Mer ruhw
Neck	Pah tuh	Ho se watl	Schon i ti	Seehn
Arm	Meh sheh'	Hoit hla ni	Meer shee	Utt ruh'
Hand	Tsé wush	Hollah	Sunh	Tiki vash
Fingers	Tsé wush	Hollah twinné		Teek
Nails	Wehtl ke te	Hollah kets		Uhk pee
Body	Meh yé	Hot che	Oohn	Imme yáh
Leg	Mil'h péh	Hot sinne	Mess oos	Upp shee
Foot	Mets ké	Hom mit laht hut	Stah	Fies ee
Toes	Re wunna	Hom mit laht hut tsinne		Fiss ee hup
Bone	Weh'l ke			
Heart	Tcheks			Im me yáh
Blood	Hah'pl			Ahk
Town, village	Tenah od'h lum me (many houses)	Hun thah	Waht'l kee	Kir eé vi ra
Chief	Siáht low (mow ee ma, old man)	Ne haht ahé	How inne quutl	Pen eeteh
Warrior				
Friend	Ai e quéh			Ah rah
House	Od'h lumme			Kir eé vi ra
Kettle	Kai umma	Hait sah		Ah sheep
Bow	Smakh ta	Tsilt héh	Chetl ta	Schkahm
Arrow	Nah qu't	Kah huss		Kha wish
Axe, hatchet	Tuhk tuk	Mehl choh le watl		Uk kauhr

ENGLISH.	WEITS-PEK.	HOO-PAH.	TAH-LE-WAH.	EH-NEK.
Knife	Chah lish, cutting inst. peh ga mis, iron.	Me kus tem méh	Nüht limmee	Shim shim (iron)
Canoe, boat	Yáhts	Meh tihl	Mak till	Páh a
Shoes	Nah ah	Yeh chuit hahl		Yoo kook a
Pipe	Rah ugh	Chun ai chauh		Oh rahm
Tobacco	Hah kuhm	Min tehl schwa		Eh hé rah
Sky, heaven				Pai na no a vak
Sun	Wá noush leh	Hwah		Kōsh rah
Moon	Ketne wauhr	Hotleh hwah		Kah rum
Star	Hau gehts			A tai e rum
Day	Tehn ep			
Night	Kitah en uhtl			
Light	Ke chep			
Darkness	Ke tuts ki			
Morning	Ket rauh			
Evening	Ket ai auh			
Spring				
Summer	Teh en oitl (dry season)			
Autumn				
Winter	Kets ep orah (wet season)			
Wind	Rauk sah			
Thunder	Tehn pah			
Lightning	Ro rik'h			
Rain	Tah puhr	Nahn ya		To pah so reh
Snow	Met se lek			
Hail				
Fire	Mets	Hoh		Áh
Water	Pá há	Tah nahn		Iss shah
Ice	Skeh'tl			Su sah ne
Earth, land	Chahk	Klitch uh		Steep
Sea	Pisca	Toni chah how		

River	Pá hă			
Lake	Leh go			
Valley	Wes a nah			
Hill, mountain	Tchu luh, hill (O mek wah, mount.)	Minis ahn		Too sheep
Island	O meh quutl			
Stone	Hah áh gun			Ahksh
Salt	Pai ah gun			
Iron	Pah ga miss			
Tree	Tché wun	Nahl kutsh		Ip pa ha
Wood	Yuhl koits (Kits putl, log)			
Leaf	Wah ke loh			
Bark	Hah me noh			
Grass	Mash cherruk			
Pine				
Flesh, meat	(Name of the animal)			
Dog	Chishé	Schlúnh		Chish ee
Buffalo				
Bear	Ack witch (grizzly), Che whr (black)	Mitch ho wa		Pir ish ke aht
Wolf	Chishe			
Deer	Poke, poke tik	Kit la han		Poof witch
Elk	Meh wihtl	Ton wheh		
Beaver	Neh ye mut			
Tortoise				
Fly				
Musquito				
Snake	May epr			
Bird	Sher gréh	Kloke a yau		Tihi weeve
Egg				
Feathers	Ret náh			
Wings				
Duck	Muk tush			

ENGLISH.	WEITS-PEK.	HOO-PAH.	TAH-LE-WAH.	EH-NEK.
Fish	Squatl	Kloke		
Salmon	Neh pooh			Ahm a
White	Wáu gee	Noof wan		
Black	Keh wuh luk			
Red	Pai kai	Yoh wis ahn		
Blue	Koits ah			
Yellow	Shler a wuh			
Great	Ténah	Ohw klauh		Kaitch
Small	Skéh nah	Tohe hlan		Neena mitch
Strong	Men au leh			
Old	O meh perts (old age)			
Good	Scho yeh (sko yeh)	Noof wan		Yau 'w
Bad	Kéh mah le	Nitch wan		Kahrim
Dead	Mahl			To eeve
Cold	Hai ee	Kis till éh		Uss sik
Warm	Ke éh ta	Nah nah whohn		Too pe mik ku
I	Nek	Whéh		Eem
Thou	Kehl	Killéh		Nah
He	Yok	Yo		Oom
All	Et motl			
Many, much	Ten áh			Tá hai
To-day	Koh			
Yesterday	Schmé yen			Tu shoo pa
To-morrow	A wok pah			Im mân
Yes	Ya ah	K'hat		Áh
No	No	'Hät a héh		Poo'h
One	Spinekoh	Kleh wunna	Tits kŏh	Issah
Two	Nuh ehr	Nah nih	Kitch nik	Ach hok
Three	Nak sa	Hah kin	Kitch nah	Kui rahk
Four	Toh hun ne	In kin	Tchah a nik	Peehs

Five	Mahr o tum	Twol lah	Schwal lah	Ti ráh o
Six	Hoh tcho	Hoos tan	Wish tah	Ti ri vi ki
Seven	Tche wurr	Hook itt	Has mitl	Hukin ee vik
Eight	K'heh wuh	Keh nim	Sho ohn	Kui ruk in ee vik
Nine	Kerr (kurr)	Nook oost auh	Gerrh gererrh	Ti ro pe tish a
Ten	Wert'h leh werh	Min it luck	Swel lah	Tráh
Eleven	(Count no farther)			
One hundred				Iss sha paitsh
To eat	Ke nep a que	Teh whiht ehr		Tenahk pori
To drink	Ke ash pek	Tauh tenah		
To run	Wets peg anh run	Tah tihlt lah		
To dance	Well um eh ye			
To sing	Werr orer	Meh kitl tah		
To sleep	Kits keh yuk	Witch ow a		Tenak u eet
To speak	Wits we gín	Tchuh hun neah		Tchope
To see	Kit nee	Tessun		Ken i moosh ti
To kill	Kits mot	Nah hoh nihl kis		
To sit	Kits eo kuk	Nihn tsa		Tan m kir eesh
To stand	Ke kau um	Tsis e hun		V wi yah ree
To go	Tcho	Ha a win yotl		O hou ant
To come	Hametsa[1]	Nahn ta		Ouk náh[2]

---

[1] Tenas yah, what do you call it? wennes, fetch it; nuk wat lus, go and get it; tchu cheen, go quick; hag auhn, paddle.

[2] Shim shim tah, or up hon ti ni, white men. The first refers to the miners—iron or metal men; the last to the caps worn by them. Kahruk, up; You ruk, down.

NEW VOCABULARIES WEST OF THE MISSISSIPPI.

ENGLISH.	MANDAN. BY JAMES KIPP.	ARAPAHOES. BY JOHN S. SMITH.	CHEYENNES. BY JOHN S. SMITH.	PUEBLO (OF TUSUQUE). BY DAVID V. WHITING.
God	Omahag numagshi	Es cha bah ne yah thar	A am ah ve ho (white man above)	Eose
Devil	Omaha kiyga			Peni seinde
Angel				Ahn jere
Man	Numankosh	E nan e tah	Ha tan	Sae
Woman	Mihé	Is see	Ha e o	Quie
Boy	Subnumañkosh	A nor hoye	Ki ku na	Enouh
Girl, or maid	Submihé	Is sa ha (girl) Is sa a ta yah (maid)	X sa (maid) Ha ee ki kun nee (girl)	Aguuh
Virgin	Submihé waratomiyash			Sena ta pih
Infant, or child	Subyamahé	Won chin chee haes sah	Ma che vote	Hereyih
Father, my	Subyomahe	Na son nah	Ne o ee	No vis seudoh
Mother, my	Nahé	Na nah	Nah co ee	No vi qui yah
Husband, my	Kobaro	Nash	Nah	No vi so
Wife, my	Kuñs (my wife, muñs; thy, miñs)	Ner ter shee ah	Nah stchim	No vi to guah
Son, my	Kornikosh	Na ah	Nah	No vi ae
Daughter, my	Nuhankosh	Nah tahn nah	Nahtch	No vi a guah quai
Brother, my	Hoshimka	Na sisth sah	Nah sim mah kah (younger brother)	No vi pa reh
Sister, my	Hoshimka	Na ee ah ta ee ah	Nis sis ha e o	No vo pa reh i
An Indian	Numahakaké	E nen ee tah	Vo is tan ah	Iaembi
A white man	Wuashī	Nee yah thar	Ve ah o	Tzan cih
Head	Phan	Nee a thar	Mah ke o	Pto
Hair	Phanhī	E tor ker air	A vah	Po
Face	Ista	Ner hor e teh	Ne schin	Tzae

Scalp	Parobyi	Mee thash	Me take	Po cowah
Ear	Naggoyé	Won nee tun a	Es tah vote	Oyez
Eye	Istami	Mee shee shee	A ch' quin	Tzie
Nose	Payu	Ner tun nee	Knive	Heu
Mouth	Ihé	Net tee	Marthe	So
Tongue	Désiké	Na thun	Ve tun no	Hae
Tooth	Hi	Veath tah	Veisice	Mouaei
Beard	Ihi	Vase sa non	Me at sa (sa silent)	Hom poh
Neck	Itaino	Mas son net	A e yuts	Kai ku
Arm	Aadé	Nun ner sha	Ar teh	Kho
Shoulder	Akish	Ta ee on ner	Es tuts se on	Khu wo
Back	Nahosh	Ner cor bah	Nah pah on	Oh wa
Hand	Unkeh	Mah chet un	Mah arts	Maho
Finger	Unkirihé	Nish stee	Mo ich	Mang hu
Nail	Unkáhe	Nor'xh		Mau yeh
Breast	Dayyarayá	Au ker bah	Es te she	Pink hou
Body	Maandash	A tahn nee er	A ve to vah	Tou hu
Leg	Doké	Ner ah tah	Sth ach	Poh
Navel	Detasu	Neth	Es tah	Sih pch
Thigh	Rokotoré	Ha bas char vun	A no mah (last syl. almost silent)	Poh pino
Knee	Supayé	Na cha ter yun	Haes stun	Ku man yah
Foot	Shininka	Nau thua ee tah	Nice	Auh
Toe		Ner sun	Mo ick	Auh cagh
Heel	Shirusta	Ner ther ta ee tah	Nah t'chist	Auh na puh
Bone	Pudé	Ha hun nah	Ha'ch	Hae hun
Heart	Nätkan	Bat tah	Es tah	Pih
Liver	Pī	Ish	Ha (short)	Han dah
Windpipe	Napamayposanaké	Nee er sin ut tau que tun	Nan' er po'ho	Kahn nin
Stomach	Eggihusanadé	Net jau et		Si i wagh
Bladder	Idayé	None ist	Vah cote	So yoh muh
Blood	Irush	Bahe	Mah e	Uh

ENGLISH.	MANDAN.	ARAPAHOES.	CHEYENNES.	PUEBLO (OF TUSUQUE).
Vein	Uduké	Bahe ee vor	Mah e	Au quah
Sinew	Hissé	An ee ta	An ti kah	Tzau
Flesh	Oro	Won nun yah	O ah vo cote	Tuh
Skin	Nobyi	Tah yatch	Vo tan	Au ko wah
Seat	Itah	Se er kutch	Ho ist	Puh
Ankle	Shupa	Tut cha ha e nah	Hah e yahn	Ah nah paih
Town	Miti	Ha ee tan	Mo tah	O waih
House	Oti (lodge)	Ner oo wah	Mah yeahn	Tai whah
Door		Tee chun wah	En e po	Poh ti reh
Lodge		Nane e nah	Vane	Te ah
Chief	Numahagshi	Nah chah	Ve on na be	Tou yah
Warrior	Kahrokanarchosh	Nut tee kun neen nah	Ve utch ha ton	Kai tzai ih
Friend	Manuka	Na ter ha ah	Ho ah	Kai mah
Enemy	Wiratanosh	Chor thar	Note se	Haim bi
Kettle	Céréyé	Bath thin nah	Mi ti tuch	Ka suh
Arrow	Manamahé	Us	Mi otze	Tzuh
Bow	Warairupa	Bah ee tah	Mah te ka	Ah
War-club	Mikasgesh	An nath kah thar	Wo pe to	Hah ri fai tzu
Spear	Manaitirutshuke	Her whar	Ho mone	Ium peh
Axe	Omanaté	Her ee nah	Hah e o vo (women's instrument)	Ku weh
Gun	Watashérupa	Ker ker ee ah	Mi e tan o	Kuahn when
Knife	Mahi	Whar her	Mu té ka	Si yoh
Flint	Mahitshuke	Nah sah	Mo e sucko	Huan hua rin tzi
Boat	Minake	Tha ee wun	Sim on	Ko heh
Ship	Mina age ytesh			
Oar				Poh wih
Paddle	Irouayorkor			
Shoe	Hmnpé	Wo an nah	Mo kean	Ahn toh
Legging	Hushi	Wot tah ah	Mah tuts	Koh
Coat	Imashoté	Bee hu it	A es stich (es almost silent)	Puh yai toh

Shirt	Imashot panhanpi	Co co nish bee hu it	Co co a es stich	Camisa toh
Breechcloth	Noké	Won no it	Vo is to	Puh yah wi
Sash	Iypărăkĕ	Won son nish shee wah tuck ah	A vo es tah toe	Bah ah
Head-dress	Pahiguygahi	Co cor hon (war-bonnet)		Poh ka
Pipe	Ihinke	A chah	Ha e yoke	Sah ku
Wampum		A yon a ee ah	A co na ma son	Cuah ah, hai eu deh
Tobacco	Manashé	Shee shah wah	Sin na mon	Sah
Shot-pouch	Watashema iroké	A neen ish	A vo ka mes tuts	Ko wa i yah
Sky	Yàré oto	On nah	Vo ha	Ina co wah
Heaven	Mayopeni umanké		Vo ha	Na yoh pah
Sun	Mapsi minaké	Nee shee ish	Is she	Tah
Moon	Istu minaké	Bee co shee ish	Tah is she	Pho
Star	Ykéké	Ah thah	O to ke	Ah go yah
Day	Hampé	Ee shee	Na vone	Tah ri
Night	Istu	Tut chah	Tah	Ku ri ri
Light	Ideyosh	Ee shee	A vo asth	Taih
Darkness	Yamperishka	E ah tut cha ah	I no nit	Kunh
Morning	Mapsita	Nau kah	Me ah vone	Hai reu dih
Evening	Istũndehosh	Ee ther ah	A to ive	Tai i rih
Mid-day	Hampenatosh	A nah thah nis sa	Sit to ho e	Tah gai ri
Midnight	Istunatosh	Thau tut cha	Sit to ve tah	Nuh pi nu rih
Early	Wamámpsita	Nau see nut see cha ee na	Mo nee vone	Hai rim bah
Late	Hapétépansh	Wau ker ner ee tah		Puh o hai yi poh
Spring	Cèhénude	Bon nee ah wa na ee	Mahtch se om eve	Toh ou dih
Summer	Raskéke	Va nee cha	Me am eve	Pohn iv gueh ri
Autumn	Pitande	Tah u nee	O ton no eve	Seh coh
Winter	Maana	Char chea nee nee	Ah a am eve	Teh nuh rih
Year	Maana mayena	Tah chon vee cha	Nuke ee i	Pohn ioh
Wind	Shé	As sis see	H'hah	Muaho
Lightning	Yéminde	E sun	Ha o etch e uts	Tzih go nah no
Thunder	Yéinihe	Cher houik	Na nu mah	Kuohn tohn

ENGLISH.	MANDAN.	ARAPAHOES.	CHEYENNES.	PUEBLO (OF TUSUQUE.)
Rain	Yé	Os son ick	Ho co	Kuohn
Snow	Wahe	Ee	Es tassa	Poh
Hail	Ragganande	Wah with thon	Ah sit ton	Sah cam beh
Fire	Warade	Is shit tah	O esth	Tah
Water	Miné	Nutch	Mah pa	Poh
Ice	Yoodé	Wah hoo	Mah omh (omh almost silent)	Oh yeh
Earth	Mahanké	Be tow ah	Ho a	Knohn
Sea	Mennikere	Hah tats	Sa marm hoem	Poh soh
Lake	Memniyte	Ah what tat	Ha ah ne	Poh qua
River	Passanhe	Ne chee ah	O ha	Poh ka
Spring	Manahinge			Poh pih
Stream	Manigshukosh	Cah o a		Koh
Valley		Ner nee chah	So pahn	Ah cou bai guai
Hill	Oparashe	Chah ta oo ah	Ho e est (mound, vose)	Pigh guai
Mountain	Oparash yteksh	Ah hi	O ni vase	Pighn soh
Plain	Gahösté	Ee sau vah	To to an	Ah cou
Forest	Manarokta (in the wood)	Nah yatch	Mun noe mah tah	Kah
Meadow				Tah
Bog	Matuntugge	Cah sit chah	A cum mah	Poh tzae
Island	Wuitka	Ben na	A mun hive	Poh yah reh
Stone	Ishanshiké	Ah nor kah	O nah he	Kuh
Rock	Misanake	Ah nor kah	O nah he	Kuhn duh guai
Silver	Watashoshoté	Nah ker wit see	Be on e mi kite (captain's metal)	Kuahn gu tzah cu
Copper	Watasikeré	Ba ah bee	Mi mi kite	Kuahn cu pih
Iron	Wata subsi	Bee ate see	Mi kite	Kuahn cu tzan uaen
Lead	Wata shamahé	Ker kee on mit thar	Be on e mi	Kuahn cu poh wai
Gold	Wata sheside goshikeresh	Nee ah ee bate see	A yo ve be on e mi kite	Kuahn cu tzai i
Maize, or corn	Hubatka	Bes cah der	Mah ah min	Kühn
Wheat		Co is sah an	Marts se min	Tah toh
Oats			Marts se min	

Potatoe	Omeni catek ytеggeri	Chah a	I es to ma mis sis te	Sa gour beh
Turnip	Mahosh			
Pea	Omeni Asamakeri		On nis ti co monch ka (round bean)	Tu tzam beh
Bean		O won nee	Monch ka	Teh nah tuh
Melon	Rode zcharutosh	(Ba coo ah, pumpkin)	Ma on en coah	Ben duhn deh
Squash	Rode		Ma on en coah	Pöh
Barley				
Tree	Manaininge	Hah houit	Ho'est	Beh
Log	Manayte	Besh	No ne ho'est	Soh puh
Limb	Manaoyanya	It tun		Hun kah
Wood	Mana	Vah con na is tan a	Mah xt	Söh
Post				Paih hueh
Stump	Manahuta	Der vis ish	Nah mo nosh	Beh puhn deh
Pine	Manayopeni	Sas	Shis to to	Whaie
Oak	Manaitahu	Ha han cha	Orm she	Kuai
Ash	Tabsa	Ha es chee bis	Mo toke	
Elm	Warauit	Bee it	Oame	
Shrub	Manaogshugge	Chan ou ee		Peh gnah vi cahm bo rih
Leaf	Aäpé	Wee chis	Va po et	Kuhn co wah
Bark	A	A nor ix	A ton nake	Peh co wah
Grass	Hantoy	Wah coo ee	Moist	Peh quai bih
Hay	Yaye		No nee moist	Tah co wah
Nettle	Yaihiganade	Nee earth sah see a	Mite	Tzai heh
Thistle	Yanshishihe			Eoh
Weed	Máhé		Hi es to ma moist	Kah
Flower	Ōsédé		Mo nee vip puts	Poh bih
Rose			Hin nin	Cah poh bih
Bread	Wapabshi	Chau chah	Co co con nah	Pahn
Indian meal	Goyante gatiriki	Sau an	Mah men pin hi yon	Kuhn keih
Flour	Washita gatiriki	Sah hoo ee	Pin hi yon	Tah tohn keih
Meat	Maaskape	Ah oo	On no vote (dry meat)	Pi bih

ENGLISH.	MANDAN.	ARAPAHOES.	CHEYENNES.	PUEBLO (OF TUSUQUE).
Fat	Zihnde	Nee na	Vee tee ka	Kahu muh
Beaver	Warappe	Ah bash	Hau mah	Oh yoh
Deer	Wamēnako	Ba ha	Vah ote a vah	Paihn
Bison, or buffalo	Ptihnde (cow), péroké (bull)	A sin ner	Is see vone	Köh
Bear	Matò	Whoth, or wha	Nah quo	Kaih
Elk	Umpa	Eee wour koo	Mo ee	Tâh
Moose	Payuptapta	Ee nau nee a		
Otter	Peytake	E ya hoo	Nine	O yoh
Fox	Irúte		Voxe sa	De tza ouai
Wolf	Hárate	Ah qua	Orne na	Deh
Dog	Maniśerute	Ath	O tam	Tzai
Squirrel		Ee nah nun nee		Yeh
Hare	Maytiké	Vare hau ker	Vo	Púh
Lynx	Matoyka			
Panther	Shunte hañshka	Mah hau kah	Nah ner see an	
Muskrat	Shunt shuke	Ee hau que	O kee vash	
Minx	Manigga suntike			
Fisher	Iytik psi			
Mole	Maytopgātsh			
Polecat	Shoñyté	Cor	Cah on	
Hog	Washita mato (white man's bear)	Os sa whah	X er a sa o tam (long-nosed dog)	Petz zureh
Horse	Umpa maniyse (looks like an elk)	A wour ker ah	Mo in nah ham	Cauallo
Cow	Ptihnde	Bee	Ma	Ua gah
Sheep	Ans yté	Hot tat	Cose	Cah naro
Turtle or tortoise	Kipsande	Ban nah	Mine	O kûu
Toad	Yattga	Ah weth nor cor bee	O nee hi	Pêh
Snake	Waygiruyga	See see ah, or see seive a	She shin no vote	Nan gah
Lizard	Waygiruyga	Cor ah a		Ku sin deh
Worm	Waygiruyga	Bee sa		Non sih
Insect			Va ho	Animah eh

Fly	Hamparaka	Chah vee ah	Un no mi	Puhn yuh
Wasp	Okirushushipka	Cau hau ick	An nom	Tah neh
Ant	Karasisika	An nee	Ah che kee	Ku gnah
Bird	Mareksuke	Nee e ha ee	Vic kis	Tzi reh
Egg	Mandénika	Nor nah	Vo vote	Ouah
Feather	Zih	Be e	Mane	Kuhn
Claw	Unkâhe	A or ku ah	Mo ee con	Ma gnah
Beak	Payu	A ish	Is stchin nive	Hieuh
Wing	Abya sh	Na thin	Es ta mane	Koh hon
Goose	Miha	Nah	Hin nah ee	Poh kai peh
Duck	Pattohe	Shee shee	Sish ker son	O bih
Swan	Mandeyopeni	Nee bet chee wee ah	Hin nah ee	
Partridge	(Zihpushka, pheasant)		Vah qui has	Hien
Pigeon	Warauityte			Pah ro mah
Plover	Mani i naggahe			
Turkey	Manuhsi	Bas jen nah	Mah quane	Pin dih
Crow	Yoiyiyanga	Ou o	O ko ka	Ohn doh
Raven	Kekā	Ou o	O ko ka	
Robin	Mandekanka			
Eagle	Mahnsi (war)	Ne e ha	Voo ah quah	Tzaih
Hawk	(Taytañhe, grey eagle)	Nou it	Ho esth tom	Kinn gaher
Snipe	Maregsepayuyañyska			Poh teh yih
Owl	Iygihé	Bas tha	Mis tah	Ku yonh
Woodpecker	Toshga	Nee bah ate	Mi ee m[illegible] con vic ish	Pi bih
Fish	Po	Nef	No mine	Pâh
Trout				Pih pah
Catfish	Potande	Ker cou ee nah	Mee at see no mine (bearded fish)	Pâh tzi yah
Minnow		Ner wur ah	No mike son	
Fin	Posi	Bah chet neuf	Is stehe mione	Pâh guhn
Scale	Poahé	Nev	Is tom	Pâh eo vuah
Roe	Ponika	Nev ee nor nah		Pah vuah

ENGLISH.	MANDAN.	ARAPAHOES.	CHEYENNES.	PUEBLO (OF TUSUQUE.)
White	Shotte	Non nor chah	Vo cum mi	Tzainh
Black	Psih	Wat tare yah	Moke tah vo	Pain dih
Red	Zeh	Bah hah	Mah i, or mi	Pih yih
Green	Wíratohe	Chah nat tur yah	Tah tah vo	Pôh seh guah
Blue	Tohe	Bah or bah	A ce tah	Tzon waih
Yellow	Zihde	Cha nat tan nee yoy yah	A yo vo	Tzai yuh
Great	Ytesh	Ma nas sor ner bee in nor	Hah ist (power)	Hai hah gnu hai
Small	Yamahe	Or cher chu oo	Hah ah ket	Hi quah eh
Strong	Zihush	Yot ta yah	Ha con nah	Noh quiah
Weak	Aññyikösh	Yot ta cha yah	I ee ke	Ko huhn pih
Old	Yi hösh	Vat auk ka nin	Mah ah kis	Sehn doh
Young	Yamahösh	Won nor nee	Mo nah	Eh nouh
Good	Shish	Ee set tee	Pah wah	Gnái rah
Bad	Yiǧgosh	Wah sor	Ab see vah	Gnai rah peh
Handsome	Shinashosh	Yoy ee tha see	Paive wah	Sa gi wahn deh
Ugly	Yiggo	Yoy wou tha	Ab see vin	To wah teh
Alive	Nankesh	A nan tun	Vo est tan nee vee	Nȯ woh ah moh
Dead	Terush	Nah chee	A wun nas	Peu ih qu wah
Life		Na tee na teet	A am a tan	Ou ah tzai
Death		Nah tis a chau ir		Qu wah
Cold	Shinihush	Nor kor sah	A ton nit	Tih
Hot	Dadeshush	Has tah	Hah e hute	Son uah
Sour	Harush	Snee snout	Vin ee in	Oh yoh her
Sweet	Skuhosh	Yon is chis choir	Vix ka in	An yeh
Pepper	Wapparepsi	Wat tah yoo	Min ee see yuts	
Salt	Skuhosh	Nee cho oo	Wo po marts	Ahn yah
Bitter		Yon ee o ee choit	Ve yuk ka in	No saign
I	Mi	Ber chee shee	Nah nee ho wah	Nah
Thou	I		Nin nee ho wah	Uh
He		E nun	Sis to	Ih ih

She		Ber ter bee nen ee ter		Ih ih
They		In ner	Nis to whist (all of them)	Ih nah
Ye		Nan (you)		Nah ih
We (inclu.)	Nuh	Un no it		Tah qui reh
We (exclu.)				Nih yeu boh
This (an.)				Neigh tu reh
This (in.)		Hin nee		Neigh heigh nih
That (an.)				Obi tu uh
That (in.)		Hin nah		Ohi heigh nih
These (an.)				Neigh in tu uh
These (in.)		Hin nah un her va		Neigh in heigh nih
Those (an.)			Sit to voist ton no	Oh naih rih quah pih
Those (in.)		Hin nah nee nor ta		Ohi geigh u ah pein kih
All	Ahmbe	Un it at in nah	Nee tah	Taih qui reh
Part	Okape	Kor oo a	Os ta	Huai neh pih yeh
Who	Téwéo	Un nah ah	Nee vah	Toh oh
What	Mattawe	To ser	To as	Hei oh
What person	Iinkotewe	Un nare ah in net	Nee vi vo est tan	Toh noh muh
What thing	Aankotewe	Tosh thun nah	Hen no voist	Heigh oh noh muh
Which person	Numa koteweorosh	To hoo sin net	To as a vo est tun	
Which thing	Aahaut koteweorosh	To hoo thun	Nat chiff (from "what thing")	
Near	Asgash	Et choo ver hate	A kus, or kah sa	Hirih
Far off	Tehansh	Chin nee hoox	Hah ash	Kagnih
To-day	Ehampe	Tee chin	Ate sit see ish she a vi	Nait hah
To-morrow	Mantke	Nau quat	Mah vone	Tâhn dih
Yesterday	Horake	Hon noo a tee chin	Nash to ish she a vi	Tzondih
By and by	Isakanashosh	Ah ya shin	To nee ho va	Uc zem buh
Yes	Huñ	Ah	Nah en no vah, or ha	Haugh
No	Migosh	Chin na nee	Wah ham	Eoh
Perhaps	Tashgoggitosh	Ash thet chau na	Cin no ner quah	Ka hah
Never	Mekimikosh	As ta yah		Hai, haiom bo yoh

ENGLISH.	MANDAN.	ARAPAHOES.	CHEYENNES.	PUEBLO (OF TUSUQUE).
Forever		On naut		Hai hiom bo tah rei
Above	Aàkítà	Es chub bah	Ha am	Kaerich
Under	Màmpetà	Ner ker woo	O ton no	Nou geh
Within	Guhsta	Chit tau woo	O ton mo	No uh
Without	Akiha	Chair thib bah	Ah nas sim	Ya guch
Something		Ah yoo hoo	Ha no wi ets	Hein gui geren
Nothing		E yah woo nee	Ho wi a vah	Hein ginu bain bo yoh
On	Akish	Nat sur	Tah hau ee	Kaeneh
In	Rokta	Chee tee		No uh
By	Peyti	See oe kur	Nas to	Tĭh
Through	Kushta	Hon nor quar nee	Oame	Tĭh
In the sky	Ya toykushta	Es chub on ner wee	O to mah vo a	Mah eo nah
On the tree	Manamingkushta	Es chub a hoy tee	Mah tah ah hoist	Beh ireh
In the house	Tikushta	Eee ya er	O tom mah mi ion	Kae gih
By the shore	Mani wuagganhe	Sus shis	Ka eee hoave	Poh ya reh
Through the water	Mani kushta	Sau bet chee	Oame a map pa	Poh in gue rih
To eat	Woruth	Men nee see	Mis sis	Kôh
To drink	Wahinde	Ban nah	Man ni	Tzun gueinh
To laugh	Ig yañ (I laugh) yañ (laugh)	Hor thoin	Mat sa	Phâh
To cry	Rattaye	Men nee wau it	A ce ki a mee	Tzie
To love	Payare	Bee cah thah	Ma hote	Dâh
To burn	Doyshosh	Cor han thah	Sa voise	Pah ca nouh
To walk	Nihndosh	Chah wis sa	Am ma ets	Tzih
To run	Ptehush	Nee e cor wit	Am ma mee o	Aeh
To see	Hesh	Ner nor how wo	Vome	Pim guach
To hear	Esh	Nee to bah	Nis ti mo nee	Tôh
To speak	Rorosh	Hah nah nets	Au quot	Hi ih
To strike	Rotgesh	Tau oo it	O mee ma	Quaerih
To think	Wapashidi	Nah sis chan	Ish ee tan no	Ahn hiah
To wish	Iwaterush	Nee shee nee	Muck ee tau	Dah ah

To call	Ipo	Ah tis thah	An nome	Tuhn kah
To live	Wanankesh	Neen na it tate	Vin nah tan	Uo ua tain
To go	Dehush	Sah quah	Tah see ets	Pounh
To sing	Wakikandesh	Nee wa ee	Nee min nee	Ka ah
To dance	Wuanape	Wat tah	Mat tah	Hia reh
To die		Nah chah	Ni co ets	Ki wah
To tie	Casgesh	Toth ta	To e et	Hui kahn
To kill	Teherish	Nau au it	Nah qua vine	Kăch
To embark	Karopye		Tah hoy	Tzu reh
Eating	Rutamanka osh	Men nee see ah	Mis sis ets	Hi kôh oh
Drinking	Hinamanka osh	Tee ban nah	Man nee ets	Tzun gueinh deh
Laughing	Igyamanka osh	Hor h'quoin nit	Wat see vee ets	Noh ai yih
Crying	Ratayemanka osh	Mem ee won it tor nee	Ah ki a mee ets	Noh tzi yih
To be, or exist			Nats see	Hahn gue na ahn pih
You are		Hot ton nee hoit	Nee to see	Na aih o muh
He is		Hot ton nan it	Is to see	Ih guari o muh
I am		Ner nan noh	Nah to see	Ih ah na muh
1	Măyĕnă	Chas sa	Nuke	Guih
2	Nônpŏsh nonpé	Neis	Ne guth	Guih yeh
3	Năămĕné	Nas	Nahe	Pôh yeh
4	Tòbŏsh	Yeane	Nave	Io nouh
5	Guiyyuñ	Yor thun	Noane	Pâh nouh
6	Guimă	Nee tah ter	Nah sa to	Sih
7	Kuupa	Nee sor ter	Nee so to	Chae
8	Tóttoggé	Nah sor ter	Nah no to	Kuh beh
9	Mayybe	See au tah	So to	Kuae nouh
10	Pirogue	Mah tah tah	Mah to to	Tah eh
11	Aăguĕ măyĕnă	Mah tah tah chas sa	Mah to to a au to noke	Tarih gui eh
12	Aaguĕ nonposh	Mah tah tah neis	Mah to to a au to ne guth	Taneh gui eh
13	Aaguĕ naamené	Mah tah tah nas	Mah to to a au to nake	Tareh poh yeh
14	Aaguĕ tŏb	Mah tah tah yeane	(And so on to twenty)	Tareh io nouh

ENGLISH.	MANDAN.	ARAPAHOES.	CHEYENNES.	PUEBLO (OF TUSUQUE.)
15	Aaquiyyum	(And so on to twenty)		Tareh pah nouih
16	Aaquime			Tareh sih
17	Aakuposh			Tareh chae
18	Agtétoggesh			Tareh rah beh
19	Āăguĕ máybó			Tareh kuae nough
20	Nonpápirŏguĕ	Neis sor	Neise so	Uae taĉh
21	Nonpapirogue romayena	Neís sor chas sa	Neise so a au to nuke	Uae tach ri guih
22	Nonpapirogue rononposh	Neis sor neis	Neise so a au to nake	Uae tach ri guih yeh
23	Nonpapirogue ronăámĕnesh		(And so on to thirty)	Uae tach ri pôh yeh
24	Nonpapirogue rotokosh			Uae tach ri io nouh
25	Nonpapirogue roquiyyum			Uae tach ri pah nouh
26	Nonpapirogue roquimash			Uae tach ri sih
27	Nonpapirogue roquupash			Uae tach ri chae
28	Nonpapirogue rotetoggesh			Uae tach ri kah beh
29	Nonpapirogue romaybesh			Uae tach ri huae nouh
30	Naamené ampiroggosh	Nas sor	Nah no	Poh giun tah
40	Topayiragosh	Yay yoh, or yeane yoh	Nee vo	Yoh nau tah
50	Quiyyüm ámpiragosh	Yah thun yah	Nor no	Poh nau tah
60	Quima ampiragosh	Nee tah tus ser	Nah so to nor	Sigh in tah
70	Kupa ampiragosh	Nee sor tus sor	Nee so to nor	Segh in tah
80	Tétaggé ampiragosh	Nah sor tus sor	Nah no to nor	Kah ben tah
90	Mayyebé ampiragosh	See au tus sor	So to nor	Huae gen tah
100	Issukmaayena	Neis mah tah tus sor	Mah to to nor	Tah gen tah
101	Issukmaayena romaayenash	Neis mah tah tus sor chas sa	Mah to to nor a au to nuke	Tah gen tah ah guih
102	Issukmaayena ronomposh		Mah to to nor a au to nake	Tah gen tah ah guih yeh
103	Issukmaayena ronamené			Tah gen tah ah poh yeh
104	Issukmaayena rotoposh			Tah gen tah ah io nouh
105	Issukmaayena roquiyyoñ			Tah gen tah ah pah nouh
106	Issukmaayena rokima			Tah gen tah ah sih
107	Issukmaayena rokopa			Tah gen tah ah chae

108	Issukmaayena rototoggosh			Tah gen tah ah kah beh
109	Issukmaayena romaybesh			Tah gen tah ah kuae nouh
110	Issukmaayena iroggosh			Tah gen tah ah tah eh
120	Issukmaayena ironompapiroggosh			Tah gen tah ah uae tah
130	Issukmaayena ronamené ampiroggosh			Tah gen tah ah poh guin tah
140	Issukmaayena rotopapiroggosh			Tah gen tah yoh nau tah
150	Issukmaay. roginiyyum ampiroggosh			Tah gen tah ah poh nan tah
160	Issukmaayena roquima ampiroggosh			Tah gen tah ah sigh in tah
170	Issukmaayena rokupa ampiroggosh			Tah gen tah ah segh en tah
180	Issukmaayena rotétoggé ampiroggosh			Tah gen tah ah kah ben tah
190	Issukmaayena romayybé			Tah gen tah ah huae gen tah
200	Issuknomposh			Ouae tah gen tah
300	Issuknaamené			Poh nen tah gen tah
400	Issuktobosh			Yo naen tah gen tah
500	Issukquiyyum			Poh naen tah gen tah
600	Issukquima			Sigh in tah gen tah
700	Issukkupa			Segh in tah gen tah
800	Issuktétaggé			Kah ben tah gen tah
900	Issukmaybesh			Huaen tah gen tah
1,000	Issukikakuhi		Mah quha mah to to nor	Tah gen tah gen tah
2,000	Issukikakuhi nomposh			Uae tah gen tah gen tah
3,000	Issukikakuhi naamené			Poh weh tah gen tah gen tah[1]
4,000	Issukikakuhi tobosh			
5,000	Issukikakuhi quiyyoñ			
6,000	Issukikakuhi kómash			
7,000	Issukikakuhi kupa			
8,000	Issukikakuhi totoggé			
9,000	Issukikakuhi maybesh			
10,000	Issukikakuhi pirakosh			
100,000	Issukikakuhi sugmayenesh			
200,000	Issukikakuhi issuknombosh			
300,000	Issukikakuhi issuknomenesh			

[1] The numeration of the Pueblo Indians does not go beyond one hundred: any sum beyond this—for instance, one thousand—is formed by adding ten to one hundred, and so on.

VOCABULARY OF THE LANGUAGE OF THE PIMO INDIANS,

ON THE RIO GILA, NEW MEXICO.

El Paso, *April 14th*, 1852.

The following list of words of the Pimo language was obtained through the medium of a Coco-Maricopa interpreter.

To express the vowel sounds in syllabication, the rules laid down in Schoolcraft's circular, entitled "Comparative Vocabulary of the Languages of the Indian Tribes of the United States," were followed. From the same source the list of words was also taken.

C. C. PARRY.

For Major William H. Emory,
Chief Astronomer, Surveyor, and Head
Scientific Corps, U. S. Bdy. Com.

Frontera, near El Paso, *April 15th*, 1852.

Henry R. Schoolcraft, Esq.

Dear Sir: — Enclosed is a comparative vocabulary of the Pimo language, comprising one hundred and fifty-three words, collected under my order by Dr. C. C. Parry, Botanist to Boundary Commission, which I send you according to your request.

I will thank you to notify me of the receipt of this communication.

I am, very respectfully,
Your obt. servt.,
W. H. Emory,
Bt. Major, Hd. Sc. Corps Bdy. Survey.

ENGLISH.	PIMO.	ENGLISH.	PIMO.
Angel	Cheè o wak	Friend	Noo itch
Man	Hoo it ah	Enemy	Soi ik
Woman	Hoo th	Arrow	Kaht
Boy	Hah ree	Bow	Ou ku
Father	Hoo ik uts	Lance	Ou ps
Mother	Ghù its	Axe	Ah so
Son	Hah an	Gun	Kah at
Brother	See is	Knife	Vy eno
Sister	See is	Shoe	Soosk
An Indian	Ho up	Shirt	Entom àhk
A white man	Stoo ah	Breech-cloth	Tah toosh
Head	Mouk	Tobacco	Boef
Hair	Pt mook	Sky	Ptchoo wick
Face	With yoo se	Sun	Tah s
Scalp	Moo kt	Moon	Mah sa
Ear	Pt nah auk	Star	Ou on
Nose	Tah nk	Night	Hoot
Mouth	Cheen its	Morning	Es teush
Tongue	Neu en	Evening	Hoot
Tooth	Ptah an	Spring	Koo wich o
Beard	Cheen yo	Summer	Stoò an
Neck	Koos o wah	Autumn	Kah sah
Arm	Pn oo vt	Winter	Eu wick
Shoulder	Pt koot a vt	Year	El hi
Hand	Mah ahtk	Wind	Tàh tu
Finger	Mah ow patch	Lightning	Peu
Nail	Too witch	Thunder	Whee um
Breast	Pt pah so	Rain	Pt hoo ik
Body	Ptchoo ook	Snow	Chi ah
Leg	Hoo oom	Fire	Tahi
Navel	Nativ ist cho	Water	Soo oot ik
Thigh	Ee pt oom	Earth	Pt choo it
Knee	Pkt oom	River	Akim ah
Foot	Tet aght	Hill	Hoo tah
Toe	Too itch	Mountain	Tu wak
Heart	Pteè pit ah	Silver	Whootah
Town	Kah moo kee	Gold	Oro (Spanish)
House	Aht a kee	Maize	Oò um
Door	Sah ah rik	Wheat	Peil ki

ENGLISH.	PIMO.
Melon	Où ah
Squash	Haht
Tree	See vah tik
Wood	Quahk
Grass	Sah ak
Flower	Eè vt
Bread	Ptchumi
Flour	Ptchu wit
Meat	Choo ik
Deer	Whùi
Wolf	Pau
Dog	Koks
Horse	Kah with it
Cow	Haì ce ve
Sheep	Kàh o wikt
Duck	Vah poo kt
Crow	Hah vn
Fish	Vah to
White	Stoò wah
Black	Stook
Red	Sa wick
Great	Su koo its
Small	Lah ahst
Strong	See koo wig
Weak	See koik
Good	Skeuik
Bad	Peo kivig
Handsome	Skeuik
Dead	Moo oo
Life	Pt kee
Cold	Seu ipt
Hot	Stoon
Salt	On
I	Ah an
He	Yeu tah
All	Weuis
Who	Hahst cho
Near	Ala me ah
Far off	Moo uk
To-day	Yu mo
To-morrow	See ar dee
By and by	Ptoa par du
Yes	Ah ah
No	Ou ut
Above	Moe uk
Within	Yeè vahk
Something	Ee mik
Nothing	Pee ah
To eat	Euto u
To drink	Too a
To run	Kah ma kee
To see	Koo witch
To hear	Entom a kah
To speak	Entomak
To strike	Tomosoin
To go	Hee me
To die	Mou
To kill	Tom wah
Crying	Soo wahk
I am	Soik
One	Yuma ko
Two	Koo ak
Three	Vaik
Four	Kee ik
Five	Huit as
Six	Ptchoo ut
Seven	Wha va
Eight	Kee kig
Nine	Umuchiko
Ten	Ustimah
Eleven	Vah su ma ko
Twelve	Vah su koo ak
Thirteen	Vah su vaik
Twenty	Kook oh wistimah
Thirty	Whik oh wistimah
One hundred	Ciento (Spanish)

X. STATE OF INDIAN ART. B.

STATE OF INDIAN ART.

SYNOPSIS OF PAPERS.

1. Making Fire by Percussion.
2. Trituration of Maize.
3. Preparation of Flints for Arrow and Spear Heads.
4. Handicraft of the Oregon Indians.

1. MAKING FIRE BY PERCUSSION.

It is impossible to conceive of a state of early society, in the human race, at least, in certain latitudes, in which they lived without the knowledge or use of fire. It is certain that the Indian tribes of this continent, from Patagonia to Newfoundland, on its first discovery, had the art of procuring it by friction. Whether this art was brought with them on their original migration, or discovered here, is not known. But however this may be, they possessed it. Life, indeed, in the higher latitudes, could not be endured without it.

The knowledge that caloric is an element of nature, existing in all matter, and can be eliminated by human ingenuity, is of too high and refined a scope to allow the supposition that mere savages should have undertaken experiments to attain it. And hence, the presumption is rather that the origin of fire from percussion was an art of the old world, which the adventurers brought with them. It is possible, however, that the rubbing of two limbs of trees together, during a storm, should have elicited it, whether before known to them or not.

It is by the violent and continued rubbing of two pieces of dry wood together, that they procure fire. For this purpose, a dry rounded stick of wood is placed in a small orifice in a stout block, or pieces of the same dry and hard material. A whirling motion is given to this upright stick by doubling a cord around it, and fastening each end of it to the extremities of a bow held in the hand. The velocity of the revolutions given to the turning stick by means of this bow, soon produces a flame at the point of contact.

Two modes of conducting the operation are given. (Plate 28.) By the method in use by the Dacotahs, a tabular piece of wood is held over a corresponding orifice, at the end of the stick opposite to the incinerating point. (Figs. 1, 2, 3, 4.) By the Iroquois method, the top of the upright stick is held by the hand, and steadiness of motion secured by a perforated block a little above the point of contact at the heating orifice. The gravity and centrifugal force of this block contributes to its efficacy. (Figs. B, 6, 7, 8, 9.) The Iroquois apply to it the descriptive name of Da-ya-ya-da-ga-ne-at-ha.

A piece of spunk is held, by an assistant, at the point of incineration, to catch the flame.

We are informed by Mr. Wyeth,[1] that the operation is clumsily and painfully performed by the Oregon tribes, by turning a shaft, based on an orifice of dry wood, between the hands, bearing downward, till reaching its extremity, or point of ignition, when the same operation is quickly and dexterously continued, by another operator, until the result is attained.

2. Trituration of Maize.

The mode of pounding dry maize, by the grain-raising tribes, varied considerably. It was a species of work left wholly to the women, who generally exercised their ingenuity in its reduction. Where circumstances favored it, mortars and pestles of stone were employed. The mortar was sometimes a depression in the face of a rock, or a detached block of stone. It was sometimes elaborately made. Frequently an orifice was formed in wood, by burning in the surface in a circle, and scraping off the coal. By renewing the fire on the cleaned surface, a deep excavation was soon formed. In this manner wooden bowls, and entire canoes, were formed out of suitably prepared trees.

But the perfection to which the homony-block was carried, consisted of a movable wooden mortar, hollowed by fire, out of the end of a solid block, or section of a hard wood tree, some two feet or thirty inches high. The pestle employed for this consisted of a smoothly wrought piece of hard wood, of four feet in length, rounded off at each end, with a depression in the centre for the operator to take hold of. This species of mortar and pestle, with the manner of using it, is shown in Plate 28, Figs. C, 10, 11, and 12, being a receptacle for the saturated grain.

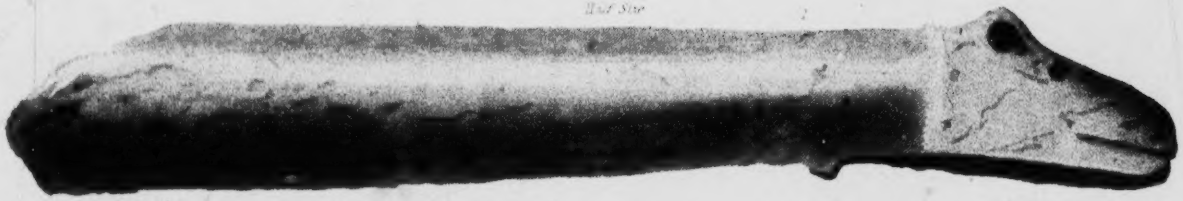
After the introduction of the iron axe, consequent on the discovery, the stumps of

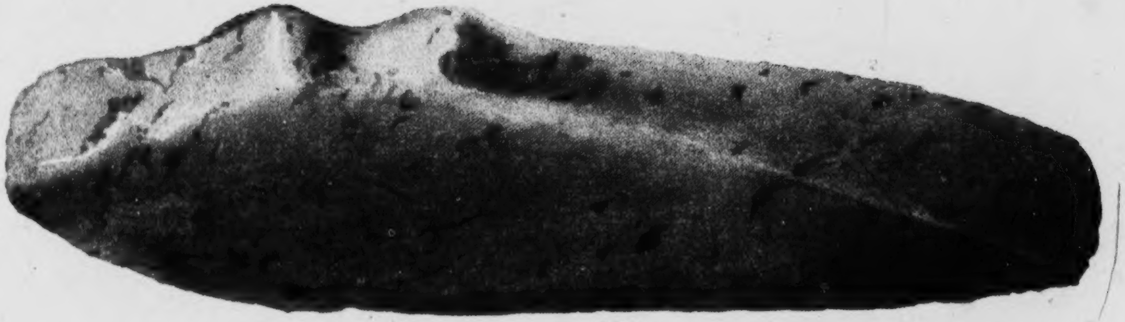
---

[1] Vol. I., p. 214.

Plate 33

Half Size





Full Size

Drawn from the originals by S. Eastman U.S.A.

Ellman & Sons

ANTIQUITIES FROM MASS.

BLISHED BY LIPPINCOTT, GRAMBO & CO. PHILA.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

trees were excavated to serve this purpose; a practice which commended itself to the early back settlers, who improved on the idea by attaching the wooden pestle to a spring-pole, loaded in such a manner as to lift the pestle from the block with but little effort.

The preparation of green maize for the Indian table, constitutes a different branch of forest art, which will be described hereafter.

In Fig. 1, Plate 33, we observe the family name of one of the owners of these antique pestles, formerly used for crushing maize, ingeniously wrought, by a symbol, on the head of the instrument. The substance employed is a species of grauwacke. The symbol, or totemic device, is a deer, apparently the fawn. Its locality is Massachusetts.

Fig. 2 is apparently the fleshing instrument of the north-east aboriginal hunters.

2. Preparation of Flints for Arrow and Spear Heads.

The skill displayed in this art, as it is exhibited by the tribes of the entire continent, has excited admiration. The material employed is generally some form of horn-stone, sometimes passing into flint. This mineral is often called chert, by the English mineralogists. No specimens have, however, been observed, where the substance is gun-flint. The horn-stone is less hard than common quartz, and can readily be broken by contact with the latter. Experience has taught the Indian that some varieties of horn-stone are less easily and regularly fractured than others, and that the tendency to a conchoidal fracture is to be relied on in the softer varieties. It has also shown him that the weathered, or surface fragments, are harder and less manageable than those quarried from the rocks or mountains.

To break them, he seats himself on the ground, and holds the lump on one of his thighs, interposing some hard substance below it. When the blow is given, there is a sufficient yielding in the piece to be fractured, not to endanger its being shivered into fragments. Many are, however, lost. After the lump has been broken transversely, it requires great skill and patience to chip the edges. Such is the art required in this business, both in selecting and fracturing the stones, that it is found to be the employment of particular men, generally old men, who are laid aside from hunting, to make arrow and spear heads.

The Aztecs and Peruvians generally employed obsidian for this purpose, which they quarried from the volcanic mountains. It is found that the tribes of Oregon and California also employ this delicate glassy substance, in the preparation of which they evince the greatest skill. Nothing can exceed the art of some of the California arrows which have been recently examined. And the wonder increases, when it is seen that these tribes are, in other respects, quite inferior in their intellectual character, and habits of subsistence and life, to the Mississippi valley and prairie Indians, who inhabit the plains east of the Rocky Mountains.

4. HANDICRAFT OF THE OREGON TRIBES.

Nothing evinces more skill in the Oregon Indians than the manufacture of their bows, arrows, and spears. The bow is usually made from elastic wood, horn, or bone, very dexterously carved. Bows of horn are made of two pieces united in the centre by means of fish-glue and the strong fibres of the deer's sinew.[1] Cedar is sometimes employed. Several specimens of the Oregon bow are figured from the examination of this species of ingenuity, from the Columbia river. (Vide Plate 34, Figs. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6.) The length of these bows varies from thirty to forty-four inches. The string is of elk's or deer's sinews.

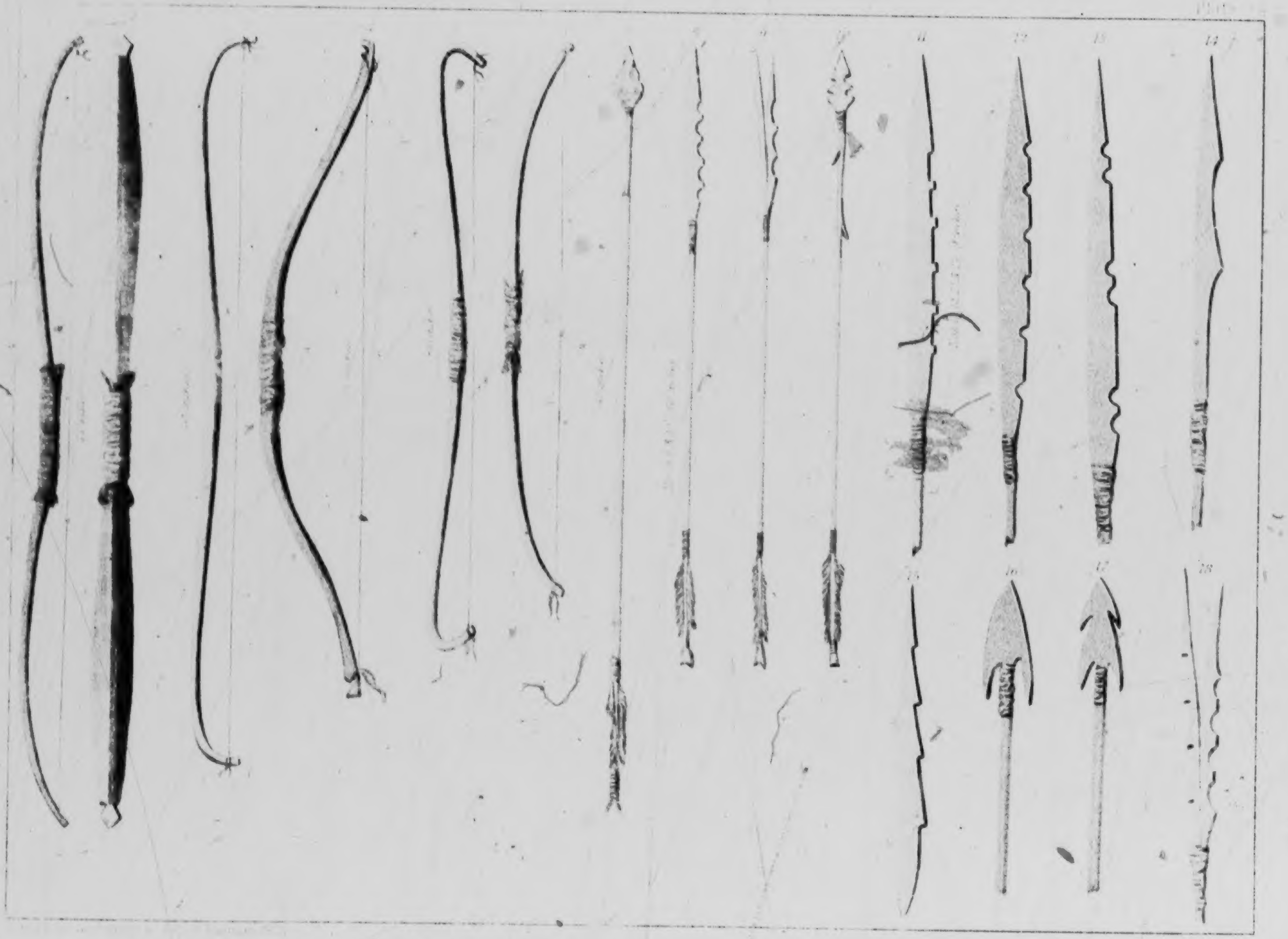
The arrow-points in Figs. 7 and 10, are wrought with much art, from obsidian. Those of 8, 9, 15, 16, 17, 18, from nicely-worked bone. 16 and 17 are barbed, 9 and 18 bifurcated. These are intended for fish. Figs. 11, 12, 13, 14, are bone arrow-blades of nine inches in length.

The hook (Plate 35), for capturing the salmon and other of the larger species of fish which ascend the Columbia, has exercised the ingenuity of its native tribes. In No. 6 we observe the ordinary hook of bone, with a barb of two and a half inches long, which is attached to a line of native hempen grass. After the introduction of iron, a combination of bone and iron was adopted, as exhibited in No. 5, in which a barb of iron four inches long is used. The opposite end is bone. But the perfection of the art is represented in No. 4, where a hook of curiously-wrought cedar, seven inches' curve, is met by a safety-prong of bone, of four and a half inches in length, which is designed to secure the prey from the possibility of escape.

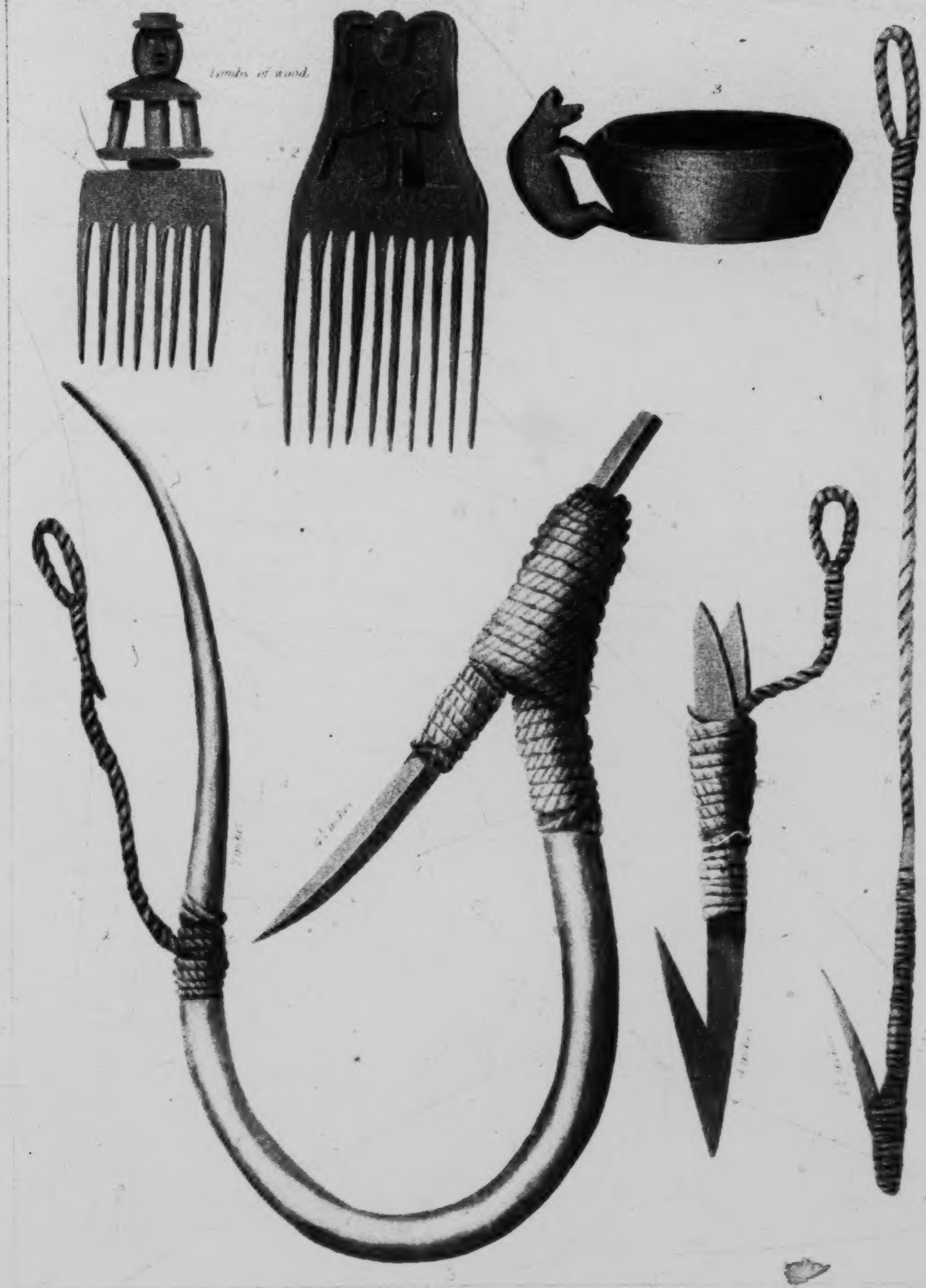
Figs. 1 and 2 represent native combs from the Columbia valley: Fig. 3, a pan of wood, in which the figure of a bear is made the handle.

---

[1] Vide Mr. Wyeth's description, Vol. I., p. 212.


8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN


Limbs of wood
1
2
3

INDIAN IMPLEMENTS

[illegible]

XI. PRESENT CONDITION AND FUTURE PROSPECTS. B.

PRESENT CONDITION AND FUTURE PROSPECTS.

EDUCATION, CHRISTIANITY, AND THE ARTS.

BY REV. D. LOWRY.

THESE observations are introduced by the following letter, which may serve to denote the opportunities the author has had for observing the habits and character of the Indians beyond the line of the Mississippi. Although the subject principally before him was a particular tribe seated in Iowa, at the time the remarks were made, they were believed to be generally applicable to the whole number of tribes who are brought within the influence of moral teaching. Too much stress may appear to be laid on Christianity as the precursor of the arts and civilization, but it is believed the experience of teachers of all denominations concurs in this view. The forest life is so fascinating to the Indian, that he requires, as it were, to be wrested from it with a strong hand. Maxims, however wise, fall quietly on his ear, and he is accustomed to hear them placidly. But when he has been effectually disabused of his established notions of futurity and the Indian paradise of sensualities, a new and powerful motive is awakened in his mind by the promises of Christianity. H. R. S.

WINNEBAGO SCHOOL,
March 8th, 1848.

SIR: — Herewith you have a few thoughts, thrown together as fragments of time would permit, in reply to your late inquiries[1] respecting the aborigines of our country. I shall try to extend my remarks after my return from the south.

Very respectfully,
Your obt. servt.
HENRY R. SCHOOLCRAFT, ESQ. D. LOWRY.

---

[1] Vide Vol. I., Appendix.

"266.—The cause of education. What are the prominent facts in relation to this important means of reclaiming and exalting the tribe? What means have been found most effective in the education of their children and youth? Have females duly participated in these means, and has any part of such means been applied to such branches as are essential to qualify them for the duties of mothers and housewives? Are the ancient prejudices of parents on the subject of education on the wane, and what is the relative proportion of the young population who, in the last period of ten years, have received the elements of an English education?"

Education, in its true meaning, is the only possible means of "reclaiming and recalling the Indians," or any other people like them fallen into the savage state. It is to be understood, however, that a proper education comprises religious, literary, and physical instruction. Each branch has its appropriate work to perform in improving and elevating a nation or individuals.

It is admitted that a kind of semi-civilization may result from an education in the common application of the word, and that conveniences, and even luxuries, untasted before, may follow. But for purposes of restraint and reformation, any and every system that does not include religious instruction must be nugatory. Moral improvement cannot be produced, nor moral restraint imposed, without the aid of an enlightened conscience. But who would think of invigorating and guiding the actions of conscience by imparting a knowledge of the mechanic arts? What appeal is made to conscience, or what moral principle impressed upon the heart, or what moral duty inculcated, by teaching the art of making a table, a steamboat, or ship? The same inquiry might be extended to mathematics and all other human sciences. They are valuable for many practical purposes, but were never intended to develop man's moral nature. I know it will be difficult to present this subject, in all its force, to a person unacquainted with the nature of religion, and who has not been in the habit of comparing nations possessing it with those destitute of it. A mere glance at history, however, will be sufficient to convince any one open to conviction, that those countries and ages which have been most distinguished for science and the fine arts, and yet ignorant of the power of religion, have been most distinguished for crime. Old Egypt was the cradle of science and arts; she could build her splendid cities, rear her wonderful pyramids, and ride in her iron chariots, but had no means of removing superstition from the minds of her people. Other nations followed in civil and literary refinement, but in their highest glory they worshipped thirty thousand gods, and the great mass of the people lived in practices of vice, which it would pollute a Christian ear to name.

It is not known that any efforts to educate the American Indians, where Christianity did not form a prominent part of the system taught, have answered any valuable purpose in the way of civilization.

In urging the necessity of the Christian religion, in order to "reclaim and exalt" a barbarous people, I would make a distinction between true Christianity, and its erroneous and corrupt forms. Ancient Greece and Rome possessed a religion; so do the present ignorant and profligate Turks; so do some of the Indians on our frontiers; but no salutary influence is seen acting either upon the heart or life. Nothing but a restless effort of a blind and guilty conscience to obtain peace and rest by unauthorized sacrifices and ceremonies.

I would also in this place allude to the importance of the *whole* of Christianity to national prosperity, to true civilization. The radical principles of the Bible should be taught. If it were necessary for God to reveal that Book, it will not be sufficient for the purposes intended to study detached parts of it. Personal salvation, it is true, does not require a thorough knowledge of the entire Scriptures; but in order to be incorporated in a nation's literature, and to produce a sound national conscience, the Bible must become that nation's text-book on the subject of morals.

The necessity of a religious education, as presented in the foregoing remarks, may be admitted, while it may, at the same time, be urged that mere mental and physical instruction should be first imparted, in order to prepare the way for religion. But it yet remains to be proved that a superficial state of mere social advancement, in which cabins are built instead of wigwams, and clothing of the loins extended over the body, affords any predisposition to the reception of the gospel. We find no feeling of this kind in the semi-civilized state of China and India. The Society of Friends tried the mere civilizing process for many years with our Indians, but without any valuable effect. The plan has been abandoned, or rather Christianity has been connected with it, and the result has proved the wisdom of the change. The Mohawks of Upper Canada enjoyed the means of mental improvement for forty years, but showed no disposition to receive the gospel. Their abandonment to vice was proverbial, and their heathen neighbors, seeing the effects produced, objected to all means of instruction from the whites. Nothing is more common now than to hear it said that educated Indians are worse than those in the ruder state. We are not to infer from this, however, even if it be true, that it is the tendency of mere intellectual knowledge to corrupt, but that it has no power to purify. Thousands of American youth, who have graduated at our colleges, are greater curses to themselves and to the world than if they had not been educated. But this is not to be charged upon the education, but to its perversion. "Knowledge is power," and may be applied either to a good or bad purpose. Like every other blessing of heaven, it may be abused. When in charge of religion, it is a valuable handmaid, but when under the direction and control of a depraved heart, it is a mighty engine for evil. The mere education of the intellect of the red man gives him new facilities for intercourse with corrupt example, upon our own frontier, and with bad white men in the Indian country; and it may sometimes happen too, that the conduct even of the school-teachers, the farmers, and mechanics, has but little tending to elevate and improve the morals of the savages.

In view of the importance of religion to the true civilization of the heathen, it has been a question whether it would not be better to commit all funds provided by treaty stipulations for this improvement, to the direction and control of some missionary board. I shall not undertake to settle this question, but will barely observe that Christian character is indispensable to a successful religious teacher; and if as good teachers, and as industrious farmers, and as skilful mechanics and physicians, can be found in the church, as out of it, I cannot see why persons of tried piety should not always be employed to labor for the benefit of the Indians. This policy is now being pursued by all missionary boards, and their success, in civilizing the heathen, is before the world. If establishments succeed better under their care than under the supervision of the government, the result certainly affords an argument in favor of their policy.

It has often occurred to me, that it would be proper for the government, in the annual statement of persons in its employment with the Indians, to require the number professing religion to be specified.

In reply to the inquiry, "What have been the most effective means" in the education of "children and youth" among the Winnebagoes, I would observe, that the most successful method of drawing the children into school, has been to leave it to the choice of parents whether to let their children board and lodge at the institution, or draw their rations every evening, and return to the wigwam. The latter plan has generally been preferred by the Indians, and it has enabled a much greater number to enjoy the benefits of the school. The usual course is pursued in the school, when giving instruction, which is observed with white children. "Females have duly participated in the means" of improvement, and have received such instruction as was deemed proper to qualify them for the discharge of domestic duties. The prejudice of the tribe against their children being educated is not only "on the wane," but may be said to be overcome. The relative proportion of the young population who have received the elements of an English education, has just been reported to the Department by the Sub-Agent.

The Winnebagoes have no native mechanics, but it is believed some of their youths might be induced to learn at least the lighter mechanic arts.

"270.—The English language a means of civilization. To what extent is the English language spoken, and English books read, and what is the tendency of opinion and practice on this subject, in the tribe? In giving replies to these queries, express your opinions freely, and state any fact, or mode of procedure which, in your judgment, would tend to advance the welfare or promote the happiness of the tribe. The general question of the advance and reclamation of the tribes, as connected with the present state of the Indian trade, has been examined in queries 95 to 105 inclusive. The bearings of these interrogatories on their future state, and the obligations imposed on the people and government of the Union by their position in the scale of nations, are further called out in an examination of some points in the legislation of Congress respecting them, in queries 106 to 115; and the questions on the actual condition of the tribes who are more advanced, and have set up new governments on the territories assigned them west of the Mississippi, (queries 116 to 118,) are designed to complete this view of the changes wrought in the position of the tribes, since their discovery, about A. D. 1600. It is important, as they advance, as many of them now do, in their means and population, and in the progress of education and agriculture, that we should scrutinize the whole class of facts on which this advance depends, in order to give it the greater impetus and permanency. In this view, the subject is commended to your general reflection and scrutiny, in the following subjoined inquiries on their general history and languages."

"The English language as a means of civilization." Our principal reliance should be on the English language as a means of civilizing the Indians. Should they be educated in their own language, they would still be without books to read, for we cannot suppose that our literature will ever be translated into the languages of all the Indian tribes on our frontier. Better, therefore, introduce our own language among them at once, which would give them access to our books.

"343.—Is the Indian language adapted to purposes of Christianity?" "344.—Is it adapted to any extent, and if so to what extent, to the purposes of history, poetry, and general literature?"

To these inquiries I reply, that all unwritten languages must degenerate with the nations by whom they are spoken. A nation's knowledge of *words* never extends beyond its knowledge of *things;* consequently, as savages know but little of God, his religion, or of human science, it is not to be supposed that their language affords appropriate words for the expression of ideas on those subjects. While, therefore, I would not discourage efforts to instruct the Indians in their own language, particularly adults, who cannot be expected to learn, I am in favor of teaching the English language in all schools established for their improvement. The same language spoken by all the tribes, would at once prepare the way for amalgamation.

In view of the importance of the English language to the aborigines of our country, I have more than once recommended the propriety of occasionally sending a few Indian children, of both sexes, into white communities, to complete their education. It is with them as it is with us—a foreign language may be understood so as to read it correctly, and yet the learner not be able to converse in it with ease. By placing children among the whites for a time, where they would be obliged to converse in our language, they would soon get the true pronunciation, and lose that tenacity for their own tongue which all savages more or less feel. But as the Sub-Agent is writing on the language of the Indians, I shall not extend my remarks on this subject.

"271.—Who were the earliest inhabitants of America? What is the light of tradition on this subject? Were the ancestors of the present red race the Aborigines? What evidences exist, if any, of the occupancy of the country by man prior to the arrival of the Indian or AONIC race?"

In view of the best light and information which I have been able to collect on the subject, my opinion is that the earliest inhabitants of America were the descendants of Ham, the youngest son of Noah; and that the first settlement was made shortly after the confusion of tongues, at the building of the tower of Babel. Moses tells us, that about that period, "the Lord scattered the people abroad upon the face of the whole earth."—Gen. ii. 8, 9. America, then, according to this portion of sacred history, was at that time re-occupied by man; for the writer could not have meant by "all the earth," only about one-half of it. It may be thought that the mechanic arts and maritime skill were, at that age of the world, too much in their infancy to admit of the emigration supposed. I see no difficulty on this ground. The ark had recently been built, which outlived a storm of forty days. In view of such a pattern, there was certainly mechanical genius enough to construct a ship that would be able to contend with the waves of a summer sea for a few weeks or months. The Hamites were a sea-faring people, and it is believed understood the use of the compass in traversing the pathless deep. The remains of cities, and various other monuments, evidently the work of the primitive race of the country, show no want of intellect or mechanical skill.

But, after all, I am not sure that either a ship or compass was necessary to enable the first inhabitants of America to reach this continent. Many of the learned, from Plato and Solon down to the present day, have ventured the speculation that anciently both the Atlantic and Pacific oceans were interspersed with islands, so that a passage to our continent was opposed by no serious obstacles. But should these facilities for emigration be objected to, it would not be a heavy tax upon one's industry to suppose that accidental causes, as they are sometimes unjustly termed, might have laid the foundation for the first settlement in America after the flood. Shipwrecks have sometimes given rise to the settlement of an island. An island first occupied by a few shipwrecked English in 1589, was found 80 years afterwards to contain a population of 12,000 souls, all the descendants of four mothers.

It is known, too, that Bhering's Straits bring the shores of the New and Old World into the same vicinity, and would afford an easy passage from the one to the other.

I will only add, in this communication, that a plain historical fact, under the sanction of Divine inspiration, is not to be discredited because the writer has not given such details as curiosity may prompt us to demand. Moses tells us that from the plains of Shinar the people were dispersed over the *whole earth*. I do not doubt either his integrity or accuracy.

After an examination of all the evidence to which access could be had, I am clearly of the opinion that the present "Red Race" have descended from the "Aborigines" of America. This opinion, I know, is objected to by many who claim for our Indians a Hebrew origin. To this sentiment the writer himself was long inclined; but on a more thorough investigation he has given it up. The physical types of the two races are entirely different; besides, it is more than probable that the long-lost tribes, supposed to be the ancestors of our Indians, have mostly been discovered in Asia.

We learn from sacred history, that God of "one blood made all nations of men," Acts xvii. 26; and that previous to the wicked attempt to build the tower of Babel, the human family were of "one language," Gen. xi. 1. But we now find the nations of the earth differing both in speech, and in physical characteristics. The Bible accounts for the different languages, Gen. xi. 7; but does not explain the cause of difference in the human race. In the absence of any historic information on this topic, the learned have indulged freely in speculation. Some have ascribed it to a direct act of our common Creator; while others have attributed it to the operation of physical development, such as climate, food, manner of living, &c. The latter is the opinion of the writer.

In classing the American Indians with the Ethiopian race, or descendants of Ham, we are sustained by the highest human authority. Mr. Ledyard, in a letter to Mr. Jefferson, speaks of the resemblance. Humboldt, and a score of other names, might be added, were it necessary.[1]

But if the primitive race inhabiting America were so highly civilized, as their monuments show, how shall we account for the degeneracy of the Indians, their descendants? It might be asked, How shall we account for the degradation and ignorance of the Hamites of Africa at the present day? No one doubts that *their* ancestors enjoyed a high state of intellectual and moral cultivation.

"282.—What connections do the United States Indians hold, ethnologically, to those of Mexico? Are there any proofs of affiliation in the grammars and vocabularies? What lights are afforded by history or tradition? Was the valley of the Mississippi probably settled at the period of the establishment of the Aztec empire, under the predecessors of the Montezumas?"

The Indians from Mexico to Canada are evidently of one group. They resemble each other in complexion, as well as in manners and customs. The only material difference is in stature.

The first aboriginal settlements were, doubtless, formed in South America. The course of emigration from thence was along the shores of the Pacific, and it is believed the valley of the Mississippi was finally settled by emigrants from the west.

For the foregoing statements respecting the earliest inhabitants of America, &c., I am principally indebted to Wiseman's Lectures, Bradford's Antiquities of America, Flint's Indian Wars of the West, and a very ably written article which has recently appeared in the Biblical Repository, from the pen of Dr. Lindsley, President of Nashville University. In those works we have accounts of many ancient monuments and traditions throwing light upon the character and condition of the first inhabitants of America.

---

[1] Theoretical views of this kind are left for observers to judge of. — H. R. S.

"348.—Are you acquainted with any material errors in the general or popular accounts of our Indian tribes? If so, please state them.

"In submitting the preceding queries on the several subjects named, it is not designed to limit the inquiry to these particular forms. Called upon by the terms of the act to embody materials illustrative of the history of the tribes, as well as their statistics, the Department seeks to avail itself of the knowledge and experience of persons in various parts of the country, to contribute their aid. The inquiry is placed on a broad basis, that it may embrace the general grounds from which we are to judge the history and condition, past and present, of the people whose benefit is sought by future legislative provision; and by the adoption of a course of public policy which shall best subserve the highest interests."

No nation or people upon earth have been more shamefully misrepresented than our American Indians, and perhaps this circumstance has operated more than any one thing to the injury of that unfortunate race.

A popular writer of England has described them as "animals of an inferior order, incapable of acquiring religious knowledge, or of being trained to the functions of social life." Writers of our own country may not have used this language, but they have endorsed the sentiment, and it is at this moment so popular, that the public mind is far from being disabused of it. Even the church feels it to some extent.

The Indians have been supposed to possess such a strong and innate propensity for hunting, that all efforts to call their attention from the chase, and direct it into another channel to obtain the means of subsistence, would be useless. The popular opinion is that an Indian is born to be a hunter. This opinion I pronounce to be unphilosophical, and contrary to matter of fact. That Indian children, at a very early period, receive impressions in favor of this mode of living, I admit; but these impressions result from example—they are not *innate*. The child of a mechanic shows an early disposition to handle and play with tools used by the father; but this does not prove that the boy was born a mechanic. Impressions are made at a very early period, and when fixed, are hard to eradicate. It has been recently remarked, by a distinguished writer of the old world, that a child receives more ideas before he is six years old, than in all the rest of his life. Dr. Dwight concurs with this opinion. The absurdity of an Indian's being born a hunter, is too obvious to require argument to refute it. Yet a large majority of those who can find time to think of the Indians at all, believe it; and it has been published, from the "North American Review" down to the village newspaper. It has found its way to the bench of the Supreme Court of the United States—one of the judges of which expressed the opinion, not long since, that "the Indians are a doomed race"—and to our halls of legislation, and prevented the enactment of good and salutary laws—and it has quenched, in part, the burning benevolence of the church of God, and kept back the arm of missionary enterprise. Those who have published this sentiment, as well as those who have believed it, ought to blush with shame. An intelligent human being "born a hunter!" As well might it be said a man is born a shoemaker, or cobbler. Does not everybody know that a white child, taken captive by and raised among the Indians, becomes a hunter as readily as an Indian child, and shows as much attachment to the chase? It is equally certain that an Indian child, taken into a white family remote from his tribe, soon adopts the habits and amusements of white children, and shows no predisposition for the life of a hunter. I have raised an Indian child in my family, who is now married, and living in sight of the wigwams of her people, but has never accompanied them the first time on a hunting excursion. I have now two Indian children in my family, who were committed to my care by their mother, with her dying breath. Her last words were to raise them as white children are raised. There is naturally no difference between the innate propensities of the white and red man. It is true, Indians have been educated among the whites, and after returning to their own people, have retrograded; but have not white children too, after being recovered from the Indians, changed their habits? In both cases, the change was produced by the pressure of circumstances. It is often said, that it is easier for a white man to become an Indian, than for an Indian to become a white man. True, all men are prone to degenerate. Besides, there are obvious reasons why a white man should feel more happy with Indian habits among the Indians, than an Indian could feel with the whites. The former is on a perfect equality with his nation; while the latter is not, and *cannot* be.

It has been supposed too that the Indians are a warlike people. But where is the evidence of this fact? Is not all history against it? With six hundred men, Cortez conquered the natives of Mexico, numbering four millions of souls. They might have destroyed their invaders with sticks and stones, had they possessed the courage of the white man. Small settlements of our people were planted along the shores of the Atlantic; the Indians sooner or later resisted them, but their want of success proved that they were neither disposed nor accustomed to hard fighting. Hundreds of Indians have attacked small companies of American traders on their way from Santa Fé, and though mounted and well equipped for battle, have been easily repulsed. In one instance, nine white men were assailed by sixty Pawnees, but the latter were soon made to retreat in utter confusion. Our army against Black Hawk had Winnebagoes in its ranks, but could never get but one of them into battle. Indian wars among themselves show anything but courage. The Sioux and Chippewas and Sacs and Foxes have been enemies for many years, and though in the immediate vicinity of each other, have never fought a regular battle. Parties have marched up to defenceless encampments of women and children, and slaughtered them. The Pawnees have long been at war with the Kanzas. The latter number about seventeen hundred souls, while the former amount to near ten thousand. The tribes live only about one hundred miles apart, so that with true spirit and feelings of war on the part of their enemies, the weaker tribe might long since have been exterminated.

We have been too long amused with falsehoods respecting the noble and warlike character of the Red-man. He is just the reverse. He is no more born a warrior than a hunter.

The Indians have been represented as a very happy people. "Simple, virtuous, happy," &c., are epithets often applied to them by travellers. An officer of government was not long since sent on a visit to the Winnebagoes. I accompanied him to their wigwams. Some were playing cards, some eating, while others were sleeping. The officer, seemingly in rapture, exclaimed, "These are the happiest people in the world!" I did not admire the gentleman's view of human felicity. It had never occurred to me before that the highest state of rational enjoyment was to be found in the lowest state of degradation and vice. The ox, when filled with grass, and having nothing to do but lie down in the shade and defend himself from the flies, is contented; but man is subject to intellectual and moral wants as well as physical, and must be miserable while these remain unredressed. He may laugh and seem to be cheerful, but "the heart knoweth its own bitterness."

The Indians suffer greatly from hunger and from dissipation. As to domestic happiness, there is no such thing among them. It is quite common for the husband to whip the wife, and for the parties to prove unfaithful to each other. Polygamy too is a fruitful source of jealousy and misery.

The Indians have been uniformly reported, by those who have travelled among them, as predisposed to unusual taciturnity. This is a mistake. Silence may be observed in presence of a strange white man, from jealousy, hatred, difficulty of intercommunication. Hunger, fatigue, &c., may produce for a time melancholy; but in the absence of these obstacles, the Indians are uncommonly loquacious.

Many have undertaken to enlighten the world on the subject of courtships among the Indians. The young man seeking a partner, is said to whistle on a wooden flute prepared for the purpose. His wishes are soon understood by others, and negotiations preparatory to marriage follow. This fabulous story has often appeared in the newspapers of the country, and recently made a part of a course of lectures delivered in the United States and in Europe. I say fabulous story, for it is without foundation in fact. Negotiations preparatory to marriage, among the more wealthy Indians, are often made by the parents of children, while the parties to be united are in infancy. I have known as many as ten horses given by the father to purchase a wife for an infant son. The parties thus engaged by the parents do not marry till they arrive at a suitable age.

I admit that lewd young men sometimes play on the flute around wigwams to attract attention for base purposes, but never with the honest intention of courtship.

XII. DÆMONOLOGY, WITCHCRAFT, AND MAGIC. A.

DÆMONOLOGY, WITCHCRAFT, AND MAGIC.

SYNOPSIS OF PAPERS.

1. Introductory Remarks on Magic, Witchcraft, and Dæmonology of the American Indians. H. R. S.
2. Gods of the Dacotahs. By Captain S. Eastman, United States Army.
3. The Giant's Feast and Dance. By Captain S. Eastman, United States Army.
4. Magical Dances of the Ontonagons. With an original Pictograph of Oshkabaiwis. H. R. S.
5. Invulnerability and Invisibility from Magic Influences: a Tradition. H. R. S.
6. Genii Worship. H. R. S.
7. Pictographs from the Rocky Mountains. Figures by Lieutenant Gunnison, United States Army.

1. INTRODUCTORY REMARKS ON MAGIC, WITCHCRAFT, AND DÆMONOLOGY OF THE AMERICAN INDIANS.

We associate these terms, in coming to speak of that strong and general belief, and those ceremonial practices of a hieratic or occult character, among the American Indian tribes, wherein they recognize a subtle system of polytheism or spirit-worship. Ideas of this kind are coeval with the history of the human race.

The ancients gave the name dæmon to certain genii, or spirits, which appeared to many for benign or hurtful purposes. The Platonic philosophers classified their gods into three divisions: gods, dæmons, and heroes. Cicero calls the former, dii majorum gentium. The Oneidas call the second class, klu-ne-o-lux, which conveys the idea of a vicious spirit, being the same impression that is conveyed to Christians by the modern definition of the word dæmon.

In Fig. 2, Plate 57, Part I., is depicted the form of one of the spirit-gods of the Chippewas of Lake Superior, of the present day, which much resembles the description of the ancient Dagon (thought to be from the Hebrew dag, a fish), the god of Ashdod. Like it, the monster is half man, half fish. And the belief in its existence in the area of that large body of fresh water, so renowned for its fish, may be deemed very natural, without any attempt, which we do not commend, to connect it with the ancient mythologies, however striking the resemblance.

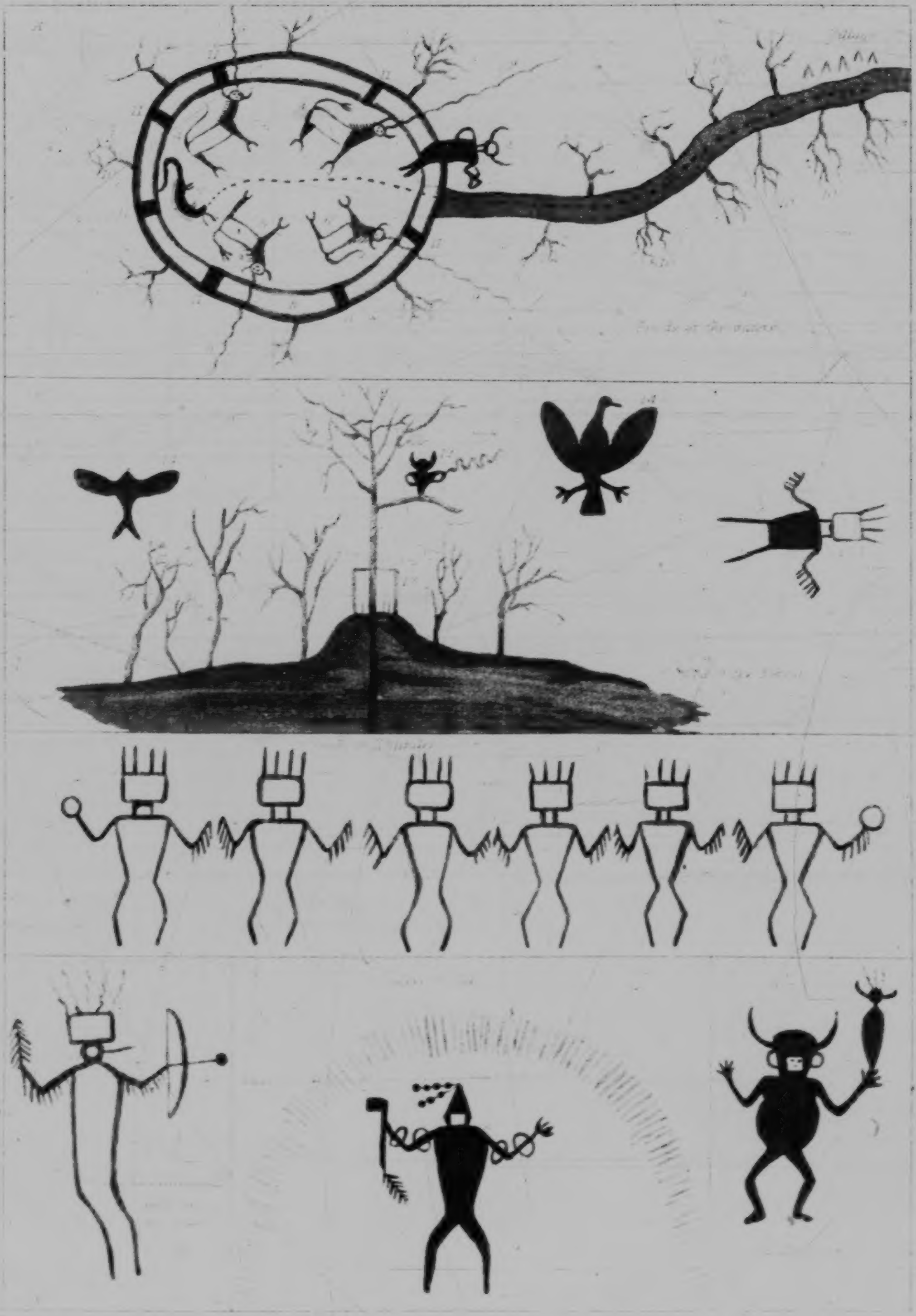
The desire of men to pry into futurity, and to know, or influence, through the means of genii, dæmons, or spirits, the fates or fortunes of men, is one of the earliest developed traits of the human mind. Moses declares, in Leviticus, "Thou shalt not suffer a witch to live." This declaration is not conclusive that the inspired prophet believed in witches; but it is quite so, that such a belief was common to the Hebrew hosts whom he had led from Egypt, where the practices of sorcery were rife,[1] and believed in, from the highest and most learned, to the lowest and most ignorant classes of society. The profession of the art of sorcery, it is to be inferred, was a cause of vain excitements among the people, in their isolation in the wilderness, and led to waste of time, and means squandered to gratify this false desire. It may be thought one of the prime causes of that dissatisfaction, and those disturbances and outbreaks that marked the history of the Exodus; and it probably arrayed men against that higher and surer means of knowledge and prophecy which it was his peculiar province and commission to teach. Rendering the practice of sorcery criminal, was, therefore, the most effectual means of destroying it, and extirpating the evil from the camp.

Other legislators and law-givers have imitated his example. Montesquieu ranks magic with heresy, seeing that the laws of his day made both penal in the highest degree; but he regards them in a very different view from that of the Hebrew sage; affirming that we ought to be very circumspect in laying the charge of magic and heresy at the doors of men, since there was danger that they might be laid to the charge of persons of the purest lives. The connection of the two crimes in one category is sufficient to show that the philosopher, while he contended for human rights and the clearest testimony, had attached to the crimes of heresy some dæmoniacal traits — a subtle piece of policy of the then defenders of the faith.

We are informed that in the days of Henry VIII. of England, it was enacted (Stat. 33, chap. 8) that all witchcraft and sorcery should be declared felony, without the benefit of clergy. In the time of James I. (Stat. 1, chap. 12,) the death penalty is assigned "for invoking any evil spirit, or for consulting, entertaining, covenanting with, employing, feeding, or rewarding any evil spirit; or taking up any dead bodies from their graves, to be used in any witchcraft, sorcery, charm, or enchantment; or killing, or otherwise hurting any person by such infernal arts." These acts are equally indicative of the belief of both the common and educated classes of society. The continental nations were not a whit behind-hand in punishing this offence, and in limiting

---

[1] Vide Paul, Jannes and Jambres.



OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF MICH

their laws to the supposed measures of guilt, or the manner in which it was professedly exercised. And it was not till George II. (Stat. 91, chap. 5) that prosecution for conjuration, witchcraft, sorcery, or enchantment, was inhibited.

When it is considered that the human mind, under its best phases, was so strongly fettered by this superstitious belief of witchcraft, sorcery, and magic, it cannot be deemed strange that similar delusions should have been found to prevail so universally among the Indian tribes of this continent. And the fact only serves more conclusively to show that the Indian mind is of an ancient stock of the human race, of an epoch when a belief in magic and sorcery held undisputed sway, and when it was distracted and disturbed by polytheistic theories, and wild dogmas. This phasis of mind is considered somewhat at length in remarks which have been submitted under the title, Mental Type, Sect. II., Part I.

The particular guise which the belief in the subtle dogmas of witchcraft, in all its dæmoniacal phases, assumed among the Indian tribes on the American continent, is very characteristic and instructive; and it is my design to put on record, from time to time, details observed in the profoundest depths of the forest, and in the primitive valleys of the West, where such doctrines and practices yet prevail.

2. GODS OF THE DACOTAHS.

Unk-ta-he (god of the water). The Dacotahs say that this god and its associates are seen in their dreams. It is the master-spirit of all their juggling and superstitious belief. From it the medicine-men obtain their supernatural powers, and a great part of their religion springs from this god.

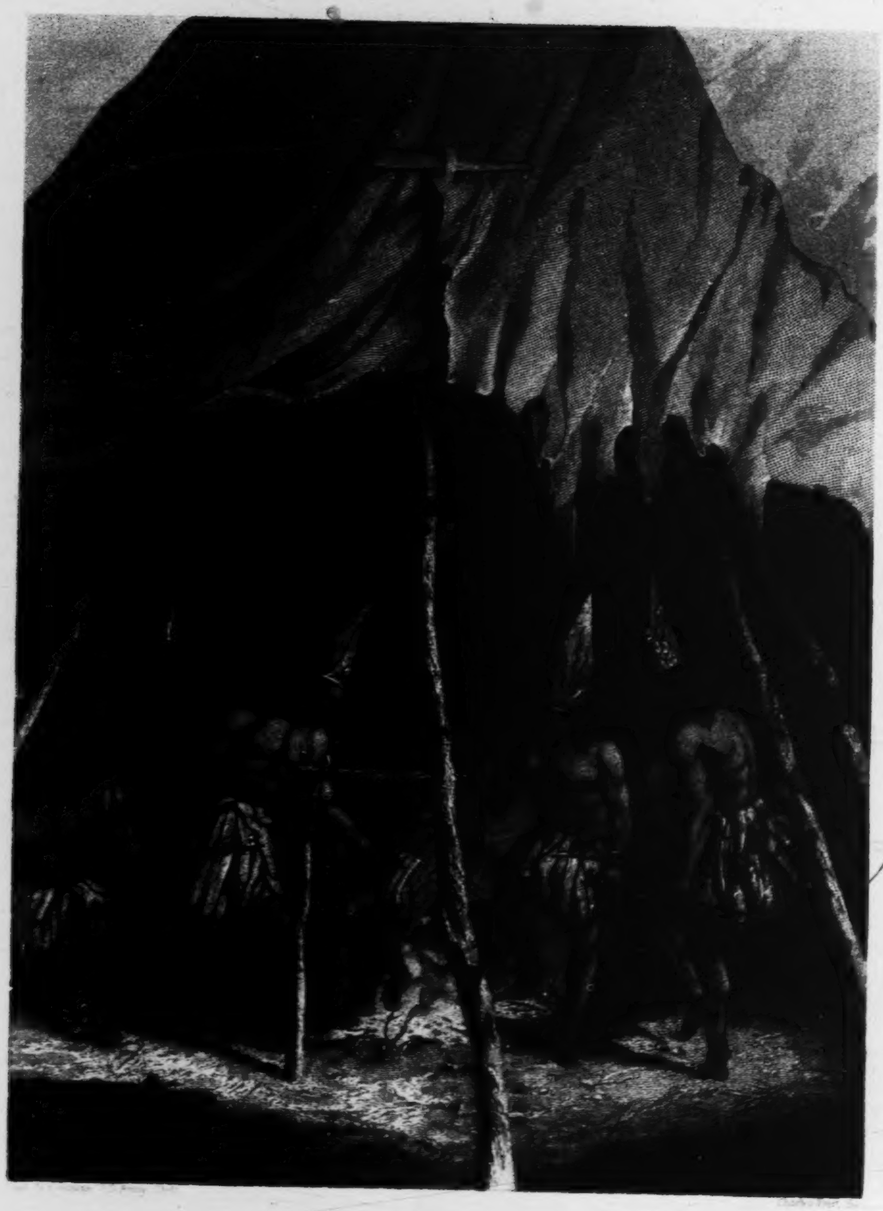
Fig. A, Plate 36, representing the abode of this god and its associates, is explained thus:—The inner circle represents the sea, and Fig. 7 the principal god. Figs. 3, 4, 5, and 6 are its associates. Fig. 2 is an Indian. Fig. 8, comprehending the space between the two circles, is the world. Fig. 1 is a river with an Indian village on its banks. Figs. 11 are doors through which the gods go out into the world. Fig. 9 represents lightning, which the associate gods use for defence. Figs. 10 are trees growing in the woods and on the bank of the river.

The Indian who drew this diagram says that Unk-ta-he came out of the sea, and took him from his village on the river in the spirit, before he was born, and carried him down into the great deep. As he passed by the associate gods, each of them gave him some advice, but when he got to the last one, Fig. 3, he received a drum, and was told that when he struck it and used the language he had received from the gods of the deep, everything would go as he wished. After receiving the last instruction, the principal god of the water put him out on dry land, when he was born of a woman, in flesh an Indian.

The advice that the Indian received from the gods while in the deep, he refused to tell, for it is a part of their great medicine.

Fig. B represents the god of the forest (chah-o-ter-dah). This god lives in a tree that grows on the highest eminences, and his house (Fig. 13) is at the foot of it. When this god wants anything, he leaves his house and sits on a branch of the tree (Fig. 12), which, they say, is as smooth as glass. By his power of attraction, he draws around him all the birds of the forest, who act as guards and sentinels, and inform him when anything approaches his residence, that he may prepare for defence. This god and the god of thunder are mortal enemies, and often have severe combats, in which the latter is most generally worsted. When the god of thunder comes racing along, casting his lightning at the tree, in expectation of killing the god of the forest, the latter, having been timely informed of his approach by his faithful sentinels (Figs. 14, 14), has retired to the water below. The god of thunder sends his lightning after him at the foot of the tree, but coming in contact with the water, it is lost. The god of the forest then ascends the tree, and hurls his lightning with such skill and force at the god of thunder, as to bring him down a victim at his feet. There being a great many gods of thunder, the killing of one now and then does not exterminate them. The god of the forest being considered superior to the god of thunder, the latter seldom attacks the former, but passes his abode at a great distance. The crooked line in the hand of the god of the forest (Fig. 12) is a crooked gun, by which he can shoot in any direction around the earth. Fig. 15 is one of the gods of thunder. Fig. C represents the gods of thunder; sometimes they are represented with a hawk's head. The Dacotahs say that thunder is a large bird flying through the air, and the noise we hear is the fluttering of the old and young birds. The old ones commence the noise, and the young ones carry it on. The old one is wise, and will not injure the Indians, but the young ones are foolish, and do all the mischief they can. Thus, if an Indian is killed by lightning, they say the young rascals of thunder did it. They say that once there was a bird of thunder killed, back of Little Crow's village, on the Mississippi river. It had a face like a man, with a nose like an eagle's bill; his body was long and slender. Its wings had four joints to each, which were painted in zig-zags to represent lightning. The back of its head was red and rough, resembling a turkey.

Fig. D is the god of the grass, or god of the weeds (whitte-ko-kah-gah). The proper translation of this word is, "to make crazy." This god, they say, is formed from a coarse kind of weed, called pajee-ko-tah, which has the power of giving them fits, or making them crazy, and also of giving them success in hunting. In his right hand he holds a rattle of deer-hoofs. There are sixty-four deer-claws in this rattle, or, as they say, the deer-claws of eight deer. In his left hand he carries a bow and arrow; and although the arrow is made blunt by chewing it, still he can send it through the largest animals. From his cap are streaks of lightning, so brilliant as to dazzle the eyes of animals, and thus enable him to approach close to them. In his mouth is a whistle,



Capt. S. Eastman U.S. Army Del. Charles Fenn Sc.

[illegible] SCARE DANCE

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

which is used in the dance to invoke the assistance of this god. When the Indians have bad luck in hunting, they get up a dance to invoke the assistance of this god.

Fig. 3, Wa-hun-de-dan, or Aurora Borealis, or Old Woman, or Goddess of War. The Dacotahs worship this god under the above names. When they are about going to war, the war-chief invokes this god, who appears to him as represented in Fig. E, and instructs him how to act, where he will find the enemy, their condition, the success and misfortunes that will attend the war-party. The goddess is represented with hoops on her arms; and as many of these as she throws on the ground, indicates the number of scalps the party will take. If the party is to have bad luck, she will throw to the ground as many broken arrows as there will be warriors killed and wounded. The little balls running out from the cap (see Plate) represent tufts of down, which the Indians wear on the head after having killed an enemy. The hatchet with a fringe to it, is one which has killed an enemy. It is their custom always to fasten a piece of an animal's skin to any implements used in war. The rays around the figure represent the Aurora Borealis, which the goddess has forced up in honor of victory.

Fig. F, Eah, or Big-Mouth. This is another god that the Indians invoke to assist them in their wars. He is represented with a big rattle in his hand. When the Indians are on a war-party, the war-chief calls to his aid this god and another named Schun-schun-ah, (Mirage, or the glimmering of the sun,) to inform him of the whereabouts of the enemy; and they say that he seldom fails to receive the correct information.

The Dacotahs have many other gods.

All the figures in Plate 36 were drawn by an Indian.

3. THE GIANT'S FEAST AND DANCE.

This feast and dance is made in honor of an anti-natural god, which the Dacotahs call Ha-o-kah or the Giant, who they believe to possess supernatural powers, and second only to the Great Spirit. The Dacotahs have a party or clan in their tribe called the Giant's party. This clan believe in the existence of this god, and occasionally give a feast and dance in honor of him. This is performed by the men only, within a wigwam, around a fire, over which are kettles of meat boiling. They have no clothing excepting a conical cap made of birch bark, streaked with paint to represent lightning, and some strips of the same material around the loins, (see Plate 37.) While hopping and singing around the kettles, they will thrust in their bare hands, and pull out the pieces of meat and eat them while scalding hot. After the meat is all eaten, they will splash the hot water over their bare backs, all the time hopping around and singing out, "Oh, how cold it is!" pretending that the hot water does not scald them, and that the god will not allow any of his clan to be injured by it.

It is presumed that previous to going to the feast they prepare themselves for it by covering themselves with an astringent which they obtain from a root. This deadens the cuticle, and thereby prevents the hot water from injuring them.

Plate 38 is a delineation of this curious ceremony, drawn by a Dacotah and explained by him thus:—

Fig. 1 is the wigwam in which the feast is given.

Fig. 2, the meat in the kettle.

Figs. 3, 4, 5, and 6, are the number of the Giant's party dancing around the meat.

Figs. 8 and 9, bows and arrows.

Figs. 10 and 11, caps, the crooked lines representing lightning.

Figs. 12, 13, and 14, rattles made of deers' hoofs.

Fig. 15, pieces of the meat stuck up on sticks.

Fig. 16, a stone by which they invoke the Indian god.

Fig. 17, tufts of swan-down used in the ceremony.

Fig. 18, a row of grass representing the material with which they kindle their fire.

Figs. 19, 20, and 21, the members of the clan going out to dig the roots by which they extinguish the fire, and the extract of which prevents the hot meat and water from scalding them.

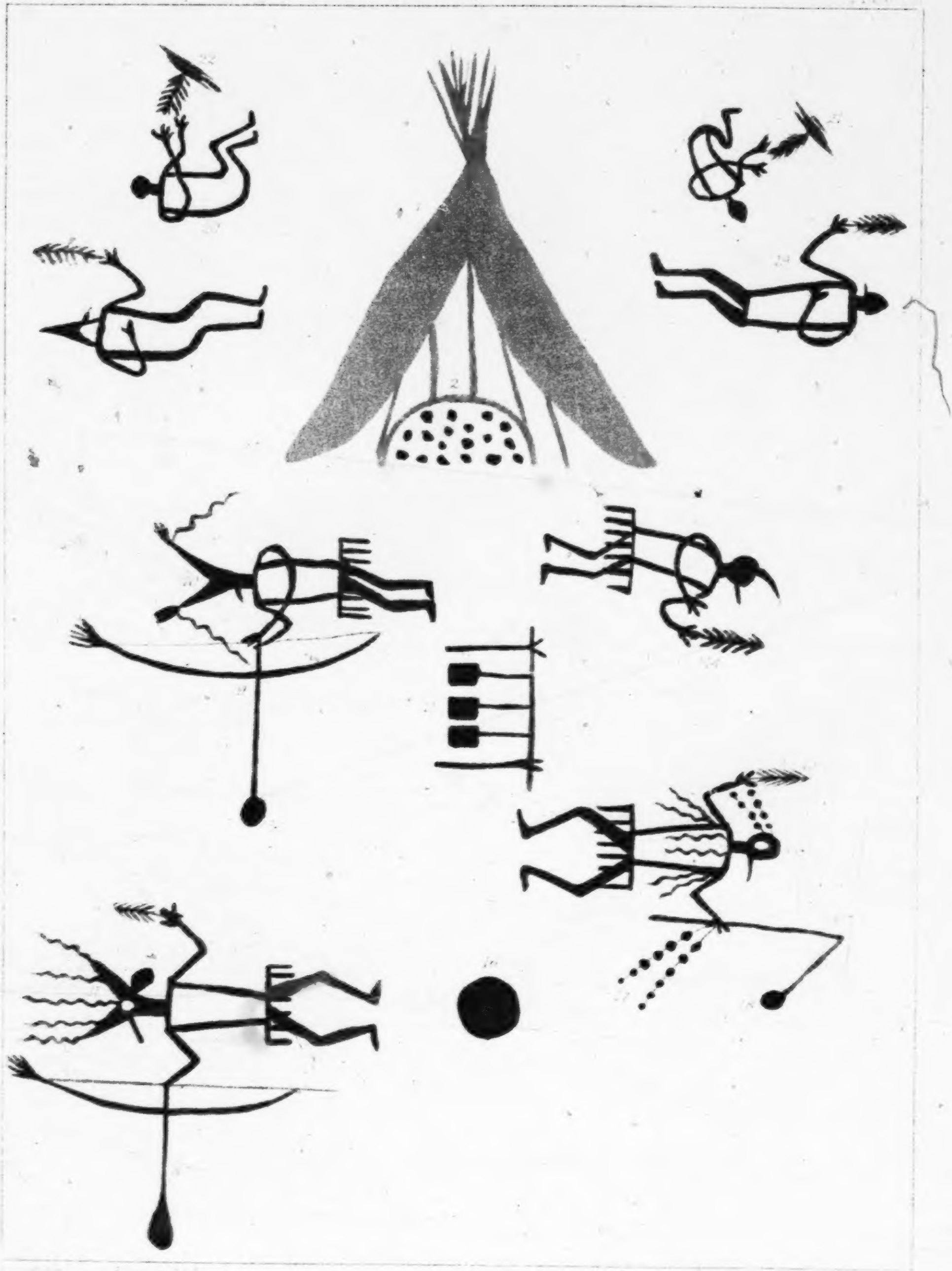
Plate 37 is a correct representation of this dance and feast.

4. MAGICAL DANCES OF THE ONTONAGONS.

It is well known to those who have investigated the subject, that magic had its origin with medicine; and it is a striking fact in the history of the American Indians, that this ancient connection is still maintained and practised by them. All their remedies are exhibited under the supposed, influence of mysterious magical powers, which are expected to perform their offices as much through the secret influence of the Indian meda, or medical doctor, as the physical properties of the simple and compound decoctions employed. For this purpose, incantations are employed, and the hand-drum and rattles are appealed to, in order to awaken attention and stimulate belief. The faith of the multitude in these practices is, in a great measure, proportioned to their ignorance and credulity. They regard the rites and ceremonies with a degree of respect and awe, as if every village muskikiwininee (medicine-man) was clothed with all power, mystical and pathological. Jannes and Jambres, of Egyptian memory, could not stand in higher respect than do the Indian doctors who dispense their skill with drum and rattles. To give greater interest to the rites, and to excite deeper feeling, a series of magic dances are arranged.

The arts of these mystical dances are considered so important to the leaders or professors of this species of occult and hieratic knowledge, that they are recorded by the

Plate [illegible]

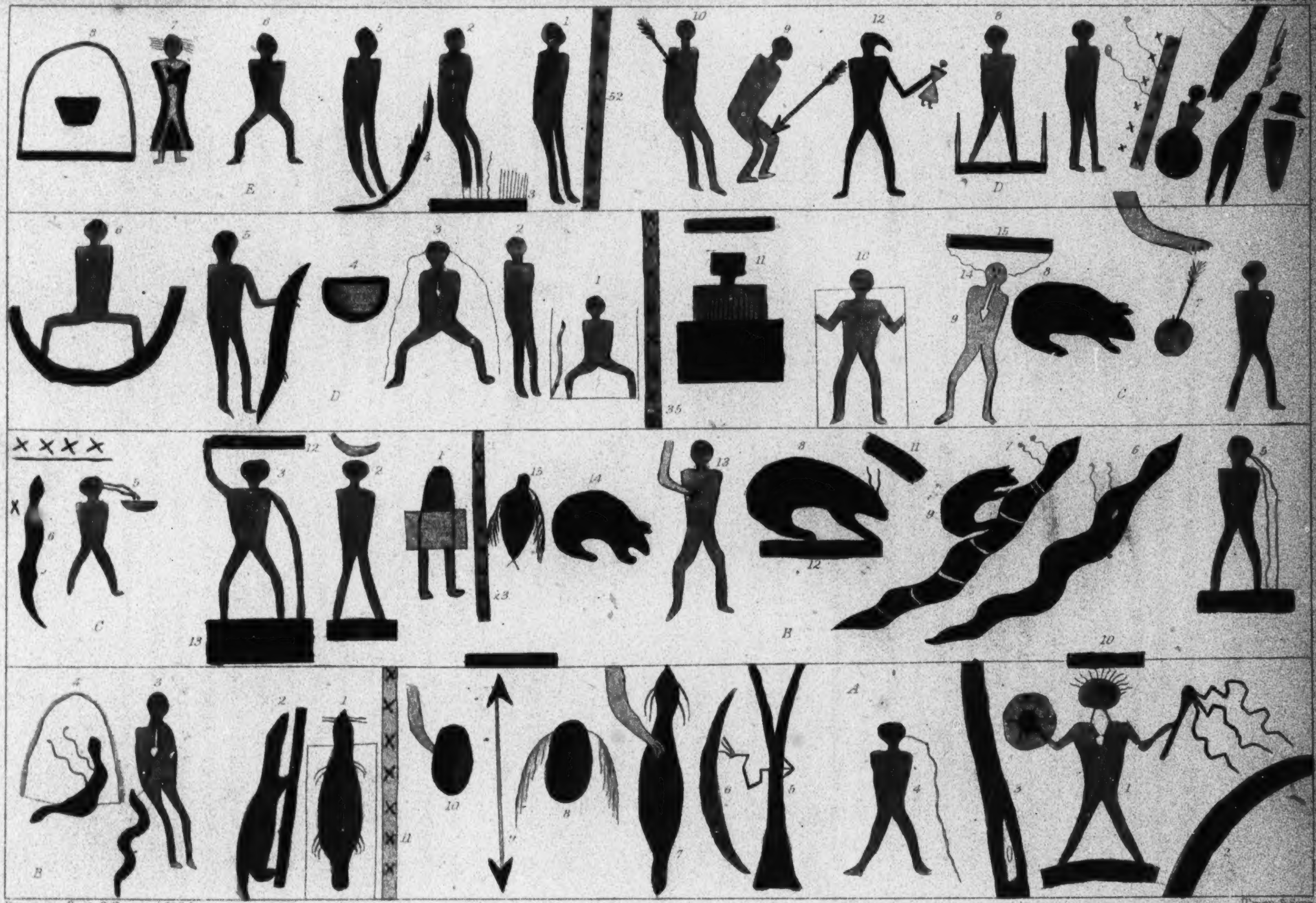


[illegible]

[illegible]

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

Plate 39


8
7
6
E
5
4
2
3
1
52
10
9
12
8
D
7
6
5
4
D
3
2
1
11
35
10
15
14
9
8
7
C
C
6
5
12
3
13
2
1
23
15
14
13
8
11
12
B
9
7
6
5
4
B
3
2
1
11
10
9
8
7
6
5
A
4
3
10
1
2

Drawn by Capt. S. Eastman U.S.A.

Illman & Sons

MAGIC DANCES OF THE ONTONAGONS

PUBLISHED BY LIPPINCOTT, GRAMBO & CO. PHILADA.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

symbolic characters (Plate 39, by Oshkabaiwis). These symbols are pictographs, differing little from the system of the Indian notation of ideas, of which specimens have been given in Vol. I., § VI., in describing the medicine and wabeno chants, except in their highly figurative character and less precise signification. They are to be deemed, more exclusively, the records of magic and sorcery. In the practice of this they are relied on to guide the leader in the order of his songs and incantations. The words of the songs themselves, being unrecorded, there can be no attempt to connect the symbols or devices with the terms actually employed on those occasions. To give accuracy to the description of these orgies of the midnight wigwam, both the music and the words committed to the operator's memory are required. Such is the highly symbolic nature of the figures, and the want of consecutive flow in the ideas, that much must remain in the mind of the operator and trick-maker, who professes to be guided by the spirit and power of sorcery and magic.

If the system of dæmonology and the worship of genii has any more tangible forms among the North American Indians, they have not been noticed. In these ceremonies there is affected to be held in the mouth the materialized forms of disease, extracted from the thorax and stomach; birds are affected to be reanimated with life; and evil genii to be expelled from various parts of the frame. Most of the tricks would be pronounced very miserable exhibitions of necromancy and legerdemain, by persons accustomed to the arts of operators in this line, in civilized life. But the exhibitions are deemed very wonderful by the Indians, who regard them as manifestations of a spiritual presence, and of the power and favor of the class of secret and personal gods who favor the operator. He affects to converse, in a mystical manner, with the spirits and gods, and to wield the power controlling the life and death of individuals. Under these beliefs, his hold on these assemblies is of the deepest cast. They look up to his wonderful exhibitions with awe and fear. They quail before them, and the whole assembly of listeners are in a state of excitement that borders on phrenzy. The chief of these occult arts is in a phrenzy himself, and as he shakes his magic rattles, and beats his mysterious little tamborine, he fancies the heavens and the earth are his listeners, and that the whole visible creation bows before him.

This will explain some of the violent devices employed, and will tend to show how completely they sway the Indian mind. All our Indian tribes have, in the course of their tribal history, been under the dominion of these sorcerers. The sorcerers are regarded as men of great sanctity, wisdom, and self-denial. They affect to live poorly, to be above selfish motives, to be in communion with the spirits of the elemental world, and to be at all times under an influence which it would be the extreme of human folly to resist. It was under such influences that the Shawnee prophet wielded such an enlarged influence on the banks of the Wabash, in 1812. He assembled armies of naked and painted Indians at his command. He wielded their destinies, and became the great exponent of Indian opinion on all subjects. To awake the Indians of the north, he told them, by his emissaries, that it would snow forty feet deep the next winter. Those of the south he approached with elemental calamities of another kind, which were suitable to their climate and position. I have found traces of his power at the farthest points in the west, north, and south, where I have been; and I am convinced, from these extensive evidences of his influence, that he has, by assembling large bodies of Indians together where they had no adequate sustenance, and where they sank beneath the effects of climatic exposure, done more than any single aboriginal who has lived in America, to depopulate the Indian tribes.

The leading ideas of their magical and dæmoniacal devices, as herein exhibited, will serve to show the scope and purport of these ceremonies. Fig. 2 denotes the medical chief Oshkabaiwis, the leader of these dances. He holds in his hand a magic rattle, a small tawaiegon or drum. He affects plenary power in the spirit-world. Every stroke of his drum-stick reverberates through the world. The lesser Indian gods hold their breath at the exhibition of his power. Nothing can withstand him. His figures are chosen from the phenomena of the universe. They are often of the most violent and extravagant character, and it requires a native to interpret and understand them.

From such sources of information, the following sketches are drawn. By Figs. 1, 2, 3, the meda designates himself and his location. They constitute a sort of introduction. Longitudinal marks, such as 11, 23, 35, 52, occupy the place of stops, or bars. The first ten figures, from 4 to 11, denote his medical and magical skill. By 4, he cures a man bleeding at the mouth; by 5 and 6, a tree and moon, he shows his knowledge of simples; by 7, a beaver, he applies his magical powers to trapping; by 8 and 10, a winged clean pebble, he shows his magical powers; and not less so by 9, a charmed arrow, that alike penetrates the earth and heavens.

The compartment B, of the next eleven figures, reveals a deeper chapter in magic. No. 1 places the beaver in limbo; 2, enables the marten to ascend a tree, an incredible feat for the multitude. The efficacy of his medicine in reaching the heart, and curing it of a disease caused by a snake, is shown in Fig. 7. By G, a female in the lodge, his power is shown to extend its universal influence there. No. 5, a man vomiting blood, is under the power of his nostrums. In 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, a further view is given of his power over great serpents (7 and 8) and strong-horned bears, who draw their powers from the earth (12) and sky (11). In 13, he shows his power to cure to be as easy and direct, as to take hold of a man's head by the hand. This is by his bear-power (14) and magic-power (15).

The next compartment, C, of 11 figures, contains new exhibitions of his art. In Fig. 1, a man is covered and burdened with gifts of goods. In 2, he is under lunar influences; in 3, he takes hold of the sky (12) with one hand, and the earth (13) with the other. In 5, sickness caused by a snake (6) produces vomiting. In 7, a charmed arrow is fired in a circle. In 8, a black bear, his pride and spirit is appealed to. In 9, the ears (14) are symbolically opened to the entreaties of the heavens (15). In 10, a man is placed, as it were, in invisible durance: he is denoted by fine lines. In 11, he assumes the shape and strength of a tempest or storm.

In compartment D, these boasts and evidences of magical and medical power are continued. It is not necessary to recite them in detail. Some of the figures which express new features may, however, be given. In Fig. 6, the world is turned up-side-down, and the meda stands on it. In 7, a white man's heart is exhibited. In 7, the art of hunting is shown as influenced by plants. In 8, he strides the globe. In 12, he holds the influence over females, handling them as if they were little children. In 9 and 10, his art extends to war; one receives an arrow in his thigh, the other in his breast. Compartment E, in Figs. 6, 7, 8, exhibits a medicine-woman in the act of showing her peculiar wisdom in drinks and decoctions.

5. INVULNERABILITY AND INVISIBILITY.

A TRADITION OF MAGIC.

OGIM-A-WISH,[1] a very aged and blind chief of the west shore of Lake Michigan, relates the following tradition, which will explain his beliefs. He says that the ancient wars and atrocities of the Indians were very great, and that they were not stopped, but much multiplied by the coming of the whites. At length a general treaty of peace was held, which was attended by the Indians and whites. A white man who had learned the language spoke up and said, that the Indians appeared in the eyes of white men, while in battle, like beasts of the forest and birds of prey, who continually changed their shapes from one form to another, and were so protected by a magic agency that bullets had no effect upon them. He said that the cause of this was in the employment of a plant, a preparation of which they applied to their bodies before battle, called pezhikawusk.[2] They not only used it in rubbing their bodies, but sprinkled the decoction on their arms and implements, in order to enhance their power and efficacy. They also carried the plant about them, as a protective, in medicine-bags.

---

[1] Ish is a derogative inflection in nouns, which is subject to the interposition of the sound of *w* before it, when the purposes of euphony require it. When the inflection is given to the names of gods, spirits, or men professing secret arts, the meaning is uniformly bad. The sense conveyed by it, when applied to a man, is magician or wizard. In this case, it may be rendered wizard-chief.

[2] Ushk, in the Chippewa, denotes a grass, weed, or woodless plant. By prefixing to this term the word for bison, pezhike, we have the etymology — buffalo-grass. The introduction of the sound of *w* in this name, is necessary to prevent the succession of two vowels, in bringing together syllables in a compound.

They believe that the use of this talismanic wash makes them invisible, and has the power of warding off balls from fire-arms and other missiles. It is still used by the tribes on war excursions, and its efficacy, together with their reliance upon their guardian spirits, is such that they are rendered both invisible and invulnerable.

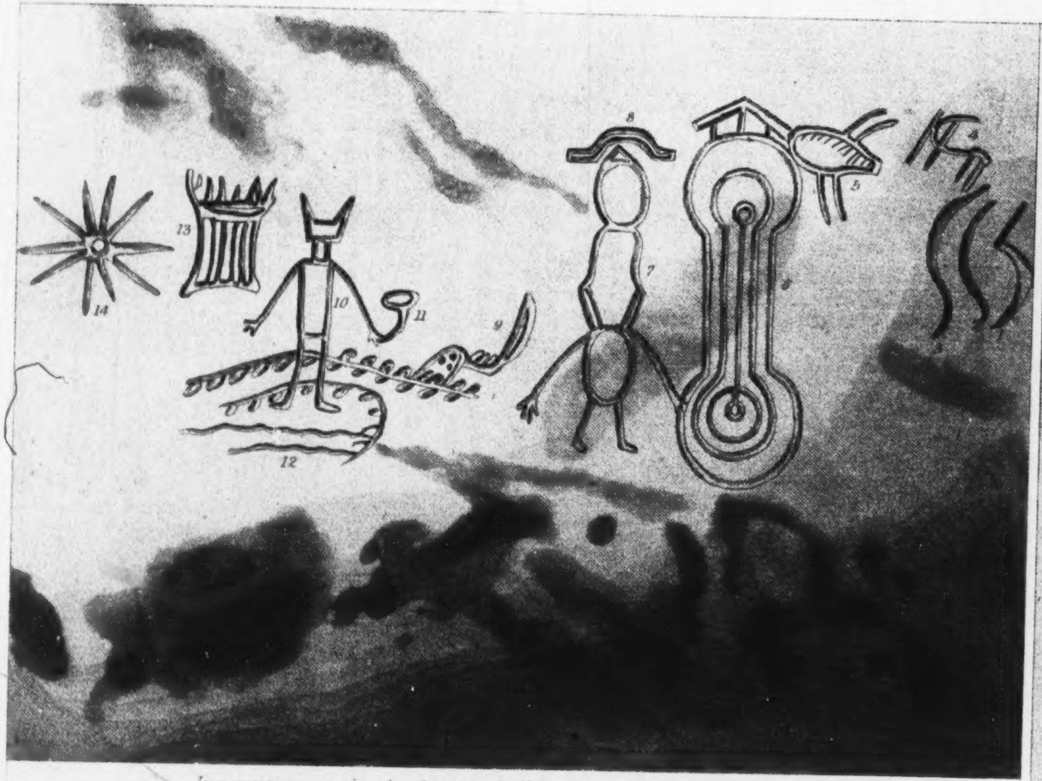
6. GENII WORSHIP.

Having inquired why it is that the Indians decline to relate their oral fictions at any other time but the winter season, the reply given is stated in the following summary of their belief on this point.

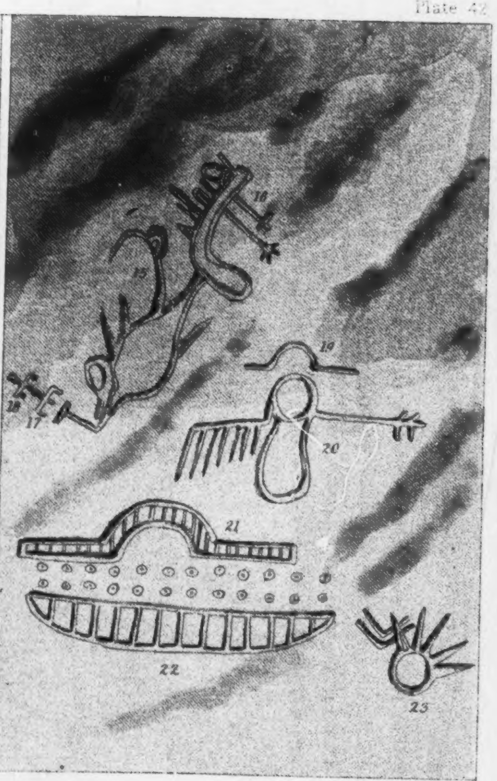
The genii and spirits who inhabit the solid ground are covered, during the winter season, by beds of snow, and the lakes and rivers with ice, which make them insensible to hearing. The fanciful and grotesque tales that are told in the winter-lodge, where the old and young are crowded together, often produce jeers and remarks from the listeners, and create merriment which would be offensive to the genii if they were overheard.

As soon as the spring opens freely, these tales cease. The earth is now reanimated. The snows disappear, the lakes and rivers open, the birds return to their deserted forests or streams, the leaves put forth, the shrubs and flowers spring up, as the warm rays of the sun enter the cold soil, and all nature is revived and rejoices. It is now that the spirit-world in which the Indians live, assumes its most intense state of activity, and the red hunter, who believes himself dependent on the spirits and genii for success in every path of life, is regardful of the least word which might give offence to these newly-awakened powers. It is this belief that gives force to the song of the Okogis, which is given in § VI., Vol. III., among the indications of a poetic development. The children are told by their parents, that should they do so, the snakes, toads, and reptiles, would visit them for their presumptuous irreverence.

The hunter, as he floats down the woodland stream, or enters some rock-defile creating awe, in his land-excursions, lights his pipe to offer a pleasant oblation to the surrounding and unknown gods, and never alludes to them but in a sedate and reverent manner. If he were disposed to do otherwise, and indulge in vain asseverations, he could not, for his very language is without an expression equivalent to an oath. And in this he is more consistent with his belief than profane white men.


4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14

Inscription on the Sand stone Cliff near San Pete valley Utah Ter.
130 miles south of Great Salt Lake


15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23

Inscription on a rocky cliff in Utah Ter.
350 miles south of Great Salt Lake.

Illman & Sons

ROCK INSCRIPTIONS IN UTAH TER.

[illegible]

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

7. PICTOGRAPHS FROM THE FACES OF CLIFFS ON THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS. (1 PLATE.)

THE system of medical magic — the belief in elementary gods of the air, mountains, plains, and waters, and the prominent dogmas of dæmonology or spirit-craft, entrusted to the power of medas or priests, and professors of mystical arts — prevails over the entire continent. Ideographic symbols are everywhere employed to express these professed powers of mysterious art. These symbols were elaborated with more art among the forest and Mississippi Valley tribes, who, from their better means of subsistence, could dwell together in larger villages, and whose hearers and neophytes were, consequently, able to support their medas and professed leaders and teachers in mystical things, without these sacred functionaries being obliged to hunt, trap, or fish for themselves. The prairie tribes, extending to the foot of the Rocky Mountains, had also the same general system of recording their arts, powers, and exploits, upon the skins of animals, cliffs, trees, scrolls of bark, or rude tablets of wood.

We have now, (see Plate 42,) from the pencil of Lieutenant Gunnison, U. S. A., some of these pictographic symbols from the bleak and elevated summits of the Rocky Mountains, where the exhibitions of the great elementary phenomena of the heavens are on a scale of sublime grandeur which are often mysteriously enhanced by the wonderful effects of mirage on those elevations.

Colonel Frémont, in his exploration of the Salt Lake Valley, in 1842, mentions the striking phantasmagoric views which often started up before him, to the amazement of the men. Further examples of the power of refraction to distort natural objects on these elevated heights, are given by Captain Stansbury, U. S. A., in his recent report. The philosophic causes of these effects are a total mystery to the Indian mind, and his ready solution of them is found in his subtle system of mythology and magic. Dreams are to him ordinarily the revelations of the spirit-world; and when his waking senses are stimulated by such scenes, it need excite no surprise that he should attribute them to supernatural causes, or that he should aim, sometimes, to perpetuate his impressions by pictographs. Such evidences of spiritual and necromantic agencies among the peaks and valleys of the mountains, we probably have before us, in the plate under examination.

Compared to the pictographs of the Mississippi Valley tribes, they reveal the same generic system. The symbol of the Great Spirit, the sun, which is one of the most ancient and general of all the symbols of the American tribes, is prominent (14 and 23) in both inscriptions. The chief leader and meda in the tribe, is depicted by the usual emblems of authority, and by holding in his hand the magic rattle. Prophetic and sacred power is assumed by the figure (B), whose head, by the apparent exaltation of the chief on his shoulders, is made to fill the canopy of heaven (Figs. 8 and 21). The magic circles, on which he places one hand, remind the pictographic student of the symbol 22, Plate 58, Vol. I., which is interpreted "Death's-head," and may be deemed indicative of the operator's influence over life and death. By the symbol (Fig. 5), these influences appear to be connected with the destructive cricket of Utah. The two inscriptions, Manti and Little Salt Lake Valley, which are two hundred and twenty miles apart, appear to be sui generis. The symbols of the Great Spirit (Figs. 4 and 23) are nearly identical. The magician (Figs. 6 and 20),—the latter of whom has one hand and one wing, denoting the union of human and ornithological powers,—and the emblem of authority over the heads of each (Figs. 19 and 8), are the same. These resemblances, without attempting further to pursue them, are sufficient to denote the similarity of the pictographic symbols of the Rocky Mountains and the Mississippi tribes.[1]

---

[1] From Lieut. Gunnison's "Mormons," these pictographs appear to have been wrested to the absurd and shameful purposes of that lamentable instance of blind ignorance and fanaticism.

XIII. MEDICAL KNOWLEDGE OF THE INDIAN. A.

MEDICAL KNOWLEDGE OF THE INDIAN.

PRACTICE OF MEDICINE AMONG THE WINNEBAGOES.

TURKEY RIVER SUB-AGENCY, IOWA, *April 1st*, 1848.

SIR:—I have the honor to acknowledge the receipt of your note, requesting a reply to the following queries, viz.:

"1.—What are the diseases of this climate, and what are the diseases to which the Winnebago Indians are most subject?"

"2.—What is the state of medical practice among them?"

"3.—What is the state of their materia medica?"

In reply to the first query, I would say the Indians are subject to all, and the same diseases that affect the whites.

During the summer and autumnal months, bilious diseases predominate; in fact, cases are rarely met in which the liver and spleen do not participate. The febrile diseases are of a remittent or intermittent type. Continued fevers are rarely met, except in cases where the former have been neglected, or injudiciously treated. Typhus fever, as a primary disease, is never seen. There is a greater tendency to gastro-enteritis in fevers of this climate than is usually found in a more southern latitude.

During the winter and spring months, the diseases are generally of a highly inflammatory type. The most common are bilious pneumonia, pneumonia, pleuritis, bronchitis, tonsillitis, ottitis, and odontalgia.

Of the above, bilious pneumonia is the most frequent, and by far the most fatal disease among the Indians.

2. As regards the practice of medicine amongst them, it is a compound of superstition and ignorance. They are totally ignorant of the pathology of disease, and equally so of its treatment. They have no knowledge of anatomy, nor any correct idea of the circulation of the blood; the maximum of their knowledge on this point is that the blood runs in certain channels—arterial and venous: circulation is with them the same thing.

"Medicine-men" are numerous among them, and each has his secret universal panacea for all the diseases "that flesh is heir to." So far as I have been able to observe, their medicines are of a mild character, the poisons being excluded as being the work of the Evil Spirit in an attempt to imitate the Good Spirit, who created the different fruits and grasses for the use of the Indians. Their remedies are exhibited with but little reference to disease or the particular stages of the same.

The hot or vapor bath and the cold bath or cold affusions, and frequent blood-letting, are the most powerful remedial agents in use. These powers are resorted to in every disease attended with inward heat of the surface; and the latter is an almost universal remedy. The flint is used as the instrument for bleeding: a small scale is broken off and tied to the end of a stick, and used as farmers use the lance in bleeding horses.

The vapor bath is prepared by covering a small lodge with blankets, in which the patient is placed; heated rocks are placed near him, on which water is poured, immediately generating any required amount of vapor.

The cold bath is some natural stream, or spring, in which the patient is placed in a sitting posture, the water coming up to his chin; or, when such natural bath is inconvenient, from distance, the patient is wrapped in blankets, and cold water poured over him: this is continued according to the pleasure of the operator. This course sometimes has a happy effect in cases of fever, but more generally the effect is congestion of some of the important viscera, or brain.

In some cases of disease, they rely more on propitiatory offerings to the Bad Spirit, and incantations, accompanied with the drum, rattle, and whistle, than on any internal medicine.

Cupping is also a favorite remedy with them. This is performed with a horn of the ox, using the mouth as a suction-pump; the part being first scarified with a flint, or with the point of a knife.

As regards their *materia medica*, but little is known to the whites, as a superstitious mystery envelopes all their actions when attempting to cure the sick. I have been much among them during the last two years, and have carefully observed their remedies, and the effects, and am perfectly satisfied that they have no remedies of any value not known and embraced in the Pharmacopœia of the United States.

Their theory of ague and fever is, that it is the work of the "Bad Spirit;"—that he blows his cold, and after, his hot breath upon them. This may be taken as a fair specimen of their knowledge of the cause of disease. All their sacrifices and propitiatory offerings are made to this spirit. I am not aware that offerings are ever made to Manitou, or the Good Spirit. During seasons of unusual sickness, large amounts of valuable goods are suspended on trees, or poles, in the vicinity of their villages, as offerings to the Evil Spirit. Such was the case during the summer and autumn of 1846. Dogs are a favorite offering.

Their superstitious notions are, however, gradually melting away before the light of civilization; and many of them have now discarded their own "medicine-men," and in all, even the slightest indisposition, call on the government physician for medicine and advice. This is emphatically true, so far as the Agency band is concerned. Observation and experience have convinced them that there is more safety in the doctor of the white man, than their own; and few cases of disease occur in which he is not consulted.

I am, &c.,

F. Andros, *Phys. to Winnebago Ind.*

XIV. LITERATURE OF THE INDIAN LANGUAGES. A.

LITERATURE OF THE INDIAN LANGUAGES.

SYNOPSIS OF PAPERS.

1. Plan of a System of Geographical Names for the United States, founded on the Aboriginal Languages. H. R. S.
2. A Description of the Aboriginal American Nomenclature. H. R. S.

1. PLAN OF A SYSTEM OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES FOR THE UNITED STATES, FOUNDED ON THE ABORIGINAL LANGUAGES.

It does not appear that any distinctive generic name was bestowed by the aborigines on the American continent.[1] They had not proceeded, in their knowledge of geography, from the concrete to the generic and abstract. Rivers, lakes, hills, mountains, and plains, are suited, by their features, to attract the Indian's eye, which is ever quick to perceive fancied resemblances to living objects in the animate creation, and to detect their characteristic features. But the Indian was a poor generalizer; and knowing nothing of the true figure and divisions of the globe, he was not prepared, by his knowledge, to speak of its division into continents, and of their relative positions.

The greater part of the tribes, and so far as vocabularies have been collected, all of them, had names for the sea, which they believed, in its utmost extent, to encompass the land. Hence, when pressed for a name for the continent, they denominated it an island, or, The Island. It is generally called, in their dialects, the Island of the Great Spirit. Their mythology and traditions regard it as the creation of the invisible Owayneo, Wacondah, or the Great Monedo, or Wazhiöd, the Maker. By the term Hawaneo, the Iroquois denote the island of Neo, or the Great Spirit.

---

[1] See Traditions of the Iowas, Vol. III., p. 263.

Whilst the tribes failed to generalize their local knowledge of places, by the bestowal of comprehensive terms, they were particular in giving names to their general features. It is the testimony of all who have looked into this matter, that the Indian geographical names are at once appropriate and euphonious. They often perpetuate some graphic or peculiar characteristic, resemblance, or property. Thus, the name of Orinoco describes a serpent which enfolds itself in circles within circles; the term Mississippi appears to imply not simply a great river, but a mass of congregated waters.

The tribes generally dwelt on the banks of rivers, which were denoted by an inflection to the root-form of its name; as annah, annock, any, as heard in Susqueh-annah Rappah-annock, and Allegh-any.

The Delawares employed the term ittuk for this purpose, in Lenapeh-ittuk, the Delaware river; and the Mohegans of New York, who were a closely cognate tribe, did the same in their name for the Hudson, in the phrase Mohegan-ittuk. The translation of the first name is, Lenape river, and of the second, Mohegan river; names which had better have been retained.

The termination of atun, or atan, or ton, denotes a rapid stream or channel, as heard in Manh[1]-atan. Sometimes this term is followed by a local inflection in uk, as Housaton-uc; or by ong, as in the Indian name of Detroit river, Wawe-atun-ong.

The New England tribes frequently made the local termination in ett, or etts, as in Massachus-etts, Seaconn-et, Nantuck-et, Narragans-et. Locality was sometimes given, in the wide-spread Algonquin bands, by the term ake, meaning land or earth, as in Milw-aukie, Cox-ackie; sometimes by allusion to a tree, as auk in Mont-auk, Manitow-ac; or oc and ac, as in Merrim-ack, Accom-ac, Potom-ac. Very frequently it was made by the prepositional inflection ing, denoting at, in, or by, as in Wyom-ing, Wyalus-ing, Sing-sing, or as formerly heard in Wiscons-ing. The French sometimes softened or modified the local inflections, where they adopted an Indian word, or made one from the Indian languages, by putting ois, as in Iroqu-ois, Sourig-ois, and Illin-ois.

These terminations to the names of rivers, in the Algonquin, generally took more sonorous forms in the Iroquois, as io, in the word Oh-io and Ontar-io, where the termination implies admiration.

Many of the local terminations of the geographical names of this language are made in oga, or aga, as heard in On'ond-aga, Ti-oga, and Ticonder-oga. In other combinations, this meaning is conveyed in ego, as Ots-ego, Osw-ego, and Ow-ego.

The southern tribes threw a different set of local terminations into our geographical terminology, which are generally derived from the Muscogee or Chickasaw, or Choctaw vocabularies. The inflection for a stream, in the Muscogee, is heard in oosa, as in the words Tuscal-oosa, Tallap-oosa; or in hatchee, or hootchee, as in Coosa-hatchee, Tuckahatchee, and Chatta-hootche. The terminations in ia, as in Peor-ia, and Kaskask-ia, are Algonquin.

---

[1] The adjective phrase qualifying this word is derived from monadud, bad, inanimate.

In adopting the Indian names, there has been, from the earliest times, a popular regard to euphony. Sometimes their polysyllabic character has, on coming into use, required elision, which has consisted, generally, in dropping the first or last syllable, as the short o before Niagara, and the local ng from Chicago. It is seldom that a whole syllable has been dropped from an euphonious word, as co from Cocituate, or ono from Onosodus. The dropping of wa has, on the contrary, been an improvement of the sound of such names as Poto-wa-mac, and the name of Chesapeake been sharpened up from its apprehended sound of Chësabeag.

The general beauty, euphony, or sonorousness of the Indian names have been acknowledged, and a regret expressed that they are not adequate in their number to supply the wants of a rapidly-settling and wide-spreading country. Doubtless, were attention given to the subject, many local names of aboriginal origin, fit for preservation, could be found in the precincts of their former or present residence, which yet remain in popular tradition. But it is questionable whether, under any aspect, should the public taste demand it, the number would be found at all adequate to the increasing demands of the rapidly-accumulating counties and townships of the new States.

It is believed that a system of forming compound names may be introduced from the Indian languages, which will embrace the advantages of euphony with appropriateness of signification. The popular English ear is wedded to certain laws of quantity and rhythmical flow, of which it is not always sensible, but which, on experiment in the use of new names, it is not prepared to sacrifice. In a few instances, the very quaintness of a short name of English compounds, causes it to be brought into popular use, as in the term Penyan, which is a combination of the first syllable in Pennsylvania and Yankee. In adopting others from foreign languages, euphony sometimes leads to the dropping of a consonant essential to the foreign sound, as in Vermont, from verd-mons or mont.

It is found that many aboriginal terms which are graphically descriptive in the native dialects, fail in the necessary euphony and shortness necessary to their popular adoption. The principles of the polysynthetic languages embrace the rule of concentrating, in their compounds, the full meaning of a word upon a single syllable, and sometimes a single letter. Thus, in Algonquin, the particle be denotes water; wa, inanimate motion; ga, personal action; ac, a tree; bic, a rock or metal. The syllable ti, in Iroquois, constantly means water; tar, a rock; on, a hill; nec, a tree.

In the Natic or Massachusetts dialect, as given by Mr. Eliot, the negative form of elementary words is matta; the local inflection ett; the adjective great, missi; black, mooi; white, wompi.

In Creek, wé-wah is water and hat-kee white, but in forming the compound for sea, the term is we-hat-kee, which means white water. Here the final syllable for water is seen to be non-essential, and the terminal inflection for white, by a common mutation of the vowel, is changed from kee to ka (short).

The Indian languages also contain generic syllables or particles in the shape of inflections to nouns and verbs; in the Algonquin, abo, a liquid; jegun, (or simply gun,) an instrument; jewun, a current; wunzh, a plant; ong or onk, a place, &c.

By these concentrations, descriptive words become replete with meanings; but it requires a very nice collocation and adjustment of syllables to attain the requisite degree of euphony for the adoption of such compounds by foreign ears. Generally, words of three syllables recommend themselves to the English ear for quantity, in geographical names adopted from an Indian language, as heard in Oswego, Chicago, Ohio, Monadnok, and Toronto. In these cases, it may be observed that the accent is uniformly on the antepenultimate. In the terms Susquehannah, Rappahannock, Ontario, Mississippi, Adirondak, Niagara, Ticonderoga, Michilimackinac, and Kayaderosseras, (consisting respectively, in their order, of four, five, and six syllables,) there is something in the rapidity, and at the same time euphony of their flow, which appears to have led to their early adoption; and these terms may be said to stand as bulwarks in our aboriginal syllabication. In the word Oregon, the origin of which is uncertain, the accent is on the first syllable. In the euphonious words Missouri, Illinois, and Arkansas, which embrace aboriginal roots, we hear the sounds as modified by the French orthoepy and enunciation, and the accent of the two latter terms is disturbed by them. In Alleghany, the accent maintains its original place; in the fine term Appalachian, which, it is apprehended, is founded on the Spanish-Indian Appalache and Appalachia, the accent is thrown backward, as it is generally in adopted aboriginal words of five or six syllables.

In the terms suggested in the following lists of words, intended to be introduced into our geographical nomenclature, the principles of elision and concentration referred to, have been applied. The root-forms carry the entire signification to which they are entitled, in the elementary vocabulary, after they have been divested, by analysis, of their adjuncts. Thus, in the Algonquin, the syllable ac stands for land, earth, ground, soil; be for water, liquid; bic for rock, stone, metal, hard mineral; co for object; ke for country, precinct, or territory; os for pebble, loose stone, detritus; min, good; ia, the term for a beautiful scene; na, a particle, which in compound words denotes excellence; oma, a large body of water; non, a place; gan, a lake; coda, a plain or valley; oda, a town, village, or cluster of houses, &c.

By taking the primary syllable of a word, as conveying the entire signification of the word, and employing it as a nominative to other syllables, which are also made use of in their concentrated forms, a class of words is formed, which are generally shorter than their parent forms, more replete in their meanings, and securing, at the same time, a more uniformly euphonious pronunciation. Quantity and accent being thus at command by these elisions and transpositions, the number of syllables of which a new class of words shall consist, is a question to be predetermined. Expletive consonants, harsh gutturals, and double inflections, the pests of Indian lexicography, are dropped, and the selections made from syllables which abound in liquid and vowel sounds. For it should be the object ever to preserve, as new elements in this peculiar branch of American literature, not the harsh and barbarous, but the soft and sonorous sounds.

1. *Terms from the Algonquin.*

As a basis for these terms, we take, from the vocabulary of analyzed words, the primary terms ad, ab, os, wud, pat, mo, at, seeb, gon, pew, chig, naig, ag, mon, tig, cos, pen, mig, won; meaning respectively deer, home, pebble, mountain, hill, spring, channel or current, river, clay-land, iron, shore, sand, water's edge, corn, tree, grass, bird, eagle, rose-bud. Subjecting these nominatives to the adjective expression ia, signifying beautiful, fair, admirable, and placing the particle nac, land, earth, soil, in the objective, and changing the latter for gan, a lake; bee, water; min, good; na, excellent; ma, large water; ock, forest, we have the following trisyllabic terms:—

	PRIMARY TERMS.	NAC	GAN	BEE	MIN	NA	OCK
Deer	Ad	Ad ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Home	Ab	Ab ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Pebble	Os	Os ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Mountain	Wud	Wud ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Hill	Pat	Pat ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Spring	Mo	Mo ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Current	At	At ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
River	Seeb	Seeb ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Clay-land	Gon	Gon ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Iron	Pew	Pew ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Shore	Chig	Chig ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Sand	Naig	Naig ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Beach	Ag	Ag ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Corn	Mon	Mon ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Tree	Tig	Tig ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Grass	Cos	Cos ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Bird	Pen	Pen ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Eagle	Mig	Mig ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock
Rose-bud	Won	Won ia nac	gan	bee	min	na	ock

By reversing the action of the verb, or noun nominative, which the grammar permits, and placing the objective syllable in the place of the nominative, a new set of phrases is created, by which the meaning is changed from deer-land, home-land, &c., to land of deer, land of home, &c. The number of the objective syllables is as various as their objects in nature. The whole class of animals, birds, reptiles, insects, fishes; the wide-spread phenomena of the heavens, of the forests and of the waters, supply words which are susceptible of being employed in the construction of new terms. As there are seventeen letters in the language, and each of these may be varied in its syllabic powers fifteen times, as has been indicated at p. 359, Vol. II., there is a wide range in this department. Not only can the objective be exchanged for the nominative, but the qualifying word admits of many euphonious exchanges; and it may itself be employed as an objective, and the nominative itself thrown in the body of terms as a qualifying syllable; producing a set of words like those heard in Peoria and Kaskaskia, where the terminal syllable, ia, denotes fair or beautiful. In these terms the syllable os, denoting pebble or drift, is the adjunct noun.

Adósia	Fair deer land	From Adic.
Abósia	Fair home land	“ Abin.
Wudósia	Fair mountain	“ Wudjoo.
Patósia	Fair hill	“ Ishpatina.
Mosósia	Fair spring land	“ Mokitch.
Atósia	Fair channel	“ Atun.
Seebósia	Fair river	“ Seebee.
Gonósia	Fair arable land.	
Agósia	Fair shores.	
Cosóeia	Fair grass land.	

If the terminal ome, or oma, as it is heard in Gitchig-oma, be employed, we have a set of terms denoting water prospects.

Min-ó-ma	Good water.
Mos-ó-ma	Moose water.
Adik-ó-ma	Deer water (reindeer).
Mon-ó-ma	Spirit water.
Mok-ó-ma	Spring water.
Seeb-ó-ma	River water.
Cod-ó-ma	Plain or prairie water.
Tig-ó-ma	Tree water.
Cos-ó-ma	Grass water.
Ac-ó-ma	Rock water.
Az-ó-ma	Eagle water.

The particle na, as heard in Na-mikong (White-fish Point), and Na-geezhig, a man's name, denotes excellent, abundant, surpassing. By taking this for the objective syllable, and retaining the same nominative and the same qualifying syllable made use of above, the resulting terms are as follows: —

Min-iá-na	Good,	fair, and	excellent.
Ack-iá-na	“	“	land.
Cos-iá-na	“	“	grass.
Az-iá-na	“	“	eagles.
Cod-iá-na	“	“	plains.
Tig-iá-na	“	“	trees.
Mon-iá-na	“	“	spirits.

2. *Terms from the Iroquois.* (*The syllables* CO, *a cascade;* TI, *water;* TAR, *rock;* ON, *hill;* ASTO, *a defile; are selected as exhibiting the transpositive capacities of this sonorous language.*)

(*a.*) Iroquois terminations in *atea*, a valley or landscape.

Co-at-at-ea	Valley below falls.
Ti-at-at-ea	Well-watered valley.
Tar-at-at-ea	Rocks of the valley.
On-at-at-ea	Hills of the valley.
As-to-at-ea	Narrow pass of a river in the valley.

(*b.*) Iroquois terminations in *oga*, a place.

Ti-ar-o-ga	Place of water and rocks.
Os-ar-o-ga	Place of the view of water and rocks.
On-tar-o-ga	Place of hills and rocks.
Co-at-ar-o-ga	Place of falls.
Ti-at-ar-o-ga	Place of the watery vale.
Tar-at-ar-o-ga	Place of the rocky vale.
Di-on-dar-o-ga	Place of the inflowing of waters.

(*c.*) Iroquois terminations in *io*, beautiful.

Co-i-o	Beautiful falls.
Te-i-o	Beautiful waters.
On-ti-o	Beautiful hills.
Tar-i-o	Beautiful rocks.
Os-i o	Beautiful view.

(*d.*) Iroquois terminations in *ara*, path at a gorge.

Co-at-a-ra	Cascade at a gorge.
Ti-at-a-ra	Water at a gorge.
Tar-at-a-ra	Rock at a gorge.
On-at-a-ra	Hill at a gorge.
Con-at-a-ra	Tree at a gorge.

3. *Terms from the Appalachian Group of Languages.* (*The nominative syllables and local inflections selected under this head are chiefly from the Muscogee.*)

Termination in *hasse*, a river; *dega*, a plain; and *dilla*, a little field.

RADIX.		A RIVER.	A PLAIN.	A LITTLE FIELD.
Coa	Bright object.	Hasse (inflection)	Dega (inflection)	Dilla (inflection)
Nuxa	Dun rock.	Hasse "	Dega "	Dilla "
Talla	Town.	Hasse "	Dega "	Dilla "
Alta	Swift water.	Hasse "	Dega "	Dilla "
Tullu	High peak.	Hasse "	Dega "	Dilla "
Tusca	Warrior.	Hasse "	Dega "	Dilla "
Hia	Meadow.	Hasse "	Dega "	Dilla "
Oca	Briary.	Hasse "	Dega "	Dilla "

RADIX.		A RIVER.	A PLAIN.	A LITTLE FIELD.
Acla	Deep water.	Hasse (inflection)	Dega (inflection)	Dilla (inflection)
Eka	Earth.	Hasse “	Dega “	Dilla “
Panne	Valley.	Hasse “	Dega “	Dilla “
Ote	Hazly.	Hasse “	Dega “	Dilla “
Eto	Forest.	Hasse “	Dega “	Dilla “
Yuca	Fruit.	Hasse “	Dega “	Dilla “
Alee	Arrow.	Hasse “	Dega “	Dilla “
Apa	Cliffy.	Hasse “	Dega “	Dilla “
Ocla	Water.	Hasse “	Dega “	Dilla “

A class of terms may likewise be formed by prefixing an aboriginal nominative to an Anglo-Saxon inflection, denoting locality, as in ham, ville, burg, field, burn, wold, brook, &c. Very great variety in sounds may be produced by taking these nominative particles from the various dialects and languages.

Terminations in FIELD.

Cal-field (3.)[1]	Friend
Min-field (10.)	Good
Os-field (10.)	Pebble
Vo-field (5.)	Hare
Cos-field (5.)	Sheep
On-field (9.)	Hill

Terminations in LAND.

Cal-land
Min-land
Os-land
Vo-land
Cos-land
On-land

Terminations in WOLD.

Cal-wold
Min-wold
Os-wold
Vo-wold
Cos-wold
On-wold

Terminations in BROOK.

Cal-brook
Min-brook
Os-brook
Vo-brook
Cos-brook
On-brook

Terminations in VALE.

Cal-vale
Min-vale
Os-vale
Vo-vale
Cos-vale
On-vale

Terminations in BURN.

Cal-burn
Min-burn
Os-burn
Vo-burn
Cos-burn
On-burn

Terminations in HAM.

Cal-ham
Min-ham
Os-ham
Vo-ham
Cos-ham
On-ham

Terminations in TON.

Cal-ton
Min-ton
Os-ton
Vo-ton
Cos-ton
On-ton

Terminations in WATER.

Cal-water
Min-water
Os-water
Vo-water
Cos-water
On-water

Terminations in WOOD.

Cal-wood
Min-wood
Os-wood
Vo-wood
Cos-wood
On-wood

Terminations in HILL.

Cal-hill
Min-hill
Os-hill
Vo-hill
Cos-hill
On-hill

---

[1] 3. Tusuque; 5. Cheyenne; 9. Iroquois; 10. Algonquin.

Terminations in MONT.

Cal-mont
Min-mont
Os-mont
Vo-mont
Cos mont
On-mont

Terminations in BY.

Cal-by
Min-by
Os-by
Vo-by
Cos-by
On-by

General Miscellaneous Terms.

Na-pee-na	Abounding in birds.
Al′-gon-ac	Land of Algons.
Al-gó-ma	Lake of Algons.
Al-gán-see	Water of the plains.
Al-hál-la	Sage's covert.
Cli-ó-la.	
E-to-lá-la	Land's-breadth.
At-se-ó-na.	
Gee-nál-go	Sun-lands.
Chattolánee	Rock-water.
I-ós-co	Water of light.
I-é-nia	Wanderer's rest.
Cli-a dil′-la	Field of the sage.
I-ë-ó-la.	
Pe-os-tá-ra	Gorge in the rock.
Di-e-on-da	Hill at the inflowing waters.
I-aú-nock	Abyss below the waters.
Wi-o-lá-la	Cavernous banks.
Mon-dá-min	Corn-field.
Mín-win	Good (substantively).
Wos-sa-han-na	Bright river.
Tar-on-in-ó-ga	Locality of rocks and hills.
Ac-a-hé-la	Stream cutting the land.
Ti-gó-ma	Foam-water.
Min-ús-co	Good plants.
Min-iá-kee	Good land.
Tus-có-la	Warrior prairie.
O-wás-so	Glittering water.
Ko-ás-co	Wintry land.
Os′-co-da	Pebbly prairie.
I′-a-bee	Living waters.
Shó-min-ac	Grape-land.
Mil-la-kee	Fine prospect of lands.
Tal-la-gó-nia.	
I′-a-gan	Life-lake.
Mon-á-kee	Spirit-land.
O-peé-nac	Robin-land.
Os-sin′-sa	Stony-ground.
Os′-so-wa	White-waters.
Cal-a-mo	Honey-wood.
Zi-mó-ia	Eagle-wood.
Tal-lú-la	Leaping waters.
Os-sé-go	Beautiful view.
Leél-in-au	Delight of life.
Mis-có-da	Red-plain.
Yu-és-co.	
Al-lu-ó-la.	
Bis-có-da	Beautiful plain.
Che-on-on-da	Hills on hills.
Tig-ián-ac	Land of beautiful trees.

2. A DESCRIPTION OF THE ABORIGINAL AMERICAN NOMENCLATURE, WITH ITS ETYMOLOGY.

ALPHABETICALLY ARRANGED.

THE following examples of the poetry of Indian thought in the bestowal of names, are chiefly drawn from the departments of geography and history. Justice could hardly be done to the subject, without embracing the recondite topic of their wide-spread mythology; nor, indeed, could either branch of these inquiries be made at all complete, without extending it to the aboriginal biography. Savage nations, who live without books, and whose lore and knowledge are necessarily verbal, and exist in the memory of succeeding generations, are essentially swayed in their acts, and influenced in all things, by their distinguished men. Their names of places and scenes, and the effect their heroes have had on their history and power, can hardly be well examined, without, to some extent, entering into their biography and theories, mythological and theological. Their chiefs have not only been their war-captains and counsellors, and thus kept up, orally, the chain of their history; but it is known that they have ever been appealed to, by the respective nations, as furnishing examples of correct speaking and pronunciation. Indeed, the history of the Indians, as appears to have been thought by an eminent writer[1] on this topic, in the seventeenth century, can be but little more than the connected biographies of their eminent men.

The historical and geographical facts communicated with the names, may sometimes be thought to have been pursued too far, but could not well have been less; and to have remained silent on these heads, would have proved a manifest defect. For the wide area of South America, whose tribes come into this brotherhood of names, reliance has been had upon the work of De Alcedo.

It is believed that what is said in connection with the topics named, on the etymology and principles of the languages, will not be deemed out of place. The result of his researches is submitted by the author, with a feeling somewhat akin to that of literary paternity, which looks back with a kindly interest on years devoted to the object of his cares, satisfied that if the results come short of conceptions of excellence in a novel field of American literature, they cannot fail, he believes, from the opportunities had of observing the man, or the time and assiduity bestowed on the subject.

H. R. S.

WASHINGTON, *Sept.* 19, 1852.

---

[1] Colden.

ABORIGINAL NOMENCLATURE. A.

Abacaries, or **Abacactes**.—An Indian mission, seated on a lake of the same name, on the waters of the river Madeira, Brazil. The Abacaries are stationary. They are under the charge of the Carmelites, but retain many of the early peculiarities and modes of life of their nation. They cultivate maize, and subsist on fish and tropical fruits. The etymology of the name is not given.

Abacooche, or **Coosa**.—A river taking its rise in Georgia; it flows into the State of Alabama, after uniting with the Tallapoosa a few miles below Wetumpka, and forms the river Alabama. The first form of orthography is now obsolete. The word is supposed to be derived from Oscooche, one of the ancient bands of the Mucogulgee or Creek nation.

Aba-inka.—In Choctaw history this is the name of the Supreme Being. Spiritual existence is denoted by compound terms in all the American languages which have been examined. In the mode of the manifestation, power, and ubiquity of the Supreme Spirit and his satellites, a subtle doctrine of polytheism or spirit-craft is developed as a leading trait of the Indian mind. It is in the belief in a numerous class of inferior powers or spirits, who are manifestations of the Supreme Deity, that the system of guardian spirits or personal protectors rests. Each great group of languages has a distinct name for the Deity. The Iroquois tribes recognize him by the name of Neo or Owayneo; the Algonquins in the name Monedo; the Dacotahs in Waconda, and various tribes of the Appalachians in Aba-inka, &c. Each of these groups or tribes is taught by their priesthood to look to the Great Spirit through objects in the animal, mineral, or vegetable kingdoms, which are believed to be the temporary residences of sub-deities, possessing some portion of the Supreme Essence. But it is seen that while this belief in subordinate agencies exists, all addresses, hymns, or prayers made in their secret societies are directed exclusively to the great Spirit or Prime Deity.

The word inca, in this language, denotes father. The particle ab, in several of the American languages, appears to be derived from the verb to abide, as in the Algonquin abin, to abide. In the word Ala-ba-ma, the antepenultimate, agreeably to Milfort, has the same meaning of to abide or rest. In another class of words, as in Ab-in-oche, a child, in the Algonquin, it implies originative, or more correctly perhaps, according to Indian notions, generative power.

Abanes.—An unreclaimed tribe of Indians living in the plains north of the Orinoco, New Grenada. They are docile and of good disposition, but have shown no desire to quit their precarious habits of life and subsistence.

Abangoui.—A settlement of the Guarani nation of Indians, on the river Taquani, in Paraguay. These Indians were discovered in 1541, by Cabaca de Vaca, the celebrated survivor of the unfortunate expedition of Narvaez to Florida in 1527.

Abeicas, or Abecas.—A band of probably the Muscogee nation, living on the Tombigbee river, in 1750. They made knives of a very efficient kind from the hard wood of the cane.

Abenakis.—A tribe of Indians formerly inhabiting the territory which now comprises a part of the States of Maine and New Hampshire. They were divided into several sub-tribes, the best known of which are the Penobscots, Norridgewocks, and Ameriscoggins. Abenakis is a geographical term adopted by the French, denoting the area occupied by this tribe on the first settlement of Canada. Having at an early period received missionaries from Canada, they espoused the French interests in the long contest between that province and the British colonists in New England, and were engaged in hostilities with the latter until the conquest of Canada. A few years previous to this event, about 1754, all but the Penobscots withdrew into Canada. The population of the Penobscots is stated in the estimates accompanying the plan of western removal, submitted to Congress by President Monroe, in 1825, at 277, and the land owned by them at 92,160 acres.

The fullest vocabulary we possess of the Abenaki language, is furnished by the manuscripts of Father Rale, the zealous missionary among the Norridgewocks, who was killed fighting by their side. These papers were published a few years ago by the American Academy of Arts and Sciences, at Boston, under the direction of Mr. Pickering. To the valuable data thus furnished, Mr. Gallatin has added a vocabulary of the Penobscot dialect derived from other sources. He observes that the Abenaki language has great affinities with the dialects of the other two nations east of the St. Lawrence, namely, the Etchemins or Canoemen, and the Micmacs or Souriquois. He fixes their geographical limits, in A. D. 1600, between the Kennebec and Piscataqua; observing that Governor Sullivan had placed it definitely at Saco, a point which is conceived to be corroborated by the fact that the French writers speak of a tribe called Sokokies, whom they locate in that particular quarter. This last tribe is also mentioned by Colden, under the name of Sohokies, as living eastward of Boston; and if, as seems probable, the term Saco is derived from them, it is, perhaps, the strongest trace they have left in the geography of New Hampshire.

In 1754, the Norridgewocks suffered a severe and total defeat from the New England troops, losing their missionary Rale in the conflict; after which they migrated into Lower Canada. There are, at present, a missionary and a teacher among them, in the service of the American Board of Commissioners for Foreign Missions. By a report from the former, made in 1839, there are sixty persons returned as attending Protestant worship; of which number, twenty-four are church members; and twenty youths who attend a daily school.

Abenaki is a term of obvious import. Wa-bun-ong is a term denoting the east, literally called a place of light. By dropping the local inflection in ong, and adding the word aki, earth or land, the phrase Abenaki, Eastlander, is formed. The *w* is dropped by the French. They also, in early times, sometimes spelled the word Abenaquies, in the plural, and sometimes Oubenakis. The Iroquois, according to Colden, called them Owenungas, along with the Pennacooks and other North-East Indians. Some of the early English writers call them Tarrenteens, a term employed by Wood,[1] in contradistinction to the other New England tribes who did not use the letter *r*.

Abegiras. — An Indian mission situated on the river Curarai, thirty leagues from its mouth, and 240 from Quito. It was founded in 1565 by the Jesuits under Lorenzo Lucero.

Abernaquis. — A mode of orthography used by some writers in spelling Abenaquis, or Abenakies.

Abipones. — An unreclaimed nation of Indians who inhabit the south shore of the river Bermejo, in the province of Tecuman, Buenos Ayres. This nation is said, perhaps vaguely, to have formerly numbered 100,000 souls; but was, at the last accounts, about A. D. 1800, much reduced. They present some peculiar traits, living as nearly in a state of nature as possible. The men go entirely naked, subsisting themselves by hunting and fishing, and passing much of their time in idleness or war. The women wear little ornamented aprons made of skins, called *queyapi*. Physically, the people are well formed, of a lofty stature and bearing, robust, and good featured. They paint their bodies profusely, and take great pains to inspire hardihood. For this purpose they cut and scarify themselves from childhood; they esteem tiger's flesh one of the greatest dainties, believing its properties to infuse strength and valor. In war they are most cruel, sticking their captives on the top of high poles, where, exposed to the scorching rays of the sun, they are left to die the most horrid death.

They have no knowledge of God, of laws, or of policy, yet they believe in the immortality of the soul, and in a land of future bliss, where dancing and diversions shall prevail. Widows observe celibacy for a year, during which time they abstain from fish. The females occupy themselves in sewing hides or spinning rude fabrics. They conceal their husbands' knives during brawls, to prevent assassinations. They rear but two or three children, killing all above this number.

Abisca. — A wild and picturesque region of Peru, lying east of the Andes, noted from the earliest period for the number of barbarous tribes which occupy it. These tribes have successfully resisted all attempts to subjugate and civilize them. They withstood the power of the Inca Yupanqui to subdue them before the conquest. The same result attended the effort of Pedro de Andria in 1538.

Abitanis. — A mountain of Peru, which signifies, in the Queche tongue, ore of gold.

Abitegas.—A fierce, numerous, and warlike tribe of Indians in Peru, of the original Quetche stock, living in the province of Tarma, about sixty leagues east of the Andes. Without fixed residences, or habits of industry, they roam in quest of game and food, and are often in want and wretchedness.

---

[1] New England Memorial.

Abittibi. — A lake on the source of Moose river of Hudson's bay, in the country of the Montaignais, who are referred to in the original boundary-line established between that territory and Canada. It is in lat. 48° 35′.

Abo, or Abou. — This term is heard in Algonquin mythology, in the words Chiabo, Michabou, Manabosho. Wabose, in the various dialects of this language, signifies a hare, or rabbit. The Powhatans, in the time of Raleigh, called it Whapoos — a pronunciation in which the broad *o* takes the sound of *oo*, and the usual interchange between *b* and *p* is made. The Menomonees call the hare, wahpash; the Miamis, mawpunza. Other cognate tribes differ yet more considerably.

Whatever be the allegory concealed under these different pronunciations of the word in these names, it appears to possess no little importance in their mythology. The great hare, which seems plainly meant by it, appears to prefigure a great white spirit. In the term Kick-a-poo, we perceive the same term; the *b* being changed to *p*, and the broad *o* to *oo*, as in the Powhatanese. In this word the nominative syllable, kick, is from negick, an otter; and the inflection in apoo renders the meaning, otter's ghost. The true meaning of abo, or wabo, appears to be a white spirit. The syllable os, in wabos, appears to be derived from os, the primary word for father. Some of the western tribes of Algonquins say that Manabosho was the first son of the Great Spirit, or a monedo, who, once on a time, came down to the earth. To know what this white spirit, or white father, did in Algonquin mythology and cosmogony, it is only necessary to read the acts of Manabosho and Chiabo, which see.

Abraham, or Little Abraham. — A Mohawk rakowana, or chief, who succeeded King Hendric (so called) after the battle of Lake George, in 1755. He was of a mild and pacific character, and noted as a speaker and orator. He espoused the cause of the mother country on the breaking out of the American Revolution. He was present at the last pacific meeting of Mohawks with the American Commissioners, at Albany, in September, 1775, and drops from notice about that time. He was succeeded by Brant, the terrible enemy of American liberty.

Absarokas, or Crows.—A tribe of the Rocky Mountains. The language of the Crow nation of Indians embraces several tribes. Under the name of Minnetarees they live along the western and southern banks of the higher Missouri. The Upsarokas occupy the Yellow-Stone, extending westward to the foot and summits of the Rocky Mountains. The precise extent of their territory, divisions into tribes, and numbers, are points very imperfectly known, except through the casual and hasty notices of travellers. The Mandans are found, latterly, to have some slight analogies with the Upsarokas; also the Mattasoons or Ahahaways. The term Gros Ventres is but a synonym for Minnetarees.

Absecon. — A place on the New Jersey coast, south-west of Little Egg Harbor. Wa-bis-se, in the Chippewa language, means swan; the word is rendered local in *ing*, making it swan-place. The syllable *con*, is, apparently, an alteration of the plural particle *un*, rendering the phrase in this language, Place of Swans. The Sanhikans, who inhabited that part of the country at the era of its discovery, and to whom the name is probably due, had dialectic peculiarities in the great Algonquin family.

Abucees. — A settlement of Indians in the province of Quixos and Marcas, in Quito; in lat. 0° 36″ north, lon. 75° 22″ west.

Abwoin.—The name of the Dacotah or Sioux tribe, in the Chippewa and its cognate Algonquin languages. This name furnishes an instance of the bestowal of tribal name in derision or contempt, which is a very common practice among the various tribes. Abwa is a term meaning to roast or fry on a stick before a fire. By the inflection in *win*, the Chippewas mean to mark the barbarity of their western neighbors, by calling them roasters, or tormentors by fire. The word is sometimes improperly pronounced as if written Bwoin, the *a* short being dropped. By prefixing as-sin, a stone, to this term, with the connective *a*, the same tribe designate the well-known revolted Sioux band of the Assinabwoins of the Red River of the North.

Acalhua. — In Toltec chronology he was the father of Tezozomac. He arrived in the valley of Mexico in 1011.

Acalhuas. — An ancient name of the Mexicans. (Vide Chichimecs, also Aztecs.) This was the predominant race of Mexico at the opening of the 16th century. Government began to assume form and fixity in the Mexican valley, at a comparatively ancient era, if we are to follow the guidance of traditionary history. But the great Indian monarchy which Cortez first attacked in 1519, and overthrew in 1521, appears to have been recent, and ascends to no more remote point of history than about 1418. It was not till that period that the great caciques and independent princes of Tezcuco and Mexico began to emerge beyond the confines of the valley of Anahuac and made conquests. An indefinite period of some four centuries preceded it, during which we must locate the chief and most reliable traditions respecting the prior kingdoms of the Toltecs and their allies — nations who were not, however, of a radically different stock. It includes the ancient wars of the Tezcucons or Acalhuas, which resulted in triumph; and the wars with the Tecpanics, the Cholulans, the Chalcas, the Tlascallans, and the Huexotzincoes. Prior to this era of the more certain traditions of the Mexicans, lies the epoch of another monarchy, namely, the Olmec, to which is ascribed the erection of the great pyramid of Cholula.

Acamuchitlan. — A settlement of sixty Indian families, near Texopilco. They produce sugar, honey, maize, and vegetables.

Acantepec.— A settlement of ninety-two families, near Tlapa. The climate is cold and moist. They manufacture cotton stuffs.

Acari. — The site of the ruins of two Indian fortresses of a date prior to the conquest. In a beautiful valley, there is a lofty mountain composed of misshapen stones and sand, in which, at certain seasons of the year, is heard a loud and continued murmuring. The ruins are at its skirts. It is eight leagues from the city of Arequipa.

Acatepec. — There are six Indian settlements of this name at various points in Spanish America, the largest of which consists of 860 families, in the district of Tehuecan.

Acatl. — In Aztec history, astronomy, and mythology, this is a symbol for one of the four days named in the Mexican calendar. It signifies, primarily, in their vocabulary, a reed. The computation of time was founded, as a basis, on a period of four days. It required three periods of these primary quartads and one day, to make a tlalpilli, or month of thirteen days; and twenty tlalpilli for a year of 260 days. They were, evidently, in ignorance of the true length of the solar year when this was done. But when they became acquainted with it, they added the number of days to make 365, and 6 hours, and had a year eventually within a few minutes of the true time. The symbol of each day was deemed lucky or unlucky; and, in this respect, a species of astrology was appealed to; and no important matter was undertaken when the zodiacal sign was unpropitious.

Acatlan. — An Indian settlement of 850 families, in a fertile, mild, and well-watered district of country, abounding in fruits, flowers, and pulse; fifty-five leagues east-south-east of Mexico. Five other communities of the ancient semi-civilized race exist, at various localities, within the Mexican States.

Acaxee. — A nation of Indians in the province of Topia. They are represented to have been converted to the Catholic faith by the society of Jesuits, in 1602. They are docile and of good dispositions and abilities. One of their ancient customs consisted in bending the heads of their dead to their knees, and in this posture putting them in caves or under a rock, and, at the same time, depositing a quantity of food for their supposed journey to another state. They also exhibited a further coincidence with the customs of the northern Indians, by placing a bow and arrows with the body of the dead warrior for his defence. Should an Indian woman happen to die in child-bed, they put the surviving infant to death as having been the cause of its mother's decease. This tribe rebelled against the Spanish in 1612, under the influence of a native prophet, but they were subdued by the governor of the province, Don Francisco de Ordinola.

Acazingo.—A settlement of 700 Mexican Indians, in the district of Tepcaca.

Accocesaws.—A tribe of Indians in Texas, of erratic habits, whose principal location was formerly on the west side of the Colorado, about 200 miles south-west of Nacogdoches. While they lived near the bay of Mexico, they made use of fish, oysters, &c. Authors represent the country occupied or traversed by them as exceedingly fertile and beautiful, and abounding in deer of the finest and largest kind. Their language is said to be peculiar to themselves; they were expert in communicating ideas by the system of signs. About 1750, the Spanish had a mission among them, but removed it to Nacogdoches.

Accohanocs. — A division of the Virginia Indians of the Powhatanic group, who numbered forty in 1607. They lived on the Accohanoc river in eastern Virginia. The termination *hanoc*, as heard in Rappahannock, signifies a river.

Accomacks. — A tribe of the Powhatanic type of the Algonquin stock, who inhabited Virginia on its discovery. Mr. Jefferson states their number, in 1607, at eighty. In 1669, when the legislature of Virginia directed a census of the Indian population within her jurisdiction, there appears no notice of the tribe. They inhabited the area of Northampton county.

The particle *mack*, which, it is apprehended, was pronounced *mauk* by the Indians, denotes, in the Algonquin dialects, a trunk of a tree, post, or some organic columnar fixture. Aco is a phrase, in compound Chippewa words, denoting a limit; meaning, as far as, or at; as if we should say,— as far as the tree, or at the tree.

Accomentas. — A band or division of the Pawtucket Indians, according to Gookin, who inhabited the northerly part of Massachusetts in 1674.

Achafalaya. — The principal western outlet of the Mississippi river. It is a Choctaw word, meaning "the long river," from *hacha*, river, and *falaya*, long.

Achagua. — A nation of Indians of New Grenada, dwelling in the plains of Gazanare and Meta, and in the woods of the river Ele.

They are bold and dexterous hunters with the dart and spear; and in their contests with their enemies, they poison their weapons. They are fond of horses; and rub their bodies with oil, to make their hair shine. They go naked, except a small *azian* made of the fibres of the aloe. They anoint their children with a bituminous ointment at their birth, to prevent the growth of hair. The brows of females are also deprived of hair, and immediately rubbed with the juice of *jagua*, which renders them bald ever after. They are of a gentle disposition, but addicted to intoxication. The Jesuits formerly converted many of them to the Catholic faith, and formed them into settlements in 1661.

Achquanchicola. — The name of a creek in Pennsylvania, signifying, in the Delaware or Lenape language, the brush-net fishing creek.[1]

Achsissaghecs.—The Iroquois name, as given by Colden,[2] for the Mississagies.

Acquinoshionee. — The ancient name of the Iroquois for their confederacy. It signifies a league of tribes. It appears, from their traditions communicated to the Rev. Mr. Pyrlaus, that this term had not been in use above fifty years prior to the first settlement of the country.

Actopan. — A town and settlement of the Othomi Indians, situated twenty-three leagues north-north-east of Mexico. Its population is put by Spanish geographers at

---

[1] Heckewelder. — Trans. Am. Philos. Soc.

[2] History of the Five Nations.

2750 families, or about 4000 souls, in 1787. They raise sheep and goats. In this vicinity is found the singular bird called *zenzontla* by the Indians.

Acutitlan.—An Indian settlement of forty-five families, in the district of Tepuxilco, Mexico, who trade in sugar, honey, and maize. It is five leagues north-east of Zultepec, and a quarter of a league from Acamuchitlan.

Adaes.—A tribe of Indians formerly located about 40 miles from Natchitoches, Louisiana. Efforts were made by the Spanish, about 1798, to convert them to the Catholic faith, but without success. Their language is represented as having been difficult to speak, and diverse from all others. In 1812, they were reduced to 20 men, besides women and children. The name is sometimes spelled Adaize, or Adees.

Adario.—An able, brave, and politic chief, who was at the head of the Wyandot nation in the latter part of the 17th century, while they were located at Michilimackinac, on Lake Huron. He appears to have been a man possessed of a degree of energy, and decision of character, very uncommon among the Indian nations of his time. With a small force, he accomplished an enterprise which had, in its results, an important bearing on the war then existing between the Six Nations and Canada, and stimulated the former in their desperate attacks on the city of Montreal. To understand his position and character, a few allusions to the history of the period are necessary.

In 1687, the English of the province of New York resolved to avail themselves of a recent alliance between the two crowns, to attempt a participation in the fur-trade of the upper lakes. They persuaded the Iroquois to set free a number of Wyandot captives, to guide them through the lakes, and open an intercourse with their people. Owing to the high price and scarcity of goods, this plan was favored by Adario and his people, and also by the Ottawas and Potawatomies; but the enterprise failed. Major McGregory, who led the party, was intercepted by a large body of French from Mackinac, and the whole party captured, and their goods distributed gratuitously to the Indians. The lake Indians, who had, covertly, countenanced this attempt, were thrown back entirely on the French trade, and subjected to suspicions which made them uneasy in their councils, and anxious to do away with the suspicions entertained of their fidelity by the French. To this end, Adario marched a party of 100 men from Mackinac, against the Iroquois. Stopping at Fort Cadarackui to get some intelligence which might guide him, the commandant informed him that the governor of Canada, Denonville, was in hopes of concluding a peace with the Six Nations, and expected their ambassadors at Montreal in a few days. He therefore advised the chief to return. Did such a peace take place, Adario perceived that it would leave the Iroquois to push the war against his nation, which had already been driven from the banks of the St. Lawrence, to Lake Huron. He dissembled his fears, however, before the commandant, and left the fort, not for the purpose of returning home, but to waylay the Iroquois delegates, at a portage on the river where he knew they must pass. He did not wait over four or five days, when the deputies arrived, guarded by forty young warriors, who were all surprised, and either killed or taken prisoners. His next object was to shift the blame of the act on the governor of Canada; by whom, he told his prisoners, he had been informed of their intention to pass this way, and he was thus prepared to lie in wait for them. They were much surprised at this apparent act of perfidy, informing him, at the same time, that they were truly and indeed on a message of peace. Adario affected to grow mad with rage against Denonville, declaring that he would some time be revenged on him for making him a tool, in committing so horrid a treachery. Then looking steadfastly on the prisoners, among whom was Dekanefora, the head chief of the Onondaga tribe, "Go," said he, "my brothers, I untie your bonds, and send you home again, although our nations be at war. The French governor has made me commit so black an action, that I shall never be easy after it, until the Five Nations have taken full revenge." The ambassadors were so well persuaded of the perfect truth of his declarations, that they replied in the most friendly terms, and said the way was open to their concluding a peace between their respective tribes, at any time. He then dismissed his prisoners, with presents of arms, powder, and ball, keeping but a single man (an adopted Shawnee) to supply the place of the only man he had lost in the engagement. By one bold effort, he thus rekindled the fire of discord between the French and their enemies, at the moment it was about to expire, and laid the foundation of a peace with his own nation. Adario delivered his slave to the French, on reaching Mackinac; who, to keep up the old enmity between the Wyandots and the Five Nations, ordered him to be shot. On this, Adario called up an Iroquois prisoner who was a witness of this scene, and who had long been detained among them, and told him to escape to his own country, and give an account of the cruelty of the French, from whom it was not in his power to save a prisoner he had himself taken.

This increased the rage of the Five Nations to such a pitch, that when Monsieur Denonville sent a message to disown the act of Adario, they put no faith in it, but burned for revenge. Nor was it long before the French felt the effects of their rage. On the 26th July, 1688, they landed with 1200 men on the upper end of the island of Montreal, and carried destruction wherever they went. Houses were burnt, plantations sacked, and men, women, and children massacred. Above a thousand of the French inhabitants were killed, and twenty-six carried away prisoners, most of whom were burnt alive. In October of the same year, they renewed their incursion, sweeping over the lower part of the island as they had previously done the upper. The consequences of these inroads were most disastrous to the French, who were reduced to the lowest point of political despondency. They burnt their two vessels on Cadarackui lake, abandoned the fort, and returned to Montreal. The news spread far and wide among the Indians of the upper lakes, who, seeing the fortunes of the French on the wane, made treaties with the English, and thus opened the way for their merchandise into the lakes.

Such were the consequences of a single enterprise, shrewdly planned and resolutely executed. The fame of its author spread abroad, and he was everywhere regarded as a man of address, courage, and abilities. And it is from this time that the ancient feud between the Wyandots and their kindred, the Five Nations, began to cool. A few years after, they settled on the straits of Detroit, where they so long, and up to the close of the late war (1814), exercised a commanding influence among the lake tribes, as keepers of the general council-fire of the nations.

Adic, or **Adik.** — In Algonquin mythology, this is one of the transformations of the human species. The word denotes cervus sylvestris, or American reindeer. It is believed, by these Indians, that quadrupeds were first created, and had the priority of rule; hunting men as men now do them. It is fancied that these primary animals, in their original condition, as the bear, elk, deer, &c., fell under the power of necromancy or some spirit-power, by which they were transformed into four-footed beings; that the duration of this state of metamorphosis is limited to the age of the present world, or of the lives of individuals and quadrupeds respectively, and that the hunter must hereafter, in another state, encounter, in his original form and condition, the spirits of the animals whom he has killed in the chase. Hence the respect with which some of the more prominent animals, such as the bear, are treated.

It is believed by the Ojibwas, that animals in their present state possess their original soul and reasoning faculties, while they are deprived of speech, and that they will have a resurrection or second life as well as men. If this curious philosophy of the hunter-Indian be borne in mind, it will render some of his traits of character or thought less enigmatical than they appear to be without this theory. Adik was also a famous hunter of the North, who, having completed the human term of his existence, was changed into one of the Thunderers, and has his position in the southern part of the skies, where his voice is often recognised by the hunter as well as the learned meda. It is considered as a friendly warning omen to families.

Adikumaig. — We recognise the influence of the Indian mythology in all parts of their nomenclature. To the term *adik*, a deer, is subjoined *gumai*, water; the power of g, in the latter, falling before that of k in adik. It is rendered plural and animate thereby, and the whole term may be rendered deer-of-the-water. It is told that the Crane flew over the falls with a woman's skull on his back, which fell off when he was half-way over. The brains were dashed out, and converted into a new species of fish, to which the name is applied. There is always something actual and physical to found an Indian fancy on. It is perceived, on opening the white fish, that there are very small white masses, resembling roes or very minute shells, in an undigested state in the stomach, and the opinion is entertained that these substances have been swallowed by the fish in their search for food in the swift currents of water at the rapids.

Adirondacks.—The Iroquois name for their ancient enemies, the Algonquins. It is a term of derision, meaning, he eats trees—evidently from the straits to which waylaying parties of this nation were reduced in eating the bark of certain trees while watching the Iroquois war-path in western New York.

Adóles.—A settlement of Indians of the Saliva nation, in the province of Orinoco, which was broken up and destroyed by the Caribs in 1684.

Affagoula.—A small village of Indians, who were, in 1783, located near Point Coupé, in Louisiana.

Agaces.—A numerous and valiant nation of Indians, who were, at the period of the discovery, residents and masters of the banks of the Paraguay. They waged war against the Guavanies, and resisted the Spanish power till 1542, when they were conquered by De Vaca.

Agamentigus.—A mountain, eight miles from York harbor, Maine. Also, a river in the same vicinity.

Agamuntic.—A small lake in Maine, which has its outlet through the river Chaudiere.

Agariata.—An Iroquois chief, who, having gone on an embassy of peace about 1688, to Canada, the governor, Monsieur Coũrsel, being exasperated against him on account of bad faith and a violation of a treaty by his tribe, caused him to be hanged in the presence of his countrymen.

Agawams.—A band of Indians of the Pokonoket or Wampanoag tribe, who, during the earlier period of the settlement of New England, lived in parts of Sandwich, Ipswich, and Springfield, Massachusetts.

Aggódagada.—In Algonquin mythology, a renowned unipede giant, who took immense strides by his power of hopping. It is one of those names which the Indian mothers use to frighten and hush their children into silence, and is one of the prime ogres in their tales. Aggodagada had a beautiful daughter, who was celebrated for her long hair, which she was in the habit of combing on the top or roof of her father's lodge. From this refuge she was one day stolen, during her father's absence, by the great chief of the Buffaloes, who tossed her between his horns, and fled into his strongholds. Aggodagada, when he returned and found his daughter gone, pursued her with immense leaps, clearing rivers and valleys at a bound, till he reached the vicinity of the buffalo-king, where, according to the policy of his people, he concealed himself near a spring to which he knew his daughter would resort; and by waiting his opportunity, he thus rescued her from the power of her abductor. There is a song founded on this incident, yet existing in the oral traditions of the Ojibwas.

Agiocochook.—One of the aboriginal names for the White Mountains of New Hampshire. See also Waumbek.

Agnoles.—Unreclaimed Indians inhabiting the mountains north of the river Apure, New Grenada.

Agreskoe.—Charlevoix mentions this term as the god of war of the Iroquois.[1] He was invested with the highest martial qualities—such as the Greeks attributed to Mars. War was the chief glory of the northern Indians, and none had cultivated it more successfully—at least within the reach of history—than the Iroquois. It was, indeed, almost their only path to distinction.

Agrias.—A tribe of Indians of Santa Martha, north of the Cienegra Grande.

Aguilusco.—A settlement of the semi-civilized Indians of the province of Mehoican, Mexico; who subsist by sowing grain, cutting wood, making saddletrees, and manufacturing vessels of fine earthen-ware.

Ahahawa. — A tribe or band of Indians of the Absaroka or Crow nation, who, in 1805, numbered 200, and were located a few miles above the Mandans, on the river Missouri. They were at war with the Snake tribe.

Ahapopka.—A lake of Florida, having its outlet through the Oclawaha river of the St. John's.

Ahasimus. — An ancient Indian name for the present site of Jersey City, N. J.

Ahoma. — An Indian tribe of the river Zaque, of Cinaloa, in California. They are said to possess some traits of character superior to other tribes. They abhor polygamy, and hold virginity in the highest estimation. Girls wear a small sea-shell on their necks, until the day of their nuptials, when it is taken off by the bridegroom. This tribe weave cotton; they bewail their dead a year, night and morning; they are gentle and faithful.

Ahouandate. — One of the ancient names for the Wyandots.

Ahrendah-ronons. — The most north-easterly tribe of the Hurons, consisting, in 1624, of three villages. They were visited by Champlain. In 1649, on the conquest of the Huron country by the Iroquois, the remnant of this band fled down the Ottawa and St. Lawrence to Quebec, whither they were pursued by their unrelenting enemies, and the greater part of them surrendered, and were incorporated with their conquerors.[2]

Ahuacatlan. — The name of four separate settlements of the original Aztecs in Mexico, numbering in the aggregate 674 families, and about 3500 souls.

Aiches. — A settlement of Texas Indians, on the main road to Mexico.

Aijoues. — A tribe of Indians of ancient Louisiana, as it existed under the French government. It is believed to be identical with the Iowas of the present State of Iowa. For an account of their history and customs, see Migration of the Iowas, Section V., Vol. III., and Irvin and Hamilton's paper therewith.

Aingodon. — In Iroquois biography, an ancient sorcerer, living north of the great lakes, whose acts are described in Oneöta.

---

[1] Journal of a Visit to America.

[2] Lallemand.

Ais.—A mythological personage in Algonquin mythology. In one of his positions, on the banks of a river, he was transformed into a shell. This feat is, by a subsequent piece of necromancy, connected with the origin of the raccoon. By suffixing bun, the particle for the perfect-past tense, to this word, we have the existing name for a raccoon, aise-bun, in the Chippewa language; a term which expresses the sense, He was a shell.

This mode of denoting a condition resulting from action, suffering, or being, by a tensal inflection, bun, put to the noun, is one of the characterizing features of the language. It furnishes a very delicate mode of indicating the demise of an individual, without resorting to any of the numerous forms of the conjugation of the verb to die. It is simply enough, in these cases, to add the term bun to a person's name, as (to take a name from the Shawanoe which permits the inflection) Tecumseh-bun. The meaning now is, Tecumseh *was*, or, Tecumseh *is* no more.[1]

The myth of the transformation of the shell to a raccoon, has its best proof in the formation of the word. They tell a pathetic tale of the destruction of a numerous race of the crawfish by the raccoon; which killed all but two individuals, a young girl and her baby sister. Coming in despair to the water's brink, and bearing her little charge on her back, the girl addressed the destroyer of her relatives in piteous strains, yet evincing a noble indignation for his cruelties, and a high spirit of self-devotion.[2]

Aisemid, or Wadaisaisemid. — In Indian lodge-lore, the tiny little shell-man. The word signifies, He of the magic little shell. He was a fairy, who had received great powers from the fraternity of aerial spirits. He had the art of invisibility, when it suited him to exert it. He carried a curious little shell, as the symbol of his authority. He exerted his power, generally, for harmless or frolicsome purposes. He was often mischievous; but the injury done to men was, generally, of such a character as to show them the vanity or uncertainty of their reliances upon themselves.[3]

Aishkibugikozh. — Head chief of a large band of the Pillager Chippewas, living on the banks of Leech lake, upper Mississippi. (See Flat-mouth.) Bug, in this term, means flat; ozh, mouth. The personal designation aish, in this name, is changed, under a rule altering the initial vowel of words, stated at p. 391, Vol. II., from ish.

Aishkwaigonabee. — Chief of a band of Chippewas living on the northern shores of Grand Traverse bay, Lake Michigan. In 1840, they numbered 207 souls, of whom fifty-one were adult males, forty-nine females, and 107 children. They subsist by hunting and fishing, and raise corn, beans, and potatoes. The name signifies Feather of honor. The syllable aish, in this word, appears to be derived from ish, a personal term.

Ak, Ac, or Ack.—This syllable, in Algonquin words, is derived from the term, ackee, signifying earth, land, soil, or territorial area. In these senses the sound of the *a* is precisely the same as we hear it in the English word "action." Where it sinks to the broad *a*, the meaning is quite different. The scale of the sound of this vowel, in this language, is à, âh, âu; and the Indian ear is nice in distinguishing those modulations which affect the sense.

---

[1] Vide Vol. II., p. 384.

[2] Vide Algic Researches.

[3] Ibid., article Wa-dais-ais-e-mid.

Akosa.—Chief of a band of Chippewas, living on the peninsula of Grand Traverse bay, Lake Michigan. This band has a missionary and teacher in the service of the Presbyterian Board of Foreign Missions. They numbered 160 souls in 1840; of whom 37 were men, 42 women, and 89 children. The word kosa, in this term, denotes, "your father."

Alabamas. — A tribe of Indians who formerly lived on the banks of the Alabama river, which derives its name from them. They are of the original Muscogee stock, and speak that language with peculiarities. Part of them are incorporated with the present nation of Creeks. Part of them migrated West. In the year 1800, they occupied an eligible site on the banks of the Mississippi, whence they went up the valley of Red river, and subsequently into Texas. In 1840, a Texas paper represents them as living in two villages, along with the Coshattas, on the river Trinity, and numbering together 2000 souls. The name has been interpreted, "Here we rest." This band of Indians is said to have migrated from the West, and to have settled on the Alabama, after many wanderings. The name has been sometimes vaguely applied, at an early period, to the whole Creek nation.

Alachua.—An extensive prairie of Florida, seventy-five miles west of St. Augustine.

Alaska. — A long peninsula of Russian America, extending, in a crescent shape, from north lat. 55° to 60°. In Cook's Voyages, and by the poet Campbell, it is written Onalaska. Ala appears to be the same particle heard in Ala-ba-ma, which is Muscogee.

Alempigon. — Supposed to be the same as Nipegon, a bay and small lake on the north shore of Lake Superior. Nipegon appears to contain the roots — nibee, water, and gan, lake.

Algic. — An adjective term of modern use, derived from the word Algonquin. It was first employed in the pages of Oneöta.

Algonac. — A village pleasantly situated on the river St. Clair, Michigan. The name is derived from Algonquin, and ackee, land or earth.

Algonquin. — A very extensive and important group of Indian tribes in the United States and British America. By French writers the word is written Algonkin. Its etymology is discussed at page 305, etc., Vol. I.

Algonquinensis. — A generic term used in old gazetteers for the Algonquin tribes. The Latin adjective inflection, ensis, admitted a euphonious application to the word.

Aliatan. — A mode of spelling Itan.

Aliche. — The name of a band living near Natchitoches, in 1805, who spoke the Caddo language.

Alipkonck. — From ancient maps, this was the name of an Indian village, which, in 1659, stood on the east bank of the Hudson, between Sing Sing and the influx of the Croton river. It appears to be a derivative from two words in the ancient Mohican, uneeb, leaves (elm leaves), and ong, locality.

Allakaweah.—Local name of bands living on both banks of the Yellow Stone and the head of the Big Horn river, in 1805, when they were estimated at 2300 souls.

Allca. — An ancient and vigorous race of Peru, who long resisted Manco Capac in his attempts to found an Indian monarchy. In this they were favored by the rugged character of the country south of Cuzco, abounding in woods, mountains, and lakes.

Allegan. — The name of a county of Michigan. Its root is derivative from the name of an ancient Indian tribe; — i. e., the Alleghans. The termination in gan signifies a lake, in the Algonquin dialects.

Alleghany. — One of the leading mountain-chains of North America. A name which is supposed to be derived from an ancient and primitive nation who occupied a large area of the western parts of New York and Pennsylvania long prior to the first settlement of the English colonies. Colden writes the name of this tribe on the map accompanying the original edition of his History of the Five Nations, "Allegans." Mr. Heckewelder, in his papers delivered to the American Philosophical Society in 1819, writes the name of this tribe "Alligewi," which, if we truly apprehend the German system of orthography in which he wrote, gives the English sounds of Allegawi. The terms *any*, *ana*, *hana*, or *hannah*, as heard in the terminations of various existing Indian names, as Susquehannah, &c., mean a stream or river. By applying this inflection to the noun, we have very nearly the word above named. It is probable the river was first named, which popular usage may be supposed to have subsequently extended to this leading range of mountains of the United States, which the river partly penetrates and partly subtends.

Almouchico. — In the map of Novi Belgii, published at Amsterdam in 1659, this name is applied to the Atlantic coasts of Massachusetts and New Hampshire.

Altamaha. — The name of this prime river of Georgia is of uncertain etymology. It is not, apparently, from the wide-spread Muscogee stock, the termination aha having its affinities rather with the Quapaw, Omaha, and other western tribes.

Amacaches. — One of the original tribes of Brazil.

Amalistes. — A band of Algonquins numbering 500, who, in 1760, lived on the river St. Lawrence.

Amatakaules. — The Iroquois name for Washington. It means, "taker of towns," according to Benson.

Ambawtamoot. — A tribe of the Athapasca group of British North America, living north of 52° 30′. The term signifies "sheep."

Amboy. — A bay of New Jersey. We are informed, by Mr. Heckewelder, that this term is a derivative from Emboli, and signifies a place resembling a bottle or bowl.[1]

Amicways. — A tribe of Indians who are supposed to have inhabited the Manatouline chain of islands of Lake Huron at an ancient period. The word is clearly a derivative from Amik, a beaver.

Amik. — The name of one of the original families of the inhabitants of the earth, who, according to Chippewa mythology, was transformed into a beaver.

When the original members of the human race fell under the power of necromancy, and lost their animal shapes, Amik was changed to a beaver. Ad and Am, it appears, were the original names of two of these progenitors of the old race. The term ik, added to each word, is one that marks a large number of substances in the vegetable and mineral kingdoms. To the Indian mind, imbued as it is with the original meaning of the primary particles and root-forms of the languages, these names may excite reminiscences of the ancient history of western necromancy, and the doctrine of transmigration among this race, more full and definite than is generally supposed.

Amikiminis. — The Indian name of Beaver island of Lake Michigan. The English is a literal translation of the Chippewa word minnis, in that tongue signifying an island; and amik, beaver. The terms are made to coalesce by the connective *i*. The Indian population of this island in 1840 was 199; of whom thirty-nine were men, fifty-one women, and 109 children under fourteen.[2]

Amikouis. — The French term for the Dionondaties or Michigan Wyandots, as given by Colden.

Amikwuk. — A tribe of roving Indians, of the Athapasca stock, in the region of the Unjiga or Peace river, who are mentioned by Mackenzie under the name of the Beaver Indians. The inflection in wuk or wug is a common plural.

Amixocores. — A barbarous nation of Indians of Brazil, inhabiting the woods and mountains south of Rio Janeiro. Very little is known of them; they are represented as cruel and treacherous by the Portuguese, with whom they are continually at war.

Amola. — A district of Guaxalara in Mexico. It signifies, in the Indian tongue, the land of many trees.

Amonoosuck. — The Indian name of two rivers originating in the White Mountains of New Hampshire, which enter the Connecticut river at separate places, near upper and lower Coos. The termination in uck denotes locality.

Amoskeag. — Falls of the Merrimack river, sixteen miles below Concord, New Hampshire. Amusk, in the Merrimack dialect, signifies a beaver. Eag or eeg is an inflection for the plural of animate nouns, in the Algonquin dialects generally. It also signifies pond, marsh, or a small body of water or overflowed land.

Ampones. — A barbarous nation of Paraguay, who inhabit the forests south of the

---

[1] Proceedings Hist. Soc. Penn., Vol. I., No. 2, page 135.

[2] Report of the Acting Superintendent of Michigan.

Rio de la Plata. They are courageous, live on tropical fruits and smoked fish, find gold in the sands of their rivers, and have some traffic with the city of Conception.

Anacoana. — Queen of the Caribs at the era of the discovery by Columbus. She ruled on the island of Hayti, or St. Domingo. Mr. Irving represents her as being beautiful, and endowed with virtuous attractions; but the cruelty of the cold-blooded Ovando, led alone by the thirst of gold, did not spare her life. An Indian song in her praise is yet repeated on the island, if we have been correctly informed. See page 312, Vol. II.

Anahuac.—The ancient Indian name of the valley of Mexico. This valley is 18¼ leagues in length, and encompassed by high ranges of volcanic mountains. It embraces five lakes, which cover twenty-two square leagues.

Anasuguntakook.—A band or tribe of the Abenakies, living on the sources of the Androscoggin river, Maine.

Ancamares.—A tribe of warlike and robust Indians of Brazil, living on the Madeira river. In 1683, they attacked the Portuguese, and compelled them to give up the navigation of the river.

Andaigweos.—From ondaig, a crow, and weos, flesh; a noted Chippewa civil chief, of marked decision of character, and friendship to the whites. He lived at Chegoimegon, Lake Superior.

Andastes.—A tribe of Indians, who, at an early period, lived on the southern shore of Lake Erie. They are supposed to have been confederates of the Eries, and to have been conquered and expelled in the general result of their war with the Iroquois.

Aniez.—A name which the French bestowed upon the Mohawks; agreeably to Colden.

Annacioris.—One of the original tribes of Brazil.

Annamosing.—The name of the Chippewa and Ottowa tribes for the Fox islands of Lake Michigan. The word means "place of the little dog." It is, simply, the diminutive and local forms united, added to the elementary term for a dog.

Annimikeens.—Little Thunder; from animik and ens, the diminutive inflection. A hunter of a bold and enterprising character, of the mixed blood of Red river, in the North-west, who survived a conflict with a grizzly bear, in which he was dreadfully lacerated.

Annutteligo.—A hammock east of the Withlacooche river, referred to in the war with the Seminoles of Florida.

Anowara.—The Turtle. Mohawk. This, in the Iroquois theogony, was the original sustaining power and nucleus of matter, corresponding to the Chaos of the Greeks. It was a floating mass on the dark deep. The Iroquois give it the name of Anowara. It received from heaven the principle of animal fecundity in the mother of mankind, who dropped from above. Having been endowed with creative and expanding powers, animals and birds appeared in the forests, and increased so fast, and grew to such a monstrous size, that they got the mastery of men. The gods helped the descendants of the original woman. They were particularly indebted to Tarenyawagon, who slew monsters, and at last wounded the Great Spirit. This aroused his wrath and produced a flood.

Antalis.—A barbarous and warlike tribe of Chili, westward of the Coquimbo, who successfully opposed the progress of conquest of the Inca Yupanqui, beyond the banks of the river Maulé.

Apacahand.—A Delaware chief of note, commonly called White Eyes, of the era of the western Indian wars connected with the American revolution.

Apaches.—A wild and erratic tribe of Indians who rove over the country west of the Rio del Norte. In an official report of 1837, their numbers are put at 20,080, which is believed to be much over-estimated. They live a life of theft, robbery, and murder, and cultivate nothing. We know little of them with exactitude.

Apalacha.—A name, mentioned in Davies' History of the Caribbean Isles, for ancient Florida; including all North America lying north of the Gulf of Mexico, and the ranges of the Alleghanies, and the region west of them.

Apalaches (ancient).—A nation of Indians formerly inhabiting Florida. In 1539, De Soto found them to be numerous, politic, and valorous. They were clothed with the skins of wild beasts. They did not employ vegetable poisons to give virulence to the points of their arrows. They were temperate—drinking water only. They did not make war on slight pretences, but to repress attacks. They treated their prisoners with humanity. They were long-lived. They worshipped the sun, to which they sang hymns morning and evening. It is impossible to decide what was their number, or how far they extended their power over the great geographical area which has since been incorporated into the States of Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, and Louisiana. They are believed to have been of the lineage of the widely-spread nation who are known to us under the name of Muscogees, or Creeks.

Apalaches (modern).—A tribe of Red river, Louisiana, who were reduced, in 1800, to fourteen families, or about sixty souls. They were emigrants from Florida, and are believed to have been descendants of the people of this name found by De Soto. They came there at the same time the Bolixis did, and had continuously lived on Bayou Rapide. No nation has ever more fully secured the approbation of the French. No complaints have ever been made against them. They had their own peculiar language, but nevertheless spoke the Mobilian, or Chacta.

Apalachites.—A term which lies at the origin of, or is connected with, the preceding. It is used to denote a barbarous nation of Indians, formerly inhabiting Florida. What some narrators relate of their civil and military polity, buildings, ceremonies, &c., may be dismissed as rather constituting materials for inquiry and comparative examination, than as being entitled to the character of historic record. What were their absolute numbers, how far they extended their jurisdiction, or their war and hunting visits or fixed stations at an ancient era, into the wide geographical area of the West, it is impossible to decide. There are some traditions given by writers too circumstantial in their details to entitle them to much faith; such as that recorded under this name of Apalachites, and of the general name of Apalacha applied to this part of the continent, reaching far west and north-west. They were, according to this testimony, once a powerful people, and ruled and fought many battles in the great western valley extending to the Lakes.[1] Whether these are all to be rejected as pure fable, or may be founded on some slight general tradition of this tribe, cannot be decided. The event tallies, in one respect, with an equally vague and solitary one of the Lenapes, which refers to the Allegawee, and their defeat in the Ohio valley.

Apalocha.—See **Apalousa.** The word, with this form of orthography, occurs in the tables accompanying the original plan of Indian removal west of the Mississippi, communicated to Congress by Mr. Monroe, in 1825.

Apalousa.—A band or fraternity of Indians, who formerly lived fifteen miles west from the Apalousa church, in Louisiana. Their number was stated, in 1825, at forty-five. They raise cattle and hogs, and plant corn. They speak French, although they have a language of their own. They understand the Attakapa.

Apanenae.—See Pawnee.

Apaneo.—A settlement of 352 families of the civilized Indians of Textlan, in Mexico.

Apango.—A settlement containing 140 Indian families, in the district of Zayula, Mexico.

Apantos.—A barbarous nation of Indians in the province of Guayaquil. They inhabit the woods. They use bows and arrows in their wars, and a kind of short, heavy dart. They are at war with the Tupinambos. They go entirely naked, both men and women. The latter accompany their husbands in battle, and assist them by the labor of carrying and serving out their arrows. They live by the chase, and worship a demon, who, according to some, appears in hideous forms to their priests. Their priests pass for great sorcerers, and are skilful at banquets in mixing vegetable poisons in the cups of their guests.

Apaxco.—A settlement of the district of Tepetango, in Mexico, containing 145 Indian families.

Apazingau.—A mixed settlement of twenty-two Indian, and forty-eight mustee and mulatto families, at Tanzitaro, Mexico.

Aperas.—A barbarous nation of Indians, who inhabit the forests bordering the river Maranon. They are divided into various companies or bands, who wander through the woods, or meet for purposes of periodical labor. They occupy an unknown space of country of upwards of forty-six leagues, beyond the river Cayavi.

---

[1] Vide "History of the Caribby Islands," &c., by John Davies of Kidwelly: London, 4to. 1666.

Aperrues. — A barbarous nation of Indians of Paraguay, living to the north-east of the city of La Ascencion. These Indians are idle, proud, and restless, continually molesting other nations.

Apetuos. — A barbarous nation of Indians of the province of Puerto Seguro, in Brazil. They live in woods and in the vicinity of lakes and rivers, and subsist themselves by fishing. They are little known.

Apichiqui. — A barbarous nation of Indians of the province of Quito, Peru. They were subjugated by Huainacapac, the 13th Inca.

Apo (San Martin de). — A settlement of the district of Uruapan, Mexico, containing thirty Indian families.

Apokeepsing. — The ancient name of Poughkeepsie, on the river Hudson, Dutchess county, New York. It signifies a sheltered inlet, or covert for canoes, which was furnished by the entrance of the Wallkill into the Hudson. The term has its local form in ing.

Apomatox. — One of the main branches of the James river of Virginia.

Apoquinamink. — A tributary of the Delaware river, in Newcastle county, Delaware. The word has its local form in ink.

Apoquenemy. — A creek flowing into the Delaware river, from its right bank, in Newcastle county, in the State of Delaware. The three latter names are all derivatives from one generic philological family of Indian languages, the Algic, or Algonquin, or Lenape.

Apotos. — A barbarous tribe of the Amazon.

Apotons. — Believed to be the same as Apotos, which see.

Apoza. — A small Indian settlement of Trumpo, in the province of Las Amazonas.

Appa. — An Indian settlement of Mexico, containing 200 families. They plant maize, barley, and beans, and employ themselves exclusively in tillage.

Appaches. — See Apaches.

Appalache. — A term of uncertain etymology. One of the main sources of the Oconee river of Georgia.

Appalachian. — This term appears to have been derived from Appalacha, a name which was very early employed by the Spanish discoverers of Florida. They used an adjective form of it for the important Indian nation which occupied the Gulf shores of Florida, extending along the track of De Soto towards the mountains. Its etymology has not been investigated. Pah denotes a head, in the Sioux, Yankton, Quapaw, and Omaha languages. Apa, or appa, appears to signify a promontory or height, in some of the western tongues. The termination in ia, in the Algonquin, is expressive of admiration.

Appalachicolas. — A small tribe of the Muscogee stock, who formerly lived on the Appalachicola river of Florida. They concluded a treaty with the United States, at Fort Moultrie in Florida, on the 18th September, 1823; by which they ceded all their lands on the Appalachicola river, reserving four certain tracts. One of these reserves, the band owning it ceded on the 11th October, 1832, when their numbers had been reduced to 256 souls, in consideration of thirteen thousand dollars, and certain contingencies. They agreed to remove west to a country more suitable to their habits than the one at present occupied. The other three reservations they agreed to exchange for a tract to be patented by the President to individuals. By this treaty, certain payments are stipulated to be continued, and the general advantages of the treaty of Payne's Landing of the 9th of May, 1832, are secured to them.

In an official report in 1837, the numbers who had removed to the west of the Mississippi were 265. They comprised Tuski Hadjo's band. The numbers then remaining in Florida were 400. The number of acres ceded by them by the treaty of the 11th of October, 1832, was 5120, for which they received $2\frac{53}{100}$ dollars and a fraction per acre.

The Appalachicola Indians derive their name from a river which originates in the spurs of the Appalachian Mountains. This river bears the name of Chattahooche until its junction with the Flint river, eighty miles from the shores of the Gulf of Mexico. Bartram, in his travels, mentions an Indian town called Appalachicola, now within the limits of Georgia, which was sacred to peace. No captives were put to death or blood spilt in it. It was the place of the assemblage of deputies to consider proposals of peace. On the contrary, there was another town twelve miles higher up the Chattahooche river, possessed by the Cowetas, which was dedicated to blood, where the Miccos or war-chiefs assembled, and where prisoners were put to death. This idea of towns appropriated to particular purposes, civil and religious, was not uncommon in North America, and is to be regarded as denoting a general trait in the Indian mind.

Appalachee Bay. — The recipient of the Ocklockonnee, Wauoullah, and several minor streams on the Florida coast.

Appamattox.—See Apomatox.

Appanee. — A river of Canada, falling into Lake Ontario, in the bay of Quinte. Appanee means a slave captured in war, in the Chippewa language.

Appelousas.—See Apelousa. Dr. Sibley estimates them to be reduced to forty men, say 200 souls, in 1806. They were diminished to 45, nineteen years later.

Appolabamba.—A province of Peru, containing eight Indian settlements, or missions, numbering 3000 souls, of both sexes and all ages. They speak idioms of four different tongues: namely, the Uchupiamonas, Lecos, Yubamonas, and Poromonas. They cultivate yucas, rice, maize, camotes, mani, and plantains. They also cultivate cotton, which they make into clothing. They obtain some wax from the trunks of trees, where it is deposited by the native bees, and collect in the pampas or llanos of Isilamas, some cacao, which grows spontaneously.

Appomattox.—A river of Virginia. See **Apomatox.**

Apuala.—A settlement of eighty-five Indian families, in Yanquittan, Mexico, who cultivate fruit and raise seeds. In a settlement of the same name, of Tepozolula, "are found," says Alcedo, "two-headed eagles. One of these, which had been killed, was presented by the curate to the Marquis de Valero, viceroy of the kingdom, who sent it to Spain." This was, doubtless, a lusus natura, and a solitary example.

Apuias.—A barbarous nation of Indians of the province of Rio Janeiro, Brazil. They inhabit the loftiest mountains towards the west, and extend for many leagues north. They are cruel, treacherous, and continually at war with the other nations, and with the Portuguese. They sally out in the night, and commit ravages. The women, as well as the men, go naked. They are addicted to drunkenness and luxury, respecting neither age nor affinity the most close. They eat the flesh of their enemies, and treat them well, that they may get fat prior to their slaughter. They do not respect the chastity of their female captives. They have resisted all attempts of the missionaries to influence or teach them.

Apuyes.—Believed to be identical with **Apuias**, to which refer.

Aquatzagane.—An ancient band of Indians of the province of Pennsylvania.

Aquauachuques.—A band of Indians living, in 1659, in the central southern part of the present area of New Jersey, in the latitude of the Neversinks.

Aquedochton.—The outlet of Lake Winnipiseogee, in New Hampshire.

Aquidneck.—The name of the Narragansetts for Rhode Island. Roger Williams observes that he could never obtain the meaning of it from the natives. The present name is derived from the Dutch, who called it Roode Eylant (Red Island), from the autumnal color of its foliage.[1]

Aquiguires.—One of the barbarous Indian tribes of Brazil. With numbers and courage, they cling to their mountain fastnesses, and sally out to commit depredations. They are in the vicinity of Espiritu Santo.

Aquila.—Seventy Indian families of Mexico occupy this district, which bears the tutelary title of Santa Maria.

Aquinushionee.—The name of the confederated Iroquois, meaning, United People. See **Acquinoshionee.**

Aquismon.—A settlement of Valleo, Mexico, containing 240 Indian families.

Aracuyes.—One of the barbarous Indian tribes of Brazil, who are but little known. They live in the woods of Pernambuco. They feed, with rare zest, upon tigers. They go naked, and carry, suspended in their ears, lips, and prepuces, small tablets of an oval form, for ornament. They paint their entire bodies red and yellow. They attach feathers of the most beautiful colors to their heads, arms, and legs. Their weapons are bows and arrows, and heavy clubs.

---

[1] Coll. R. I. Hist. Soc., Vol. III.

Aracures.—Vide **Aracuyes.**

Aragiske. — The Iroquois name for Virginia.[1]

Arapahas. — A tribe living without the incorporated States and Territories of the United States, west of the Missouri and Arkansas, and east of the Rocky Mountains. They rove over the immense unexplored plains between the upper waters of the Red river and the Kanzas. There are no treaty stipulations between them and the United States. They subsist by hunting the buffalo, and make their clothes and lodges of dressed skins. We have no distinctive accounts of their manners and customs, traditions, or language. The fact that they are among the wild and barbarous tribes who inhabit that frontier, and are capable of being brought in hostility against it, has but recently excited attention. Official reports of their numbers, submitted among the subordinate documents to Congress, vary. In 1833, they are set down, along with the Kiowa, at 1400. In 1837, they appear, in the annual report by themselves, at 3000. (See **Arapahoes.**)

Arapahoes.—A wild and ferocious tribe, living on the high plains east of the Rocky Mountains, on the sources of the Canadian fork of the Arkansas, and the Nebraska or Platte river. They are estimated at 400 lodges, numbering 1600 souls, by Governor Bent, in 1846. The United States interpreter reported them, in 1852, in full, at 2500 to 3000 souls. For their language, see Vol. III., article Language. The term means the Pricked, or Tattoed People.

Arapes. — A barbarous tribe of Brazil.

Arari. — A river of the province of Para, in Brazil, the woody shores of which are inhabited by a barbarous tribe of Indians who are called Tapuyas.

Arasas. — A barbarous nation descended from the Semiques, in Guayama. They inhabit the woods between the rivers Tigre and Curaray.

Arauca. — A large river of New Grenada, which flows from the mountains of Bogota. Its shores are inhabited by the Chinatos, Jiraras, and other barbarous Indians.

Araucanos, or **Araucanians.**—An Indian nation of Chili, who rendered themselves distinguished by their valorous opposition to the Spaniards on their first invasion of their country in 1535. They defeated and killed the Spanish general Valdiora in 1551, and have maintained their independence up to the present time. They were not only the most noted of twelve separate nations who composed the government of the Inca in this division of the continent, but the most valorous and warlike nation, if we except, perhaps, the Iroquois, in the New World. For their brave defence, and the maintenance of so large a portion of their territory, they were indebted no doubt, in part, to their position in the Andes, from which they swept down, with persevering energy, over the plains, and thus effectually prevented a footing among them. The boundary of their territories is the river Bisbio. They have ever been the most implacable enemies of the Spanish. This spirit of hostility is, undoubtedly, to be traced to the rapacity and injustice of the conquerors of the sea-coast. Repeated attempts have been made to carry their conquests into the heights of the Andes, but with uniform want of success. The Araucanians have at all times manfully resisted, and carried the war back into the Spanish borders, laying waste towns and cities, carrying off cattle and plunder, and never sparing the life of a Spaniard. But they save the women and carry them off captive. This is the testimony of Spanish historians and geographers, who uniformly draw a barbarous picture of the race, and paint them as faithless and treacherous. Men cannot be traitors to a government to which they never submitted; but it is alleged that the Araucanians have broken the terms of their treaties. By these treaties, the first of which was not made until 1641, being 106 years after the first invasion by Almagro, it is seen, however, that they did not submit to the Spanish, but only established terms of intercourse. Difficulties having soon after occurred, in 1650 the peace was renewed. The Jesuits now advanced, and after inconceivable trouble and danger, formed five settlements among them; but these were scattered to the winds by the general outbreak, or rebellion as it is termed, in 1720. In 1724, this rupture was settled and the peace renewed, which lasted till 1767, when it was again broken.

---

[1] Colden.

It appears that the Araucanians have no hereditary head or monarchy. They are governed by elders or old men, who prepare their business in councils, and divide the civil from the military power, and appoint military leaders. The system, in this respect, assimilates to the government of our North American tribes, who are ruled by popular will through their chiefs or sachems. The Araucanians are the best disciplined warriors of tropical America. They muster large armies, consisting of horse as well as foot, each territorial division furnishing its complement and all acting under a general leader. The breed of horses was obtained from the Spanish, and they are said not to degenerate, but to equal the finest of the Andalusian. They are exceedingly expert riders, and the attack of the first rank of these is resistless. They have some swords and fire-arms, but their chief reliance is on a long and thick lance, which they wield with dexterity.

In person the Araucanians are robust and handsome, and of liberal disposition, but addicted to sensuality and the use of spirits; nevertheless, both men and women live honestly, after the fashion of their nation. Their numbers, which are unknown to the Spanish authorities, are considerable. The Spanish have built forts on the frontiers, defended with cannon, where it is customary to hold a kind of fair once a year, at which the native chiefs exchange civilities and renew friendship with the commanders. These Indians raise and manufacture wool, which, together with horses, constitute objects of traffic. They take in exchange wine, leather, and earthen-ware.

Their territory yields the quila cane, of which they make their lances. It also yields a shrub producing honey, and the boighe tree, which is considered sacred, and from time immemorial has been dedicated to peace. There are rich mines of gold in the country between the river Bisbio and Chiloe, which were formerly worked and yielded immense sums, but they have been closed since the expulsion of the Spaniards from that district. This warlike people have prohibited these being opened, under the penalty of death.

ARBRE CROCHE, or WAGANUKIZZI.—A settlement of Ottawa Indians, on Little Traverse bay, on the east shore of Lake Michigan, about forty miles south of Michilimackinac. It is the head settlement of the Ottowa nation; and is divided into five villages or sub-settlements, called by separate names, and under the government of separate ogimas, or chiefs. The population of these in 1840, as shown by the pay-rolls, was 1032; of whom 205 were men, 237 women, and 590 children. As in all our Indian population, the females are in excess, and the number of children disproportionally small; but the latter are here shown to be greater than is common to the wild and erratic bands, in which there is an average of not more than two children to every woman. Of these numbers, 299 lived at L'Arbre Croche proper; 147 at the village of the Cross; 84 at Middle village; 383 at the town on the head of Little Traverse bay; and 119 at the Wing's village. The first settlement of the Ottawas at this place appears to have been about 1650; and subsequently to the defeat of the Wyandots and Algonquins, by the Iroquois, between Montreal and Quebec. In these transactions they appear under the name of Atawabas.

They are mostly members of the Catholic church, under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of Detroit. They are, of late years, temperate, and of industrious habits. They cultivate maize, potatoes, beans, and pumpkins. They possess some cattle, and a few horses. They raise hogs and poultry. They manufacture, in the spring season, large quantities of sugar from the sap of the rock-maple. They participate in the fisheries, in the proper season; and still pay some attention, though but little, to the chase. They live in substantial houses of squared logs, furnished with good roofs, floors, doors, chimneys, and glass windows. In the best houses are to be seen cast-iron stoves, obtained by purchase at Michilimackinac, together with chairs, small looking-glasses, and bedsteads. To these are to be added, plain earthen-ware and cutlery, and tables, chests, and benches; the three latter articles being chiefly of their own manufacture. The men dress in woollen goods, consisting of the French capote, with either leggins or pantaloons of the same material. Leather shoes have, to some extent, superseded moccasins; and hats are uniformly worn. Years have now elapsed since feathers or paints have appeared as articles of personal decoration; and the drum of the meda, the wabeno and jossakeed, has entirely ceased to be heard in their villages. The annuities they draw from the United States, in silver coin, in provisions, salt, and tobacco, and in other articles, are considerable, and more than compensate for the loss of the small furred animals, on the sale of whose skins they relied, in the early days of their history. This settlement is called by them, Waganukizzi, or the Crotched Tree.

ARDAS.—A barbarous nation of Indians, who inhabit the forest country between the rivers Napo and Marañon, in the province of Quijos, in Quito.

AREGUOY.—A settlement of Indians of Paraguay, situated on a small river, four leagues from Ascension.

ARENAC.—A county of the State of Michigan, situated on the west cape of Sagenaw bay, south of the Thunder Bay Islands, in Lake Huron. The word is a compound of the Latin arena, and the Indian akee, earth or land.

ARENTAPAQUA.—A settlement of Valladolid, Mexico, containing twenty-four families.

AREQUIPA.—A term which signifies, in the Peruvian language, "It is well, remain." It is the name of the capital of a large and important province of Peru. It is the reply of one of the Incas, to a request made by one of the captains of the victorious Spanish army, who was attracted by the beauty of the country. The city was founded by the order of Pizarro, in 1536. It is twenty leagues from the sea, near the foot of the snow-clad summits of Omate, which, at the time of the conquest, emitted fire.

ARESKOUI.—The Iroquois god of war, according to Charlevoix, from whom we quote. "It is not a little surprising," he says, "that the Greek word Αρης, which is Mars in all those countries which have followed the theology of Homer, should be the apparent root of this term in the Iroquois and Huron languages."

He observes that Areskoui is not only the Mars of these people, but likewise the sovereign creator and master of the world; and that they invoke him as if his greatest attribute was that of being the god of armies. He adds, that his name is the war-cry before battle, and that the warriors often repeat it on the war-path, as if to inspire them with courage. (Vide AGRESCOE.)

ARICARETES.—A barbarous nation of Indians of Guayama, which is divided into two tribes; one of which is oriental, and the other occidental. They inhabit the vicinity of the river Aricari. They are docile and pacific. They are reduced in population.

ARICORIS, or ARICOREES.—An unreclaimed nation of Indians of Guayama. They are barbarous and erratic; low-spirited, but revengeful. They go naked, both men and women. They believe in the immortality of the soul, and make great feasts and honors for their dead. They sometimes kill a slave, that he may accompany and serve his master in the other world. They worship the sun and moon. They regard the latter as their mother, and look on both as animated bodies. They count the planets and fixed stars to be their daughters, and the lesser ones their servants. Their priests and sorcerers make them believe that they hold converse with the Great Spirit, which they call Vatipa. Vatipa is the devil, and is said to appear to them in various forms.

This nation traverse the forests in troops, carrying with them their wives and children. They subsist by the chase, and by tropical fruits. Their numbers increase astonishingly, not only because they practise polygamy, but from the general belief that, in begetting many children, they render themselves most acceptable to Vatipa. They are happy, also, in the idea that by this means they shall become great and powerful, and overcome their enemies.

Ario.—A small settlement in the district of Xacona, in Mexico, containing 22 Indian families, who traffic in skins, fruits, and seeds.

Arismendi (Santiago de).—A settlement of Zultepec, in Mexico, containing 15 Indian families.

Arkansas, anciently **Akansa** and **Kansa.**—One of the United States of America, deriving its name from one of the great tributaries of the Mississippi, which, originating in the Rocky Mountains, passes through it. There is a species of the acacia found in this part of the continent, from which the native inhabitants, on the arrival of the French, made their bows. It is a solid, tenacious wood, of a light yellow color. This peculiarity is thought to have led to the distinctive appellation of Arc, or Bow Indians. They were of the Kanza race. The word is variously written in old authorities. The Quapaws, the Caddoes, and the Osages, are to be regarded as the original possessors of Arkansas. De Soto speaks of the province of "Cayas," north of the Arkansas. The tribe called Arkansas by the French, believed the residence of their supreme deity to be in some animal, who might be feeding in the fields or forests. The perpetuity of the deity was kept up, by transmigration, either into a similar, or some other animal. They are represented as living in three villages: the first called Tawanima, the second Oufotu, and the third Ocapa. Their population did not exceed 100 men, besides women and children. From their location, about twelve miles above the old military post, they were in the position of the Quapaws. They are represented as raising maize for sale, as honest and friendly, and speaking the Osage language. Where the manners, customs, and languages had a general agreement, as was the case with the sub-stocks of lower Arkansas, in the middle of the 17th century, we cannot attach much weight to philological conclusions, necessarily thrown out a good deal at hap-hazard, by persons engaged in questions of another kind.

Armeomecks.—A location of Indians on the sources of the Susquehannah, in 1659.

Armewamux.—A location of Indians, in 1659, south of the Dutch fort of Nassau, on the Delaware.

Armiros.—A wild nation of Indians, of Paraguay, who are descendants of the Guaranies. They inhabit a fertile and pleasant country, and were first discovered by De Vaca, in 1541.

Armouchiquois.—A band of the Abenaki stock, formerly on the St. John's river of New Brunswick. The name is the word Almouchico, in the French pronunciation and orthography, which in 1665 had, according to the Amsterdam map, a wide application along the New England coasts.

Aroostook. — A river of Maine, in north latitude about 46° 20′, which flows into the St. John's river of New Brunswick. The terminations in ook, ok, uk, ug, ik, and ig, denote the plural number in various dialects and languages of the Algonquin group.

Arouaques.—A fierce and powerful nation of Indians, of the coast of Guayama, from whom the Caribs, or Caribbeans, are believed to have been descended.

Arrapahas. — See **Arapahas.**

Arrenamuse.—The name of a tribe formerly living on the St. Antonio river, Texas.

Arrianicosies. — A barbarous Indian nation, of Paraguay, living near the margin of the Rio de la Plata. They are much reduced in numbers. But little is, however, known of them.

Aryes. — A barbarous tribe of Brazil.

Ascutney. — A mountain of Vermont, which is 1732 feet above the Connecticut river, and 2031 above the sea.

Ascondido Rio.—A name bestowed by the Spanish on the Mississippi river, prior to La Salle's last voyage.

Ashuelot. — A river of New Hampshire, which traverses the county of Cheshire, and enters the Connecticut.

Asiganoc.—An Ottawa of some note, of the settlement of L'Arbre Croche, who led a part of that tribe to migrate to the Manatouline chain of islands in Canada, in 1822.

Assabet. — A small tributary of the Merrimack, in Grafton, New Hampshire.

Assama.—A gift from the Great Spirit to the Indian. There is an old tradition, of which Franklin takes notice, in the limited number of his imaginative pieces, that the gift was sent by a beautiful female who descended from the sky, and rested on the top of the Alleghanies. She carried in one hand a stalk of the flowering assama, or tobacco plant; and in the other, the gift of the zea maize, or Indian corn. This allegory is, however, variously related by the different tribes.

Assaragoa. — The official name adopted by the Six Nations, in their councils and addresses, for the governor of Virginia.

Assareawa. — A general term, in the Mohawk, for the country lying north of the banks of the Mohawk river.

Assawa Lake.—The source of the Plantagenian fork of the Mississippi, reached and discovered by the writer, July 13th, 1832. (Vide Expedition to Itasca Lake: New York, Harper and Brothers, 1834.) The name signifies, in the Chippewa language, perch, this species of fish being found in it.

Assinaboina.—A name once bestowed upon the country of Red River and Hudson's Bay, in the early period of the Selkirk difficulties.

Assinaboin. — A large river flowing into Lake Winnepec of Hudson's Bay. It consists of two main branches; the eastern, called Red river, rising in Red lake, north of the source of the Mississippi, and the western rising in the Dacotah country, north of the head of the St. Peters. The latter bears the name of the Assinaboin, which is dropped by some and retained by others, after the junction of the Red river fork. Mackenzie is among those who, properly, it is thought, favor its retention.

Assinaboins.—A separate branch of the Dacotah, or Sioux nation, who are settled on the plains west of Red river of Hudson's Bay. The name is Ojibwa. It is composed from ossin, a stone, and bwoin, a Dacotah. The latter being a derivative from the term for a roasting-spit, the first member of the present word converts it into stone-roasters, that is to say, roasters by hot stones; a practice in their forest cookery. They are usually called, with less discriminative attention to the etymology, Stone-Sioux; the word Sioux being the French term for Dacotah. They are called, by the main body of the Dacotahs themselves, from whom they broke off at an early time, Hoha, or Rebels. Their own name for themselves, is not known. The word Assinaboin is variously spelled, by different writers; the chief variations consisting of the substitution of *p* for *b*, and *l* for *n*.

The Assinaboins separated from the Dacotahs at a time unknown. They are mentioned in 1669 by Father Marquette, writing from the ancient mission of Chegoimegon, on Lake Superior. Mackenzie, in his account of the fur trade, locates them where the most recent notices still leave them — on the Assinaboin or Red river, and the open plains west of its recipient, Lake Winnipec. They speak a dialect of the Dacotah. They are at peace with the Chippewas and the Knisteneaux. They occupy a position next to the latter, on the great plains covered with herbage and a few trees, which extend west to the banks of the Missouri. On these grass plains they hunt the buffalo and trap wolves. The flesh of the former, which is not wanted for immediate use, they make into pemmican; which is done by pounding the jerked and dried meat, and mixing it with fat. In this state, it is closely packed in bags of skin. Their clothing is made from buffalo-skins. Wolf's flesh they never eat, but procure a tallow from their fat, which is useful in dressing the skins. Their traffic consists of dressed buffalo-skins, and pemmican, which they exchange for arms, ammunition, cutlery, tobacco, and ardent spirits. They do not hunt the beaver, and consequently do not trench on the hunting-grounds of the Chippewas, Algonquins, and Knisteneaux near them, which tends to preserve their alliance.

Mackenzie estimates their number at 500 families. Lewis and Clark estimate them at 1600 warriors. In Major Long's Second Expedition, they are reported, on hasty data, at 28,000. Mr. Gallatin, in his Synopsis of the Indian Tribes of North America, estimates them with more precision, in 1836, at 6000 souls. The 49th degree of north latitude, extended from the Lake of the Woods, cuts their hunting-grounds, leaving, it is believed, the larger part of the nation within the boundaries of Hudson's Bay.

Assonet. — The ancient Indian name of the river Taunton, which constitutes a boundary, in part, between the States of Massachusetts and Rhode Island. It is noted as the locality of a rock containing an ancient inscription in picture-writing. Some letters or figures resembling the ancient Saxon forms of the Roman alphabet, have led to the supposition, (which has, however, but little foundation,) that the entire inscription is due to Scandinavian adventurers who visited the continent prior to Columbus.

ASSUNCION.—A settlement of the district of Tlapacoya, in New Spain, containing fifteen Indian families, who cultivate grain, seeds, and fruit, and chop wood. Another community of the same name, in the district of Izucar, 147 families; another, in Tetelmacingo, nineteen families.

ASTORENGA.—A Mohawk name for the Little Falls of the Mohawk river. It is said to denote compressed channel.

ATACAMA.—A province of Peru, which has, to the south of it, an unpeopled waste, the mountains of which abound in ostriches and vicunas. These are hunted by the Indians in a very ingenious manner. They fix a number of poles, about two yards long, in a narrow place, so as to block up the passage. Attached to each is a thread bearing a piece of colored wool, which is so light as to be moved about by the wind. The hunters then beat up the vicinity to drive the vicunas into the valleys, where, as soon as they arrive, they are so completely frightened at the bits of wool that the whole troop remains prisoners. In this position they, with great dexterity, fling a stone attached to a cord so as to entangle their legs. If a huanco is found among the number, all are lost, for he immediately dashes forward through the slight barrier and is followed by the rest. The natives eat the flesh of these animals, which is tender and well-tasted, and they sell the skins. This desert and dry region also yields the bezoar-stone. There are mines of gold and copper in the mountains, and various crystals, together with jasper, talc, and alum.

ATACO.—A settlement of New Grenada, of a hot temperature, yielding maize, yucas, plantain, and neat cattle, and also gold, which is obtained by washing. The native Indians, who muster 100, pay their tribute in this article. They are wretchedly poor and intemperate.

ATACHEO.—A settlement of Tlaxacala, in Mexico, containing twenty-six Indian families.

ATAHENTSIC.—The woman of heaven. To see her, one of the original six men ascended into heaven. The master of heaven, having discovered an amour, cast her to the earth. She was received on the back of a turtle, which rapidly expanded into the present shape of the earth. She had twins, one of whom killed the other. She also had a daughter, who bore Jouskeka and Thdouitsaron. The elder killed the younger, and soon after, his grandmother, Atahentsic, resigned the government of the world to him.

The Iroquois speak of Atahentsic as the same as the moon, and of Jouskeka as identical with the sun. See JOUSKEKA.

Atapalo. — A settlement of Tinguindin, in Mexico, containing twenty-three Indian families, who are well skilled in sowing wheat and maize, and the cultivation of many fruits of that region.

Ataronch-ronons. — One of the five sub-tribes of the Wyandots or Hurons, in 1624, when they lived on the north shore of Lake Huron. It then consisted of four villages.

Atasis. — An ancient band of Indians, who lived on the river Apalache in Georgia.

Atawawas.—A people who settled on the east shore of Lake Michigan, about 1620. See Ottawas.

Atchipia. — A term used by the Miami nation to denote the soul. It is said to signify a flying phantom. It is a term in which we perceive the Chippewa phrase *jebi*, (written *chipi*,) meaning a ghost.

Atemaxique. — One hundred and twelve Indian families, living in a cold temperature of the district of Amaqueca, Mexico, who trade in the bark of trees.

Atempa. — Two hundred and forty-eight families of Tenzitlan, Mexico.

Atengo (San Antonio de). — A settlement of Tezcuco, Mexico, containing forty-three Indian families; another, with the dedicatory title of Santa Maria, in the district of Mizquiaguala, with eighteen families; another, with the patronymic title of San Mateo, containing 280 families; another, in Chilapa, with seventy families; another, in Antlan, of thirty-three families.

Atezcapo (San Juan de). — A settlement in the district of San Francisco del Valleo, Mexico, containing fifty Indian families. They are situated on a plain.

Athapasca, or Arabasca. — A lake flowing north, through an outlet of the same name, into Slave lake and Mackenzie's river. It is called the Lake of the Hills. The Indian tribes and nations who inhabit this part of the continent, speak dialects of a generic language different from all others in the parallels of latitude south of them. For these tribes Mr. Gallatin has proposed, in his Synopsis of the Indian Tribes, the name of Athapasca. The limit to which this term applies reaches "from the mouth of the Churchill or Missinippi river, in latitude 59° 60′, to its source in Beaver river, (latitude about 54°,) thence along the ridge which separates the north branch of the river Saskatchewan from that of the Athapasca or Elk river, to the Rocky Mountains, and thence west till within about 100 miles of the Pacific Ocean, in latitude 52° 30′." All the tribes north of this line, he observes, so far as is known, with but one exception, belong to one family and speak kindred languages. The geography upon which this boundary is established, is not, he remarks, in all its details precisely correct, but rather that which existed eighty years ago, before the Knistenos had encroached on the territory of the Athapasca tribes. Much of this region, extending to the Polar Sea, is but imperfectly explored. The principal tribes falling under this denomination, are the following: —

1. Chippewyans, latitude 60° to 65°; longitude 100° to 110° west. They call themselves, according to Captain Franklin, Saw-cesaw-dinneh, or Rising-sun men.
2. Copper-mine Indians, or Tansawhot-dinneh, that is, Birch-rind men.
3. The Dog-ribs, or Thlingeha-dinneh.
4. The Edshawtawoots, or Strong-bows.
5. The Ambawtawoots, or Sheep Indians.
6. The Kancho, or Hare Indians.
7. The Nohannies.
8. The Tsillaw-awdoot, or Brushwoods.
9. The Beaver and Rocky Mountain Indians of the Unjiga or Peace river.
10. The Sussees, or Sursees.
11. The Tacullies.
12. The Sicaunies.
13. The Natootetains.

Several other names, believed to appertain to local bands, are mentioned by Mackenzie. The Degothees or Loucheux, called Quarrellers by the English, speak a different language. It is remarked, by the same authority, that it appears to have affinities with the Kinai. It has also some coincidences of words with the Esquimaux.

Atillan. — An Indian settlement of the district of Villalta, in Mexico, containing 171 families.

Atira.—Indians of Paraguay, in south latitude 25° 16′.

Atitlagua.—A large settlement of Othomie Indians, of Tetepango, Mexico. They are stated at 200 families, besides 30 families of Spanish and mulattoes. They grow wheat, maize, seeds, and fruits; and raise many cattle.

Atl. — The name of one of the nine lords of the night, in the Mexican calendar. The word means water. The fancied influence of these nocturnal lords, or astrological companions of the night, upon the Aztec mind, was of a peculiar character.

Atlaca (San Juan de). — A settlement in the district of Orizaba, in Mexico, of a cold temperature, of 28 families, whose trade consists in fattening herds of swine.

Atlaco. — A settlement of Zaluya, Mexico, on the top of a hill, in a cold temperature, containing 60 Indian families.

Atlachichilco (San Augustin de). — A settlement of the district of Guaicocotla, in Mexico, containing 400 Indian families, who are employed in the cultivation of the soil.

Atlahuilco (San Martin de).—A settlement of Thequilan, Mexico, containing 110 Indian families, who trade in seeds, tobacco, small cattle, and swine.

Atlamajacinco. — A settlement of the district of Adlistac, containing 42 Indian families, whose trade consists in the barter of some maize and fruit.

Atlamaxaczingo (Del Monte). — A settlement of Tlapa, Mexico, containing 85 Indian families.

Atlamazuque.—A settlement in the preceding district, of 45 families.

Atlamulco (Santa Maria de).—A settlement of the district of Metepec, Mexico, containing 1235 families.

Atlapulco (San Pedro de).—A settlement in the preceding district, containing 290 Indian families.

Atlatlauca.—An alcadia-mayor of Mexico, in the province and bishopric of Oaxaca, which contains 78 families of Zultepacas Indians. Another settlement of the same name, with the dedicatory title of San Esteven, has 108 Indian families, who cut boards and planks, which, with seeds and some cotton manufactures, constitute their commerce. Another settlement in the district of Tenango del Valle, contains 165 families.

Atlatongo (Santiago de).—A settlement of Tezcoca, Mexico, containing 111 Indian families, and four of Spaniards.

Atliacan.—A settlement of Textlan, Mexico, containing 180 Indian families.

Atlistac.—A settlement of Tlapa, Mexico, with 66 Indian families, whose commerce consists in cotton, which the district yields in abundance. These are fabricated into cloths, blankets, huapiles, and other vestments.

Atnah.—An Indian nation living on the North or Clark's branch of the Columbia river.

Atotarho.—The first presiding chief or ruler of the Iroquois confederacy. He was renowned for his wisdom, valor, and secret powers of necromancy. The reptiles were deemed to be at his command. The Mohawk delegates, who had been sent in search of him, it is affirmed, found him seated in a swamp, calmly smoking his pipe. His garment was covered with rattlesnakes, whose hissing heads protected him in every direction. They offered him the government; the ruling magistrate of which has ever since been called the Atotarho. According to Cusic, there have been thirteen Atotarhoes since the confederacy was formed. (See Todadaho.)

Atokas.—A small river of New France, now Canada, running into Lake Superior.

Atolua.—A settlement of Teazitlan, Mexico, with 47 Indian families.

Atotonilcao.—A settlement of Tulanzingo, Mexico, containing 265 Indian families. Another in the district of Atitalaquia, containing 150 Indian families. Another in Amaqueca, with 120 families. There is also a large Indian population, in a settlement of this name, in the district of La Barca, New Gallicia.

Atoyaque.—A settlement in the district of Zayula, Mexico, having 150 Indian families. Another in Tepozcolula, having 29 families. Another in Zacatula, having 175 families. Another in Zicayan, having 172 families.

Atoyaquillo.—A settlement of Tepozcolula, Mexico, with 70 Indian families.

Atrisco.—A district of Mexico, which contains 1250 families of Mexican Indians. They are expert in the cultivation of cotton, which they manufacture into garments, and are very industrious.

Attacapas. — A tribe of Indians of Louisiana who are said to be descended from the Charibs. This is certain, that they were a barbarous people, whom all authorities agree in calling cannibals. The name of Attacapa is interpreted to mean man-eaters. It is derived, as Mr. Gallatin has observed, from "notta," a person, and "uppa," to eat. The influence of the French, who settled this part of America, upon their manners and customs, has been very favorable. No such custom has been known among them for a very long period. They have, however, dwindled away to a small number. About A. D. 1700, they were reduced to fifty men, who lived about twenty-five miles west of Attakapa church, where they raised corn and had cattle and hogs. To this number were to be added about thirty Tunicas and Hamas, who had intermarried in their nation. Their language, which is distinct, is also spoken by the Charankouas, who, according to Dr. Sibley, live on the sea-shore, probably, as Mr. Gallatin adds, without the boundaries of the United States.

Attapulgas. — Seminoles, numbering 220, who, in 1820, lived on a branch of the Ololikana, called Little river.

Attikamigues. — A band of Algonquin lineage, of the north parts of Canada, who were carried off by a pestilence in 1670.

Attignaouentan. — A sub-tribe of the Hurons, who, in 1624, consisted of twelve villages. They were also called the Bear nation, "nation de l'ours."[1]

Attiquenongnahai.—A sub-tribe of the Hurons or Wyandots, in 1624, consisting of three villages.

Atuncanar. — A settlement in the province of Cuença, in the kingdom of Quito, which is noted for the ruins of a very remarkable fort and palace of the ancient Incas. It is an agreeable and healthy district, with a fine temperature, abounding in the sugar-cane and cochineal. In the time of the Incas it was very populous and wealthy, and had a temple dedicated to the sun, besides the edifices above named. These edifices are the most regular and capacious in their plan, and well constructed, of any in the kingdom. The fort is situated on the bank of a small river, which runs close to its walls. In the rear, it is terminated by a hill of moderate elevation, hemmed in by a strong wall.

Atzala (San Martin de). — A settlement in the district of Guejocingo, Mexico, containing 211 Indian families.

Atzalan.—The name of a Spanish settlement in Xalapa, Mexico, situated between two streams. The term signifies, in the Mexican, "a population between two rivers."

Atzola.—A settlement in the district of Chicapa, Mexico, inhabited by 385 families of Indians.

Atzompa (Santa Maria).—A settlement in the district of Cuilaya, Mexico, containing 140 families of Indians. They are employed in the commerce of cochineal, seeds, fruits, coal, and bark of trees.

---

[1] Lallemand.

[2] Ibid.

Atzopan (San Augustin de).—A settlement in the district of Guejocingo, Mexico, containing twenty-seven Indian families.

Aupowa.—A sacred dream. The Chippewas believe that such dreams are given to them by invisible powers, watchful for their good. The Aupowas are consequently deemed of the highest importance, and their indications strictly followed.

Aucasisco.—Indians of the Abenaki family, living between the Saco and Androscoggin rivers, during the early period of the settlement of New England.

Augaras.—A barbarous tribe of Brazil.

Aughquago.—A village of Iroquois, numbering 150 souls, who, in 1768, lived on the east branch of the Susquehannah.

Auanda.—A settlement of the Portuguese, being a reduction of Indians of the missions of the Carmelite monks of that nation, in the province and country of the Amazonas. It is on the shore of the river Negro, at the same mouth by which this is entered by the Nuisi. Mr. Bellin, in his maps, calls it the Aravida.

Auchiapa.—A settlement of the district of Kapa, in Mexico, containing forty-two Indian families.

Augaris.—A barbarous nation of Indians of Brazil, who inhabit the woods and mountains which lie to the west of the captainship of Puerto Seguro. But little is known of them, and accounts of them are rare.

Augusta,—In Georgia, is situated on the south-west bank of the river Savannah, where it is 500 yards wide, 127 miles from the city of Savannah. At the first settlement of the country, General Oglethorpe built a fort here, to protect the Indian trade, and hold treaties with the Indians. In 1739, a population of about 600 souls separated themselves from the maritime settlements, and located in this quarter to engage in the Indian trade. There were, however, but four houses in the town of Augusta in 1780, and in 1787 it contained two hundred inhabitants.

Augustine (St.).—In Florida. A fort or castle was built here by Pedro Menendes de Aviles, who discovered the harbor on St. Augustine's day, in 1565. The town was burnt by Drake, in 1586, and again by Captain Davis, with the Buccaneers, in 1665. The castle was besieged by the English under Colonel Moore, in 1702; who, failing in the attempt, again destroyed the town by fire. In 1774, the English returned to the siege, under General Oglethorpe, but were again unsuccessful. It was finally ceded to the English, with the whole province, by the peace of Versailles, in 1762; but restored by the treaty of Paris, of 1783. Its subsequent history, and cession to the United States, are well known.

Aullagas.—A band of Indians who live on, and have given name to, a lake twenty-eight leagues from Charcas, in Peru. This lake is two leagues long, and four and a half in circumference. It has no fish whatever. It has an outlet, by the river Desaguadero, into Lake Guanache.

Aupjen, or **Aepjen**.—A Mohegan chief.

Autis.—A barbarous nation of Peruvian Indians, who inhabit the mountains of the province of Tarma, towards the east. They are of like manners with the Chunchos Indians, with whom they are in alliance.

Autlan.—A province and bishopric of Guadalaxara, in New Gallicia, which has a population of 400 Spaniards, mustees, and mulattoes, and a very few Indians.

Auvamba.—A settlement of the district of Tiripitio, Mexico, containing 39 families of Indians, 17 of whom are attached to two estates.

Avoyelles.—A tribe of Indians formerly living in Louisiana, west of the Mississippi, whose name, as a living tribe, has disappeared. They have left a memorial of it in the name of an island of Red river, near its entrance into the Mississippi. They resided on the banks of the stream, and according to Spanish authorities, supplied Nuevo Mexico with mules, horses, and oxen, which they sold so low as twenty *pesetas*[1] per head.

Awegan.—An ancient location of Indians of Pennsylvania, situated on the shores of the east arm of the Susquehannah.

Awunshish.—A name bestowed by the Ojibwas on John Johnston, Esq., of the county Antrim, Ireland. He came to Lake Superior about 1790, married the daughter of one of the most celebrated chiefs, by whom he had several children; and after passing nearly forty years at the Sault or Falls of St. Mary's, during which he preserved the manners and hospitality of his countrymen, he died at that place in 1828, aged 65.

Axacala.—A settlement of the district of Acatlan, in Mexico, containing 38 Indian families.

Axacuba.—A settlement in the district of Huipuxtla, Mexico, containing 76 Indian families.

Axayacazi.—An Aztec ruler, or emperor of Mexico, who succeeded the first Montezuma, subdued thirty-seven tribes, and, by his valor and wisdom, first made the surrounding nations vassals to the lord of Mexico, and laid them under tribute. He was the father of the second, or great Montezuma.

Axixique.—A settlement in the district of Zayula, Mexico, containing 150 Indian families.

Axuchitlan.—A settlement of Tula, Mexico, having 51 Indian families. Another of the same name, in the district of Santa Ana, having 20 Indian families.

Ayacores.—A barbarous nation of Indians, who inhabit the country lying between the rivers Curaray to the north, and the Tigris to the south. They are bounded north-north-west by the nation of Semigoes; on the south by the Iquitos; east by the Paranos;

---

[1] Forty reals of silver—that is, five dollars American currency.

and north by the Yetes. Some of its bands live in the forests on the borders of the river Manay.

Ayahuacas.—A barbarous nation formerly inhabiting Peru, who are now extinct. They made great resistance to the Inca, Tupac Yapanqui, by whom they were subjugated, and made tributary.

Ayanemo.—A chief of the Nyantics, at the era of the settlement of Rhode Island.

Ayauiris, or **Ayauviries.**—A barbarous nation of Peruvian Indians, who inhabit the mountains north-east of Cuzco. They were very valorous, and resisted, for a long time, the third Inca, Lloque Yapangi, but were at last conquered and united to that native monarchy. They became mixed with various and numerous nations of Peru. At present, nothing is left but the name.

Ayenis.—A location of barbarous Indians, who are mentioned in the Spanish annals as inhabiting Florida.

Ayouais.—See **Iowas.**

Ayutans.—See **Ietans.**

Azacango.—A settlement of the district of Atengo, in Mexico, containing twenty-four Indian families.

Azhabi.—The daughter of a celebrated magician. She had a sister named Neganibi, both of whom became great sorcerers, who were alike feared and hated. Their father kept them in a lodge constructed in a tree to defend them from pursuit. Azhabi had a charmed word, by pronouncing which the tree would stretch up: Neganibi had another word, by uttering which it would diminish in height. Their sorceries at length put the people in a general rage, and they were pursued by the boy who carries a ball on his back. He ascended the tree, and pursued them so closely that at last the tree, under the power of Azhabi, reached the arch of heaven, when he entered the lodge, and killing them both with his magical club, rid the world of their wickednesses.

Azajo (Santiago de).—A settlement of the district of Tirindaro, in Mexico, inhabited by 125 families.

Azaqualoia.—A settlement of Zitlala, in the alcaldia-mayor of Chilapa, in Mexico, containing 108 families of Indians.

Azequias.—A settlement of the jurisdiction of Therida, in the new kingdom of Grenada, which has a population of about 100 Indians and fifty poor housekeepers. It has a mild and healthy temperature, abounding in wheat, maize, truffles, beans, vetches, cabbages, and other productions of its climate.

Azitla (San Simon de).—A settlement of the alcadia-mayor of Guejocingo, inhabited by thirty Indian families.

Azontamatlan (San Francisco de).—A settlement of the district of Guayacocotta, in Mexico, having 316 Indian families.

Azocalco.—A settlement of the jurisdiction of Tasco, in Mexico, containing forty Indian families.

Aztacalco. — A settlement with the dedicatory title of Santa Maria, in New Spain, containing 277 Indian families.

Aztahuacan. — A settlement with the same title as the preceding, in the district of Mexilcalzingo, in Mexico, with 105 Indian families.

Aztecs. — The Indian nation ruling in Mexico at the era of its invasion and conquest by the Spanish. They had been preceded by the Toltecs, Acolhues, and other nations, whom they overthrew and founded their monarchy in their stead. By their traditions they migrated from the north, from their original location at Aztalan. Tradition and the best Spanish historians trace them to the region east of the Gulf of California. They are thought to have taken their first departure after their arrival from the Rio Zaguananas and the banks of the Nabajoa, west of the Rio del Norte. We are informed that the Indian nations who inhabit the country between the rivers Gila and Colorado are greatly advanced, and form a striking contrast with the wandering and distrustful tribes who roam the savannahs and plains to the east of New Mexico. Father Garces, one of the latest missionaries in that quarter, was astonished to find, in 1773, on the waters of the Rio de Yaquesila, an Indian town with two great squares, houses of several stories, and streets well laid out and parallel to each other. The construction of these edifices he describes as being similar to those of the Casas Grande, which had been discovered at a prior date, on the river Gila.[1]

The Aztec empire was not ancient on the arrival of the Spanish. The best accounts give the year 1327 for the foundation of the city of Mexico, the ancient Tenochitlan or Temixtitlan. Cortez first saw and entered it on the 8th of November, 1519. He took it, after a disastrous expulsion and most strenuous siege, on the 13th of August, 1621, so that we can assign quite two centuries for its growth and expansion under its native rulers. The Indian population of Mexico, at the time of the conquest, is not known, nor have we any exact means of discriminating between the Aztecs and the other nations subject to Montezuma. It is known to have been very considerable. One hundred thousand men are stated to have been collected from the provinces to demolish the city as Cortez proceeded to take it. There is reason to believe, however, that the losses of the Aztecs and the other tribes by the war were soon restored, and that the entire Indian population of Mexico, at this day, is as great as it was in 1520. A reference to statistical details will show this. The reason of a result so contrary to that which took place among the north Atlantic tribes is obvious. The latter were erratic hunters or fishermen, whose means of subsistence were precarious, who lived in temporary huts, and were, in every respect, placed in circumstances adverse to their raising and supporting large families. Even the poor means they had of gleaning the forest by their darts, or the sea-shore by their nets, were deeply trenched on by their senseless and perpetual feuds. Such was the condition of the

---

[1] See Paper on the Pimos, ante.

Powhatans, the Lenapes, the Mohegans, and the Narragansetts. It was quite the reverse with the Aztecs. They had long passed out of the hunter state, and were, at the time of the discovery, cultivators of the soil. They raised maize, cotton, and various fruits, roots, and seeds. They lived in comfortable habitations, each having the right to his own fields and property. These rights were secured by law, publicly administered. The conquest took away nothing from their natural means and resources, but rather added to them. It did not give them national industry, for they already possessed it. It took away, it may be said, one form of political despotism, and put another in its place, but the latter was by far the best. It demolished the superstructure of a horrid religion, and exonerated them from the despotism of spirits of evil in the human form, under the character of their native priests. Their means of exercise were augmented by the introduction of the domestic animals and beasts of burden, and of various grains. Their knowledge of agriculture and of the mechanic arts was increased, and a freer scope given to all their powers of native industry. These are the true causes of the preservation of the Aztec race to the present day. Montezuma and his compeers are gone. The bloody rites of the Teocalli have ceased. The barbarous pomp and despotism of the Indian court are past away; but their national industry remains. The stream of vitality has thus been fed with never-failing supplies, and, already deemed as citizens of Mexico, the sceptre may be considered as restored into their hands. Let our wandering hunter tribes of the north think of this, and let them, if they would have happy and secure continuance in the land, drop the arrow and war-club, take hold of the plough and the sickle, and aim to become American citizens.

AZTLA (SANTA CATALENA DE).—A settlement of Caxcatlan, in Mexico, containing 300 Indian families. They live on the shores of the river Goochigoayan, where quantities of fine fish are caught. They cultivate and carry on a traffic in tobacco. The district has a hot and moist temperature.

AZUCHITLAN.—A settlement and jurisdiction of this name, in Mexico, containing 286 Indian families of the Mexican or Aztec race, besides twenty-six families of the mixed Spanish and Indian or mustee blood.

XV. STATISTICS AND POPULATION.

A.

A COMPARISON OF THE NUMBER OF FIGHTING MEN

In the principal Northern and Western Tribes of Indians in the United States and Canada, as estimated at various Periods from 1736 to 1812.

Enumeration of M. Chauvignerie's official Report to the Government of Canada, A. D. 1736.				Estimates of Captain Thomas Hutchins, 1764.	Estimate of Mr. Smith, 1785.	Estimate of an Officer of the Army in 1812.
Name of the Tribe or Nation.	Remarks.	Their Totems.	No. of Warriors.			
Abenakis, or "Oubenakis"	A village called Panaoumski, low down on river St. Johns.	This nation is divided into two branches; their arms, the otter and the bear; but in some families, the pheasant, the beaver, and the otter..........	200	Abenakis of the St. Lawrence .... 350 Amalistes.......... 550	Amelicks.......... 550	
"	A village higher up the river, called Narent Chouan..........	....	150			
"	At Besançon..........	....	60	Chalas 130	Chatas 130	
"	At St. Francis, including the Michiskoui or Wanderers..........	....	180			
Algonquins...	Tetes de Boule, or Gens des terres, at Montreal..........	....	15	Algonquins of Ottawa river.......... 300		
"	These wandering tribes are without villages or order, having little spirit; they live on the mountains [illegible] lakes from Three Rivers to Lake S[illegible]ior..........	Unknown..........	600	Tetes de Boule..........2500		
"	At Montreal..........	A green oak..........	20			
	Living with the Iroquois of Two Mountains, being all that remain of the most warlike and most polished of the nations, and most attached to the French.			Micmacs.......... 700		
Iroquois......	Sault St. Louis (river St. Lawrence), two villages..........	The wolf, the bear, and the turtle..........	300	Canawahrunas.......... 200		
"	Masters of the village of Two Mountain Lake..........	....	60			
"	At Toniata..........	A deer..........	10			
"	Five villages north of Lake Frontenac, (Ontario,) occupying 15 leagues in a belt along the shore, distant a day's journey from each other. Although much diminished, this nation is yet powerful. Besides the arms of each village, each family has one, and each man his private mark. Thus, the Onogonte denotes his village by a stem in a forked tree, his family by a bird or animal, and himself by a picture. I sent you such an one by the Ricollet father Francis, in 1732.	For the five villages, the plover..........	Not given.			
			1595	4730	680	

A. [CONTINUED.]

NUMBER OF FIGHTING MEN IN THE NORTHERN AND WESTERN TRIBES.

Enumeration of M. Chauvignerie's official Report to the Government of Canada, A. D. 1736.				Estimates of Captain Thomas Hutchins, 1764.	Estimate of Mr. Smith, 1785.	Estimate of an Officer of the Army in 1812.
Name of the Tribe or Nation.	Remarks.	Their Totems.	No. of Warriors.			
			1595	4730	680	
Hurons	A village at Quebec		60			
" or Wyandots	Near Detroit	The turtle, the beaver, and the plover	200	Wyandots near Lake Erie 300		Wyandots 250 Wyandot tribes 300
Nepicinquis, or Nepissings	At Two Mountain Lake	A heron	50	Nepissings of Ottawa river 400		
	The family of the Achaque (des achaque) have for their totem the heron; for the Ounikanes, the beaver; the family L'Ecoree, the birch; the Miskuakes, or "Gens du Sang," the blood. "It should be observed, that besides the arms or totem of the principal stock, to which for want of time I have confined myself, each family is distinguished by particular marks."					
Orunges	These are Wolves (Loups), who understand "Ouabenaki," and who are understood by them. They are spread from Boston to Virginia, and from Lake Champlain to Lake Erie, 800 leagues, and are under English dominion		600	Ottawas of Lake Superior and Lake Michigan 900	Otahas 900	Ottowas 900
Ottowas	Of Grand river and Lake Nepissing	A grey squirrel	80			
"	Of "Missilimackanack," divided into two branches, as follows: Kiskokans and Sinojos	The otter and black squirrel	180			
"Outeonas"	At Detroit, two villages, Sinojos and Kiskokans	Bear and black squirrel	200			
"	At Saginaw, one village	"	80			
Sakis (South)	Green Bay	Crab, wolf, and she-bear	150	Sakis, S. of Green Bay 400		
Foxes	Of Fox river, a wandering nation not separate	The fox, pheasant, and she-wolf	100	Mechecaukis, south of Green Bay 250		Piankeshaws Kickapoos Musquitans Ouiatanos 1000
Kicopoux	Of Fox river		80	Kickapoos of the Wabash river 300		
Mascoutins	" "			Mascoutins, south of Green Bay 500		
				Ouisconsins, of that river 550		
			8325	8330	1580	2550

A. [CONTINUED.]

NUMBER OF FIGHTING MEN IN THE NORTHERN AND WESTERN TRIBES.

Enumeration of M. Chauvignerie's official Report to the Government of Canada, A. D. 1736.				Estimates of Captain Thomas Hutchins, 1764.	Estimate of Mr. Smith, 1785.	Estimate of an Officer of the Army in 1812.
Name of the Tribe or Nation.	Remarks.	Their Totems.	No. of Warriors.			
			3,325	8,830	1580	2450
Onantagues	South of Lake Frontenac (Ontario)	A cabin at the top of a mountain	200			
Auniers	Not far from Orange, towards New England	A ramrod and a flint	80			
Onnogontes	Neighbors of the Auniers	A stone in the fork of a tree	100			
Gogouins	A village	A great pipe	120	Six Nations of New York 1,550		Six Nations 1400
Sonnoutouans	Two villages	A great mountain	350			
Ontationuè	Called thus by the Iroquois, because they understand them		50			
Tascuroreus (Tuscaroras)	Have a village near the mountains		250			
Miamis	Two, principal families (some of them have a bear)	Elk and crane	200	Miamis of the Lakes 350 Peanquichas, on the Wabash 250		Miamis 300 Ouitimaus 200
Ougatanous Peanquichas Pettikokias	One nation in different families	A serpent, a deer, and an acorn	350	Ouachtenons of the Wabash 400		Kickapoos.... Outagamis... Musquiakis.. 1000
Metchigamias	Of the Illinois nation, around Fort Chartres	Crane	250			
Peorias	Of the Rock Illinois river	Bear, white elk, the fork, and the turtle.	50	Peorias 800		
Kerokias and Tamarais	Illinois tribes		200			
Illinois	Of Kaskaskia. They have an arrow notched at the feather, or two arrows supporting each other, like a St. Andrew's Cross		8	Kaskasquias of Illinois river 600 Delaware Loups of the Ohio 600	Piantias, on the banks of the Mississippi 800	Illinois 250 Delawares 600 Shawnees 300 Mingoes 50 Peores 300
Chauenous (Shawnees)	South of Lake Errie, towards Carolina		200	Shawanese of the Sioto 500		
Cherakis Chicachos Totiris	Called Flatheads by the Iroquois; living in more than 30 villages, south of Lake Errie. I am told their mark is a ship.		6,000	Cherokees 2,500 Chickasas 750 Catawbas 150 Natchez 150 Choctaws 21,500	Choctaws 4500	
Tabittikis	River and Lake Temiscoming	The eagle	100			
"	At the end of the lake	"	20			
"	At other places	"	20			
Mississaugues	Mississague river	A crane	30			
"	Maniskoülin Island, Lake Huron	"	20			
			11,923	38,430	6880	6850

A. [CONTINUED.]

NUMBER OF FIGHTING MEN IN THE NORTHERN AND WESTERN TRIBES.

Enumeration of M. Chauvignerie's official Report to the Government of Canada, A. D. 1736.				Estimates of Captain Thomas Hutchins, 1764.	Estimate of Mr. Smith, 1785.	Estimate of an Officer of the Army in 1812.
Name of the Tribe or Nation.	Remarks.	Their Totems.	No. of Warriors.			
			11,923	38,430	6880	6850
Mississaugues	Lake St. Clair	A crane	60	Mississaugues of Lake Huron and Lake Superior 2,000		
"	Kentè, Toronto river, Matchitaen, and west end of Lake Ontario	"	150			
Oakemanitigous	Ounipegon river	Kingfisher	40			
Ounepigous	Lake Superior, people of the prairie	Rabbit	140			
Papinachaux	Lake Superior	"	20			
Morisons	" " a wandering tribe	Moose	200			
Abbetikis and Tetes de Boule	They go to Lake Superior	Pheasant, and an eagle.				
Nameanilieu	Lake Superior	Sturgeon	150			
Chippeways, or Souteus	Sault St. Mary, two bands	Crane and beard	30	Chippeways of Lake Superior and Lake Michigan 5,000		Chippeways 1500
"	Kiouanous, or the Ause Kenowenou	Crow and a stag	40			
"	La Ponite Chagauamegou	"	150			
Cristeneaux	Ounepegon Lake		60	Christeneaux 3,000		Killisteneaux 500
"	Lake of the Woods	Wild goose	200			
Tecomimoni	Soc La plerie; they come to Nessigou		100	Blanc Barbus for N. West 1,500		
Ouali	Gamanestigaga	A beard	60			
Assinepoels	South of Ounipegan lake; derived from the Scioux	A rock	150	Assineboes 1,500 Puans of Green Bay 700		
Puants (or Winnebagoes	Joined the French in 1728	A stag, "le sechaux," and the tiger	80			Winnebagoes 300
Folle Avoines (Menominees)	North of Lake Michigan. The three largest families have for totems a she-bear with a long tail, and a "cerf unquileou," or "kilioi," a kind of eagle, the most beautiful and powerful bird of the country, perched upon a cross	She-bear and the kilioi	160	Folle Avoines of Green Bay 850		
Pauteauamis (Potewatamis)	A small village, who in 1788 withdrew to an island of Lake Michigan		20	Powtawatamis, St. Joseph's and Detroit 850		Putawatimies 500
"	A village near Detroit	Golden carp	180			
"	River St. Joseph's; call themselves beloved sons of the Governor	Frog and tortoise, and some a crab	100			
"	With the Miamies	A crane	10			
			14,028	52,830	6880	9650

A. [CONTINUED.]

NUMBER OF FIGHTING MEN IN THE NORTHERN AND WESTERN TRIBES.

Enumeration of M. Chauvignerie's official Report to the Government of Canada, A. D. 1736.				Estimates of Captain Thomas Hutchins, 1764.		Estimate of Mr. Smith, 1785.		Estimate of an Officer of the Army in 1812.
Name of the Tribe or Nation.	Remarks.	Their Totems.	No. of Warriors.					
			14,023		52,830		6,880	9650
Scioux	Fond du Lac Superior, Scioux of the Woods	Buffalo	300		1,800			
"	Scious of the Prairies, reckoned by voyageurs at	Black dog, she-wolf	2,000		2,500			
Agoual (Iowas)	South of Missouri, and west of Missisippi	A fox	80	Agoues, N. of Missouri	1,100			
Missouris Okanis, or Kansies Satos Panies	On the Missouri river; all that is known of them, is their names.			Missouris Osages Canses	3,000 600 1,600			
				Panis Blancs	2,000			
				" piques	1,700			
				Grandes Eaux	1,000			
				Padoucahs	500			
				Alibamous, a tribe of Creeks	600	Upper, Middle, and Lower Creeks, in Georgia and Florida	4,000	
				Ouanikina	300			
				Chickanossous	350			
				Machecous	800			
				Caouitas	700	Canitas	700	
				Souikilas	200			
				Arkansas, of the Arkansas river	2,000			
		Total	16,403		73,580		11,580	9650

NOTE BY CHAUVIGNERIE.

If time had permitted, I should have made more satisfactory researches; I would have written to the interpreters of Restes, who would have given me better information than the voyageurs have done. I shall pursue the history of the Scioux, as you have requested by Monsieur De Linerot.

All the northern nations have one thing in common — when a man goes to war, he is distinguished as much by the totem of his wife's family, as by his own. They never take a wife who wears their own totem.

A. [CONTINUED.]

EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

The enumeration exhibited in the first columns of the accompanying table, is believed to be the earliest or first one on record. It is the substance of a French manuscript brought by General Cass from Paris, among many others of equal value and authenticity, relating to the Indian tribes of the North, under the early French dominion. I have abbreviated it somewhat, and arranged the matter it contains a little differently from the original. It is headed thus —

"Enumeration of the Indian nations who have relations to the government of Canada, their warriors and their totems — A. D. 1736."

Mem. Supposed to have been written by Monsieur Chauvignerie.

NOTE OF M. CHAUVIGNERIE. — "The Esquimaux, Micmacs, Amalecites or Manecis, are nations above 'Kebec,' (doubtless for Quebec,) and beyond my knowledge."

I have extended the table by putting opposite the tribes, where I could recognize their names in the subsequent orthography, several later estimates of their numbers.

The first is that of Captain Thomas Hutchins, who accompanied Colonel Henry Bouquet in his expedition to the towns on the Muskingum river, in Ohio, in October 1764, and who was afterwards Geographer or Surveyor-General of the United States.

Another is taken from the Cass manuscripts, being a French memorandum of an English authority; a book published by Mr. Smith, in London, at the close of the Revolution.

The last, an incomplete enumeration by an officer of the war of 1812, whose name is not given.

The list and enumeration is, after all, very imperfect, when compared with a modern census; but I doubt not that of M. Chauvignerie is the best, if not the earliest one, now in existence.

The changes that occur in the spelling of the names of tribes, render the recognition of some of them uncertain. Some nations are found in the early records, that are dropped in those of later date. I have preserved the spelling as I find it, leaving it to others to determine, in cases of doubt, what modern tribes correspond to the ancient ones that are dropped.

Captain Hutchins regards *one* warrior as representing *five* persons; and this rule gives, for the tribes enumerated by Chauvignerie, 82,015 souls. By the same rule, the enumeration given by Hutchins gives 367,900 Indian persons. But it is probable some abatement should be made from his estimates, which, it is reasonable to suppose, correspond better with the number of the whole people than their fighting-men.

Thanks are due to C. Whittlesy, Esq., of Cleveland, Ohio, for materials of early Indian population, and collating them with the valuable manuscript referred to.

B. ESTIMATE OF COLONEL BOUQUET, 1764.

Names of different Indian Nations in North America, with the Numbers of their Fighting Men. Historical Account of the Expedition against the Ohio Indians in 1764, *by Col. Henry Bouquet. London and Philadelphia*, 1766.

TRIBES.	PLACES OF RESIDENCE.	WARRIORS.
Conawaghrunas	Near the Falls of St. Louis	200
Abenaquis	St. Lawrence Indians	350
Michmacs		700
Amalistes		550
*Chalas		130
Nipissins	Living towards the heads of the Ottawa river	400
Algonquins		300
Les Tetes de Boule, or Round Heads	Near the above	2500
Six Nations	On the frontiers of New York, &c.	1550
Wiandots	Near Lake Erie	300
Chipwas	Near the lakes Superior and Michigan	5000
Ottawas		900
Messesagues, or River Indians	Being wandering tribes, on the lakes Huron and Superior	2000
Powtewatamis	Near St. Joseph's and Detroit	350
Les Puans	Near Puan's Bay	700
Folle avoine, or Wild-Oat Indians		350
Mechecouakis	South of Puan's Bay	250
Sakis		400
Mascoutens		500
Ouisconsins	On a river of that name, falling into Mississippi on the east side	550
Christinaux	Far north, near the lakes of the same name	3000
Assinaboes, or Assinipouals		1500
†Blancs Barbus, or White Indians with beards		1500
Sioux of the Meadows	Towards the heads of Mississippi	2500
Sioux of the Woods		1800
Missouri	On the river of that name	3000
*Grandes Eaux		1000
Osages	South of Missouri	600
Canses		1600
Panis blancs		2000
Panis piques		1700
Padoucas		500
Ajoues	North of the same	1100
Arkanses	On the river that bears their name, falling into Mississippi on the west side	[illegible]
Alibamous	A tribe of the Creeks	600
*Ouanakina	Unknown, unless the author has put them for tribes of the Creeks	300
*Chiakanessou		350
*Machecous		800
Caouitas (Cowetas)		700
*Souikilas		200
Miamis	Upon the river of that name, falling into Lake Erie	350
Delawares (les Loups)	On the Ohio	600
Shawnesse	On Scioto	500
Kickapoos	On the Ouabache	300
Ouachtenons		400
Peanquichas		250
Kaskasquias, or Illinois in general	On the Illinois river	600
*Pianria		800
Catawbas	On the frontiers of North Carolina	150
Cherokees	Behind South Carolina	2500
Chickasaws	Mobile and Mississippi	750
Natchez		150
Chactaws		4500
		56,500

Data are introduced by Col. Bouquet to denote that the Indian inhabitants of North America are in the proportion of five persons to one fighting man, which gives a total of 283,000 (p. 71) as the Indian population of the old colonies.

* French soubriquets. † They live to the north-west; and the French, when they first saw them, took them for Spaniards.

C.

INDIAN FORCE ON THE BREAKING OUT OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.*

Account of Indian Nations given in the year 1778, *by a Trader who resided many years in the neighborhood of Detroit.*

Names.	No. of men able to bear arms.	Particulars relating to them.
Wiondots	180	They live in the neighborhood of Detroit and Sandusky, have generally embraced the Catholic religion, have a Jesuit priest among them, and have been generally attached to the French interest. They trade to Detroit and Sandusky in deer-skins and furs. They have been more active, under the influence of Lt. Governor Hamilton, against the United States, than any other nation.
Tawaws	450	They are scattered over the country about the north-west end of Lake Erie, from Fort St. Clair to the Mineami river. They trade to the same places as the Wiondots, except a few who trade to Michilimackinaw, and in the same articles. They have been very little employed against the United States, are much attached to the French, but have not embraced their religion.
Potowatomies	450	Their principal settlement is near St. Joseph's; but scattered villages of them extend from thence as far as the Wabash, and almost to Detroit. They are much intermixed with the Canadian French at St. Joseph's. They trade to that place and Detroit.
Missaugees	250	They are descended from the Chippawees and Tawaws. They live chiefly on the north side of Lake Erie. They trade to Fort Erie and Detroit. They are wholly under the influence of the nations they are descended from.
Chippawees	5000	They reside about Lake Huron, the upper parts of Lake Michigan, from thence in a north-west course as far as Lake Superior, and the head branches of the Mississippi. About 300 hold an intercourse with Detroit, the principal settlement of whom is on Lake Huron, at Thunder (or Sagenaw) Bay. They trade to Michilimackinac and Detroit, to the former chiefly in furs. They have been very little employed in the present war. From their remote and dispersed situation, their numbers and character are very imperfectly known.
Mineamies	2000	They live north-west of Lake Michigan, as far as the heads of the Mississippi, and up to Lake Superior. They trade to Michilimackinac with beaver, otter, and marten furs.
Soos	500	They live about the heads of the Mississippi, and on the islands of Lake Superior. They trade in furs with traders, who carry suitable merchandise to the branches of the Mississippi.
Carried forward	8830	

---

* From the MSS. of James Madison.

C. [CONTINUED.]

INDIAN FORCE ON THE BREAKING OUT OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

Names.	No. of men able to bear arms.	Particulars relating to them.
Brought forward	8,830	
Miamies, or Miniamies	300	They live on the river of that name, and in the vicinity of St. Joseph's, but chiefly on the former. They are supplied with goods from Detroit. They have interfered but little in the present war, except a few who have acted in conjunction with the Shawanese.
Shawanese	300	They live on the Wabash and the neighboring branches of the Ohio. They have been supplied during the war with goods from Detroit, for which they pay in skins and scalps. They have been exceedingly active against the United States, and are a very warlike tribe.
Delawares and Munsees	600	These form properly but one nation. The latter have not long since joined the Mingoes (or Senecas), and been active against the United States. The former, except a very few, have been friendly. They live between Pittsburg and Sandusky, on the branches of the river Muskingum. The Delawares have embraced the Moravian religion, and have its ministers among them.
Piankeshaws Musketoons Vermilions	800	These nations are intermixed. They live on and near the Wabash, towards Illinois. They trade to Kaskasky.
SIX NATIONS.		
Mohawks	100	What relates to the Six Nations is well known.
Oneydoes and Toscororas	400	
Cayugas	220	
Onondagoes	230	
Senecas	650	
	12,430*	

EMPLOYED BY THE ENGLISH AGAINST THE UNITED STATES IN THE PRESENT WAR.

Of the Wiondots	100
Tawaws	40
Chippawees	50
Potowatomies	30
Missaugees	20
Shawanese	20
Mingoes	60
Munsees	100
Miamies and Kickapoos	50
Six Nations	300
Total	770

* This computation, like most others which respect the savages, is probably beyond the truth.

J. M.

D.

INDIAN POPULATION OF THE UPPER MISSISSIPPI IN 1806. BY LT. Z. M. PIKE, U. S. A.

Names of the different nations, as pronounced in the English language.	Primitive names, as given by the savages themselves.	Names given them by the French.	Number of warriors.	Number of women.	Number of children.	Number of villages.	Probable number of souls.	No. lodges of roving bands.	Number of fire-arms.	Primitive Language.
Sauks	Sawkee	Saque	700	750	1400	3	2850	....	700	Sauk.
Foxes	Ottagaumie	Reynards	400	500	850	3	1750	....	400	Sauk, with a small difference in the idiom.
Iowas	Aiowais	Ne Perce	300	400	700	2	1400	....	250	Missouries.
Winnebagoes	Ochangras	Puants	450	500	1000	7	1950	....	450	Missouries, or Zoto.
Menomenes	Menomene	Fols Avoin	300	350	700	7	1350	....	300	Menomene.
Sues	Narcotah	Sioux	....	....	....	......	....	....	....	....
People of the Lakes (1st Band)	Minowa Kantong	Gens du Lac	305	600	1200	3	2105	125	305	Narcotah.

People of the Leaves..... (2d Band)	Washpetong	Gens des Feuilles........	180	350	530	....	1060	70	160	Narcotah.
Sissitons.................... (3d Band)	Sussitongs	Sussitongs..................	360	700	1100	....	2160	155	260	Ditto.
Yanktons.................... (4th Band)	Yanctong..................	Yanctong....................	900	1600	2700	....	4300	270	350	Ditto.
Tetons........................ (5th Band)	Titong	Titong	2000	3600	6000	....	11600	600	100	Ditto.
People of the Leaves detached .... (6th Band)	Washpecoute..............	Gens des Feuilles tirees	90	180	270	....	450	50	90	Ditto.
			3835	6433	11,800	25	21,675	1270	3365	
	This is merely a band of vagabonds, who are formed by refugees from all the other bands, which they have left for some bad deed.									
Chipeways } 1st Band.	Ouchipawah	Sauteurs.....................	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	....
Leapers ... } 1st Band.		Sauteurs proper..........	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	....
	Of Sandy Lake............	From actual estimate.	45	79	224	....	345	24	....	Algonquin.
	Of Leech Lake............		150	280	690	....	1120	65	....	Ditto.
	Of Red Lake		150	260	610	....	1020	64	....	Ditto.
Of St. Croix and the Chipeway river....................			104	165	420	....	689	50	....	Ditto.
Of the other bands generally			1600	2400	4000	....	8000	400	....	Ditto.
	Total..		2049	3184	5944		11,177	603	2049	

D. [CONTINUED.]

INDIAN POPULATION OF THE UPPER MISSISSIPPI IN 1806.

Names of the different nations, as pronounced in the English language.	Primitive names, as given by the savages themselves.	Names given them by the French.	Traders or bands with whom they traffic.	Am't of mdse. necessary for annual consump'n.	An. ret'n of peltry in packs.	Species of Peltry.
Sauks	Sawkee	Saque	Of Michilimackinac, St. Louis, with the people of the Prairie des Chiens.	15,000	600	Principally deer-skins, some bear, and a few otter, beaver, and raccoon.
Foxes	Ottagaumie	Reynards	Ditto	8,500	400	Principally deer, a few bear, with a small proportion more of furs.
Iowas	Aiowais	Ne Perce	Of Michilimackinac	10,000	300	Deer-skins, black bear, otter, beaver, mink, raccoon, grey fox, and musk-rat.
Winnebagoes	Ochangras	Puants	Of ditto	9,000	200	The same as the Foxes.
Menomenes	Menomene	Fols Avoin	Of Michilimackinac	9,000	250	Beaver, marten, grey fox, mink, musk-rat, otter, deer-skins, elk-skins, &c.
Sues	Narcotah	Sioux				
People of the Lakes (1st Band)	Minowa Kantong	Gens du Lac	Of Michilimackinac	13,500	230	Deer-skins, a few bear, some beaver, raccoon, &c.

People of the Leaves (2d Band)	Washpetong	Gens des Feuilles	Of Michilimackinac	6,000	115	Deer-skins, a few buffalo robes, some beaver, otter, mink, &c.
Sissitons (3d Band)	Sussitongs	Sussitongs	Of ditto	12,500	160	Deer-skins, and a large proportion of robes, with furs gathered from the Raven river.
Yanktons (4th Band)	Yanctong	Yanctong	Of ditto	8,000	130	Principally buffalo robes.
Tetons (5th Band)	Titong	Titong	With Yanktongs and part of the Sussitongs.			Buffalo robes.
People of the Leaves detached (6th Band)	Washpecoute	Gens des Feuilles tirees	People of the Prairié des Chiens and on the head of de Moyen.	2,000	50	Deer-skins, beaver, otter, bear, &c.
Chipeways } 1st Band.	Ouchipawah	Sauteurs				
Leapers } 1st Band.		Sauteurs proper				
	Of Sandy Lake		N. W. Company	See my reports on the trade of the N. W. Company.		Beaver, muskrat, otter, marten, black and silver fox, &c.
	Of Leech Lake		Ditto			Ditto.
	Of Red Lake		Ditto			Ditto.
Of St. Croix and the Chipeway river			Ditto			Ditto.
Of the other bands generally			Ditto and others	Uncertain		Unknown.

D. [CONTINUED.]

INDIAN POPULATION OF THE UPPER MISSISSIPPI IN 1806.

Names of the different nations, as pronounced in the English language.	Primitive names, as given by the savages themselves.	Names given them by the French.	The positions most proper for trading establishments.	Nations with whom at war.	Nations with whom at peace or in alliance.
Sauks	Sawkee	Saque	At the head of the rapid de Moyen.	Chipeways	Reynards, Puants, Sioux, Osage, Potowatomies, Fols Avoins, Ioways, and all the nations of the Missouri.
Foxes	Ottagaumie	Reynards	On a small stream called Giard's river, nearly opposite the Prairie des Chiens, or at the confluence of the Mississippi and the Ouisconsing.	Chipeways	Ditto.
Iowas	Aiowais	Ne Perce	On the rivers de Moyen and Iowa.	Chipeways	Ditto.
Winnebagoes	Ochangras	Puants	Portage de Cockalin, on Fox river, or at the Grand Calumet.	Since the peace was made between the Osages, Sauks, and Reynards, the Puants have tacitly ceased to make war on the former.	In alliance with the Sauks, Reynards, Sioux, Fols Avoins, &c., and at peace with all other nations.
Menomenes	Menomene	Fols Avoin	Portage des Perre on the Fox river.	None	Ottoway, Chipeway, and Ochangras; and at peace with all nations.
Sues	Narcotah	Sioux			
People of the Lakes (1st Band)	Minowa Kantong	Gens du Lac	Entrance Saint Croix	Recently with the Chipeways, but now at peace with the Assinniboins and some nations on the Missouri.	With the Sauks, Reynards, Ioways, and Fols Avoins.

People of the Leaves (2d Band)	Washpetong	Gens des Feuilles	Little Rapids Saint Peters	Ditto	Ditto.
Sissitons (3d Band)	Sussitongs	Sussitongs	Lac de Gross Roche, St. Peters	Ditto	Ditto.
Yanktons (4th Band)	Yanctong	Yanctong			
Tetons (5th Band)	Titong	Titong		Various nations of the Missouri	Ditto.
People of the Leaves detached (6th Band)	Washpecoute	Gens des Feuilles tirees	Prairie des Chiens	Ditto	Ditto.
Chipeways 1st band	Ouchipawah	Sauteurs			
Leapers		Sauteurs proper			
	Of Sandy Lake		Sandy Lake	Recently with the Sioux, but now at peace. At war with the Sauks, Foxes, and Iowas.	With the Fols Avoins and all the nations of Canada.
	Of Leech Lake		Leech Lake	Ditto	Ditto.
	Of Red Lake		Red Lake	Ditto	Ditto.
Of St. Croix and the Chipeway river			South side of Lake Superior	Ditto	Ditto.
Of the other bands generally					

D. [CONTINUED.]

INDIAN POPULATION OF THE UPPER MISSISSIPPI IN 1806.

Names of the different nations, as pronounced in the English language.	Primitive names, as given by the savages themselves.	Names given them by the French.	NAMES OF THE CHIEFS OR PRINCIPAL MEN.			Remarks.
			Indian.	French.	English.	
Sauks	Sawkee	Saque	Washione			
			Pockquinike	Brass Casse	Broken Arm	
Foxes	Ottagaumie	Reynards	Olopier			First Fox Chief.
			Pecit	Le Petit Corbeau	Little Raven	
			Akaque	La Peau Blanche	White Skin	The man who killed the Osage when on their way to St. Louis, and who is now raising a war party to make a stroke on the Sauteaux.
Iowas	Aiowais	Ne Perce				
Winnebagoes	Ochangras	Puants	New Okat			First chief of the nation—received a commission as first chief.
			Sansamani Chenoway's Son			Commissioned.
			Karamone			Ditto.
			Du Quarre			Ditto.
			Macraragah			Ditto.
Menomenes	Menomene	Fols Avoin	Tomaw	Thomas Carron	Thomas Carron	First chief of the nation—received a commission as first chief and a flag.
			Shawonoe			
			Neckech			
Sues	Narootah	Sioux	Wabasha	La Feuille	The Leaf	First chief of the nation. Literally translated—received a commission and flag.
People of the Lakes (1st Band)	Minowa Kantong	Gens du Lac	Talangamane	L'Aile Rouge	The Red Wing	Ditto ditto.
			Chatewaconamani	Petit Corbeau	Little Raven	Received a commission and flag.
			Tahamie	L'Orignal Leve	Rising Moose	Literally translated.
			Tatamane	Nez Corbeau	Raven Nose	Literally the wind that walks—commissioned.

People of the Leaves (2d Band)	Washpetong	Gens des Feuilles	Wasonquianni	L'Araignee Jaune	Yellow Spider	First chief of the nation.
			Wukunsna	Tonnerre qui Sonne	The Rolling Thunder	Literally translated.
			Houho Otah	Le Noyeau	The Stone of Fruit	Received a commission and flag.
Sissitons (3d Band)	Sussitongs	Sussitongs	Wacanto	Esprit Bleu	Blue Spirit	First chief of his band.
			Waminisabah	Killieu Noir	Black Eagle	Literally translated.
			Itoye	Gross Calumet	Big Pipe	
			Wuckiew Nutch	Tonnerre Rouge	Red Thunder	A literal translation—first chief of all the Sioux.
Yanktons (4th Band)	Yanctong	Yanctong	Petessung	La Vache Blanche	White Buffalo	Literally translated.
			Muckpeanutah	Nuage Rouge	Red Cloud	Ditto. First chief of the nation.
			Champanage			
Tetons (5th Band)	Titong	Titong	Chantaoeteka	Le Cœur Mauvais	The Bad Heart	Of Bois Brulle.
			Shenouskar	La Couverte Blanche	White Blanket	Okandandas.
			Wamaneopenutah	Le Cœur de Killeur Rouge	The Heart of the Red Eagle	
People of the Leaves detached (6th Band)	Washpecoute	Gens des Feuilles tirees	Tantangashatah	Le Bœuf que Joue	The Playing Buffalo	Literal translation.
			Kachiwasigon	Le Corbeau Francois	The French Raven	Ditto.
Chipeways } 1st band	Ouchipawah	Sauteurs				
Leapers }		Sauteurs proper				
	Of Sandy Lake		Catawabata	De Breche	Broken Teeth	First chief of his band.
	Of Leech Lake		Eskibugeckoge	Geuelle Platte	Flat Mouth	
			Ohigouitte	Chef de la Terre	Chief of the Land	First chief of his band.
			Oole	La Brule	The Burnt	
	Of Red Lake		Wiscoup	Le Sucre	The Sweet	First chief of his band.
Of St. Croix and the Chipeway river						
Of the other bands generally			Necktame	Preinier	Head Chief	Resides on Lac La Plur river.

N. B. Wyaganage, or the Fils de Pinchow, a chief of the Gens du Lac, and head of the village at the entrance of the St. Peters, omitted. He has received a flag and commission.

E.

INDIAN POPULATION OF THE COLUMBIA VALLEY IN 1806.

Lewis & Clarke's Estimate of the Aboriginal Population west of the Rocky Mountains in 1806.

Names of Indian Nations, and their places of general residence.	Number of houses or lodges.	Probable number of souls.
1. Shoshonee Nation, on west fork of Lewis's river and Missouri	60	300
2. Ootlashoot tribe of Tushshepah Nation, on Rocky Mountains on Clarke's river and Missouri	33	400
3. Chopunnish Nation, on Kooskooskee	33	2000
4. Pelloatpallah band of Chopunnish, on Kooskooskee	3	1600
5. Kimooenim band of Chopunnish, on Lewis's river	33	800
6. Yeletpo band of Chopunnish, on Weaucum	33	250
7. Willewah band of Chopunnish, on Willewah	33	500
8. Sagennom band of Chopunnish, on Lamalter creek	33	400
9. Chopunnish of Lewis's river	40	2300
10. Sokulk Nation, on Columbia	120	2400
11. Chinnahpum, on Columbia	42	1860
12. Wollawollah Nation, on Columbia	46	1600
13. Pishquitpahs Nation, on Muscle-shell rapid, Columbia and Tapteel rivers	71	2600
14. Wahowpum Nation, on Columbia, Tapteel, and Cataract rivers	33	700
15. Eneshure Nation, at upper part of Great Narrows, Columbia river	41	1200
16. Eskeloot Nation, at upper part of Great Narrows, Columbia river	21	1000
17. Chilluckittequaw Nation, next below Narrows, to river Labiche	32	1400
18. Smockskop band of Chilluckittequaw, on Columbia river	24	800
19. Shahalah Nation, at the Grand Rapids of Columbia river, and extends down in different villages as low as the Multnomah river, consisting of the following tribes, viz.: Yehuh, above the rapids; Clahclellah, below the rapids; the Wahclellah, below all the rapids; and the Neerchokioon (1 house, 100 lodges,) on the south side, a few miles above the Multnomah river	62	2800
20. Wappatoo Indians:		
Nechacoke Tribe, on north side Columbia	1	100
Shoto Tribe, on north side Columbia	8	460
Multnomah Tribe, on Wappatoo Island	6	800
Clannahqueh Tribe of Multnomah, on Wappatoo Island, below Multnomahs	4	130
Nemalquinner Tribe of Multnomahs, on north-east side of Multnomah river	4	200
Cathlacommatups, a Tribe of Multnomahs, on south side Wappatoo Island	3	170
Cathlanaquiahs, a Tribe of Multnomahs, on south-west side of Wappatoo Island	6	400
Clackstar Nation, on a small river which discharges itself on the south-west side of Wappatoo Island	28	1200
Carried forward	883	28,370

E. [CONTINUED.]

INDIAN POPULATION OF THE COLUMBIA VALLEY IN 1806.

Names of Indian Nations, and their places of general residence.	Number of houses or lodges.	Probable number of souls.
Brought forward	883	28,370
Claninnatas, on south-west side of Wappatoo Island	5	200
Cathlacumups, on main shore, south-west of Wappatoo Island	6	450
Clannarminnamuns, on south-west side of Wappatoo Island	12	280
Quathlapohtle Nation, on south-west side Columbia river	14	900
Cathlamahs, on a creek which falls into the Columbia, on the north side	10	200
21. Skilloot Nation, on Columbia and Coweliskee rivers	50	2,500
Hullooellell, on the Coweliskee	......	......
22. Wahkiacums, on north side Columbia	11	200
23. Cathlamahs, on south side Columbia	9	300
24. Chinnooks, on north side Columbia, and on Chinnook river	28	400
25. Clatsop Nation, on south side Columbia, and a few miles south-east coast on both sides Point Adams	14	200
26. Killamucks Nation, from the Clatsops of the coast, along the south-east coast for many miles	50	1,000
[INDIAN INFORMATION.] The following Nations speak the Killamuck language:		
27. Lucktons, on sea-coast to the south-west of the Killamucks	......	20
Kahuncles, on sea-coast south-west of the Lucktons	......	400
Luckawis, on sea-coast to the south-south-east, large town	......	800
Youikcones, do. do. large houses	......	700
Neeketoos, do. do. large town	......	700
Ulseahs, do. do. small town	......	150
Youitts, do. do. do.	......	150
Sheastuckles, on sea-coast to the south-east of the Lucktons, large town	......	900
Killawats, do. do. do. do.	......	500
28. Cookkoo-oose Nation, on sea-coast to the south of the Killawats	......	1,500
Shallalah Nation, on same course to south	......	1,200
Luckkarso Nation, do. do.	......	1,200
Hannakallah Nation, do. do.	......	600
INDIANS ALONG THE NORTH-WEST COAST.*		
29. Killaythocles, on the sea-coast, from the Chinnooks to the north-north-west	8	100
Chiltz nation, from Killaythocles along the north-north-west coast	38	700
Clamoctomichs, from the Chiltz along the north-north-west coast	12	260
Potoashs, on the same coast, north-westwardly of the Clamoctomichs	10	200
Pailsh Tribe, from the Potoash, on the north-west coast	10	200
Quiniilts, from the Pailsh, along the north-west coast	60	1,000
Quieetsos, from the Quiniilts, along the north-west coast	18	250
Chillates, from the Quieetsos, along the north-west coast	8	150
Calasthocle, from the Chillates, north-west along the same coast	10	200
Quinnechart Nation, on the sea-coast and creek, north and north-west of the Calasthocles	......	2,000
Carried forward	1266	48,880

---

* For more recent estimates, see Indians of British America, Appendix.

E. [CONTINUED.]

INDIAN POPULATION OF THE COLUMBIA VALLEY IN 1806.

Names of Indian Nations, and their places of general residence.	Number of houses or lodges.	Probable number of souls.
Brought forward	1266	48,880
30. Clarkamus Nation, on a large river of the same name	......	1,800
31. Cushhooks Nation, on the north-east bank of the Multnomah	......	650
32. Charcowah Nation, on the south-west bank of the Multnomah	......	200
33. Callahpoewah Nation inhabit the country on both sides of the Multnomah...	......	2,000
34. Shoshonee, (or Snake Indians,) in winter and fall on Multnomah, and in spring and summer on the heads of the Towanahiooks, La Page, Yaumalolam, and Wollawollah rivers	......	3,000
35. Shoshonees, on the Multnomah and its waters, whose residence is not well known to us, or the Indians of the Columbia	......	6,000
36. Shobarboobeer Band of Shoshoonees, on the south-west side Multnomah	......	1,600
37. Shoshonees, residing on the south fork of Lewis's river, and on the Nemo, Walshemo, Shallette, Shushpellanimmo, Shecomshink, Timmoonumlarwas, and the Copcoppakark rivers, branches of the south fork of Lewis's river.	......	3,000
We saw parts of the following tribes at the Long Narrows:		
38. Skaddall's Nation, on Cataract river	......	200
Squannaroos, do.	......	120
Shallattoos, do.	......	100
Shamwappoms, on the heads of Cataract and Tapteel rivers	......	400
39. Cutsahnim Nation, on both sides of the Columbia, and on the northern branches of the Tapteel river, and also on Wahnaachee river	60	1,200
Lahannna Nation, on both sides of the Columbia	120	2,000
Coospellar Nation, on a river which falls into the Columbia	30	1,600
Wheelpo Nation, on both sides of Clarke's river	130	2,500
Hihighenimmo Nation, from the entrance of the Lastaw into Clarke's river, on both sides of the Lastaw, as high as the forks	45	1,300
Lartielo Nation, at the falls of the Lastaw river, below the Great Wayton lake, on both sides of the river	30	600
Skeetsomish Nation, on a small river of the same name	12	2,000
Micksucksealton Tribe of the Tushshepah, on Clarke's river, above the great falls of that river, in the Rocky Mountains	25	300
Hohilpos, a tribe of the Tushshepah, on Clarke's river, above the Micksucksealtons, in the Rocky Mountains	25	300
Tushshepahs Nation, on a north fork of Clarke's river in spring and summer, and the fall and winter on the Missouri. The Ootlashoots is a branch of this nation	35	430
Total	1778	80,000

F.

PLAN OF COLONIZATION, OR REMOVAL OF THE INDIAN TRIBES OF THE UNITED STATES WEST OF THE MISSISSIPPI IN 1825.

JAMES MONROE.

To the Senate of the United States:

Being deeply impressed with the opinion that the removal of the Indian tribes from the lands which they now occupy within the limits of the several States and Territories, to the country lying westward and northward thereof, within our acknowledged boundaries, is of very high importance to our Union, and may be accomplished on conditions and in a manner to promote the interest and happiness of those tribes, the attention of the Government has been long drawn, with great solicitude, to the object. For the removal of the tribes within the limits of the State of Georgia, the motive has been peculiarly strong, arising from the compact with that State, whereby the United States are bound to extinguish the Indian title to the lands within it, whenever it may be done peaceably and on reasonable conditions. In the fulfilment of this compact, I have thought that the United States should act with a generous spirit; that they should omit nothing which should comport with a liberal construction of the instrument, and likewise be in accordance with the just rights of those tribes. From the view which I have taken of the subject, I am satisfied that, in the discharge of these important duties, in regard to both the parties alluded to, the United States will have to encounter no conflicting interests with either; on the contrary, that the removal of the tribes from the territory which they now inhabit, to that which was designated in the message at the commencement of the session, which would accomplish the object for Georgia, under a well-digested plan for their government and civilization, which should be agreeable to themselves, would not only shield them from impending ruin, but promote their welfare and happiness. Experience has clearly demonstrated, that, in their present state, it is impossible to incorporate them, in such masses, in any form whatever, into our system. It has also demonstrated with equal certainty, that, without a timely anticipation of, and provision against, the dangers to which they are exposed, under causes which it will be difficult if not impossible to control, their degradation and extermination will be inevitable.

The great object to be accomplished is the removal of those tribes to the territory designated, on conditions which shall be satisfactory to themselves, and honorable to the United States. This can be done only by conveying to each tribe a good title to an adequate portion of land, to which it may consent to remove, and by providing for it there a system of internal government, which shall protect their property from invasion, and, by the regular progress of improvement and civilization, prevent that degeneracy which has generally marked the transition from the one to the other state.

I transmit, herewith, a report from the Secretary of War, which presents the best estimate which can be formed from the documents in that Department, of the number of Indians within our States and Territories, and of the amount of lands held by the several tribes within each; of the state of the country lying northward and westward thereof, within our acknowledged boundaries; of the parts to which the Indian title has already been extinguished, and of the conditions on which other parts, in an amount which may be adequate to the object contemplated, may be obtained. By this report it appears that the Indian title has already been extinguished to extensive tracts in that quarter, and that other portions may be acquired to the extent desired, on very moderate conditions. Satisfied, I also am, that the removal purposed is not only practicable, but that the advantages attending it, to the Indians, may be made so apparent to them, that all the tribes, even those most opposed, may be induced to accede to it, at no very distant day.

The digest of such a government, with the consent of the Indians, which should be endowed with sufficient power to meet all the objects contemplated, to connect the several tribes together in a bond of amity, and preserve order in each; to prevent intrusions on their property; to teach them, by regular instructions, the arts of civilized life, and make them a civilized people, is an object of very high importance. It is the powerful consideration which we have to offer to these tribes as an inducement to relinquish the lands on which they now reside, and to remove to those which are designated. It is not doubted that this arrangement will present considerations of sufficient force to surmount all their prejudices in favor of the soil of their nativity, however strong they may be. Their elders have sufficient intelligence to discern the certain progress of events, in the present train, and sufficient virtue, by yielding to momentary sacrifices, to protect their families and posterity from inevitable destruction. They will also perceive that they may thus attain an elevation to which, as communities, they could not otherwise aspire.

To the United States, the proposed arrangement offers many important advantages in addition to those which have been already enumerated. By the establishment of such a government over these tribes, with their consent, we become, in reality, their benefactors. The relation of conflicting interests which has heretofore existed between them and our frontier settlements, will cease. There will be no more wars between them and the United States. Adopting such a government, their movement will be in harmony with us, and its good effect be felt throughout the whole extent of our territory, to the Pacific. It may fairly be presumed, that, through the agency of such a government, the condition of all the tribes inhabiting that vast region may be essentially improved; that permanent peace may be preserved with them, and our commerce be much extended.

With a view to this important object, I recommend it to Congress to adopt, by solemn declaration, certain fundamental principles, in accord with those above suggested, as the basis of such arrangements as may be entered into with the several tribes, to the strict observance of which the faith of the nation shall be pledged. I recommend it also to Congress to provide by law for the appointment of a suitable number of Commissioners, who shall, under the direction of the President, be authorized to visit, and explain to the several tribes, the objects of the government, and to make with them, according to their instructions, such arrangements as shall be best calculated to carry those objects into effect.

A negotiation is now depending with the Creek nation for the cession of lands held by it within the limits of Georgia, and with a reasonable prospect of success. It is presumed, however, that the result will not be known during the present session of Congress. To give effect to this negotiation, and to the negotiations which it is proposed to hold with all the other tribes within the limits of the several States and Territories, on the principles and for the purposes stated, it is recommended that an adequate appropriation be now made by Congress.

JAMES MONROE.

WASHINGTON, 27*th January*, 1825.

DEPARTMENT OF WAR,
24*th January*, 1825.

IN obedience to your instructions, directing a statement of the names of the Indian tribes now remaining within the limits of the different States and Territories, the number of each tribe, and the quantity of land claimed by each; also, an estimate of the amount of appropriation necessary to commence the work of moving the Indians beyond the Mississippi, to be laid before you, I herewith enclose a report from Colonel M'Kenney, to whom is assigned the charge of the Office of Indian Affairs, which contains all of the information required, except the estimate of the sum that will be necessary to be appropriated to commence the removal.

In forming the estimate required, it will be necessary to take a summary view of the number and position of the several tribes to be removed, and to form a plan in detail for their removal.

It appears, by the report enclosed, that there are in the several States and Territories, not including the portion of Michigan Territory west of Lake Michigan, and north of the State of Illinois, about 97,000 Indians, and that they occupy about 77,000,000 of acres of land.

The arrangement for the removal, it is presumed, is not intended to comprehend the small remnants of tribes in Maine, Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island, Virginia, and South Carolina, amounting to 3,023. To these also may be added the remnants of tribes remaining in Louisiana, amounting to 1,313, as they are each of them so few in number, that, it is believed, very little expense or difficulty will be found in their removal, making together 4,336, which, subtracted from the 97,000, the entire number in the States and Territories, will leave 92,664 to be removed. Of these, there are residing in the northern parts of the States of Indiana, Illinois, in the peninsula of Michigan, and New York, including the Ottowas in Ohio, about 13,150; which, I would respectfully suggest, might be removed, with advantage, to the country west of Lake Michigan, and north of the State of Illinois. The climate and the nature of the country are much more favorable to their habits than that west of the Mississippi; to which may be added, that the Indians in New York have already commenced a settlement at Green Bay, and exhibit some disposition to make it a permanent one; and that the Indians referred to in Indiana, Illinois, in the Peninsula of Michigan, and Ohio, will find, in the country designated, kindred tribes, with whom they may be readily associated. These considerations, with the greater facility with which they could be collected in that portion of the country, compared with that of collecting them west of the Mississippi, form a strong inducement to give it the preference. Should the proposition be adopted, the Indians in question might be gradually collected, as it became necessary, from time to time, to extinguish the Indian title in Indiana, Illinois and Michigan, without incurring any additional expense, other than what is usually incidental to such extinguishment. Deducting, then, the Indians residing in the north-western parts of Indiana, Illinois, in Michigan, and New York, with the Ottawas in Ohio, amounting to 13,150, from 92,664, will leave but 79,514. It is proper to add that a late treaty with the Quapaws stipulates and provides for their removal, and that they also may be deducted from the number for whose removal provision ought to be made. They are estimated at 700, which, deducted from 79,514, will leave 78,814 to be removed west of the State of Missouri and Territory of Arkansas, should the views of the Department be adopted.

Of these, there are estimated to reside in the States of North Carolina, Georgia, Tennessee, Alabama, and Mississippi, 53,625, consisting of Cherokees, Creeks, Choctaws, and Chickasaws; and claiming about 33,573,176 acres, including the claim of the Cherokees, in North Carolina; 3,082 in Ohio, and in the southern and middle parts of Indiana and Illinois, consisting of Wyandotts, Shawnees, Senecas, Delawares, Kaskaskias, and Miami and Eel Rivers; 5,000 in Florida, consisting of Seminoles and remnants of other tribes; and the remainder in Missouri and Arkansas, consisting of Delawares, Kickapoos, Shawnees, Weas, Ioways, Piankeshaws, Cherokees, Quapaws, and Osages.

The next subject of consideration will be, to acquire a sufficient tract of country west of the state of Missouri and territory of Arkansas, in order to establish permanent settlements, in that quarter, of the tribes which are proposed to be removed. The country between the Red River and the Arkansas has already been allotted to the Choctaws, under the treaty of the 18th October, 1820. The country north of the river Arkansas, and immediately west of the State of Missouri, is held almost entirely by the Osages and the Kanzes. The principal settlement of the former being on the Osage river, not far west of the western boundary of Missouri; and of the latter, on the Missouri river, near Cow Island. There is a band of the Osages situated on the Verdigris, a branch of the Arkansas. Governor Clark has been already instructed to take measures to remove them from the Verdigris, to join the other bands on the Osage river. To carry this object into effect, and to extinguish the title of the Osages upon the Arkansas, and in the State of Missouri; and also to extinguish the title of the Kanzes to whatever tract of country may be necessary to effect the views of the government, will be the first object of expenditure; and would require an appropriation, it is believed, of not less than 30,000 dollars. After this is effected, the next will be, to allot a portion of the country to each of the tribes, and to commence the work of removal. The former could be effected, by vesting in the President discretionary power to make the location: and the latter, by commencing with the removal of the Cherokees, Piankeshaws, Weas, Shawnees, Kickapoos, and Delawares, who now occupy different tracts of country, lying in the northwestern portion of the Arkansas territory, and the southwestern portion of the State of Missouri. It is believed that the Cherokees, to whom has been allotted a country lying between the Arkansas and White rivers, will very readily agree to removing their eastern boundary farther west, on the consideration, that, for the lands thereby ceded, they may have assigned to them an equal quantity farther west, as they have evinced a strong disposition to prevent the settlement of the whites to the west of them. It is probable, that this arrangement could be effected by an appropriation of a few thousand dollars, say five thousand, for the expense of holding the treaty. Nor is it believed that there will be any difficulty in inducing the Piankeshaws, Weas, Shawnees, Kickapoos, and Delawares, to occupy a position, that may be assigned to them west of the state of Missouri; or that the operation will be attended with any great expense. The kindred tribes, in the states of Ohio and Indiana, including the Wyandotts, the Senecas, and the Miamies and Eel rivers, in those States; and the Kaskaskias, in Illinois, it is believed, might be induced, without much difficulty, to join them, after those now residing in Missouri are fixed in their new position, west of that state. Of the sum that will be necessary for this purpose, it is difficult to form an estimate. These tribes amount to 3,082. The expense of extinguishing their title to the lands occupied by them, will probably be high in comparison with the price which has been usually given for lands in that quarter, as they, particularly the Indians in Ohio, have made some advances in civilization, and considerable improvements on their lands. The better course would be, to remove them gradually, commencing with those tribes which are most disposed to leave their present settlements, and, if this arrangement should be adopted, an appropriation of 20,000 dollars would be sufficient to commence with.

It may, however, be proper to remark, that these tribes, together with those in New York, have indicated a disposition to join the Cherokees on the Arkansas, and that a deputation of the former, with a deputation from those Cherokees, are now on their way to the seat of Government, in order to make some arrangements to carry the proposed union into effect. Should it be accomplished, it would vary the arrangement which has been suggested in relation to them, but will not, probably, materially vary the expense.

It only remains now to consider the removal of the Indians in Florida, and the four southern tribes residing in North Carolina, Georgia, Tennessee, Alabama, and Mississippi.

It is believed that immediate measures need not be taken with regard to the Indians in Florida. By the Treaty of the 18th September, 1823, they ceded the whole of the Northern portion of Florida, with the exception of a few small reservations, and have had allotted to them the southern part of the peninsula; and it is probable that no inconvenience will be felt for many years, either by the inhabitants of Florida, or the Indians, under the present arrangement.

Of the four southern tribes, two of them, the Cherokees and Choctaws, have already allotted to them a tract of country west of the Mississippi. That which has been allotted to the latter, is to be sufficiently ample for the whole nation, should they emigrate; and if an arrangement, which is believed not to be impracticable, could be made between them and the Chickasaws, who are their neighbors, and of similar habits and dispositions, it would be sufficient for the accommodation of both. A sufficient country should be reserved to the west of the Cherokees on the Arkansas, as a means of exchange with those who remain on the east. To the Creeks might be allotted a country between the Arkansas and Canadian river, which limits the northern boundary of the Choctaw possessions in that quarter. There is now pending with the Creeks a negotiation, under the appropriation of the last session, with a prospect, that the portion of that nation which resides within the limits of Georgia, may be induced, with the consent of the nation, to cede the country which they occupy for a portion of the one which it is proposed to allot for the Creek nation on the west of the Mississippi. Should the treaty prove successful, its stipulations will provide for the means of carrying it into effect, which will render any additional provision at present, unnecessary. It will be proper to open new communications with the Cherokees, Choctaws, and Chickasaws, for the purpose of explaining to them the views of the Government, and inducing them to remove beyond the Mississippi, on the principles and conditions which may be proposed to the other tribes. It is known, that there are many individuals of each of the tribes, who are desirous of settling west of the Mississippi, and should it be thought advisable, there can be no doubt, that if, by an adequate appropriation, the means were afforded the Government of bearing their expense, they would emigrate. Should it be thought that the encouragement of such emigration is desirable, the sum of 40,000 dollars, at least, would be required to be appropriated for this object, to be applied under the discretion of the President of the United States. The several sums which have been recommended to be appropriated, if the proposed arrangements should be adopted, amount to 95,000 dollars. The appropriation may be made either general or specific, as may be occasioned most advisable.

I cannot, however, conclude without remarking, that no arrangement ought to be made which does not regard the interest of the Indians, as well as our own, and that to protect the interest of the former, decisive measures ought to be adopted to prevent the hostility, which must almost necessarily take place if left to themselves, among tribes hastily brought together, of discordant character; and many of which are actuated by feelings far from being friendly towards each other. But the preservation of peace between them will not alone be sufficient to render their condition as eligible in their new situation, as it is in their present. Almost all of the tribes proposed to be affected by the arrangement, are more or less advanced in the arts of civilized life, and there is scarcely one of them, which have not the establishment of schools in the nation, affording at once the means of moral, religious, and intellectual improvement. These schools have been established for the most part by religious societies, with the countenance and aid of the Government, and on every principle of humanity the continuance of similar advantages of education ought to be extended to them in their new residence. There is another point which appears to be indispensable to be guarded, in order to render the condition of this race less afflicting. One of the greatest evils to which they are subject, is that incessant pressure of our population, which forces them from seat to seat, without allowing time for that moral and intellectual improvement, for which they appear to be naturally eminently susceptible. To guard against this evil, so fatal to the race, there ought to be the strongest and the most solemn assurance, that the country given them should be theirs, as a permanent home for themselves and their posterity, without being disturbed by the encroachments of our citizens. To such assurance, if there should be added a system by which the Government, without destroying their independence, would gradually unite the several tribes under a simple, but enlightened system of government and laws, formed on the principles of our own, and to which, as their own people would partake in it, they would, under the influence of the contemplated improvement, at no distant day, become prepared, the arrangments which have been proposed would prove to the Indians and their posterity a permanent blessing. It is believed that, if they could be assured that peace and friendship would be maintained among the several tribes: that the advantages of education which they now enjoy would be extended to them; that they should have a permanent and solemn guarantee for their possessions, and receive the countenance and aid of the Government for the gradual extension of its privileges to them, there would be among all the tribes a disposition to accord with the views of the Government. There are now in most of the tribes, well educated, sober, and reflecting individuals, who are afflicted at the present condition of the Indians, and despondent at their future prospects. Under the operation of existing causes, they behold the certain degradation, misery, and even the final annihilation of their race, and no doubt would gladly embrace any arrangement which would promise to elevate them in the scale of civilization, and arrest the destruction which now awaits them. It is conceived that one of the most cheap, certain, and desirable modes of effecting the object in view, would be, for Congress to establish fixed principles, such as have been suggested as the basis of the proposed arrangement, and to authorize the President to convene, at some suitable point, all of the well informed, intelligent, and influential individuals of the tribes to be affected by it, in order to explain to them the views of the Government, and to pledge the faith of the nation to the arrangements, that might be adopted. Should such principle be established by Congress, and the President be vested with suitable authority to convene the individuals as proposed, and suitable provision be made to meet the expense, great confidence is felt, that a basis of a system might be laid, which, in a few years, would entirely effect the object in view, to the mutual benefit of the Government and the Indians, and which, in its operations, would effectually arrest the calamitous course of events to which they must be subject without a radical change in the present system. Should it be thought advisable to call such a convention, as one of the means of effecting the object in view, an additional appropriation of 30,000 dollars will be required; making in the whole, 125,000 dollars to be appropriated.

All of which is respectfully submitted.

J. C. CALHOUN.

To the President of the United States.

DEPARTMENT OF WAR,
Office of Indian Affairs, Jan. 10th, 1825.

SIR: I have the honor, herewith, to submit, in compliance with your directions, a table containing a statement of the names of the Indian tribes now remaining within the limits of the different States and Territories; the number of each tribe; and the quantity of land claimed by each.

There is no land assigned, as will be seen on reference to the table, to the Indians in Louisiana; yet, it is believed, the Caddoes have a claim, but to what extent is not known. So, also, have the Cherokees, (whose numbers are not known,) to a tract in the northwest corner of the State of North Carolina; which, it is believed, does not exceed 200,000 acres. In New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and perhaps in Maryland, a few Indians are remaining, but how many, or what quantity of land is owned by them, if any, there are no means of ascertaining.

There are now remaining within the limits of the different States and Territories, as is shown by the table, sixty-four tribes and remnants of tribes of Indians, whose "names" and "numbers" are given; who number, in the aggregate, 129,266 souls; and who claim 77,402,318 acres of land.

It will be seen by adverting to the table, that the Indians residing north of the State of Illinois, east of the Mississippi, and west of the Lakes, are comprehended in the estimate of the number in Michigan Territory; although, in estimating the quantity of land held by Indians in that Territory, the portion only, so held in the peninsula of Michigan, is estimated. It was found impossible, from any documents in possession of this office, to distinguish the number of Chippeways and Ottawas residing in the peninsula of Michigan from those residing on the west side of Lake Michigan. It is, however, believed, that the whole number residing in the peninsula, does not exceed 3,500; and these, as has been stated, are principally of the Chippeway and Ottawa tribes.

It may be proper also to remark, that of the 6,400 Sacs and Foxes who are included in the estimate as part of the 129,266 and who occupy lands on both sides the Mississippi, not more than one-third of that number are supposed to reside on the east side; and, of the 5,200 Osages, who, by the table, are assigned to Missouri and Arkansas, it is believed, not more than one-third of that number reside within the State of Missouri and Territory of. Arkansas. If, therefore, the number assumed for the peninsula of Michigan be correct, and two-thirds of the Sacs and Foxes, as is believed to be the fact, reside on the West of the Mississippi; and two-thirds of the Osages west of Missouri, and north of Arkansas, there will remain "within the limits of the different States and Territories,"—confining the Michigan Territory to the peninsula—97,384 Indians, possessing, (if the 200,000 acres which are believed to be claimed by the Cherokees in North Carolina, be added,) 77,602,318 acres of land.

In obtaining this information, resort has been had, for the "names" and "numbers" of the Indian tribes, to the reports to this office, and to other sources of information which are deemed to be the most accurate; and, for the quantity of land claimed by them, to the files of this office; to the General Land Office; and to computations carefully made from the best maps, by Col. Roberdeau, of the Topographical Bureau.

The 4,000,000 of acres assumed as the quantity claimed by the Cherokees in Arkansas, although but an estimate, is believed to be nearly correct. The precise quantity, however, cannot be ascertained, until it is known how much they ceded on this side the Mississippi, for which, by the treaty of 1817, they are to receive an equal number of acres on the other.

I have the honor to accompany this with a note from Col. Roberdeau, in relation to the difference between his estimate of last year, of the lands claimed in Georgia, and his recent corrected computation of them.

I have the honor to be, very respectfully,
Your most obedient servant,
THOS. L. M'KENNEY.

To the Hon. the Secretary of War.

TOPOGRAPHICAL BUREAU,
January 10*th*, 1825.

The quantity of land in the State of Georgia, not ceded to the United States by Indians, was, last year, reported at 10,240,000 square acres; upon a review of the calculations, and having more correct documents than were then referred to, the whole quantity in the State appears to be 9,537,920 acres, of which 5,292,160 are of the Cherokees, and 4,245,760 of the Creeks, as nearly as can be computed.

I. ROBERDEAU,
Lt.-Col. Top. Engineers.

Col. THOS. L. M'KENNEY,
Indian Department.

F.

STATEMENT, SHOWING THE NAMES AND NUMBERS

Of the different Tribes of Indians now remaining within the Limits of the several States and Territories, and the quantity of Land claimed by them respectively. (1825.)

Names of the Tribes.	States or Territories in which located.	Number of each tribe.	No. in each State or Ter'y.	No. of acres claimed by each tribe.	REMARKS.
St. John's Indians	Maine	300			No information as to their lands.
Passamaquoddies	do	379		100	
Penobscots	do	277		92,160	
			956		
Marshpee	Massachusetts	320			All the Indians in this State reside on their respective reservations, at the places by which they are designated. The quantity of land occupied by them is not known, nor is there any information in this office by which it can be ascertained.
Herring Pond	do	40			
Martha's Vineyard	do	340			
Troy	do	50			
			750		
Narragansett	Rhode Island		420	3,000	
Mohegan	Connecticut	300		4,000	
Stonington	do	50		300	
Groton	do	50			No information as to their lands.
			400		
Senecas	New York	2,325			These Indians own and possess together sixteen reservations of land, containing in the whole, according to the report of the agent, on file in this office, about the number of acres stated.
Tuscaroras	do	253			
Oneidas	do	1,096			
Onondagas	do	446			
Cayugas	do	90		246,675	
Stockbridge	do	273			
Brotherton	do	360			
St. Regis Indians	do	300			
			5,143		
Nottaways	Virginia		47	27,000	
Catawbas	South Carolina		450	144,000	
Wyandotts	Ohio	542		163,840	The quantity of land claimed by these tribes is contained in several reservations, secured to them respectively by treaty. Besides these, there are a number of other reservations secured separately to individual Indians, containing, together, 16,200 acres; making the whole quantity claimed, in this State, 409,501 acres, according to information obtained from General Land Office.
Shawnees	do	800		117,615	
Senecas	do	551		55,505	
Delawares	do	80		5,760	
Ottawas	do	377		50,581	
			2,350		

F. [CONTINUED.]

INDIANS REMAINING WITHIN THE LIMITS OF THE SEVERAL STATES, &c.

Names of the Tribes.	States or Territories in which located.	Numbers of each tribe.	No. in each State or Ter'y.	Number of acres claimed by each tribe.	REMARKS.
Wyandotts	Michigan Territory	37		7,057,920	These tribes reside, in some degree, promiscuously, and the number stated comprehends all those inhabiting the country north of Illinois, and between Lake Michigan and Mississippi rivers, as well as those residing in the peninsula formed by Lakes Erie and Michigan, and the northern boundary of Indiana. The quantity of land mentioned is that claimed by the Indians in the peninsula only; but in what proportion by the respective tribes, cannot be ascertained.
Pottawatamies	do.	106			
Chippewas and Ottawas, the former by far the most numerous	do.	18,473			
Menomeenees	do.	3,900			
Winnebagoes	do.	5,800			
			28,316		
Miami, and Eel River Indians	Indiana		1,073	10,104,000	A part of these lands is claimed by the Pottawatamies and Chippewas, (who reside partly in this State and in Illinois,) but in what proportion there are no means of ascertaining.
Menomeenees	Illinois	270		5,314,560	This is the whole quantity of land claimed by Indians in this State, including the Pottawatamies and Chippewas; but there are no means of distinguishing the quantity owned by each tribe. The number of Sauks and Foxes embraces those on both sides of the Mississippi; there being no means of ascertaining the particular number of them in Illinois.
Kaskaskias	do.	36			
Sauks and Foxes	do.	6,400			
			6,706		
Pottawatamies and Chippewas	Indiana and Illinois		3,900		Claim lands in both States; quantity claimed by them separately from other tribes, not known.
Creeks	Georgia and Alabama	20,000		33,571,176	The quantity of land here stated is the whole quantity claimed by all these tribes within the States mentioned; of which The Creeks claim in Georgia 4,245,760 The Cherokees, in do. 5,292,160 9,537,920 The Creeks and Cherokees, in Alabama 5,995,200 The Choctaws, do. 781,440 The Chickasaws, do. 495,536 7,272,576 The Cherokees, in Tennessee 1,055,680 The Choctaws and Chickasaws, in Mississippi 15,705,000
Cherokees	Georgia, Alabama, and Tennessee	9,000			
Choctaws	Miss'pi and Alabama	21,000			
Chickasaws	Mississippi	3,625			
Seminoles, and other remnants of tribes	Florida Territory		5,000	4,032,640	Quantity of land computed from the survey made by Col. Gadsden.

F. [CONTINUED.]

INDIANS REMAINING WITHIN THE LIMITS OF THE SEVERAL STATES, &c.

Names of the Tribes.	States or Territories in which located.	Numbers of each tribe.	No. in each State or Ter'y.	Number of acres claimed by each tribe.	REMARKS.
Billoxie	Louisiana	55			These Indians are all hunters, and reside principally in Red River, in this State. There is no information as to the lands claimed by them. Their numbers are taken from the report of the agent, on file in this office.
Apolashe	do.	45			
Pascagoula	do.	111			
Addees	do.	27			
Yaltasse	do.	36			
Coshattees	do.	180			
Caddow	do.	450			
Delawares	do.	51			
Choctaws	do.	178			
Shawnees	do.	110			
Natchitoches	do.	25			
Quapaws	do.	8			
Piankeshaws	do.	27			
			1,313		
Delawares	Missouri	1,800		21,120	Hold the lands they occupy under the treaty with them, of 3d Oct. 1818.
Kickapoos	do.	2,200		9,600	Hold their lands under treaties of 30th July and 30th Aug. 1819.
Shawnees	do.	1,383		14,086	These Indians emigrated, a few years ago, from the east of the Mississippi to their present residence in this State.
Weas	do.	327			Under the treaties of 1818 and 1820, the Weas sold out all their claim to lands in Indiana, Ohio, and Illinois, and emigrated to this State. There is no information as to the lands now owned or occupied by them.
Ihoways	do.	1,100			No information as to the lands claimed by these Indians.
Osages	Missouri and Ark. Ter.	5,200		3,491,840	The Osages reside partly in Missouri and in Arkansas, and the greater portion west of both. Of the lands stated as claimed by them, 2,737,920 acres are in the former, and 753,920 acres in the latter.
Piankeshaws	do.	207			No information as to their lands.
Cherokees	Arkansas Territory	6,000		4,000,000	The Cherokees claim about this quantity of land in this Territory, under treaties 1817 and 1819; the precise quantity not yet ascertained.
Quapaws	do.	700			These Indians have recently sold out all their claim, and are about to remove beyond the limits of the Territory.
Choctaws	do.			8,858,560	Very few or none of this tribe reside in the Territory; but they claim in it the quantity of land stated under the treaty of 18th Oct. 1820.
			18,917		

F. [CONTINUED.]

INDIANS REMAINING WITHIN THE LIMITS OF THE SEVERAL STATES, &c.

RECAPITULATION.

STATES AND TERRITORIES.	Whole number of Indians.	Whole quantity of land claimed.	REMARKS.
		Acres.	
Maine	956	92,260	
Massachusetts	750		
Rhode Island	420	3,000	
Connecticut	400	4,300	
New York	5,143	246,675	
Virginia	47	27,000	
South Carolina	450	144,000	
Ohio	2,350	409,501	
Michigan Territory	28,316	7,057,920	The number of Indians embraces those in the country west of Lake Michigan, as well as those in the peninsula of Michigan; the information being such as not to admit of a separate enumeration.
Indiana	11,579	10,104,000	Some of the Indians claiming lands in these States reside partly in both; the particular number in either cannot therefore be stated.
Illinois		5,314,560	
Georgia	53,625	9,537,920	The Indians claiming lands in these States do not all reside in any one of them, except the Chickasaws; and it cannot therefore be stated what is the particular number residing in each State.
Alabama		7,272,576	
Tennessee		1,055,680	
Mississippi		15,705,000	
Florida Territory	5,000	4,032,640	
Louisiana	1,313		
Missouri	18,917	2,782,726	The Osages and Piankeshaws are scattered in Missouri and Arkansas, and most of the former beyond the limits of either; it cannot therefore be stated what is the particular number of Indians in either.
Arkansas Territory		13,612,560	
	129,266	77,402,318	

DEPARTMENT OF WAR,

Office Indian Affairs, Jan. 10, 1825.

THOS. L. M'KENNEY.

G.

OFFICIAL CORRESPONDENCE.

DEPARTMENT OF WAR,
February 9, 1829.

SIR:—I would respectfully refer to a communication of this date upon the subject of our Indian relations generally, as containing the information called for by the resolution of the House of Representatives of the 15th ultimo.

Very respectfully,
I have the honor to be
Your obedient servant,
P. B. PORTER.

To the Speaker of the House of Representatives.

DEPARTMENT OF WAR,
February 9, 1829.

SIR:—In the annexed report of the War Department, which accompanied the President's message at the commencement of the present session, I stated that Governor Cass, and Lewis and Clark, having been invited to the seat of Government for that purpose, were engaged in preparing for the consideration of Congress a revised system of laws and regulations on the subject of our Indian affairs, the administration of which had become exceeding difficult and embarrassing, on account of the numerous existing statutes on the subject, passed at different periods, and often under different views of policy; and which, never having been revised since the commencement of the present Government, were the frequent sources of discordant opinions and conflicting measures among the numerous functionaries to whom this branch of the public service is entrusted. And I now have the honor to submit, in compliance with the intimation then given, the result of the labors of the gentlemen above named, to the House of Representatives, with a respectful but earnest recommendation that the subject may receive the early consideration to which its merits, in the opinion of the Department, entitle it.

The report of Governor Cass and General Clark to the Department, herewith transmitted, explains the general views by which they have been governed in the execution of the task committed to them, and the objects of the several papers accompanying the report, and forming the several parts of the proposed system. These papers are,

1st. A bill for the general regulation of the intercourse with the Indians, and of all subjects connected therewith.

The effect of this bill, should it receive the sanction of Congress, will be to embrace the whole policy of the Government, and comprise all its legislation on Indian intercourse, and every other subject connected therewith, in one statute. The greater part of this bill is made up of literal transcripts of the provisions of existing laws, interspersed with such additions to, and occasional variations from, the present laws, as seemed necessary to give integrity and harmony to the whole system. The copious marginal notes inserted opposite to the several sections will fully explain their respective objects and bearing.

2d. A bill providing for the payment of all annuities due from the United States to the Indians and Indian tribes.

3d. A code of regulations for the government of the Indian Department, and for the general administration of its affairs.

4th. A tabular statement, exhibiting a view of the situation and numbers of the various Indian tribes within the United States.

5th. The copy of a letter addressed to the Hon. T. H. Benton, of the Committee on Indian Affairs in the Senate, describing the present condition and circumstances of the Indian trade.

The able and lucid manner in which these several subjects are presented in the preceding papers renders any additional remarks by this Department unnecessary.

As connected with the subjects of this communication, I transmit herewith a statement, prepared by the officer superintending the Bureau of Indian Affairs, showing the names of the superintendents, agents, and sub-agents of Indian Affairs within the United States.

I have the honour to be your obedient servant,

P. B. PORTER.

Hon. ANDREW STEVENSON,
Speaker of the House of Representatives.

WASHINGTON, *February* 4, 1829.

SIR: — In the execution of the duty assigned to us, we have the honor to transmit for your consideration the accompanying papers, which contain the result of our inquiries into the subject of Indian affairs.

1. A bill for the general regulation of the intercourse with the Indians, and of all subjects connected therewith.

2. A bill providing for the payment of all annuities due from the United States to Indians and to Indian tribes.

3. A code of regulations for the Government of the Department, and for the general administration of its affairs.

4. A tabular statement, exhibiting a view of the situation and numbers of the various Indian tribes within the United States.

5. The copy of a letter addressed to the Hon. Thomas H. Benton, of the Committee on Indian Affairs, in the Senate, describing the present condition and circumstances of the Indian trade.

The whole subject is so fully considered in these papers, that any farther explanation is deemed unnecessary. The marginal remarks annexed to the first bill, and the notes accompanying the code of regulation, fully elucidate the various topics which are embraced by them. It has been one object to retain, as far as possible, the existing provisions of the laws, and, where there was no reason to alter it, the phraseology. If the proposed additions and alterations are printed in one type, and the literal transcript from the present statutes in another, the changes contemplated by us will readily appear.

We need not enlarge upon the difficulties attending this first attempt to reduce to systematic arrangement the complicated concerns connected with and growing out of our Indian relations. It is a business of detail, not easily regulated by general principles. It embraces within its operation a great variety of objects, relating not only to the Indians, but to our citizens, and involving political relations highly important to the frontiers. Disbursing officers, charged with special duties, can easily and safely execute them. A paymaster can make his payments without risk upon his muster rolls, and officers of the subsistence or commissariat departments can purchase all necessary articles in open market, and apply them as directed in their instructions. And so in the administration of civil duties. They are generally regulated by statutory provisions, and by the practical instructions under them. But an Indian agent is stationed upon the frontiers, as the medium of communication between the Government and its citizens and the Indians. How much food shall be given to a hungry Indian, or how much medicine to a sick one? what prosecutions shall be instituted? what expense shall be incurred in the apprehension of Indians who have violated our laws, and in the recovery of stolen property? what answers shall be given to public and private applications? All these, and a vast variety of other subjects, involve questions which must be settled by the circumstances of each case. We have endeavored to limit the field of discretion, and to provide in the regulations practical rules for the Government of the conduct of all officers in the Department. Time and experience will enable the proper authority to modify those which may be adopted, as their operation may hereafter require.

Very respectfully, sir, we have the honor to be your obedient servants,

WM. CLARK,
LEW. CASS.

Hon. Peter B. Porter, *Secretary of War.*

G.

TABULAR STATEMENT,

Exhibiting the Names and Situation of the various Tribes of Indians inhabiting the United States and their Territories, with an Estimate of the Number of each Tribe. Communicated by General Peter B. Porter, Secretary of War, 1829.

STOCK.	TRIBES.	Estimated numbers.	REMARKS CONCERNING THE SITUATION AND OTHER CIRCUMSTANCES OF THE TRIBES.
	IN THE STATES OF Maine, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, Pennsylvania, Virginia, North and South Carolina......	6,273	Small remnants of the eastern tribes are yet found in the States of Maine, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, and Virginia. The aggregate amount of all these, as estimated in the report of the War Department of January 27, 1825, is 2,573. To which, if the number remaining in Pennsylvania, estimated at 300, and the numbers in North and South Carolina, estimated at 300, be added, the whole number of all the Indians now found in the thirteen original States, excluding the Indians in New York, and the Cherokees in Georgia, will be as here stated.
Huron or Wyandot stock..........	Wyandots...........	600	The principal portion of this tribe occupies a reservation of about 16 miles by 12 upon the heads of the Sandusky river, in Ohio. Another contains about 16,000 acres upon Blanchard's Fork. A small band, containing about 40 persons, live upon the river Huron of Lake Erie, in Michigan Territory. They hold a reservation of about 4,000 acres. The residue of the tribe, amounting probably to 100 persons, lives upon the river Aux Canards, in Upper Canada. The number here stated embraces only those living in the United States. They have ceded all their territorial rights to the United States, except the reservations mentioned, and a few small tracts of little importance.
	Senecas.............	2,900	These five tribes formed the confederacy known as the "Five Nations." Upwards of a century since, the Tuscaroras joined these from North Carolina, and since then they have been called the "Six Nations." The French called them the Iroquois. They owned the country upon the Mohawk, and extending west to Lake Erie. They were the most formidable Indians east of the Mississippi. The Senecas yet retain considerable reservations in New York, and have also two tracts reserved to them in Ohio; one in common with the Shawnee, upon the head of the Scioto, contains about 40,000 acres; the other for their sole use, upon the Sandusky river, contains about the same quantity. Their number in New York is estimated at about 2,300; those in Ohio, at 600. The Oneidas reside principally upon their land in New York; but they have begun to emigrate to the country upon Fox river, west of Lake Michigan, where about 70 of them are now located. The Mohawks are principally upon Grand river, in Upper Canada. The Onondagas, Cayugas, and Tuscaroras, live in New York.
	Oneidas	1,100	
	Onondagas..........	450	
	Cayugas	100	
	Mohawks............	......	
	Tuscaroras..........	250	

G. [CONTINUED.]

NAMES AND SITUATION OF VARIOUS INDIAN TRIBES, &c.

STOCK.	TRIBES.	Estimated numbers.	REMARKS CONCERNING THE SITUATION AND OTHER CIRCUMSTANCES OF THE TRIBES.
Algonquin, or Chippewa stocks.	Ottawas Chippewas Pattawatimas	4,000 15,000 6,500	These tribes are closely connected in their feelings, and in the management of their affairs. The Ottawas occupy some small reservations in Ohio, and in the Michigan Territory. They also own the country north of Grand River, upon Lake Michigan, and have one of the most flourishing settlements at L'Arbre Croche, which is anywhere to be found in the Indian country. The Illinois band of the Ottawas have also a joint interest with the Pattawatimas and Chippewas in their claim in Illinois, and in a part of the mineral region upon the Mississippi. They are also intermingled with those tribes in the country upon the west coast of Lake Michigan. The Pattiwatimas reside upon the St. Joseph of Lake Michigan, and upon the Tippecanoe and Kankakee, in Indiana. In Michigan Territory they have relinquished all their title, except to a few reservations, and in the State of Indiana they have ceded all the country east of the head of the Kankakee. A considerable band of them, united as is above stated, reside in Illinois, and another band upon the Rock river. They are also found upon the Milwaukee and Manetowalk streams, that enter Lake Michigan on its west side. The Chippewas occupy a very extensive region. They yet own the western shore of Lake Huron, from the mouth of the river au Sable, and their principal band resides upon the Saganaw bay and river. They possess the whole southern shore of Lake Superior, and the heads of the Mississippi, and are bounded westwardly by the Sioux territory. On the south they are met by the Winnebagoes and Menomonies. They are interested also with the other Illinois bands in lands in that State, and upon the Mississippi below the Ouisconsin.
	Miamies	1,050	This tribe occupies extensive reservations almost in the centre of the State of Indiana. Their annuities are large, and their land fertile and desirable. One of their bands, called Eel River Indians, is recognized in some of our treaties as a separate tribe; but they have no just claim to such a distinction.
	Menomonies	4,200	This tribe lives principally upon the streams emptying into Green Bay, where the wild rice abounds. This furnishes them with an abundant article of subsistence, from which they derive their name. They are closely connected with the Winnebagoes, and roam through all the country extending from Green Bay to the Mississippi.
	Shawnese	2,000	A portion of this tribe hold the Wapokonetta reservation in Ohio, containing about 92,000 acres, and another portion are jointly interested with the Senecas in the Lewistown reservation. About forty years since, a band of 1,200 emigrated from the Miami country, in Ohio, to Cape Girardeau, in Missouri, where a tract of land was assigned for their use by the Spanish Government, which has since been exchanged for a tract of fifty miles square on the Kanzas river.

G. [CONTINUED.]

NAMES AND SITUATION OF VARIOUS INDIAN TRIBES, &c.

STOCK.	TRIBES.	Estimated numbers.	REMARKS CONCERNING THE SITUATION AND OTHER CIRCUMSTANCES OF THE TRIBES.
Algonquin, or Chippewa stocks	Shawnese............	....	To this tract about three hundred and fifty Shawnese from Ohio, and about one hundred and fifty of the Cape Girardeau party have removed. The remainder of the band, which emigrated many years ago, live on White river, on Red river, in the Mississippi swamps, and in the State of Missouri, and are scattered in small hunting parties through the country. About 500 of the tribe yet live in Ohio, and there are about 100 on Red river, in Louisiana.
	Delawares...........	3,000	This tribe have almost all passed over the Mississippi. A few families live upon a reservation of nine sections adjoining the large Wyandot reservation in Ohio; and a small portion of them reside on the river Thames, in Upper Canada. The Munsees are so closely connected with the Delaware stocks, that they are not separately noticed here. A few of them have removed, and are removing, to the country upon Green Bay. By virtue of the provisions of the treaty of the St. Mary's in 1818, a tract of sixty miles square in the State of Missouri, near the south-western corner, was assigned to this tribe. The Delawares, who recently emigrated from Ohio and Indiana, live upon the reservation. Their numbers are about 2,500. When the party of the Shawnese emigrated from the Miami country, as stated above, they were accompanied by about six hundred Delawares, who are now dispersed with that band through the country.
	Kickapoos...........	2,200	This tribe originally occupied much of the country between the Wabash and Illinois, and west of the latter river. Their title east of the Mississippi is wholly extinguished; but a party of about 200 yet remain on the Mackinac river, in Illinois. They are expected, however, to join the main body of the tribe in the spring. The reservation secured to this tribe is near the centre of the State of Missouri, adjoining the Delaware reservation, and about equal to it in extent. There are about 600 living on this tract, and about 600 more are scattered through the country from Missouri to Texas.
	Weas.................	350	This tribe is a branch of the Miamies, and formerly lived upon the Wabash. They exchanged their country in that quarter for a grant in Missouri, which has since been exchanged for a tract twenty-five miles in length by fifteen in breadth, adjoining the Shawnese lands upon the Kanzas, and south of them. They are now actually moving to this spot. The Pawnees and Piankeshaws are interested with them.
	Peonies..............	120	This tribe formerly lived upon the Illinois and Wabash rivers, and are the remnants of the Illinois tribes. They hold one-fifth of the grant above described. They are now moving.
	Piankeshaws........	350	This tribe removed from the country about the Vermilion river in Indiana, and they own two-fifths of the same grant. They are also moving.

G. [CONTINUED.]

NAMES AND SITUATION OF VARIOUS INDIAN TRIBES, &c.

STOCK.	TRIBES.	Estimated numbers.	REMARKS CONCERNING THE SITUATION AND OTHER CIRCUMSTANCES OF THE TRIBES.
Algonquin, or Chippewa stocks.	Kaskaskias..........	8	But eight individuals of this tribe remain. They hold a small tract of land near the Kaskaskias river, in Illinois.
	Sacs.................. Foxes	5,000 1,600	These tribes are confederated together, and now form, in fact, but one tribe. By a treaty made with them at St. Louis, in 1804, they ceded all their territorial rights east of the Mississippi. They have, however, denied the validity of this cession, and it may perhaps be found necessary to compromise with them. They own the country upon the Mississippi river, from the northern boundary of Missouri to the upper Ioway river, and their claim extends to the Calumet river of the Missouri. The Ioways are jointly interested with them. About 200 Sacs and Foxes live on the Little Plate.
	Knisteneaux or Crees	3,000	They are connected with the Assiniboins, and occupy the country upon the Red, the Assiniboin, and Missouri rivers. They have recently begun to establish themselves upon the Missouri, owing to the diminution of game north of that river.
	Winnebagoes.......	5,800	These Indians live upon the Fox river of Lake Michigan, upon the Rock river of the Mississippi, and upon the Ouisconsin river. One of their bands is seated upon the west bank of the Mississippi, about eighty miles above Prairie du Chien. Their country extends, in general terms, from Rock river to the ridge in which the small streams head which run into the Mississippi. On the north, they are bounded by the Chippewas. The Menomonies ranged with them through much of the same region.
Sioux stock	Ioways............... Ottoes .... Missouris............	1,000 1,200 80	These three tribes speak dialects which are closely connected with the Winnebago. The Ioways are located on the Little Platte, about fifteen miles of the line of the State of Missouri. They claim the country between the Missouri river and the State line; but their claim has not been recognized. It was purchased in 1825 from the Kanzas, for the emigrating Indians, and their title is believed to have been good. They likewise claim, in common with the Sacs and Foxes, the lands previously described as in the possession of these latter tribes. The Ottoes live on the Big Platte, between its mouth and the Pawnees. They claim the land below their village on the Platte, and also on both sides of the Missouri, as far down as the Big Memoha river. With this tribe live the remains of the Missouri tribe, formerly much distinguished, and who once lived on the Missouri, between Charlton and Grand rivers. They are almost all consolidated with the Ottoes. A few of them live with the Osages.

G. [CONTINUED.]

NAMES AND SITUATION OF VARIOUS INDIAN TRIBES, &c.

STOCK.	TRIBES.	Estimated numbers.	REMARKS CONCERNING THE SITUATION AND OTHER CIRCUMSTANCES OF THE TRIBES.
Sioux stock..........	Sioux	15,000	This tribe occupies a very extensive region, stretching from the Mississippi to the Missouri, and bounded on the east by the Chippewa country, and on the south by that of the Sacs and Foxes. They are gradually extending west, and already touch the Mandan Territory. Some of their bands inhabit the possessions of the Hudson Bay Company. They are erratic in their habits, following the buffalo in their migrations, and depending upon them for a subsistence. Their different bands formerly had an annual meeting on the Jacques river of the Missouri, at which they arranged the business of the tribe. This custom is disappearing as they extend their conquest west, and the different bands have less and less connexion every year.
	Kanzas	1,200	These Indians live upon the Kanzas river, on a reservation commencing sixty miles from its mouth, and extending west to the head of the river. It is thirty miles in breadth.
	Owaha................	1,900	They hold the country on the south side of the Missouri, from Council Bluffs to the White Paint creeks.
	Osages...............	5,000	Their country begins twenty-five miles west of the Missouri line, and runs with fifty miles of breadth to the Mexican line. There are three bands of this tribe, the Great Osages, the Little Osages, and the Clermont's band. The Little Osages, and part of the Great Osages, live upon their reservations. Clermont's band, which is, in fact, a part of the Great Osages, live upon the Verdigris fork of the Arkansas.
	Quapaws.............	500	The Quapaws are nearly allied in language and manners to the Osages, and by the traditions of the latter they left the main body of the tribe while upon the Ohio river. They have been peculiarly unfortunate, and have ceded their whole country. They now live in the Caddo country on the Red river, in Louisiana, on lands assigned to them by the Caddos.
	Poncas...............	000	They live upon the L'eau qui Court river, and own the country to its sources.
	Assiniboins.........	8,000	Their country extends from the west side of the Sioux territory, north of the Missouri, to Milk river, and lies between the Missouri and Assiniboin rivers. It runs into the possessions of the Hudson's Bay Company. The tribe reside part of the time in that country, and part of the time in the United States, and are establishing themselves upon the Missouri.
Minataree stock.....	Gros Ventres, or Minatarees........	1,200	This tribe has been greatly reduced within a few years. Twenty years ago they numbered 1,200 warriors. During the past year they lost 100 warriors. This rapid diminution, common to all the tribes of this region, is the result of their perpetual hostilities. The Minatarees occupy the country on the south side of the Missouri, from Knife river to the Yellow Stone, and running back to the heads of the two last-mentioned rivers.

G. [CONTINUED.]

NAMES AND SITUATION OF VARIOUS INDIAN TRIBES, &c.

STOCK.	TRIBES.	Estimated numbers.	REMARKS CONCERNING THE SITUATION AND OTHER CIRCUMSTANCES OF THE TRIBES.
Minataree stock.....	Gros Ventres of the Prairie........	2,000	This band is wholly disconnected from the other Gros Ventres, and are at war with them. They live in common with the Blackfeet.
	Crow..................	4,500	These Indians live upon the Yellow Stone, and occupy the eastern side of the Rocky Mountains.
This tribe speak a language totally different from that of any of the tribes around them.	Mandons............	600	The Mandons, forty years ago, had twelve villages, each of which was more numerous than the whole tribe now is. They live on the Missouri, between Heart river and Knife river.
	Pawnees	12,000	The Pawnees own the country on the heads of the Republican fork of the Kanzas, and the Platte, to the Chayenne country. There are four great bands of this tribe: the Pawnee Republicans, living on the Republican fork of the Kanzas; the Pawnee Loups, living on the Loup fork of the Platte; the Grand Pawnees, living on the main branch of the Platte; and the Pawnee Piques, living in Texas, but sometimes roving in the territories of the United States. This enumeration includes the Pawnee Piques, estimated at four thousand.
	Arickaras	2,500	The country of this tribe is on the west side of the Missouri, and extends from the Chayenne river to the Heart river, and runs back to the Black Hills.
The language spoken by this tribe, so far as we are acquainted with it, seems to be an original one.	Chayennes..........	2,000	This tribe was driven from the Chayenne fork of the Red river of Lake Winnipeck, by the Assiniboins and Sioux, about sixty years since. They now live between the Platte and Missouri rivers, and upon the heads of the Chayenne river.
The language of this tribe also appears to be an original one.	Blackfeet............	1,500	These Indians live in the plains running from Milk river to the Rocky Mountains, and extending to the northern fork of Sashatchawin.

G. [CONTINUED.]

NAMES AND SITUATION OF VARIOUS INDIAN TRIBES, &c.

STOCK.	TRIBES.	Estimated numbers.	REMARKS CONCERNING THE SITUATION AND OTHER CIRCUMSTANCES OF THE TRIBES.
Probably of the Pandouca stock.	Arrepahas	4,000	These six tribes are supposed to have formed the great nation of the Padducas, described by the French writers as very numerous and powerful. The ancient designation is now applied to one small tribe only. They occupy the country east of the Rocky Mountains, on the heads of the Yellow Stone, Platte, Arkansas, and Rio del Norte. They are roving bands, who raise no corn, but depend for subsistence almost wholly upon buffaloes. They are but little known, having no traders among them, and being predatory in their habits.
	Kaskaias	2,000	
	Keawas	1,000	
	Marlain or Kite Indians	500	
	Kaninahoick	2,000	
	Padoucas proper	2,000	
	Caddos	450	These remnants of tribes, once powerful and numerous, occupy the country upon Red river, in Louisiana, and extend westerly to the Mexican frontier. The Caddoes were the actual owners of the country, and their claim extends 1,000 miles up Red river. By war and the small-pox they have been reduced to their present condition. They yet exercise considerable influence over the other tribes near them. They invited the Quapaws to settle among them.
	Beloxi	65	
	Asphalashe	45	
	Pascagoula	111	
	Addies	27	
	Yattapo	36	
	Coshatties	180	
	Natchitoches	25	
Although the Creeks, Choctaws, Chickasaws, Cherokees, and Florida Indians are classed together, yet we are inclined to believe that there is more than one primitive language spoken by them. The Choctaw and Chickasaw dialects are evidently members of the same family.	Creeks	20,000	This tribe resides principally in the eastern part of Alabama. They formerly extended into Georgia and Florida. Their possessions in Alabama are calculated to contain 3,000,000 of acres. Many of them are emigrating to the country west of the Mississippi, where a tract of land is assigned to them in the fork of the Verdigris and Arkansas rivers, west of the Cherokees, and south of the Osages. It is supposed that about 1,000 of them have removed to that region.
	Cherokees This tribe is computed to contain 15,000 persons, but 3,000 of that number live in North Carolina, and, having been previously enumerated in this table, are not included here.	12,000	These Indians claim an extensive country lying in North Carolina, Georgia, Tennessee, and Alabama. The quantity in Georgia is upwards of 5,000,000 of acres, in the north-west angle of the State. In the north-eastern angle of Alabama they claim about ——— acres, in North Carolina about a million of acres, and in the southern part of Tennessee about one million of acres. A treaty entered into with the Cherokees west of the Mississippi, in May, 1828, assigned to them a tract of country west of Missouri, and of a line running from the south-west corner of the State to Fort Smith, on the Arkansas. It is bounded north by land not yet allotted to any tribe, and by the Osage land for the distance of forty miles west of the Missouri line; on the west by a line running south from the Osage boundary, forty miles west of the Missouri, to the Arkansas; and on the south by the Arkansas river and the Canadian fork, and running thence west between that fork and the 36th parallel of north latitude to the Mexican boundary. It is supposed that about 6,000 individuals of this tribe live west of the Mississippi.

G. [CONTINUED.]

NAMES AND SITUATION OF VARIOUS INDIAN TRIBES, &c.

STOCK.	TRIBES.	Estimated numbers.	REMARKS CONCERNING THE SITUATION AND OTHER CIRCUMSTANCES OF THE TRIBES.
The Creek confederacy has been formed from a number of distinct tribes, speaking, originally, different languages, but having no apparent resemblance to the Choctaw or Chickasaw tongues. And the Cherokees speak a language different from all the others. Many of the Indians now living in Florida are evidently branches of the Creek stock. Further information is necessary to determine these questions.	Cherokees..........	....	They yet reside on the north side of the Arkansas, upon land assigned to them by treaties made in 1817 and 1819. These were abrogated by the treaty of May last, and they will soon remove to the tract allotted to them by that treaty. The number yet living in Georgia, Alabama, and Tennessee, is estimated at 6,000, and in North Carolina at 3,000.
	Choctaws............	20,000	These Indians live almost wholly in the State of Mississippi. Their claim in that State is computed at 7,000,000 of acres, and in Alabama at almost one million. They also possess, west of the Mississippi, about 9,000,000 of acres, situated between the Red river and the Canadian fork of the Arkansas. Very few persons of the tribe live upon this tract.
	Chickasaws..........	3,600	This tribe possesses the northern part of the State of Mississippi, amounting to about 7,000,000, and about 400,000 of acres in the north-western corner of Alabama. They reside almost altogether in Mississippi.
	Seminoles and remnants of Florida tribes.	4,000	These Indians comprehend the remains of many tribes which formerly occupied the Territory of Florida and the adjoining country. A reservation, estimated to contain about ——— acres, has been secured to them in that Territory, upon which they now reside.
We know little of the languages of these tribes, or of the relation in which they stand to one another.	Ietam, Soshawnese or Snake Indians, and other tribes inhabiting the Rocky Mountains.	20,000	The permanent residence of these tribes is within the ranges of the Rocky Mountains, where they have been driven by the Indians of the plains. They sometimes descend into the plains after the buffalo, but in large bands, and are then liable to be attacked by their neighbours, the Blackfeet. Until recently, they subsisted upon fish, roots, and berries, and a few antelopes, but lately the buffaloes have been driven into the mountains, and now form an important article of food. They are well disposed towards the whites.
The preceding remark applies to these tribes.	Indians west of the Rocky Mountains, within the American territories.	80,000	The number of these Indians was estimated by Lewis and Clark at 80,000 in 1806; since then, we have become better acquainted with these regions, and several tribes have been discovered towards the northern boundary, although it is difficult to determine their position with reference to the territorial claim of the United States. The estimate of their numbers is, of course, but conjectural.
	Total...............	313,130	

G. [CONTINUED.]

RECAPITULATION OF THE NUMBER OF INDIANS WITHIN THE UNITED STATES.

		2,573	Within the States of Maine, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, and Virginia.
		4,820	Within the State of New York.
		300	Within the State of Pennsylvania.
		3,100	Within the State of North Carolina.
		300	Within the State of South Carolina.
		5,000	Within the State of Georgia.
Within the original States	16,093		
		1,000	Within the State of Tennessee.
		1,877	Within the State of Ohio.
		23,400	Within the State of Mississippi.
		19,200	Within the State of Alabama.
		939	Within the State of Louisiana.
		4,050	Within the State of Indiana.
		5,900	Within the State of Illinois.
		5,631	Within the State of Missouri.
Within the new States	61,997		
		9,340	Within the Peninsula of Michigan.
		7,200	Within the Territory of Arkansas.
		4,000	Within the Territory of Florida.
Within the Territories, excluding from Michigan the county west of Lakes Huron and Michigan	20,540		
Within the country east of the Mississippi, and north of the Ohio, excluding those in the original States	41,367	20,000	Within the country east of the Mississippi, north of the State of Illinois, and west of the three upper lakes.
Within the country east of the Mississippi, and south of the Ohio, excluding those in the original States, excepting in the States of North and South Carolina and Georgia	56,000	94,300	Within the country west of the Mississippi, east of the Rocky Mountains, and not included in the States of Louisiana or Missouri, or the Territory of Arkansas.
Within the country west of the Mississippi river, and east of the Rocky Mountains	108,070	20,000	Within the Rocky Mountains.
		80,000	West of the Rocky Mountains, between latitude 44 and latitude 49.
		313,130	Within the United States.

H.

Office of Indian Agency,
Sault Ste. Marie, November 21, 1832.

Sir:—In obedience to such parts of the instructions of the third of May last, directing me to proceed to the country on the heads of the Mississippi, as relates to the Indian population, and to the condition of the fur-trade, I have the honor herewith to enclose a series of statistical tables which exhibit the geographical distribution of the lands, the name of each village or permanent encampment, its course and distance from the seat of the agency, the number of men, women, and children, expressed in separate columns, the number of the mixed blood population and the total population of districts. Also, the names and position of the trading-posts established under the act of Congress of May 26th, 1824, the number and names of the clerks, and the number of interpreters and boatmen employed in the trade under licences from the Indian office, the amount of goods bonded for, agreeably to duplicates of the invoices on file, together with an estimate of the capital vested in boats and provisions, or paid out in men's wages, and an estimate of the returns in furs and peltries, based on the outfits of 1832.

An examination of these tables will show, that the entire Indian, mixed and trader population, embraced within the consolidated agency of St. Mary's and Michilimackinac, is 14,279, of which number 12,467 are Chippewas and Ottawas, 1553 persons of the mixed blood, and 259 persons of every description engaged in the fur-trade. That this population is distributed in eighty-nine principal villages, or fixed encampments, extending by the route of lakes Huron and Superior, through the region of the Upper Mississippi, to Pembina on Red River. That 302 of the whole number live in temporary encampments, or rather, migrate, along the bleak shores of lake Huron west of the second, or Boundary Line Detour; 436 occupy the American side of the straits and river St. Mary's; 1006 are located on the southern shores of lake Superior, between the Sault of St. Mary's and Fond du Lac, 1855 on the extreme Upper Mississippi, between Little Soc River, and the actual source of this stream in Itasca lake; 476 on the American side of the Old Grand Portage, to the lake of the Woods; 1174 on Red river of the North; 895 on the river St. Croix of the Mississippi; 1376 on the Chippewa river and its tributaries, including the villages of Lac du Flambeau and Ottawa lake; 342 on the heads of the Wisconsin and Menominee rivers; 210 on the northern curve of Green bay; 274 on the northwestern shores of lake Michigan, between the entrance of Green bay and the termination of the straits of Michilimackinac at Point St. Ignace; and 5674, within the peninsula of Michigan, so far as the same is embraced within the limits of the Agency. The latter number covers an estimate of the Ottawa and Chippewa population indiscriminately.

For the accommodation of these bands, there have been established thirty-five principal trading-posts, exclusive of temporary trading stations, occupied only in seasons of scarcity. These posts are distributed over six degrees of latitude, and sixteen degrees of longitude, and embrace a larger area of square miles, than all the states of central Europe. Much of it is covered with water, and such are the number and continuity of its lakes, large and small, that it is probable that this feature constitutes, by far, its most striking peculiarity. Its productions are fish, wild rice, and game. But such are the precariousness and dispersion of the supply, as to keep the whole population of men, women, and children in perpetual vacillation in its search. The time devoted to these migrations is out of all proportion to the results obtained by agriculture, or by any other stated mode of subsistence. And the supply is, after all, inadequate. Seasons of scarcity and want are the ordinary occurrences of every year; and a mere subsistence is the best state of things that is looked for.

Traders visit them annually with outfits of goods and provisions, to purchase the furs and peltries, which are gleaned in their periodical migrations. These persons purchase their outfits from capitalists resident on the frontiers, and make their payments during the spring or summer succeeding the purchase. They employ men who are acquainted with the difficulties of the route, and with the character and resources of the people amongst whom they are to reside. These men act as boatmen and canoemen on the outward and inward voyage; they erect the winter-houses, chop wood, fish, cook for the *bourgeois*, and are employed on *durwin*, or as runners during the hunting-season. Much of the success of a trading adventure depends on their efficiency and faithfulness.

In the prosecution of this trade, the laws which have been prescribed by Congress for its regulation are substantially observed. I am of opinion, however, that more efficiency would be given to the system, if a general revision of all the acts pertaining to this subject were made. A legislation of thirty years, some of it necessarily of a hasty character, has multiplied the acts which it is made the duty of Indian Agents to enforce, and the number of clauses which are repealed and modified leave the original acts mutilated; and they do not present, as a whole, that clearness of intent which is essential to their due and prompt execution. Some of the provisions have become obsolete; others are defective. A thorough and careful digest of the entire code, including the permanent treaty provisions, would present the opportunity for consolidation and amendment; and, while leaving the laws easier of execution, adapt them more exactly to the present condition of the Indians, and to a just supervision of the trade.

The unconditional repeal by Congress of every former provision permitting the introduction of ardent spirits, is a subject of felicitation to the friends of humanity. Of all the acts which it was in the power of the government to perform, this promises, in my opinion, to produce the most beneficial effects on the moral condition of the northwestern tribes; and its enforcement is an object of the highest moral achievement. My recent visit, as well as former opportunities of remark, have afforded full proofs of the entire uselessness of ardent spirits as an article of traffic with the Indians, and I beg leave to add my voice to the thousands which are audible on this subject, that the government may put into requisition every practicable means to carry into effect the act.

I have the honor to be, sir,
Very respectfully,
Your obedient servant,
HENRY R. SCHOOLCRAFT.

E. HERRING, ESQ.,
War Department, Washington.

H.

STATISTICAL TABLES OF THE INDIAN POPULATION

Comprised within the boundaries of the Consolidated Agency of Sault Ste Marie and Michilimackinac in the year 1832, *together with the number of Trading Posts established under the Act of Congress of May* 26, 1824, *and other facts illustrating the condition and operations of the Fur Trade. Prepared under instructions of the War Department of the* 3d *May*, 1832, *for visiting the sources of the Mississippi.*

NATURE AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF THE POPULATION.

GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRICT.	Name of the Village or Periodical Encampment.	No. of men.	No. of women.	No. of children.	No. of persons of the mixed blood, all ages and sexes.	Population of villages, &c.	Population of geographical districts.
N. W. coast of Lake Huron	Michilimackinac (see note *A.*)	18	29	51	140	238	302
	St. Martin's Islands						
	Chenos						
	Drummond Island	16	18	23	7	64	
St. Mary's river, American side	Mineeshco river (*B.*)	58	73	144	161	436	436
	Muscoda Sagi (*C.*)						
	Sugar Island						
	Little Rapids Kinibitunoong (*D.*)						
	Sault Ste Marie (*E.*)						
Southern shores of L. Superior	Misconabies Creek	42	46	98	...	186	1006
	Tacquimenon						
	Heart's Blood Lake						
	Manistic river						
	White Fish Point (*F.*)						
	Shelldrake River (Onzig)						
	Two-hearted River						
	Grand Marais						
	Miner's River and Pictured Rocks						
	Grand Island	7	6	23	14	50	
	Presque Isle and Granite Point	4	4	12	...	20	
	Huron Bay	4	6	4	...	14	
	Keweena Bay (*G.*)	31	38	43	28	140	
	Ontonagon (*H.*)	29	32	76	15	152	
	Mouth of Montreal river	32	40	113	28	213	
	Mauvais River						
	Lapointe or Chegoimegon (*I.*)						
	Fond du Lac (*K.*)	44	46	103	38	231	

H. [CONTINUED.]

NATURE AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF THE POPULATION.

GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRICT.	Name of the Village or Periodical Encampment.	No. of men.	No. of women.	No. of children.	No. of persons of the mixed blood, all ages and sexes.	Population of villages, &c.	Population of geographical districts.
Extreme Upper Mississippi	Sandy Lake	70	83	127	35	315	
	Pine River and Red Cedar Lake	20	19	33	6	78	
	Pierced Prairie and Noka Seepi (*L.*)	22	26	52	12	112	
	Peckagama Falls, (Mississippi)	4	6	14	...	24	
	Lake Winnepec (*M*)	20	18	41	10	89	
	Turtle Lake	20	21	44	14	99	
	Cass Lake (*N.*)	40	51	66	11	168	
	Lac Traverse and Itasca Lake (*O.*)						
	Leech Lake, Mukkundwas (*P.*)	139	194	373	24	730	
	Bear Island of Leech Lake	26	32	44	...	102	
	Mille Lac	38	43	57	...	138	
	Rum River (*Q.*)						1855
Old Grand Portage to the Lake of the Woods, American side	Old Grand Portage (*R.*)	12	11	27	...	50	
	Rainy Lake	38	40	65	16	159	
	Vermillion Lake	37	40	48	7	132	
	Lake of the Woods	31	34	61	9	135	476
Red River of the North	Red Lake	84	74	100	32	290	
	Pembina (*S.*)	142	150	288	304	884	1174
St. Croix river of the Upper Mississippi	Falls of St. Croix	80	88	133	38	339	
	Snake River						
	Yellow River (*T.*)	106	114	120	42	382	
	Rice Lake and Lac Vaseux						
	Nama Kowagun	30	32	33	...	95	
	Lake of the Cross of the Namakagun	6	6	14	...	26	
	Puckwaewa (Odabassa's V.)	11	14	28	...	53	895

H. [CONTINUED.]

NATURE AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF THE POPULATION.

GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRICT.	Name of the Village or Periodical Encampment.	No. of men.	No. of women.	No. of children.	No. of persons of the mixed blood, all ages and sexes.	Population of villages, &c.	Population of geographical districts.
Chippewa river of the Upper Mississippi	Rice Lake of Red Cedar fork	46	38	58	...	142	
	Red Cedar Lake of Lac Chetac	19	20	31	...	70	
	Lac Courtoreille, (Ottowa L.)	117	136	195	56	504	
	Red Devil's band of the Ochasowa	49	37	66	...	152	
	Lac du Flambeau	112	127	168	50	457	
	Trout Lake and Tomahawk Lake	15	15	21	...	51	1376
Sources of the Wisconsin and Menomonee rivers	Le Lac or Upper Wisconsin, (*U.*)	30	30	60	...	120	
	Plover Portage and Post Lake	18	23	36	...	77	
	Metawonga	28	30	43	10	111	
	White Clay Portage	8	9	14	3	34	342
Northern curve of Green Bay	Bay de Noequet	29	34	60	15	138	
	Weequaidons						
	White Fish Creek	16	18	38	...	72	210
N. W. coast of Lake Michigan	Mouth of Manistic	46	54	120	14	234	274
	Mille au Coquin						
	Choiswa						
	Straits of Michigan						
	Point St. Ignace						
Peninsula of Michigan	River au Sable, (Arenac)	1350	1566	2384	374	5674	5674
	Thunder Bay						
	Cheboigon						
	L'Abre Croche, Upper and Lower (*V.*)						
	Grand Traverse Bay						
	Riviere au Becsie						
	Maskegon						
	Grand River						
		3144	3571	5752	1553	14,020	14,020

H. [CONTINUED.]

STATISTICAL FACTS RESPECTING THE FUR TRADE.

Geographical District.	Name of the Village or Periodical Encampment.	Trading posts estab'd by Indian Dept.	Number of clerks licensed to trade.	Number of interpreters, boatmen, &c. employed by the clerks.	Total number of white persons engaged in the trade.	Amount of goods bonded for, agreeably to duplicates of the invoices on file in the Agency Office.	Estimated amount vested in boats, or paid in men's wages, &c.	Aggregate amount of capital vested in the trade within the Agency.	Estimated amount of returns in furs and peltries on the outfits of 1832, computed at the quoted New York prices of 1831.	Computed distance of the trading post from the seat of the Agency, in miles.	Course of the Post from the Agency.	Names of the persons who have received licenses to trade, and executed bonds, with sureties, under the several Acts of Congress regulating trade and intercourse with the Indian tribes, during the year ending 30th September, 1832.	Total population resident within the Agency in 1832, excluding inhabitants of M. T. at Sault Ste Marie and Michilimackinac.
N. W. coast of L. Huron	Michilimackinac												
	St. Martin's Islands												
	Chenos									12	NE.		306
	Drummond Island	1	1	3	4					40	NE.		436
St. Mary's river, American side	Mineesheo river												
	Muscoda Sagi												
	Sugar Island												
	Little Rapids Kinibitunoong												
	Sault Ste Marie												
Southern shores of L. Superior	Misconabies Creek												
	Tacquimenon	1	1	4	5					120	NNE.	William Johnston.	
	Heart's Blood Lake											Edward Cadotte.	
	Manistic river											Ecstache Raussain.	
	White Fish Point	1	3	19	22	$5 701 59	$5,701 59	$11,403 18	$15,204 24	130	NNE.	Samuel Ashman.	
	Shelldrake River, Onzig											Richardson May.	1087
	Two-hearted River											William Johnston.	
	Grand Marais												
	Miner's River and Pictured Rocks												
	Grand Island	1	1	8	10					180	NNW.	Louis Nolin. B. Marvin	
	Presque Isle and Granite Point												
	Huron Bay											John Holiday.	
	Keweena Bay	1	3	16	19							William Holiday.	
	Ontonagon	1	1	10	11					500	NW.	Jean Bt. Dubay.	
	Mouth of Montreal river	1	1	3	4					410	NW.	Geo. Bartlet, J. Brown.	
	Mauvais River									479	NW.	Michael Cadotte, jun.	
	Lapointe or Chegoimegon	1	1	4	6					500	NW.	L. M. Warren, M. Cadotte	
	Fond du Lac	1	1							590	NW.	W. Aitkin, W. Davenport	

Extreme Upper Mississippi..........	Sandy Lake..........	1	1	74	88	$13,817 00	$13,817 00	$27,634 00	$36,845 33	740	NW.		
	Pine River and Red Cedar Lake..........	1	1							800	WNW.	John H. Fairbanks.	
	Pierced Prairie and Noka Seepi..........	1	1							940	WNW.	Benjamin F. Baker.	
	Peckagama Falls, (Mississippi)..........												
	Lake Winnepec..........	1	2								NW.	Alfred Aitkin.	
	Turtle Lake..........										NW.	Jean Bt. Belonger.	
	Cass Lake..........										NW.	James Ermatinger.	
	Lac Traverse and Itasca Lake..........	1	2								NW.		
	Leech Lake, Mukkundwas..........	1	5								NW.	Piere Cota.	
	Bear Island of Leech Lake..........											J.W. Abbott, G. Bungo	
	Mille Lac..........											Charles Chabattio.	
	Rum River..........	1	2									A. Morrison, J. Bt. Roy	1870
Old Gr'd Port. to L. of Woods, Am. side.	Old Grand Portage..........	1	1								NNW.	Ambroise Davenport.	
	Rainy Lake..........	1	3									J. Cadotte, S. Lecomble,	
	Vermillion Lake..........	1	1								NNW.	V. Roy. [P. Craphesa.	
	Lake of the Woods..........	1									NNW.	F. Brunet, A. Belonger.	481
Red R. of North....	Red Lake..........	1	1								NW.	J. Bt. Dejardin, L. Du-	
	Pembina..........	1	1								NW.	David Aitkin. [fault.	1250
St. Croix river of the Upp. Miss.....	Falls of St. Croix..........										WSW.		
	Snake River..........	1	2	8	10						WSW.	Thomas Connor.	349
	Yellow River..........	1	1	4	5						WSW.	Souvraign Dawnee.	
	Rice Lake and Lac Vaseux..........	1	1	2	3						WSW.	Louis Ladabouche.	387
	Nama Kowagun..........										WSW.		95
	Lake of the Cross of the Namakagun										WSW.		26
	Puckwaewa (Odabossa's V.)..........										WSW.		53
Chippewa river of the Upp. Miss.....	Rice Lake of Red Cedar fork..........										WSW.		142
	Red Cedar Lake of Lac Chetac..........	1	1	3	4						WSW.	Louis Corbin.	74
	Lac Courtoreille, (Ottowa L.)..........	1	2	9	11						WSW.	Benjamin Cadotte.	515
	Red Devil's band of the Ochasowa..										WSW.		152
	Lac du Flambeau..........	1	1	7	8						WSW.	Charles H. Oaks.	465
	Trout Lake and Tomahawk Lake....										WSW.	Paul Grignon.	51
Sources Wiscon'n and Menomonee rivers.	Le Lac or Upper Wisconsin..........	1	1	4	5						SW.	G. D. Cameron.	125
	Plover Portage and Post Lake..........										SW.		77
	Metawonga..........	1	1	6	7						SW.		118
	White Clay Portage..........										SW.		34
Northern curve of Gr'n Bay	Bay de Nocquet..........										SW.		
	Weequaidons..........										SW.		
	White Fish Creek..........										SW.		

H. [CONTINUED.]

STATISTICAL FACTS RESPECTING THE FUR TRADE.

Geographical District.	Name of the Village or Periodical Encampment.	Trading posts estab'd by Indian Dept.	Number of clerks licensed to trade.	Number of interpreters, boatmen, &c. employed by the clerks.	Total number of white persons engaged in the trade.	Amount of goods bonded for, agreeably to duplicates of the invoices on file in the Agency Office.	Estimated amount vested in boats, or paid in men's wages, &c.	Aggregate amount of capital vested in the trade within the Agency.	Estimated amount of returns in furs and peltries on the outfits of 1832, computed at the quoted New York prices of 1831.	Computed distance of the trading post from the seat of the Agency, in miles.	Course of the Post from the Agency.	Names of the persons who have received licenses to trade, and executed bonds, with sureties, under the several Acts of Congress regulating trade and intercourse with the Indian tribes, during the year ending 30th September, 1832.	Total population resident within the Agency in 1832, excluding inhabitants of M. T. at Sault Ste Marie and Michilimackinac.
N. W. coast of Lake Michigan...	Mouth of Manistic....................	1	1	4	5	$1,000 00	$1,000 00	$2,000 00	$2,666 66		S.	Joseph Troque.	
	Mille au Coquin..........................										S.		
	Choiswa......................................										S.		
	Straits of Michigan										S.		239
	Point St. Ignace..........................										SE.		40
Peninsula of Michigan	River au Sable, (Arenac)	1									SE.		
	Thunder Bay.................................										SE.		
	Cheboigon....................................										S.		
	L'Abre Croche, Upper and Lower...	1									S.		5,698
	Grand Traverse Bay......................										S.		
	Riviere au Becsie										S.		
	Maskegon.....................................	1	1	4	5	994 00	994 00	1,988 00	2,650 66		S.	George Campeau.	
	Grand River	1	5	14	19	5,000 00	5,000 00	10,000 00	13,333 33			Rix Robinson. Joseph Daily. Francis Lacroix. William Lasley.	
		35	53	206	259	$26,512 59	$26,512 59	$53,025 18	$70,700 22				14,279

II. [CONTINUED.]

EXPLANATORY NOTES.

(*A*) Michilimackinac is the seat of justice for Mackinac county, Michigan Territory, is 300 miles N. W. of Detroit, has a U. S. circuit court, a population of 1053 by the census of 1830, has a military post, an Indian agency, a collector's office, a flourishing missionary school, &c.

(*B*) This river enters the head of Muddy Lake, and is partly the boundary between Michilimackinac and Chippewa counties.

(*C*) This is a tributary of the south branch of the St. Mary's, and is much resorted to by the Indians in their periodical fishing and hunting excursions.

(*D*) Indian gardens at this place, two miles below St. Mary's.

(*E*) This place is the site of Fort Brady, is ten miles below the foot of Lake Superior, and ninety by water N. W. of Mackinac. The Indian agency of Vincennes, Indiana, was removed to this place in 1822, and consolidated with the agency of Mackinac in 1832. It is the seat of justice for Chippewa county, M. T., and has a population, by the census of 1830, of 918.

(*F*) The trading post at this place is occupied as a fishing station, during the summer, by persons who proceed with boats and nets from St. Mary's. Bonds are taken by the Indian Office, and licenses granted in the usual manner, as a precaution against the introduction of ardent spirits.

(*G*) It is thirty leagues from Keweena Post to Ontonagon, by the most direct water route, but seventy-five leagues around the peninsula.

(*H*) The population enumerated at this post includes the villages of Ocogib, Lake Vieux Desert, Iron River, and Petit Peche Bay.

(*I*) The Chippewas of La Point have their gardens on this river, and reside here periodically. This is a good fishing station. A mission family has recently been located here.

(*K*) This is the most western bay of Lake Superior.

(*L*) Replaces the post of the Isle des Corbeau, which is abolished.

(*M*) The route of Rainy Lake begins at the post on this lake, which is an expansion of the channel of the Mississippi, about ten miles across. Clear water, and yields fish.

(*N*) This lake has been so named in honor of the present Secretary of War, who terminated his exploratory journey there in 1820.

(*O*) Itasca is the actual source of the Mississippi, as determined by myself in the expedition which furnishes occasion for this report.

(*P*) This is a very large expanse of water, clear and pure in its character, and yields fine white fish. It was deemed the head of the Mississippi by Pike, who visited it in the winter of 1806, but it is not even *one* of the sources, as it has several large tributaries.

(*Q*) Named Rum River by Carver, but called *Spirit* river by the Indians, not using this word in a physical sense.

(*R*) This route from Old Grand Portage to the Lake of the Woods is chiefly used by the British traders, and the gentlemen connected with the Hudson's Bay Government; but has fallen into comparative disuse, as a grand channel of traders, since the introduction of goods direct from England into the Hudson Bay.

(*S*) The estimate of population at Pembina includes all who are believed to be south of latitude 49 deg., and therefore within the limits of the United States.

(*T*) Embraces all the population of the Fork of St. Croix, connected by a portage with the Brulé river of Lake Superior.

(*U*) The Indians on these streams rely much on wild rice. Their encampments are temporary. They come into contact with the Winnebagoes and Menomonees, who are their neighbors on the south.

(*V*) The Indian population of the peninsula of Michigan consists of Ottawas, Chippewas, and Pottawatomies, who are not widely separated by language and habits. The Ottawas are, however, the most agricultural. No Pottawatomies are included in the estimate, and only that portion of Ottawas and Chippewas living north of Grand River, and north-west of Sagana, as the limits of the Mackinac and St. Mary's joint agency do not extend south of these places.

☞ The data respecting the fur trade in the schedules, excludes the business transacted on the Island of Michilimackinac, and the village of Sault Ste Marie, these places being on lands ceded to the United States, and over which the laws of the Territory of Michigan operate. They also exclude any amount of trade that may have been carried on by the white inhabitants of Red River settlement, who may be located south of the national boundary on the north, as this place is too remote to have been heretofore brought under the cognizance of our intercourse laws.

HENRY R. SCHOOLCRAFT, Indian Agent.

Office of Indian Agency, Sault Ste Marie, November 21, 1832.

I.

STATEMENT OF THE SECRETARY OF WAR, SHOWING THE TRIBES WEST OF THE MISSISSIPPI WITH WHOM THE UNITED STATES *HAVE*, AND ALSO THE TRIBES WITH WHOM THEY *HAVE NO* TREATY RELATIONS.

War Department,
May 17, 1834.

Sir: Agreeably to the request of the Committee on Indian Affairs, transmitted by you, I had the honor some days since to forward you a copy of a report made by the commissioners negotiating with the Indians west of the Mississippi, together with extracts from an appendix; and in further compliance with your suggestions, I now send the tabular statements you desired, which have been prepared with as much accuracy as the materials in the possession of this Department would allow. It is to be observed that the buildings occupied by the War Department have been twice burned, and with them many of the records; and it is, therefore, difficult to procure exact statements respecting some of the subjects presented by you.

Very respectfully, sir,
I have the honor to be
Your obedient servant,
LEW. CASS.

Hon. Horace Everett,
Of the Committee on Indian Affairs.

I. [CONTINUED.]

A. *Indian Tribes west of the Mississippi, with whom the United States have Treaties.*

Names of the Tribes.	Numbers.
1. Choctaws	15,000
2. Appalachicolas	265
3. Creeks	2,459
4. Cherokees	6,000
5. Senecas of Sandusky	251
6. Senecas and Shawnees	211
7. Quapaws	466
8. Osages	5,510
9. Ottawas	200
10. Kaskaskias and Peorias	130
11. Weas and Piankeshaws	394
12. Shawnees	1,250
13. Kanzas	1,440
14. Delawares	830
15. Kickapoos	513
16. Ottoes and Missourias	1,600
17. Sioux	27,500
18. Ioways	1,100
19. Sacs of Missouri	500
20. Omahas	1,400
21. Pawnees	11,000
22. Sacs	4,800
23. Foxes	1,600
24. Mandans	15,000
25. Crows	45,000
26. Poncas	800
27. Cheyennes	2,000
28. Arickaras	3,000
29. Belautse-etea, or Minatarees	1,500
30. Winnebagoes*	4,591

B. *Indian Tribes west of the Mississippi, with whom the United States have no Treaties.*

Names of the Tribes.	Numbers.
1. Camanches	7,000
2. Assinaboins	1,000
3. Crees	3,000
4. Gros Ventres	3,000
5. Blackfeet	30,000
6. Caddoes	800
7. Arepahas	4,000
8. Keawas	1,000
9. Kaskaias	2,000
10. Marlin or Kite	500
11. Kaninahoick	2,000
12. Padoucas, proper	2,000
13. Jetam, Soshawnese or Snake, inhabiting the Rocky Mountains	20,000
14. Tushshepah	1,430
15. Chopunnish	5,850
16. Lokulk	2,400
17. Chimnahpum	1,860
18. Wallawollah	1,600
19. Pishquitpahs	2,600
20. Wahowpum	700
21. Eneshure	1,200
22. Eskeloot	1,000
23. Chilluckittequaw	2,200
24. Shahala	2,800
25. Wappatoo	5,490
26. Skilloot	2,500
27. Wahkiacums	200
28. Cathlamahs	300
29. Chinnooks	400
30. Clatsop	200
31. Killamucks	5,500
32. Cook-koo-oose	1,500
33. Shallalah	1,200
34. Luckkarso	1,200
35. Hannakallal	600
36. Killaxthocles	5,060
37. Clarkamus	1,800
38. Clishhooks	650
39. Charcowah	200
40. Callahpoewah	2,000
41. Skaddals	820
42. Cutsahnim	1,200
43. Lahanna	2,000
44. Coospellar	1,600
45. Wheelpo	2,500
46. Hihighenimmo	1,300
47. Lartielo	600
48. Skeetsonish	2,000
49. Shoshonee	15,540
Whole number	156,300

---

* Part of this tribe has gone west of the Mississippi, and part north of the Ouisconsin; the number which have gone in either direction is not known.

K.

OFFICIAL ESTIMATES OF INDIAN POPULATION IN 1836.

Statement showing the Number of Indians now East of the Mississippi; of those that have emigrated from the East to the West of that River; and of those within Striking Distance of the Western Frontier. 1846.*

1. NAME AND NUMBER OF THE TRIBES NOW EAST OF THE MISSISSIPPI.

NAMES OF THE TRIBES.	Number.	Total.
A. UNDER TREATY STIPULATIONS TO REMOVE WEST OF THE MISSISSIPPI.		
Winnebagoes	4,500	
Ottawas of Ohio	100	
Pottowattomies of Indiana	2,950	
Chippewas, Ottawas, and Pottowattomies	1,500	
Cherokees	14,000	
Creeks	1,000	
Chickasaws	1,000	
Seminoles	5,000	
Appalachicolas	400	
Ottawas and Chippewas in the peninsula of Michigan	6,500	36,950
B. NOT UNDER TREATY STIPULATIONS TO REMOVE.		
New York Indians	4,176	
Wyandotts	575	
Miamies	1,100	
Menomonees	4,000	
Ottawas and Chippewas of the Lakes	2,564	12,415
		49,365

2. NUMBER OF INDIANS WHO HAVE EMIGRATED FROM THE EAST TO THE WEST OF THE MISSISSIPPI.

Chickasaws	549	
Chippewas, Ottawas, and Pottowattomies	2,191	
Choctaws	15,000	
Quapaws	476	
Creeks	20,437	
Seminoles	407	
Appalachicolas	265	
Cherokees	7,911	
Kickapoos	588	
Delawares	826	
Shawanese	1,272	
Ottawas	374	
Weas	222	
Piankeshaws	162	
Peorias and Kaskaskias	132	
Pottowattomies of Indiana	53	
Senecas	251	
Seneca and Shawnees	211	
		51,327

---

* These estimates will be found to be those of the official report of 1837.

K. [CONTINUED.]

OFFICIAL ESTIMATES OF INDIAN POPULATION IN 1836.

3. NUMBER OF THE INDIGENOUS TRIBES WITHIN STRIKING DISTANCE OF THE WESTERN FRONTIER.

NAMES OF THE TRIBES.	Number.	Total.
Sioux	21,600	
Iowas	1,500	
Sacs	4,800	
Foxes	1,600	
Sacs of the Missouri	500	
Osages	5,120	
Kanzas	1,606	
Omahaws	1,600	
Otoes and Missouries	1,000	
Pawnees	12,500	
Camanchees	19,200	
Kioways	1,800	
Mandans	3,200	
Quapaws	450	
Minatarees	2,000	
Pagans*	30,000	
Assinaboines	15,000	
Appaches	20,280	
Crees	3,000	
Arrapahas	3,000	
Gros Ventres	16,800	
Eutaws	19,200	
Crows	7,200	
Caddoes	2,000	
Poncas	900	
Arickarees	2,750	
Cheyennes	3,200	
Blackfeet	30,000	231,806

RECAPITULATION.

Number of Indians now east of the Mississippi	49,365
Number of Indians who have emigrated from the east to the west side	51,327
Number of indigenous tribes	231,806
Aggregate	332,498
Deduct the error of the Blackfeet, called Pagans	30,000
Total	302,498

---

* This is a mere synonym for Blackfeet, which see.

L.

SIOUX POPULATION IN 1836.

A Statistical Return, showing the Number of the respective Bands or Tribes of Sioux, of the Dacota Nation of Indians only, within the Saint Peter's Agency, Upper Mississippi; detailing the Number employed in Agriculture and the Chase, with the Location of each Band and Tribe.

No.	Names of the Chiefs and Heads of Bands or Tribes.	Names of the various Tribes of Sioux.	No. of each Band or Tribe.	Number employed in Agriculture and the Chase.	Tribes, where generally located or roving.	REMARKS.
1	Marcpeeah Mahzah	Medawakanton	153	Raise corn and follow the chase.	Near Lake Pepin, above.	43 Yancton Sioux killed by the Mandan Indians on the Missouri in April.
2	Nasiampaa	Ditto	139	ditto	East of the Mississippi, 25 miles from agency.	
3	Wah kee on Tunkah	Ditto	126	ditto	9 miles below the agency.	6 Wahpakoota Sioux killed in July last, near the Des Moines, by the Sacs and Foxes.
4	Marc pee wee Chastah	Ditto	157	Raise corn, farmers	7 miles west of the agency.	
5	Tah chunk wash taa	Ditto	109	Raise corn, and the chase	River St. Peter's, 7 miles from the agency.	
6	Patah eu hah	Ditto	229	ditto	do. 25 do. do.	9 Yancton Sioux of Lac Traverse killed on the Cheyenne of Red river, in June, by Assiniboins and Crees.
7	Wah ma dee Tunkah	Ditto	80	ditto	do. 4 do. do.	
8	Wah nac sou toh	Wahpeeton	332	ditto	Little Rapids St. Peters, 45 miles.	The tribes generally this year have increased. The lower band of Medawakanton Sioux (Wabashas) decreased 134 by small-pox. This band is attached to the agency at Prairie du Chien.
9	E se tah ken bah	Susseeton	146	ditto	Traverse des Sioux, 125 miles.	
10	The Little Chief	Wahpeeton	530	ditto	At Lac Quipara, 250 miles.	
11	The Grail and Mahzahpatah	N'th Susseeton and Yancton	627	Follow the chase	At Big Slave Lake, 280 miles.	
12	Wah naa taa	Yancton	1781	ditto	Lac Traverse and Cheyenne river, 450 miles.	
13	Tah sau gaa	Wahpaakoota	555	ditto	Des Moines and Cannon river, 80 and 140.	
14	Tah tunc'a nasiah	North Susseeton	1042	ditto	Lac Traverse and Red River crossing.	
15	Various petty chiefs	Yancton and Susseeton	1985	ditto	Roaring Devil's Lake, Cheyenne of Red river, &c. &c.	
			7991			

Mission St. Peter's and Red river .... 7,991 } Total...23,991.
On Missouri and its tributaries.......................................16,000 }

L. [CONTINUED.]

MEDAWAKANTON SIOUX IN 1850.

These people constitute, emphatically, the home band of the Sioux who live on the line of the Mississippi, and whose ancient village sites constitute the nuclei of the rising settlements of Minnesota. The principal efforts of missionaries and teachers have been made among them; and they have for some years been supplied with smiths and farmers, to teach and aid them in the mechanical arts and agriculture. They have recently entered on the career of the other tribes of the West, by ceding large tracts of their exhausted hunting-grounds to the government, and directing, by treaties, the application of the proceeds in part to the payment of annuities for limited periods to themselves, and in part to other objects of utility. They furnish, therefore, a valuable element for future comparison in their population, vital statistics, and industrial means, and may be deemed a fair subject, in all respects, for showing how an Indian tribe, favored with as ample means and opportunities as Indian tribes ever enjoy, grapples with the influences of civilization, which have been, so generally, adverse to other tribes.

The Medawakantons consist of seven bands, namely, Redwing's, Little Crow's, Lake Calhoun band, Goodrod's band, Black Dog's, Little Six's band, and Wabashaws, the largest of all. Their population is stated by Mr. Prescott to have been, in 1850, 2250 souls in the gross, who are divided, and shown to have the means and possess the characteristics, mentioned in the following table, which has been carefully constructed from the data transmitted.

Men, who all live by mixed agriculture and hunting	534
Women	578
Children	1143
Number of male children who attend school	41
Number of female children " "	31
Number of males who can read and write	10
Number of females " "	20
Number of children who can speak English	2
Number of men who profess medical skill (native priests, or jugglers)	100
Number of first class chiefs	7
Number of second class chiefs	7
Number of third class chiefs	7
Number of warriors fit to take the field	300
Number of the native priesthood who officiate as prophets	50
Number of agents employed by the United States	1
Number of interpreters " " "	1
Number of teachers " " "	2
Number of public council-houses provided by the United States	1
Number of missionaries, various denominations, supported by societies	6
Number of mission school-houses	2
Number of church edifices	1
Number of printing-presses employed by missionaries	0
Number of traders	10
Number of their clerks and interpreters	10
Number of their boatmen	12
Number of blacksmiths and assistants	4
Number of farmers and assistants	8
Number of log chains possessed by the seven bands	17
Number of females who can spin, knit, and weave	10
Number of pairs of stockings knit	21
Number of acres of land cultivated	397
Number of bushels of corn raised	11,648

Number of horses, not stated. Mules, oxen, cows, hogs, and sheep, none.

L. [CONTINUED.]

Estimated value of all their agricultural implements	$300 00
Average value of the "skin" of trade	3 00
Estimated value of the hunt to each person	15 00
Estimated receipts from all sources to each family	35 00
Estimated value of public buildings	2,000 00
Amount of capital employed in Indian trade	60,000 00
Amount of annuities paid in coin, in 1850	10,000 00
Amount of " " merchandise, 1850	10,000 00
Amount of " " provisions, "	5,500 00
Amount of " " tobacco, "	100 00
Sum set apart for educational purposes, "	5,000 00
Sum expended for stock and agricultural implements, 1850	8,500 00
Sum expended for iron and shops, "	700 00
Whole expenditure for U. S. agency	5,250 00
Total estimated means	78,750 00
Estimate of the whole Sioux or Dakota population, including the Medawakantons	26,000

A cursory examination of this table will enable us to solve, in part, the pregnant question, Why do the Indian tribes decline under the influence of civilization? It is perceived that the Sioux, in the forest state, only reproduce in the ratio of a small fraction under two children to every woman. In the seven bands of the Medawakantons, numbering 2250 souls, there are but 300 able-bodied men fit for the field, making the Sioux family seven persons, which is above the general average of the North American Indians; thus denoting the operation of causes unfavorable to the usual number of active men. In the same population of the seven bands, there are one hundred men who profess medical magic, or jugglery; which gives a professed doctor, or teacher of magical ceremonies, to every twenty-two souls. There are, at the same time, fifty prophets, or persons who exercise the highest functions of religious teachers, seers, or what the Chippewas term Jossakeeds. The loss of time in hunting, or other objects of Indian industry, caused by these ceremonies, to say nothing of the detriment to the Indian mind, must be felt severely in the scale of their progress.

With an annual expenditure by government of $8500 for stock and agriculture, there was not found, in 1850, a single cow, hog, ox or sheep, or a single plough or cart. The whole proceeds of their chase, to each family, did not exceed $15 per capita—a sum that a common laboring man, on a farm, would earn in one month, and a mechanic in ten days; thus making the produce of the year's hunt $43,750. It is stated that the whole per capita value of their annuities (of which $10,000 only are cash) is $25; making the sum of $78,750, exclusive of their hunt. It is estimated that a capital of $60,000 is annually invested in the trade, which employs ten principals, ten clerks and interpreters, and twelve bargemen and runners. These figures do not appear to be greatly wrong, and would not allow an advance upon the fur trade of over 40 per cent., which is not deemed to be large in that hazardous and fluctuating trade. Yet the whole avails of the Indian, receipts of the hunts, and the annuities of all kinds thereupon, are spent or used by these bands, without bringing them out of debt to the merchants. On the contrary, he is sinking deeper and deeper into it annually. As a relief to his growing wants and the importunities of his creditors, he is induced to make new cessions of land, and thus to raise the amount of his annuities. The result is a temporary relief. The creditor is paid. The Indian's credit is restored. All parties are pleased. But the Indian does not perceive that this is but a temporary state of things, that his hunting-grounds are becoming scant of game, and that every year he must more and more rely on his money annuities to satisfy his creditors. He is not a man of forecast; he is unable to make a wise use of his surplus money, and cares, indeed, but little for the future, if the wants of the present moment are satisfied. And the result is, that, ere he is well aware of it, his annuities are exhausted, he has become neither a more industrious or temperate man, and he must sell other tracts to meet his exigencies. This is the history of most Indian tribes; and it will be owing to the strong efforts of the Indian's best friends in Minnesota, the instructor in arts and the teacher of letters and knowledge, if the Medawakantons do not yield to the common course.

M.

INDIAN POPULATION OF THE SUPERINTENDENCY OF MICHIGAN IN 1840.

Statement of the Number of Ottowa and Chippewa Indians, within the Agency of Michilimackinac, who are entitled to Annuities under the Treaty of 28th March, 1836; *designating the names, numbers, employments, location, and head Chiefs of each Band, for the year terminating 30th September,* 1840

Name of Bands paid under the Treaty of 28th March, 1836.	Tribe.	Name of head Chief of the Band.	NUMBER OF FAMILIES, AND MODE OF SUBSISTENCE.									REMARKS.
			Men.	Women.	Children.	Total.	Families.	Rul'g ch'fs.	No. living by agric're.	By the chase.	Total pop. Geog. Dist.	
Cheboigan	Chippewa	Ke shig o wa	11	12	29	52	13	1	......	52		
Redwater Branch	Do.	Pay mo sa	7	7	18	32	8	1	......	32		
Thunder Bay	Do.	Mud je ke wiss	17	21	64	102	21	1	......	102		
Drummond Island	Chip. and Ot.	Ko koash	16	16	46	78	18	1	......	78		
Chenos, or Channels	Chippewa	Shawb wa wa	8	13	32	53	13	1	......	53		
St. Martin's Islands	Do.	Shaw ba gwosh ing	10	14	42	66	15	1	......	66		
Michilimackinac and Bois Blanc	Chip. and Ot.	Sau ge mau kway*	1	41	38	80	41	1*	80	......	383	2d clause, 4th article.
Esconawba River	Chippewa	Gaw gaw	22	27	105	154	28	1	......	154		
Badwater Band	Do.	Kinuance	6	7	30	43	10	1	......	43		
Little Bay de Nocquet	Do.	Omisanakweedo	30	44	163	237	44	1	......	237		
Lamanistie	Do.	Meekonsewgaun	11	14	44	69	15	1	......	69		
Beaver Islands	Do.	Kinwaubekizzee	39	51	109	199	53	1	......	199		
Ance's Band	Do.	Ance	33	54	106	193	53	1	......	193		
Sault Ste Marie	Do.	Kewazi Shawano	27	38	77	142	51	1	......	142		
Jaba Waddick's Band	Do.	Jauba Waddick	10	16	31	57	13	1	......	57		
Taquimenon	Do.	Kaybaynoden	11	19	46	76	17	1	......	76		
Chocolate River	Do.	Kaybayausung	10	16	44	70	16	1	......	70		
Grand Island	Do.	Omonomonee	8	11	42	61	11	1	......	61	1301	3d clause, 4th article.
L'Arbre Croche	Ottowa	Wakazo	70	79	150	299	84	1	......	299		
Village of the Cross	Do.	Namushcoda	32	35	80	147	37	1	......	147		
Middle Village	Do.	Kaugiuwaukoossee	16	21	47	84	22	1	......	84		
Little Traverse Bay	Do.	Ne sau wau quot	67	77	239	383	83	1	......	383		
The Wing's Band	Do.	Shawuningonaibee	20	25	74	119	22	1	......	119		
Grand Traverse Bay	Chippewa	Ishquagonabee	51	49	107	207	58	1	......	207		
Carried forward			256	286	697	1239	306			1239	1684	

* A female.

M. [CONTINUED.]

INDIAN POPULATION OF THE SUPERINTENDENCY OF MICHIGAN IN 1840.

Name of Bands paid under the Treaty of 28th March, 1836.	Tribe.	Name of head Chief of the Band.	NUMBER OF FAMILIES, AND MODE OF SUBSISTENCE.									REMARKS.
			Men.	Women.	Children.	Total.	Families.	Rul'g ch'fs.	No. living by agric're.	By the chase.	Total pop. Geog. Dist.	
Brought forward			533	687	1763	3003	736	24	80	2923	1684	
Peninsula of Akosa, G. T.	Chippewa	Akosa	37	42	89	168	47	1	......	168		
Shawbwossing, G. T.	Do.	Shawbwossing	10	10	20	40	11	1	......	40		
Ossigomico, or Plate River	Do.	Kaigwaidosa	5	5	9	19	6	1	......	19		
Carp River	Do.	Namonaice	40	48	206	294	50	1	......	294		
Manistee	Do.	Kewapgooshkum	18	23	64	105	25	1	......	105		
											1865	1st clause, 4th article.
Grand Rapids, G. R.	Ottowa	Megiss minee	11	15	52	78	17	1	......	78*		
Pierre Marquette River	Do.	Saugema	6	8	16	30	9	1	......	30*		
White River	Do.	Mishewautig	30	31	89	150	32	1	......	150*		
Maskego	Do.	Kenanwaygeezhick	25	34	78	137	35	1	......	137*		
Fort Village, G. R.	Do.	Na o ke quia bee	30	32	74	136	34	1	......	136*		
Prairie Village, G. R.	Do.	Ke no tin aish kunk	15	15	20	50	21	1	......	50*		
Forks of Thornapple River, G. R.	Do.	Keeshkondug	21	29	61	111	33	1	......	111*		
Thornapple River, G. R.	Do.	Iauquanau	21	26	66	113	30	1	......	113*		
Gull Prairie	Do.	Noonday	24	25	42	91	30	1	91	......*		
Plat River, G. R.	Do.	Kaubemossay	31	40	89	160	41	1	......	160*		
Maple River, G. R.	Do.	Mukataywaquot	29	35	100	164	41	1	......	164*		
Forks Grand River	Do.	Ne bau quom	17	24	62	103	25	1	......	103*		
Gun Lake, or "Griswold"	Do.	Sah ge man	13	14	41	68	15	1	68	......*	1391	Compared June 5, 1838.
			916	1163	2941	5020	1238	42	239	4781	5020	

* From the Pay Rolls of 1839.

N.

CENSUS, ETC., OF THE INDIAN TRIBES.

Mr. Jacob Thompson, from the Committee on Indian Affairs, made the following Report, Feb. 9, 1847:

The committee most cheerfully approve of the objects proposed to be attained in the memorial; and at the last session of Congress they directed the chairman to move an amendment to the regular Indian appropriation bill, requiring the commissioner of Indian Affairs to collect the statistics of the different tribes, and appropriating ten thousand dollars to enable him to effect this purpose. This amendment received the approbation of the House of Representatives; but it was stricken out in the Senate, and a provision was substituted requiring the Commissioner of Indian Affairs to collect this information by means of the present organization of the department. Appended to this report is a letter of the Commissioner, which gives an account of the progress already made, which it is believed will prove highly interesting to the benevolent and intelligent; and also an estimate of the amount which will be required to collect the information called for, in a more full, authentic, and satisfactory manner: and an amendment is reported in the bill to amend the act to regulate trade and intercourse among the Indian tribes, appropriating the amount he requires.

It is a source of regret that we have so little authentic information of the resources and customs of the Indians — their past history and future prospects; and the committee hope there will be no hesitancy on the part of Congress in furnishing the means of correcting this omission.

To the Honourable the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States.

The memorial of the undersigned, citizens of the United States, respectfully represents:

That the undersigned view with regret the imperfect and fragmentary character of our present knowledge of the Indian race. It is believed, that by a proper application of the means and opportunities in the possession of the government, acting through the Indian department, a vast body of valuable facts and materials could be collected together, not only to history and ethnology, but important, and indeed necessary, to enable government to perform its high and sacred duties of protection and guardianship over the weak and still savage race placed by Providence under its care.

The undersigned therefore respectfully pray your honorable body to direct the Indian bureau, through its existing organization of officers and such other aids as its means may make available for the purpose, to collect and digest such statistics and materials as may illustrate the history, present condition, and future prospects of the Indian tribes in the United States. And your memorialists will ever pray, &c.

John Tracy
Charles H. Ruggles
John Romeyn Brodhead
Theodore Sedgwick
Charles A. Lee, M.D.
George Folsom
Theodore Dwight
Albert Gallatin
Wm. C. Bouck
John L. Stephens
Robert H. Morris
Alexander F. Vaché
C. C. Cambreling
C. P. White
R. P. Marvin
John W. Brown
James Tallmadge
Charles P. Kirkland
Henry Nicoll
A. L. Jordan
W. G. Angel
Abel Huntington
Henry R. Schoolcraft
Henry C. Murphy
D. R. Floyd Jones
John Hunter
G. Kemble
L. Stetson
John R. Bartlett.

Mr. Schoolcraft, in adding his name to the above petition, and thus concurring in the general object thereof, begs leave to express the opinion that the end prayed for must depend essentially upon the character and amount of "such other aids" as Congress may grant, to enable the Indian department, in its existing organization, to act efficiently in the premises. This department is already burdened with duties, and it would be idle to expect it should seek to extend them without the specific directions of Congress. There is no want of "the application of its means and opportunities" *now*. But to collect a "body of valuable facts and materials," bearing on "history and ethnology," and so to shape them as "to enable the government to perform its high and sacred duties of protection and guardianship over the weak and still savage race placed by Providence under its care," is not a *slight*, and cannot be made a *casual*, labor. To attain so important an object, there should be a deliberate and clear expression of purpose and provision of means. The department is confined to the execution of duties imposed by laws or treaties, for which specific sums are appropriated. Even its contingent funds are strictly applicable to carry out these expressed objects, and none others; and the petitioners could not expect that the officers of the department would order a new species of inquiry, unless Congress should clearly denote its wishes, and at the same time provide in all respects for the object. Seventy years of congressional scrutiny have absorbed unlimited Executive power, and rendered the annual appropriations strictly specific. If the object prayed for is, as the petitioners state, important, it should be provided for independently, and not suffered to rely for its success upon the chance of its not conflicting with *other* duties and *other* funds. The officers of this department are appointed generally from the mass of citizens on the frontiers, to execute certain plain and expressed duties, and are not expected to enter into such researches. Their aid could be relied on, to a certain extent, with a small additional sum in each case to meet contingencies strictly arising from this duty. But, with every co-operation of this nature, there is a depth and purpose in the expressed views of the petitioners which could not be realized, in my opinion, unless the head of the bureau were authorized to employ, for the time being, a competent person, to devote himself exclusively to the inquiry, to visit the agents, superintend their labours herein, and take in hand the generic parts of the work, and report the results to government, in a complete form. For this, Congress should specifically provide.

NEW YORK, *November* 30, 1846.

WAR DEPARTMENT,
Office Indian Affairs, February 1, 1847.

SIR:—I have the honor to acknowledge the receipt of your letter of the 18th ultimo, accompanied by a memorial of the Hon. Albert Gallatin, Wm. C. Bouck, John Tracy, and others, that this office be required "to collect and digest such statistics and materials as may illustrate the history, the present condition, and the future prospects of the Indian tribes of the United States." You state that the Committee on Indian Affairs also desire to be informed what has been done under the law of the last session of Congress, requiring a census and statistics to be taken and collected, by the different agents and sub-agents, of the Indians among whom they respectively reside; "what it is in the power of the department to effect, without additional means, and what sum will be necessary to collect the information called for in the memorial." The law referred to by you was approved June 27, 1846; and subsequently, on the 7th of August, the Senate adopted a resolution requiring the Secretary of War "to avail himself of such means as may be afforded by the organization of the Indian Department to collect all such information as may be practicable respecting the condition, habits, and progress of the Indian tribes of the United States, and to lay the same from time to time, as may be convenient, before the Senate." The law of 27th June last fixes no time within which the duties imposed upon the agents and sub-agents should be performed; but, desirous of making a report under it at the present session of Congress, the department, as promptly as possible, adopted a form, as required by the law, prescribing the manner in which the census should be taken, and the points upon which statistics should be collected. It is regretted, that in consequence of the limited time, and of the agents being occupied with other important duties which could not be deferred, returns have not been received in relation to some of the tribes, such as the Cherokees, the Choctaws, and Chickasaws, whose advancement in civilization, and whose present condition and resources, probably render them objects of greater interest than almost any other of the tribes. The returns, as far as received, are embodied in the accompanying tabular statement and appended notes. From the limited time and the hurried manner in which they had necessarily to be taken, they are probably not as accurate as could be desired, and are not, therefore, in any great degree, to be relied upon. They are believed to be sufficiently so, however, to demonstrate one important fact—that the tribes having the least means or income, in the form of annuities, under their own control and direction, and who are necessarily compelled to rely upon their own exertions and prudence for the necessaries and comforts of life, are by far the most enterprising, industrious, moral, and upright. Such tribes need only the establishment among them of manual-labor schools — the most efficient means yet discovered for the improvement of the Indian race — and some temporary aid in their agricultural and mechanical operations, until they could begin practically to reap the benefit of such schools, to make the most gratifying progress in acquiring the resources and habits of civilized life.

A census and statistics of the kind directed to be taken under the law of the last session, which are confined to the present condition, means, and resources of the different tribes, is of comparatively little interest for any practical purposes. Both the memorial and the resolution of the Senate contemplate something more: they require the collection of such materials as will illustrate their past history; explain their former, and account for their present condition; and afford some indication of their probable prospects in the future. In the opinion of this office, a well-digested and arranged body of information, if it afforded nothing more than a correct view of the nature of the relations heretofore and now existing between the different tribes and the government, of the policy which has been pursued towards them, and its tendency and results, would be of considerable general interest, and of much value in the management of their affairs, and of our relations with them hereafter. We could thus see how far the tendency and practical effects of the policy of the government towards them has been, and is, beneficial or otherwise, and what changes or modifications, if any, should be made in it, in order more effectually to secure their present and future welfare and happiness.

In procuring information to this extent, other materials, such as those contemplated by the memorial, could, it is believed, at the same time be procured with not much additional labor and expense, which would show the origin of the different tribes; their numbers and condition at different periods; their peculiar manners, habits, and customs, superstitions, religious belief, rites and ceremonies; the character and structure of their languages; and such other particulars as would illustrate their past and present condition and history, on all the points of any material interest or consequence.

With the means now possessed by the department, it would not be able, in a satisfactory manner, to procure and arrange more detailed and comprehensive materials than those contained in the accompanying statement. To collect and digest such as are desired by the memorialists, would probably require a period of two years, and an outlay, to meet the expense incident thereto, of about five thousand dollars per annum, for which an appropriation would have to be made by Congress.

The memorial is herewith returned.

Respectfully, your obedient servant,

W. MEDILL.

HON. JACOB THOMPSON,
Chairman Committee on Indian Affairs,
House of Representatives.

N.

CENSUS AND STATISTICS OF THE SEVERAL INDIAN TRIBES,

Taken and collected by the Agents and Sub-Agents, in conformity with a Provision in the first Section of the Act making Appropriations for the Service of the Indian Department, approved June 27, 1846.

TRIBES.	WHERE LOCATED.	No. of males about and over 18 years of age.	No. of females about and over 16 years of age.	No. of males under 18 years of age.	No. of females under 16 years of age.	Total No. of Indians.	Engaged in trade.	Capital invested.	Engaged in the mechanic arts.
Christian Indians	Fort Leavenworth agency, north and south of Kansas river	24	39	19	24	106			
Delawares		250	359	269	254	1132	..	..	3
Kickapoos		158	134	88	95	475			
Shawnees		270	283	207	171	931			
Stockbridges		19	19	12	8	58			
Sacs and Foxes	Sac and Fox agency, on Osage river	782	805	401	455	2443			
Sioux	St. Peter's agency, on St. Peter's river	..	..	..	..	9139			
Ottowas, Chippewas and Pottawatomies	Council Bluffs sub-agency, on Missouri river	675	637	466	465	2243			
Pottawatomies	Osage River sub-agency, on Osage river	324	426	587	413	1750	4		
Ottowas		63	53	83	81	280	2		
Chippewas		8	9	7	7	31			
Peorias		15	14	16	10	55	1		
Piankeshaws		23	27	25	24	99			
Weas		35	41	44	31	151			
Wyandots	Wyandot sub-agency, on Kansas river	147	132	144	130	553	7	$8000	7
Menomonies	Green Bay sub-agency, Wisconsin Territory	..	..	..	..	2500			
Oneidas		..	..	..	..	720	..	..	50
Stockbridges		..	..	..	..	280			
Seminoles	Seminole sub-agency, north of the Canadian river	700	850	900	800	3250			
Ottowas	Michigan superintendency, Michigan	870	798	828	1069	3565	3	2000	2
Chippewas		814	774	783	885	3256			
Pottawatomies		87	76	63	122	378			
Miamies	Osage River sub-agency, south of the Osage river	122	117	197	119	555	1	8000	
Senecas, on Alleghany reservation	New York agency, New York	158	154	182	179	673	..	..	4
Senecas, on Cattaraugus reservation		84	95	93	88	360	..	..	20
Tuscaroras		69	67	58	83	275	..	..	9
Iowas	Great Nemaha sub-agency, on Great Nemaha river	246	259	109	92	706			

N. [CONTINUED.]

CENSUS AND STATISTICS OF THE SEVERAL INDIAN TRIBES.

TRIBES.	WHERE LOCATED.	Whites engaged in mechanic arts, supported by government.	Indians similarly engaged and supported.	Supported by themselves, for the general benefit.	Engaged on their individ'l account.	Carpenters.	Wheelwrights.	Blacksmiths.	Shoemakers.	Tailors.	Subsist by agriculture.
Christian Indians	Fort Leavenworth agency, north and south of Kansas river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	106
Delawares		2	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1183
Kickapoos		...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	475
Shawnees		4	...	...	4	4	...	2	2	...	931
Stockbridges		...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	58
Sacs and Foxes	Sac and Fox agency, on Osage river	5	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	2443
Sioux	St. Peter's agency, on St. Peter's river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Ottowas, Chippewas and Pottawatomies	Council Bluffs sub-agency, on Missouri river	...	2	...	...	...	...	2	...	...	...
Pottawatomies	Osage River sub-agency, on Osage river	5	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	1600
Ottowas		...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	250
Chippewas		...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	31
Peorias		...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	55
Piankeshaws		...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	80
Weas		...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	100
Wyandots	Wyandot sub-agency, on Kansas river	...	...	3	7	2	...	...	2	3	500
Menomonies	Green Bay sub-agency, Wisconsin Territory	3	4	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	300
Oneidas		...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	720
Stockbridges		...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	280
Seminoles	Seminole sub-agency, north of the Canadian river	1	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	3250
Ottowas	Michigan superintendency, Michigan	13	2	...	...	3	...	11	...	...	897
Chippewas											
Pottawatomies											
Miamies	Osage River sub-agency, south of the Osage river	...	1	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Senecas, on Alleghany reservation	New York sub-agency, New York	...	...	...	4	3	...	1	...	...	673
Senecas, on Cattaraugus reservation		...	...	...	20	10	...	2	4	4	347
Tuscaroras		...	...	...	9	2	1	4	...	2	274
Iowas	Great Nemaha sub-agency, on Great Nemaha river	2	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	706

N. [CONTINUED.]

CENSUS AND STATISTICS OF THE SEVERAL INDIAN TRIBES.

TRIBES.	WHERE LOCATED.	Agricultural assistants, furnished them by government.	Subsist by hunting.	Acres of land in cultivation.	Product of wheat, in bushels.	Product of corn, in bushels.	Product of rye, in bushels.	Product of oats, in bushels.	Product of potatoes, in bushels.
Christian Indians	Fort Leavenworth agency, north and south of Kansas river	...	...	118	10	2,360	...	60	188
Delawares		...	...	1381	1043	27,620	...	2,215	2,766
Kickapoos		...	...	635	...	12,700	...	1,180	1,718
Shawnees		...	...	2366	1620	34,380	...	8,449	4,324
Stockbridges		...	...	171	...	4,700	...	180	354
Sacs and Foxes	Sac and Fox agency, on Osage river	...	2443	35	...	700	...	...	...
Sioux	St. Peter's agency, on St. Peter's river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Ottowas, Chippewas and Pottowatomies	Council Bluffs sub-agency, on Missouri river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Pottowatomies	Osage River sub-agency, on Osage river	...	...	...	370	16,720	...	750	250
Ottowas		...	...	...	...	4,260	...	...	960
Chippewas		...	...	...	...	330	...	...	180
Peorias		...	...	...	...	1,050	...	180	...
Piankeshaws		...	...	...	...	1,181	...	260	...
Weas		...	...	...	...	2,087	...	...	320
Wyandots	Wyandot sub-agency, on Kansas river	...	...	885	150	23,400	...	287	5,663
Menomonies	Green Bay sub-agency, Wisconsin Territory	...	2200	150	...	500	...	200	1,000
Oneidas		...	...	2800	2000	3,000	...	2,500	2,500
Stockbridges		...	...	1000	400	1,000	...	...	...
Seminoles	Seminole sub-agency, north of the Canadian river	...	...	1000	...	25,000	...	...	...
Ottowas	Michigan superintendency, Michigan	21	6302	3175	...	15,346	...	...	24,996
Chippewas									
Pottawatomies									
Miamies	Osage river sub-agency, south of the Osage river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Senecas, on Alleghany reservation	New York sub-agency, New York	...	...	1868	417	11,000	230	11,892	18,509
Senecas, on Cattaraugus reservation		...	...	1863	1856	8,170	15	7,850	4,000
Tuscaroras		...	...	2134	2245	3,555	...	2,028	1,385
Iowas	Great Nemaha sub-agency, on Great Nemaha river	...	706	...	...	5,000	...	...	100

N. [CONTINUED.]

CENSUS AND STATISTICS OF THE SEVERAL INDIAN TRIBES.

TRIBES.	WHERE LOCATED.	Product of beans, in bushels.	Product of melons, in number, all kinds.	Pounds of butter.	Estimated value of their agricultural and horticult'l products.	Horses.	Mules.	Work oxen.
Christian Indians	Fort Leavenworth agency, north and south of Kansas river	83	5,194	1,801	$900	23	...	18
Delawares		620	89,860	10,470	10,286	1,353	12	158
Kickapoos		176	23,900	137	4,112	652	10	60
Shawnees		468	79,848	10,812	14,287	1,030	2	366
Stockbridges		80	10,535	830	1,489	45	...	14
Sacs and Foxes	Sac and Fox agency, on Osage river	40	...	...	303	2,947	27	...
Sioux	St. Peter's agency, on St. Peter's river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Ottowas, Chippewas and Pottawatomies	Council Bluffs sub-agency, on Missouri river	...	...	...	...	1,500	...	...
Pottawatomies	Osage River sub-agency, on Osage river	540	11,620	163	3,350	720	...	...
Ottowas		204	9,076	...	1,350	216	5	28
Chippewas		40	1,180	...	180	32	...	6
Peorias		150	4,750	26	331	88		
Piankeshaws		212	6,572	...	500	92	...	6
Weas		127	5,290	...	585	242		
Wyandots	Wyandot sub-agency, on Kansas river	154	40,000	944	6,747	308	...	8
Menomonies	Green Bay sub-agency, Wisconsin Territory	50	...	...	1,000	...	...	66
Oneidas		200	...	...	...	...	...	4
Stockbridges		...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Seminoles	Seminole sub-agency, north of the Canadian river	...	...	...	8,000	805	...	...
Ottowas	Michigan superintendency, Michigan	483	101,246	850	...	876	...	24
Chippewas								
Pottawatomies								
Miamies	Osage River sub-agency, south of the Osage river	...	...	...	...	220	...	...
Senecas, on Alleghany reservation	New York sub-agency, New York	512	7,793	8,381	13,298	112	2	127
Senecas, on Cattaraugus reservation		339	8,760	3,833	10,458	151	...	94
Tuscaroras		100	1,400	4,992	6,074	123	20	40
Iowas	Great Nemaha sub-agency, on Great Nemaha river	70	31,000	...	1,400	300	...	...

N. [CONTINUED.]

CENSUS AND STATISTICS OF THE SEVERAL INDIAN TRIBES.

TRIBES.	WHERE LOCATED.	Milch cows.	Other neat cattle.	Sheep.	Hogs.	Estimated value of agricultural implements.	Value of the product of their hunts, annually.	Amount of their annuities.
Christian Indians	Fort Leavenworth agency, north and south of Kansas river	35	47	...	101	$310	...	$400
Delawares		419	619	117	1257	3675	...	6,500
Kickapoos		183	162	...	690	1845	...	5,000
Shawnees		492	696	61	2498	4460	...	6,000
Stockbridges		30	46	...	94	160	...	70
Sacs and Foxes	Sac and Fox agency, on Osage river	...	...	...	...	750	$4,500	81,000
Sioux	St. Peter's agency, on St. Peter's river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Ottowas, Chippewas and Pottawatomies	Council Bluffs sub-agency, on Missouri river	...	...	...	...	...	...	40,912
Pottawatomies	Osage River sub-agency, on Osage river	85	285	...	392	1500	1,750	33,300
Ottowas		61	149	...	291	500	800	2,600
Chippewas		6	12	...	8	50	250	300
Peorias		16	46	...	31	200	150	...
Piankeshaws		27	30	...	21	250	260	800
Weas		31	52	...	131	300	370	3,000
Wyandots	Wyandot sub-agency, on Kansas river	159	269	20	1443	4400	...	17,500
Menomonies	Green Bay sub-agency, Wisconsin Territory	...	...	...	...	800	20,000	24,000
Oneidas		80	...	...	...	...	800	1,150
Stockbridges		...	...	...	...	...	...	280
Seminoles	Seminole sub-agency, north of the Canadian river	...	...	...	...	1500	...	6,000
Ottowas	Michigan superintendency, Michigan	16	163	...	756	1000	...	67,593
Chippewas								
Pottawatomies								
Miamies	Osage River sub-agency, south of the Osage river	70	150	...	...	...	...	62,418
Senecas, on Alleghany reservation	New York agency, New York	142	232	70	670	3640	...	3,715
Senecas, on Cattaraugus reservation		132	216	479	638	5341	...	...
Tuscaroras		56	78	144	437	3398	...	...
Iowas	Great Nemaha sub-agency, on Great Nemaha river	...	...	...	...	300	...	...

N. [CONTINUED.]

CENSUS AND STATISTICS OF THE SEVERAL INDIAN TRIBES.

TRIBES.	WHERE LOCATED.	Amount of annuities per capita.	Amount of annuities paid in money.	Amount of annuities paid in goods.	Tobacco furnished them by government annually.	Salt furnished them by governm't annually.	Iron and steel furnished them by government annually.
Christian Indians	Fort Leavenworth agency, north and south of Kansas river	$3 72	$400	...	...	...	...
Delawares		5 74	6,500	...	...	$100	$220
Kickapoos		10 52	5,000	...	...	...	...
Shawnees		6 44	6,000	...	...	60	220
Stockbridges		1 20	70	...	...	...	...
Sacs and Foxes	Sac and Fox agency, on Osage river	38 37	81,000	...	$600	200	660
Sioux	St. Peter's agency, on St. Peter's river	...	...	...	...	...	...
Ottowas, Chippewas and Pottowatomies	Council Bluffs sub-agency, on Missouri river	...	...	...	...	...	...
Pottowatomies	Osage River sub-agency, on Osage river	1 19	33,300	...	2000 lbs.	160 bush.	1850 lbs.
Ottowas		9 00	2,600	...	...	...	...
Chippewas		9 50	300	...	...	...	...
Peorias		...	...	...	...	...	...
Piankeshaws		8 00	800	...	...	...	...
Weas		20 00	3,000	...	...	...	...
Wyandots	Wyandot sub-agency, on Kansas river	20 00	17,500	...	...	...	$220
Menomonies	Green Bay sub-agency, Wisconsin Territory	10 00	20,000	...	2000 lbs.	30 bbls.	440
Oneidas		...	11,500	...	...	...	...
Stockbridges		1 00	280	...	...	...	...
Seminoles	Seminole sub-agency, north of the Canadian river	2 00	3,000	$3000	...	...	...
Ottowas	Michigan superintendency, Michigan	9 53	67,593	...	7176 lbs.	100 bbls.	1040
Chippewas							
Pottawatomies							
Miamies	Osage river sub-agency, south of the Osage river	72 56	...	...	1000 lbs.	160 bush.	220
Senecas, on Alleghany reservation	New York sub-agency, New York	5 00	3,715	571	...	...	...
Senecas, on Cattaraugus reservation		5 50	...	937	...	...	...
Tuscaroras		...	...	251	...	...	...
Iowas	Great Nemaha sub-agency, on Great Nemaha river	...	...	...	...	...	...

N. [CONTINUED.]

CENSUS AND STATISTICS OF THE SEVERAL INDIAN TRIBES.

TRIBES.	WHERE LOCATED.	Schools.	Teachers.	Male scholars.	Female scholars.	Churches.	Male professors of religion.	Female profes'rs of religion.
Christian Indians	Fort Leavenworth agency, north and south of Kansas river	1	1	19	13	1	13	27
Delawares		1	1	30	39	...	36	35
Kickapoos		...	...	...	...	1	33	37
Shawnees		3	4	43	42	2	91	84
Stockbridges		1	1	6	8	1	9	16
Sacs and Foxes	Sac and Fox agency, on Osage river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Sioux	St. Peter's agency, on St. Peter's river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Ottowas, Chippewas and Pottawatomies	Council Bluffs sub-agency, on Missouri river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Pottawatomies	Osage River sub-agency, on Osage river	3	6	68	72	3	540	610
Ottowas		..	...	...	...	1	120	130
Chippewas		...	...	...	...			
Peorias		...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Piankeshaws		...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Weas		1	2	8	7	1	49	57
Wyandots	Wyandot sub-agency, on Kansas river	2	2	40	30	1	98	100
Menomonies	Green Bay sub-agency, Wisconsin Territory	1	2	20	18	1	56	44
Oneidas		2	2	35	40	2	...	...
Stockbridges		2	2	50	60	1	...	...
Seminoles	Seminole sub-agency, north of the Canadian river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Ottowas	Michigan superintendency, Michigan	12	16	228	254	16	295	367
Chippewas								
Pottawatomies								
Miamies	Osage River sub-agency, south of the Osage river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Senecas, on Alleghany reservation	New York sub-agency, New York	4	4	70	75	2	27	34
Senecas, on Cattaraugus reservation		6	6	124	90	2	36	49
Tuscaroras		1	1	21	31	1	22	44
Iowas	Great Nemaha sub-agency, on Great Nemaha river	1	2	2	6	1	...	1

N. [CONTINUED.]

CENSUS AND STATISTICS OF THE SEVERAL INDIAN TRIBES.

Tribes.	Where located.	Sabbath schools.	Male scholars.	Female scholars.	Proportion that still adhere to their ancient religion.	Temperance societies.	Members of temperance societies.	Licensed traders.
Christian Indians	Fort Leavenworth agency, north and south of Kansas river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Delawares		1	7	9	$\frac{7}{8}$	...	...	...
Kickapoos		3	...	...	$\frac{3}{4}$	...	...	...
Shawnees		1	102	91	$\frac{3}{4}$	...	...	...
Stockbridges		...	25	27	...	...	...	...
Sacs and Foxes	Sac and Fox agency, on Osage river	...	...	...	2443	...	...	4
Sioux	St. Peter's agency, on St. Peter's river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Ottowas, Chippewas and Pottawatomies	Council Bluffs sub-agency, on Missouri river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Pottawatomies	Osage River sub-agency, on Osage river	...	...	...	250	...	...	5
Ottowas		...	...	...	...	...	...	1
Chippewas		...	...	...	...	...	...	
Peorias		...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Piankeshaws		...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Weas		...	...	...	...	...	...	1
Wyandots	Wyandot sub-agency, on Kansas river	...	...	...	...	1	110	...
Menomonies	Green Bay sub-agency, Wisconsin Territory	...	...	...	$\frac{7}{8}$	...	...	3
Oneidas		1	...	...	...	1	90	1
Stockbridges		1	50	50	...	1	...	...
Seminoles	Seminole sub-agency, north of the Canadian river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Ottowas	Michigan superintendency, Michigan	10	221	245	$\frac{2}{3}$	12	1514	...
Chippewas								
Pottawatomies								
Miamies	Osage River sub-agency, south of the Osage river	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Senecas, on Alleghany reservation	New York agency, New York	2	15	20	$\frac{9}{10}$	1	70	...
Senecas, on Cattaraugus reservation		2	30	33	$\frac{1}{2}$	2	$\frac{3}{4}$	...
Tuscaroras		...	...	...	...	1	153	...
Iowas	Great Nemaha sub-agency, on Great Nemaha river	1	2	6	705	...	...	1

O.

ESTIMATE OF THE INDIAN POPULATION OF THE MISSOURI VALLEY IN 1850.

Nation.	Tribes.	Sub-Tribes.	Principal Bands.	Country.	Principal Men.	Their Indian Names.
Sioux, on Missouri, about 3000 lodges, about 30,000 souls	Yankton, 300 lodges..	....	Band of the lights Band that eats no geese Band that don't cook	Basin of the river A'Jaques.	The one that strikes the Bee... The Smutty Bear	Pa-ta-ni-a-pa-pi. Ma-to-sab-itch-i-ay.
	Yanktonnan .... 350 lodges.	....	Band that eats no buffalo The cut heads—Tetes coupes The Pole people The few that lived	West of the Yanktons and north of the Missouri.	The Red Cloud The one that tells the Truth ... The Bone Necklace The two Bears The White Spider	Ma-pi-a-lu-tah. E-ay-tcha-ca-pi. Hu-hoon-numpi. Ma-to-noh-pah. Itch-to-mi-skah.
	Titons, 2250 lodges ...	Brules, 500 lodges	Those that shoot in the pines The Pheasants The Orphans The broiled meat people The big legged horses Those that boil their dishes The bad arms Those born in the middle Those that eat crows	L'Eau qui court river, Platte river, and seldom north of White river.	The Little Thunder The Eagle's Body The Iron Shell	Wa-chi-unchi-ki-buh. Tchu-i-wah-bel-i. Ma-sa-pan-ches-ca.
		Blackfeet* .... 450 lodges.	The Cuts—des Coupes The black-footed ones The bad-looking ones Those that camp next to the last.... The crow feather band The Devil's medicine man band	The Shayen, Moreau, Grand and Cannon-ball rivers. These bands range together.	The Red Bull The Bad Bull The White Thunder	Ta-tun-tcha-tu-tah. Ta-tun-tcha-se-tcha. Wa-che-un-ska.
		Onch-pa-pah ...... 320 lodges.	Half breech-clout people Fresh-meat necklace people The sleepy-kettle band The sore backs The bad bows Those that carry		The Little Bear The White Feet The Bear's Rib The Four Horns The Red Horn The Little Brave The Red Fish The Feather Ear-rings	Ma-to-tchi-cah. O-jah-ska-ska. Ma-ta-tchu-i-tsa. Hay-to-kah. He-la-tah. Hi-to-kah. Oh-ghah-lu-tah. We-akah-oh-wee.
		Mini-con-geha ..... 270 lodges.	The river that dies Those that eat no dogs The shell ear-ring band Leja ga dat cah	Head and forks of the Shayen river and Black Hills. These bands range together.		
		Sans Arc............ 250 lodges.	The Sans Arcs The red water band Those that eat the ham		The Crow Feather The Lazy Bear The Medicine Man	Con-gi-wi-a-kah. Mah-to-un-dhique-pa-ni. Wi-tscha-sa-fha-kah.
		Ogallah .... 400 lodges.	The Ogallah band The red water band The old skin necklace band The night cloud band The red lodge band	North and south forks of Platte river, and west of Black Hills.	The Whirlwind The Red Water The Standing Bull The Yellow Eagle	Wa-mine-ma-du-sah. Mina-shah. Wam-ba-li-ghi. To-tum-cha-na-sha.
		Kettle band .... 60 lodges.	The short hair band No divisions.	....	The Four Bears	Ma-to-pah.

* Not the Blackfoot Nation.

O. [CONTINUED.]

ESTIMATE OF THE INDIAN POPULATION OF THE MISSOURI VALLEY IN 1850.

NATIONS.	BANDS.	COUNTRY.	LANGUAGE.
Cheyenne …………… 300 lodges. 3000 souls.	The Dog Soldier band …………… The Yellow Wolf band. The Half-breed Band.	Principally west of the Black Hills. Originally on the Missouri.	Language distinct.
Aricaree …………… 200 lodges. 1500 souls.	Band of the Bulls…………… Do. Blackmouths. Do. Foolish Dogs. Do. Young Dogs.	Permanent village at Fort Clark, about forty-seven degrees north latitude; they winter elsewhere.	Language kindred to the Pawnee.
	Do. Foxes…………… Do. Crows……………	West bank of the Missouri.	
Mandan …………… 30 lodges. 150 souls.	The Pheasants……………	Permanent village on the Missouri, five miles above the Ree village.	Language distinct.
Gros Ventre …………… 85 lodges. 700 souls.	Band of the Foxes…………… Do. Foolish Dogs. Do. Dogs. Do. Old Dogs. Do. Bulls. Do. Black Tail Deers.	Permanent village on the east bank of the Missouri, seventy-five miles above Fort Clark, at Fort Berthold.	Language kindred to the Crow.
Assiniboine…………… 1500 lodges in all; 600 trade on the Missouri.	The Canoe Band…………… The Left Hand band. [Could not learn the names of other bands.]	North of the Missouri, and east of the Blackfoot country.	Language kindred to the Sioux or Dahcotah.
Crow …………… 400 lodges. 4800 souls (about).	Crow People …………… Mine-set-peri (Sap-suckers). The above two bands are divided into 12 small ones, as follows: Pole-cat band. Bad Leggins. Those that lodge close together. The treacherous lodges. Red Mouths. Bad Coup (originally Blackfeet Indians). The Rich Prairie Dog. The lodges charged upon. Ship-tet-sa: Kick in the Belly. The lodges without Horses. Root Diggers, originally a band of Snake Indians.	The basin of the Yellowstone river……………	Language distinct.

O. [CONTINUED.]

ESTIMATE OF THE INDIAN POPULATION OF THE MISSOURI VALLEY IN 1850.

NATIONS.	TRIBES.	BANDS.	REMARKS.
Blackfoot 1200 lodges. 9600 souls (about).	The Blackfoot	North Blackfoot	Trade with Hudson's Bay Co.
		South Blackfoot	Trade with American Fur Co.
	The Blood Indians	The Fish Eaters	Language distinct.
		The Depuvis band	
		The Robes with Hair on the outside	
	The Piedgans (pronounced Pagans)	North Piedgans	Country north of the Missouri river, and west of Assiniboine country. Language distinct.
		The Little Robes	
		The People that don't laugh	
		The Bloody Piedgans	
		The Cow-dung Band	
	Gros Ventre du Prairie	Not ascertained	Kindred to the Arapahoes.

SUMMARY.

Sioux	30,000
Cheyenne	3,000
Aricaree	1,500
Mandan	150
Gros Ventres	700
Assiniboine	4,800
Crow	4,800
Blackfoot	8,600
Probable number of Indians on the Upper Missouri and its tributaries	54,550

P.

INDIAN POPULATION OF WESTERN OREGON IN 1851.

REPORTED BY ANSON DART, SUPERINTENDENT OF INDIAN AFFAIRS.

WEST OF THE COLUMBIA, NORTH AND SOUTH.	Total.	GOVERNOR LANE, 1850.	
Chatsops, 37 males, 34 females	80	Clatsops	50
Chinooks, 70 males, 72 females	142		100
Vancouvers, 23 men, 37 women and children	60		
Wheelappas or Quillequaquas	13		
Tillamooks	150	Tilhulhwit	200
Clackamas, 19 men, 29 women, 40 children	88		60
Tum Waters, 5 men, 6 women, 2 children	13		
Molallas, 40 men, 60 women, 23 children	123	Molealleg	100
Calapooyas	560	Calipoa	60
Umpquas, 67 men, 104 women, 32 boys, 40 girls	243		200
Shasta or Rogue river	......		
Cascades, 45 men, 75 women and children	120		
Clickatats, 252 men, 130 women, 45 boys, 65 girls	492		180
Cowlitz, Nesqually, Cheehales, (not estimated)	......		
Aggregate	2084		950
TRIBES EAST OF THE CASCADE MOUNTAINS.			
Wascopams, two bands at the Dalles, 129 men, 206 women, 147 children	482		200
Des Chutes band, 95 men, 115 women, 90 children	300		300
Walla Wallas, 52 men, 40 women, 38 children	130		1000
Waulatpus or Cayuses, 38 men, 48 women, 40 children	126		800
Sahaptins or Nez Perces, 698 men, 1182 women and ch'n.	1880		1500
Palooses, 60 men, 62 women, 59 children	181	Not estimated.	
Spokans or Flat Heads	......		
Sinhumanish band, 71 men, 85 women, 38 boys, 38 girls	232		
Mission band, 70 men, 60 women, 40 boys, and 40 girls	210		
Upper Pond Orrilles, 480; Lower do., 520; Cour d'Alienes, 200	1200		500
Rock Island, 300; Collvilte, 220; Okonagon, 250	870		700
Yackimas (estimated)	1000	Yackaws	1500
Snakes	......	Not estimated.	
Aggregate	6611		6500

The want of generalization of the languages and tribes of Oregon, the multiplicity of local names for bands, and the great discrepancies in orthography, render it difficult to compare the Indian population. Mr. Dart makes remarks on the great discrepancy in the reports of their numbers, particularly in relation to the Cayuses and Wallawallas; but is silent as to the discrepancy in the names of whole tribes. His estimates are, to a great extent, restricted to tribes which he has visited. Yet the Chinooks and Clatsops, who are most exposed, it would seem, to the causes of decline, are placed, respectively, 42 and 30 souls higher than in the prior estimate of 1850. The Calapooyas are stated at 500 higher, the Clickatats at 212, the Umpquas at 43, the Molales at 23, and the Nez Perces at 380—advances which are extraordinary in such small bands; while, on the contrary, the Walla Wallas are shown to have sunk from 1000 to 180, and the Cayuses (who have had a war) from 800 to 126—a decline equally remarkable. Probably, in the actual state of things, there is no public record of what has been done, in the way of statistics, by his predecessors, which might be used as guides in names or orthography.

Q.

POPULATION OF THE PUEBLOS OF NEW MEXICO.

REPORTED BY GOVERNOR J. S. CALHOUN.

	PUEBLOS.	Population in 1851.	Population in 1850.
1	Taos	361	345
2	Picaris	222	250
3	San Juan	568	275
4	Santa Clara	279	350
5	San Ildefonso	139	250
6	Pogodque	48	200
7	Tesuque	119	......
8	Nambe	111	......
9	Zuni	1500	2985
10	Laguna	749	900
11	Acoma	350	750
12	Lentis	210	250
13	Isletta	751	450
14	Sandia	241	400
15	Cia (Silla)	124	250
16	Santa Ana	399	300
17	Jenies	365	450
18	San Felipe	411	275
19	Santa Dominga	666	750
20	Cochiti	254	500
	Total	7867	9250

This return of the Marshal does not include the two pueblos of Socorro and Isletta, below El Paso, nor the seven pueblos of Moqui; which latter were returned, in the year 1850, as containing a population of 10,850.

R.

INDIAN POPULATION OF NORTH-WESTERN CALIFORNIA.

REPORTED BY REDICK M'KEE, U. S. AGENT.

TRIBES.	Men.	Women.	Children.	Total.
Huta Napo, by count	85	81	29	195
Habe Napo, "	29	42	13	84
Sahnel Yakai Pomo Masu-ta-kaya By estimate				721
Clear lake and surrounding mountains				1,000
Valley of Sonoma and Russian river, by estimate				1,200
Road from Fort Ross south to St. Francisco bay, by est.				500
Na-loh, Car-lots-a-po	30	26	19	75
Chow-e-chak, Che-do-chog	25	25	27	77
Choi-te-cu, Mis-a-lah	34	42	13	89
Ba-cow-a, Tu-wa-nah	23	29	28	80
Sa-min-da, Cach-e-nah	15	25	19	59
Betumke, south fork of Eel river	127	147	106	380
On the Klamath: Weits-pek Wah-sher Kai-petl Morai-uh Noht-scho Meh-teh Schre-gon Yau-terrh Pec-quan Kau-weh Mauh-teeg Sche-perrh Oiyotl Nai-aguth Shaitl Ho-paiuh Rek-qua Wehtl-qua				1,500
Klamath river 24 Scott's valley 7 Shasta valley 19 50 villages, at 60 souls each				3,000
Trinity Indians				1,500
Grand total				9,080

S.

INDIAN POPULATION OF TEXAS IN 1851.

REPORTED BY JESSE STEM, U. S. INDIAN AGENT.

The following enumeration I consider very accurate:

TRIBES.	Number.	Total.	No. of warriors.
Towacarros	141	293	90
Wacoes	114		
Keechies	38		
Caddoes	161	476	161
Andaicos	202		
Ionies	113		
Delawares	...	63	31
Shawnees	...	70	35
		902	317

Besides these, the Tonkawas are generally on the Brasos and its tributaries. They have no villages or permanent location, and I did not obtain their exact numbers; but they are estimated at about 250, making altogether of these tribes 1152, and less than 400 warriors.

It will be seen, upon examining the files of the Department, that the tribes above enumerated, including the Wichitas, were in 1849 reported officially as having 800 warriors, and numbering 4000 persons. The Wichitas were represented to me as a small tribe, numbering 100. They, together with about 80 warriors from the Caddoes, Wacoes, and Keechies, (including about two-thirds of the latter tribe,) together with a small proportion of women, have, within the last two years, left Texas, and are now inhabiting the Wichita Mountains, beyond Red river. But, deducting these, the above enumeration shows that former estimates have been very much too large; and I entertain no doubt that, upon actual enumeration, it will be found that there has been a proportionate over-estimate of the other Indians in Texas.

The Lipans are estimated at 500, and the Comanches are set down in round numbers at 20,000.

I regret that Judge Rollins and myself, while among them, did not ascertain the number of the Lipans.

Of the number of the Comanches it is difficult, if not impossible, to get any accurate knowledge.

The southern bands, who are the only Comanches that remain in Texas continuously, are not numerous. They inhabit the country on the Llano, the Colorado and its tributaries, and hunt and trade as high up as the Brasos.

They have no villages or fixed location, but are here to-day and away to-morrow; their chiefs are Catumsie, Buffalo Hump, and Yellow Wolf. They frequent the military posts and settlements on the frontier, and met Judge Rollins at the treaty on the Llano, in December last. Catumsie estimated the number who would meet Judge Rollins in October next at about 600, including the Lipans. The northern Comanches come into Texas only in the winter, where they seek the shelter of her "upper cross timbers," and the greener pastures of her more genial climate. In the summer, they hunt the buffalo on the great prairies of the north.

From the best information I could get from the most intelligent of the various Indians we visited, including the concurring opinions of John Conner, Jim Shaw, and Bill Shaw, half-breed Delawares, who have had much intercourse with the Comanches, and who speak the language, Pah-a-yu-ka's band consists of about 200 lodges and 1000 persons, and Shanico's of about 200 persons. I could learn nothing from them of any other prominent chief or band of the northern Comanches.

Estimating the southern Comanches, or those who remain in Texas below the Brasos, at 600, and the northern Comanches, under Pah-a-yu-ka and Shanico, at 1300, the number thus accounted for is less than 2000. Large numbers of this tribe are doubtless constantly migrating, about whom little is known; but I am convinced that 20,000 is a great exaggeration of their number.